AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

Title 16—Commercial Practices

(This book contains parts 0 to 999)

Part

CHAPTER I—Federal Trade Commission 0

CHAPTER I—FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

SUBCHAPTER A—ORGANIZATION, PROCEDURES AND RULES OF PRACTICE

Part		*Page*
0	Organization	7
1	General procedures	11
2	Nonadjudicative procedures	32
3	Rules of practice for adjudicative proceedings	46
4	Miscellaneous rules	85
5	Standards of conduct	116
6	Enforcement of nondiscrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by the Federal Trade Commission	120
14	Administrative interpretations, general policy statements, and enforcement policy statements	127
16	Advisory committee management	130

SUBCHAPTER B—GUIDES AND TRADE PRACTICE RULES

17	Application of guides in preventing unlawful practices [Note]	137
18	Guides for the nursery industry	137
20	Guides for the rebuilt, reconditioned and other used automobile parts industry	141
23	Guides for the jewelry, precious metals, and pewter industries	142
24	Guides for select leather and imitation leather products	154
25–227	[Reserved]	
233	Guides against deceptive pricing	157
238	Guides against bait advertising	160
239	Guides for the advertising of warranties and guarantees	161
240	Guides for advertising allowances and other merchandising payments and services	163
251	Guide concerning use of the word ''free'' and similar representations	169
254	Guides for private vocational and distance education schools	171

Part		Page
255	Guides concerning use of endorsements and testimonials in advertising	174
259	Guide concerning fuel economy advertising for new automobiles	179
260	Guides for the use of environmental marketing claims	181

SUBCHAPTER C—REGULATIONS UNDER SPECIFIC ACTS OF CONGRESS

300	Rules and regulations under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939	193
301	Rules and regulations under Fur Products Labeling Act	205
303	Rules and regulations under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act	220
304	Rules and regulations under the Hobby Protection Act	243
305	Rule concerning disclosures regarding energy consumption and water use of certain home appliances and other products required under the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (''Appliance Labeling Rule'')	244
306	Automotive fuel ratings, certification and posting	356
307	Regulations under the Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986	362
308	Trade regulation rule pursuant to the Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act of 1992	375
309	Labeling requirements for alternative fuels and alternative fueled vehicles	386
310	Telemarketing sales rule	401
311	Test procedures and labeling standards for recycled oil	412
312	Children's online privacy protection rule	413
313	Privacy of consumer financial information	420
314	Standards for safeguarding customer information	440
315	Contact lens rule	441
316	Rules Implementing the Can-Spam Act of 2003	445

SUBCHAPTER D—TRADE REGULATION RULES

408	Unfair or deceptive advertising and labeling of cigarettes in relation to the health hazards of smoking [Note]	449
410	Deceptive advertising as to sizes of viewable pictures shown by television receiving sets	449
423	Care labeling of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods as amended	449
424	Retail food store advertising and marketing practices	455

Part		Page
425	Use of prenotification negative option plans	456
429	Rule concerning cooling-off period for sales made at homes or at certain other locations	458
432	Power output claims for amplifiers utilized in home entertainment products	461
433	Preservation of consumers' claims and defenses	463
435	Mail or telephone order merchandise	464
436	Disclosure requirements and prohibitions concerning franchising	469
437	Disclosure requirements and prohibitions concerning business opportunities	498
444	Credit practices	511
453	Funeral industry practices	513
455	Used motor vehicle trade regulation rule	520
456	Ophthalmic practice rules (eyeglass rule)	528
460	Labeling and advertising of home insulation	529

SUBCHAPTER E—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENT OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATION AND EXEMPTIONS UNDER THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT

500	Regulations under section 4 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act	537
501	Exemptions from requirements and prohibitions under part 500	550
502	Regulations under section 5(c) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act	551
503	Statements of general policy or interpretation	555

SUBCHAPTER F—FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

600	Statements of general policy or interpretations	559
602	Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003	586
603	Definitions	587
604	Fair Credit Reporting Act rules	588
610	Free annual file disclosures	588
611	Prohibition against circumventing treatment as a nationwide consumer reporting agency	596
613	Duration of active duty alerts	597
614	Appropriate proof of identity	597
642	Prescreen opt-out notice	598
680	Affiliate marketing	599
681	Identity theft rules	613
682	Disposal of consumer report information and records	619

Part		Page
698	Model forms and disclosures	620

SUBCHAPTER G—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE MAGNUSON-MOSS WARRANTY ACT

700	Interpretations of Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act	647
701	Disclosure of written consumer product warranty terms and conditions	652
702	Pre-sale availability of written warranty terms	654
703	Informal dispute settlement procedures	656

SUBCHAPTER H—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

801	Coverage rules	663
802	Exemption rules	683
803	Transmittal rules	701

SUBCHAPTER I—FAIR DEBT COLLECTION PRACTICES ACT

901	Procedures for State application for exemption from the provisions of the Act	735
902–999	[Reserved]	

CROSS REFERENCES: Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture: 9 CFR Chapter I. Commodity Futures Trading Commission: 17 CFR Chapter I. Consumer Product Safety Commission: 16 CFR Chapter II. Securities and Exchange Commission: 17 CFR Chapter II.

SUPPLEMENTARY PUBLICATIONS: *Federal Trade Commission decisions, Volumes 1–90 Index digest of volumes 1, 2, and 3 of decisions of the Federal Trade Commission with annotation of Federal cases. Mar. 16, 1915–June 30, 1921. Statutes and decisions pertaining to the Federal Trade Commission. 1914–1929, 1930–1938, 1939–1943, 1944–1948, 1949–1955, 1956–1960, 1961–1965, 1966–1970, 1971–1975, 1976, 1977.*

SUBCHAPTER A—ORGANIZATION, PROCEDURES AND RULES OF PRACTICE

PART 0—ORGANIZATION

Sec.
0.1 The Commission.
0.2 Official address.
0.3 Hours.
0.4 Laws administered.
0.5 Laws authorizing monetary claims.
0.6 [Reserved]
0.7 Delegation of functions.
0.8 The Chairman.
0.9 Organization structure.
0.10 Office of the Executive Director.
0.11 Office of the General Counsel.
0.12 Office of the Secretary.
0.13 Office of the Inspector General.
0.14 Office of Administrative Law Judges.
0.15 [Reserved]
0.16 Bureau of Competition.
0.17 Bureau of Consumer Protection.
0.18 Bureau of Economics.
0.19 The Regional Offices.
0.20 Office of International Affairs.

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(1); 15 U.S.C. 46(g).

SOURCE: 41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976, unless otherwise noted.

§ 0.1 The Commission.

The Federal Trade Commission is an independent administrative agency which was organized in 1915 pursuant to the Federal Trade Commission Act of 1914 (38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58). It is responsible for the administration of a variety of statutes which, in general, are designed to promote competition and to protect the public from unfair and deceptive acts and practices in the advertising and marketing of goods and services. It is composed of five members appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate for terms of seven years.

§ 0.2 Official address.

The principal office of the Commission is at Washington, DC. All communications to the Commission should be addressed to the Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20580, unless otherwise specifically directed. The Commission's Web site address is *www.ftc.gov*.

[63 FR 71582, Dec. 29, 1998, as amended at 65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 0.3 Hours.

Principal and field offices are open on each business day from 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m.

§ 0.4 Laws administered.

The Commission exercises enforcement and administrative authority under the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 41–58), Clayton Act (15 U.S.C. 12–27), Robinson-Patman Act (15 U.S.C. 13–13b, 21a), Webb-Pomerene (Export Trade) Act (15 U.S.C. 61–66), Packers and Stockyards Act (7 U.S.C. 181–229), Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. 68–68j), Lanham Trade-Mark Act (15 U.S.C. 1064), Fur Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. 69–69j), Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (15 U.S.C. 70–70k), Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act (15 U.S.C. 1331–1340), Fair Packaging and Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. 1451–1461), Truth in Lending Act (15 U.S.C. 1601–1667f), Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681–1681u), Fair Credit Billing Act (15 U.S.C. 1666–1666j), Equal Credit Opportunity Act (15 U.S.C. 1691–1691f), Fair Debt Collection Practices Act (15 U.S.C. 1692–1692o), Electronic Fund Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 1693–1693r), Hobby Protection Act (15 U.S.C. 2101–2106), Magnuson-Moss Warranty—Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act (15 U.S.C. 2301–2312, 45–58), Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6201–6422, 15 U.S.C. 2008), Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (15 U.S.C. 18a), Petroleum Marketing Practices Act (15 U.S.C. 2801–2841), Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 (15 U.S.C. 4401–4408), Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act of 1992 (15 U.S.C. 5701–5724), Telemarketing and Consumer Fraud and Abuse Prevention Act (15 U.S.C. 6101–6108), International Antitrust Enforcement Assistance Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 46, 57b–1, 1311–1312, 6201 & note, 6202–6212), Credit Repair Organizations Act (15 U.S.C. 1679–1679j), Children's Online Privacy Protection Act (15 U.S.C. 6501–6506), Identity Theft Assumption and Deterrence Act of 1998 (18

U.S.C. 1028 note), Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (15 U.S.C. 6801–6809), and other Federal statutes.

[65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 0.5 Laws authorizing monetary claims.

The Commission is authorized to entertain monetary claims against it under three statutes. The Federal Tort Claims Act (28 U.S.C. 2671–2680) provides that the United States will be liable for injury or loss of property or personal injury or death caused by the negligent or wrongful acts or omissions of its employees acting within the scope of their employment or office. The Military Personnel and Civilian Employees Claims Act of 1964 (31 U.S.C. 3701, 3721) authorizes the Commission to compensate employees' claims for damage to or loss of personal property incident to their service. The Equal Access to Justice Act (5 U.S.C. 504 and 28 U.S.C. 2412) provides that an eligible prevailing party other than the United States will be awarded fees and expenses incurred in connection with any adversary adjudicative and court proceeding, unless the adjudicative officer finds that the agency was substantially justified or that special circumstances make an award unjust. In addition, eligible parties, including certain small businesses, will be awarded fees and expenses incurred in defending against an agency demand that is substantially in excess of the final decision of the adjudicative officer and is unreasonable when compared with such decision under the facts and circumstances of the case, unless the adjudicative officer finds that the party has committed a willful violation of law or otherwise acted in bad faith, or special circumstances make an award unjust. Questions may be addressed to the Office of the General Counsel, (202) 326–2462.

[63 FR 36340, July 6, 1998]

§ 0.6 [Reserved]

§ 0.7 Delegation of functions.

The Commission, under the authority provided by Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1961, may delegate, by published order or rule, certain of its functions to a division of the Commission, an individual Commissioner, an administrative law judge, or an employee or employee board, and retains a discretionary right to review such delegated action upon its own initiative or upon petition of a party to or an intervenor in such action.

[65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 0.8 The Chairman.

The Chairman of the Commission is designated by the President, and, subject to the general policies of the Commission, is the executive and administrative head of the agency. He presides at meetings of and hearings before the Commission and participates with other Commissioners in all Commission decisions. Attached to the Office of the Chairman, and reporting directly to him, and through him to the Commission, are the following staff units:

(a) The Office of Public Affairs, which furnishes information concerning Commission activities to news media and the public; and

(b) the Office of Congressional Relations, which coordinates all liaison activities with Congress.

[50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 0.9 Organization structure.

The Federal Trade Commission comprises the following principal units: Office of the Executive Director; Office of the General Counsel; Office of the Secretary; Office of the Inspector General; Office of the Administrative Law Judges; Office of International Affairs; Bureau of Competition; Bureau of Consumer Protection; Bureau of Economics; and the Regional Offices.

[72 FR 9434, Mar. 2, 2007]

§ 0.10 Office of the Executive Director.

The Executive Director, under the direction of the Chairman, is the chief operating official who develops and implements management and administrative policies, programs and directives for the Commission. The Executive Director works closely with the Bureaus on strategic planning and assessing the management and resource implications of any proposed action. In addition, the Executive Director manages the Commission's facilities and administrative

services, financial management, information technology, and human resources.

[65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§0.11 Office of the General Counsel.

The General Counsel is the Commission's chief law officer and adviser, who renders necessary legal services to the Commission, represents the Commission in the Federal and State courts, advises the Commission and other agency officials and staff with respect to questions of law and policy, including advice with respect to legislative matters and ethics, and responds to requests and appeals filed under the Freedom of Information and Privacy Acts and to intra- and intergovernmental access requests.

[65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§0.12 Office of the Secretary.

The Secretary is responsible for the minutes of Commission meetings and is the legal custodian of the Commission's seal, property, papers, and records, including legal and public records. The Secretary, or in the Secretary's absence an Acting Secretary designated by the Commission, signs Commission orders and official correspondence. In addition, the Secretary is responsible for the publication of all Commission actions that appear in the FEDERAL REGISTER and for the publication of *Federal Trade Commission Decisions*.

[65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§0.13 Office of the Inspector General.

The Office of Inspector General (OIG) was established within the Federal Trade Commission in 1989 as required by the Inspector General Act Amendments of 1988 (5 U.S.C. app. 3). The OIG promotes the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of FTC programs and operations. To this end, the OIG independently conducts audits and investigations to find and prevent fraud, waste, and abuse within the agency.

[65 FR 78408, Dec. 15, 2000]

§0.14 Office of Administrative Law Judges.

Administrative law judges are officials to whom the Commission, in accordance with law, delegates the initial performance of statutory fact-finding functions and initial rulings on conclusions of law, to be exercised in conformity with Commission decisions and policy directives and with its Rules of Practice. The administrative law judges also serve as presiding officers assigned to conduct rulemaking proceedings under section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act as amended and other rulemaking proceedings as directed. The Chief Administrative Law Judge also serves as the Chief Presiding Officer. Administrative law judges are appointed under the authority and subject to the prior approval of the Office of Personnel Management.

[54 FR 19885, May 9, 1989, as amended at 65 FR 78409, Dec. 15, 2000]

§0.15 [Reserved]

§0.16 Bureau of Competition.

The Bureau is responsible for enforcing Federal antitrust and trade regulation laws under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Clayton Act, and a number of other special statutes that the Commission is charged with enforcing. The Bureau's work aims to preserve the free market system and assure the unfettered operation of the forces of supply and demand. Its activities seek to ensure price competition, quality products and services and efficient operation of the national economy. The Bureau carries out its responsibilities by investigating alleged law violations, and recommending to the Commission such further action as may be appropriate. Such action may include injunctive and other equitable relief in Federal district court, complaint and litigation before the agency's administrative law judges, formal nonadjudicative settlement of complaints, trade regulation rules, or reports. The Bureau also conducts compliance investigations and initiates proceedings for civil penalties to assure compliance with final Commission orders dealing with competition and trade restraint matters. The

Bureau's activities also include business and consumer education and staff advice on competition laws and compliance, and liaison functions with respect to foreign antitrust and competition law enforcement agencies and organizations, including requests for international enforcement assistance.

[65 FR 78409, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 0.17 Bureau of Consumer Protection.

The Bureau investigates unfair or deceptive acts or practices under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act as well as potential violations of numerous special statutes which the Commission is charged with enforcing. It prosecutes before the agency's administrative law judges alleged violations of law after issuance of a complaint by the Commission or obtains through negotiation consented-to orders, which must be accepted and issued by the Commission. In consultation with the General Counsel, the Bureau may also seek injunctive or other equitable relief under section 13(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act. The Bureau participates in trade regulation rulemaking proceedings under section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act and other rulemaking proceedings under statutory authority. It investigates compliance with final orders and trade regulation rules and seeks civil penalties or consumer redress for their violation, as well as injunctive and other equitable relief under section 13(b) of the Act. In addition, the Bureau seeks to educate both consumers and the business community about the laws it enforces, and to assist and cooperate with other state, local, foreign, and international agencies and organizations in consumer protection enforcement and regulatory matters. The Bureau also maintains the agency's public reference facilities, where the public may inspect and copy a current index of opinions, orders, statements of policy and interpretations, staff manuals and instructions that affect any member of the public, and other public records of the Commission.

[65 FR 78409, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 0.18 Bureau of Economics.

The bureau aids and advises the Commission concerning the economic aspects of all of its functions, and is responsible for the preparation of various economic reports and surveys. The bureau provides economic and statistical assistance to the enforcement bureaus in the investigation and trial of cases.

[41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976. Redesignated at 45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980, and amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 0.19 The Regional Offices.

(a) These offices are investigatory arms of the Commission, and have responsibility for investigational, trial, compliance, and consumer educational activities as delegated by the Commission. They are under the general supervision of the Office of the Executive Director, and clear their activities through the appropriate operating Bureaus.

(b) The names, geographic areas of responsibility, and addresses of the respective regional offices are as follows:

(1) *Northeast Region* (located in New York City, New York), covering Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Puerto Rico. Federal Trade Commission, One Bowling Green, Suite 318, New York, New York 10004.

(2) *Southeast Region* (located in Atlanta, Georgia), covering Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Tennessee. Federal Trade Commission, Suite 5M35, Midrise Building, 60 Forsyth Street, SW., Atlanta, Georgia 30303.

(3) *East Central Region* (located in Cleveland, Ohio), covering Delaware, District of Columbia, Maryland, Michigan, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and West Virginia. Federal Trade Commission, Eaton Center, Suite 200, 1111 Superior Avenue, Cleveland, Ohio 44114.

(4) *Midwest Region* (located in Chicago, Illinois), covering Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Kentucky, Minnesota, Missouri, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wisconsin. Federal Trade Commission, 55 East Monroe Street, Suite 1860, Chicago, Illinois 60603–5701.

(5) *Southwest Region* (located in Dallas, Texas), covering Arkansas, Louisiana, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Texas. Federal Trade Commission, 1999 Bryan Street, Suite 2150, Dallas, Texas 75201.

(6) *Northwest Region* (located in Seattle, Washington), covering Alaska, Idaho, Montana, Oregon, Washington, and Wyoming. Federal Trade Commission, 915 Second Avenue, Suite 2896, Seattle, Washington 98174.

(7) *Western Region* (located in San Francisco and Los Angeles, California), covering Arizona, California, Colorado, Hawaii, Nevada, and Utah.

(i) San Francisco Office: Federal Trade Commission, 901 Market Street, Suite 570, San Francisco, California 94103.

(ii) Los Angeles Office: Federal Trade Commission, 10877 Wilshire Boulevard, Suite 700, Los Angeles, California 90024.

(c) Each of the regional offices is supervised by a Regional Director, who is available for conferences with attorneys, consumers, and other members of the public on matters relating to the Commission's activities.

[41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 42 FR 27218, May 27, 1977; 43 FR 754, Jan. 4, 1978; 43 FR 6579, Feb. 15, 1978. Redesignated at 45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980, and amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985; 63 FR 71582, Dec. 29, 1998; 64 FR 71284, Dec. 21, 1999; 65 FR 78409, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 0.20 Office of International Affairs.

The Office of International Affairs (OIA) comprises international antitrust, international consumer protection, and international technical assistance. OIA is responsible for designing and implementing the Commission's international program, which provides support and advice to the Bureaus of Competition and Consumer Protection with regard to the international aspects of investigation and prosecution of unlawful conduct. OIA builds cooperative relationships between the Commission and foreign authorities; works closely with Bureau personnel to recommend agency priorities and policies and works, through bilateral relationships and multilateral organizations, to promote those policies internationally; and implements Commission policy and participation in the competition and consumer protection aspects of trade fora and negotiations, such as the U.S. inter-agency delegations negotiating bilateral and multilateral free trade agreements. OIA works with authorized funding sources to develop and implement competition and consumer protection technical assistance programs.

[72 FR 9434, Mar. 2, 2007]

PART 1—GENERAL PROCEDURES

Subpart A—Industry Guidance

ADVISORY OPINIONS

Sec.
1.1 Policy.
1.2 Procedure.
1.3 Advice.
1.4 Public disclosure.

INDUSTRY GUIDES

1.5 Purpose.
1.6 How promulgated.

Subpart B—Rules and Rulemaking Under Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

1.7 Scope of rules in this subpart.
1.8 Nature, authority and use of trade regulation rules.
1.9 Petitions to commence trade regulation rule proceedings.
1.10 Advance notice of proposed rulemaking.
1.11 Commencement of a rulemaking proceeding.
1.12 Final notice.
1.13 Rulemaking proceeding.
1.14 Promulgation.
1.15 Amendment or repeal of a rule.
1.16 Petition for exemption from trade regulation rule.
1.17 [Reserved]
1.18 Rulemaking record.
1.19 Modification of a rule by the Commission at the time of judicial review.
1.20 Alternative procedures.

Subpart C—Rules Promulgated Under Authority Other Than Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

1.21 Scope of the rules in this subpart.
1.22 Rulemaking.
1.23 Quantity limit rules.
1.24 Rules applicable to wool, fur, and textile fiber products and rules promulgated under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
1.25 Initiation of proceedings—petitions.
1.26 Procedure.

Subpart D [Reserved]

Subpart E—Export Trade Associations

1.41 Limited antitrust exemption.
1.42 Notice to Commission.
1.43 Recommendations.

Subpart F—Trademark Cancellation Procedure

1.51 Applications.

Subpart G—Injunctive and Condemnation Proceedings

1.61 Injunctions.
1.62 Ancillary court orders pending review.
1.63 Injunctions: Wool, fur, and textile cases.
1.64 Condemnation proceedings.

Subpart H—Administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act

1.71 Administration.
1.72 Examination, counseling and staff advice.
1.73 Interpretations.

Subpart I—Procedures for Implementation of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969

1.81 Authority and incorporation of CEQ Regulations.
1.82 Declaration of policy.
1.83 Whether to commence the process for an environmental impact statement.
1.84 Draft environmental impact statements: Availability and comment.
1.85 Final environmental impact statements.
1.86 Supplemental statements.
1.87 NEPA and agency decisionmaking.
1.88 Implementing procedures.
1.89 Effect on prior actions.

Subpart J—Economic Surveys, Investigations, and Reports

1.91 Authority and purpose.

Subpart K—Penalties for Violation of Appliance Labeling Rules

1.92 Scope.
1.93 Notice of proposed penalty.
1.94 Commission proceeding to assess civil penalty.
1.95 Procedures upon election.
1.96 Compromise of penalty.
1.97 Amount of penalty.

Subpart L—Civil Penalty Adjustments Under the Federal Civil Penalties Inflation Adjustment Act of 1990, as Amended by the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996

1.98 Adjustment of civil monetary penalty amounts.

Subpart M—Submissions Under the Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act

1.99 Submission of rules, guides, interpretations, and policy statements to Congress and the Comptroller General.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46), unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Industry Guidance

ADVISORY OPINIONS

§ 1.1 Policy.

(a) Any person, partnership, or corporation may request advice from the Commission with respect to a course of action which the requesting party proposes to pursue. The Commission will consider such requests for advice and inform the requesting party of the Commission's views, where practicable, under the following circumstances.

(1) The matter involves a substantial or novel question of fact or law and there is no clear Commission or court precedent; or

(2) The subject matter of the request and consequent publication of Commission advice is of significant public interest.

(b) The Commission has authorized its staff to consider all requests for advice and to render advice, where practicable, in those circumstances in which a Commission opinion would not be warranted. Hypothetical questions will not be answered, and a request for advice will ordinarily be considered inappropriate where:

(1) The same or substantially the same course of action is under investigation or is or has been the subject of a current proceeding involving the Commission or another governmental agency, or

(2) An informed opinion cannot be made or could be made only after extensive investigation, clinical study, testing, or collateral inquiry.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979; 44 FR 23515, Apr. 20, 1979, as amended at 54 FR 14072, Apr. 7, 1989]

§ 1.2 Procedure.

(a) Application. The request for advice or interpretation should be submitted in writing (one original and two copies) to the Secretary of the Commission and should: (1) State clearly the question(s) that the applicant wishes resolved; (2) cite the provision of law under which the question arises; and (3) state all facts which the applicant believes to be material. In addition, the identity of the companies and other persons involved should be disclosed. Letters relating to unnamed companies or persons may not be answered. Submittal of additional facts may be requested prior to the rendering of any advice.

(b) Compliance matters. If the request is for advice as to whether the proposed course of action may violate an outstanding order to cease and desist issued by the Commission, such request will be considered as provided for in § 2.41 of this chapter.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979, as amended at 44 FR 40638, July 12, 1979]

§ 1.3 Advice.

(a) On the basis of the materials submitted, as well as any other information available, and if practicable, the Commission or its staff will inform the requesting party of its views.

(b) Any advice given by the Commission is without prejudice to the right of the Commission to reconsider the questions involved and, where the public interest requires, to rescind or revoke the action. Notice of such rescission or revocation will be given to the requesting party so that he may discontinue the course of action taken pursuant to the Commission's advice. The Commission will not proceed against the requesting party with respect to any action taken in good faith reliance upon the Commission's advice under this section, where all the relevant facts were fully, completely, and accurately presented to the Commission and where such action was promptly discontinued upon notification of rescission or revocation of the Commission's approval.

(c) Advice rendered by the staff is without prejudice to the right of the Commission later to rescind the advice and, where appropriate, to commence an enforcement proceeding.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979]

§ 1.4 Public disclosure.

Written advice rendered pursuant to this section and requests therefor, including names and details, will be placed in the Commission's public record immediately after the requesting party has received the advice, subject to any limitations on public disclosure arising from statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules, and the public interest. A request for confidential treatment of information submitted in connection with the questions should be made separately.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979]

INDUSTRY GUIDES

§ 1.5 Purpose.

Industry guides are administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. They provide the basis for voluntary and simultaneous abandonment of unlawful practices by members of industry. Failure to comply with the guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under applicable statutory provisions. Guides may relate to a practice common to many industries or to specific practices of a particular industry.

§ 1.6 How promulgated.

Industry guides[1] are promulgated by the Commission on its own initiative or pursuant to petition filed with the Secretary or upon informal application therefor, by any interested person or

[1] In the past, certain of these have been promulgated and referred to as trade practice rules.

group, when it appears to the Commission that guidance as to the legal requirements applicable to particular practices would be beneficial in the public interest and would serve to bring about more widespread and equitable observance of laws administered by the Commission. In connection with the promulgation of industry guides, the Commission at any time may conduct such investigations, make such studies, and hold such conferences or hearings as it may deem appropriate. All or any part of any such investigation, study, conference, or hearing may be conducted under the provisions of subpart A of part 2 of this chapter.

Subpart B—Rules and Rulemaking Under Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46; 15 U.S.C. 57a; 5 U.S.C. 552; sec. 212(a), Pub. L. 104–121, 110 Stat. 857 (5 U.S.C. 601 note).

§ 1.7 Scope of rules in this subpart.

The rules in this subpart apply to and govern proceedings for the promulgation of rules as provided in section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act. Such rules shall be known as trade regulation rules. All other rulemaking proceedings shall be governed by the rules in subpart C, except as otherwise required by law or as otherwise specified in this chapter.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.8 Nature, authority and use of trade regulation rules.

(a) For the purpose of carrying out the provisions of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Commission is empowered to promulgate trade regulation rules which define with specificity acts or practices which are unfair or deceptive acts or practices in or affecting commerce. Such rules may include requirements prescribed for the purpose of preventing such acts or practices. A violation of a rule shall constitute an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of that Act, unless the Commission otherwise expressly provides in its rule. However, the respondent in an adjudicative proceeding may show that his conduct does not violate the rule or assert any other defense to which he is legally entitled.

(b) The Commission at any time may conduct such investigations, make such studies and hold such conferences as it may deem necessary. All or any part of any such investigation may be conducted under the provisions of subpart A of part 2 of this chapter.

[46 FR 26288, May 12, 1981]

§ 1.9 Petitions to commence trade regulation rule proceedings.

Trade regulation rule proceedings may be commenced by the Commission upon its own initiative or pursuant to written petition filed with the Secretary by any interested person stating reasonable grounds therefor. If the Commission determines to commence a trade regulation rule proceeding pursuant to the petition, the petitioner shall be mailed a copy of the public notices issued under §§ 1.10, 1.11 and 1.12. Any person whose petition is not deemed by the Commission sufficient to warrant commencement of a rulemaking proceeding shall be notified of that determination and may be given an opportunity to submit additional data.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.10 Advance notice of proposed rulemaking.

(a) Prior to the commencement of any trade regulation rule proceeding, the Commission shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER an advance notice of such proposed proceeding.

(b) The advance notice shall:

(1) Contain a brief description of the area of inquiry under consideration, the objectives which the Commission seeks to achieve, and possible regulatory alternatives under consideration by the Commission; and

(2) Invite the response of interested persons with respect to such proposed rulemaking, including any suggestions or alternative methods for achieving such objectives.

(c) The advance notice shall be submitted to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and to the Committee on

Interstate and Foreign Commerce of the House of Representatives.

(d) The Commission may, in addition to publication of the advance notice, use such additional mechanisms as it considers useful to obtain suggestions regarding the content of the area of inquiry before publication of an initial notice of proposed rulemaking pursuant to § 1.11.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.11 Commencement of a rulemaking proceeding.

(a) *Initial notice*. A trade regulation rule proceeding shall commence with an initial notice of proposed rulemaking. Such notice shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER not sooner than 30 days after it has been submitted to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and to the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce of the House of Representatives. The initial notice shall include:

(1) The text of the proposed rule including any alternatives which the Commission proposes to promulgate;

(2) Reference to the legal authority under which the rule is proposed;

(3) A statement describing with particularity the reason for the proposed rule;

(4) An invitation to all interested persons to propose issues which meet the criteria of § 1.13(d)(1)(i) for consideration in accordance with § 1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6);

(5) An invitation to all interested persons to comment on the proposed rule; and

(6) A statement of the manner in which the public may obtain copies of the preliminary regulatory analysis.

(b) *Preliminary regulatory analysis*. Except as otherwise provided by statute, the Commission shall, when commencing a rulemaking proceeding, issue a preliminary regulatory analysis which shall contain:

(1) A concise statement of the need for, and the objectives of, the proposed rule;

(2) A description of any reasonable alternatives to the proposed rule which may accomplish the stated objective of the rule in a manner consistent with applicable law;

(3) For the proposed rule, and for each of the alternatives described in the analysis, a preliminary analysis of the projected benefits and any adverse economic effects and any other effects, and of the effectiveness of the proposed rule and each alternative in meeting the stated objectives of the proposed rule; and

(4) The information required by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, 5 U.S.C. 601–612, and the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3520, if applicable.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985; 63 FR 36340, July 6, 1998]

§ 1.12 Final notice.

A final notice of proposed rulemaking shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and, to the extent practicable, otherwise made available to interested persons. The final notice shall include:

(a) Designated issues, unless there are none, which are to be considered in accordance with § 1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6);

(b) The time and place of an informal hearing;

(c) Instructions to interested persons seeking to make oral presentations;

(d) A requirement that interested persons who desire to avail themselves of the procedures of § 1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6) with respect to any issue designated in paragraph (a) of this section must identify their interests with respect to those issues in such manner as may be established by the presiding officer; and

(e) an incorporation by reference of the contents of the initial notice.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.13 Rulemaking proceeding.

(a) *Written comments*. After commencement of a trade regulation rule proceeding, the Commission shall accept written submissions of data, views, and arguments on all issues of fact, law, and policy. The initial notice shall specify the deadline for filing written comments under this subsection.

(b) *Comments proposing issues subject to the procedures of § 1.13 (d)(5) and*

(d)(6). Interested persons may propose issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6) until thirty (30) days after the close of the written comment period or such other period as the Commission may establish in the initial notice.

(c) *Presiding officer*—(1) *Assignment*. Upon commencement of a proposed trade regulation rule proceeding, a presiding officer shall be appointed by the Chief Presiding Officer or, when the Commission or one or more of its members serves as presiding officer, by the Commission.

(2) *Powers of the presiding officer*. The presiding officer shall be responsible for the orderly conduct of the rulemaking proceeding and the maintenance of the rulemaking and public records until the close of the postrecord comment period. He shall have all powers necessary to that end including the following:

(i) To publish a final notice in accordance with §1.12 or issue any other public notice that may be necessary for the orderly conduct of the rulemaking proceeding;

(ii) To designate or modify, issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6);

(iii) To set the time and place of the informal hearing and to change any time periods prescribed in this subpart;

(iv) To prescribe rules or issue rulings to avoid unnecessary costs or delay. Such rules or rulings may include, but are not limited to, the imposition of reasonable time limits on each person's oral presentation; and requirements that any examination; including cross-examination, which a person may be entitled to conduct or have conducted be conducted by the presiding officer on behalf of that person in such a manner as the presiding officer determines to be appropriate and to be required for a full and true disclosure with respect to any issue designated for consideration in accordance with §1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6);

(v) To make rules and rulings limiting the representation of interested persons for the purpose of examination, including cross-examination, and governing the manner in which such examination is limited, including the selection of a representative from among a group of persons with the same or similar interests;

(vi) To require that oral presentations at the informal hearing or responses to written questions be under oath;

(vii) To require that oral presentations at the informal hearing be submitted in writing in advance of presentation;

(viii) To certify questions to the Commission for its determination; and

(ix) To rule upon all motions or petitions of interested persons, which motions or petitions must be filed with the presiding officer until the close of the postrecord comment period.

(3) *Review of rulings by the presiding officer*—(i) *Review after certification by the presiding officer*. Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section, applications for review of a ruling will not be entertained by the Commission prior to its review of the record pursuant to §1.14, unless the presiding officer certifies in writing to the Commission that a ruling involves a controlling question of law or policy as to which there is substantial ground for difference of opinion and that an immediate review of the ruling may materially advance the ultimate termination of the proceeding or subsequent review will be an inadequate remedy. Within five (5) days after a ruling by the presiding officer, any interested person may petition the presiding officer for certification of that ruling to the Commission. Certification of a ruling shall not stay the rulemaking proceeding unless the presiding officer or the Commission shall so order. Submissions to the Commission not to exceed fifteen (15) pages may be made within ten (10) days of the presiding officer's certification. All such filings shall be a part of the rulemaking record. The Commission may thereupon, in its discretion, permit the appeal. Commission review, if permitted, will be based on the application for review and any additional submissions, without oral argument or further briefs, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission.

(ii) *Review without certification by the presiding officer*. Within ten (10) days after publication of the final notice, any interested person may petition the Commission for addition, modification

or deletion of a designated issue, accompanied by a filing not to exceed fifteen (15) pages. Additional submissions on the issue by other interested persons, not to exceed fifteen (15) pages, may be made within twenty (20) days of the publication of the final notice. The Commission may thereupon, in its discretion, permit the appeal. Commission review, if permitted, will be based on the petition and any additional submissions, without oral argument or further briefs, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission. A petition hereunder shall not stay the rulemaking proceeding unless the presiding officer or the Commission shall so order. All petitions filed under this paragraph shall be a part of the rulemaking record. Notice of the filing of any such petition may be obtained from the Office of the Secretary of the Commission. In the event any designated issue is added or substantially modified by the Commission, interested persons shall be given a further opportunity to identify their interests with respect to those issues.

(4) *Substitution of presiding officer*. In the event of the substitution of a new presiding officer for the one originally appointed, any motion predicated upon such substitution shall be made within five (5) days thereafter.

(5) *Organization*. In the performance of their rulemaking functions, presiding officers shall be responsible to the chief presiding officer who shall not be responsible to any other officer or employee of the Commission.

(6) *Ex parte communications*. Except as required for the disposition of *ex parte* matters as authorized by law, no presiding officer shall consult any person or party with respect to any fact in issue unless such officer gives notice and opportunity for all parties to participate.

(d) *Informal hearings*. An informal hearing with the opportunity for oral presentations on all issues shall be conducted by the presiding officer. In addition, if an issue is designated pursuant to these rules for consideration in accordance with §1.13(d) (5) and (6), the informal hearing on such issues shall be conducted in accordance with those paragraphs. For all other issues the presiding officer may in his discretion employ, in whole or in part, the procedures of those paragraphs.

(1) *Nature of issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13* (d)(*5*) *and* (*d*)(*6*)—(i) *Issues that must be considered in accordance with §1.13*(*d*)(*5*) *and* (*d*)(*6*). The only issues that must be designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section are disputed issues of fact that are determined by the Commission or the presiding officer to be material and necessary to resolve.

(ii) *Issues that may be considered in accordance with §1.13*(*d*)(*5*) *and* (*d*)((*6*). The Commission and the presiding officer retain the power to designate any other issues for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section.

(2) *Addition or modification of issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13(d)(5) and* (*d*)(*6*). The presiding officer may at any time on his own motion or pursuant to a written petition by interested persons, add or modify any issues designated pursuant to §1.12(a). No such petition shall be considered unless good cause is shown why any such proposed issue was not proposed pursuant to §1.13(b).

(3) *Identification of interests*. Not later than twenty (20) days after publication of the final notice each interested person who desires to avail himself of the procedures of paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section shall notify the presiding officer in writing of his particular interest with respect to each issue designated for consideration in accordance with those subsections. In the event that new issues are designated, each interested person shall promptly notify the presiding officer of his particular interest with respect to each such issue.

(4) *Examination and cross-examination by the presiding officer*. The presiding officer may conduct any examination, including cross-examination, to which a person may be entitled. For that purpose he may require submission of written requests for presentation of questions to any person making oral presentations and shall determine whether to ask such questions or any other questions. All requests for presentation of questions shall be placed in the rulemaking record.

(5) *Examination, cross-examination, and the presentation of rebuttal submissions by interested persons*—(i) *In general.* The presiding officer shall conduct or allow to be conducted examination, including cross-examination of oral presentations and the presentation of rebuttal submissions relevant to the issues designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section. Examination, including, cross-examination, and the presentation of rebuttal submissions, shall be allowed to the extent to which it is appropriate and is required for a full and true disclosure with respect to those issues. Requests for an opportunity to examine, including cross-examine, or to present rebuttal submissions, shall be accompanied by a specific justification therefor. In determining whether or not to grant such requests, the presence of the following circumstances indicate that such requests should be granted:

(A) An issue for examination including cross-examination, or the presentation of rebuttal submissions, is an issue of specific in contrast to legislative fact.

(B) A full and true disclosure with respect to the issue can only be achieved through examination including cross-examination rather than through rebuttal submissions or the presentation of additional oral submissions.

(C) Circumstantial guarantees of the trustworthiness of a presentation do not exist.

(D) The particular presentation is required for the resolution of a designated issue.

(ii) *Selection of representatives for cross-examination.* After consideration of the information supplied in response to the final notice, the presiding officer shall identify groups of persons with the same or similar interests in the proceeding. Any such group may be required to select a single representative for the purpose of examination, including cross-examination. If a group is unable to select a representative then the presiding officer may select a representative of each such group.

(iii) *Inability to select representative for examination, including cross-examination.* No person shall be denied the opportunity to conduct or have conducted, examination, including cross-examination, under paragraph (d)(5)(i) of this section if he is a member of a group as described in paragraph (d)(5)(ii) of this section and is unable to agree upon group representation with other group members after a good faith effort to do so and seeks to present substantial and relevant issues which will not be adequately presented by the group representative. In that event he shall be allowed to conduct or have conducted any examination, including cross-examination, to which he is entitled on issues designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section and which affect his particular interest.

(6) *Requests to compel the attendance of persons or the production of documents or to obtain responses to written questions.* During the course of the rulemaking proceeding, the presiding officer shall entertain requests from the Commission's staff or any interested person to compel the attendance of persons or the production of documents or to obtain responses to written questions. Requests to compel the attendance of persons or the production of documents or to obtain responses to written questions shall contain a statement showing the general relevancy of the material, information or presentation, and the reasonableness of the scope of the request, together with a showing that such material, information or presentation is not available by voluntary methods and cannot be obtained through examination, including cross-examination, of oral presentations or the presentation of rebuttal submissions, and is appropriate and required for a full and true disclosure with respect to the issues designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section. If the presiding officer determines that a request should be granted, he shall transmit his determination to the Commission which shall determine whether to issue a civil investigative demand under § 2.7(b). Information received in response to such a demand may be disclosed in the rulemaking proceeding subject to an *in camera* order under § 1.18(b).

(e) *Written transcript.* A verbatim transcript shall be made of the informal hearing which transcript shall be placed in the rulemaking record.

(f) *Staff recommendations.* The staff shall make recommendations to the Commission in a report on the rulemaking record. Such report shall contain its analysis of the record and its recommendations as to the form of the final rule.

(g) *Recommended decision.* After publication of the staff report, the presiding officer shall make a recommended decision based upon his or her findings and conclusions as to all relevant and material evidence, and taking into account the staff report. The recommended decision shall be made by the presiding officer who presided over the rulemaking proceeding except that such recommended decision may be made by another officer if the officer who presided over the proceeding is no longer available to the Commission.

(h) *Postrecord comment.* The staff report and the presiding officer's recommended decision shall be the subject of public comment for a period to be prescribed by the presiding officer at the time the recommended decision is placed in the rulemaking record. The comment period shall be no less than sixty (60) days. The comments shall be confined to information already in the record and may include requests for review by the Commission of determinations made by the presiding officer.

(i) *Commission review of the rulemaking record.* The Commission shall review the rulemaking record to determine what form of rule, if any, it should promulgate. During this review process, the Commission may allow persons who have previously participated in the proceeding to make oral presentations to the Commission, unless it determines with respect to that proceeding that such presentations would not significantly assist it in its deliberations. Presentations shall be confined to information already in the rulemaking record. Requests to participate in an oral presentation must be received by the Commission no later than the close of the comment period under § 1.13(h). The identity of the participants and the format of such presentations will be announced in advance by the Office of Public Information in the Commisison's *Weekly Calendar and Notice of ''Sunshine'' Meetings* and in accordance with the applicable provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552(b) and § 4.15 of the Commission's Rules of Practice. Such presentations will be transcribed verbatim or summarized at the discretion of the Commission and a copy of the transcript or summary and copies of any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such presentations shall be placed on the rulemaking record.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 43 FR 39084, Sept. 1, 1978; 45 36341, May 29, 1980; 45 FR 78628, Nov. 26, 1980; 46 FR 14888, Mar. 3, 1981; 46 FR 26288, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985; 54 FR 19886, May 9, 1989]

§ 1.14 Promulgation.

(a) The Commission, after review of the rulemaking record, may issue, modify, or decline to issue any rule. Where it believes that it should have further information or additional views of interested persons, it may withhold final action pending the receipt of such additional information or views. If it determines not to issue a rule, it may adopt and publish an explanation for not doing so.

(1) *Statement of Basis and Purpose.* If the Commission determines to promulgate a rule, it shall adopt a Statement of Basis and Purpose to accompany the rule which shall include:

(i) A statement as to the prevalence of the acts or practices treated by the rule;

(ii) A statement as to the manner and context in which such acts or practices are unfair or deceptive;

(iii) A statement as to the economic effect of the rule, taking into account the effect on small businesses and consumers;

(iv) a statement as to the effect of the rule on state and local laws; and

(v) A statement of the manner in which the public may obtain copies of the final regulatory analysis.

(2) *Final regulatory analysis.* Except as otherwise provided by statute, if the Commission determines to promulgate a final rule, it shall issue a final regulatory analysis relating to the final rule. Each final regulatory analysis shall contain:

(i) A concise statement of the need for, and the objectives of, the final rule;

(ii) A description of any alternatives to the final rule which were considered by the Commission;

(iii) An analysis of the projected benefits and any adverse economic effects and any other effects of the final rule;

(iv) An explanation of the reasons for the determination of the Commission that the final rule will attain its objectives in a manner consistent with applicable law and the reasons the particular alternative was chosen;

(v) A summary of any significant issues raised by the comments submitted during the public comment period in response to the preliminary regulatory analysis, and a summary of the assessment by the Commission of such issues; and

(vi) The information required by the Regulatory Flexibility Act, 5 U.S.C. 601–612, and the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3520, if applicable.

(3) *Small entity compliance guide.* For each rule for which the Commission must prepare a final regulatory flexibility analysis, the Commission will publish one or more guides to assist small entities in complying with the rule. Such guides will be designated as ''small entity compliance guides.''

(b) In the event the Commission determines, upon its review of the rulemaking record, to propose a revised rule for further proceedings in accordance with this subpart, such proceedings, including the opportunity of interested persons to avail themselves of the procedures of § 1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6), shall be limited to those portions of the revised rule, the subjects and issues of which were not substantially the subject of comment in response to a previous notice of proposed rulemaking.

(c) The final rule and Statement of Basis and Purpose shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A rule issued under this subpart shall be deemed promulgated at 3 p.m. Eastern Standard Time on the fourth day after the date on which the final rule and Statement of Basis and Purpose are published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. In the event such day is a Saturday, Sunday or national holiday, then the rule is deemed promulgated at 3 p.m. Eastern Standard Time on the following business day.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 46 FR 26289, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985; 63 FR 36340, July 6, 1998]

§ 1.15 Amendment or repeal of a rule.

(a) *Substantive amendment or repeal of a rule.* The procedures for substantive amendment to or repeal of a rule are the same as for the issuance thereof.

(b) *Nonsubstantive amendment of a rule.* The Commission may make a nonsubstantive amendment to a rule by announcing the amendment in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[46 FR 26289, May 12, 1981]

§ 1.16 Petition for exemption from trade regulation rule.

Any person to whom a rule would otherwise apply may petition the Commission for an exemption from such rule. The procedures for determining such a petition shall be those of subpart C of these rules.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975]

§ 1.17 [Reserved]

§ 1.18 Rulemaking record.

(a) *Definition.* For purposes of these rules the term *rulemaking record* includes the rule, its Statement of Basis and Purpose, the verbatim transcripts of the informal hearing, written submissions, the recommended decision of the presiding officer, and the staff recommendations as well as any public comment thereon, verbatim transcripts or summaries of oral presentations to the Commission any communications placed on the rulemaking record pursuant to § 1.18c and any other information which the Commission considers relevant to the rule.

(b) *Public availability.* The rulemaking record shall be publicly available except when the presiding officer, for good cause shown, determines that it is in the public interest to allow any submission to be received *in camera* subject to the provisions of § 4.11 of this chapter.

(c) *Communications to Commissioners and Commissioners' personal staffs*—(1)

Communications by outside parties. Except as otherwise provided in this subpart or by the Commission, after the Commission votes to issue an initial notice of proposed rulemaking, comment on the proposed rule should be directed to the presiding officer pursuant to §1.13. Communications with respect to the merits of that proceeding from any outside party to any Commissioner or Commissioner advisor shall be subject to the following treatment:

(i) *Written communications.* Written communications, including written communications from members of Congress, received within the period for acceptance of initial written comments shall be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer for placement on the rulemaking record. Written communications received after the time period for acceptance of initial written comments but prior to any other deadline for the acceptance of written submissions will be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer, who will determine whether such communications comply with the applicable requirements for written submissions at that stage of the proceeding. Communications that comply with such requirements will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record. Noncomplying communications and all communications received after the time periods for acceptance of written submissions will be placed promptly on the public record.

(ii) *Oral communications.* Oral communications are permitted only when advance notice of such oral communications is published by the Commission's Office of Public Information in its *Weekly Calendar and Notice of ''Sunshine'' Meetings* and when such oral communications are transcribed verbatim or summarized at the discretion of the Commissioner or Commissioner advisor to whom such oral communications are made and are promptly placed on the rulemaking record together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. Transcripts or summaries of oral communications which occur after the time period for acceptance of initial written comments but prior to any other deadline for the acceptance of written submissions will be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. The presiding officer will determine whether such oral communications comply with the applicable requirements for written submissions at that stage of the proceeding. Transcripts or summaries of oral communications that comply with such requirements will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. Transcripts or summaries of noncomplying oral communications will be promptly placed on the public record together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. No oral communications are permitted subsequent to the close of the postrecord comment period, except as provided in §1.13(i). If an oral communication does otherwise occur, the Commissioner or Commissioner advisor will promptly place on the public record either a transcript of the communication or a memorandum setting forth the contents of the communication and the circumstances thereof; such transcript or memorandum will not be part of the rulemaking record.

(iii) *Congressional communications.* The provisions of paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section do not apply to communications from members of Congress. Memoranda prepared by the Commissioner or Commissioner advisor setting forth the contents of any oral congressional communications will be placed on the public record. If the communication occurs within the initial comment period and is transcribed verbatim or summarized, the transcript or summary will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record. A transcript or summary of any oral communication which occurs after the time period for acceptance of initial written comments but prior to any other deadline for the acceptance of written submissions will be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer, who will determine whether such oral communication complies with the applicable requirements for

written submissions at that stage of the proceeding. Transcripts or summaries of oral communications that comply with such requirements will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record. Transcripts or summaries of noncomplying oral communications will be placed promptly on the public record.

(2) *Communications by certain officers, employees, and agents of the Commission.* Any officer, employee, or agent of the Commission with investigative or other responsibility relating to any rulemaking proceeding within any operating bureau of the Commission is prohibited from communicating or causing to be communicated to any Commissioner or to the personal staff of any Commissioner any fact which is relevant to the merits of such proceeding and which is not on the rulemaking record of such proceeding, unless such communication is made available to the public and is included in the rulemaking record. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to any communication to the extent such communication is required for the disposition of *ex parte* matters as authorized by law.

(Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46), 80 Stat. 383, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552))

[42 FR 43974, Sept. 1, 1977, as amended at 42 FR 60563, Nov. 28, 1977; 44 FR 16368, Mar. 19, 1979; 44 FR 21005, Apr. 9, 1979; 45 FR 78628, Nov. 26, 1980; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.19 Modification of a rule by the Commission at the time of judicial review.

In the event that a reviewing court determines under section 18(e)(2) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, to allow further submissions and presentations on the rule, the Commission may modify or set aside its rule or make a new rule by reason of the additional submissions and presentations. Such modified or new rule shall then be filed with the court together with an appropriate Statement of Basis and Purpose and the return of such submissions and presentations.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.20 Alternative procedures.

If the Commission determines at the commencement of a rulemaking proceeding to employ procedures other than those established in the remainder of this subpart, it may do so by announcing those procedures in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice commencing the rulemaking proceeding.

[43 FR 35683, Aug. 11, 1978]

Subpart C—Rules Promulgated Under Authority Other Than Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46; 5 U.S.C. 552; Sec. 212(a), Pub. L. 104–121, 110 Stat. 857 (5 U.S.C. 601 note).

§ 1.21 Scope of the rules in this subpart.

This subpart sets forth procedures for the promulgation of rules under authority other than section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act except as otherwise required by law or otherwise specified in the rules of this chapter. This subpart does not apply to the promulgation of industry guides, general statements of policy, rules of agency organization, procedure, or practice, or rules governed by subpart B of this part.

[50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.22 Rulemaking.

(a) *Nature and authority.* For the purpose of carrying out the provisions of the statutes administered by it, the Commission is empowered to promulgate rules and regulations applicable to unlawful trade practices. Such rules and regulations express the experience and judgment of the Commission, based on facts of which it has knowledge derived from studies, reports, investigations, hearings, and other proceedings, or within official notice, concerning the substantive requirements of the statutes which it administers.

(b) *Scope.* Rules may cover all applications of a particular statutory provision and may be nationwide in effect, or they may be limited to particular areas or industries or to particular product or geographic markets, as may be appropriate.

(c) *Use of rules in adjudicative proceedings.* When a rule is relevant to any issue involved in an ajudicative proceeding thereafter instituted, the Commission may rely upon the rule to resolve such issue, provided that the respondent shall have been given a fair hearing on the applicability of the rule to the particular case.

[40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975]

§ 1.23 Quantity limit rules.

Quantity limit rules are authorized by section 2(a) of the Clayton Act, as amended by the Robinson-Patman Act. These rules have the force and effect of law.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975]

§ 1.24 Rules applicable to wool, fur, and textile fiber products and rules promulgated under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

Rules having the force and effect of law are authorized under section 6 of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, section 8 of the Fur Products Labeling Act, section 7 of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and sections 4, 5, and 6 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

[40 FR 15233, Apr. 4, 1975]

§ 1.25 Initiation of proceedings—petitions.

Proceedings for the issuance of rules or regulations, including proceedings for exemption of products or classes of products from statutory requirements, may be commenced by the Commission upon its own initiative or pursuant to petition filed with the Secretary by any interested person or group stating reasonable grounds therefor. Anyone whose petition is not deemed by the Commission sufficient to warrant the holding of a rulemaking proceeding will be promptly notified of that determination and given an opportunity to submit additional data. Procedures for the amendment or repeal of a rule or regulation are the same as for the issuance thereof.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975]

§ 1.26 Procedure.

(a) *Investigations and conferences.* In connection with any rulemaking proceeding, the Commission at any time may conduct such investigations, make such studies, and hold such conferences as it may deem necessary. All or any part of any such investigation may be conducted under the provisions of subpart A of part 2 of this chapter.

(b) *Notice.* General notice of proposed rulemaking will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and, to the extent practicable, otherwise made available to interested persons except when the Commission for good cause finds that notice and public procedure relating to the rule are impractical, unnecessary or contrary to the public interest and incorporates such finding and a brief statement of the reasons therefor in the rule. If the rulemaking proceeding was instituted pursuant to petition, a copy of the notice will be served on the petitioner. Such notice will include:

(1) A statement of the time, place, and nature of the public proceedings;

(2) Reference to the authority under which the rule is proposed;

(3) Either the terms or substance of the proposed rule or description of the subjects and issues involved;

(4) An opportunity for interested persons to participate in the proceeding through the submission of written data, views, or arguments; and(5) A statement setting forth such procedures for treatment of communications from persons not employed by the Commission to Commissioners or Commissioner Advisors with respect to the merits of the proceeding as will incorporate the requirements of § 1.18(c), including the transcription of oral communications required by § 1.18(c)(2), adapted in such form as may be appropriate to the circumstances of the particular proceeding.

(c) *Oral hearings.* Oral hearing on a proposed rule may be held within the discretion of the Commission, unless otherwise expressly required by law. Any such hearing will be conducted by the Commission, a member thereof, or a member of the Commission's staff. At the hearing interested persons may appear and express their views as to the proposed rule and may suggest such amendments, revisions, and additions

thereto as they may consider desirable and appropriate. The presiding officer may impose reasonable limitations upon the length of time allotted to any person. If by reason of the limitations imposed the person cannot complete the presentation of his suggestions, he may within twenty-four (24) hours file a written statement covering those relevant matters which he did not orally present.

(d) *Promulgation of rules or orders.* The Commission, after consideration of all relevant matters of fact, law, policy, and discretion, including all relevant matters presented by interested persons in the proceeding, will adopt and publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER an appropriate rule or order, together with a concise general statement of its basis and purpose and any necessary findings, or will give other appropriate public notice of disposition of the proceeding. The FEDERAL REGISTER publication will contain the information required by the Paperwork Reduction Act, 44 U.S.C. 3501–3520, and the Regulatory Flexibility Act, 5 U.S.C. 601–612, if applicable. For each rule for which the Commission must prepare a final regulatory flexibility analysis, the Commission will publish one or more guides to assist small entities in complying with the rule. Such guides will be designated as ''small entity compliance guides.''

(e) *Effective date of rules.* Except as provided in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section, the effective date of any rule, or of the amendment, suspension, or repeal of any rule will be as specified in a notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, which date will be not less than thirty (30) days after the date of such publication unless an earlier effective date is specified by the Commission upon good cause found and published with the rule.

(f) *Effective date of rules and orders under Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.* The effective date of any rule or order under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act will be as specified by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, but shall not be prior to the day following the last day on which objections may be filed under paragraph (g) of this section.

(g) *Objections and request for hearing under Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.* On or before the thirtieth (30th) day after the date of publication of an order in the FEDERAL REGISTER pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, any person who will be adversely affected by the order if placed in effect may file objections thereto with the Secretary of the Commission, specifying with particularity the provisions of the order deemed objectionable, stating the grounds therefor, and requesting a public hearing upon such objections. Objections will be deemed sufficient to warrant the holding of a public hearing only:

(1) If they establish that the objector will be adversely affected by the order;

(2) If they specify with particularity the provisions of the order to which objection is taken; and

(3) If they are supported by reasonable grounds which, if valid and factually supported, may be adequate to justify the relief sought.

Anyone who files objections which are not deemed by the Commission sufficient to warrant the holding of a public hearing will be promptly notified of that determination. As soon as practicable after the time for filing objections has expired, the Commission will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER specifying those parts of the order which have been stayed by the filing of objections or, if no objections sufficient to warrant the holding of a hearing have been filed, stating that fact.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975, and amended at 44 FR 16368, Mar. 19, 1979; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985; 63 FR 36340, July 6, 1998]

Subpart D [Reserved]

Subpart E—Export Trade Associations

§ 1.41 Limited antitrust exemption.

The Export Trade Act authorizes the organization and operation of export trade associations, and extends to them certain limited exemptions from the Sherman Act and the Clayton Act. It also extends the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Federal Trade

Commission Act to unfair methods of competition used in export trade against competitors engaged in export trade, even though the acts constituting such unfair methods are done without the territorial jurisdiction of the United States.

§ 1.42 Notice to Commission.

To obtain the exemptions afforded by the Act, an export trade association is required to file with the Commission, within thirty (30) days after its creation, a verified written statement setting forth the location of its offices and places of business, names, and addresses of its officers, stockholders, or members, and copies of its documents of incorporation or association. On the first day of January of each year thereafter, each association must file a like statement and, when required by the Commission to do so, must furnish to the Commission detailed information as to its organization, business, conduct, practices, management, and relation to other associations, corporations, partnerships, and individuals.

§ 1.43 Recommendations.

Whenever the Commission has reason to believe that an association has violated the prohibitions of section 2 of the Act, it may conduct an investigation. If, after investigation, it concludes that the law has been violated, it may make to such association recommendations for the readjustment of its business. If the association fails to comply with the recommendations, the Commission will refer its findings and recommendations to the Attorney General for appropriate action.

Subpart F—Trademark Cancellation Procedure

§ 1.51 Applications.

Applications for the institution of proceedings for the cancellation of registration of trade, service, or certification marks under the Trade-Mark Act of 1946 may be filed with the Secretary of the Commission. Such applications shall be in writing, signed by or in behalf of the applicant, and should identify the registration concerned and contain a short and simple statement of the facts constituting the alleged basis for cancellation, the name and address of the applicant, together with all relevant and available information. If, after consideration of the application, or upon its own initiative, the Commission concludes that cancellation of the mark may be warranted, it will institute a proceeding before the Commissioner of Patents for cancellation of the registration.

Subpart G—Injunctive and Condemnation Proceedings

§ 1.61 Injunctions.

In those cases where the Commission has reason to believe that it would be to the interest of the public, the Commission will apply to the courts for injunctive relief, pursuant to the authority granted in section 13 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

[40 FR 15233, Apr. 4, 1975]

§ 1.62 Ancillary court orders pending review.

Where petition for review of an order to cease and desist has been filed in a U.S. court of appeals, the Commission may apply to the court for issuance of such writs as are ancillary to its jurisdiction or are necessary in its judgment to prevent injury to the public or to competitors pendente lite.

§ 1.63 Injunctions: Wool, fur, and textile cases.

In those cases arising under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, Fur Products Labeling Act, and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, where it appears to the Commission that it would be to the public interest for it to do so, the Commission will apply to the courts for injunctive relief, pursuant to the authority granted in such Acts.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

§ 1.64 Condemnation proceedings.

In those cases arising under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 and Fur Products Labeling Act, and where it appears to the Commission that the public interest requires such action, the Commission will apply to the

courts for condemnation, pursuant to the authority granted in such Acts.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

Subpart H—Administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act

AUTHORITY: 84 Stat. 1128, 15 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.

§ 1.71 Administration.

The general administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (Title VI of the Consumer Credit Protection Act of 1968; enacted October 26, 1970; Pub. L. 91–508, 82 Stat. 146, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*) is carried out by the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Division of Credit Practices. Any interested person may obtain copies of the Act and these procedures and rules of practice upon request to the Secretary of the Commission, Washington, DC 20580.

[36 FR 9293, May 22, 1971, as amended at 36 FR 18788, Sept. 22, 1971; 38 FR 32438, Nov. 26, 1973; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981]

§ 1.72 Examination, counseling and staff advice.

The Commission maintains a staff to carry out on-the-scene examination of records and procedures utilized to comply with the Fair Credit Reporting Act and to carry out industry counseling. Requests for staff interpretation of the Fair Credit Reporting Act should be directed to the Division of Credit Practices, Bureau of Consumer Protection. Such interpretations represent informal staff opinion which is advisory in nature and is not binding upon the Commission as to any action it may take in the matter. Administrative action to effect correction of minor infractions on a voluntary basis is taken in those cases where such procedure is believed adequate to effect immediate compliance and protect the public interest.

[36 FR 9293, May 22, 1971, as amended at 36 FR 18788, Sept. 22, 1971; 38 FR 32438, Nov. 26, 1973; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981]

§ 1.73 Interpretations.

(a) *Nature and purpose.* (1) The Commission issues and causes to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER interpretations of the provisions of the Fair Credit Reporting Act on its own initiative or pursuant to the application of any person when it appears to the Commission that guidance as to the legal requirements of the Act would be in the public interest and would serve to bring about more widespread and equitable observance of the Act.

(2) The interpretations are not substantive rules and do not have the force or effect of statutory provisions. They are guidelines intended as clarification of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, and, like industry guides, are advisory in nature. They represent the Commission's view as to what a particular provision of the Fair Credit Reporting Act means for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with that Act, and they provide the basis for voluntary and simultaneous abandonment of unlawful practices by members of industry. Failure to comply with such interpretations may result in corrective action by the Commission under applicable statutory provisions.

(b) *Procedure.* (1) Requests for Commission interpretations should be submitted in writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission stating the nature of the interpretation requested and the reasons and justification therefor. If the request is granted, as soon as practicable thereafter, the Commission will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER setting forth the text of the proposed interpretation. Comments, views, or objections, together with the grounds therefor, concerning the proposed interpretation may be submitted to the Secretary of the Commission within thirty (30) days of public notice thereof. The proposed interpretation will automatically become final after the expiration of sixty (60) days from the date of public notice thereof, unless upon consideration of written comments submitted as hereinabove provided, the Commission determine to rescind, revoke, modify, or withdraw the proposed interpretation, in which event notification of such determination will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(2) The issuance of such interpretations is within the discretion of the Commission and the Commission at

any time may conduct such investigations and hold such conferences or hearings as it may deem appropriate. Any interpretation issued pursuant to this chapter is without prejudice to the right of the Commission to reconsider the interpretation, and where the public interest requires, to rescind, revoke, modify, or withdraw the interpretation, in which event notification of such action will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(c) *Applicability of interpretations.* Interpretations issued pursuant to this subpart may cover all applications of a particular statutory provision, or they may be limited in application to a particular industry, as appropriate.

[36 FR 9293, May 22, 1971]

Subpart I—Procedures for Implementation of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46(g), 42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 47 FR 3096, Jan. 22, 1982, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1.81 Authority and incorporation of CEQ Regulations.

This subpart is issued pursuant to 102(2) of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA), as amended (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*). Pursuant to Executive Order 11514 (March 5, 1970, as amended by Executive Order 11991, May 24, 1977) and the Environmental Quality Improvement Act of 1980, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4371 *et seq.*) the Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) has issued comprehensive regulations for implementing the procedural provisions of NEPA (40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508) (''CEQ Regulations''). Although it is the Commission's position that these regulations are not binding on it, the Commission's policy is to comply fully with the CEQ Regulations unless it determines in a particular instance or for a category of actions that compliance would not be consistent with the requirements of law. With this caveat, the Commission incorporates into this subpart the CEQ Regulations. The following are supplementary definitions and procedures to be applied in conjunction with the CEQ Regulations.

[47 FR 3096, Jan. 22, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 1.82 Declaration of policy.

(a) Except for actions which are not subject to the requirements of section 102(2)(C) of NEPA, no Commission proposal for a major action significantly affecting the quality of the human environment will be instituted unless an environmental impact statement has been prepared for consideration in the decisionmaking. All relevant environmental documents, comments, and responses as provided in this subpart shall accompany such proposal through all review processes. ''Major actions, significantly affecting the quality of the human environment'' referred to in this subpart ''do not include bringing judicial or administrative civil or criminal enforcement actions'' CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1508.18(a)). In the event that the Commission in an administrative enforcement proceeding actively contemplates the adoption of standards or a form of relief which it determines may have a significant effect on the environment, the Commission will, when consistent with the requirements of law, provide for the preparation of an environmental assessment or an environmental impact statement or such other action as will permit the Commission to assess alternatives with a view toward avoiding or minimizing any adverse effect upon the environment.

(b) No Commission proposal for legislation significantly affecting the quality of the human environment and concerning a subject matter in which the Commission has primary responsibility will be submitted to Congress without an accompanying environmental impact statement.

(c) When the Commission finds that emergency action is necessary and an environmental impact statement cannot be prepared in conformance with the CEQ Regulations, the Commission will consult with CEQ about alternative arrangements in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.11).

§ 1.83 Whether to commence the process for an environmental impact statement.

(a) The Bureau responsible for submitting a proposed rule, guide, or proposal for legislation to the Commission for agency action shall, after consultation with the Office of the General Counsel, initially determine whether or not the proposal is one which requires an environmental impact statement. Except for matters where the environmental effects, if any, would appear to be either (1) clearly significant and therefore the decision is made to prepare an environmental impact statement, or (2) so uncertain that environmental analysis would be based on speculation, the Bureau should normally prepare an ''environmental assessment'' CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1508.9) for purposes of providing sufficient evidence and analysis for determining whether to prepare an environmental impact statement or a finding of no significant impact. The Bureau should involve environmental agencies to the extent practicable in preparing an assessment. An environmental assessment shall be made available to the public when the proposed action is made public along with any ensuing environmental impact statement or finding of no significant impact.

(b) If the Bureau determines that the proposal is one which requires an environmental impact statement, it shall commence the ''scoping process'' CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1501.7) except that the impact statement which is part of a proposal for legislation need not go through a scoping process but shall conform to CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.8). As soon as practicable after its decision to prepare an environmental impact statement and before the scoping process, the Bureau shall publish a notice of intent as provided in CEQ Regulations (40 CFR 1501.7 and 1508.22).

(c) If, on the basis of an environmental assessment, the determination is made not to prepare a statement, a finding of ''no significant impact'' shall be made in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1508.3) and shall be made available to the public as specified in CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.6).

§ 1.84 Draft environmental impact statements: Availability and comment.

Except for proposals for legislation, environmental impact statements shall be prepared in two stages: Draft statement and final statement.

(a) *Proposed rules or guides.* (1) An environmental impact statement, if deemed necessary, shall be in draft form at the time a proposed rule or guide is published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and shall accompany the proposal throughout the decisionmaking process.

(2) The major decision points with respect to rules and guides are:

(i) Preliminary formulation of a staff proposal;

(ii) The time the proposal is initially published in the FEDERAL REGISTER as a Commission proposal;

(iii) Presiding officer's report (in trade regulation rule proceedings);

(iv) Submission to the Commission of the staff report or recommendation for final action on the proposed guide or rule;

(v) Final decision by the Commission. The decision on whether or not to prepare an environmental impact statement should occur at point (a)(2)(i) of this section. The publication of any draft impact statement should occur at point (a)(2)(ii) of this section. The publication of the final environmental impact statement should occur at point (a)(2)(iv) of this section.

(b) *Legislative proposals.* In legislative matters, a legislative environmental impact statement shall be prepared in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.8).

(c) In rule or guide proceedings the draft environmental impact statement shall be prepared in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1502.9) and shall be placed in the public record to which it pertains; in legislative matters, the legislative impact statement shall be placed in a public record to be established, containing the legislative report to which it pertains; these will be available to the public through the Office of the Secretary and will be published in full with the appropriate proposed rule, guide, or legislative report; such statements shall also be filed with

the Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) Office of Environmental Review (CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.9)) for listing in the weekly FEDERAL REGISTER Notice of draft environmental impact statements, and shall be circulated, in accordance with CEQ Regulations (40 CFR 1502.19, 1506.6) to appropriate federal, state and local agencies.

(d) Forty-five (45) days will be allowed for comment on the draft environmental impact statement, calculated from the date of publication in the EPA's weekly FEDERAL REGISTER list of draft environmental impact statements. The Commission may in its discretion grant such longer period as the complexity of the issues may warrant.

§ 1.85 Final environmental impact statements.

(a) After the close of the comment period, the Bureau responsible for the matter will consider the comments received on the draft environmental impact statement and will put the draft statement into final form in accordance with the requirements of CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1502.9(b)), attaching the comments received (or summaries if response was exceptionally voluminous).

(b) Upon Bureau approval of the final environmental impact statement the final statement will be

(1) Filed with the EPA;

(2) Forwarded to all parties which commented on the draft environmental impact statement and to other interested parties, if practicable;

(3) Placed in the public record of the proposed rule or guide proceeding or legislative matter to which it pertains;

(4) Distributed in any other way which the Bureau in consultation with CEQ deems appropriate.

(c) In rule and guide proceedings, at least thirty (30) days will be allowed for comment on the final environmental impact statement, calculated from the date of publication in the EPA's weekly FEDERAL REGISTER list of final environmental impact statements. In no event will a final rule or guide be promulgated prior to ninety (90) days after notice of the draft environmental impact statement, except where emergency action makes such time period impossible.

§ 1.86 Supplemental statements.

Except for proposals for legislation, as provided in CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1502.9(c)), the Commission shall publish supplements to either draft or final environmental statements if:

(a) The Commission makes substantial changes in the proposed action that are relevant to environmental concerns; or

(b) There are significant new circumstances or information relevant to environmental concerns and bearing on the proposed action and its impacts. In the course of a trade regulation rule proceeding, the supplement will be placed in the rulemaking record.

§ 1.87 NEPA and agency decision-making.

In its final decision on the proposed action or, if appropriate, in its recommendation to Congress, the Commission shall consider all the alternatives in the environmental impact statement and other relevant environmental documents and shall prepare a concise statement which, in accordance with CEQ Regulation § 1505.2, shall:

(a) Identify all alternatives considered by the Commission in reaching its decision or recommendation, specifying the alternatives which were considered to be environmentally preferable;

(b) State whether all practicable means to avoid or minimize environmental harm from the alternative selected have been adopted, and if not, why they were not.

§ 1.88 Implementing procedures.

(a) The General Counsel is designated the official responsible for coordinating the Commission's efforts to improve environmental quality. He will provide assistance to the staff in determining when an environmental impact statement is needed and in its preparation.

(b) The Commission will determine finally whether an action complies with NEPA.

(c) The Directors of the Bureaus of Consumer Protection and Competition will supplement these procedures for

their Bureaus to assure that every proposed rule and guide is reviewed to assess the need for an environmental impact statement and that, where need exists, an environmental impact statement is developed to assure timely consideration of environmental factors.

(d) The General Counsel will establish procedures to assure that every legislative proposal on a matter for which the Commission has primary responsibility is reviewed to assess the need for an environmental impact statement and that, where need exists, and environmental impact statement is developed to assure timely consideration of environmental factors.

(e) Parties seeking information or status reports on environmental impact statements and other elements of the NEPA process, should contact the Assistant General Counsel for Litigation and Environmental Policy.

§ 1.89 Effect on prior actions.

It is the policy of the Commission to apply these procedures to the fullest extent possible to proceedings which are already in progress.

Subpart J—Economic Surveys, Investigations and Reports

§ 1.91 Authority and purpose.

General and special economic surveys, investigations, and reports are made by the Bureau of Economics under the authority of the various laws which the Federal Trade Commission administers. The Commission may in any such survey or investigation invoke any or all of the compulsory processes authorized by law.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15233, Apr. 4, 1975]

Subpart K—Penalties for Violation of Appliance Labeling Rules

SOURCE: 45 FR 67318, Oct. 10, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1.92 Scope.

The rules in this subpart apply to and govern proceedings for the assessment of civil penalties for the violation of section 332 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6302, and the Commission's Rules on Labeling and Advertising of Consumer Appliances, 16 CFR part 305, promulgated under sections 324 and 326 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6294 and 6296.

§ 1.93 Notice of proposed penalty.

(a) *Notice.* Before issuing an order assessing a civil penalty under this subpart against any person, the Commission shall provide to such person notice of the proposed penalty. This notice shall:

(1) Inform such person of the opportunity to elect in writing within 30 days of receipt of the notice of proposed penalty to have procedures of § 1.95 (in lieu of those of § 1.94) apply with respect to such assessment; and

(2) Include a copy of a proposed complaint conforming to the provision of § 3.11(b) (1) and (2) of the Commission's Rules of Practice, or a statement of the material facts constituting the alleged violation and the legal basis for the proposed penalty; and

(3) Include the amount of the proposed penalty; and

(4) Include a statement of the procedural rules that the Commission will follow if respondent elects to proceed under § 1.94 unless the Commission chooses to follow subparts B, C, D, E, and F of part 3 of this chapter.

(b) *Election.* Within 30 days of receipt of the notice of proposed penalty, the respondent shall, if it wishes to elect to have the procedures of § 1.95 apply, notify the Commission of the election in writing. The notification, to be filed in accordance with § 4.2 of this chapter, may include any factual or legal reasons for which the proposed assessment order should not issue, should be reduced in amount, or should otherwise be modified.

§ 1.94 Commission proceeding to assess civil penalty.

If the respondent fails to elect to have the procedures of § 1.95 apply, the Commission shall determine whether to issue a complaint and thereby commence an adjudicative proceeding in conformance with section 333(d)(2)(A) of the Energy Policy and Conservation

Act, 42 U.S.C. 6303(d)(2)(A). If the Commission votes to issue a complaint, the proceeding shall be conducted in accordance with subparts B, C, D, E and F of part 3 of this chapter, unless otherwise ordered in the notice of proposed penalty. In assessing a penalty, the Commission shall take into account the factors listed in § 1.97.

§ 1.95 Procedures upon election.

(a) After receipt of the notification of election to apply the procedures of this section pursuant to § 1.93, the Commission shall promptly assess such penalty as it deems appropriate, in accordance with § 1.97.

(b) If the civil penalty has not been paid within 60 calendar days after the assessment order has been issued under paragraph (a) of this section, the General Counsel, unless otherwise directed, shall institute an action in the appropriate district court of the United States for an order enforcing the assessment of the civil penalty.

(c) Any election to have this section apply may not be revoked except with the consent of the Commission.

§ 1.96 Compromise of penalty.

The Commission may compromise any penalty or proposed penalty at any time, with leave of court when necessary, taking into account the nature and degree of violation and the impact of a penalty upon a particular respondent.

§ 1.97 Amount of penalty.

All penalties assessed under this subchapter shall be in the amount per violation as described in section 333(a) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6303(a), adjusted for inflation pursuant to § 1.98, unless the Commission otherwise directs. In considering the amount of penalty, the Commission shall take into account:

(a) Respondent's size and ability to pay;

(b) Respondent's good faith;

(c) Any history of previous violations;

(d) The deterrent effect of the penalty action;

(e) The length of time involved before the Commission was made aware of the violation;

(f) The gravity of the violation, including the amount of harm to consumers and the public caused by the violation; and

(g) Such other matters as justice may require.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 61 FR 54548, Oct. 21, 1996]

Subpart L—Civil Penalty Adjustments Under the Federal Civil Penalties Inflation Adjustment Act of 1990, as Amended by the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996

AUTHORITY: 28 U.S.C. 2461 note.

SOURCE: 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1.98 Adjustment of civil monetary penalty amounts.

This section makes inflation adjustments in the dollar amounts of civil monetary penalties provided by law within the Commission's jurisdiction. The following civil penalty amounts apply to violations occurring after November 20, 2000:

(a) Section 7A(g)(1) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(g)(1)—$11,000;

(b) Section 11(l) of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 21(*l*)—$6,500;

(c) Section 5(*l*) of the FTC Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(*l*)—$11,000;

(d) Section 5(m)(1)(A) of the FTC Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(m)(1)(A)—$11,000;

(e) Section 5(m)(1)(B) of the FTC Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(m)(1)(B)—$11,000;

(f) Section 10 of the FTC Act, 15 U.S.C. 50—$110;

(g) Section 5 of the Webb-Pomerene (Export Trade) Act, 15 U.S.C. 65—$110;

(h) Section 6(b) of the Wool Products Labeling Act, 15 U.S.C. 68d(b)—$110;

(i) Section 3(e) of the Fur Products Labeling Act, 15 U.S.C. 69a(e)—$110;

(j) Section 8(d)(2) of the Fur Products Labeling Act, 15 U.S.C. 69f(d)(2)—$110;

(k) Section 333(a) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6303(a)—$110;

(l) Sections 525(a) and (b) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6395(a) and (b), respectively—$6,500 and $11,000, respectively; and

(m) Civil monetary penalties authorized by reference to the Federal Trade

Commission Act under any other provision of law within the jurisdiction of the Commission—refer to the amounts set forth in paragraphs (c), (d), (e) and (f) of this section, as applicable.

[65 FR 69666, Nov. 20, 2000, as amended at 69 FR 76612, Dec. 22, 2004]

Subpart M—Submissions Under the Small Business Regulatory Enforcement Fairness Act

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 801–804.

§ 1.99 Submission of rules, guides, interpretations, and policy statements to Congress and the Comptroller General.

Whenever the Commission issues or substantively amends a rule or industry guide or formally adopts an interpretation or policy statement that constitutes a ''rule'' within the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 804(3), a copy of the final rule, guide, interpretation or statement, together with a concise description, the proposed effective date, and a statement of whether the rule, guide, interpretation or statement is a ''major rule'' within the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 804(2), will be transmitted to each House of Congress and to the Comptroller General. The material transmitted to the Comptroller General will also include any additional relevant information required by 5 U.S.C. 801(a)(1)(B). This provision generally applies to rules issued or substantively amended pursuant to §1.14(c), §1.15(a), §1.19, or §1.26(d); industry guides issued pursuant to §1.6; interpretations and policy statements formally adopted by the Commission; and any rule of agency organization, practice or procedure that substantially affects the rights or obligations of non-agency parties.

[63 FR 36340, July 8, 1998]

PART 2—NONADJUDICATIVE PROCEDURES

Subpart A—Inquiries; Investigations; Compulsory Processes

Sec.
2.1 How initiated.
2.2 Request for Commission action.
2.3 Policy as to private controversies.
2.4 Investigational policy.
2.5 By whom conducted.
2.6 Notification of purpose.
2.7 Compulsory process in investigations.
2.8 Investigational hearings.
2.8A Withholding requested material.
2.9 Rights of witnesses in investigations.
2.10 Depositions.
2.11 Orders requiring access.
2.12 Reports.
2.13 Noncompliance with compulsory processes.
2.14 Disposition.
2.15 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.
2.16 Custodians.

Subpart B—Petitions Filed Under Section 7A of the Clayton Act, as Amended, for Review of Requests for Additional Information or Documentary Material

2.20 Petitions for review of requests for additional information or documentary material.

Subpart C—Consent Order Procedure

2.31 Opportunity to submit a proposed consent order.
2.32 Agreement.
2.33 Compliance procedure.
2.34 Disposition.

Subpart D—Reports of Compliance

2.41 Reports of compliance.

Subpart E—Requests To Reopen

2.51 Requests to reopen.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Inquiries; Investigations; Compulsory Processes

§ 2.1 How initiated.

Commission investigations and inquiries may be originated upon the request of the President, Congress, governmental agencies, or the Attorney General; upon referrals by the courts; upon complaint by members of the public; or by the Commission upon its own initiative. The Commission has delegated to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition, the Director, Deputy Directors, and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection and, the Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors of the Commission's regional offices, without power

of redelegation, limited authority to initiate investigations. The Director of the Bureau of Competition has also been delegated, without power of redelegation, authority to open investigations in response to requests pursuant to an agreement under the International Antitrust Enforcement Assistance Act, 15 U.S.C. 6201 *et seq.*, if the requests do not ask the Commission to use process. Before responding to such a request, the Bureau Director shall transmit the proposed response to the Secretary and the Secretary shall notify the Commission of the proposed response. If no Commissioner objects within three days following the Commission's receipt of such notification, the Secretary shall inform the Bureau Director that he or she may proceed.

[48 FR 41374, Sept. 15, 1983, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985; 65 FR 67259, Nov. 9, 2000]

§ 2.2 Request for Commission action.

(a) Any individual, partnership, corporation, association, or organization may request the Commission to institute an investigation in respect to any matter over which the Commission has jurisdiction.

(b) Such request should be in the form of a signed statement setting forth the alleged violation of law with such supporting information as is available, and the name and address of the person or persons complained of. No forms or formal procedures are required.

(c) The person making the request is not regarded as a party to any proceeding which might result from the investigation.

(d) It is the general Commission policy not to publish or divulge the name of an applicant or complaining party except as required by law or by the Commission's rules. Where a complaint is by a consumer or consumer representative concerning a specific consumer product or service, the Commission, in the course of a referral of the complaint or of an investigation, may disclose the identity of the complainant or complainants. In referring any such consumer complaint, the Commission specifically retains its right to take such action as it deems appropriate in the public interest and under any of the statutes which it administers.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 35 FR 10146, June 20, 1970]

§ 2.3 Policy as to private controversies.

The Commission acts only in the public interest and does not initiate an investigation or take other action when the alleged violation of law is merely a matter of private controversy and does not tend adversely to affect the public.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967]

§ 2.4 Investigational policy.

The Commission encourages voluntary cooperation in its investigations. Where the public interest requires, however, the Commission may, in any matter under investigation adopt a resolution authorizing the use of any or all of the compulsory processes provided for by law.

[45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980]

§ 2.5 By whom conducted.

Inquiries and investigations are conducted under the various statutes administered by the Commission by Commission representatives designated and duly authorized for the purpose. Such representatives are ''examiners'' or ''Commission investigators'' within the meaning of the Federal Trade Commission Act and are authorized to exercise and perform the duties of their office in accordance with the laws of the United States and the regulations of the Commission. Included among such duties is the administration of oaths and affirmations in any matter under investigation by the Commission.

[45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980]

§ 2.6 Notification of purpose.

Any person under investigation compelled or requested to furnish information or documentary evidence shall be advised of the purpose and scope of the investigation and of the nature of the conduct constituting the alleged violation which is under investigation and the provisions of law applicable to such violation.

[46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 46 FR 27634, May 21, 1981]

§ 2.7 Compulsory process in investigations.

(a) *In general.* The Commission or any member thereof may, pursuant to a Commission resolution, issue a subpoena or a civil investigative demand directing the person named therein to appear before a designated representative at a designated time and place to testify or to produce documentary evidence, or both, or, in the case of a civil investigative demand, to provide a written report or answers to questions relating to any matter under investigation by the Commission. Material for which a civil investigative demand has been issued shall be made available for inspection and copying at the principal place of business of the person or at such other place or in such other manner as the person and the custodian designated pursuant to § 2.16 agree.

(b) *Civil investigative demands.* Civil investigative demands shall be the only form of compulsory process issued in investigations with respect to unfair or deceptive acts or practices within the meaning of FTC Act section 5(a)(1).

(1) Civil investigative demands for the production of documentary material shall describe each class of material to be produced with such definiteness and certainty as to permit such material to be fairly identified, prescribe a return date or dates which will provide a reasonable period of time within which the material so demanded may be assembled and made available for inspection and copying or reproduction, and identify the custodian to whom such material shall be made available. Production of documentary material in response to a civil investigative demand shall be made in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(11) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(2) Civil investigative demands for tangible things will describe each class of tangible things to be produced with such definiteness and certainty as to permit such things to be fairly identified, prescribe a return date or dates which will provide a reasonable period of time within which the things so demanded may be assembled and submitted, and identify the custodian to whom such things shall be submitted. Submission of tangible things in response to a civil investigative demand shall be made in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(12) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(3) Civil investigative demands for written reports or answers to questions shall propound with definiteness and certainty the reports to be produced or the questions to be answered, prescribe a date or dates at which time written reports or answers to questions shall be submitted, and identify the custodian to whom such reports or answers shall be submitted. Response to a civil investigative demand for a written report or answers to questions shall be made in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(13) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(4) Civil investigative demands for the giving of oral testimony shall prescribe a date, time, and place at which oral testimony shall be commenced, and identify a Commission investigator who shall conduct the investigation and the custodian to whom the transcript of such investigation shall be submitted. Oral testimony in response to a civil investigative demand shall be taken in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(14) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(c) The Bureau Director, Deputy Directors and Assistant Directors of the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Regional Directors, and Assistant Regional Directors, are authorized to negotiate and approve the terms of satisfactory compliance with subpoenas and civil investigative demands and, for good cause shown, may extend the time prescribed for compliance. Specifically, the subpoena power conferred by Section 329 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6299) is included within this delegation.

(d) *Petitions to limit or quash*—(1) *General.* Any petition to limit or quash any investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within twenty (20) days after service of the subpoena or civil investigative demand, or, if the return date is less than twenty (20) days after service, prior to

the return date. Such petition shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the subpoena or civil investigative demand, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation.

(2) *Statement*. Each petition shall be accompanied by a signed statement representing that counsel for the petitioner has conferred with counsel for the Commission in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the petition and has been unable to reach such an agreement. If some of the matters in controversy have been resolved by agreement, the statement shall specify the matters so resolved and the matters remaining unresolved. The statement shall recite the date, time, and place of each such conference between counsel, and the names of all parties participating in each such conference.

(3) *Extensions of time*. Bureau Directors, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors in the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Bureau Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon requests for extensions of time within which to file such petitions.

(4) *Disposition*. A Commissioner, to be designated by the Chairman, is delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon petitions to limit or quash an investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand, but the designated Commissioner may, in his or her sole discretion, refer a petition to the full Commission for determination.

(e) *Stay of compliance period*. The timely filing of a petition to limit or quash any investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand shall stay the time permitted for compliance with the portion challenged. If the petition is denied in whole or in part, the ruling will specify a new return date.

(f) *Review*. Any petitioner, within three days after service of a ruling by the designated Commissioner denying all or a portion of the relief requested in its petition, may file with the Secretary of the Commission a request that the full Commission review the ruling. The timely filing of such a request shall not stay the return date specified in the ruling, unless otherwise specified by the Commission.

(g) *Public disclosure*. All petitions to limit or quash investigational subpoenas or civil investigative demands and the responses thereto are part of the public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under § 4.10(a) of this chapter.

[45 FR 36342, May 29, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 49 FR 6089, Feb. 17, 1984; 50 FR 42672, Oct. 22, 1985; 60 FR 37747, July 21, 1995]

§ 2.8 Investigational hearings.

(a) Investigational hearings, as distinguished from hearings in adjudicative proceedings, may be conducted in the course of any investigation undertaken by the Commission, including rulemaking proceedings under subpart B of part 1 of this chapter, inquiries initiated for the purpose of determining whether or not a respondent is complying with an order of the Commission or the manner in which decrees in suits brought by the United States under the antitrust laws are being carried out, the development of facts in cases referred by the courts to the Commission as a master in chancery, and investigations made under section 5 of the Export Trade Act.

(b) Investigational hearings shall be conducted by any Commission member, examiner, attorney, investigator, or other person duly designated under the FTC Act, for the purpose of hearing the testimony of witnesses and receiving documents and other data relating to any subject under investigation. Such hearings shall be stenographically reported and a transcript thereof shall be made a part of the record of the investigation.

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commission, investigational hearings shall not be public. In investigational hearings conducted pursuant to a civil investigative demand for the giving of oral testimony, the Commission investigators shall exclude from the hearing

room all other persons except the person being examined, his counsel, the officer before whom the testimony is to be taken, and the stenographer recording such testimony. A copy of the transcript shall promptly be forwarded by the Commission investigator to the custodian designated in § 2.16.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 45 FR 36342, May 29, 1980; 61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

§ 2.8A Withholding requested material.

(a) Any person withholding material responsive to an investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand issued pursuant to § 2.7, an access order issued pursuant to § 2.11, an order to file a report issued pursuant to § 2.12, or any other request for production of material issued under this part, shall assert a claim of privilege or any similar claim not later than the date set for the production of material. Such person shall, if so directed in the subpoena, civil investigative demand or other request for production, submit, together with such claim, a schedule of the items withheld which states individually as to each such item the type, specific subject matter, and date of the item; the names, addresses, positions, and organizations of all authors and recipients of the item; and the specific grounds for claiming that the item is privileged.

(b) A person withholding material solely for reasons described in § 2.8A(a) shall comply with the requirements of that subsection in lieu of filing a motion to limit or quash compulsory process.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719 as amended (15 U.S.C. 45))

[44 FR 54042, Sept. 18, 1979, as amended at 45 FR 36342, May 29, 1980]

§ 2.9 Rights of witnesses in investigations.

(a) Any person compelled to submit data to the Commission or to testify in an investigational hearing shall be entitled to retain a copy or, on payment of lawfully prescribed costs, procure a copy of any document submitted by him and of his own testimony as stenographically reported, except that in a nonpublic hearing the witness may for good cause be limited to inspection of the official transcript of his testimony. Where the investigational hearing has been conducted pursuant to a civil investigative demand issued under section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, upon completion of transcription of the testimony of the witness, the witness shall be offered an opportunity to read the transcript of his testimony. Any changes in form or substance which the witness desires to make shall be entered and identified upon the transcript by the Commission investigator with a statement of the reasons given by the witness for making such changes. The transcript shall then be signed by the witness unless the witnesss cannot be found, is ill, waives in writing his right to signature or refuses to sign. If the transcript is not signed by the witness within thirty days of his being afforded a reasonable opportunity to review it, the Commission investigator shall take the actions prescribed by section 20(c)(12)(E)(ii) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(b) Any witness compelled to appear in person in an investigational hearing may be accompanied, represented, and advised by counsel as follows:

(1) Counsel for a witness may advise the witness, in confidence and upon the initiative of either counsel or the witness, with respect to any question asked of the witness. If the witness refuses to answer a question, then counsel may briefly state on the record if he has advised the witness not to answer the question and the legal grounds for such refusal.

(2) Where it is claimed that the testimony or other evidence sought from a witness is outside the scope of the investigation, or that the witness is privileged to refuse to answer a question or to produce other evidence, the witness or counsel for the witness may object on the record to the question or requirement and may state briefly and precisely the ground therefor. The witness and his counsel shall not otherwise object to or refuse to answer any question, and they shall not otherwise interrupt the oral examination.

(3) Any objections made under the rules in this part will be treated as continuing objections and preserved throughout the further course of the

hearing without the necessity for repeating them as to any similar line of inquiry. Cumulative objections are unnecessary. Repetition of the grounds for any objection will not be allowed.

(4) Counsel for a witness may not, for any purpose or to any extent not allowed by paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) of this section, interrupt the examination of the witness by making any objections or statements on the record. Petitions challenging the Commission's authority to conduct the investigation or the sufficiency or legality of the subpoena or civil investigative demand must have been addressed to the Commission in advance of the hearing. Copies of such petitions may be filed as part of the record of the investigation with the person conducting the investigational hearing, but no arguments in support thereof will be allowed at the hearing.

(5) Following completion of the examination of a witness, counsel for the witness may on the record request the person conducting the investigational hearing to permit the witness of clarify any of his or her answers. The grant or denial of such request shall be within the sole discretion of the person conducting the hearing.

(6) The person conducting the hearing shall take all necessary action to regulate the course of the hearing to avoid delay and to prevent or restrain disorderly, dilatory, obstructionist, or contumacious conduct, or contemptuous language. Such person shall, for reasons stated on the record, immediately report to the Commission any instances where an attorney has allegedly refused to comply with his or her directions, or has allegedly engaged in disorderly, dilatory, obstructionist, or contumacious conduct, or contemptuous language in the course of the hearing. The Commission, acting pursuant to §4.1(e) of this chapter, will thereupon take such further action, if any, as the circumstances warrant, including suspension or disbarment of the attorney from further practice before the Commission or exclusion from further participation in the particular investigation.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980; 45 FR 39244, June 10, 1980; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

§2.10 Depositions.

In investigations other than those conducted under section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Commission may order testimony to be taken by deposition at any stage of such investigation. Such depositions may be taken before any person having power to administer oaths who may be designated by the Commission. The testimony shall be reduced to writing by the person taking the deposition, or under his direction, and shall then be subscribed to by the deponent. Any person may be compelled to appear and be deposed and to produce documentary evidence in the same manner as witnesses may be compelled to appear and testify and produce documentary evidence as provided in §§2.7 through 2.9.

[45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§2.11 Orders requiring access.

(a) In investigations other than those conducted under section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Commission may issue an order requiring any person, partnership or corporation being investigated to grant access to files for the purpose of examination and the right to copy any documentary evidence. The Directors, Deputy Directors and Assistant Directors of the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, the Regional Directors, and Assistant Regional Directors of the Commission's regional offices, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, without power of redelegation, are authorized, for good cause shown, to extend the time prescribed for compliance with orders requiring access issued during the investigation of any matter.

(b) Any petition to limit or quash an order requiring access shall be filed

with the Secretary of the Commission within twenty (20) days after service of the order, or, if the date for compliance is less than twenty (20) days after service of the order, then before the return date. Such petition shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the order requiring access, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation. All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring access shall be ruled upon by the Commission itself, but the above-designated Directors, Deputy Directors, Assistant Directors, Associate Directors, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon motions for extensions of time within which to file petitions to limit or quash orders requiring access.

(c) The timely filing of any petition to limit or quash such an order shall stay the requirement of compliance if the Commission has not ruled upon the motion by the date of compliance. If it rules on or subsequent to the date required for compliance and its ruling denies the petition in whole or in part, the Commission shall specify a new date of compliance.

(d) All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring access, and the Commission's responses thereto, are part of the public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under § 4.10(a) of this chapter.

[46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981, as amended at 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983]

§ 2.12 Reports.

(a) In investigations other than those covered by section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act the Commission may issue an order requiring a person, partnership, or corporation to file a report or answers in writing to specific questions relating to any matter under investigation, study or survey, or under any of the Commission's reporting programs.

(b) The Directors, Deputy Directors and Assistant Directors of the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, and the Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors of the Commission's regional offices, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, without power of redelegation, are authorized, for good cause shown, to extend the time prescribed for compliance with orders requiring reports or answers to questions issued during the investigation, study or survey of any matter or in connection with any of the Commission's reporting programs.

(c) Any petition to limit or quash an order requiring a report or answer to specific questions shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within twenty (20) days after service of the order, or, if the date for compliance is less than twenty (20) days after service of the order, then before the return date. Such petition shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the order requiring a report or answer to specific questions, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation. All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring reports or answers to questions shall be ruled upon by the Commission itself, but the above-designated Directors, Deputy Directors, Assistant Directors, Associate Directors, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon motions for extensions of time within which to file petitions to limit or quash orders requiring reports or answers to questions.

(d) Except as otherwise provided by the Commission, the timely filing of any petition to limit or quash such an order shall stay the requirement of return on the portion challenged if the Commission has not ruled upon the petition by the return date. If it rules on or subsequent to the return date and its ruling denies the petition in whole or in part, the Commission shall specify a new return date.

(e) All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring a report or answers to specific questions, and the Commission's responses thereto, are part of the

public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under §4.10(a) of this chapter.

[41 FR 54485, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§2.13 Noncompliance with compulsory processes.

(a) In cases of failure to comply with Commission compulsory processes, appropriate action may be initiated by the Commission or the Attorney General, including actions for enforcement, forfeiture, or penalties or criminal actions.

(b) The General Counsel, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, without power of redelegation, is authorized:

(1) To institute, on behalf of the Commission, an enforcement proceeding in connection with the failure or refusal of a person, partnership, or corporation to comply with, or to obey, a subpoena, or civil investigative demand if the return date or any extension thereof has passed;

(2) To approve and have prepared and issued, in the name of the Commission when deemed appropriate by the General Counsel, a notice of default in connection with the failure of a person, partnership, or corporation to timely file a report pursuant to section 6(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, if the return date or any extension thereof has passed;

(3) To institute, on behalf of the Commission, an enforcement proceeding and to request, on behalf of the Commission, the institution, when deemed appropriate by the General Counsel, of a civil action in connection with the failure of a person, partnership, or corporation to timely file a report pursuant to an order under section 6(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, if the return date or any extension thereof has passed; and

(4) To seek civil contempt in cases where a court order enforcing compulsory process has been violated.

[41 FR 54485, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 45 FR 39244, June 10, 1980; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§2.14 Disposition.

(a) When the facts disclosed by an investigation indicate that corrective action is warranted, and the matter is not subject to a consent settlement pursuant to subpart C of this part, further proceedings may be instituted pursuant to the provisions of part 3 of this chapter.

(b) When the facts disclosed by an investigation indicate that corrective action is not necessary or warranted in the public interest, the investigational file will be closed. The matter may be further investigated at any time if circumstances so warrant.

(c) The Commission has delegated to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, and Regional Directors, without power of redelegation, limited authority to close investigations.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 42 FR 42195, Aug. 22, 1977; 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

§2.15 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.

(a) The Bureau Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors in the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Bureau Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are hereby authorized to request, through the Commission's liaison officer, approval from the Attorney General for the issuance of an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code.

(b) The Commission retains the right to review the exercise of any of the functions delegated under paragraph (a) of this section. Appeals to the Commission from an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information will be entertained by the Commission only upon a showing that a substantial question is involved, the determination of which is essential to serve the interests of justice. Such appeals shall be made on the record and

shall be in the form of a brief not to exceed fifteen (15) pages in length and shall be filed within five (5) days after notice of the complained of action. The appeal shall not operate to suspend the hearing unless otherwise determined by the person conducting the hearing or ordered by the Commission.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[37 FR 5016, Mar. 9, 1972, as amended at 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

§ 2.16 Custodians.

(a) *Designation.* The Commission shall designate a custodian and one or more deputy custodians for material to be delivered pursuant to compulsory process in an investigation, a purpose of which is to determine whether any person may have violated any provision of the laws administered by the Commission. The custodian shall have the powers and duties prescribed by section 21 of the FTC Act. Deputy custodians may perform all of the duties assigned to custodians. The appropriate Bureau Directors, Deputy Directors, Associate Directors in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Assistant Directors in the Bureau of Competition, Regional Directors or Assistant Regional Directors shall take the action required by section 21(b)(7) of the FTC Act if it is necessary to replace a custodian or deputy custodian.

(b) *Copying of custodial documents.* The custodian designated pursuant to section 21 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (subject to the general supervision of the Executive Director) may, from among the material submitted, select the material the copying of which is necessary or appropriate for the official use of the Commission, and shall determine, the number of copies of any such material that are to be reproduced. Copies of material in the physical possession of the custodian may be reproduced by or under the authority of an employee of the Commission designated by the custodian.

(c) Material produced pursuant to the Federal Trade Commission Act, while in the custody of the custodian, shall be for the official use of the Commission in accordance with the Act; but such material shall upon reasonable notice to the custodian be made available for examination by the person who produced such material, or his duly authorized representative, during regular office hours established for the Commission.

[45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 26291, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 41376, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

Subpart B—Petitions Filed Under Section 7A of the Clayton Act, as Amended, for Review of Requests for Additional Information or Documentary Material

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 18a(d), (e).

§ 2.20 Petitions for review of requests for additional information or documentary material.

(a) For purposes of this section, ''second request'' refers to a request for additional information or documentary material issued under 16 CFR 803.20.

(b) *Second request procedures*—(1) *Notice.* Every request for additional information or documentary material issued under 16 CFR 803.20 shall inform the recipient(s) of the request that the recipient has a right to discuss modifications or clarifications of the request with an authorized representative of the Commission. The request shall identify the name and telephone number of at least one such representative.

(2) *Second request conference.* An authorized representative of the Commission shall invite the recipient to discuss the request for additional information or documentary material soon after the request is issued. At the conference, the authorized representative shall discuss the competitive issues raised by the proposed transaction, to the extent then known, and confer with the recipient about the most effective way to obtain information and documents relating to the competitive issues raised. The conference will ordinarily take place within 5 business days of issuance of the request, unless the recipient declines the invitation or requests a later date.

(3) *Modification of requests.* The authorized representative shall modify the request for additional information

or documentary material, or recommend such modification to the responsible Assistant Director of the Bureau of Competition, if he or she determines that a less burdensome request would be consistent with the needs of the investigation. A request for additional information or documentary material may be modified only in writing signed by the authorized representative.

(4) *Review of request decisions.* (i) If the recipient of a request for additional information or documentary material believes that compliance with portions of the request should not be required and the recipient has exhausted reasonable efforts to obtain clarifications or modifications of the request from an authorized representative, the recipient may petition the General Counsel to consider and rule on unresolved issues. Such petition shall be submitted by letter to the General Counsel with a copy to the authorized representative who participated in the second request conference held under paragraph (b)(3) of this section. The petition shall not, without leave of the General Counsel, exceed 500 words, excluding any cover, table of contents, table of authorities, glossaries, proposed form of relief and any appendices containing only sections of statutes or regulations, and shall address petitioner's efforts to obtain modification from the authorized representative.

(ii) Within 2 business days after receiving such a petition, the General Counsel shall set a date for a conference with the petitioner and the authorized representative.

(iii) Such conference shall take place within 7 business days after the General Counsel receives the petition, unless the request recipient agrees to a later date or declines to attend a conference.

(iv) Not later than 3 business days before the date of the conference, the petitioner and the authorized representative may each submit memoranda regarding the issues presented in the petition. Such memoranda shall not, without leave of the General Counsel, exceed 1250 words, excluding any cover, table of contents, table of authorities, glossaries, proposed form of relief and appendices containing only sections of statutes or regulations. Such memoranda shall be delivered to counsel for the other participants on the same day they are delivered to the General Counsel.

(v) The petitioner's memorandum shall include a concise statement of reasons why the request should be modified, together with proposed modifications, or a concise explanation why the recipient believes it has substantially complied with the request for additional information or documentary material.

(vi) The authorized representative's memorandum shall include a concise statement of reasons why the petitioner's proposed modifications are inappropriate or a concise statement of the reasons why the representative believes that the petitioner has not substantially complied with the request for additional information and documentary material.

(vii) The General Counsel shall advise the petitioner and the authorized representative of his or her decision within 3 business days following the conference.

[66 FR 8721, Feb. 1, 2001]

Subpart C—Consent Order Procedure

§2.31 Opportunity to submit a proposed consent order.

(a) Where time, the nature of the proceeding, and the public interest permit, any individual, partnership, or corporation being investigated shall be afforded the opportunity to submit through the operating Bureau or Regional Office having responsibility in the matter a proposal for disposition of the matter in the form of a consent order agreement executed by the party being investigated and complying with the requirements of §2.32, for consideration by the Commission in connection with a proposed complaint submitted by the Commission's staff.

(b) After a complaint has been issued, the consent order procedure described in this part will not be available except as provided in §3.25(b).

[40 FR 15235, Apr. 4, 1975]

§ 2.32 Agreement.

Every agreement in settlement of a Commission complaint shall contain, in addition to an appropriate proposed order, either an admission of the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law submitted simultaneously by the Commission's staff or an admission of all jurisdictional facts and an express waiver of the requirement that the Commission's decision contain a statement of findings of fact and conclusions of law. Every agreement also shall waive further procedural steps and all rights to seek judicial review or otherwise to challenge or contest the validity of the order. In addition, where appropriate, every agreement in settlement of a Commission complaint challenging the lawfulness of a proposed merger or acquisition shall also contain a hold-separate or asset-maintenance order. The agreement may state that the signing thereof is for settlement purposes only and does not constitute an admission by any party that the law has been violated as alleged in the complaint. Every agreement shall provide that:

(a) The complaint may be used in construing the terms of the order;

(b) No agreement, understanding, representation, or interpretation not contained in the order or the aforementioned agreement may be used to vary or to contradict the terms of the order;

(c) The order will have the same force and effect and may be altered, modified or set aside in the same manner provided by statute for Commission orders issued on a litigated or stipulated record;

(d) Except as provided by order of the Commission, any order issued pursuant to the agreement will become final upon service;

(e) The agreement will not become a part of the public record unless and until it is accepted by the Commission; and

(f) If the Commission accepts the agreement, further proceedings will be governed by § 2.34.

[64 FR 46268, Aug. 25, 1999]

§ 2.33 Compliance procedure.

The Commission may in its discretion require that a proposed agreement containing an order to cease and desist be accompanied by an initial report signed by the respondent setting forth in precise detail the manner in which the respondent will comply with the order when and if entered. Such report will not become part of the public record unless and until the accompanying agreement and order are accepted by the Commission. At the time any such report is submitted a respondent may request confidentiality for any portion thereof with a precise showing of justification therefor as set out in § 4.9(c) and the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee will dispose of such requests in accordance with that section.

[63 FR 32977, June 17, 1998]

§ 2.34 Disposition.

(a) *Acceptance of proposed consent agreement*. The Commission may accept or refuse to accept a proposed consent agreement. Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (c) of this section, acceptance does not constitute final approval, but it serves as the basis for further actions leading to final disposition of the matter.

(b) *Effectiveness of hold-separate or asset-maintenance order*. Following acceptance of a consent agreement, the Commission will, if it deems a hold-separate or asset-maintenance order appropriate, issue a complaint and such an order as agreed to by the parties. Such order will be final upon service. The issuance of a complaint under this paragraph will neither commence an adjudicatory proceeding subject to part 3 of this chapter nor subject the consent agreement proceeding to the prohibitions specified in § 4.7 of this chapter.

(c) *Public comment*. Promptly after its acceptance of the consent agreement, the Commission will place the order contained in the consent agreement, the complaint, and the consent agreement on the public record for a period of 30 days, or such other period as the Commission may specify, for the receipt of comments or views from any interested person. At the same time, the Commission will place on the public record an explanation of the provisions of the order and the relief to be

obtained thereby and any other information that it believes may help interested persons understand the order. The Commission also will publish the explanation in the FEDERAL REGISTER. The Commission retains the discretion to issue a complaint and a Final Decision and Order, incorporating the order contained in a consent agreement, in appropriate cases before seeking public comment. Unless directed otherwise by the Commission, such Decision and Order will be final upon service.

(d) *Comment on initial compliance report.* If respondents have filed an initial report of compliance pursuant to §2.33, the Commission will place that report on the public record, except for portions, if any, granted confidential treatment pursuant to §4.9(c) of this chapter, with the complaint, the order, and the consent agreement.

(e) *Action following comment period.* (1) Following the comment period, on the basis of comments received or otherwise, the Commission may either withdraw its acceptance of the agreement and so notify respondents, in which event it will take such other action as it may consider appropriate, or issue and serve its complaint in such form as the circumstances may require and its decision in disposition of the proceeding.

(2) The Commission, following the comment period, may determine, on the basis of the comments or otherwise, that a Final Decision and Order that was issued in advance of the comment period should be modified. Absent agreement by respondents to the modifications, the Commission may initiate a proceeding to reopen and modify the decision and order in accordance with §3.72(b) of this chapter or commence a new administrative proceeding by issuing a complaint in accordance with §3.11 of this chapter.

[64 FR 46269, Aug. 25, 1999]

Subpart D—Reports of Compliance

§2.41 Reports of compliance.

(a) In every proceeding in which the Commission has issued an order pursuant to the provisions of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act or section 11 of the Clayton Act, as amended, and except as otherwise specifically provided in any such order, each respondent named in such order shall file with the Commission, within sixty (60) days after service thereof, or within such other time as may be provided by the order or the rules in this chapter, a report in writing, signed by the respondent, setting forth in detail the manner and form of his compliance with the order, and shall thereafter file with the Commission such further signed, written reports of compliance as it may require. An original and one copy of each such report shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission, and one copy of each such report shall be filed with the Associate Director for Enforcement in the Bureau of Consumer Protection (for consumer protection orders) or with the Assistant Director for Compliance in the Bureau of Competition (for competition orders). Reports of compliance shall be under oath if so requested. Where the order prohibits the use of a false advertisement of a food, drug, device, or cosmetic which may be injurious to health because of results from its use under the conditions prescribed in the advertisement, or under such conditions as are customary or usual, or if the use of such advertisement is with intent to defraud or mislead, or in any other case where the circumstances so warrant, the order may provide for an interim report stating whether and how respondents intend to comply to be filed within ten (10) days after service of the order. Neither the filing of an application for stay pursuant to §3.56, nor the filing of a petition for judicial review, shall operate to postpone the time for filing a compliance report under the order or this section. If the Commission, or a court, determines to grant a stay of an order, or portion thereof, pending judicial review, or if any order provision is automatically stayed by statute, no compliance report shall be due as to those portions of the order that are stayed unless ordered by the court. Thereafter, as to orders, or portions thereof, that are stayed, the time for filing a report of compliance shall begin to run de novo from the final judicial determination, except that if no petition for certiorari

has been filed following affirmance of the order of the Commission by a court of appeals, the compliance report shall be due the day following the date on which the time expires for the filing of such petition. Staff of the Bureaus of Competition and Consumer Protection will review such reports of compliance and may advise each respondent whether the staff intends to recommend that the Commission take any enforcement action. The Commission may, however, institute proceedings, including certification of facts to the Attorney General pursuant to the provisions of section 5(l) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(l)) and section 11(1) of the Clayton Act, as amended (15 U.S.C. 21(1)), to enforce compliance with an order, without advising a respondent whether the actions set forth in a report of compliance evidence compliance with the Commission's order or without prior notice of any kind to a respondent.

(b) The Commission has delegated to the Director, the Deputy Directors, and the Assistant Director for Compliance of the Bureau of Competition, and to the Director, the Deputy Directors, and the Associate Director for Enforcement of the Bureau of Consumer Protection the authority to monitor compliance reports and to open and close compliance investigations. With respect to any compliance matter which has received previous Commission consideration as to compliance or in which the Commission or any Commissioner has expressed an interest, any matter proposed to be closed by reason of expense of investigation or testing, or any matter involving substantial questions as to the public interest, Commission policy or statutory construction, the Bureaus shall submit an analysis to the Commission regarding their intended actions.

(c) The Commission has delegated to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition and to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, and to the Regional Directors, the authority, for good cause shown, to extend the time within which reports of compliance with orders to cease and desist may be filed. It is to be noted, however, that an extension of time within which a report of compliance may be filed, or the filing of a report which does not evidence full compliance with the order, does not in any circumstances suspend or relieve a respondent from his obligation under the law with respect to compliance with such order. An order of the Commission to cease and desist becomes final on the date and under the conditions provided in the Federal Trade Commission Act and the Clayton Act. Any person, partnership or corporation against which an order to cease and desist has been issued who is not in full compliance with such order on and after the date provided in these statutes for the order to become final is in violation of such order and is subject to an immediate action for civil penalties. The authority under this paragraph may not be redelegated, except that the Associate Director for Enforcement in the Bureau of Consumer Protection and the Assistant Director for Compliance in the Bureau of Competition may each name a designee under this paragraph.

(d) Any respondent subject to a Commission order may request advice from the Commission as to whether a proposed course of action, if pursued by it, will constitute compliance with such order. The request for advice should be submitted in writing to the Secretary of the Commission and should include full and complete information regarding the proposed course of action. On the basis of the facts submitted, as well as other information available to the Commission, the Commission will inform the respondent whether or not the proposed course of action, if pursued, would constitute compliance with its order. A request ordinarily will be considered inappropriate for such advice:

(1) Where the course of action is already being followed by the requesting party;

(2) Where the same or substantially the same course of action is under investigation or is or has been the subject of a current proceeding, order, or decree initiated or obtained by the Commission or another governmental agency; or

(3) Where the proposed course of action or its effects may be such that an informed decision thereon cannot be

made or could be made only after extensive investigation, clinical study, testing or collateral inquiry.

Furthermore, the filing of a request for advice under this paragraph does not in any circumstances suspend or relieve a respondent from his obligation under the law with respect to his compliance with the order. He must in any event be in full compliance on and after the date the order becomes final as prescribed by statute referred to in paragraph (b) of this section. Advice to respondents under this paragraph will be published by the Commission in the same manner and subject to the same restrictions and considerations as advisory opinions under §1.4 of this chapter.

(e) The Commission may at any time reconsider any advice given under this section and, where the public interest requires, rescind or revoke its prior advice. In such event the respondent will be given notice of the Commission's intent to revoke or rescind and will be given an opportunity to submit its views to the Commission. The Commission will not proceed against a respondent for violation of an order with respect to any action which was taken in good faith reliance upon the Commission's advice under this section, where all relevant facts were fully, completely, and accurately presented to the Commission and where such action was promptly discontinued upon notification of rescission or revocation of the Commission's advice.

(f)(1) All applications for approval of proposed divestitures, acquisitions, or similar transactions subject to Commission review under outstanding orders shall fully describe the terms of the transaction and shall set forth why the transaction merits Commission approval. Such applications will be placed on the public record, together with any additional applicant submissions that the Commission directs be placed on the public record. The Director of the Bureau of Competition is delegated the authority to direct such placement.

(2) The Commission will receive public comment on a prior approval application for 30 days. During the comment period, any person may file formal written objections or comments with the Secretary of the Commission, and such objections or comments shall be placed on the public record. In appropriate cases, the Commission may shorten, eliminate, extend, or reopen a comment period.

(3) Responses to applications under this section, together with a statement of supporting reasons, will be published when made, together with responses to any public comments filed under this section.

(4) Persons submitting information that is subject to public record disclosure under this section may request confidential treatment for that information or portions thereof in accordance with §4.9(c) and the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee will dispose of such requests in accordance with that section. Nothing in this section requires that confidentiality requests be resolved prior to, or contemporaneously with, the disposition of the application.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967]

EDITORIAL NOTE: For FEDERAL REGISTER citations affecting §2.41, see the List of CFR Sections Affected, which appears in the Finding Aids section of the printed volume and on GPO Access.

Subpart E—Requests To Reopen

§2.51 Requests to reopen.

(a) *Scope.* Any person, partnership, or corporation subject to a Commission decision containing a rule or order which has become effective, or an order to cease and desist which has become final, may file with the Secretary a request that the Commission reopen the proceeding to consider whether the rule or order, including any affirmative relief provision contained therein, should be altered, modified, or set aside in whole or in part.

(b) *Contents.* A request under this section shall contain a satisfactory showing that changed conditions of law or fact require the rule or order to be altered, modified or set aside, in whole or in part, or that the public interest so requires.

(1) This requirement shall not be deemed satisfied if a request is merely conclusory or otherwise fails to set forth by affidavit(s) specific facts demonstrating in detail:

(i) The nature of the changed conditions and the reasons why they require the requested modifications of the rule or order; or

(ii) The reasons why the public interest would be served by the modification.

(2) Each affidavit shall set forth facts that would be admissible in evidence and shall show that the affiant is competent to testify to the matters stated therein. All information and material that the requester wishes the Commission to consider shall be contained in the request at the time of filing.

(c) *Opportunity for public comment.* A request under this section shall be placed on the public record except for material exempt from public disclosure under rule 4.10(a). Unless the Commission determines that earlier disposition is necessary, the request shall remain on the public record for thirty (30) days after a press release on the request is issued. Bureau Directors are authorized to publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER announcing the receipt of a request to reopen at their discretion. The public is invited to comment on the request while it is on the public record.

(d) *Determination.* After the period for public comments on a request under this section has expired and no later than one hundred and twenty (120) days after the date of the filing of the request, the Commission shall determine whether the request complies with paragraph (b) of this section and whether the proceeding shall be reopened and the rule or order should be altered, modified, or set aside as requested. In doing so, the Commission may, in its discretion, issue an order reopening the proceeding and modifying the rule or order as requested, issue an order to show cause pursuant to §3.72, or take such other action as is appropriate: *Provided, however,* That any action under §3.72 or otherwise shall be concluded within the specified 120-day period.

(Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46(g)); 80 Stat. 383, as amended, 81 Stat. 54 (5 U.S.C. 552))

[45 FR 36344, May 29, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 26291, May 12, 1981; 47 FR 33251, Aug. 2, 1982; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 53 FR 40868, Oct. 19, 1988; 65 FR 50637, Aug. 21, 2000]

PART 3—RULES OF PRACTICE FOR ADJUDICATIVE PROCEEDINGS

Subpart A—Scope of Rules; Nature of Adjudicative Proceedings

Sec.
3.1 Scope of the rules in this part.
3.2 Nature of adjudicative proceedings.

Subpart B—Pleadings

3.11 Commencement of proceedings.
3.11A Fast-track proceedings.
3.12 Answer.
3.13 Adjudicative hearing on issues arising in rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
3.14 Intervention.
3.15 Amendments and supplemental pleadings.

Subpart C—Prehearing Procedures; Motions; Interlocutory Appeals; Summary Decisions

3.21 Prehearing procedures.
3.22 Motions.
3.23 Interlocutory appeals.
3.24 Summary decisions.
3.25 Consent agreement settlements.
3.26 Motions following denial of preliminary injunctive relief.

Subpart D—Discovery; Compulsory Process

3.31 General provisions.
3.32 Admissions.
3.33 Depositions.
3.34 Subpoenas.
3.35 Interrogatories to parties.
3.36 Applications for subpoenas for records, or appearances by officials or employees, of governmental agencies other than the Commission, and subpoenas to be served in a foreign country.
3.37 Production of documents and things; access for inspection and other purposes.
3.38 Motion for order compelling disclosure or discovery; sanctions.
3.38A Withholding requested material.
3.39 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.
3.40 Admissibility of evidence in advertising substantiation cases.

Subpart E—Hearings

3.41 General rules.
3.42 Presiding officials.
3.43 Evidence.
3.44 Record.
3.45 *In camera* orders.
3.46 Proposed findings, conclusions, and order.

Subpart F—Decision

3.51 Initial decision.
3.52 Appeal from initial decision.
3.53 Review of initial decision in absence of appeal.
3.54 Decision on appeal or review.
3.55 Reconsideration.
3.56 Effective date of orders; application for stay.

Subpart G [Reserved]

Subpart H—Reopening of Proceedings

3.71 Authority.
3.72 Reopening.

Subpart I—Recovery of Awards Under the Equal Access to Justice Act in Commission Proceedings

3.81 General provisions.
3.82 Information required from applicants.
3.83 Procedures for considering applicants.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46, unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Scope of Rules; Nature of Adjudicative Proceedings

§3.1 Scope of the rules in this part.

The rules in this part govern procedure in adjudicative proceedings. It is the policy of the Commission that, to the extent practicable and consistent with requirements of law, such proceedings shall be conducted expeditiously. In the conduct of such proceedings the Administrative Law Judge and counsel for all parties shall make every effort at each state of a proceeding to avoid delay.

§3.2 Nature of adjudicative proceedings.

Adjudicative proceedings are those formal proceedings conducted under one or more of the statutes administered by the Commission which are required by statute to be determined on the record after opportunity for an agency hearing. The term includes hearings upon objections to orders relating to the promulgation, amendment, or repeal of rules under sections 4, 5 and 6 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act and proceedings for the assessment of civil penalties pursuant to §1.94 of this chapter. It does not include other proceedings such as negotiations for the entry of consent orders; investigational hearings as distinguished from proceedings after the issuance of a complaint; requests for extensions of time to comply with final orders or other proceedings involving compliance with final orders; proceedings for the promulgation of industry guides or trade regulation rules; proceedings for fixing quantity limits under section 2(a) of the Clayton Act; investigations under section 5 of the Export Trade Act; rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act up to the time when the Commission determines under §1.26(g) of this chapter that objections sufficient to warrant the holding of a public hearing have been filed; or the promulgation of substantive rules and regulations, determinations of classes of products exempted from statutory requirements, the establishment of name guides, or inspections and industry counseling, under sections 4(d) and 6(a) of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, sections 7, 8(b), and 8(c) of the Fur Products Labeling Act, and sections 7(c), 7(d), and 12(b) of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act.

[45 FR 67319, Oct. 10, 1980]

Subpart B—Pleadings

§3.11 Commencement of proceedings.

(a) *Complaint.* Except as provided in §3.13, an adjudicative proceeding is commenced when an affirmative vote is taken by the Commission to issue a complaint.

(b) *Form of complaint.* The Commission's complaint shall contain the following:

(1) Recital of the legal authority and jurisdiction for institution of the proceeding, with specific designation of the statutory provisions alleged to have been violated;

(2) A clear and concise factual statement sufficient to inform each respondent with reasonable definiteness of the type of acts or practices alleged to be in violation of the law;

(3) Where practical, a form of order which the Commission has reason to

believe should issue if the facts are found to be as alleged in the complaint; and

(4) Notice of the time and place for hearing, the time to be at least thirty (30) days after service of the complaint.

(c) *Motion for more definite statement.* Where the respondent makes a reasonable showing that it cannot frame a responsive answer based on the allegations contained in the complaint, the respondent may move for a more definite statement of the charges against it before filing an answer. Such a motion shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the complaint and shall point out the defects complained of and the details desired.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 43 FR 11978, Mar. 23, 1978; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 3.11A Fast-track proceedings.

(a) *Scope and applicability.* This section governs the availability of fast-track procedures in administrative cases where the Commission files a collateral federal district court complaint that seeks preliminary injunctive relief against some or all of the conduct alleged in the Commission's administrative complaint. The Commission will afford the respondent the opportunity to elect such fast-track procedures, subject to the conditions set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, in cases that the Commission designates as appropriate. In cases so designated, the Commission will provide written notice to each respondent at the time that it is served with the Commission's federal district court complaint for preliminary injunctive relief. Except as modified by this section, the rules contained in subparts A through I of part 3 of this chapter will govern fast-track procedures in adjudicative proceedings. Discovery will be governed by subpart D of this part, and the Administrative Law Judge may exercise his plenary authority under § 3.42(c)(6) to establish limitations on the number of depositions, witnesses, or any document production.

(b)(1) *Conditions.* In cases designated as appropriate by the Commission pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, a respondent may elect fast-track procedures:

(i) if a federal court enters a preliminary injunction against some or all of the conduct alleged in the Commission's administrative complaint; or,

(ii) where no such injunction is entered, if the Commission determines that the Federal court proceeding has resulted in an evidentiary record that is likely materially to facilitate resolution of the administrative proceeding in accordance with the expedited schedule set forth in this section. The Commission will provide each respondent with written notice of any such determination.

(2) *Election.* A respondent that determines to elect fast-track procedures shall file a notice of such election with the Secretary by the latest of: three days after entry of a preliminary injunction as described in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section; three days after the respondent is served with notice of the Commission's determination under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section; or three days after the respondent is served with the Commission's administrative complaint in the adjudicative proceeding. In proceedings involving multiple respondents, the fast-track procedures set forth in this section will not apply unless the procedures are elected by all respondents.

(c) *Deadlines in fast-track proceedings.* (1) For purposes of this paragraph, ''triggering event'' means the latest of: entry of a preliminary injunction as described in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section; service on the last respondent of notice of the Commission's determination under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section; service on the last respondent of the Commission's administrative complaint in the adjudicative proceeding; or filing with the Secretary by the last respondent of a notice electing fast-track procedures.

(2) *Proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge.* In fast-track proceedings covered by this section:

(i) The scheduling conference required by § 3.21(b) shall be held not later than three days after the triggering event.

(ii) Respondent's answer shall be filed within 14 days after the triggering event.

(iii) The Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision within 56

days following the conclusion of the evidentiary hearing. The initial decision shall be filed no later than 195 days after the triggering event.

(iv) Any party wishing to appeal an initial decision to the Commission shall file a notice of appeal with the Secretary within three days after service of the initial decision. The notice shall comply with §3.52(a) in all other respects.

(v) The appeal shall be in the form of a brief, filed within 21 days after service of the initial decision, and shall comply with §3.52(b) in all other respects. All issues raised on appeal shall be presented in the party's appeal brief.

(vi) Within 14 days after service of the appeal brief, the appellee may file an answering brief, which shall comply with §3.52(c). Cross-appeals, as permitted in §3.52(c), may not be raised in an appellee's answering brief.

(vii) Within five days after service of the appellee's answering brief, the appellant may file a reply brief, in accordance with §3.52(d) in all other respects.

(3) *Proceedings before the Commission.* In fast-track proceedings covered by this section, the Commission will issue a final order and opinion within 13 months after the triggering event. If the adjudicative proceeding is stayed pursuant to a motion filed under §3.26, the 13-month deadline will be tolled for as long as the proceeding is stayed. The Commission may extend the date for issuance of the Commission's final order and opinion in the following circumstances: if necessary to permit the Commission to provide submitters of *in camera* material or information with advance notice of the Commission's intention to disclose all or portions of such material or information in the Commission's final order or opinion; or if the Commission determines that adherence to the 13-month deadline would result in a miscarriage of justice due to circumstances unforeseen at the time of respondent's election of fast-track procedures.

[63 FR 7527, Feb. 13, 1998]

§3.12 Answer.

(a) *Time for filing.* A respondent shall file an answer within twenty (20) days after being served with the complaint; *Provided, however,* That the filing of a motion permitted under these Rules shall alter this period of time as follows, unless a different time is fixed by the Administrative Law Judge:

(1) If the motion is denied, the answer shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the order of denial or thirty (30) days after service of the complaint, whichever is later;

(2) If a motion for more definite statement of the charges is granted, in whole or in part, the more definite statement of the charges shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the order granting the motion and the answer shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the more definite statement of the charges.

(b) *Content of answer.* An answer shall conform to the following:

(1) *If allegations of complaint are contested.* An answer in which the allegations of a complaint are contested shall contain:

(i) A concise statement of the facts constituting each ground of defense;

(ii) Specific admission, denial, or explanation of each fact alleged in the complaint or, if the respondent is without knowledge thereof, a statement to that effect. Allegations of a complaint not thus answered shall be deemed to have been admitted.

(2) *If allegations of complaint are admitted.* If the respondent elects not to contest the allegations of fact set forth in the complaint, his answer shall consist of a statement that he admits all of the material allegations to be true. Such an answer shall constitute a waiver of hearings as to the facts alleged in the complaint, and together with the complaint will provide a record basis on which the Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision containing appropriate findings and conclusions and an appropriate order disposing of the proceeding. In such an answer, the respondent may, however, reserve the right to submit proposed findings and conclusions under §3.46 and the right to appeal the initial decision to the Commission under §3.52.

(c) *Default.* Failure of the respondent to file an answer within the time provided shall be deemed to constitute a

waiver of the respondent's right to appear and contest the allegations of the complaint and to authorize the Administrative Law Judge, without further notice to the respondent, to find the facts to be as alleged in the complaint and to enter an initial decision containing such findings, appropriate conclusions, and order.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50646, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17628, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 3.13 Adjudicative hearing on issues arising in rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

(a) *Notice of hearing*. When the Commission, acting under § 1.26(g) of this chapter, determines that objections which have been filed are sufficient to warrant the holding of an adjudicative hearing in rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, or when the Commission otherwise determines that the holding of such a hearing would be in the public interest, a hearing will be held before an Administrative Law Judge for the purpose of receiving evidence relevant and material to the issues raised by such objections or other issues specified by the Commission. In such case the Commission will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER containing a statement of:

(1) The provisions of the rule or order to which objections have been filed;

(2) The issues raised by the objections or the issues on which the Commission wishes to receive evidence;

(3) The time and place for hearing, the time to be at least thirty (30) days after publication of the notice; and

(4) The time within which, and the conditions under which, any person who petitioned for issuance, amendment, or repeal of the rule or order, or any person who filed objections sufficient to warrant the holding of the hearing, or any other interested person, may file notice of intention to participate in the proceeding.

(b) *Parties*. Any person who petitions for issuance, amendment, or repeal of a rule or order, and any person who files objections sufficient to warrant the holding of a hearing, and who files timely notice of intention to participate, shall be regarded as a party and shall be individually served with any pleadings filed in the proceeding. Upon written application to the Administrative Law Judge and a showing of good cause, any interested person may be designated by the Administrative Law Judge as a party.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 40 FR 33969, Aug. 13, 1975]

§ 3.14 Intervention.

(a) Any individual, partnership, unincorporated association, or corporation desiring to intervene in an adjudicative proceeding shall make written application in the form of a motion setting forth the basis therefor. Such application shall have attached to it a certificate showing service thereof upon each party to the proceeding in accordance with the provisions of § 4.4(b) of this chapter. A similar certificate shall be attached to the answer filed by any party, other than counsel in support of the complaint, showing service of such answer upon the applicant. The Administrative Law Judge or the Commission may by order permit the intervention to such extent and upon such terms as are provided by law or as otherwise may be deemed proper.

(b) In an adjudicative proceeding where the complaint states that divestiture relief is contemplated, the labor organization[s] representing employees of the respondent[s] may intervene as a matter of right. Applications for such intervention are to be made in accordance with the procedures set forth in paragraph (a) of this section and must be filed within 60 days of the issuance of the complaint. Intervention as a matter of right shall be limited to the issue of the effect, if any, of proposed remedies on employment, with full rights of participation in the proceeding concerning this issue. This paragraph does not affect a labor organization's ability to petition for leave to intervene pursuant to § 3.14(a).

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 46 FR 20979, Apr. 8, 1981]

§3.15 Amendments and supplemental pleadings.

(a) *Amendments*—(1) *By leave*. If and whenever determination of a controversy on the merits will be facilitated thereby, the Administrative Law Judge may, upon such conditions as are necessary to avoid prejudicing the public interest and the rights of the parties, allow appropriate amendments to pleadings or notice of hearing: *Provided, however*, That a motion for amendment of a complaint or notice may be allowed by the Administrative Law Judge only if the amendment is reasonably within the scope of the original complaint or notice. Motions for other amendments of complaints or notices shall be certified to the Commission.

(2) *Conformance to evidence*. When issues not raised by the pleadings or notice of hearing but reasonably within the scope of the original complaint or notice of hearing are tried by express or implied consent of the parties, they shall be treated in all respects as if they had been raised in the pleadings or notice of hearing; and such amendments of the pleadings or notice as may be necessary to make them conform to the evidence and to raise such issues shall be allowed at any time.

(b) *Supplemental pleadings*. The Administrative Law Judge may, upon reasonable notice and such terms as are just, permit service of a supplemental pleading or notice setting forth transactions, occurrences, or events which have happened since the date of the pleading or notice sought to be supplemented and which are relevant to any of the issues involved.

Subpart C—Prehearing Procedures; Motions; Interlocutory Appeals; Summary Decisions

§3.21 Prehearing procedures.

(a) *Meeting of the parties before scheduling conference*. An early as practicable before the prehearing scheduling conference described in paragraph (b) of this section, counsel for the parties shall meet to discuss the nature and basis of their claims and defenses and the possibilities for a prompt settlement or resolution of the case, and to agree, if possible, on a proposed discovery schedule, a preliminary estimate of the time required for the hearing, and a proposed hearing date, and on any other matters to be determined at the scheduling conference.

(b) *Scheduling conference*. Not later than fourteen (14) days after the answer is filed by the last answering respondent, the Administrative Law Judge shall hold a scheduling conference. At the scheduling conference, counsel for the parties shall be prepared to address their factual and legal theories, a schedule of proceedings, possible limitations on discovery, and other possible agreements or steps that may aid in the orderly and expeditious disposition of the proceeding.

(c) *Prehearing scheduling order*. (1) Not later than two (2) days after the scheduling conference, the Administrative Law Judge shall enter an order that sets forth the results of the conference and establishes a schedule of proceedings, including a plan of discovery, dates for the submission and hearing of motions, the specific method by which exhibits shall be numbered or otherwise identified and marked for the record, and the time and place of a final prehearing conference and of the evidentiary hearing.

(2) The Administrative Law Judge may grant a motion to extend any deadline or time specified in this scheduling order only upon a showing of good cause. Such motion shall set forth the total period of extensions, if any, previously obtained by the moving party. In determining whether to grant the motion, the Administrative Law Judge shall consider any extensions already granted, the length of the proceedings to date, and the need to conclude the evidentiary hearing and render an initial decision in a timely manner. The Administrative Law Judge shall not rule on *ex parte* motions to extend the deadlines specified in the scheduling order, or modify such deadlines solely upon stipulation or agreement of counsel.

(d) *Meeting prior to final prehearing conference*. Counsel for the parties shall meet before the final prehearing conference described in paragraph (e) of this section to discuss the matters set

forth therein in preparation for the conference.

(e) *Final prehearing conference.* As close to the commencement of the evidentiary hearing as practicable, the Administrative Law Judge shall hold a final prehearing conference, which counsel shall attend in person, to submit any proposed stipulations as to law, fact, or admissibility of evidence, exchange exhibit and witness lists, and designate testimony to be presented by deposition. At this conference, the Administrative Law Judge shall also resolve any outstanding evidentiary matters or pending motions (except motions for summary decision) and establish a final schedule for the evidentiary hearing.

(f) *Additional prehearing conferences and orders.* The Administrative Law Judge shall hold additional prehearing and status conferences or enter additional orders as may be needed to ensure the orderly and expeditious disposition of a proceeding. Such conferences shall be held in person to the extent practicable.

(g) *Public access and reporting.* Prehearing conferences shall be public unless the Administrative Law Judge determines in his or her discretion that the conference (or any part thereof) shall be closed to the public. The Administrative Law Judge shall have discretion to determine whether a prehearing conference shall be stenographically reported.

[50 FR 41487, Oct. 11, 1985, as amended at 61 FR 50646, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17628, Apr. 3, 2001]

§ 3.22 Motions.

(a) *Presentation and disposition.* During the time a proceeding is before an Administrative Law Judge, all motions therein, except those filed under § 3.26, § 3.42(g), or § 4.17, shall be addressed to and ruled upon, if within his or her authority, by the Administrative Law Judge. The Administrative Law Judge shall certify to the Commission any motion upon which he or she has no authority to rule, accompanied by any recommendation that he or she may deem appropriate. Such recommendation may contain a proposed disposition of the motion or other relevant comments. The Commission may order the ALJ to submit a recommendation or an amplification thereof. Rulings or recommendations containing information granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45 shall be filed in accordance with § 3.45(f). All written motions shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission, and all motions addressed to the Commission shall be in writing. The moving party shall also provide a copy of its motion to the Administrative Law Judge at the time the motion is filed with the Secretary.

(b) *Content.* All written motions shall state the particular order, ruling, or action desired and the grounds therefor. They must also include the name, address, telephone number, fax number, and e-mail address (if any) of counsel and attach a draft order containing the proposed relief. If a party includes in a motion information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to a protective order, the party shall file two versions of the motion in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The party shall mark its confidential filings with brackets or similar conspicuous markings to indicate the material for which it is claiming confidential treatment. The time period specified by § 3.22(c) within which an opposing party may file an answer will begin to run upon service on that opposing party of the confidential version of the motion.

(c) *Answers.* Within ten (10) days after service of any written motion, or within such longer or shorter time as may be designated by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission, the opposing party shall answer or shall be deemed to have consented to the granting of the relief asked for in the motion. If an opposing party includes in an answer information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to a protective order, the opposing party shall file two versions of the answer in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The moving party shall have no right to reply, except as permitted by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission.

(d) *Motions for extensions.* The Administrative Law Judge or the Commission may waive the requirements of this section as to motions for extensions of time; however, the Administrative Law Judge shall have no authority to rule on *ex parte* motions for extensions of time.

(e) *Rulings on motions for dismissal.* When a motion to dismiss a complaint or for other relief is granted with the result that the proceeding before the Administrative Law Judge is terminated, the Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision in accordance with the provisions of §3.51. If such a motion is granted as to all charges of the complaint in regard to some, but not all, of the respondents, or is granted as to any part of the charges in regard to any or all of the respondents, the Administrative Law Judge shall enter his ruling on the record, in accordance with the procedures set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, and take it into account in his initial decision. When a motion to dismiss is made at the close of the evidence offered in support of the complaint based upon an alleged failure to establish a *prima facie* case, the Administrative Law Judge may defer ruling thereon until immediately after all evidence has been received and the hearing record is closed.

(f) *Statement.* Each motion to quash filed pursuant to §3.34(c), each motion to compel or determine sufficiency pursuant to §3.38(a), each motion for sanctions pursuant to §3.38(b), and each motion for enforcement pursuant to §3.38(c) shall be accompanied by a signed statement representing that counsel for the moving party has conferred with opposing counsel in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach such an agreement. If some of the matters in controversy have been resolved by agreement, the statement shall specify the matters so resolved and the matters remaining unresolved. The statement shall recite the date, time, and place of each such conference between counsel, and the names of all parties participating in each such conference. Unless otherwise ordered by the Administrative Law Judge, the statement required by this rule must be filed only with the first motion concerning compliance with the discovery demand at issue.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 50 FR 42672, Oct. 22, 1985; 52 FR 22293, June 11, 1987; 60 FR 39641, Aug. 3, 1995; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17628, Apr. 3, 2001]

§3.23 Interlocutory appeals.

(a) *Appeals without a determination by the Administrative Law Judge.* The Commission may, in its discretion, entertain interlocutory appeals where a ruling of the Administrative Law Judge:

(1) Requires the disclosure of records of the Commission or another governmental agency or the appearance of an official or employee of the Commission or another governmental agency pursuant to §3.36, if such appeal is based solely on a claim of privilege: *Provided,* that The Administrative Law Judge shall stay until further order of the Commission the effectiveness of any ruling, whether or not appeal is sought, that requires the disclosure of nonpublic Commission minutes, Commissioner circulations, or similar documents prepared by the Commission, individual Commissioner, or the Office of the General Counsel;

(2) Suspends an attorney from participation in a particular proceeding pursuant to §3.42(d); or

(3) Grants or denies an application for intervention pursuant to the provisions of §3.14.

Appeal from such rulings may be sought by filing with the Commission an application for review, not to exceed fifteen (15) pages exclusive of those attachments required below, within five (5) days after notice of the Administrative Law Judge's ruling. Answer thereto may be filed within five (5) days after service of the application for review. The application for review should specify the person or party taking the appeal; should attach the ruling or part thereof from which appeal is being taken and any other portions of the record on which the moving party relies; and should specify under which provisions hereof review is being sought. The Commission upon its own motion may enter an order staying the return date of an order issued by the Administrative Law Judge pursuant to

§ 3.36 or placing the matter on the Commission's docket for review. Any order placing the matter on the Commission's docket for review will set forth the scope of the review and the issues which will be considered and will make provision for the filing of briefs if deemed appropriate by the Commission.

(b) *Appeals upon a determination by the Administrative Law Judge.* Except as provided in paragraph (a) of this section, applications for review of a ruling by the Administrative Law Judge may be allowed only upon request made to the Administrative Law Judge and a determination by the Administrative Law Judge in writing, with justification in support thereof, that the ruling involves a controlling question of law or policy as to which there is substantial ground for difference of opinion and that an immediate appeal from the ruling may materially advance the ultimate termination of the litigation or subsequent review will be an inadequate remedy. Applications for review in writing may be filed, not to exceed fifteen (15) pages exclusive of those attachments required below, within five (5) days after notice of the Administrative Law Judge's determination. Additionally, the moving party is required to attach the ruling or part thereof from which appeal is being taken and any other portions of the record on which the moving party is relying. Answer thereto may be filed within five (5) days after service of the application for review. The Commission may thereupon, in its discretion, permit an appeal. Commission review, if permitted, will be confined to the application for review and answer thereto, without oral argument or further briefs, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission.

(c) *Proceedings not stayed.* Application for review and appeal hereunder shall not stay proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge unless the Judge or the Commission shall so order.

[37 FR 5608, Mar. 17, 1972, as amended at 42 FR 31591, June 22, 1977; 42 FR 33025, June 29, 1977; 43 FR 56902 Dec. 5, 1978; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 3.24 Summary decisions.

(a) *Procedure.* (1) Any party to an adjudicatory proceeding may move, with or without supporting affidavits, for a summary decision in the party's favor upon all or any part of the issues being adjudicated. The motion shall be accompanied by a separate and concise statement of the material facts as to which the moving party contends there is not genuine issue. Counsel in support of the complaint may so move at any time after twenty (20) days following issuance of the complaint and any party respondent may so move at any time after issuance of the complaint. Any such motion by any party, however, shall be filed in accordance with the scheduling order issued pursuant to § 3.21, but in any case at least twenty (20) days before the date fixed for the adjudicatory hearing.

(2) Any other party may, within ten (10) days after service of the motion, file opposing affidavits. The opposing party shall include a separate and concise statement of those material facts as to which the opposing party contends there exists a genuine issue for trial, as provided in § 3.24(a)(3). The Administrative Law Judge may, in his discretion, set the matter for oral argument and call for the submission of briefs or memoranda. If a party includes in any such brief or memorandum information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to a protective order, the party shall file two versions of the document in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The decision sought by the moving party shall be rendered within thirty (30) days after the opposition or any final brief ordered by the Administrative Law Judge is filed, if the pleadings and any depositions, answers to interrogatories, admissions on file, and affidavits show that there is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to such decision as a matter of law. Any such decision shall constitute the initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge and shall accord with the procedures set forth in § 3.51(c). A summary decision, interlocutory in character and in compliance with the procedures set forth in § 3.51(c), may be rendered on the issue of liability alone although

there is a genuine issue as to the nature and extent of relief.

(3) Affidavits shall set forth such facts as would be admissible in evidence and shall show affirmatively that the affiant is competent to testify to the matters stated therein. The Administrative Law Judge may permit affidavits to be supplemented or opposed by depositions, answers to interrogatories, or further affidavits. When a motion for summary decision is made and supported as provided in this rule, a party opposing the motion may not rest upon the mere allegations or denials of his pleading; his response, by affidavits or as otherwise provided in this rule, must set forth specific facts showing that there is a genuine issue of fact for trial. If no such response is filed, summary decision, if appropriate, shall be rendered.

(4) Should it appear from the affidavits of a party opposing the motion that he cannot, for reasons stated, present by affidavit facts essential to justify his opposition, the Administrative Law Judge may refuse the application for summary decision or may order a continuance to permit affidavits to be obtained or depositions to be taken or discovery to be had or make such other order as is appropriate and a determination to that effect shall be made a matter of record.

(5) If on motion under this rule a summary decision is not rendered upon the whole case or for all the relief asked and a trial is necessary, the Administrative Law Judge shall make an order specifying the facts that appear without substantial controversy and directing further proceedings in the action. The facts so specified shall be deemed established.

(b) *Affidavits filed in bad faith.* (1) Should it appear to the satisfaction of the Administrative Law Judge at any time that any of the affidavits presented pursuant to this rule are presented in bad faith, or solely for the purpose of delay, or are patently frivolous, the Administrative Law Judge shall enter a determination to that effect upon the record.

(2) If upon consideration of all relevant facts attending the submission of any affidavit covered by paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the Administrative Law Judge concludes that action by him to suspend or remove an attorney from the case is warranted, he shall take action as specified in §3.42(d). If the Administrative Law Judge concludes, upon consideration of all the relevant facts attending the submission of any affidavit covered by paragraph (b)(1) of this section, that the matter should be certified to the Commission for consideration of disciplinary action against an attorney, including reprimand, suspension or disbarment, the examiner shall certify the matter, with his findings and recommendations, to the Commission for its consideration of disciplinary action in the manner provided by the Commission's rules.

[35 FR 5007, Mar. 24, 1970, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 52 FR 22293, June 11, 1987; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17628, Apr. 3, 2001]

§3.25 Consent agreement settlements.

(a) The Administrative Law Judge may, in his discretion and without suspension of prehearing procedures, hold conferences for the purpose of supervising negotiations for the settlement of the case, in whole or in part, by way of consent agreement.

(b) A proposal to settle a matter in adjudication by consent agreement shall be submitted by way of a motion to withdraw the matter from adjudication for the purpose of considering the proposed consent agreement. Such motion shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission, as provided in §4.2. Any such motion shall be accompanied by a proposed consent agreement containing a proposed order executed by one or more respondents and conforming to the requirements of §2.32; the proposed consent agreement itself, however, shall not be placed on the public record unless and until it is accepted by the Commission as provided herein. If the proposed consent agreement affects only some of the respondents or resolves only some of the charges in adjudication, the motion required by this subsection shall so state and shall specify the portions of the matter that the proposal would resolve.

(c) If the proposed consent agreement accompanying the motion has also

been executed by complaint counsel and approved by the appropriate Bureau Director, and the matter is still pending before an Administrative Law Judge, the Secretary shall issue an order withdrawing from adjudication those portions of the matter that the proposal would resolve and all proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge shall be stayed with respect to such portions, pending a determination by the Commission pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section. If the matter is pending before the Commission, the Commission in its discretion may, on motion, issue an order withdrawing from adjudication those portions of the matter that a proposed consent agreement would resolve for the purpose of considering the proposed consent agreement.

(d) If the proposed consent agreement accompanying the motion has not been executed by complaint counsel, the Administrative Law Judge may certify the motion and agreement to the Commission together with his recommendation if he determines, in writing, that there is a likelihood of settlement. The filing of a motion under this subsection and certification thereof to the Commission shall not stay proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge unless the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission shall so order. Upon certification of a motion pursuant to this subsection, the Commission may, if it is satisfied that there is a likelihood of settlement, issue an order withdrawing from adjudication those portions of the matter that the proposal would resolve, for the purpose of considering the proposed consent agreement.

(e) The Commission will treat those portions of a matter withdrawn from adjudication pursuant to paragraph (c) or (d) of this section as being in a nonadjudicative status. Portions not so withdrawn shall remain in an adjudicative status.

(f) After some or all of allegations in a matter have been withdrawn from adjudication, the Commission may accept the proposed consent agreement, reject it and return the matter or affected portions thereof to adjudication for further proceedings or take such other action as it may deem appropriate. If the agreement is accepted, it will be disposed of as provided in § 2.34 of this chapter, except that if, following the public comment period provided for in § 2.34, the Commission decides, based on comments received or otherwise, to withdraw its acceptance of such an agreement, it will so notify the parties and will return to adjudication any portions of the matter previously withdrawn from adjudication for further proceedings or take such other action it considers appropriate.

(g) This rule will not preclude the settlement of the case by regular adjudicatory process through the filing of an admission answer or submission of the case to the Administrative Law Judge on a stipulation of facts and an agreed order.

[40 FR 15236, Apr. 4, 1975, as amended at 42 FR 39659, Aug. 5, 1977; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 54 FR 18885, May 3, 1989; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996; 64 FR 46269, Aug. 25, 1999; 70 FR 67350, Nov. 7, 2005]

§ 3.26 Motions following denial of preliminary injunctive relief.

(a) This section sets forth two procedures by which respondents may obtain consideration of whether continuation of an adjudicative proceeding is in the public interest after a court has denied preliminary injunctive relief in a separate proceeding brought, under section 13(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 53(b), in aid of the adjudication.

(b) A motion under this section shall be addressed to the Commission and filed with the Secretary of the Commission. Such a motion must be filed within fourteen (14) days after:

(1) A district court has denied preliminary injunctive relief, all opportunity has passed for the Commission to seek reconsideration of the denial or to appeal it, and the Commission has neither sought reconsideration of the denial nor appealed it; or

(2) A court of appeals has denied preliminary injunctive relief.

(c) *Withdrawal from adjudication.* If a court has denied preliminary injunctive relief to the Commission in a section 13(b) proceeding brought in aid of an adjudicative proceeding, respondents may move that the adjudicative

proceeding be withdrawn from adjudication in order to consider whether or not the public interest warrants further litigation. Such a motion shall be filed by all of the respondents in the adjudicative proceeding. The Secretary shall issue an order withdrawing the matter from adjudication two days after such a motion is filed, except that, if complaint counsel have objected that the conditions of paragraph (b) of this section have not been met, the Commission shall determine whether to withdraw the matter from adjudication.

(d) *Consideration on the record.* (1) In lieu of a motion to withdraw a matter from adjudication under paragraph (c) of this section, any respondent or respondents may file a motion under this paragraph to dismiss the administrative complaint on the basis that the public interest does not warrant further litigation after a court has denied preliminary injunctive relief to the Commission. Motions filed under this paragraph shall incorporate or be accompanied by a supporting brief or memorandum.

(2) *Stay.* A motion under this paragraph will stay all proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge until such time as the Commission directs otherwise.

(3) *Answer.* Within fourteen (14) days after service of a motion filed under this paragraph, complaint counsel may file an answer.

(4) *Form.* Motions (including any supporting briefs and memoranda) and answers under this paragraph shall not exceed 30 pages if printed, or 45 pages if typewritten, and shall comply with the requirements of §3.52(e).

(5) *In camera materials.* If any filing includes materials that are subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to an order entered in either the proceeding under section 13(b) or in the proceeding under this part, such materials shall be treated as *In camera* materials for purposes of this paragraph and the party shall file two versions of the document in accordance with the procedures set forth in §3.45(e). The time within which complaint counsel may file an answer under this paragraph will begin to run upon service of the *in camera* version of the motion (including any supporting briefs and memoranda).

[60 FR 39641, Aug. 3, 1995]

Subpart D—Discovery; Compulsory Process

§3.31 General provisions.

(a) *Discovery methods.* Parties may obtain discovery by one or more of the following methods: Depositions upon oral examination or written questions; written interrogatories; production of documents or things for inspection and other purposes; and requests for admission. Unless the Administrative Law Judge orders otherwise, the frequency or sequence of these methods is not limited. The parties shall, to the greatest extent practicable, conduct discovery simultaneously; the fact that a party is conducting discovery shall not operate to delay any other party's discovery.

(b) *Initial disclosures.* Complaint counsel and respondent's counsel shall, within five (5) days of receipt of a respondent's answer to the complaint and without awaiting a discovery request, provide to each other:

(1) The name, and, if known, the address and telephone number of each individual likely to have discoverable information relevant to the allegations of the Commission's complaint, to the proposed relief, or to the defenses of the respondent, as set forth in §3.31(c)(1);

(2) A copy of, or a description by category and location of, all documents, data compilations, and tangible things in the possession, custody, or control of the Commission or respondent(s) that are relevant to the allegations of the Commission's complaint, to the proposed relief, or to the defenses of the respondent, as set forth in §3.31(c)(1); unless such information or materials are privileged as defined in §3.31(c)(2), pertain to hearing preparation as defined in §3.31(c)(3), pertain to experts as defined in §3.31(c)(4), or are obtainable from some other source that is more convenient, less burdensome, or less expensive. A party shall make its disclosures based on the information then reasonably available to it

and is not excused from making its disclosures because it has not fully completed its investigation.

(3) In addition to the disclosures required by paragraphs (b)(1) and (2), of this section, the parties shall disclose to each other the identity of any person who may be used at trial to present evidence as an expert. Except as otherwise stipulated or directed by the Administrative Law Judge, this disclosure shall, with respect to a witness who is retained or specially employed to provide expert testimony in the case or whose duties as an employee of the party regularly involve giving expert testimony, be accompanied by a written report prepared and signed by the witness. The report shall contain a complete statement of all opinions to be expressed and the basis and reasons therefor; the data or other information considered by the witness in forming the opinions; any exhibits to be used as a summary of or support for the opinions; the qualifications of the witness, including a list of all publications authored by the witness within the preceding ten years; the compensation to be paid for the study and testimony; and a listing of any other cases in which the witness has testified as an expert at trial or by deposition within the preceding four years. These disclosures shall be made at the times and in the sequence directed by the Administrative Law Judge. In the absence of other directions from the Administrative Law Judge or stipulation by the parties, the disclosures shall be made at least 90 days before the trial date or the date the case is to be ready for trial or, if the evidence is intended solely to contradict or rebut proposed expert testimony on the same subject matter identified by another party under this paragraph, within 30 days after the disclosure made by the other party.

(c) *Scope of discovery*. Unless otherwise limited by order of the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission in accordance with these rules, the scope of discovery is as follows:

(1) *In general; limitations*. Parties may obtain discovery to the extent that it may be reasonably expected to yield information relevant to the allegations of the complaint, to the proposed relief, or to the defenses of any respondent. Such information may include the existence, description, nature, custody, condition and location of any books, documents, or other tangible things and the identity and location of persons having any knowledge of any discoverable matter. Information may not be withheld from discovery on grounds that the information will be inadmissible at the hearing if the information sought appears reasonably calculated to lead to the discovery of admissible evidence. The frequency or extent of use of the discovery methods otherwise permitted under these rules shall be limited by the Administrative Law Judge if he determines that:

(i) The discovery sought is unreasonably cumulative or duplicative, or is obtainable from some other source that is more convenient, less burdensome, or less expensive;

(ii) The party seeking discovery has had ample opportunity by discovery in the action to obtain the information sought; or

(iii) The burden and expense of the proposed discovery outweigh its likely benefit.

(2) *Privilege*. The Administrative Law Judge may enter a protective order denying or limiting discovery to preserve the privilege of a witness, person, or governmental agency as governed by the Constitution, any applicable act of Congress, or the principles of the common law as they may be interpreted by the Commission in the light of reason and experience.

(3) *Hearing preparations: Materials*. Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c)(4) of this section, a party may obtain discovery of documents and tangible things otherwise discoverable under paragraph (c)(1) of this section and prepared in anticipation of litigation or for hearing by or for another party or by or for that other party's representative (including the party's attorney, consultant, or agent) only upon a showing that the party seeking discovery has substantial need of the materials in the preparation of its case and that the party is unable without undue hardship to obtain the substantial equivalent of the materials by other means. In ordering discovery of such materials when the required

showing has been made, the Administrative Law Judge shall protect against disclosure of the mental impressions, conclusions, opinions, or legal theories of an attorney or other representative of a party.

(4) *Hearing Preparation: Experts.* (i) A party may depose any person who has been identified as an expert whose opinions may be presented at trial. If a report from the expert is required under §3.31(b)(3), the deposition shall not be conducted until after the report is provided.

(A) A party may through interrogatories require any other party to identify each person whom the other party expects to call as an expert witness at hearing, to state the subject matter on which the expert is expected to testify, and to state the substance of the facts and opinions to which the expert is expected to testify and a summary of the grounds for each opinion.

(B) Upon motion, the Administrative Law Judge may order further discovery by other means, subject to such restrictions as to scope as the Administrative Law Judge may deem appropriate.

(ii) A party may discover facts known or opinions held by an expert who has been retained or specially employed by another party in anticipation of litigation or preparation for hearing and who is not expected to be called as a witness at hearing, only upon a showing of exceptional circumstances under which it is impracticable for the party seeking discovery to obtain facts or opinions on the same subject by other means.

(d) *Protective orders; order to preserve evidence.* (1) The Administrative Law Judge may deny discovery or make any order which justice requires to protect a party or other person from annoyance, embarrassment, oppression, or undue burden or expense, or to prevent undue delay in the proceeding. Such an order may also be issued to preserve evidence upon a showing that there is substantial reason to believe that such evidence would not otherwise be available for presentation at the hearing.

(2) [Reserved]

(e) *Supplementation of disclosures and responses.* A party who has made an initial disclosure under §3.31(b) or responded to a request for discovery with a disclosure or response is under a duty to supplement or correct the disclosure or response to include information thereafter acquired if ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or in the following circumstances:

(1) A party is under a duty to supplement at appropriate intervals its initial disclosures under §3.31(b) if the party learns that in some material respect the information disclosed is incomplete or incorrect and if the additional or corrective information has not otherwise been made known to the other parties during the discovery process or in writing.

(2) A party is under a duty seasonably to amend a prior response to an interrogatory, request for production, or request for admission if the party learns that the response is in some material respect incomplete or incorrect.

(f) *Stipulations.* When approved by the Administrative Law Judge, the parties may by written stipulation (1) provide that depositions may be taken before any person, at any time or place, upon any notice, and in any manner and when so taken may be used like other depositions, and (2) modify the procedures provided by these rules for other methods of discovery.

(g) *Ex parte rulings on applications for compulsory process.* Applications for the issuance of subpoenas to compel testimony at an adjudicative hearing pursuant to §3.34 may be made *ex parte*, and, if so made, such applications and rulings thereon shall remain *ex parte* unless otherwise ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission.

[43 FR 56864, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17628, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§3.32 Admissions.

(a) At any time after thirty (30) days after issuance of complaint, or after publication of notice of an adjudicative hearing in a rulemaking proceeding under §3.13, any party may serve on any other party a written request for admission of the truth of any matters relevant to the pending proceeding set forth in the request that relate to statements or opinions of fact or of the application of law to fact, including

the genuineness of any documents described in the request. Copies of documents shall be served with the request unless they have been or are otherwise furnished or are known to be, and in the request are stated as being, in the possession of the other party. Each matter of which an admission is requested shall be separately set forth. A copy of the request shall be filed with the Secretary.

(b) The matter is admitted unless, within ten (10) days after service of the request, or within such shorter or longer time as the Administrative Law Judge may allow, the party to whom the request is directed serves upon the party requesting the admission, with a copy filed with the Secretary, a sworn written answer or objection addressed to the matter. If objection is made, the reasons therefor shall be stated. The answer shall specifically deny the matter or set forth in detail the reasons why the answering party cannot truthfully admit or deny the matter. A denial shall fairly meet the substance of the requested admission, and when good faith requires that a party qualify its answer or deny only a part of the matter of which an admission is requested, the party shall specify so much of it as is true and qualify or deny the remainder. An answering party may not give lack of information or knowledge as a reason for failure to admit or deny unless the party states that it has made reasonable inquiry and that the information known to or readily obtainable by the party is insufficient to enable it to admit or deny. A party who considers that a matter of which an admission has been requested presents a genuine issue for trial may not, on that ground alone, object to the request; the party may deny the matter or set fourth reasons why the party cannot admit or deny it.

(c) Any matter admitted under this rule is conclusively established unless the Administrative Law Judge on motion permits withdrawal or amendment of the admission. The Administrative Law Judge may permit withdrawal or amendment when the presentation of the merits of the proceeding will be subserved thereby and the party who obtained the admission fails to satisfy the Administrative Law Judge that withdrawal or amendment will prejudice him in maintaining his action or defense on the merits. Any admission made by a party under this rule is for the purpose of the pending proceeding only and is not an admission by him for any other purpose nor may it be used against him in any other proceeding.

[43 FR 56865, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

§ 3.33 Depositions.

(a) *In general.* Any party may take a deposition of a named person or of a person or persons described with reasonable particularity, provided that such deposition is reasonably expected to yield information within the scope of discovery under §3.31(c)(1). Such party may, by motion, obtain from the Administrative Law Judge an order to preserve relevant evidence upon a showing that there is substantial reason to believe that such evidence would not otherwise be available for presentation at the hearing. Depositions may be taken before any person having power to administer oaths, either under the law of the United States or of the state or other place in which the deposition is taken, who may be designated by the party seeking the deposition, provided that such person shall have no interest in the outcome of the proceeding. The party seeking the deposition shall serve upon each person whose deposition is sought and upon each party to the proceeding reasonable notice in writing of the time and place at which it will be taken, and the name and address of each person or persons to be examined, if known, and if the name is not known, a description sufficient to identify them. The parties may stipulate in writing or the Administrative Law Judge may upon motion order that a deposition be taken by telephone or other remote electronic means. A deposition taken by such means is deemed taken at the place where the deponent is to answer questions.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) *Notice to corporation or other organization.* A party may name as the deponent a public or private corporation, partnership, association, governmental agency other than the Federal Trade

Commission, or any bureau or regional office to the Federal Trade Commission, and describe with reasonable particularity the matters on which examination is requested. The organization so names shall designate one or more officers, directors, or managing agents, or other persons who consent to testify on its behalf, and may set forth, for each person designated, the matters on which he will testify. A subpoena shall advise a non-party organization of its duty to make such a designation. The persons so designated shall testify as to matters known or reasonably available to the organization. This subsection does not preclude taking a deposition by any other procedure authorized in these rules.

(d) *Taking of deposition.* Each deponent shall be duly sworn, and any party shall have the right to question him. Objections to questions or to evidence presented shall be in short form, stating the grounds of objections relied upon. The questions propounded and the answers thereto, together with all objections made, shall be recorded and certified by the officer. Thereafter, upon payment of the charges therefor, the officer shall furnish a copy of the deposition to the deponent and to any party.

(e) *Depositions upon written questions.* A party desiring to take a deposition upon written questions shall serve them upon every other party with a notice stating:

(1) The name and address of the person who is to answer them, and

(2) The name or descriptive title and address of the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

A deposition upon written questions may be taken of a public or private corporation, partnership, association, governmental agency other than the Federal Trade Commission, or any bureau or regional office of the Federal Trade Commission in accordance with the provisions of Rule 3.33(c). Within 30 days after the notice and written questions are served, any other party may serve cross questions upon all other parties. Within 10 days after being served with cross questions, the party taking the deposition may serve redirect questions upon all other parties. Within 10 days after being served with redirect questions, any other party may serve recross questions upon all other parties. The content of any question shall not be disclosed to the deponent prior to the taking of the deposition. A copy of the notice and copies of all questions served shall be delivered by the party taking the deposition to the officer designated in the notice, who shall proceed promptly to take the testimony of the deponent in response to the questions and to prepare, certify, and file or mail the deposition, attaching thereto the copy of the notice and the questions received by him. When the deposition is filed the party taking it shall promptly give notice thereof to all other parties.

(f) *Correction of deposition.* A deposition may be corrected, as to form or substance, in the manner provided by §3.44(b). Any such deposition shall, in addition to the other required procedures, be read to or by the deponent and signed by him, unless the parties by stipulation waive the signing or the deponent is unavailable or cannot be found or refuses to sign. If the deposition is not signed by the deponent within 30 days of its submission or attempted submission, the officer shall sign it and certify that the signing has been waived or that the deponent is unavailable or that the deponent has refused to sign, as the case may be, together with the reason for the refusal to sign, if any has been given. The deposition may then be used as though signed unless, on a motion to suppress under Rule 3.33(g)(3)(iv), the Administrative Law Judge determines that the reasons given for the refusal to sign require rejection of the deposition in whole or in part. In addition to and not in lieu of the procedure for formal correction of the deposition, the deponent may enter in the record at the time of signing a list of objections to the transcription of his remarks, stating with specificity the alleged errors in the transcript.

(g)(1) *Use of depositions in hearings.* At the hearing on the complaint or upon a motion, any part or all of a deposition, so far as admissible under the rules of evidence applied as though the witness were then present and testifying, may be used against any party who was present or represented at the taking of

the deposition or who had reasonable notice thereof, in accordance with any of the following provisions:

(i) Any deposition may be used for the purpose of contradicting or impeaching the testimony of deponent as a witness.

(ii) The deposition of a party or of anyone who at the time of taking the deposition was an officer, director, or managing agent, or a person designated to testify on behalf of a public or private corporation, partnership or association which is a party, or of an official or employee (other than a special employee) of the Commission, may be used by an adverse party for any purpose.

(iii) A deposition may be used by any party for any purpose if the Administrative Law Judge finds:

(A) That the deponent is dead; or

(B) That the deponent is out of the United States or is located at such a distance that his attendance would be impractical, unless it appears that the absence of the deponent was procured by the party offering the deposition; or

(C) That the deponent is unable to attend or testify because of age, sickness, infirmity, or imprisonment; or

(D) That the party offering the deposition has been unable to procure the attendance of the deponent by subpoena; or

(E) That such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice and with due regard to the importance of presenting the testimony of witnesses orally in open hearing, to allow the deposition to be used.

(iv) If only part of a deposition is offered in evidence by a party, any other party may introduce any other part which ought in fairness to be considered with the part introduced.

(2) *Objections to admissibility*. Subject to the provisions of paragraph (g)(3) of this section, objection may be made at the hearing to receiving in evidence any deposition or part thereof for any reason which would require the exclusion of the evidence if the witness were then present and testifying.

(3) *Effect of errors and irregularities in depositions*—(i) *As to notice*. All errors and irregularities in the notice for taking a deposition are waived unless written objection is promptly served upon the party giving the notice.

(ii) *As to disqualification of officer*. Objection to taking a deposition because of disqualification of the officer before whom it is to be taken is waived unless made before the taking of the deposition begins or as soon thereafter as the disqualification becomes known or could be discovered with reasonable diligence.

(iii) *As to taking of deposition*. (A) Objections to the competency of a witness or to the competency, relevancy, or materiality of testimony are not waived by failure to make them before or during the taking of the deposition, unless the ground of the objection is one which might have been obviated or removed if presented at that time.

(B) Errors and irregularities occurring at the oral examination in the manner of taking the deposition, in the form of the questions or answers, in the oath or affirmation, or in the conduct of parties, and errors of any kind which might be obviated, removed, or cured if promptly presented, are waived unless seasonable objection thereto is made at the taking of the deposition.

(C) Objections to the form of written questions are waived unless served in writing upon all parties within the time allowed for serving the succeeding cross or other questions and within 5 days after service of the last questions authorized.

(iv) *As to completion and return of deposition*. Errors and irregularities in the manner in which the testimony is transcribed or the deposition is prepared, signed, certified, endorsed, or otherwise dealt with by the officer are waived unless a motion to suppress the deposition or some part thereof is made with reasonable promptness after such defect is or with due diligence might have been ascertained.

[43 FR 56865, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 61 FR 50648, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17629, Apr. 3, 2001]

§ 3.34 Subpoenas.

(a) *Subpoenas ad testificandum*—(1) *Prehearing*. The Secretary of the Commission shall issue a subpoena, signed but otherwise in blank, requiring a person to appear and give testimony at the taking of a deposition to a party

requesting such subpoena, who shall complete it before service.

(2) *Hearing*. Application for issuance of a subpoena commanding a person to attend and give testimony at an adjudicative hearing shall be made in writing to the Administrative Law Judge. Such subpoena may be issued upon a showing of the reasonable relevancy of the expected testimony.

(b) *Subpoenas duces tecum; subpoenas to permit inspection of premises*. The Secretary of the Commission, upon request of a party, shall issue a subpoena, signed but otherwise in blank, commanding a person to produce and permit inspection and copying of designated books, documents, or tangible things, or commanding a person to permit inspection of premises, at a time and place therein specified. The subpoena shall specify with reasonable particularity the material to be produced. The person commanded by the subpoena need not appear in person at the place of production or inspection unless commanded to appear for a deposition or hearing pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section. As used herein, the term ''documents'' includes writings, drawings, graphs, charts, handwritten notes, film, photographs, audio and video recordings and any such representations stored on a computer, a computer disk, CD-ROM, magnetic or electronic tape, or any other means of electronic storage, and other data compilations from which information can be obtained in machine-readable form (translated, if necessary, into reasonably usable form by the person subject to the subpoena). A subpoena *duces tecum* may be used by any party for purposes of discovery, for obtaining documents for use in evidence, or for both purposes, and shall specify with reasonable particularity the materials to be produced.

(c) *Motions to quash; limitation on subpoenas subject to §3.36*. Any motion by the subject of a subpoena to limit or quash the subpoena shall be filed within the earlier of ten (10) days after service thereof or the time for compliance therewith. Such motions shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the subpoena, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation, and shall include the statement required by Rule 3.22(f). Nothing in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section authorizes the issuance of subpoenas requiring the appearance of, or the production of documents in the possession, custody, or control of, an official or employee of a governmental agency other than the Commission, or subpoenas to be served in a foreign country, which may be authorized only in accordance with §3.36.

[43 FR 56866, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 42672, Oct. 22, 1985; 61 FR 50648, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17629, Apr. 3, 2001]

§3.35 Interrogatories to parties.

(a) *Availability; Procedures for Use*. (1) Any party may serve upon any other party written interrogatories, not exceeding twenty-five (25) in number, including all discrete subparts, to be answered by the party served or, if the party served is a public or private corporation, partnership, association or governmental agency, by any officer or agent, who shall furnish such information as is available to the party. For this purpose, information shall not be deemed to be available insofar as it is in the possession of the Commissioners, the General Counsel, the office of Administrative Law Judges, or the Secretary in his capacity as custodian or recorder of any such information, or their respective staffs.

(2) Each interrogatory shall be answered separately and fully in writing under oath, unless it is objected to on grounds not raised and ruled on in connection with the authorization, in which event the reasons for objection shall be stated in lieu of an answer. The answers are to be signed by the person making them, and the objections signed by the attorney making them. The party upon whom the interrogatories have been served shall serve a copy of the answers, and objections, if any, within thirty (30) days after the service of the interrogatories. The Administrative Law Judge may allow a shorter or longer time.

(b) *Scope; use at hearing*. (1) Interrogatories may relate to any matters that can be inquired into under §3.31(c)(1), and the answers may be used to the extent permitted by the rules of evidence.

(2) An interrogatory otherwise proper is not necessarily objectionable merely because an answer to the interrogatory involves an opinion or contention that relates to fact or the application of law to fact, but the Administrative Law Judge may order that such an interrogatory need not be answered until after designated discovery has been completed or until a pre-trial conference or other later time.

(c) *Option to produce records.* Where the answer to an interrogatory may be derived or ascertained from the records of the party upon whom the interrogatory has been served or from an examination, audit or inspection of such records, or from a compilation, abstract or summary based thereon, and the burden of deriving or ascertaining the answer is substantially the same for the party serving the interrogatory as for the party served, it is a sufficient answer to such interrogatory to specify the records from which the answer may be derived or ascertained and to afford to the party serving the interrogatory reasonable opportunity to examine, audit or inspect such records and to make copies, compilations, abstracts or summaries. The specification shall include sufficient detail to permit the interrogating party to identify readily the individual documents from which the answer may be ascertained.

[43 FR 56867, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

§ 3.36 Applications for subpoenas for records, or appearances by officials or employees, of governmental agencies other than the Commission, and subpoenas to be served in a foreign country.

(a) *Form.* An application for issuance of a subpoena for the production of documents, as defined in § 3.34(b), or for the issuance of a subpoena requiring access to documents or other tangible things, for the purposes described in § 3.37(a), in the possession, custody, or control of a governmental agency other than the Commission or the officials or employees of such other agency, or for the issuance of a subpoena requiring the appearance of an official or employee of another governmental agency, or for the issuance of a subpoena to be served in a foreign country, shall be made in the form of a written motion filed in accordance with the provisions of § 3.22(a). No application for records pursuant to § 4.11 of this chapter or the Freedom of Information Act may be filed with the Administrative Law Judge.

(b) *Content.* The motion shall satisfy the same requirements for a subpoena under § 3.34 or a request for production or access under § 3.37, together with a specific showing that:

(1) The material sought is reasonable in scope:

(2) If for purposes of discovery, the material falls within the limits of discovery under § 3.31(c)(1), or, if for an adjudicative hearing, the material is reasonably relevant;

(3) The information or material sought cannot reasonably be obtained by other means; and

(4) With respect to subpoenas to be served in a foreign country, that the party seeking discovery has a good faith belief that the discovery requested would be permitted by treaty, law, custom or practice in the country from which the discovery is sought and that any additional procedural requirements have been or will be met before the subpoena is served.

(c) *Execution.* If an ALJ issues an Order authorizing a subpoena pursuant to this section, the moving party may forward to the Secretary a request for the authorized subpoena, with a copy of the authorizing Order attached. Each such subpoena shall be signed by the Secretary; shall have attached to it a copy of the authorizing Order; and shall be served by the moving party only in conjunction with a copy of the authorizing Order.

[66 FR 17629, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 3.37 Production of documents and things; access for inspection and other purposes.

(a) *Availability; procedures for use.* Any party may serve on another party a request: to produce and permit the party making the request, or someone acting on the party's behalf, to inspect and copy any designated documents, as defined in § 3.34(b), or to inspect and copy, test, or sample any tangible things which are within the scope of

§3.31(c)(1) and in the possession, custody or control of the party upon whom the request is served; or to permit entry upon designated land or other property in the possession or control of the party upon whom the order would be served for the purpose of inspection and measuring, surveying, photographing, testing, or sampling the property or any designated object or operation thereon, within the scope of §3.31(c)(1). Each such request shall specify with reasonable particularity the documents or things to be inspected, or the property to be entered. Each such request shall also specify a reasonable time, place, and manner of making the inspection and performing the related acts. A party shall make documents available as they are kept in the usual course of business or shall organize and label them to correspond with the categories in the request. A person not a party to the action may be compelled to produce documents and things or to submit to an inspection as provided in §3.34.

(b) *Response; objections.* The response of the party upon whom the request is served shall state, with respect to each item or category, that inspection and related activities will be permitted as requested, unless the request is objected to, in which event the reasons for the objection shall be stated. If objection is made to part of an item or category, the part shall be specified and inspection permitted of the remaining parts. The party submitting the request may move for an order under §3.38(a) with respect to any objection to or other failure to respond to the request or any part thereof, or any failure to permit inspection as requested.

[61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

§3.38 Motion for order compelling disclosure or discovery; sanctions.

(a) *Motion for order to compel.* A party may apply by motion to the Administrative Law Judge for an order compelling disclosure or discovery, including a determination of the sufficiency of the answers or objections with respect to the initial disclosures required by §3.31(b), a request for admission under §3.32, a deposition under §3.33, or an interrogatory under §3.35.

(1) *Initial disclosures; requests for admission; depositions; interrogatories.* Unless the objecting party sustains its burden of showing that the objection is justified, the Administrative Law Judge shall order that an answer be served or disclosure otherwise be made. If the Administrative Law Judge determines that an answer or other response by the objecting party does not comply with the requirements of these rules, he may order either that the matter is admitted or that an amended answer or response be served. The Administrative Law Judge may, in lieu of these orders, determine that final disposition may be made at a prehearing conference or at a designated time prior to trial.

(2) *Requests for production or access.* If a party fails to respond to or comply as requested with a request for production or access made under §3.37(a), the discovering party may move for an order to compel production or access in accordance with the request.

(b) If a party or an officer or agent of a party fails to comply with a subpoena or with an order including, but not limited to, an order for the taking of a deposition, the production of documents, or the answering of interrogatories, or requests for admissions, or an order of the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission issued as, or in accordance with, a ruling upon a motion concerning such an order or subpoena or upon an appeal from such a ruling, the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission, or both, for the purpose of permitting resolution of relevant issues and disposition of the proceeding without unnecessary delay despite such failure, may take such action in regard thereto as is just, including but not limited to the following:

(1) Infer that the admission, testimony, documents or other evidence would have been adverse to the party;

(2) Rule that for the purposes of the proceeding the matter or matters concerning which the order or subpoena was issued be taken as established adversely to the party;

(3) Rule that the party may not introduce into evidence or otherwise rely, in support of any claim or defense, upon testimony by such party, officer, or agent, or the documents or other evidence;

(4) Rule that the party may not be heard to object to introduction and use of secondary evidence to show what the withheld admission, testimony, documents, or other evidence would have shown;

(5) Rule that a pleading, or part of a pleading, or a motion or other submission by the party, concerning which the order or subpoena was issued, be stricken, or that a decision of the proceeding be rendered against the party, or both.

(c) Any such action may be taken by written or oral order issued in the course of the proceeding or by inclusion in an initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge or an order or opinion of the Commission. It shall be the duty of parties to seek and Administrative Law Judges to grant such of the foregoing means of relief or other appropriate relief as may be sufficient to compensate for withheld testimony, documents, or other evidence. If in the Administrative Law Judge's opinion such relief would not be sufficient, or in instances where a nonparty fails to comply with a subpoena or order, he shall certify to the Commission a request that court enforcement of the subpoena or order be sought.

[43 FR 56867, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

§ 3.38A Withholding requested material.

(a) Any person withholding material responsive to a subpoena issued pursuant to § 3.34, written interrogatories requested pursuant to § 3.35, a request for production or access pursuant to § 3.37, or any other request for the production of materials under this part, shall assert a claim of privilege or any similar claim not later than the date set for production of the material. Such person shall, if so directed in the subpoena or other request for production, submit, together with such claim, a schedule of the items withheld which states individually as to each such item the type, title, specific subject matter, and date of the item; the names, addresses, positions, and organizations of all authors and recipients of the item; and the specific grounds for claiming that the item is privileged.

(b) A person withholding material for reasons described in § 3.38A(a) shall comply with the requirements of that subsection in lieu of filing a motion to limit or quash compulsory process.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719 as amended (15 U.S.C. 45))

[44 FR 54043, Sept. 18, 1979, as amended at 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

§ 3.39 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.

(a) Where Commission complaint counsel desire the issuance of an order requiring a witness or deponent to testify or provide other information and granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, United States Code, Directors and Assistant Directors of Bureaus and Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors of Commission Regional Offices who supervise complaint counsel responsible for presenting evidence in support of the complaint are authorized to determine:

(1) That the testimony or other information sought from a witness or deponent, or prospective witness or deponent, may be necessary to the public interest, and

(2) That such individual has refused or is likely to refuse to testify or provide such information on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination; and to request, through the Commission's liaison officer, approval by the Attorney General for the issuance of such order. Upon receipt of approval by the Attorney General (or his designee), the Administrative Law Judge is authorized to issue an order requiring the witness or deponent to testify or provide other information and granting immunity when the witness or deponent has invoked his privilege against self-incrimination and it cannot be determined that such privilege was improperly invoked.

(b) Requests by counsel other than Commission complaint counsel for an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information and granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, United States Code, may be made to the Administrative Law Judge and may be made *ex parte*. When such requests are made, the Administrative Law Judge is authorized to determine:

(1) That the testimony or other information sought from a witness or deponent, or prospective witness or deponent, may be necessary to the public interest, and

(2) That such individual has refused or is likely to refuse to testify or provide such information on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination; and, upon making such determinations, to request, through the Commission's liaison officer, approval by the Attorney General for the issuance of an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information and granting immunity; and, after the Attorney General (or his designee) has granted such approval, to issue such order when the witness or deponent has invoked his privilege against self-incrimination and it cannot be determined that such privilege was improperly invoked.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[37 FR 5017, Mar. 9, 1972, as amended at 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 66 FR 64143, Dec. 12, 2001]

§3.40 Admissibility of evidence in advertising substantiation cases.

(a) If a person, partnership, or corporation is required through compulsory process under section 6, 9 or 20 of the Act issued after October 26, 1977 to submit to the Commission substantiation in support of an express or an implied representation contained in an advertisement, such person, partnership or corporation shall not thereafter be allowed, in any adjudicative proceeding in which it is alleged that the person, partnership, or corporation lacked a reasonable basis for the representation, and for any purpose relating to the defense of such allegation, to introduce into the record, whether directly or indirectly through references contained in documents or oral testimony, any material of any type whatsoever that was required to be but was not timely submitted in response to said compulsory process. *Provided, however*, that a person, partnership, or corporation is not, within the meaning of this section, required through compulsory process to submit substantiation with respect to those portions of said compulsory process to which such person, partnership, or corporation has raised good faith legal objections in a timely motion pursuant to the Commission's Rules of Practice and Procedure, until the Commission denies such motion; or if the person, partnership, or corporation thereafter continues to refuse to comply, until such process has been judicially enforced.

(b) The Administrative Law Judge shall, upon motion, at any stage exclude all material that was required to be but was not timely submitted in response to compulsory process described in paragraph (a) of this section, or any reference to such material, unless the person, partnership, or corporation demonstrates in a hearing, and the Administrative Law Judge finds, that by the exercise of due diligence the material could not have been timely submitted in response to the compulsory process, and that the Commission was notified of the existence of the material immediately upon its discovery. Said findings of the Administrative Law Judge shall be in writing and shall specify with particularity the evidence relied upon. The rules normally governing the admissibility of evidence in Commission proceedings shall in any event apply to any material coming within the above exception.

[42 FR 56500, Oct. 10, 1977; 42 FR 61450, Dec. 5, 1977, as amended at 45 FR 45578, July 7, 1980]

Subpart E—Hearings

§3.41 General rules.

(a) *Public hearings*. All hearings in adjudicative proceedings shall be public unless an *in camera* order is entered by the Administrative Law Judge pursuant to §3.45(b) of this chapter or unless otherwise ordered by the Commission.

(b) *Expedition*. Hearings shall proceed with all reasonable expedition, and, insofar as practicable, shall be held at one place and shall continue, except for brief intervals of the sort normally involved in judicial proceedings, without suspension until concluded. Consistent with the requirements of expedition:

(1) The Administrative Law Judge may order hearings at more than one place and may grant a reasonable recess at the end of a case-in-chief for the purpose of discovery deferred during the pre-hearing procedure where the Administrative Law Judge determines

that such recess will materially expedite the ultimate disposition of the proceeding.

(2) When actions involving a common question of law or fact are pending before the Administrative Law Judge, the Administrative Law Judge may order a joint hearing of any or all the matters in issue in the actions; the Administrative Law Judge may order all the actions consolidated; and the Administrative Law Judge may make such orders concerning proceedings therein as may tend to avoid unnecessary costs or delay.

(3) When separate hearings will be conducive to expedition and economy, the Administrative Law Judge may order a separate hearing of any claim, or of any separate issue, or of any number of claims or issues.

(c) *Rights of parties.* Every party, except intervenors, whose rights are determined under § 3.14, shall have the right of due notice, cross-examination, presentation of evidence, objection, motion, argument, and all other rights essential to a fair hearing.

(d) *Adverse witnesses.* An adverse party, or an officer, agent, or employee thereof, and any witness who appears to be hostile, unwilling, or evasive, may be interrogated by leading questions and may also be contradicted and impeached by the party calling him.

(e) *Participation in adjudicative packaging and labeling hearings.* At adjudicative hearings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, any party or any interested person designated as a party pursuant to § 3.13, or his representative, may be sworn as a witness and heard.

(f) Requests for an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information and granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code, shall be disposed of in accordance with § 3.39.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 37 FR 5017, Mar. 9, 1972; 37 FR 5609, Mar. 17, 1972; 39 FR 34398, Sept. 25, 1974; 44 FR 62887, Nov. 1, 1979]

§ 3.42 Presiding officials.

(a) *Who presides.* Hearings in adjudicative proceedings shall be presided over by a duly qualified Administrative Law Judge or by the Commission or one or more members of the Commission sitting as Administrative Law Judges; and the term *Administrative Law Judge* as used in this part means and applies to the Commission or any of its members when so sitting.

(b) *How assigned.* The presiding Administrative Law Judge shall be designated by the Chief Administrative Law Judge or, when the Commission or one or more of its members preside, by the Commission, who shall notify the parties of the Administrative Law Judge designated.

(c) *Powers and duties.* Administrative Law Judges shall have the duty to conduct fair and impartial hearings, to take all necessary action to avoid delay in the disposition of proceedings, and to maintain order. They shall have all powers necessary to that end, including the following:

(1) To administer oaths and affirmations;

(2) To issue subpenas and orders requiring answers to questions;

(3) To take depositions or to cause depositions to be taken;

(4) To compel admissions, upon request of a party or on their own initiative;

(5) To rule upon offers of proof and receive evidence;

(6) To regulate the course of the hearings and the conduct of the parties and their counsel therein;

(7) To hold conferences for settlement, simplification of the issues, or any other proper purpose;

(8) To consider and rule upon, as justice may require, all procedural and other motions appropriate in an adjudicative proceeding, including motions to open defaults;

(9) To make and file initial decisions;

(10) To certify questions to the Commission for its determination;

(11) To reject written submissions that fail to comply with rule requirements, or deny *in camera* status without prejudice until a party complies with all relevant rules; and

(12) To take any action authorized by the rules in this part or in conformance with the provisions of the Administrative Procedure Act as restated and incorporated in title 5, U.S.C.

(d) *Suspension of attorneys by Administrative Law Judge.* The Administrative

Law Judge shall have the authority, for good cause stated on the record, to suspend or bar from participation in a particular proceeding any attorney who shall refuse to comply with his directions, or who shall be guilty of disorderly, dilatory, obstructionist, or contumacious conduct, or contemptuous language in the course of such proceeding. Any attorney so suspended or barred may appeal to the Commission in accordance with the provisions of §3.23(a). The appeal shall not operate to suspend the hearing unless otherwise ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission; in the event the hearing is not suspended, the attorney may continue to participate therein pending disposition of the appeal.

(e) *Substitution of Administrative Law Judge.* In the event of the substitution of a new Administrative Law Judge for the one originally designated, any motion predicated upon such substitution shall be made within five (5) days thereafter.

(f) *Interference.* In the performance of their adjudicative functions, Administrative Law Judges shall not be responsible to or subject to the supervision or direction of any officer, employee, or agent engaged in the performance of investigative or prosecuting functions for the Commission, and all direction by the Commission to Administrative Law Judges concerning any adjudicative proceedings shall appear in and be made a part of the record.

(g) *Disqualification of Administrative Law Judges.* (1) When an Administrative Law Judge deems himself disqualified to preside in a particular proceeding, he shall withdraw therefrom by notice on the record and shall notify the Director of Administrative Law Judges of such withdrawal.

(2) Whenever any party shall deem the Administrative Law Judge for any reason to be disqualified to preside, or to continue to preside, in a particular proceeding, such party may file with the Secretary a motion addressed to the Administrative Law Judge to disqualify and remove him, such motion to be supported by affidavits setting forth the alleged grounds for disqualification. If the Administrative Law Judge does not disqualify himself within ten (10) days, he shall certify the motion to the Commission, together with any statement he may wish to have considered by the Commission. The Commission shall promptly determine the validity of the grounds alleged, either directly or on the report of another Administrative Law Judge appointed to conduct a hearing for that purpose.

(3) Such motion shall be filed at the earliest practicable time after the participant learns, or could reasonably have learned, of the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(h) *Failure to comply with Administrative Law Judge's directions.* Any party who refuses or fails to comply with a lawfully issued order or direction of an Administrative Law Judge may be considered to be in contempt of the Commission. The circumstances of any such neglect, refusal, or failure, together with a recommendation for appropriate action, shall be promptly certified by the Administrative Law Judge to the Commission. The Commission may make such orders in regard thereto as the circumstances may warrant.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 37 FR 5609, Mar. 17, 1972; 41 FR 8340, Feb. 26, 1976; 43 FR 56868, Dec. 4, 1978; 46 FR 45750, Sept. 15, 1981; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 66 FR 17629, Apr. 3, 2001]

§3.43 Evidence.

(a) *Burden of proof.* Counsel representing the Commission, or any person who has filed objections sufficient to warrant the holding of an adjudicative hearing pursuant to §3.13, shall have the burden of proof, but the proponent of any factual proposition shall be required to sustain the burden of proof with respect thereto.

(b) *Admissibility; exclusion of relevant evidence; mode and order of interrogation and presentation.* (1) Relevant, material, and reliable evidence shall be admitted. Irrelevant, immaterial, and unreliable evidence shall be excluded. Evidence, even if relevant, may be excluded if its probative value is substantially outweighed by the danger of unfair prejudice, confusion of the issues, or if the evidence would be misleading, or by considerations of undue delay, waste of time, or needless presentation

of cumulative evidence. The Administrative Law Judge shall exercise reasonable control over the mode and order of interrogating witnesses and presenting evidence so as to—

(i) Make the interrogation and presentation effective for the ascertainment of the truth.

(ii) Avoid needless consumption of time; and

(iii) Protect witnesses from harassment or undue embarrassment.

(2) As respondents are in the best position to determine the nature of documents generated by such respondents and which come from their own files, the burden of proof is on the respondent to introduce evidence to rebut a presumption that such documents are authentic and kept in the regular course of business. *See Lenox, Inc.,* 73 F.T.C. 578, 603–04 (1968).

(c) *Information obtained in investigations.* Any documents, papers, books, physical exhibits, or other materials or information obtained by the Commission under any of its powers may be disclosed by counsel representing the Commission when necessary in connection with adjudicative proceedings and may be offered in evidence by counsel representing the Commission in any such proceeding.

(d) *Official notice.* When any decision of an Administrative Law Judge or of the Commission rests, in whole or in part, upon the taking of official notice of a material fact not appearing in evidence of record, opportunity to disprove such noticed fact shall be granted any party making timely motion therefor.

(e) *Objections.* Objections to evidence shall timely and briefly state the grounds relied upon, but the transcript shall not include argument or debate thereon except as ordered by the Administrative Law Judge. Rulings on all objections shall appear in the record.

(f) *Exceptions.* Formal exception to an adverse ruling is not required.

(g) *Excluded evidence.* When an objection to a question propounded to a witness is sustained, the questioner may make a specific offer of what he expects to prove by the answer of the witness, or the Administrative Law Judge may, in his discretion, receive and report the evidence in full. Rejected exhibits, adequately marked for identification, shall be retained in the record so as to be available for consideration by any reviewing authority.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967; 32 FR 8711, June 17, 1967, as amended at 48 FR 44766, Sept. 30, 1983; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17629, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 3.44 Record.

(a) *Reporting and transcription.* Hearings shall be stenographically reported and transcribed by the official reporter of the Commission under the supervision of the Administrative Law Judge, and the original transcript shall be a part of the record and the sole official transcript. Copies of transcripts are available from the reporter at rates not to exceed the maximum rates fixed by contract between the Commission and the reporter.

(b) *Corrections.* Corrections of the official transcript may be made only when they involve errors affecting substance and then only in the manner herein provided. Corrections ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or agreed to in a written stipulation signed by all counsel and parties not represented by counsel, and approved by the Administrative Law Judge, shall be included in the record, and such stipulations, except to the extent they are capricious or without substance, shall be approved by the Administrative Law Judge. Corrections shall not be ordered by the Administrative Law Judge except upon notice and opportunity for the hearing of objections. Such corrections shall be made by the official reporter by furnishing substitute type pages, under the usual certificate of the reporter, for insertion in the official record. The original uncorrected pages shall be retained in the files of the Commission.

(c) *Closing of the hearing record.* Immediately upon completion of the evidentiary hearing, the Administrative Law Judge shall issue an order closing the hearing record. The Administrative Law Judge shall retain the discretion to permit or order correction of the record as provided in § 3.44(b).

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17630, Apr. 3, 2001]

§3.45 *In camera* orders.

(a) *Definition.* Except as hereinafter provided, material made subject to an *in camera* order will be kept confidential and not placed on the public record of the proceeding in which it was submitted. Only respondents, their counsel, authorized Commission personnel, and court personnel concerned with judicial review may have access thereto, provided that the Administrative Law Judge, the Commission and reviewing courts may disclose such *in camera* material to the extent necessary for the proper disposition of the proceeding.

(b) *In camera treatment of material.* A party or third party may obtain *in camera* treatment for material, or portions thereof, offered into evidence only by motion to the Administrative Law Judge. Parties who seek to use material obtained from a third party subject to confidentiality restrictions must demonstrate that the third party has been given at least ten (10) days notice of the proposed use of such material. Each such motion must include an attachment containing a copy of each page of the document in question on which *in camera* or otherwise confidential excerpts appear. The Administrative Law Judge may order that such material, whether admitted or rejected, be placed *in camera* only after finding that its public disclosure will likely result in a clearly defined, serious injury to the person, partnership or corporation requesting *in camera* treatment. This finding shall be based on the standard articulated in *H.P. Hood & Sons, Inc.*, 58 F.T.C. 1184, 1188 (1961); *see also Bristol-Myers Co.*, 90 F.T.C. 455, 456 (1977), which established a three-part test that was modified by *General Foods Corp.*, 95 F.T.C. 352, 355 (1980). The party submitting material for which *in camera* treatment is sought must provide, for each piece of such evidence and affixed to such evidence, the name and address of any person who should be notified in the event that the Commission intends to disclose *in camera* information in a final decision. No material, or portion thereof, offered into evidence, whether admitted or rejected, may be withheld from the public record unless it falls within the scope of an order issued in accordance with this section, stating the date on which *in camera* treatment will expire, and including:

(1) A description of the material;

(2) A statement of the reasons for granting *in camera* treatment; and

(3) A statement of the reasons for the date on which *in camera* treatment will expire. Such expiration date may not be omitted except in unusual circumstances, in which event the order shall state with specificity the reasons why the need for confidentiality of the material, or portion thereof at issue is not likely to decrease over time, and any other reasons why such material is entitled to *in camera* treatment for an indeterminate period. If an *in camera* order is silent as to duration, without explanation, then it will expire three years after its date of issuance. Material subject to an *in camera* order shall be segregated from the public record and filed in a sealed envelope, or other appropriate container, bearing the title, the docket number of the proceeding, the notation ''*In Camera* Record under §3.45,'' and the date on which *in camera* treatment expires. If the Administrative Law Judge has determined that *in camera* treatment should be granted for an indeterminate period, the notation should state that fact.

(c) *Release of in camera material. In camera* material constitutes part of the confidential records of the Commission and is subject to the provisions of §4.11 of this chapter.

(d) *Briefs and other submissions referring to in camera or confidential information.* Parties shall not disclose information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to a protective order in the public version of proposed findings, briefs, or other documents. This provision does not preclude references in such proposed findings, briefs, or other documents to *in camera* or other confidential information or general statements based on the content of such information.

(e) *When in camera or confidential information is included in briefs and other submissions.* If a party includes specific information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality protections

pursuant to a protective order in any document filed in a proceeding under this part, the party shall file two versions of the document. A complete version shall be marked ''*In Camera*'' or ''Subject to Protective Order,'' as appropriate, on the first page and shall be filed with the Secretary and served by the party on the other parties in accordance with the rules in this part. Submitters of *in camera* or other confidential material should mark any such material in the complete versions of their submissions in a conspicuous matter, such as with highlighting or bracketing. References to *in camera* or confidential material must be supported by record citations to relevant evidentiary materials and associated ALJ *in camera* or other confidentiality rulings to confirm that *in camera* or other confidential treatment is warranted for such material. In addition, the document must include an attachment containing a copy of each page of the document in question on which *in camera* or otherwise confidential excerpts appear, and providing the name and address of any person who should be notified of the Commission's intent to disclose in a final decision any of the *in camera* or otherwise confidential information in the document. Any time period within which these rules allow a party to respond to a document shall run from the date the party is served with the complete version of the document. An expurgated version of the document, marked ''Public Record'' on the first page and omitting the *in camera* and confidential information and attachment that appear in the complete version, shall be filed with the Secretary within five (5) days after the filing of the complete version, unless the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission directs otherwise, and shall be served by the party on the other parties in accordance with the rules in this part. The expurgated version shall indicate any omissions with brackets or ellipses, and its pagination and depiction of text on each page shall be identical to that of the *in camera* version.

(f) *When in camera or confidential information is included in rulings or recommendations of the Administrative Law Judge*. If the Administrative Law Judge includes in any ruling or recommendation information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to a protective order, the Administrative Law Judge shall file two versions of the ruling or recommendation. A complete version shall be marked ''*In Camera*'' or ''Subject to Protective Order,'' as appropriate, on the first page and shall be served upon the parties. The complete version will be placed in the *in camera* record of the proceeding. An expurgated version, to be filed within five (5) days after the filing of the complete version, shall omit the *in camera* and confidential information that appears in the complete version, shall be marked ''Public Record'' on the first page, shall be served upon the parties, and shall be included in the public record of the proceeding.

(g) *Provisional in camera rulings*. The Administrative Law Judge may make a provisional grant of *in camera* status to materials if the showing required in § 3.45(b) cannot be made at the time the material is offered into evidence but the Administrative Law Judge determines that the interests of justice would be served by such a ruling. Within twenty (20) days of such a provisional grant of *in camera* status, the party offering the evidence or an interested third party must present a motion to the Administrative Law Judge for a final ruling on whether *in camera* treatment of the material is appropriate pursuant to § 3.45(b). If no such motion is filed, the Administrative Law Judge may either exclude the evidence, deny *in camera* status, or take such other action as is appropriate.

[66 FR 17630, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 3.46 Proposed findings, conclusions, and order.

(a) *General*. Upon the closing of the hearing record, or within a reasonable time thereafter fixed by the Administrative Law Judge, any party may file with the Secretary of the Commission for consideration of the Administrative Law Judge proposed findings of fact, conclusions of law, and rule or order, together with reasons therefor and

briefs in support thereof. Such proposals shall be in writing, shall be served upon all parties, and shall contain adequate references to the record and authorities relied on. If a party includes in the proposals information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b), the party shall file two versions of the proposals in accordance with the procedures set forth in §3.45(e).

(b) *Exhibit Index*. The first statement of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law filed by a party shall include an index listing for each exhibit offered by the party and received in evidence:

(1) The exhibit number, followed by

(2) The exhibit's title or a brief description if the exhibit is untitled;

(3) The transcript page at which the Administrative Law Judge ruled on the exhibit's admissibility or a citation to any written order in which such ruling was made;

(4) The transcript pages at which the exhibit is discussed;

(5) An identification of any other exhibit which summarizes the contents of the listed exhibit, or of any other exhibit of which the listed exhibit is a summary;

(6) A cross-reference, by exhibit number, to any other portions of that document admitted as a separate exhibit on motion by any other party; and

(7) A statement whether the exhibit has been accorded *in camera* treatment, and a citation to the *in camera* ruling.

(c) *Witness Index*. The first statement of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law filed by a party shall also include an index to the witnesses called by that party, to include for each witness:

(1) The name of the witness;

(2) A brief identification of the witness;

(3) The transcript pages at which any testimony of the witness appears; and

(4) A statement whether the exhibit has been accorded *in camera* treatment, and a citation to the *in camera* ruling.

(d) *Stipulated indices*. As an alternative to the filing of separate indices, the parties are encouraged to stipulate to joint exhibit and witness indices at the time the first statement of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law is due to be filed.

(e) *Rulings*. The record shall show the Administrative Law Judge's ruling on each proposed finding and conclusion, except when the order disposing of the proceeding otherwise informs the parties of the action taken.

[48 FR 56945, Dec. 27, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 22294, June 11, 1987; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17631, Apr. 3, 2001]

Subpart F—Decision

§3.51 Initial decision.

(a) *When filed and when effective*. The Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision within ninety (90) days after closing the hearing record pursuant to §3.44(c), or within thirty (30) days after a default or the granting of a motion for summary decision or waiver by the parties of the filing of proposed findings of fact, conclusions of law and order, or within such further time as the Commission may by order allow upon written request from the Administrative Law Judge. In no event shall the initial decision be filed any later than one (1) year after the issuance of the administrative compliant, except that the Administrative Law Judge may, upon a finding of extraordinary circumstances, extend the one-year deadline for a period of up to sixty (60) days. Such extension, upon its expiration, may be continued for additional consecutive periods of up to sixty (60) days, provided that each additional period is based upon a finding by the Administrative Law Judge that extraordinary circumstances are still present. The pendency of any collateral federal court proceeding that relates to the administrative adjudication shall toll the one-year deadline for filing the initial decision. The ALJ may stay the administrative proceeding until resolution of the collateral federal court proceeding. Once issued, the initial decision shall become the decision of the Commission thirty (30) days after service thereof upon the parties or thirty (30) days after the filing of a timely notice of appeal, whichever shall be later, unless a party filing such a notice shall have perfected an appeal by the timely filing of an appeal brief or the Commission shall have issued an order placing

the case on its own docket for review or staying the effective date of the decision.

(b) *Exhaustion of administrative remedies.* An initial decision shall not be considered final agency action subject to judicial review under 5 U.S.C. 704. Any objection to a ruling by the Administrative Law Judge, or to a finding, conclusion or a provision of the order in the initial decision, which is not made a part of an appeal to the Commission shall be deemed to have been waived.

(c) *Content.* (1) An initial decision shall be based on a consideration of the whole record relevant to the issues decided, and shall be supported by reliable and probative evidence. The initial decision shall include a statement of findings (with specific page references to principal supporting items of evidence in the record) and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis therefor, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record (or those designated under paragraph (c)(2) of this section) and an appropriate rule or order. Rulings containing information granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45 shall be filed in accordance with § 3.45(f).

(2) When more than one claim for relief is presented in an action, or when multiple parties are involved, the Administrative Law Judge may direct the entry of an initial decision as to one or more but fewer than all of the claims or parties only upon an express determination that there is no just reason for delay and upon an express direction for the entry of initial decision.

(d) *By whom made.* The initial decision shall be made and filed by the Administrative Law Judge who presided over the hearings, except when he shall have become unavailable to the Commission.

(e) *Reopening of proceeding by Administrative Law Judge; termination of jurisdiction.* (1) At any time prior to the filing of his initial decision, an Administrative Law Judge may reopen the proceeding for the reception of further evidence.

(2) Except for the correction of clerical errors or pursuant to an order of remand from the Commission, the jurisdiction of the Administrative Law Judge is terminated upon the filing of his initial decision with respect to those issues decided pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 35 FR 10656, July 1, 1970; 44 FR 62887, Nov. 1, 1979; 48 FR 52576, Nov. 21, 1983; 48 FR 54810, Dec. 7, 1983; 52 FR 22294, June 11, 1987; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996; 66 FR 17631, Apr. 3, 2001]

§ 3.52 Appeal from initial decision.

(a) *Who may file; notice of intention.* Any party to a proceeding may appeal an initial decision to the Commission by filing a notice of appeal with the Secretary within ten (10) days after service of the initial decision. The notice shall specify the party or parties against whom the appeal is taken and shall designate the initial decision and order or part thereof appealed from. If a timely notice of appeal is filed by a party, any other party may thereafter file a notice of appeal within five (5) days after service of the first notice, or within ten (10) days after service of the initial decision, whichever period expires last.

(b) *Appeal brief.* (1) The appeal shall be in the form of a brief, filed within thirty (30) days after service of the initial decision, and shall contain, in the order indicated, the following:

(i) A subject index of the matter in the brief, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), textbooks, statutes, and other material cited, with page references thereto;

(ii) A concise statement of the case, which includes a statement of facts relevant to the issues submitted for review, and a summary of the argument, which must contain a succinct, clear, and accurate statement of the arguments made in the body of the brief, and which must not merely repeat the argument headings;

(iii) A specification of the questions intended to be urged;

(iv) The argument presenting clearly the points of fact and law relied upon in support of the position taken on each question, with specific page references to the record and the legal or other material relied upon; and

(v) A proposed form of order for the Commission's consideration instead of

the order contained in the initial decision.

(2) The brief shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 18,750 words, including all footnotes and other substantive matter but excluding the cover, table of contents, table of authorities, glossaries, proposed form of order, appendices containing only sections of statutes or regulations, and any attachment required by §3.45(e).

(c) *Answering brief*. Within thirty (30) days after service of the appeal brief, the appellee may file an answering brief, which shall contain a subject index, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), textbooks, statutes, and other material cited, with page references thereto, as well as arguments in response to the appellant's appeal brief. However, if the appellee is also cross-appealing, its answering brief shall also contain its arguments as to any issues the party is raising on cross-appeal, including the points of fact and law relied upon in support of its position on each question, with specific page references to the record and legal or other material on which the party relies in support of its cross-appeal, and a proposed form of order for the Commission's consideration instead of the order contained in the initial decision. If the appellee does not cross-appeal, its answering brief shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 18,750 words. If the appellee cross-appeals, its brief in answer and on cross-appeal shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 26,250 words. The word count limitations of this paragraph include all footnotes and other substantive matter but exclude the cover, table of contents, table of authorities, glossaries, proposed form of order, appendices containing only sections of statutes or regulations, and any attachment required by §3.45(e).

(d) *Reply brief*. Within seven (7) days after service of the appellee's answering brief, the appellant may file a reply brief, which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters in the answering brief and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 18,750 words. If the appellee has cross-appealed, any party who is the subject of the cross-appeal may, within thirty (30) days after service of such appellee's brief, file a reply brief, which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters in the appellee's brief and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 18,750 words. The appellee who has cross-appealed may, within seven (7) days after service of a reply to its cross-appeal, file an additional brief, which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters in the reply to its cross-appeal and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 11,250 words. The word count limitations of this paragraph include all footnotes and other substantive matter but exclude the cover, table of contents, table of authorities, glossaries, proposed form of order, appendices containing only sections of statutes or regulations, and any attachment required by §3.45(e). No further briefs may be filed except by leave of the Commission.

(e) *In camera information*. If a party includes in any brief to be filed under this section information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b) or is subject to confidentiality provisions pursuant to a protective order, the party shall file two versions of the brief in accordance with the procedures set forth in §3.45(e). The time period specified by this section within which a party may file an answering or reply brief will begin to run upon service on the party of the *in camera* or confidential version of a brief.

(f) *Signature*. (1) The original of each brief filed shall have a hand-signed signature by an attorney of record for the party, or in the case of parties not represented by counsel, by the party itself, or by a partner if a partnership, or by an officer of the party if it is a corporation or an unincorporated association.

(2) Signing a brief constitutes a representation by the signer that he or she has read it; that to the best of his or her knowledge, information, and belief, the statements made in it are true; that it is not interposed for delay; that it complies all the applicable word count limitation; and that to the best of his or her knowledge, information, and belief, it complies with all the other rules in this part. If a brief is not signed or is signed with intent to defeat the purpose of this section, it may be stricken as sham and false and the

proceeding may go forward as though the brief has not been filed.

(g) *Designation of appellant and appellee in cases involving cross-appeals.* In a case involving an appeal by complaint counsel and one or more respondents, any respondent who has filed a timely notice of appeal and as to whom the Administrative Law Judge has issued an order to cease and desist shall be deemed an appellant for purposes of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section. In a case in which the Administrative Law Judge has dismissed the complaint as to all respondents, complaint counsel shall be deemed the appellant for purposes of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section.

(h) *Oral argument.* All oral arguments shall be public unless otherwise ordered by the Commission. Oral arguments will be held in all cases on appeal to the Commission, unless the Commission otherwise orders upon its own initiative or upon request of any party made at the time of filing his brief. Oral arguments before the Commission shall be reported stenographically, unless otherwise ordered, and a member of the Commission absent from an oral argument may participate in the consideration and decision of the appeal in any case in which the oral argument is stenographically reported. The purpose of oral argument is to emphasize and clarify the written argument appearing in the briefs and to answer questions. Reading at length from the briefs or other texts is not favored.

(i) *Corrections in transcript of oral argument.* The Commission will entertain only joint motions of the parties requesting corrections in the transcript of oral argument, except that the Commission will receive a unilateral motion which recites that the parties have made a good faith effort to stipulate to the desired corrections but have been unable to do so. If the parties agree in part and disagree in part, they should file a joint motion incorporating the extent of their agreement, and, if desired, separate motions requesting those corrections to which they have been unable to agree. The Secretary, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, is authorized to prepare and issue in the name of the Commission a brief ''Order Correcting Transcript'' whenever a joint motion to correct transcript is received.

(j) *Briefs of amicus curiae.* A brief of an amicus curiae may be filed by leave of the Commission granted on motion with notice to the parties or at the request of the Commission, except that such leave shall not be required when the brief is presented by an agency or officer of the United States; or by a State, territory, commonwealth, or the District of Columbia, or by an agency or officer of any of them. The brief may be conditionally filed with the motion for leave. A motion for leave shall identify the interest of the applicant and state how a Commission decision in the matter would affect the applicant or persons it represents. The motion shall also state the reasons why a brief of an amicus curiae is desirable. Except as otherwise permitted by the Commission, an amicus curiae shall file its brief within the time allowed the parties whose position as to affirmance or reversal the amicus brief will support. The Commission shall grant leave for a later filing only for cause shown, in which event it shall specify within what period such brief must be filed. A motion for an amicus curiae to participate in oral argument will be granted only for extraordinary reasons.

(k) *Extension of word count limitation.* Extensions of word count limitation are disfavored, and will only be granted where a party can make a strong showing that undue prejudice would result from complying with the existing limit.

[66 FR 17631, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 3.53 Review of initial decision in absence of appeal.

An order by the Commission placing a case on its own docket for review will set forth the scope of such review and the issues which will be considered and will make provision for the filing of briefs if deemed appropriate by the Commission.

§ 3.54 Decision on appeal or review.

(a) Upon appeal from or review of an initial decision, the Commission will consider such parts of the record as are cited or as may be necessary to resolve

the issues presented and, in addition, will, to the extent necessary or desirable, exercise all the powers which it could have exercised if it had made the initial decision.

(b) In rendering its decision, the Commission will adopt, modify, or set aside the findings, conclusions, and rule or order contained in the initial decision, and will include in the decision a statement of the reasons or basis for its action and any concurring and dissenting opinions.

(c) In those cases where the Commission believes that it should have further information or additional views of the parties as to the form and content of the rule or order to be issued, the Commission, in its discretion, may withhold final action pending the receipt of such additional information or views.

(d) The order of the Commission disposing of adjudicative hearings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and, if it contains a rule or regulation, will specify the effective date thereof, which will not be prior to the ninetieth (90th) day after its publication unless the Commission finds that emergency conditions exist necessitating an earlier effective date, in which event the Commission will specify in the order its findings as to such conditions.

§ 3.55 Reconsideration.

Within fourteen (14) days after completion of service of a Commission decision, any party may file with the Commission a petition for reconsideration of such decision, setting forth the relief desired and the grounds in support thereof. Any petition filed under this subsection must be confined to new questions raised by the decision or final order and upon which the petitioner had no opportunity to argue before the Commission. Any party desiring to oppose such a petition shall file an answer thereto within ten (10) days after service upon him of the petition. The filing of a petition for reconsideration shall not operate to stay the effective date of the decision or order or to toll the running of any statutory time period affecting such decision or order unless specifically so ordered by the Commission.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

§ 3.56 Effective date of orders; application for stay.

(a) Other than consent orders, an order to cease and desist under section 5 of the FTC Act becomes effective upon the sixtieth day after service, except as provided in section 5(g)(3) of the FTC Act, and except for divestiture provisions, as provided in section 5(g)(4) of the FTC Act.

(b) Any party subject to a cease and desist order under section 5 of the FTC Act, other than a consent order, may apply to the Commission for a stay of all or part of that order pending judicial review. If, within 30 days after the application was received by the Commission, the Commission either has denied or has not acted on the application, a stay may be sought in a court of appeals where a petition for review of the order is pending.

(c) An application for stay shall state the reasons a stay is warranted and the facts relied upon, and shall include supporting affidavits or other sworn statements, and a copy of the relevant portions of the record. The application shall address the likelihood of the applicant's success on appeal, whether the applicant will suffer irreparable harm if a stay is not granted, the degree of injury to other parties if a stay is granted, and why the stay is in the public interest.

(d) An application for stay shall be filed within 30 days of service of the order on the party. Such application shall be served in accordance with the provisions of § 4.4(b) of this part that are applicable to service in adjudicative proceedings. Any party opposing the application may file an answer within 5 business days after receipt of the application. The applicant may file a reply brief, limited to new matters raised by the answer, within 3 business days after receipt of the answer.

[60 FR 37748, July 21, 1995]

Subpart G [Reserved]

Subpart H—Reopening of Proceedings

§ 3.71 Authority.

Except while pending in a U.S. court of appeals on a petition for review (after the transcript of the record has been filed) or in the U.S. Supreme Court, a proceeding may be reopened by the Commission at any time in accordance with § 3.72. Any person subject to a Commission decision containing a rule or order which has become effective, or an order to cease and desist which has become final may file a request to reopen the proceeding in accordance with § 2.51.

[44 FR 40637, July 12, 1979]

§ 3.72 Reopening.

(a) *Before statutory review.* At any time prior to the expiration of the time allowed for filing a petition for review or prior to the filing of the transcript of the record of a proceeding in a U.S. court of appeals pursuant to a petition for review, the Commission may upon its own initiative and without prior notice to the parties reopen the proceeding and enter a new decision modifying or setting aside the whole or any part of the findings as to the facts, conclusions, rule, order, or opinion issued by the Commission in such proceeding.

(b) *After decision has become final.* (1) Whenever the Commission is of the opinion that changed conditions of fact or law or the public interest may require that a Commission decision containing a rule or order which has become effective, or an order to cease and desist which has become final by reason of court affirmance or expiration of the statutory period for court review without a petition for review having been filed, or a Commission decision containing an order dismissing a proceeding, should be altered, modified, or set aside in whole or in part, the Commission will, except as provided in § 2.51, serve upon each person subject to such decision (in the case of proceedings instituted under § 3.13, such service may be by publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER) an order to show cause, stating the changes it proposes to make in the decision and the reasons they are deemed necessary. Within thirty (30) days after service of such order to show cause, any person served may file an answer thereto. Any person not responding to the order within the time allowed may be deemed to have consented to the proposed changes.

(2) Whenever an order to show cause is not opposed, or if opposed but the pleadings do not raise issues of fact to be resolved, the Commission, in its discretion, may decide the matter on the order to show cause and answer thereto, if any, or it may serve upon the parties (in the case of proceedings instituted under § 3.13, such service may be by publication in FEDERAL REGISTER) a notice of hearing, setting forth the date when the cause will be heard. In such a case, the hearing will be limited to the filing of briefs and may include oral argument when deemed necessary by the Commission. When the pleadings raise substantial factual issues, the Commission will direct such hearings as it deems appropriate, including hearings for the receipt of evidence by it or by an Administrative Law Judge. Unless otherwise ordered and insofar as practicable, hearings before an Administrative Law Judge to receive evidence shall be conducted in accordance with subparts B, C, D, and E of part 3 of this chapter. Upon conclusion of hearings before an Administrative Law Judge, the record and the Administrative Law Judge's recommendations shall be certified to the Commission for final disposition of the matter.

(3) *Termination of existing orders*—(i) *Generally.* Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this rule, and except as provided in paragraphs (b)(3)(ii) and (iii) of this section, an order issued by the Commission before August 16, 1995, will be deemed, without further notice or proceedings, to terminate 20 years from the date on which the order was first issued, or on January 2, 1996, whichever is later.

(ii) *Exception.* This paragraph applies to the termination of an order issued before August 16, 1995, where a complaint alleging a violation of the order was or is filed (with or without an accompanying consent decree) in federal court by the United States or the Federal Trade Commission while the order

remains in force, either on or after August 16, 1995, or within the 20 years preceding that date. If more than one complaint was or is filed while the order remains in force, the relevant complaint for purposes of this paragraph will be the latest filed complaint. An order subject to this paragraph will terminate 20 years from the date on which a court complaint described in this paragraph was or is filed, except as provided in the following sentence. If the complaint was or is dismissed, or a federal court rules or has ruled that the respondent did not violate any provision of the order, and the dismissal or ruling was or is not appealed, or was or is upheld on appeal, the order will terminate according to paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section as though the complaint was never filed; provided, however, that the order will not terminate between the date that such complaint is filed and the later of the deadline for appealing such dismissal or ruling and the date such dismissal or ruling is upheld on appeal. The filing of a complaint described in this paragraph will not affect the duration of any order provision that has expired, or will expire, by its own terms. The filing of a complaint described in this paragraph also will not affect the duration of an order's application to any respondent that is not named in the complaint.

(iii) *Stay of Termination.* Any party to an order may seek to stay, in whole or part, the termination of the order as to that party pursuant to paragraph (b)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section. Petitions for such stays shall be filed in accordance with the procedures set forth in §2.51 of these rules. Such petitions shall be filed on or before the date on which the order would be terminated pursuant to paragraph (b)(3) (i) or (ii) of this section. Pending the disposition of such a petition, the order will be deemed to remain in effect without interruption.

(iv) *Orders not terminated.* Nothing in §3.72(b)(3) is intended to apply to *in camera* orders or other procedural or interlocutory rulings by an Administrative Law Judge or the Commission.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 44 FR 40637, July 12, 1979; 45 FR 21623, Apr. 2, 1980; 60 FR 58515, Nov. 28, 1995]

Subpart I—Recovery of Awards Under the Equal Access to Justice Act in Commission Proceedings

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 504 and 5 U.S.C. 553(b).

SOURCE: 63 FR 36341, July 6, 1998, unless otherwise noted.

§3.81 General provisions.

(a) *Purpose of these rules.* The Equal Access to Justice Act, 5 U.S.C. 504 (called ''the Act'' in this subpart), provides for the award of attorney fees and other expenses to eligible individuals and entities who are parties to adversary adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of this title. The rules in this subpart describe the parties eligible for awards, how to apply for awards, and the procedures and standards that the Commission will use to make them.

(1) *When an eligible party will receive an award.* An eligible party will receive an award when:

(i) It prevails in the adjudicative proceeding, unless the Commission's position in the proceeding was substantially justified or special circumstances make an award unjust. Whether or not the position of the agency was substantially justified will be determined on the basis of the administrative record as a whole that is made in the adversary proceeding for which fees and other expenses are sought; or

(ii) The agency's demand is substantially in excess of the decision of the adjudicative officer, and is unreasonable when compared with that decision, under all the facts and circumstances of the case. *Demand* means the express final demand made by the agency prior to initiation of the adversary adjudication, but does not include a recitation by the agency of the statutory penalty in the administrative complaint or elsewhere when accompanied by an express demand for a lesser amount.

(b) *When the Act applies.* (1) Section 504(a)(1) of the Act applies to any adversarial adjudicative proceeding pending before the Commission at any time after October 1, 1981. This includes proceedings begun before October 1, 1981, if final Commission action has not been taken before that date.

(2) Section 504(a)(4) applies to any adversarial adjudicative proceeding pending before the Commission at any time on or after March 29, 1996.

(c) *Proceedings covered.* (1) The Act applies to all adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of the rules of practice as defined in § 3.2, except hearings relating to the promulgation, amendment, or repeal of rules under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

(2) [Reserved]

(d) *Eligibility of applicants.* (1) To be eligible for an award of attorney fees and other expenses under the Act, the applicant must be a party to the adjudicative proceeding in which it seeks an award. The term *party* is defined in 5 U.S.C. 551(3). The applicant must show that it meets all conditions of eligibility set out in this subpart.

(2) The types of eligible applicants are as follows:

(i) An individual with a net worth of not more than $2 million;

(ii) The sole owner of an unincorporated business who has a net worth of not more than $7 million, including both personal and business interests, and not more than 500 employees;

(iii) A charitable or other tax-exempt organization described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)) with not more than 500 employees;

(iv) A cooperative association as defined in section 15(a) of the Agricultural Marketing Act (12 U.S.C. 1141j(a)) with not more than 500 employees;

(v) Any other partnership, corporation, association, unit of local government, or organization with a net worth of not more than $7 million and not more than 500 employees; and

(vi) For purposes of receiving an award for fees and expenses for defending against an excessive Commission demand, any small entity, as that term is defined under 5 U.S.C. 601.

(3) Eligibility of a party shall be determined as of the date the proceeding was initiated.

(4) An applicant who owns an unincorporated business will be considered as an ''individual'' rather than a ''sole owner of an unincorporated business'' if the issues on which the applicant prevails are related primarily to personal interests rather than to business interests.

(5) The employees of an applicant include all persons who regularly perform services for remuneration for the applicant, under the applicant's direction and control. Part-time employees shall be included on a proportional basis.

(6) The net worth and number of employees of the applicant and all of its affiliates shall be aggregated to determine eligibility. Any individual, corporation or other entity that directly or indirectly controls or owns a majority of the voting shares or other interest of the applicant, or any corporation or other entity of which the applicant directly or indirectly owns or controls a majority of the voting shares or other interest, will be considered an affiliate for purposes of this part, unless the Administrative Law Judge determines that such treatment would be unjust and contrary to the purposes of the Act in light of the actual relationship between the affiliated entities. In addition, the Administrative Law Judge may determine that financial relationships of the applicant other than those described in this paragraph constitute special circumstances that would make an award unjust.

(7) An applicant that participates in a proceeding primarily on behalf of one or more other persons or entities that would be ineligible is not itself eligible for an award.

(e) *Standards for awards*—(1) *For a prevailing party:*

(i) A prevailing applicant will receive an award for fees and expenses incurred after initiation of the adversary adjudication in connection with the entire adversary adjudication, or on a substantive portion of the adversary adjudication that is sufficiently significant and discrete to merit treatment as a separate unit unless the position of the agency was substantially justified. The burden of proof that an award should not be made to an eligible prevailing applicant is on complaint counsel, which may avoid an award by showing that its position had a reasonable basis in law and fact.

(ii) An award to prevailing party will be reduced or denied if the applicant has unduly or unreasonably protracted

the proceeding or if special circumstances make an award unjust.

(2) *For a party defending against an excessive demand:*

(i) An eligible applicant will receive an award for fees and expenses incurred after initiation of the adversary adjudication related to defending against the excessive portion of a Commission demand that is substantially in excess of the decision of the adjudicative officer and is unreasonable when compared with that decision under all the facts and circumstances of the case.

(ii) An award will be denied if the applicant has committed a willful violation of law or otherwise acted in bad faith or if special circumstances make an award unjust.

(f) *Allowable fees and expenses.* (1) Awards will be based on rates customarily charged by persons engaged in the business of acting as attorneys, agents and expert witnesses, even if the services were made available without charge or at a reduced rate to the applicant.

(2) No award for the fee of an attorney or agent under these rules may exceed the hourly rate specified in 5 U.S.C. 504(b)(1)(A). No award to compensate an expert witness may exceed the highest rate at which the Commission paid expert witnesses for similar services at the time the fees were incurred. The appropriate rate may be obtained from the Office of the Executive Director. However, an award may also include the reasonable expenses of the attorney, agent, or witness as a separate item, if the attorney, agent or witness ordinarily charges clients separately for such expenses.

(3) In determining the reasonableness of the fee sought for an attorney, agent or expert witness, the Administrative Law Judge shall consider the following:

(i) If the attorney, agent or witness is in private practice, his or her customary fee for similar services, or, if an employee of the applicant, the fully allocated cost of the services;

(ii) The prevailing rate for similar services in the community in which the attorney, agent or witness ordinarily performs services;

(iii) The time actually spent in the representation of the applicant;

(iv) The time reasonably spent in light of the difficulty or complexity of the issues in the proceeding; and

(v) Such other factors as may bear on the value of the services provided.

(4) The reasonable cost of any study, analysis, engineering report, test, project or similar matter prepared on behalf of a party may be awarded, to the extent that the charge for the service does not exceed the prevailing rate for similar services, and the study or other matter was necessary for preparation of the applicant's case.

(5) Any award of fees or expenses under the Act is limited to fees and expenses incurred after initiation of the adversary adjudication and, with respect to excessive demands, the fees and expenses incurred in defending against the excessive portion of the demand.

(g) *Rulemaking on maximum rates for attorney fees.* If warranted by an increase in the cost of living or by special circumstances (such as limited availability of attorneys qualified to handle certain types of proceedings), the Commission may, upon its own initiative or on petition of any interested person or group, adopt regulations providing that attorney fees may be awarded at a rate higher than the rate specified in 5 U.S.C. 504(b)(1)(A) per hour in some or all the types of proceedings covered by this part. Rulemaking under this provision will be in accordance with Rules of Practice part 1, subpart C of this chapter.

§ 3.82 Information required from applicants.

(a) *Contents of application.* An application for an award of fees and expenses under the Act shall contain the following:

(1) Identity of the applicant and the proceeding for which the award is sought;

(2) A showing that the applicant has prevailed; or, if the applicant has not prevailed, a showing that the Commission's demand was the final demand before initiation of the adversary adjudication and that it was substantially in excess of the decision of the adjudicative officer and was unreasonable when compared with that decision;

(3) Identification of the Commission position(s) that applicant alleges was (were) not substantially justified; or, identification of the Commission's demand that is alleged to be excessive and unreasonable and an explanation as to why the demand was excessive and unreasonable;

(4) A brief description of the type and purpose of the organization or business (unless the applicant is an individual);

(5) A statement of how the applicant meets the criteria of § 3.81(d);

(6) The amount of fees and expenses incurred after the initiation of the adjudicative proceeding or, in the case of a claim for defending against an excessive demand, the amount of fees and expenses incurred after the initiation of the adjudicative proceeding attributable to the excessive portion of the demand;

(7) Any other matters the applicant wishes the Commission to consider in determining whether and in what amount an award should be made; and

(8) A written verification under oath or under penalty or perjury that the information provided is true and correct accompanied by the signature of the applicant or an authorized officer or attorney.

(b) *Net worth exhibit.* (1) Each applicant except a qualified tax-exempt organization or cooperative association must provide with its application a detailed exhibit showing the net worth of the application and any affiliates (as defined in § 3.81(d)(6)) when the proceeding was initiated. The exhibit may be in any form convenient to the applicant that provides full disclosure of the applicant's and its affiliates' assets and liabilities and is sufficient to determine whether the applicant qualifies under the standards in this part. The Administrative Law Judge may require an applicant to file additional information to determine its eligibility for an award.

(2) Ordinarily, the net worth exhibit will be included in the public record of the proceeding. However, if an applicant objects to public disclosure of information in any portion of the exhibit and believes there are legal grounds for withholding it from disclosure, the applicant may submit that portion of the exhibit directly to the Administrative Law Judge in a sealed envelope labeled ''Confidential Financial Information,'' accompanied by a motion to withhold the information from public disclosure. The motion shall describe the information sought to be withheld and explain, in detail, why it falls within one or more of the specific exemptions from mandatory disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(1) through (9), why public disclosure of the information would adversely affect the applicant, and why disclosure is not required in the public interest. The material in question shall be served on complaint counsel but need not be served on any other party to the proceeding. If the Administrative Law Judge finds that the information should not be withheld from disclosure, it shall be placed in the public record of the proceeding. Otherwise, any request to inspect or copy the exhibit shall be disposed of in accordance with § 4.11.

(c) *Documentation of fees and expenses.* The application shall be accompanied by full documentation of the fees and expenses incurred after initiation of the adversary adjudication, including the cost of any study, analysis, engineering report, test, project or similar matter, for which an award is sought. With respect to a claim for fees and expenses involving an excessive demand, the application shall be accompanied by full documentation of the fees and expenses incurred after initiation of the adversary adjudication, including the cost of any study, analysis, engineering report, test, project or similar matter, for which an award is sought attributable to the portion of the demand alleged to be excessive and unreasonable. A separate itemized statement shall be submitted for each professional firm or individual whose services are covered by the application, showing the hours spent in connection with the proceeding by each individual, a description of the specific services performed, the rate at which each fee has been computed, any expenses for which reimbursement is sought, the total amount claimed, and the total amount paid or payable by the applicant or by any other person or entity

for the services provided. The Administrative Law Judge may require the applicant to provide vouchers, receipts, or other substantiation for any expenses claimed.

(d) *When an application may be filed*—(1) *For a prevailing party:*

(i) An application may be filed not later than 30 days after the Commission has issued an order or otherwise taken action that results in final disposition of the proceeding.

(ii) If review or reconsideration is sought or taken of a decision as to which an applicant believes it has prevailed, proceedings for the award of fees shall be stayed pending final disposition of the underlying controversy.

(2) *For a party defending against an excessive demand:*

(i) An application may be filed not later than 30 days after the Commission has issued an order or otherwise taken action that results in final disposition of the proceeding.

(ii) If review or reconsideration is sought or taken of a decision as to which an applicant believes the agency's demand was excessive and unreasonable, proceedings for the award of fees and expenses shall be stayed pending final disposition of the underlying controversy.

(3) For purposes of this subpart, *final disposition* means the later of—

(i) The date that the initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge becomes the decision of the Commission pursuant to §3.51(a);

(ii) The date that the Commission issues an order disposing of any petitions for reconsideration of the Commission's final order in the proceeding; or

(iii) The date that the Commission issues a final order or any other final resolution of a proceeding, such as a consent agreement, settlement or voluntary dismissal, which is not subject to a petition for reconsideration.

§3.83 Procedures for considering applicants.

(a) *Filing and service of documents.* Any application for an award or other pleading or document related to an application shall be filed and served on all parties as specified in §§4.2 and 4.4(b) of this chapter, except as provided in §3.82(b)(2) for confidential financial information. The date the Office of the Secretary of the Commission receives the application is deemed the date of filing.

(b) *Answer to application.* (1) Within 30 days after service of an application, complaint counsel may file an answer to the application. Unless complaint counsel requests an extension of time for filing or files a statement of intent to negotiate under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, failure to file an answer within the 30-day period may be treated as a consent to the award requested.

(2) If complaint counsel and the applicant believe that the issues in the fee application can be settled, they may jointly file a statement of their intent to negotiate a settlement. The filing of this statement shall extend the time for filing an answer for an additional 30 days, and further extensions may be granted by the Administrative Law Judge upon request by complaint counsel and the applicant.

(3) The answer shall explain in detail any objections to the award requested and identify the facts relied on in support of complaint counsel's position. If the answer is based on any alleged facts not already in the record of the proceeding, complaint counsel shall include with the answer either supporting affidavits or a request for further proceedings under paragraph (f) of this section.

(c) *Reply.* Within 15 days after service of an answer, the applicant may file a reply. If the reply is based on any alleged facts not already in the record of the proceeding, the applicant shall include with the reply either supporting affidavits or a request for further proceedings under paragraph (f) of this section.

(d) *Comments by other parties.* Any party to a proceeding other than the applicant and complaint counsel may file comments on an application within 30 days after it is served or on an answer within 15 days after it is served. A commenting party may not participate further in proceedings on the application unless the Administrative Law Judge determines that the public interest requires such participation in order to permit full exploration of matters in the comments.

(e) *Settlement*. The applicant and complaint counsel may agree on a proposed settlement of the award before final action on the application. A proposed award settlement entered into in connection with a consent agreement covering the underlying proceeding will be considered in accordance with § 3.25. The Commission may request findings of fact or recommendations on the award settlement from the Administrative Law Judge. A proposed award settlement entered into after the underlying proceeding has been concluded will be considered and may be approved or disapproved by the Administrative Law Judge subject to Commission review under paragraph (h) of this section. If an applicant and complaint counsel agree on a proposed settlement of an award before an application has been filed, the application shall be filed with the proposed settlement.

(f) *Further proceedings*. (1) Ordinarily, the determination of an award will be made on the basis of the written record. However, on request of either the applicant or complaint counsel, or on his or her own initiative, the Administrative Law Judge may order further proceedings, such as an informal conference, oral argument, additional written submissions or an evidentiary hearing. Such further proceedings shall be held only when necessary for full and fair resolution of the issues arising from the application, and shall be conducted as promptly as possible.

(2) A request that the Administrative Law Judge order further proceedings under this section shall specifically identify the information sought or the disputed issues and shall explain why the additional proceedings are necessary to resolve the issues.

(g) *Decision*. The Administrative Law Judge shall issue an initial decision on the application within 30 days after closing proceedings on the application.

(1) *For a decision involving a prevailing party:* The decision shall include written findings and conclusions on the applicant's eligibility and status as a prevailing party, and an explanation of the reasons for any difference between the amount requested and the amount awarded. The decision shall also include, if at issue, findings on whether the agency's position was substantially justified, whether the applicant unduly protracted the proceedings, or whether special circumstances make an award unjust.

(2) *For a decision involving an excessive agency demand:* The decision shall include written findings and conclusions on the applicant's eligibility and an explanation of the reasons why the agency's demand was or was not determined to be substantially in excess of the decision of the adjudicative officer and was or was not unreasonable when compared with that decision. That decision shall be based upon all the facts and circumstances of the case. The decision shall also include, if at issue, findings on whether the applicant has committed a willful violation of law or otherwise acted in bad faith, or whether special circumstances make an award unjust.

(h) *Agency review*. Either the applicant or complaint counsel may seek review of the initial decision on the fee application by filing a notice of appeal under § 3.52(a), or the Commission may decide to review the decision on its own initiative, in accordance with § 3.53. If neither the applicant nor complaint counsel seeks review and the Commission does not take review on its own initiative, the initial decision on the application shall become a final decision of the Commission 30 days after it is issued. Whether to review a decision is a matter within the discretion of the Commission. If review is taken, the Commission will issue a final decision on the application or remand the application to the Administrative Law Judge for further proceedings.

(i) *Judicial review*. Judicial review of final Commission decisions on awards may be sought as provided in 5 U.S.C. 503(c)(2).

(j) *Payment of award*. An applicant seeking payment of an award shall submit to the Secretary of the Commission a copy of the Commission's final decision granting the award, accompanied by a statement that the applicant will not seek review of the decision in the United States courts. The agency will pay the amount awarded to the applicant within 60 days, unless judicial review of the award or of the underlying decision of the adjudicative

proceeding has been sought by the applicant or any party to the proceeding.

PART 4—MISCELLANEOUS RULES

Sec.
4.1 Appearances.
4.2 Requirements as to form, and filing of documents other than correspondence.
4.3 Time.
4.4 Service.
4.5 Fees.
4.6 Cooperation with other agencies.
4.7 Ex parte communications.
4.8 Costs for obtaining Commission records.
4.9 The public record.
4.10 Nonpublic material.
4.11 Disclosure requests.
4.12 Disposition of documents submitted to the Commission.
4.13 Privacy Act rules.
4.14 Conduct of business.
4.15 Commission meetings.
4.16 Privilege against self-incrimination.
4.17 Disqualification of Commissioners.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46, unless otherwise noted.

§4.1 Appearances.

(a) *Qualifications*—(1) *Attorneys.* (i) U.S.-admitted. Members of the bar of a Federal court or of the highest court of any State or Territory of the United States are eligible to practice before the Commission.

(ii) European Community (EC)-qualified. Persons who are qualified to practice law in a Member State of the European Community and authorized to practice before The Commission of the European Communities in accordance with Regulation No. 99/63/EEC are eligible to practice before the Commission.

(iii) Any attorney desiring to appear before the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge may be required to show to the satisfaction of the Commission or the Administrative Law Judge his or her acceptability to act in that capacity.

(2) *Others.* (i) Any individual or member of a partnership involved in any proceeding or investigation may appear on behalf or himself or of such partnership upon adequate identification. A corporation or association may be represented by a bona fide officer thereof upon a showing of adequate authorization.

(ii) At the request of counsel representing any party in an adjudicative proceeding, the Administrative Law Judge may permit an expert in the same discipline as an expert witness to conduct all or a portion of the cross-examination of such witness.

(b) *Restrictions as to former members and employees*—(1) *General Prohibition.* Except as provided in this section, or otherwise specifically authorized by the Commission, no former member or employee (''former employee'' or ''employee'') of the Commission may communicate to or appear before the Commission, as attorney or counsel, or otherwise assist or advise behind-the-scenes, regarding a formal or informal proceeding or investigation[1] (except that a former employee who is disqualified solely under paragraph (b)(1)(ii) or paragraph (b)(1)(iv) of this section, is not prohibited from assisting or advising behind-the-scenes) if:

(i) The former employee participated personally and substantially on behalf of the Commission in the same proceeding or investigation in which the employee now intends to participate;

(ii) The participation would begin within two years after the termination of the former employee's service and, within a period of one year prior to the

[1] It is important to note that a new ''proceeding or investigation'' may be considered the same matter as a seemingly separate ''proceeding or investigation'' that was pending during the former employee's tenure. This is because a ''proceeding or investigation'' may continue in another form or in part. In determining whether two matters are actually the same, the Commission will consider: the extent to which the matters involve the same or related facts, issues, confidential information and parties; the time elapsed; and the continuing existence of an important Federal interest. See 5 CFR 2637.201(c)(4). For example, where a former employee intends to participate in an investigation of compliance with a Commission order, submission of a request to reopen an order, or a proceeding with respect to reopening an order, the matter will be considered the same as the adjudicative proceeding or investigation that resulted in the order. A former employee who is uncertain whether the matter in which he seeks clearance to participate is wholly separate from any matter that was pending during his tenure should seek advice from the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee before participating.

employee's termination, the proceeding or investigation was pending under the employee's official responsibility;

(iii) Nonpublic documents or information pertaining to the proceeding or investigation in question, and of the kind delineated in § 4.10(a), came to, or would be likely to have come to, the former employee's attention in the course of the employee's duties, (unless Commission staff determines that the nature of the documents or information is such that no present advantage could thereby be derived); or

(iv) The former employee's participation would begin within one year after the employee's termination and, at the time of termination, the employee was a member of the Commission or a ''senior employee'' as defined in 18 U.S.C. 207(c).

(2) *Clearance Request Required.* Any former employee, before participating in a Commission proceeding or investigation (see footnote 1), whether through an appearance before a Commission official or behind-the-scenes assistance, shall file with the Secretary a request for clearance to participate, containing the information listed in § 4.1(b)(4) if:

(i) The proceeding or investigation was pending in the Commission while the former employee served;

(ii) A proceeding or investigation from which such proceeding or investigation directly resulted was pending during the former employee's service; or

(iii) Nonpublic documents or information pertaining to the proceeding or investigation in question, and of the kind delineated in § 4.10(a), came to or would likely have come to the former employee's attention in the course of the employee's duties, and the employee left the Commission within the previous three years.

NOTE: This requirement applies even to a proceeding or investigation that had not yet been initiated formally when the former employee terminated employment, if the employee had learned nonpublic information relating to the subsequently initiated proceeding or investigation.

(3) *Exceptions.* (i) Paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) of this section do not apply to:

(A) Making a pro se filing of any kind;

(B) Submitting a request or appeal under the Freedom of Information Act, the Privacy Act, or the Government in the Sunshine Act;

(C) Testifying under oath (except that a former employee who is subject to the restrictions contained in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section with respect to a particular matter may not, except pursuant to court order, serve as an expert witness for any person other than the United States in that same matter);

(D) Submitting a statement required to be made under penalty of perjury; or

(E) Appearing on behalf of the United States.

(ii) With the exception of subparagraph (b)(1)(iv), paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) of this section do not apply to participating in a Commission rulemaking proceeding, including submitting comments on a matter on which the Commission has invited public comment.

(iii) Paragraph (b)(1)(iv) of this section does not apply to submitting a statement based on the former employee's own special knowledge in the particular area that is the subject of the statement, provided that no compensation is thereby received, other than that regularly provided by law or by § 4.5 for witnesses.

(iv) Paragraph (b)(2) of this section does not apply to filing a premerger notification form or participating in subsequent events concerning compliance or noncompliance with Section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a, or any regulation issued under that section.

(4) *Request Contents.* Clearance requests filed pursuant to § 4.1(b)(2) shall contain:

(i) The name and matter number (if known) of the proceeding or investigation in question;

(ii) A description of the contemplated participation;

(iii) The name of the Commission office(s) or division(s) in which the former employee was employed and the position(s) the employee occupied;

(iv) A statement whether, while employed by the Commission, the former employee participated in any proceeding or investigation concerning

the same company, individual, or industry currently involved in the matter in question;

(v) A certification that while employed by the Commission, the employee never participated personally and substantially in the same matter or proceeding;

(vi) If the employee's Commission employment terminated within the past two years, a certification that the matter was not pending under the employee's official responsibility during any part of the one year before the employee's termination;

(vii) If the employee's Commission employment terminated within the past three years, either a declaration that nonpublic documents or information pertaining to the proceeding or investigation in question, and of the kind delineated in §4.10(a), never came to the employee's attention, or a description of why the employee believes that such nonpublic documents or information could not confer a present advantage to the employee or to the employee's client in the proceeding or investigation in question; and

(viii) A certification that the employee has read, and understands, both the criminal conflict of interest law on post-employment activities (18 U.S.C. 207) and this Rule in their entirety.

(5) *Definitions.* The following definitions apply for purposes of this section:

(i) *Behind-the-scenes* participation includes any form of professional consultation, assistance, or advice to anyone about the proceeding or investigation in question, whether formal or informal, oral or written, direct or indirect.

(ii) *Communicate to or appear before* means making any oral or written communication to, or any formal or informal appearance before, the Commission or any of its members or employees on behalf of any person (except the United States) with the intent to influence.

(iii) *Directly resulted from* means that the proceeding or investigation in question emanated from an earlier phase of the same proceeding or investigation or from a directly linked, antecedent investigation. The existence of some attenuated connection between a proceeding or investigation that was pending during the requester's tenure and the proceeding or investigation in question does not constitute a direct result.

(iv) *Pending under the employee's official responsibility* means that the former employee had the direct administrative or operating authority to approve, disapprove, or otherwise direct official actions in the proceeding or investigation, irrespective of whether the employee's authority was intermediate or final, and whether it was exercisable alone or only in conjunction with others.

(v) *Personal and substantial participation.* A former employee participated in the proceeding or investigation personally if the employee either participated directly or directed a subordinate in doing so. The employee participated substantially if the involvement was significant to the matter or reasonably appeared to be significant. A series of peripheral involvements may be considered insubstantial, while a single act of approving or participating in a critical step may be considered substantial.

(vi) *Present advantage.* Whether exposure to nonpublic information about the proceeding or investigation could confer a present advantage to a former employee will be analyzed and determined on a case-by-case basis. Relevant factors include, *inter alia,* the nature and age of the information, its relation and current importance to the proceeding or investigation in question, and the amount of time that has passed since the employee left the Commission.

(vii) *Proceeding or investigation* shall be interpreted broadly and includes an adjudicative or other proceeding; the consideration of an application; a request for a ruling or other determination; a contract; a claim; a controversy; an investigation; or an interpretive ruling.

(6) *Advice as to Whether Clearance Request is Required.* A former employee may ask the General Counsel, either orally or in writing, whether the employee is required to file a request for clearance to participate in a Commission matter pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section. The General

Counsel, or the General Counsel's designee, will make any such determination within three business days.

(7) *Deadline for Determining Clearance Requests.* By the close of the tenth business day after the date on which the clearance request is filed, the General Counsel, or the General Counsel's designee, will notify the requester either that:

(i) the request for clearance has been granted;

(ii) the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee has decided to recommend that the Commission prohibit the requester's participation; or

(iii) the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee is, for good cause, extending the period for reaching a determination on the request by up to an additional ten business days.

(8) *Participation of Partners or Associates of Former Employees.* (i) If a former employee is prohibited from participating in a proceeding or investigation by virtue of having worked on the matter personally and substantially while a Commission employee, no partner or legal or business associate of that individual may participate except after filing with the Secretary of the Commission an affidavit attesting that:

(A) The former employee will not participate in the proceeding or investigation in any way, directly or indirectly (and describing how the former employee will be screened from participating);

(B) The former employee will not share in any fees resulting from the participation;

(C) Everyone who intends to participate is aware of the requirement that the former employee be screened;

(D) The client(s) have been informed; and

(E) The matter was not brought to the participant(s) through the active solicitation of the former employee.

(ii) If the Commission finds that the screening measures being taken are unsatisfactory or that the matter was brought to the participant(s) through the active solicitation of the former employee, the Commission will notify the participant(s) to cease the representation immediately.

(9) *Effect on Other Standards.* The restrictions and procedures in this section are intended to apply in lieu of restrictions and procedures that may be adopted by any state or jurisdiction, insofar as such restrictions and procedures apply to appearances or participation in Commission proceedings or investigations. Nothing in this section supersedes other standards of conduct applicable under paragraph (e) of this section. Requests for advice about this section, or about any matter related to other applicable rules and standards of ethical conduct, shall be directed to the Office of the General Counsel.

(c) *Public Disclosure.* Any request for clearance filed by a former member or employee pursuant to this section, as well as any written response, are part of the public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under § 4.10(a) of this chapter. Information identifying the subject of a nonpublic Commission investigation will be redacted from any request for clearance or other document before it is placed on the public record.

(d) *Notice of appearance.* Any attorney desiring to appear before the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge on behalf of a person or party shall file with the Secretary of the Commission a written notice of appearance, stating the basis for eligibility under this section and including the attorney's jurisdiction of admission/qualification, attorney identification number, if applicable, and a statement by the appearing attorney attesting to his/her good standing within the legal profession. No other application shall be required for admission to practice, and no register of attorneys will be maintained.

(e) *Standards of conduct; disbarment.* (1) All attorneys practicing before the Commission shall conform to the standards of ethical conduct required by the bars of which the attorneys are members.

(2) If for good cause shown, the Commission shall be of the opinion that any attorney is not conforming to such standards, or that he has been otherwise guilty of conduct warranting disciplinary action, the Commission may issue an order requiring such attorney to show cause why he should not be suspended or disbarred from practice

before the Commission. The alleged offender shall be granted due opportunity to be heard in his own defense and may be represented by counsel. Thereafter, if warranted by the facts, the Commission may issue against the attorney an order of reprimand, suspension, or disbarment.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967, as amended at 40 FR 15235, Apr. 4, 1975; 41 FR 16453, Apr. 19, 1976; 46 FR 26295, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 44767, Sept. 30, 1983; 50 FR 50781, Dec. 12, 1985; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 56 FR 44139, Sept. 27, 1991; 58 FR 40737, July 30, 1993; 63 FR 15758, Apr. 1, 1998; 64 FR 14830, Mar. 29, 1999; 66 FR 13645, Mar. 7, 2001; 66 FR 64143, Dec. 12, 2001]

§4.2 Requirements as to form, and filing of documents other than correspondence.

(a) *Filing.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, all documents submitted to the Commission, including those addressed to the Administrative Law Judge, shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission; *Provided, however,* That informal applications or requests may be submitted directly to the official in charge of any Bureau, Division, or Office of the Commission, or to the Administrative Law Judge.

(2) Documents submitted to the Commission in response to a Civil Investigative Demand under section 20 of the FTC Act shall be filed with the custodian or deputy custodian named in the demand.

(b) *Title.* Documents shall clearly show the file or docket number and title of the action in connection with which they are filed.

(c) *Paper and electronic copies of and service of filings before the Commission, and of filings before an ALJ in adjudicative proceedings.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, each document filed before the Commission, whether in an adjudicative or a nonadjudicative proceeding, shall be filed with Secretary of the Commission, and shall include a paper original, twelve (12) paper copies, and an electronic copy (in ASCII format, WordPerfect, or Microsoft Word). Except as otherwise provided, each document filed by a party in an adjudicative proceeding before an ALJ shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission, and shall include a paper original, one (1) paper copy and an electronic copy (in ASCII format, WordPerfect, or Microsoft Word).

(2) The first page of the paper original of each such document shall be clearly labeled either public, or *in camera* or confidential. If the document is labeled *in camera* or confidential, it must include as an attachment either a motion requesting *in camera* or otherwise confidential treatment, in the form prescribed by §3.45(b), or a copy of a Commission, ALJ, or federal court order granting such treatment. The document must also include as a separate attachment a set of only those pages of the document on which the *in camera* or otherwise confidential material appears.

(3) The electronic copy of each such public document shall be filed by e-mail, as the Secretary shall direct, in a manner that is consistent with technical standards, if any, that the Judicial Conference of the United States establishes, except that the electronic copy of each such document containing *in camera* or otherwise confidential material shall be placed on a diskette so labeled, which shall be physically attached to the paper original, and not transmitted by e-mail. The electronic copy of all documents shall include a certification by the filing party that the copy is a true and correct copy of the paper original, and that a paper copy with an original signature is being filed with the Secretary of the Commission on the same day by other means.

(4) A paper copy of each such document in an adjudicative proceeding shall be served by the party filing the document or person acting for that party on all other parties pursuant to §4.4, at or before the time the paper original is filed.

(d) *Paper and electronic copies of all other documents filed with the Commission.* Except as otherwise provided, each document to which paragraph (c) of this section does not apply, such as public comments in Commission proceedings, may be filed with the Commission in either paper or electronic form. If such a document contains nonpublic information, it must be filed in paper form with the Secretary of the Commission, and the first page of the

document must be clearly labeled confidential. If the document does not contain any nonpublic information, it may instead be filed in electronic form (in ASCII format, WordPerfect, or Microsoft Word) by e-mail, as the Commission or the Secretary may direct.

(e) *Form.* (1) Documents filed with the Secretary of the Commission, other than briefs in support of appeals from initial decisions, shall be printed, typewritten, or otherwise processed in permanent form and on good unglazed paper. A motion or other paper filed in an adjudicative proceeding shall contain a caption setting forth the title of the case, the docket number, and a brief descriptive title indicating the purpose of the paper.

(2) Briefs filed on an appeal from an initial decision shall be in the form prescribed by § 3.52(e).

(f) *Signature.* (1) The original of each document filed shall have a hand signed signature by an attorney of record for the party, or in the case of parties not represented by counsel, by the party itself, or by a partner if a partnership, or by an officer of the party if it is a corporation or an unincorporated association.

(2) Signing a document constitutes a representation by the signer that he or she has read it; that to the best of his or her knowledge, information, and belief, the statements made in it are true; that it is not interposed for delay; and that to the best of his or her knowledge, information, and belief, it complies with the rules in this part. If a document is not signed or is signed with intent to defeat the purpose of this section, it may be stricken as sham and false and the proceeding may go forward as though the document had not been filed.

(g) *Authority to reject documents for filing.* The Secretary of the Commission may reject a document for filing that fails to comply with the Commission's rules. In cases of extreme hardship, the Secretary may excuse compliance with a rule regarding the filing of documents if the Secretary determines that the non-compliance would not interfere with the functions of the Commission.

[66 FR 17632, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 4.3 Time.

(a) *Computation.* Computation of any period of time prescribed or allowed by the rules in this chapter, by order of the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge, or by any applicable statute, shall begin with the first business day following that on which the act, event, or development initiating such period of time shall have occurred. When the last day of the period so computed is a Saturday, Sunday, or national holiday, or other day on which the office of the Commission is closed, the period shall run until the end of the next following business day. When such period of time, with the intervening Saturdays, Sundays, and national holidays counted, is seven (7) days or less, each of the Saturdays, Sundays, and such holidays shall be excluded from the computation. When such period of time, with the intervening Saturdays, Sundays, and national holidays counted, exceeds seven (7) days, each of the Saturdays, Sundays, and such holidays shall be included in the computation.

(b) *Extensions.* For good cause shown, the Administrative Law Judge may, in any proceeding before him, extend any time limit prescribed or allowed by the rules in this chapter or by order of the Commission or the Administrative Law Judge, except those governing the filing of interlocutory appeals and initial decisions and those expressly requiring Commission action. Except as otherwise provided by law, the Commission, for good cause shown, may extend any time limit prescribed by the rules in this chapter or by order of the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge: *Provided, however,* That in a proceeding pending before an Administrative Law Judge, any motion on which he may properly rule shall be made to him. Notwithstanding the above, where a motion to extend is made after the expiration of the specified period, the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission may consider the motion where the untimely filing was the result of excusable neglect.

(c) *Additional time after service by mail.* Whenever a party in an adjudicative proceeding under part 3 of the rules is required or permitted to do an act within a prescribed period after service

of a paper upon it and the paper is served by first-class mail pursuant to §4.4(a)(3) or §4.4(b), 3 days shall be added to the prescribed period.

(d) *Date of filing.* Documents must be received in the office of the Secretary of the Commission by 5:00 p.m. Eastern time to be deemed filed that day. Any documents received by the agency after 5:00 p.m. will be deemed filed the following business day.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967, as amended at 42 FR 30150, June 13, 1977; 50 FR 28097, July 10, 1985; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 66 FR 17633, Apr. 3, 2001]

§4.4 Service.

(a) *By the Commission.* (1) Service of complaints, initial decisions, final orders and other processes of the Commission under 15 U.S.C. 45 may be effected as follows:

(i) *By registered or certified mail.* A copy of the document shall be addressed to the person, partnership, corporation or unincorporated association to be served at his, her or its residence or principal office or place of business, registered or certified, and mailed; service under this provision is complete upon delivery of the document by the Post Office; or

(ii) *By delivery to an individual.* A copy thereof may be delivered to the person to be served, or to a member of the partnership to be served, or to the president, secretary, or other executive officer or a director of the corporation or unincorporated association to be served; service under this provision is complete upon delivery as specified herein; or

(iii) *By delivery to an address.* A copy thereof may be left at the principal office or place of business of the person, partnership, corporation, or unincorporated association, or it may be left at the residence of the person or of a member of the partnership or of an executive officer or director of the corporation, or unincorporated association to be served; service under this provision is complete upon delivery as specified herein.

(2) All other orders and notices, including subpoenas, orders requiring access, orders to file annual and special reports, and notices of default, may be served by any method reasonably certain to inform the affected person, partnership, corporation or unincorporated association, including any method specified in paragraph (a)(1), except that civil investigative demands may only be served in the manner provided by section 20(c)(7) of the FTC Act (in the case of service on a partnership, corporation, association, or other legal entity) or section 20(c)(8) of the FTC Act (in the case of a natural person). Service under this provision is complete upon delivery by the Post Office or upon personal delivery.

(3) All documents served in adjudicative proceedings under the Commission's Rules of Practice, 16 CFR Part 3, other than complaints and initial, interlocutory, and final decisions and orders, may be served by personal delivery (including delivery by courier), or by first-class mail, and shall be deemed served on the day of personal delivery or the day of mailing.

(4) When a party has appeared in a proceeding by an attorney, service on that individual of any document pertaining to the proceeding other than a complaint shall be deemed service upon the party. However, service of those documents specified in paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall first be attempted in accordance with the provision of paragraphs (a)(1) (i), (ii), and (iii) of this section.

(b) *By other parties.* Service of documents by parties other than the Commission shall be by delivering copies thereof as follows: Upon the Commission, by personal delivery (including delivery by courier) or delivery by first-class mail to the Office of the Secretary of the Commission and, in adjudicative proceedings under the Commission's Rules of Practice, 16 CFR Part 3, to the lead complaint counsel, the Assistant Director in the Bureau of Competition, the Associate Director in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, or the Director of the Regional Office of complaint counsel, with a copy to the Administrative Law Judge. Upon a party other than the Commission or Commission counsel, service shall be by personal delivery (including delivery by courier) or delivery by first-class mail with a copy to the Administrative Law Judge. If the party is an individual or partnership, delivery

shall be to such individual or a member of the partnership; if a corporation or unincorporated association, to an officer or agent authorized to accept service of process therefor. Personal service includes handling the document to be served to the individual, partner, officer, or agent; leaving it at his or her office with a person in charge thereof; or, if there is no one in charge or if the office is closed or if the party has no office, leaving it at his or her dwelling house or usual place of abode with some person of suitable age and discretion then residing therein. Documents served in adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of the Commission's Rules of Practice shall be deemed served on the day of personal service or the day of mailing. All other documents shall be deemed served on the day of personal service or on the day of delivery by the Post Office.

(c) *Proof of service*. In an adjudicative proceeding under the Commission's Rules of Practice, 16 CFR Part 3, papers presented for filing shall contain proof of service in the form of a statement of the date and manner of service and of the names of the persons served, certified by the person who made service. Proof of service must appear on or be affixed to the papers filed.

[50 FR 28097, July 10, 1985, as amended at 66 FR 17633, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 20527, Apr. 23, 2001]

§ 4.5 Fees.

(a) *Deponents and witnesses*. Any person compelled to appear in person in response to subpoena shall be paid the same fees and mileage as are paid witnesses in the courts of the United States.

(b) *Presiding officers*. Officers before whom depositions are taken shall be entitled to the same fees as are paid for like services in the courts of the United States.

(c) *Responsibility*. The fees and mileage referred to in this section shall be paid by the party at whose instance deponents or witnesses appear.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967]

§ 4.6 Cooperation with other agencies.

It is the policy of the Commission to cooperate with other governmental agencies to avoid unnecessary overlapping or duplication of regulatory functions.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967]

§ 4.7 Ex parte communications.

(a) *Definitions*. For purposes of this section, *ex parte communication* means an oral or written communication not on the public record with respect to which reasonable prior notice to all parties is not given, but it shall not include requests for status reports on any matter or proceeding.

(b) *Prohibited ex parte communications*. While a proceeding is in adjudicative status within the Commission, except to the extent required for the disposition of *ex parte* matters as authorized by law:

(1) No person not employed by the Commission, and no employee or agent of the Commission who performs investigative or prosecuting functions in adjudicative proceedings, shall make or knowingly cause to be made to any member of the Commission, or to the Administrative Law Judge, or to any other employee who is or who reasonably may be expected to be involved in the decisional process in the proceeding, an *ex parte* communciation relevant to the merits of that or a factually related proceeding; and

(2) No member of the Commission, the Administrative Law Judge, or any other employee who is or who reasonably may be expected to be involved in the decisional process in the proceeding, shall make or knowingly cause to be made to any person not employed by the Commission, or to any employee or agent of the Commission who performs investigative or prosecuting functions in adjudicative proceedings, an *ex parte* communication relevant to the merits of that or a factually related proceeding.

(c) *Procedures*. A Commissioner, the Administrative Law Judge or any other employee who is or who may reasonably be expected to be involved in the decisional process who receives or who make or knowingly causes to be made, a communication prohibited by paragraph (b) of this section shall promptly provide to the Secretary of the Commission:

(1) All such written communications;

(2) Memoranda stating the substance of and circumstances of all such oral communications; and

(3) All written responses, and memoranda stating the substance of all oral responses, to the materials described in paragraphs (c) (1) and (2) of this section. The Secretary shall make relevant portions of any such materials part of the public record of the Commission, pursuant to §4.9, and place them in the docket binder of the proceeding to which it pertains, but they will not be considered by the Commission as part of the record for purposes of decision unless introduced into evidence in the proceeding. The Secretary shall also send copies of the materials to or otherwise notify all parties to the proceeding.

(d) *Sanctions*. (1) Upon receipt of an *ex parte* communication knowingly made or knowingly caused to be made by a party and prohibited by paragraph (b) of this section, the Commission, Administrative Law Judge, or other employee presiding over the proceeding may, to the extent consistent with the interests of justice and the policy of the underlying statutes administered by the Commission, require the party to show cause why his claim or interest in the proceeding should not be dismissed, denied, disregarded, or otherwise adversely affected on account of such violation. The Commission may take such action as it considers appropriate, including but not limited to, action under §4.1(e)(2) and 5 U.S.C. 556(d).

(2) A person, not a party to the proceeding who knowingly makes or causes to be made an *ex parte* communication prohibited by paragraph (b) of this section shall be subject to all sanctions provided herein if he subsequently becomes a party to the proceeding.

(e) The prohibitions of this section shall apply in an adjudicative proceeding from the time the Commission votes to issue a complaint pursuant to §3.11, to conduct adjudicative hearings pursuant to §3.13, or to issue an order to show cause pursuant to §3.72(b), or from the time an order by a U.S. court of appeals remanding a Commission decision and order for further proceedings becomes effective, until the time the Commission votes to enter its decision in the proceeding and the time permitted by §3.55 to seek reconsideration of that decision has elapsed. For purposes of this section, an order of remand by a U.S. court of appeals shall be deemed to become effective when the Commission determines not to file a petition for a writ of *certiorari*, or when the time for filing such a petition has expired without a petition having been filed, or when such a petition has been denied. If a petition for reconsideration of a Commission decision is filed pursuant to §3.55, the provisions of this section shall apply until the time the Commission votes to enter an order disposing of the petition. In addition, the prohibitions of this section shall apply with respect to communications concerning an application for stay filed with the Commission pursuant to §3.56 from the time that the application is filed until its disposition.

(f) The prohibitions of paragraph (b) of this section do not apply to a communication occasioned by and concerning a nonadjudicative function of the Commission, including such functions as the initiation, conduct, or disposition of a separate investigation, the issuance of a complaint, or the initiation of a rulemaking or other proceeding, whether or not it involves a party already in an adjudicative proceeding; preparations for judicial review of a Commission order; a proceeding outside the scope of §3.2, including a matter in state or federal court or before another governmental agency; a nonadjudicative function of the Commission, including but not limited to an obligation under §4.11 or a communication with Congress; or the disposition of a consent settlement under §3.25 concerning some or all of the charges involved in a complaint and executed by some or all respondents. The Commission, at its discretion and under such restrictions as it may deem appropriate, may disclose to the public or to respondent(s) in a pending adjudicative proceeding a communication made exempt by this paragraph from the prohibitions of paragraph (b) of this section, however, when the Commission determines that the interests of justice would be served by the disclosure. The prohibitions of paragraph (b) of this section also do not

apply to a communication between any member of the Commission, the Administrative Law Judge, or any other employee who is or who reasonably may be expected to be involved in the decisional process, and any employee who has been directed by the Commission or requested by an individual Commissioner or Administrative Law Judge to assist in the decision of the adjudicative proceeding. Such employee shall not, however, have performed an investigative or prosecuting function in that or a factually related proceeding.

[42 FR 43974, Sept. 1, 1977, as amended at 44 FR 40637, July 12, 1979; 46 FR 32435, June 23, 1981; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 51 FR 36802, Oct. 16, 1986; 57 FR 10805, Mar. 31, 1992; 60 FR 37748, July 21, 1995; 60 FR 67325, Dec. 29, 1995]

§ 4.8 Costs for obtaining Commission records.

(a) *Definitions.* For the purpose of this section:

(1) The term *search* includes all time spent looking, manually or by automated means, for material that is responsive to a request, including page-by-page or line-by-line identification of material within documents.

(2) The term *duplication* refers to the process of making a copy of a document in order to respond to a request for Commission records.

(3) The term *review* refers to the examination of documents located in response to a request to determine whether any portion of such documents may be withheld, and the reduction or other processing of documents for disclosure. Review does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the release of the document.

(4) The term *direct costs* means expenditures that the Commission actually incurs in processing requests. Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as costs of document review facilities or the costs of heating or lighting such a facility or other facilities in which records are stored. The direct costs of specific services are set forth in § 4.8(b)(6).

(b) *Fees.* User fees pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 483(a) and 5 U.S.C. 552(a) shall be charged according to this paragraph.

(1) *Commercial use requesters.* Commercial use requesters will be charged for the direct costs to search for, review, and duplicate documents. A commercial use requester is a requester who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers the commercial, trade, or profit interests of the requester or the person on whose behalf the request is made.

(2) *Educational requesters, non-commercial scientific institution requesters, and representative of the news media.* Requesters in these categories will be charged for the direct costs to duplicate documents, excluding charges for the first 100 pages. An *educational institution* is a preschool, a public or private elementary or secondary school, an institution of graduate higher education, an institution of undergraduate higher education, an institution of professional education, and an institution of vocational education, which operates a program or programs of scholarly research. A *non-commercial scientific institution* is an institution that is not operated on a *commercial* basis as that term is referenced in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and that is operated solely to conduct scientific research the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry. A *representative of the news media* is any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the public. *News* means information that is about current events or that would be of current interest to the public.

(3) *Other requesters.* Other requesters will be charged for the direct costs to search for and duplicate documents, except that the first 100 pages of duplication and the first two hours of search time shall be furnished without charge.

(4) *Waiver of small charges.* Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraphs (b)(1), (2), and (3) of this section, charges will be waived if the total chargeable fees for a request do not exceed $14.00.

(5) *Materials available without charge.* These provisions do not apply to recent Commission decisions and other materials that may be made available to all requesters without charge while supplies last.

(6) *Schedule of direct costs.* The following uniform schedule of fees applies to records held by all constituent units of the Commission:

Paper Fees:	
Paper copy (up to 8.5″×14″).	
Reproduced by Commission	$0.14 per page.
Reproduced by Requester	0.05 per page.
Microfiche Fees:	
Film Copy—Paper to 16mm film	0.04 per frame.
Fiche Copy—Paper to 105mm fiche	0.08 per frame.
Film Copy—Duplication of existing 100 ft. roll of 16mm film	9.50 per roll.
Fiche Copy—Duplication of existing 105mm fiche	0.26 per fiche.
Paper Copy—Converting existing 16mm film to paper (Conversion by Commission Staff).	0.26 per page.
Paper Copy—Converting existing 105mm fiche to paper (Conversion by Commission Staff).	0.23 per page.
Film Cassettes	2.00 per cassette.
Electronic Services:	
Converting paper into electronic format (scanning)	2.50 per page.
Computer programming	8.00 per qtr. hour.
Other Fees:	
Computer Tape	18.50 each.
Certification	10.35 each.
Express Mail	3.50 for first pound and 3.67 for each additional pound (up to $15.00).

Search and Review Fees

Agency staff is divided into three categories: clerical, attorney/economist, and other professional. Fees for search and review are assessed on a quarter-hourly basis, and are determined by identifying the category into which the staff member(s) conducting the search or review belong(s), determining the average quarter-hourly wages of all staff members within that category, and adding 16 percent to reflect the cost of additional benefits accorded to government employees. The exact fees are calculated and announced periodically and are available from the Consumer Response Center, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580; (202) 326–2222.

(c) *Information to determine fees.* Each request for records shall set forth whether the request is made for other than commercial purposes and whether the requester is an educational institution, a noncommercial scientific institution, or a representative of the news media. The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) initially, or the General Counsel on appeal, will use this information, any additional information provided by the requester, and any other relevant information to determine the appropriate fee category in which to place the requester.

(d) *Agreement to pay fees.* (1) Each request that does not contain an application for a fee waiver shall specifically indicate the requester's willingness either:

(i) To pay, in accordance with §4.8(b) of these rules, whatever fees may be charged for processing the request; or

(ii) A willingness to pay such fees up to a specified amount.

(2) Each request that contains an application for a fee waiver must specifically indicate:

(i) The requester's willingness to pay, in accordance with §4.8(b) of the rules, whatever fees may be charged for processing the request;

(ii) The requester's willingness to pay fees up to a specified amount; or

(iii) That the requester is not willing to pay fees if the waiver is not granted.

(3) If the agreement required by this section is absent, and if the estimated fees exceed $25.00, the requester will be advised of the estimated fees and the

request will not be processed until the requester agrees to pay such fees.

(e) *Public interest fee waivers*—(1) *Procedures.* A requester may apply for a waiver of fees. The requester shall explain why a waiver is appropriate under the standards set forth in this paragraph. The application shall also include a statement, as provided by paragraph (d) of this section, of whether the requester agrees to pay costs if the waiver is denied. The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) initially, or the General Counsel on appeal, will rule on applications for fee waivers.

(2) *Standards.* (i) The first requirement for a fee waiver is that disclosure will likely contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government. This requirement shall be met if:

(A) The subject matter of the requested information concerns the operations or activities of the Federal government;

(B) The disclosure is likely to contribute to an understanding of these operations or activities;

(C) The understanding to which disclosure is likely to contribute is the understanding of the public at large, as opposed to the understanding of the individual requester or a narrow segment of interested persons; and

(D) The likely contribution to public understanding will be significant.

(ii) The second requirement for a fee waiver is that the request not be primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. Satisfaction of this requirement shall be determined by considering:

(A) Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure; and

(B) If so, whether the public interest in disclosure is outweighed by the identified commercial interest of the requester so as to render the disclosure primarily in the requester's commercial interest.

(f) *Unsuccessful searches.* Charges may be assessed for search time even if the agency fails to locate any responsive records or if it locates only records that are determined to be exempt from disclosure.

(g) *Aggregating requests.* If the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) initially, or the General Counsel on appeal, reasonably believes that a requester, or a group of requesters acting in concert, is attempting to evade an assessment of fees by dividing a single request into a series of smaller requests, the requests may be aggregated and fees charged accordingly.

(h) *Advance payment.* If the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) initially, or the General Counsel on appeal, estimates or determines that allowable charges that a requester may be required to pay are likely to exceed $250.00, or if the requester has previously failed to pay a fee within 30 days of the date of billing, the requester may be required to pay some or all of the total estimated charge in advance. Further, the requester may be required to pay all unpaid bills, including accrued interest, prior to processing the request.

(i) *Means of payment.* Payment shall be made by check or money order payable to the Treasury of the United States.

(j) *Interest charges.* The Commission will begin assessing interest charges on an unpaid bill starting on the 31st day following the day on which the bill was sent. Interest will accrue from the date of the billing, and will be calculated at the rate prescribed in 31 U.S.C. 3717.

(k) *Effect of the Debt Collection Act of 1982 (Pub. L. 97–365)* The Commission may pursue repayment, where appropriate, by employing the provisions of the Debt Collection Act, Public Law 97–365), including disclosure to consumer reporting agencies and use of collection agencies.

[57 FR 10806, Mar. 31, 1992, as amended at 63 FR 45646, Aug. 26, 1998; 64 FR 3012, Jan. 20, 1999; 66 FR 64144, Dec. 12, 2001]

§ 4.9 The public record.

(a) *General.* (1) Materials on the public record of the Commission are available for public inspection and copying either routinely or upon request.

(2) Materials that are exempt from mandatory public disclosure, or are otherwise not available from the Commission's public record, may be made available for inspection and copying only upon request under the procedures

set forth in §4.11 of this part, or as provided in §§4.10 (d) through (g), 4.13, and 4.15(b)(3) of this part, or by the Commission.

(3) *Location*. All of the public records of the Commission are available for inspection at the principal office of the Commission on each business day from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m., and copies of some of those records are available at the regional offices on each business day from 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m. Copies of records that the Commission is required to make available to the public electronically, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2), may be obtained in that format from the Commission's Web site on the Internet, *www.ftc.gov*.

(4) *Copying of public records*—(i) *Procedures*. Reasonable facilities for copying public records are provided at each office of the Commission. Subject to appropriate limitations and the availability of facilities, any person may copy public records available for inspection at each of those offices. Further, the agency will provide copies to any person upon request. Written requests for copies of public records shall be addressed to the Supervisor, Consumer Response Center, and shall specify as clearly and accurately as reasonably possible the records desired. For records that cannot be specified with complete clarity and particularity, requesters shall provide descriptions sufficient to enable qualified Commission personnel to locate the records sought. In any instance, the Commission, the Supervisor of the Consumer Response Center, the General Counsel, the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel), or the official in charge of each office may prohibit the use of Commission facilities to produce more than one copy of any public record, and may refuse to permit the use of such facilities for copying records that have been published or are publicly available at places other than the offices of the Commission.

(ii) *Costs; agreement to pay costs*. Requesters will be charged search and duplication costs prescribed by Rule 4.8 for requests under this section. All requests shall include a statement of the information needed to determine fees, as provided by §4.8(c), and an agreement to pay fees (or a statement that the requester will not pay fees if a fee waiver is denied), as provided by §4.8(d). Requests may also include an application for a fee waiver, as provided by §4.8(e). Advance payment may be required, as provided by §4.8(h).

(iii) *Records for sale at another government agency*. If requested materials are available for sale at another government agency, the requester will not be provided with copies of the materials but will be advised to obtain them from the selling agency.

(b) *Categories*. Except to the extent material is confidential, as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, the public record of the Commission includes, but is not necessarily limited to:

(1) *Commission Organization and Procedures (16 CFR part 0 and §§4.14 through 4.15, 4.17)*. (i) A current index of opinions, orders, statements of policy and interpretations, administrative staff manuals, general instructions and other public records of the Commission;

(ii) A current record of the final votes of each member of the Commission in all matters of public record, including matters of public record decided by notational voting;

(iii) Descriptions of the Commission's organization, including descriptions of where, from whom, and how the public may secure information, submit documents or requests, and obtain copies of orders, decisions and other materials;

(iv) Statements of the Commission's general procedures and policies and interpretations, its nonadjudicative procedures, its rules of practice for adjudicative proceedings, and its miscellaneous rules, including descriptions of the nature and requirements of all formal and informal procedures available, and

(v) Reprints of the principal laws under which the Commission exercises enforcement or administrative responsibilities.

(2) *Industry Guidance (16 CFR 1.1–1.6)*. (i) Any advice, advisory opinion or response given and required to be made public under §§1.4 and 2.41 (d) or (f) of this chapter (whether by the Commission or the staff), together with a statement of supporting reasons;

(ii) Industry guides, digests of advisory opinions and compliance advice believed to be of interest to the public generally and other administrative interpretations;

(iii) Transcripts of hearings in all industry guide proceedings, as well as written statements filed with or forwarded to the Commission in connection with these proceedings; and

(iv) Petitions filed with the Secretary of the Commission for the promulgation or issuance, amendment, or repeal of industry guides.

(3) *Rulemaking (16 CFR 1.7 through 1.26).* (i) Petitions filed with the Secretary of the Commission for the promulgation or issuance, amendment, or repeal of rules or regulations within the scope of §§ 1.7 and 1.21 of this chapter, and petitions for exemptions;

(ii) Notices and advance notices of proposed rulemaking and rules and orders issued in rulemaking proceedings; and

(iii) Transcripts of hearings of all rulemaking proceedings, as well as written statements filed with or forwarded to the Commission in connection with these proceedings.

(4) *Investigations (16 CFR 2.7).* (i) Petitions to limit or quash compulsory process and the rulings thereon, requests for review by the full Commission of those rulings, and Commission rulings on such requests; and

(ii) Closing letters in initial phase and full phase investigations.

(5) *Adjudicative proceedings, stay applications, requests to reopen, and litigated orders. (16 CFR 2.51, 3.1 through 3.24, 3.31 through 3.56, 3.71 through 3.72, 4.7)*—Except for transcripts of matters heard *in camera* pursuant to § 3.45 and material filed *in camera* pursuant to §§ 3.22, 3.24, 3.45, 3.46, 3.51 and 3.52,

(i) The versions of pleadings and transcripts of prehearing conferences to the extent made available under § 3.21(e), motions, certifications, orders, and the transcripts of hearings (including public conferences), testimony, oral arguments, and other material made a part thereof, and exhibits and material received in evidence or made a part of the public record in adjudicative proceedings;

(ii) Initial decisions of administrative law judges;

(iii) Orders and opinions in interlocutory matters;

(iv) Final orders and opinions in adjudications, and rulings on stay applications, including separate statements of Commissioners;

(v) Petitions for reconsideration, and answers thereto, filed pursuant to § 3.55;

(vi) Applications for stay, answers thereto, and replies, filed pursuant to § 3.56;

(vii) Petitions, applications, pleadings, briefs, and other records filed by the Commission with the courts in connection with adjudicative, injunctive, enforcement, compliance, and condemnation proceedings, and in connection with judicial review of Commission actions, and opinions and orders of the courts in disposition thereof;

(viii) Records of *ex parte* communications in adjudicative proceedings and stay applications;

(ix) Petitions to reopen proceedings and orders to determine whether orders should be altered, modified, or set aside in accordance with § 2.51; and

(x) Decisions reopening proceedings, and orders to show cause under § 3.72.

(6) *Consent Agreements (16 CFR 2.31 through 2.34, 3.25).* (i) Agreements containing orders, after acceptance by the Commission pursuant to §§ 2.34 and 3.25(f) of this chapter;

(ii) Comments and other materials filed or placed on the public record under §§ 2.34 and 3.25(f) concerning proposed consent agreements and related orders; and

(iii) Decisions and orders issued and served under §§ 2.34 and 3.25(f), including separate statements of Commissioners.

(7) *Compliance/Enforcement (16 CFR 2.33, 2.41).* (i) Reports of compliance filed pursuant to the rules in this chapter or pursuant to a provision in a Commission order and supplemental materials filed in connection with these reports, except for reports of compliance, and supplemental materials filed in connection with Commission orders requiring divestitures or establishment of business enterprises of facilities, which are confidential until the last divestiture or establishment of a business enterprise or facility, as required by a particular order, has been

finally approved by the Commission, and staff letters to respondents advising them that their compliance reports do not warrant any further action. At the time each such report is submitted the filing party may request confidential treatment in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee will pass upon such request in accordance with that paragraph;

(ii) Materials required to be made public under 16 CFR 2.41(f) in connection with applications for approval of proposed divestitures, acquisitions or similar transactions subject to Commission review under outstanding orders.

(8) *Access to Documents and Meetings (16 CFR 4.8, 4.11, 4.13, 4.15).* (i) Letters requesting access to Commission records pursuant to §4.11(a) of this chapter and the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, and letters granting or denying such requests (not including access requests and answers thereto from the Congress or other government agencies);

(ii) Announcements of Commission meetings as required under the Sunshine Act, 5 U.S.C. 552b, including records of the votes to close such meetings;

(iii) Summaries or other explanatory materials relating to matters to be considered at open meetings made available pursuant to §4.15(b)(3)

(iv) Commission minutes of open meetings, and, to the extent they are not exempt from mandatory public disclosure under the Sunshine Act or the Freedom of Information Act, portions of minutes or transcripts of closed meetings; and

(v) A guide for requesting records or information from the Commission, including an index of all major information systems, a description of major information and record locator systems maintained by the Commission, and a handbook for obtaining various types and categories of public information.

(9) *Standards of Conduct (16 CFR 5.5 through 5.6, 5.10 through 5.26, 5.31, 5.57 through 5.68).* (i) Memoranda to staff elaborating or clarifying standards described in administative staff manuals and part 5 of this subchapter.

(10) *Miscellaneous (Press Releases, Clearance Requests, Reports Filed by or with the Commission, Continuing Guaranties, Registered Identification Numbers).* (i) Releases by the Commission's Office of Public Affairs supplying information concerning the activities of the Commission;

(ii) Applications under §4.1(b)(2) of this chapter for clearance or authorization to appear or participate in a proceeding or investigation and of the Commission's responses thereto;

(iii) Continuing guaranties filed under the Wool, Fur, and Textile Acts;

(iv) Published reports by the staff or by the Commission on economic surveys and investigations of general interest;

(v) Filings by the Commission or by the staff in connection with proceedings before other federal agencies or state or local government bodies;

(vi) Registration statements and annual reports filed with the Commission by export trade associations, and bulletins, pamphlets, and reports with respect to such associations released by the Commission;

(vii) The identities of holders of registered identification numbers issued by the Commission pursuant to §1.32 of this chapter;

(viii) The Commission's annual report submitted after the end of each fiscal year, summarizing its work during the year (available for inspection at each of the offices of the Commission with copies obtainable from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402) and any other annual reports made to Congress on activities of the Commission as required by law;

(ix) Records, as determined by the General Counsel or his or her designee, that have been released in response to a request made under the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, and which, because of the nature of the subject matter, have become or are likely to become the subject of subsequent requests for substantially the same records, except where some or all of those records would be exempt from disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552 if requested by another party;

(x) A general index of the records referred to under paragraph (b)(10)(ix) of this section;

(xi) Grants of early termination of waiting periods published in accordance with the Hart-Scott-Rodino premerger notification provisions of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a(b)(2);

(xii) Reports on appliance energy consumption or efficiency filed with the Commission pursuant to § 305.8 of this chapter;

(xiii) Annual filings by professional boxing sanctioning organizations as required by the Muhammed Ali Boxing Reform Act, 15 U.S.C. 6301 note, 6307a–6307h;

(xiv) Other documents that the Commission has determined to place on the public record; and

(xv) Every amendment, revision, substitute, or repeal of any of the foregoing items listed in § 4.9(b)(1) through (10) of this section.

(c) *Confidentiality and in camera material.* (1) Persons submitting material to the Commission described in this section may designate that material or portions of it confidential and request that it be withheld from the public record. All requests for confidential treatment shall be supported by a showing of justification in light of applicable statutes, rules, orders of the Commission or its administrative law judges, orders of the courts, or other relevant authority. The General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee will act upon such request with due regard for legal constraints and the public interest. No such material or portions of material (including documents generated by the Commission or its staff containing or reflecting such material or portions of material) will be placed on the public record until the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee has ruled on the request for confidential treatment and provided any prior notice to the submitter required by law.

(2) Motions seeking *in camera* treatment of material submitted in connection with a proceeding under part 3 of these rules, except stay applications under § 3.56, shall be filed with the Administrative Law Judge who is presiding over the proceeding. Requests for confidential treatment of material submitted in connection with a stay application shall be made in accordance with § 4.9(c)(1).

(3) To the extent that any material or portions of material otherwise falling within paragraph (b) of this section contain information that is not required to be made public under § 4.10 of this part, the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee may determine, with due regard for legal constraints and the public interest, to withhold such materials from the public record.

[50 FR 50779, Dec. 12, 1985, as amended at 57 FR 10805, Mar. 31, 1992; 59 FR 34970, July 8, 1994; 60 FR 37749, July 21, 1995; 63 FR 18820, Apr. 16, 1998; 63 FR 32977, June 17, 1998; 63 FR 45647, Aug. 26, 1998; 64 FR 46269, Aug. 25, 1999; 66 FR 17633, Apr. 3, 2001; 66 FR 64144, Dec. 12, 2001]

§ 4.10 Nonpublic material.

(a) The following records and other material of the Commission are not required to be made public pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552.

(1) Records, except to the extent required to be disclosed under other laws or regulations, related solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of the Commission. This exemption applies to internal rules or instructions to Commission personnel which must be kept confidential in order to assure effective performance of the functions and activities for which the Commission is responsible and which do not affect members of the public.

(2) Trade secrets and commercial or financial information obtained from a person and privileged or confidential. As provided in section 6(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 46(f), this exemption applies to competitively sensitive information, such as costs or various types of sales statistics and inventories. It includes trade secrets in the nature of formulas, patterns, devices, and processes of manufacture, as well as names of customers in which there is a proprietary or highly competitive interest.

(3) Interagency or intra-agency memoranda or letters which would not routinely be available by law to a private party in litigation with the Commission. This exemption preserves the

existing freedom of Commission officials and employees to engage in full and frank communication with each other and with officials and employees of other governmental agencies. This exemption includes records of the deliberations of the Commission except for the record of the final votes of each member of the Commission in every agency proceeding. It includes intraagency and interagency reports, memorandums, letters, correspondence, work papers, and minutes of meetings, as well as staff papers prepared for use within the Commission or between the Commission and other governmental agencies. It also includes information scheduled for public release, but as to which premature release would be contrary to the public interest;

(4) Personnel and medical files and similar files the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy except to the extent such files or materials must be disclosed under other laws or regulations. This exemption applies to personnel and medical records and similar records containing private or personal information concerning any individual which, if disclosed to any person other than the individual concerned or his designated legal representative without his permission in writing, would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy. Examples of files exempt from disclosure include, but are not limited to:

(i) The personnel records of the Commission;

(ii) Files containing reports, records or other material pertaining to individual cases in which disciplinary or other administrative action has been or may be taken, including records of proceedings pertaining to the conduct or performance of duties by Commission personnel;

(5) Records or information compiled for law enforcement purposes, but only to the extent that production of such law enforcement records or information:

(i) Could reasonably be expected to interfere with enforcement proceedings;

(ii) Would deprive a person of a right to a fair trial or an impartial adjudication;

(iii) Could reasonably be expected to constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy;

(iv) Could reasonably be expected to disclose the identity of a confidential source, including a State, local, or foreign agency or authority or any private institution that furnished information on a confidential basis, and, in the case of a record or information compiled by a criminal law enforcement authority in the course of a criminal investigation, or by an agency conducting a lawful national security intelligence investigation, information furnished by a confidential source;

(v) Would disclose techniques and procedures for law enforcement investigations or prosecutions, or would disclose guidelines for law enforcement investigations or prosecutions if such disclosure could reasonably be expected to risk circumvention of the law; or

(vi) Could reasonably be expected to endanger the life or physical safety of any individual.

(6) Information contained in or related to examination, operating, or condition reports prepared by, on behalf of, or for the use of an agency responsible for the regulation or supervision of financial institutions;

(7) Geological and geophysical information and data, including maps, concerning wells; and

(8) Material, as that term is defined in section 21(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, which is received by the Commission:

(i) In an investigation, a purpose of which is to determine whether any person may have violated any provision of the laws administered by the Commission; and

(ii) Which is provided pursuant to any compulsory process under the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41, *et seq.*, or which is provided voluntarily in place of compulsory process in such an investigation. See section 21(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(9) Material, as that term is defined in section 21(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, which is received by

the Commission pursuant to compulsory process in an investigation, a purpose of which is to determine whether any person may have violated any provision of the laws administered by the Commission. See section 21(b)(3)(C) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(10) Such other material of the Commission as may from time to time be designated by the Commission as confidential pursuant to statute or Executive Order. This exempts from disclosure any information that has been designated nonpublic pursuant to criteria and procedures prescribed by Executive Order and that has not been subsequently declassified in accordance with applicable procedures. The exemption also preserves the full force and effect of statutes that restrict public access to specific government records or material.

(11) Material in an investigation or proceeding that involves a possible violation of criminal law, when there is reason to believe that the subject of the investigation or proceeding is not aware of its pendency, and disclosure of the existence of the investigation could reasonably be expected to interfere with enforcement proceedings. When a request is made for records under § 4.11(a), the Commission may treat the records as not subject to the requirements of the Freedom of Information Act.

(b) With respect to information contained in transcripts of Commission meetings, the exemptions contained in paragraph (a) of this section, except for paragraphs (a)(3) and (a)(7) of this section, shall apply; in addition, such information will not be made available if it is likely to have any of the effects described in 5 U.S.C. 552b (c)(5), (c)(9), or (c)(10).

(c) Under section 10 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, any officer or employee of the Commission who shall make public any information obtained by the Commission, without its authority, unless directed by a court, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor, and upon conviction thereof, may be punished by a fine not exceeding five thousand dollars ($5,000), or by imprisonment not exceeding 1 year, or by fine and imprisonment, in the discretion of the court.

(d) Except as provided in paragraphs (f) or (g) of this section or in § 4.11(b), (c), (d), (i), or (j), no material that is marked or otherwise identified as confidential and that is within the scope of § 4.10(a)(8), and no material within the scope of § 4.10(a)(9) that is not otherwise public, will be made available without the consent of the person who produced the material, to any individual other than a duly authorized officer or employee of the Commission or a consultant or contractor retained by the Commission who has agreed in writing not to disclose the information. All other Commission records may be made available to a requester under the procedures set forth in § 4.11 or may be disclosed by the Commission except where prohibited by law.

(e) Except as provided in paragraphs (f) or (g) of this section or in § 4.11(b), (c), (d), (i), or (j), material not within the scope of § 4.10(a)(8) or § 4.10(a)(9) that is received by the Commission and is marked or otherwise identified as confidential may be disclosed only if it is determined that the material is not within the scope of § 4.10(a)(2), and the submitter is provided at least ten days notice of the intent to disclose the material.

(f) Nonpublic material obtained by the Commission may be disclosed to persons other than the submitter in connection with the taking of oral testimony without the consent of the submitter only if the material or transcript is not within the scope of § 4.10(a)(2). If the material is marked confidential, the submitter will be provided 10 days' notice of the intended disclosure or will be afforded an opportunity to seek an appropriate protective order.

(g) Material obtained by the Commission:

(1) Through compulsory process and protected by section 21(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57b–2(b) or voluntarily in lieu thereof and designated by the submitter as confidential and protected by section 21(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57b–2(f), and § 4.10(d) of this part; or

(2) That is designated by the submitter as confidential, and protected by section 21(c) of the Federal Trade

Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57b–2(c), and §4.10(e) of this part; or

(3) That is confidential commercial or financial information protected by section 6(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 46(f), and §4.10(a)(2) of this part, may be disclosed in Commission administrative or court proceedings subject to Commission or court protective or *in camera* orders as appropriate. See §§1.18(b) and 3.45.

Prior to disclosure of such material in a proceeding, the submitter will be afforded an opportunity to seek an appropriate protective or *in camera* order. All other material obtained by the Commission may be disclosed in Commission administrative or court proceedings at the discretion of the Commission except where prohibited by law.

(15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*)

[38 FR 1731, Jan. 18, 1973, as amended at 40 FR 7629, Feb. 21, 1975; 40 FR 23278, May 29, 1975; 42 FR 13540, Mar. 11, 1977; 46 FR 26291, May 12, 1981; 49 FR 30166, July 27, 1984; 54 FR 7399, Feb. 21, 1989; 57 FR 10807, Mar. 31, 1992; 60 FR 37749, July 21, 1995; 63 FR 38473, July 17, 1998; 65 FR 67259, Nov. 9, 2000; 66 FR 17633, Apr. 3, 2001; 72 FR 28853, May, 23, 2007]

§4.11 Disclosure requests.

(a) *Freedom of Information Act requests*—(1) *Initial requests*—(i) *Form and contents; time of receipt.* (A) A request under the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, as amended, for access to Commission records shall be in writing and addressed as follows: Freedom of Information Act Request, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(B) Failure to mark the envelope and the request in accordance with paragraph (a)(1)(i)(A) of this section, or the filing of a request for expedited treatment under paragraph (a)(1)(i)(E) of this section, will result in the request (or requests, if expedited treatment has been requested) being treated as received on the date that the processing unit in the Office of General Counsel actually receives the request(s).

(C) *Costs; agreement to pay costs.* Requesters will be charged search and duplication costs prescribed by Rule 4.8 for requests under this section. All requests shall include a statement of the information needed to determine fees, as provided by §4.8(c), and an agreement to pay fees (or a statement that the requester will not pay fees if a fee waiver is denied), as provided by §4.8(d). Requests may also include an application for a fee waiver, as provided by §4.8(e). An advance payment may be required in appropriate cases as provided by §4.8(h).

(D) *Failure to agree to pay fees.* If a request does not include an agreement to pay fees, and if the requester is notified of the estimated costs pursuant to Rule 4.8(d)(3), the request will be deemed not to have been received until the requester agrees to pay such fees. If a requester declines to pay fees and is not granted a fee waiver, the request will be denied.

(E) *Expedited treatment.* Requests may include an application for expedited treatment. Where such an application is not included with an initial request for access to records under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, the application may be included in any appeal of that request filed under paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Such application, which shall be certified by the requester to be true and correct to the best of such person's knowledge and belief, shall describe the compelling need for expedited treatment, including an explanation as to why a failure to obtain the requested records on an expedited basis could reasonably be expected to pose an imminent threat to the life or physical safety of an individual, or, with respect to a request made by a person primarily engaged in disseminating information, an explanation of the urgency to inform the public concerning actual or alleged Federal Government activity. The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will, within 10 calendar days of receipt of a request for expedited treatment, notify the requester, in writing, of the decision to either grant or deny the request for expedited treatment, and, if the request is denied, advise the requester that this determination may be appealed to the General Counsel.

(F) *Records for sale at another government agency.* If requested materials are available for sale at another government agency, the requester will not be

provided with copies of the materials but will be advised to obtain them from the selling agency.

(ii) *Identifiability*. (A) A request for access to Commission records must reasonably describe the records requested to enable Commission personnel to identify and locate them with a reasonable amount of effort. A request should be as specific as possible, and include, where known, information regarding dates, titles, file designations, location, and any other information which may assist the Commission in identifying and locating the records requested.

(B) A denial of a request may state that the description required by paragraph (a)(1)(ii)(A) of this section is insufficient to allow identification and location of the records.

(iii) *Time limit for initial determination*. (A) The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will, within 20 working days of the receipt of a request, either grant or deny, in whole or in part, such request, unless the request has been granted expedited treatment in accordance with this section, in which case the request will be processed as soon as practicable.

(B) Except in exceptional circumstances as provided in paragraph (a)(1)(iii)(C) of this section, the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) may extend the time limit by not more than 10 working days if such extension is:

(*1*) Necessary for locating records or transferring them from physically separate facilities; or

(*2*) Necessary to search for, collect, and appropriately examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records which are sought in a single or series of closely related requests; or

(*3*) Necessary for consultation with another agency having a substantial interest in the determination, or for consultation among two or more components of the Commission having substantial subject matter interest therein.

(C) If the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) extends the time limit for initial determination pursuant to paragraph (a)(1)(iii)(B) of this section, the requester will be notified in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(B). In exceptional circumstances, when the request cannot be processed within the extended time limit, the requester will be so notified and provided an opportunity to limit the scope of the request so that it may be processed within such time limit, or to arrange an alternative time frame for processing the request or a modified request. ''Exceptional'' circumstances will not include delays resulting from a predictable workload of requests under this section. Unwillingness to make reasonable modifications in the scope of the request or to agree to an alternative time frame may be considered as factors in determining whether exceptional circumstances exist and whether the agency has exercised due diligence in responding to the request.

(D) If the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) reasonably believes that requests made by a requester, or a group of requesters acting in concert, actually constitute a single request that would otherwise involve unusual circumstances, as specified in paragraph (a)(1)(iii)(B) of this section, and the requests involve clearly related matters, those multiple requests may be aggregated.

(E) If a request is not granted within the time limits set forth in paragraphs (a)(1)(iii) (A) and (B) of this section, the request shall be deemed to be denied and the requesting party may appeal such denial to the General Counsel in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(iv) *Initial determination*. (A) The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will make reasonable efforts to search, using either manual or electronic means, for the requested records in electronic form or format, except when such efforts would significantly interfere with the operation of the Commission's automated information systems. Access will be granted to requested records, or any portions thereof, that must be made available under the Freedom of Information Act. Access will be denied to records that are exempt under the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552(b), unless the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) determines that such

records fall within a category the Commission or the General Counsel has previously authorized to be made available to the public as a matter of policy. Denials will set forth the reasons therefor and advise the requester that this determination may be appealed to the General Counsel if the requester believes either that the records are not exempt, or that the General Counsel should exercise discretion to release such records notwithstanding their exempt status. The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will also provide a reasonable, good-faith estimate of the volume of any materials to which access is denied, unless providing such an estimate would harm an interest protected by an exemption in 5 U.S.C. 552(b) that was cited as a basis for withholding materials.

(B) The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) is deemed to be the sole official responsible for all denials of initial requests, except denials of access to materials contained in active investigatory files, in which case the Director or Deputy Director of the Bureau or the Director of the Regional Office responsible for the investigation will be the responsible official.

(C) Records to which access has been granted will be made available to the requester in any form or format specified by the requester, if the records are readily reproducible in that form or format, or can be converted to that form or format with a reasonable amount of effort, and they will remain available for inspection and copying for a period not to exceed 30 days from date of notification to the requester unless the requester asks for and receives the consent of the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) to a longer period. Records assembled pursuant to a request will remain available only during this period and thereafter will be refiled. Appropriate fees may be imposed for any new or renewed request for the same records.

(D) If a requested record cannot be located from the information supplied, or is known to have been destroyed or otherwise disposed of, the requester shall be so notified.

(2) *Appeals to the General Counsel from initial denials*—(i) *Form and contents; time of receipt.* (A)(*1*) If an initial request for expedited treatment is denied, the requester, at any time before the initial determination of the underlying request for records by the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) (or, if the request for expedited treatment was filed with any appeal filed under paragraph (a)(2)(i)(A)(*2*) of this section, at any time before the General Counsel's determination on such an appeal), may appeal the denial of expedited treatment to the General Counsel.

(*2*) If an initial request for records is denied in its entirety, the requester may, within 30 days of the date of the determination, appeal such denial to the General Counsel. If an initial request is denied in part, the time for appeal will not expire until 30 days after the date of the letter notifying the requester that all records to which access has been granted have been made available.

(*3*) The appeal shall be in writing and should include a copy of the initial request and a copy of the response to that initial request, if any. The appeal shall be addressed as follows: Freedom of Information Act Appeal, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(B) Failure to mark the envelope and the appeal in accordance with paragraph (a)(2)(i)(A) of this section will result in the appeal (and any request for expedited treatment filed with that appeal) being treated as received on the actual date of receipt by the Office of General Counsel.

(C) Each appeal to the General Counsel which requests him to exercise his discretion to release exempt records shall set forth the interest of the requester in the subject matter and the purpose for which the records will be used if the request is granted.

(ii) *Time limit for appeal.* (A)(*1*) Regarding appeals from initial denials of a request for expedited treatment, the General Counsel will either grant or deny the appeal expeditiously;

(*2*) Regarding appeals from initial denials of a request for records, the General Counsel will, within 20 working

days of the receipt of such an appeal, either grant or deny it, in whole or in part, unless expedited treatment has been granted in accordance with this section, in which case the appeal will be processed as soon as practicable.

(B) The General Counsel may, by written notice to the requester in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(B), extend the time limit for deciding an appeal by not more than 10 working days pursuant to paragraph (a)(1)(iii)(B) of this section, provided that the amount of any extension utilized during the initial consideration of the request under that paragraph will be subtracted from the amount of additional time otherwise available. Where exceptional circumstances do not permit the processing of the appeal within the extended time limit, the notice and procedures set forth in paragraph (a)(1)(iii)(C) of this section shall apply.

(iii) *Determination of appeal.* (A) The General Counsel has the authority to grant or deny all appeals and to release as an exercise of discretion records exempt from mandatory disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552(b). In unusual or difficult cases, the General Counsel may, in his or her sole discretion, refer an appeal to the Commission for determination. A denial of an appeal in whole or in part will set forth the basis for the denial; will include a reasonable, good-faith estimate of the volume of any materials to which access is denied, unless providing such an estimate would harm an interest protected by an exemption in 5 U.S.C. 552(b) that was cited as a basis for withholding materials; and will advise the requester that judicial review of the decision is available by civil suit in the district in which the requester resides, or has his principal place of business, or in which the agency records are situated, or in the District of Columbia.

(B) The General Counsel shall be deemed solely responsible for all denials of appeals, except where an appeal is denied by the Commission. In such instances, the Commission shall be deemed solely responsible for the denial.

(b) *Requests from congressional committees and subcommittees.* Requests from congressional committees and subcommittees for nonpublic material shall be referred to the General Counsel for presentation to the Commission, subject to the provisions in 5 U.S.C. 552(c) and FTC Act 21(b) that neither the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, nor the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41, *et seq.*, is authority to withhold information from Congress. Upon receipt of a request from a congressional committee or subcommittee, notice will be given to the submitter of any material marked confidential, or any material within the scope of § 4.10(a)(9), that is responsive to the request that the request has been received. No other notice need be provided prior to granting the request. The Commission will inform the committee or subcommittee that the submitter considers such information confidential.

(c) *Requests from Federal and State law enforcement agencies.* Requests from law enforcement agencies of the Federal and State governments for nonpublic records shall be addressed to a liaison officer, where the Commission has appointed such an officer, or if there is none, to the General Counsel. With respect to requests under this paragraph, the General Counsel, the General Counsel's designee, or the appropriate liaison officer is delegated the authority to dispose of them. Alternatively, the General Counsel may refer such requests to the Commission for determination, except that requests must be referred to the Commission for determination where the Bureau having the material sought and the General Counsel do not agree on the disposition. Prior to granting access under this section to any material submitted to the Commission, the General Counsel, the General Counsel's designee, or the liaison officer will obtain from the requester a certification that such information will be maintained in confidence and will be used only for official law enforcement purposes. The certificate will also describe the nature of the law enforcement activity and the anticipated relevance of the information to that activity. A copy of the certificate will be forwarded to the submitter of the information at the time the request is granted unless the agency requests that the submitter not

be notified. Requests for material pursuant to compulsory process, or for voluntary testimony, in cases or matters in which the Commission is not a party will be treated in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(d) *Requests from Federal and State agencies for purposes other than law enforcement.* Requests from Federal and State agencies for access to nonpublic records for purposes not related to law enforcement should be addressed to the General Counsel. The General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee is delegated the authority to dispose of requests under this paragraph. Disclosure of nonpublic information will be made consistent with sections 6(f) and 21 of the FTC Act. Requests under this section shall be subject to the fee and fee waiver provisions of §4.8. Requests for material pursuant to compulsory process, or for voluntary testimony, in cases or matters in which the Commission is not a party will be treated in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(e) *Requests for testimony, pursuant to compulsory process or otherwise, and requests for material pursuant to compulsory process, in cases or matters to which the Commission is not a party.* (1) The procedures specified in this section will apply to compulsory process and requests for voluntary testimony directed to Commission employees, except special government employees, that relate in any way to the employees' official duties. These procedures will also apply to compulsory process and requests for voluntary testimony directed to former Commission employees or to current or former special government employees of the Commission that seek nonpublic materials or information acquired during Commission employment. The provisions of paragraph (e)(3) of this section will also apply when requests described above are directed to the Commission. For purposes of this section, the term *testimony* includes any written or oral statement by a witness, such as depositions, affidavits, declarations, and statements at a hearing or trial; the term *nonpublic* includes any material or information which, under §4.10, is not required to be made public; the term *employees,* except where otherwise specified, includes *special government employees* and other Commission employees; and the term *special government employees* includes consultants and other employees as defined by section 202 of title 18 of the United States Code.

(2) Any employee or former employee who is served with compulsory process shall promptly advise the General Counsel of its service, the nature of the material or information sought, and all relevant facts and circumstances. This notification requirement also applies to any employee or former employee whose testimony is sought on a voluntary basis under the conditions set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this section.

(3) A party who causes compulsory process to be issued to, or who requests testimony by, the Commission or any employee or former employee of the Commission shall furnish a statement to the General Counsel, unless, with respect to a request by a Federal or State agency, the General Counsel determines, as a matter of discretion, to waive this requirement. The statement shall set forth the party's interest in the case or matter, the relevance of the desired testimony or material, and a discussion of whether it is reasonably available from other sources. If testimony is desired, the statement shall also contain a general summary of the testimony and a discussion of whether Commission records could be produced and used in its place. Any authorization for testimony will be limited to the scope of the demand as summarized in such statement.

(4) Absent authorization from the General Counsel, the employee or former employee shall respectfully decline to produce requested material or to disclose requested information. The refusal should be based on this paragraph and on *United States ex rel. Touhy* v. *Ragen,* 340 U.S. 462 (1951).

(5) The General Counsel will consider and act upon compulsory process and requests for voluntary testimony under this section with due regard for statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules and the public interest, taking into account such factors as the need to conserve the time of employees for conducting official business; the need to avoid spending the time and money

of the United States for private purposes; the need to maintain impartiality between private litigants in cases where a substantial government interest is not involved; and the established legal standards for determining whether justification exists for the disclosure of confidential information and material.

(6) Invitations to testify before Congressional committees or subcommittees or to testify before other government bodies on the possible effects of legislative and regulatory proposals are not subject to paragraphs (e)(1) through (5) of this section.

(f) Requests by current or former employees to use nonpublic memoranda as writing samples shall be addressed to the General Counsel. The General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee is delegated the authority to dispose of such requests consistent with applicable nondisclosure provisions, including sections 6(f) and 21 of the FTC Act.

(g) Employees are encouraged to engage in teaching, lecturing, and writing that is not prohibited by law, Executive order, or regulation. However, an employee shall not use information obtained as a result of his Government employment, except to the extent that such information has been made available to the general public or will be made available on request, or when the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee gives written authorization for the use of nonpublic information on the basis that the use is in the public interest.

(h) The General Counsel (or General Counsel's designee) may authorize a Commission member, other Commission official, or Commission staff to disclose an item or category of information from Commission records not currently available to the public for routine inspection and copying under Rule 4.9(b) where the General Counsel (or General Counsel's designee) determines that such disclosure would facilitate the conduct of official agency business and would not otherwise be prohibited by applicable law, order, or regulation. Requests for such determinations shall be set forth in writing and, in the case of staff requests, shall be forwarded to the General Counsel (or General Counsel's designee) through the relevant Bureau. In unusual or difficult cases, the General Counsel may refer the request to the Commission for determination.

(i) The Director of the Bureau of Competition is authorized, without power of redelegation, to respond to access requests for records and other materials pursuant to an agreement under the International Antitrust Enforcement Assistance Act, 15 U.S.C. 6201 *et seq*. Before responding to such a request, the Bureau Director shall transmit the proposed response to the Secretary and the Secretary shall notify the Commission of the proposed response. If no Commissioner objects within three days following the Commission's receipt of such notification, the Secretary shall inform the Bureau Director that he or she may proceed.

(j)(1) The procedures specified in this section apply to disclosures of certain records to foreign law enforcement agencies in specified circumstances in accordance with the U.S. SAFE WEB Act of 2006. Nothing in this section authorizes the disclosure of material obtained in connection with the administration of the Federal antitrust laws or foreign antitrust laws, as defined in paragraph (j)(5)(i) of this section.

(2) Requests from foreign law enforcement agencies, as defined in paragraph (j)(5)(ii) of this section, for nonpublic records shall be addressed to the Director of the Office of International Affairs or the Director's designee, who shall forward them to the General Counsel with recommendations for disposition after obtaining any required certification described in paragraph (j)(3) of this section and approval of the Bureau of Consumer Protection. With respect to requests under this paragraph, the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee is delegated the authority to dispose of them. Alternatively, the General Counsel may refer such requests to the Commission for determination, except that requests must be referred to the Commission for determination where the Bureau of Consumer Protection or the Office of International Affairs disagrees with the General Counsel's proposed disposition.

(3) Access under this section to any material subject to the disclosure restrictions in sections 6(f) or 21(b) of the FTC Act or §4.10(d) may not be granted unless—

(i) An appropriate official of the foreign law enforcement agency has certified, either by prior agreement or memorandum of understanding or by other written certification, that such material will be maintained in confidence and will be used only for official law enforcement purposes; and

(ii)(A) The foreign law enforcement agency has set forth a bona fide legal basis for its authority to maintain the material in confidence;

(B) The materials are to be used for purposes of investigating, or engaging in enforcement proceedings related to, possible violations of:

(*1*) Foreign laws prohibiting fraudulent or deceptive commercial practices, or other practices substantially similar to practices prohibited by any law administered by the Commission;

(*2*) A law administered by the Commission, if disclosure of the material would further a Commission investigation or enforcement proceeding; or

(*3*) With the approval of the Attorney General, other foreign criminal laws, if such foreign criminal laws are offenses defined in or covered by a criminal mutual legal assistance treaty in force between the government of the United States and the foreign law enforcement agency's government;

(C) The appropriate Federal banking agency, (as defined in section 3(q) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(q)) or, in the case of a Federal credit union, the National Credit Union Administration has given its prior approval if the materials to be provided under paragraph (j)(3)(ii)(B) of this section are requested by the foreign law enforcement agency for the purpose of investigating, or engaging in enforcement proceedings based on, possible violations of law by a bank, a savings and loan institution described in section 18(f)(3) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 57a(f)(3)), or a Federal credit union described in section 18(f)(4) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 57a(f)(4)); and

(D) The foreign law enforcement agency is not from a foreign state that the Secretary of State has determined, in accordance with section 6(j) of the Export Administration Act of 1979 (50 U.S.C. App. 2405(j)), has repeatedly provided support for acts of international terrorism, unless and until such determination is rescinded pursuant to section 6(j)(4) of that Act (50 U.S.C. App. 2405(j)(4)).

(4) A copy of the certificate described in paragraph (j)(3) of this section will be forwarded to the submitter of the information at the time the request is granted unless the foreign law enforcement agency requests that the submitter not be notified.

(5) For purposes of this section:

(i) ''Federal antitrust laws'' and ''foreign antitrust laws'' are to be interpreted as defined in paragraphs (5) and (7), respectively, of section 12 of the International Antitrust Enforcement Assistance Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 6211); and

(ii) ''Foreign law enforcement agency'' is defined as:

(A) Any agency or judicial authority of a foreign government, including a foreign state, a political subdivision of a foreign state, or a multinational organization constituted by and comprised of foreign states, that is vested with law enforcement or investigative authority in civil, criminal, or administrative matters and

(B) Any multinational organization, to the extent that it is acting on behalf of an entity described in paragraph (j)(5)(i)(A) of this section.

(15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*)

[40 FR 7629, Feb. 21, 1975, as amended at 42 FR 13820, Mar. 14, 1977; 43 FR 5802, Feb. 10, 1978; 46 FR 26292, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 4280, Jan. 31, 1983; 49 FR 20279, May 14, 1984; 49 FR 21048, May 18, 1984; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 55 FR 29839, July 23, 1990; 57 FR 10807, Mar. 31, 1992; 58 FR 15764, Mar. 24, 1993; 60 FR 37750, July 21, 1995; 63 FR 32978, June 17, 1998; 63 FR 45647, Aug. 26, 1998; 64 FR 3013, Jan. 20, 1999; 64 FR 32180, June 16, 1999; 64 FR 35256, June 30, 1999; 65 FR 67259, Nov. 9, 2000; 66 FR 64144, Dec. 12, 2001; 72 FR 28853, May, 23, 2007]

§4.12 Disposition of documents submitted to the Commission.

(a) *Material submitted to the Commission.* (1) Any person who has submitted material to the Commission may obtain, on request, the return of material

submitted to the Commission which has not been received into evidence:

(i) After the close of the proceeding in connection with which the material was submitted; or

(ii) When no proceeding in which the material may be used has been commenced within a reasonable time after completion of the examination and analysis of all such material and other information assembled in the course of the investigation.

(2) Such request shall be in writing, addressed to the custodian designated pursuant to § 2.16 or the Secretary of the Commission in all other circumstances, and shall reasonably describe the material requested. A request for return of material may be filed at any time, but material will not be returned nor will commitments to return material be undertaken prior to the time described in this paragraph.

(b) *Commission-made copies of documents submitted to the Commission.* The Commission will not return to the submitter copies of documents made by the Commission unless, upon a showing of extraordinary circumstances, the Commission determines that return would be required in the public interest.

(c) *Disposition of material not returned.* Subsequent to the time prescribed in paragraph (a) of this section, the staff will examine all submitted material and Commission-made copies of documents located in a reasonable search of the Commission's files and will determine, consistent with the Federal Records Act, 44 U.S.C. 3301, which materials are appropriate for preservation as evidence of the organization, functions, policies, decisions, procedures, operations, or other activities of the Commission or because of the information value of data in them. The Commission will dispose of all material determined not to be appropriate for preservation in accordance with applicable regulations of the National Archives and Records Administration.

[46 FR 26292, May 12, 1981, as amended at 60 FR 37751, July 21, 1995]

§ 4.13 Privacy Act rules.

(a) *Purpose and scope.* (1) This section is promulgated to implement the Privacy Act of 1974 (Pub. L. 93–579, 5 U.S.C. 552a) by establishing procedures whereby an individual can, as to all systems of records maintained by the Commission except those set forth in § 4.13(m) as exempt from disclosure, (i) Request notification of whether the Commission maintains a record pertaining to him in any system of records, (ii) request access to such a record or to an accounting of its disclosure, (iii) request that the record be amended or corrected, and (iv) appeal an initial adverse determination of any such request. This section also establishes those systems of records that are specifically exempt from disclosure and from other requirements.

(2) The procedures of this section apply only to requests by an individual as defined in § 4.13(b). Except as otherwise provided, they govern only records containing personal information in systems of records for which notice has been published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER pursuant to section 552a(e)(4) of the Privacy Act of 1974 and which are neither exempt from the provisions of this section nor contained in government-wide systems of personnel records for which notice has been published in the FEDERAL REGISTER by the Office of Personnel Management. Requests for notification, access, and amendment of personnel records which are contained in a system of records for which notice has been given by the Office of Personnel Management are governed by the Office of Personnel Management's notices, 5 CFR part 297. Access to records which are not subject to the requirements of the Privacy Act are governed by §§ 4.8 through 4.11.

(b) *Definitions.* The following definitions apply to this section only:

(1) *Individual* means a natural person who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence.

(2) *Record* means any item, collection, or grouping of personal information about an individual that is maintained by the Commission, including, but not limited to, his education, financial transactions, medical history, and criminal or employment history and that contains his name, or the identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the

individual, such as a finger or voice print or a photograph, but does not include information concerning proprietorships, businesses, or corporations.

(3) *System of records* means a group of any records under the control of the Commission from which information is retrieved by the name of the individual or by some identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, for which notice has been published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(e)(4).

(c) *Procedures for requests pertaining to individual records in a record system.* An individual may request access to his or her records or any information pertaining to that individual in a system of records, and notification of whether and to whom the Commission has disclosed a record for which an accounting of disclosures is required to be kept and made available to the individual, using the procedures of this section. Requests for the disclosure of records under this section or to determine whether a system of records contains records pertaining to an individual or to obtain an accounting of disclosures, shall be in writing and if mailed, addressed as follows:

Privacy Act Request, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

If requests are presented in person at the Office of the General Counsel, the individual shall be required to execute a written request. All requests shall name the system of records that is the subject of the request, and shall include any additional information specified in the pertinent system notice as necessary to locate the records requested. If the requester wants another person to accompany him or her to review the records, the request shall so state. Nothing in this section will allow an individual access to any information compiled in reasonable anticipation of a civil action or proceeding.

(d) *Times, places, and requirements for identification of individuals making requests.* Verification of identity of persons making written requests to the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) ordinarily will not be required. The signature on such requests will be deemed a certification by the signatory that he or she is the individual to whom the record pertains or is the parent or guardian of a minor or the legal guardian of the individual to whom the record pertains. The deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) may require additional verification of a requester's identity when such information is reasonably necessary to assure that records are not improperly disclosed; provided, however, that no verification of identity will be required if the records sought are publicly available under the Freedom of Information Act.

(e) *Disclosure of requested information to individuals.* Within 10 working days of receipt of a request under §4.13(c), the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will acknowledge receipt of the request. Within 30 working days of the receipt of a request under §4.13(c), the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will inform the requester whether a system of records containing retrievable information pertaining to the requester exists, and if so, either that the request has been granted or that the requested records or information is exempt from disclosure pursuant to §4.13(m). When, for good cause shown, the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) is unable to respond within 30 working days of the receipt of the request, that official will notify the requester and inform him or her approximately when a response will be made.

(f) *Special procedures: Medical records.* When the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) determines that disclosure of a medical or psychological record directly to a requesting individual could have an adverse effect on the individual, he or she will require the individual to designate a medical doctor to whom the record will be transmitted.

(g) *Request for correction or amendment of record.* An individual to whom access to his records or any information pertaining to him in a system of records has been granted may request that any portion thereof be amended or corrected because he believes it is not accurate, relevant, timely, or complete. An initial request for correction or

amendment of a record shall be in writing whether presented in person or by mail, and if by mail, addressed as in § 4.13(c). In making a request under this subsection, the requesting party shall state the nature of the information in the record the individual believes to be inaccurate, irrelevant, untimely, or incomplete, the correction or amendment desired, and the reasons therefore.

(h) *Agency review of request for correction or amendment of record.* Whether presented in person or by mail, requests under § 4.13(g) will be acknowledged by the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) within 10 working days of the receipt of the request if action on the request cannot be completed and the individual notified of the results within that time. Thereafter, the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) will promptly either make the requested amendment or correction or inform the requester of his refusal to make the amendment or correction, the reasons for the refusal, and the requester's right to appeal that refusal in accordance with § 4.13(i).

(i) *Appeal of initial adverse agency determination.* (1) If an initial request filed under § 4.13(c) or § 4.13(g) is denied, the requester may appeal that denial to the General Counsel. The appeal shall be in writing and addressed as follows:

Privacy Act Appeal, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

Within 30 working days of the receipt of the appeal, the General Counsel will notify the requester of the disposition of that appeal, except that the General Counsel may extend the 30-day period for good cause, in which case, the General Counsel will advise the requester of the approximate date on which review will be completed. In unusual or difficult cases, the General Counsel may, in his or her sole discretion, refer an appeal to the Commission for determination.

(2)(i) If the General Counsel refuses to amend or correct the record in accordance with a request under § 4.13(g), the General Counsel will notify the requester of that decision and inform the requester of the right to file with the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) a concise statement setting forth the reasons for the requester's disagreement with the General Counsel's determination and the fact that the requester's statement will be treated as set forth in paragraph (i)(2)(ii) of this section. The General Counsel will also inform the requester that judicial review of the decision is available by a civil suit in the district in which the requester resides, or has his principal place of business, or in which the agency records are situated, or in the District of Columbia.

(ii) If the individual files a statement disagreeing with the General Counsel's determination not to amend or correct a record, such disagreement will be clearly noted in the record involved and the individual's statement will be made available to anyone to whom the record has been disclosed after September 27, 1975, or is subsequently disclosed together with, if the General Counsel deems it appropriate, a brief statement of his or her reasons for declining to amend the record.

(j) *Disclosure of record to person other than the individual to whom it pertains.* Except as provided by 5 U.S.C. 552a(b), the written request or prior written consent of the individual to whom a record pertains, or of his parent if a minor, or legal guardian if incompetent, shall be required before such record is disclosed. If the individual elects to inspect a record in person and desires to be accompanied by another person, the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) may require the individual to furnish a signed statement authorizing disclosure of his or her record in the presence of the accompanying named person.

(k) *Fees.* No fees will be charged for searching for a record, reviewing it, or for copies of records made by the Commission for its own purposes incident to granting access to a requester. Copies of records to which access has been granted under this section may be obtained by the requester from the deciding official (as designated by the General Counsel) on payment of the reproduction fees provided in § 4.8(b)(6).

(l) *Penalties*. Section 552a(i)(3) of the Privacy Act, 5 U.S.C. 552a(i)(3), makes it a misdemeanor, subject to a maximum fine of $5,000, to knowingly and willfully request or obtain any record concerning an individual under false pretenses. Sections 552a(i) (1) and (2) of the Privacy Act, 5 U.S.C. 552a(i) (1) and (2), provide penalties for violations by agency employees of the Privacy Act or regulations established thereunder. Title 18 U.S.C. 1001, Crimes and Criminal Procedures, makes it a criminal offense, subject to a maximum fine of $10,000 or imprisonment for not more than 5 years or both, to knowingly and willfully make or cause to be made any false or fraudulent statements or representations in any matter within the jurisdiction of any agency of the United States.

(m) *Specific exemptions*. (1) Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2), investigatory materials maintained by an agency component in connection with any activity relating to criminal law enforcement in the following systems of records are exempt from all subsections of 5 U.S.C. 552a, except (b), (c) (1) and (2), (e)(4) (A) through (F), (e) (6), (7), (9), (10), and (11), and (i), and from the provisions of this section, except as otherwise provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2):

Office of Inspector General Investigative Files—FTC

(2) Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2), investigatory materials compiled for law enforcement purposes in the following systems of records are exempt from subsections (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4)(G), (H), and (I), and (f) of 5 U.S.C. 552a, and from the provisions of this section, except as otherwise provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2):

Investigational, Legal, and Public Records—FTC
Disciplinary Action Investigatory Files—FTC
Clearance to Participate Applications and the Commission's Responses Thereto, and Related Documents—FTC
Management Information System—FTC
Office of the Secretary Control and Reporting System—FTC
Office of Inspector General Investigative Files—FTC
Stenographic Reporting Service Requests—FTC
Identity Theft Complaint Management System—FTC
Freedom of Information Act Requests and Appeals—FTC
Privacy Act Requests and Appeals—FTC
Information Retrieval and Indexing System—FTC

(3) Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(5), investigatory materials compiled to determine suitability, eligibility, or qualifications for Federal civilian employment, military service, Federal contracts, or access to classified information, but only where disclosure would reveal the identity of a confidential source of information, in the following systems of records are exempt from subsections (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4) (G), (H), and (I), and (f) of 5 U.S.C. 552a, and from the provisions of this section, except as otherwise provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(5):

Personnel Security File—FTC

[40 FR 40780, Sept. 3, 1975, as amended at 46 FR 26292, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 4280, Jan. 31, 1983; 55 FR 37700, Sept. 13, 1990; 55 FR 38801, Sept. 21, 1990; 57 FR 10808, Mar. 31, 1992; 58 FR 7047, Feb. 4, 1993; 63 FR 45648, Aug. 26, 1998; 64 FR 3014, Jan. 20, 1999; 64 FR 69397, Dec. 13, 1999; 66 FR 64144, Dec. 12, 2001; 67 FR 123, Jan. 2, 2002]

§4.14 Conduct of business.

(a) Matters before the Commission for consideration may be resolved either at a meeting under §4.15 or by written circulation. Any Commissioner may direct that a matter presented for consideration be placed on the agenda of a Commission meeting.

(b) A majority of the members of the Commission in office and not recused from participating in a matter (by virtue of 18 U.S.C. 208 or otherwise) constitutes a quorum for the transaction of business in that matter.

(c) Any Commission action, either at a meeting or by written circulation, may be taken only with the affirmative concurrence of a majority of the participating Commissioners, except where a greater majority is required by statute or rule or where the action is taken pursuant to a valid delegation of authority. No Commissioner may delegate the authority to determine his or her vote in any matter requiring Commission action, but authority to report a Commissioner's vote on a particular matter resolved either by written circulation, or at a meeting held in the

Commissioner's absence, may be vested in a member of the Commissioner's staff.

[42 FR 13540, Mar. 11, 1977, as amended at 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 70 FR 53297, Sept. 8, 2005]

§ 4.15 Commission meetings.

(a) *In general.* (1) Meetings of the Commission, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552b(a)(2), are held at the principal office of the Commission, unless otherwise directed.

(2) *Initial announcements of meetings.* For each meeting, the Commission shall announce:

(i) The time, place and subject matter of the meeting,

(ii) Whether the meeting will be open or closed to the public, and

(iii) The name and phone number of the official who will respond to requests for information about the meeting.

Such announcement shall be made at least one week before the meeting except that where the agency determines pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552b(e)(1) to call the meeting on less than one week's notice, or where the agency determines to close the meeting pursuant to paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the announcement shall be made at the earliest practicable time.

(3) *Announcements of changes in meetings.* Following the announcement of a meeting, any change in the time, place or subject matter will be announced at the earliest practicable time, and, except with respect to meetings closed under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, any change in the subject matter or decision to open or close a meeting shall be made only as provided in 5 U.S.C. 552b(e)(2).

(4) *Deletions from announcements.* The requirements of paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section do not require the disclosure of any information pertaining to a portion of a closed meeting where such disclosure is likely to concern a matter within the scope of 5 U.S.C. 552b(c).

(5) *Dissemination of notices.* Notices required under paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section will be posted at the principal office of the Commission, recorded on a telephone message device, and, except as to notices of meetings closed under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, submitted to the FEDERAL REGISTER for publication. In addition, notices issued under paragraph (a)(2) of this section one week in advance of the meeting will be sent to all persons and organizations who have requested inclusion on a meeting notice mailing list, and will be issued as a press release to interested media.

(b) *Open meetings.* (1) Commission meetings shall be open to public observation unless the Commission determines that portions may be closed pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552b(c).

(2) Any person whose interest may be directly affected if a portion of a meeting is open, may request that the Commission close that portion for any of the reasons described in 5 U.S.C. 552b(c). The Commission shall vote on such requests if at least one member desires to do so. Such requests shall be in writing, filed at the earliest practicable time, and describe how the matters to be discussed will have any of the effects enumerated in 5 U.S.C. 552b(c). Requests shall be addressed as follows:

Closed Meeting Request, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(3) The Commissioner to whom a matter has been assigned for presentation to the Commission shall have the authority to make available to the public, prior to consideration of that matter at an open meeting, material sufficient to inform the public of the issues likely to be discussed in connection with that matter.

(c) *Closed meetings.* (1) Whenever the Commission votes to close a meeting or series of meetings under these rules, it shall make publicly available within one day notices both of such vote and the General Counsel's determination regarding certification under 5 U.S.C. 552b(f)(1). Such determination by the General Counsel shall be made prior to the Commission vote to close a meeting or series of meetings. Further, except with respect to meetings closed under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the Commission shall make publicly available within one day a full written explanation of its action in closing any meeting, and a list specifying the

names and affiliations of all persons expected to attend, except Commission employees and consultants and any stenographer or court reporter attending for the sole purpose of preparing a verbatim transcript. All Commission employees and consultants may attend nonadjudicative portions of any closed meeting and members of Commissioners' personal staffs, the General Counsel and his staff, and the Secretary and his staff may attend the adjudicative portions of any closed meeting except to the extent the notice of a particular closed meeting otherwise specifically provides. Stenographers or court reporters may attend any closed meeting at which their services are required by the Commission.

(2) If a Commission meeting, or portions thereof, may be closed pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552b(c)(10), the Commission may, by vote recorded at the beginning of the meeting, or portion thereof, close the portion or portions of the meeting so exempt.

(3) Closed meeting transcripts or minutes required by 5 U.S.C. 552b(f)(1) will be released to the public insofar as they contain information that either is not exempt from disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552b(c), or, although exempt, should be disclosed in the public interest. The Commission will determine whether to release, in whole or in part, the minutes of its executive sessions to consider oral arguments. With regard to all other closed meetings, the General Counsel or the General Counsel's designee shall determine, in accordance with §4.9(c), which portions of the transcripts or minutes may be released.

(d) The presiding officer shall be responsible for preserving order and decorum at meetings and shall have all powers necessary to that end.

[42 FR 13541, Mar. 11, 1977; 42 FR 15409, Mar. 22, 1977, as amended at 42 FR 62912, Dec. 14, 1977: 43 FR 1937, Jan. 13, 1978; 43 FR 35684, Aug. 11, 1978; 63 FR 32978, June 17, 1998]

§4.16 Privilege against self-incrimination.

Section 2.11 of Pub. L. 91–462 specifically repeals paragraph 7 of section 9 of the Federal Trade Commission Act. Title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code provides that whenever a witness refuses, on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination, to testify or provide other information in a proceeding before or ancillary to:

(a) A court or grand jury of the United States,

(b) An agency of the United States, or

(c) Either House of Congress, a joint committee of the two Houses, or a committee or a subcommittee of either House, and the person presiding over the proceeding communicates to the witness an order issued under section 6004, the witness may not refuse to comply with the order on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination; but no testimony or other information compelled under the order (or any information directly or indirectly derived from such testimony or other information) may be used against the witness in any criminal case, except a prosecution for perjury, giving a false statement, or otherwise failing to comply with the order. Title 18, section 6004, of the United States Code provides that: (1) In the case of any individual who has been or who may be called to testify or provide other information at any proceeding before an agency of the United States, the agency may, with the approval of the Attorney General, issue, in accordance with subsection (b) of section 6004, an order requiring the individual to give testimony or provide other information which he refused to give or provide on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination, such order to become effective as provided in title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code; (2) an agency of the United States may issue an order under subsection (a) of section 6004 only if in its judgment (i) the testimony or other information from such individual may be necessary to the public interest; and (ii) such individual has refused or is likely to refuse to testify or provide other information on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[37 FR 5017, Mar. 9, 1972. Redesignated at 45 FR 36345, May 29, 1980]

§ 4.17 Disqualification of Commissioners.

(a) *Applicability*. This section applies to all motions seeking the disqualification of a Commissioner from any adjudicative or rulemaking proceeding.

(b) *Procedures*. (1) Whenever any participant in a proceeding shall deem a Commissioner for any reason to be disqualified from participation in that proceeding, such participant may file with the Secretary a motion to the Commission to disqualify the Commissioner, such motion to be supported by affidavits and other information setting forth with particularity the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(2) Such motion shall be filed at the earliest practicable time after the participant learns, or could reasonably have learned, of the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(3)(i) Such motion shall be addressed in the first instance by the Commissioner whose disqualification is sought.

(ii) In the event such Commissioner declines to recuse himself or herself from further participation in the proceeding, the Commission shall determine the motion without the participation of such Commissioner.

(c) *Standards*. Such motion shall be determined in accordance with legal standards applicable to the proceeding in which such motion is filed.

(15 U.S.C. 46(g))

[46 FR 45750, Sept. 15, 1981]

PART 5—STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

Subpart A—Employee Conduct Standards and Financial Conflicts of Interest

Sec.
5.1 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.
5.2 Exemption of insubstantial financial conflicts.

Subpart B—Financial Disclosure Requirements

5.10 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.

Subparts C–D [Reserved]

Subpart E—Disciplinary Actions Concerning Postemployment Conflict of Interest

5.51 Scope and applicability.
5.52 Nonpublic proceedings.
5.53 Initiation of investigation.
5.54 Referral to the Office of Government Ethics and to the Department of Justice.
5.55 Conduct of investigation.
5.56 Disposition.
5.57 Order to show cause.
5.58 Answer and request for a hearing.
5.59 Presiding official.
5.60 Scheduling of hearing.
5.61 Prehearing procedures; motions; interlocutory appeals; summary decision; discovery; compulsory process.
5.62 Hearing rights of respondent.
5.63 Evidence; transcript; *in camera* orders; proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.
5.64 Initial decision.
5.65 Review of initial decision.
5.66 Commission decision and reconsideration.
5.67 Sanctions.
5.68 Judicial review.

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 7301; 5 U.S.C. App. (Ethics in Government Act of 1978); 15 U.S.C. 46(g); E.O. 12674, 54 FR 15159, 3 CFR, 1989 Comp., p. 215, as modified by E.O. 12731, 55 FR 42547, 3 CFR, 1990 Comp., p. 306; 5 CFR part 2635, unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 32 FR 13272, Sept. 20, 1967, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976.

Subpart A—Employee Conduct Standards and Financial Conflicts of Interest

§ 5.1 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.

Commissioners and employees, including special government employees, of the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) are subject to and should refer to the ''Standards of Ethical Conduct for Employees of the Executive Branch'' at 5 CFR part 2635 (''executive branch-wide Standards of Conduct'') and to the FTC regulations at 5 CFR 5701 that supplement the executive branch-wide Standards of Conduct.

[58 FR 15764, Mar. 24, 1993, as amended at 64 FR 42594, Aug. 5, 1999]

§5.2 Exemption of insubstantial financial conflicts.

(a) An employee or special Government employee will not be subject to remedial or disciplinary action or to criminal prosecution under 18 U.S.C. 208(a), if he makes a full disclosure in writing to the official responsible for his appointment of the nature and circumstances of the particular matter involved and of his conflicting financial interest relating thereto, and receives in advance a written determination made by such official that the interest is not so substantial as to be deemed likely to affect the integrity of the services which the Government may expect from the employee or special Government employee.

(b) For the purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, the ''official responsible for appointment'' shall be the Executive Director in all cases where the employee is classified at grade GS–15 or below, or at a comparable pay level, except that each Commissioner shall be the ''official responsible for appointment'' of advisors in the Commissioner's immediate office.

(c) In all other cases, the Chairman shall be the ''official responsible for appointment.''

(d) Pursuant to 5 CFR part 2640, certain financial interests are exempted from the provisions of 18 U.S.C. 208(a) as being too remote too inconsequential to affect the integrity of an employee's services.

[58 FR 15764, Mar. 24, 1993, as amended at 63 FR 35130, June 29, 1998]

Subpart B—Financial Disclosure Requirements

§5.10 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.

Commissioners and employees, including special government employees, of the Federal Trade Commission are subject to and should refer to the executive branch-wide financial disclosure regulations at 5 CFR part 2634, and to the procedures for filing and review of financial disclosure reports found in Chapter 3 of the FTC *Administrative Manual*.

[58 FR 15765, Mar. 24, 1993]

Subparts C–D [Reserved]

Subpart E—Disciplinary Actions Concerning Postemployment Conflict of Interest

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 46 FR 26050, May 11, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

§5.51 Scope and applicability.

These regulations establish procedures for investigating and determining alleged violations of 18 U.S.C. 207 (postemployment restrictions applicable to federal employees) or regulations issued by the Office of Government Ethics, set forth in 5 CFR parts 2637 and 2641, reflecting the views of the Office of Government Ethics and the Department of Justice as to the requirements of 18 U.S.C. 207.

[58 FR 15765, Mar. 24, 1993]

§5.52 Nonpublic proceedings.

Any investigation or proceedings held under this part shall be nonpublic unless the respondent specifically requests otherwise, except to the extent required by the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) or by the Sunshine Act (5 U.S.C. 552b). However, the presiding official's initial decision and any final decision of the Commission shall be placed on the public record, except that information may be designated *in camera* in accordance with §3.45 of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

§5.53 Initiation of investigation.

(a) Investigations under this part may be initiated upon the submission by any person of a written statement to the Secretary setting forth sufficient information to indicate a possible violation of 18 U.S.C. 207 or by the Commission on its own initiative when a possible violation is indicated by information within the Commission's possession.

(b) At the direction of the Commission, the General Counsel shall investigate any alleged violation of 18 U.S.C. 207.

§ 5.54 Referral to the Office of Government Ethics and to the Department of Justice.

(a) The General Counsel shall make a preliminary determination of whether the matter appears frivolous and, if not, shall expeditiously transmit any available information to the Director of the Office of Government Ethics and to the Criminal Division, Department of Justice.

(b) Unless the Department of Justice communicates to the Commission that it does not intend to initiate criminal prosecution, the General Counsel shall coordinate any investigation or proceeding under this part with the Department of Justice in order to avoid prejudicing criminal proceedings.

§ 5.55 Conduct of investigation.

(a) The General Counsel may (1) exercise the authority granted in § 2.5 of the Commission's Rules of Practice to administer oaths and affirmations; and (2) conduct investigational hearings pursuant to part 2 of these rules. He may also recommend that the Commission issue compulsory process in connection with an investigation under this section.

(b) Witnesses in investigations shall have the rights set forth in § 2.9 of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

§ 5.56 Disposition.

(a) Upon the conclusion of an investigation under this part, the General Counsel shall forward to the Commission a summary of the facts disclosed by the investigation along with a recommendation as to whether the Commission should issue an order to show cause pursuant to § 5.57.

(b) When the former government employee involved is an attorney, the General Counsel shall also recommend whether the matter should be referred to the disciplinary committee of the bar(s) of which the attorney is a member.

§ 5.57 Order to show cause.

(a) Upon a Commission determination that there exists reasonable cause to believe a former government employee has violated 18 U.S.C. 207, the Commission may issue an order requiring the former employee to show cause why sanctions should not be imposed.

(b) The show cause order shall contain:

(1) The statutory provisions alleged to have been violated and a clear and concise description of the acts of the former employee that are alleged to constitute the violation;

(2) Notice of the respondent's right to submit an answer and request a hearing, and the time and manner in which the request is to be made; and

(3) A statement of the sanctions that may be imposed pursuant to § 5.67 of this part.

(c) Subsequent to the issuance of an order to show cause, any communications to or from the Commission or any member of the Commission shall be governed by the *ex parte* provisions of § 4.7 of the Commission's Rules of Practice. 16 CFR 4.7.

§ 5.58 Answer and request for a hearing.

(a) An answer and request for a hearing must be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within thirty (30) days after service of the order to show cause.

(b) In the absence of good cause shown, failure to file an answer and request for a hearing within the specified time limit:

(1) Will be deemed a waiver of the respondent's right to contest the allegations of the show cause order or request a hearing and

(2) Shall authorize the Commission to find the facts to be as alleged in the show cause order and enter a final decision providing for the imposition of such sanctions specified in § 5.67 as the Commission deems appropriate.

(c) An answer shall contain (1) a concise statement of the facts or law constituting each ground of defense and (2) specific admission, denial, or explanation of each fact alleged in the show cause order or, if the respondent is without knowledge thereof, a statement to that effect. Any allegations of a complaint not answered in this manner will be deemed admitted.

(d) Hearings shall be deemed waived as to any facts in the show cause order that are specifically admitted or

deemed to be admitted as a result of respondent's failure to deny them. Those portions of respondent's answer, together with the show cause order, will provide a record basis for initial decision by the Administrative Law Judge or for final decision by the Commission.

(e) If all material factual allegations of the show cause order are specifically admitted or have been deemed admitted in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, the Commission will decide the matter on the basis of the allegations set forth in the show cause order and respondent's answer.

§5.59 Presiding official.

(a) Upon the receipt of an answer and request for a hearing, the Secretary shall refer the matter to the Chief Administrative Law Judge, who shall appoint an Administrative Law Judge to preside over the hearing and shall notify the respondent and the General Counsel as to the person selected.

(b) The powers and duties of the presiding official shall be as set forth in §3.42(b) through (h) of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

§5.60 Scheduling of hearing.

The presiding official shall fix the date, time and place of the hearing. The hearing shall not be scheduled earlier than fifteen days after receipt of the respondent's answer and request for a hearing. In fixing the time, date and place of the hearing, the presiding official shall give due regard to the respondent's need for adequate time to prepare a defense and an expeditious resolution of allegations that may be damaging to his or her reputation.

§5.61 Prehearing procedures; motions; interlocutory appeals; summary decision; discovery; compulsory process.

Because of the nature of the issues involved in proceedings under this part, the Commission anticipates that extensive motions, prehearing proceedings and discovery will not be required in most cases. For this reason, detailed procedures will not be established under this part. However, to the extent deemed warranted by the presiding official, prehearing conferences, motions, interlocutory appeals, summary decisions, discovery and compulsory process shall be permitted and shall be governed, where appropriate, by the provisions set forth in subparts C and D, part 3, of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

§5.62 Hearing rights of respondent.

In any hearing under this subpart, the respondent shall have the right:

(a) To be represented by counsel;

(b) To present and cross-examine witnesses and submit evidence;

(c) To present objections, motions, and arguments, oral or written; and

(d) To obtain a transcript of the proceedings on request.

§5.63 Evidence; transcript; *in camera* orders; proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.

Sections 3.43, 3.44, 3.45, and 3.46 of the Commission's Rules of Practice shall govern, respectively, the receipt and objections to admissibility of evidence, the transcript of the hearing, *in camera* orders and the submission and consideration of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law except that (a) a copy of the hearing transcript shall be provided the respondent; and (b) the Commission has the burden of establishing, by a preponderance of the evidence on the record as a whole, the allegations stated in the order to show cause.

§5.64 Initial decision.

Section 3.51 of the Commission's Rules of Practice shall govern the initial decision in proceedings under this subpart, except that the determination of the Administrative Law Judge must be supported by a preponderance of the evidence.

§5.65 Review of initial decision.

Appeals from the initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge or review by the Commission in the absence of an appeal shall be governed by §§3.52 and 3.53 of the Commission's Rules of Practice except that oral arguments shall be nonpublic subject to the exceptions stated in §3.52 of this part.

§ 5.66 Commission decision and reconsideration.

The Commission's decision and any reconsideration or reopening of the proceeding shall be governed by §§ 2.51, 3.54, 3.55, 3.71 and 3.72 of the Commission's Rules of Practice, except that (a) if the initial decision is modified or reversed, the Commission shall specify such findings of fact and conclusions of law as are different from those of the presiding official; and (b) references therein to ''court of appeals'' shall be deemed for purposes of proceedings under this part to refer to ''district court.''

§ 5.67 Sanctions.

In the case of any respondent who fails to request a hearing after receiving adequate notice of the allegations pursuant to § 5.57 or who is found in the Commission's final decision to have violated 18 U.S.C. 207 (a), (b), or (c), the Commission may order such disciplinary action as it deems warranted, including:

(a) Reprimand;

(b) Suspension from participating in a particular matter or matters before the Commission; or

(c) Prohibiting the respondent from making, with the intent to influence, any formal or informal appearance before, or any oral or written communication to, the Commission or its staff on any matter or business on behalf of any other person (except the United States) for a period not to exceed five (5) years.

§ 5.68 Judicial review.

A respondent against whom the Commission has issued an order imposing disciplinary action under this part may seek judicial review of the Commission's determination in an appropriate United States District Court by filing a petition for such review within sixty (60) days of receipt of notice of the Commission's final decision.

PART 6—ENFORCEMENT OF NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF HANDICAP IN PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES CONDUCTED BY THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

Sec.

6.101 Purpose.
6.102 Application.
6.103 Definitions.
6.104–6.109 [Reserved]
6.110 Self-evaluation.
6.111 Notice.
6.112–6.129 [Reserved]
6.130 General prohibitions against discrimination.
6.131–6.139 [Reserved]
6.140 Employment.
6.141–6.148 [Reserved]
6.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.
6.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.
6.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.
6.152 Program accessibility: Electronic and information technology.
6.153–6.159 [Reserved]
6.160 Communications.
6.161–6.169 [Reserved]
6.170 Compliance procedures.
6.171–6.999 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 794, 794d.

SOURCE: 52 FR 45628, Dec. 1, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

§ 6.101 Purpose.

This part effectuates section 119 of the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978, which amended section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 to prohibit discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies or the United States Postal Service. This part also implements section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, with respect to the accessibility of electronic and information technology developed, procured, maintained, or used by the agency.

[52 FR 45628, Dec. 1, 1987, as amended at 66 FR 51863, Oct. 11, 2001]

§6.102 Application.

This part applies to all programs or activities conducted by the Commission except for programs or activities conducted outside the United States that do not involve individuals with handicaps in the United States.

§6.103 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the term—

Auxiliary aids means services or devices that enable persons with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills to have an equal opportunity to participate in, and to enjoy the benefits of, programs or activities conducted by the Commission. For example, auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired vision include readers, Brailled materials, audio recordings, and other similar services and devices. Auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired hearing include telephone handset amplifiers, telephones compatible with hearing aids, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (TDD's), interpreters, notetakers, written materials, and other similar services and devices.

Commission means the Federal Trade Commission.

Complete complaint means a written statement that contains the complainant's name and address and describes the Commission's alleged discriminatory action in sufficient detail to inform the Commission of the nature and date of the alleged violation of section 504. It shall be signed by the complainant or by someone authorized to do so on his or her behalf. Complaints filed on behalf of classes or third parties shall describe or identify (by name, if possible) the alleged victims of discrimination.

Electronic and information technology includes information technology and any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment that is used in the creation, conversion, or duplication of data or information. The term includes, but is not limited to, telecommunications products (such as telephones), information kiosks and transaction machines, World Wide Web sites, multimedia, and office equipment such as copiers and fax machines. The term does not include any equipment that contains embedded information technology that is used as an integral part of the product, but the principal function of which is not the acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information. For example, HVAC (heating, ventilation, and air conditioning) equipment such as thermostats or temperature control devices, and medical equipment where information technology is integral to its operation are not electronic and information technology.

Facility means all or any portion of buildings, structures, equipment, roads, walks, parking lots, rolling stock or other conveyances, or other real or personal property.

Individual with handicaps means any person who has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities, has a record of such an impairment, or is regarded as having such an impairment. As used in this definition, the phrase:

(1) *Physical or mental impairment* includes—

(i) Any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: Neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive; digestive; genitourinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine; or

(ii) Any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities. The term *physical or mental impairment* includes, but is not limited to, such diseases and conditions as orthopedic, visual, speech, and hearing impairments, cerebral palsy, epilepsy, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, cancer, heart disease, diabetes, mental retardation, emotional illness, and drug addiction and alcoholism.

(2) *Major life activities* includes functions such as caring for one's self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking, breathing, learning, and working.

(3) *Has a record of such an impairment* means has a history of, or has been misclassified as having, a mental or physical impairment that substantially

limits one or more major life activities.

(4) *Is regarded as having an impairment* means—

(i) Has a physical or mental impairment that does not substantially limit major life activities but is treated by the Commission as constituting such a limitation;

(ii) Has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits major life activities only as a result of the attitudes of others toward such impairment; or

(iii) Has none of the impairments defined in paragraph (1) of this definition but is treated by the Commission as having such an impairment.

Information technology means any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment that is used in the automatic acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information. The term ''information technology'' includes computers, ancillary equipment, software, firmware and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources.

Qualified individual with handicaps means—

(1) With respect to any Commission program or activity under which a person is required to perform services or to achieve a level of accomplishment, an individual with handicaps who meets the essential eligibility requirements and who can achieve the purpose of the program or activity without modifications in the program or activity that the Commission can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in its nature; and

(2) With respect to any other program or activity, an individual with handicaps who meets the essential eligibility requirements for participation in, or receipt of benefits from, that program or activity.

(3) *Qualified handicapped person* as that term is defined for purposes of employment in 29 CFR 1613.702 (f), which is made applicable to this part by § 6.140.

Section 504 means section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (Pub. L. 93–112, 87 Stat. 394 (29 U.S.C. 794)), as amended by the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974 (Pub. L. 93–516, 88 Stat. 1617); the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978 (Pub. L. 95–602, 92 Stat. 2955) and the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1986 (Pub. L. 99–506, 100 Stat. 1810). As used in this part, section 504 applies only to programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies and not to federally assisted programs.

Section 508 means section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended.

[52 FR 45628, Dec. 1, 1987, as amended at 66 FR 51863, Oct. 11, 2001]

§§ 6.104–6.109 [Reserved]

§ 6.110 Self-evaluation.

(a) The Commission shall, by February 1, 1989, evaluate its current policies and practices, and the effects thereof, that do not or may not meet the requirements of this part, and, to the extent modification of any such policies and practices is required, the Commission shall proceed to make the necessary modifications.

(b) The Commission shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including individuals with handicaps or organizations representing individuals with handicaps, to participate in the self-evaluation process by submitting comments (both oral and written).

(c) The Commission shall, for at least three years following completion of the self-evaluation required under paragraph (a) of this section, maintain on file and make available for public inspection:

(1) A description of areas examined and any problems identified, and

(2) A description of any modifications made.

§ 6.111 Notice.

The Commission shall make available to employees, applicants, participants, beneficiaries, and other interested persons such information regarding the provisions of this part and its applicability to the programs or activities conducted by the Commission, and make such information available to them in such manner as the Chairman or his or her designee finds necessary

to apprise such persons of the protections against discrimination assured to them by section 504 and this regulation.

§§6.112–6.129 [Reserved]

§6.130 General prohibitions against discrimination.

(a) No qualified individual with handicaps shall, on the basis of handicap, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Commission.

(b)(1) The Commission, in providing any aid, benefit, or service, may not, directly or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements, on the basis of handicap—

(i) Deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service;

(ii) Afford a qualified individual with handicaps an opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service that is not equal to that afforded others;

(iii) Provide a qualified individual with handicaps with an aid, benefit, or service that is not as effective in affording equal opportunity to obtain the same result, to gain the same benefit, or to reach the same level of achievement as that provided to others;

(iv) Provide different or separate aid, benefits, or services to individuals with handicaps or to any class of individuals with handicaps than is provided to others unless such action is necessary to provide qualified individuals with handicaps with aid, benefits, or services that are as effective as those provided to others;

(v) Deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate as a member of planning or advisory boards; or

(vi) Otherwise limit a qualified individual with handicaps in the enjoyment of any right, privilege, advantage, or opportunity enjoyed by others receiving the aid, benefit, or service.

(2) The Commission may not deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate in programs or activities that are not separate or different, despite the existence of permissibly separate or different programs or activities.

(3) The Commission may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize criteria or methods of administration the purpose or effect of which would—

(i) Subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap; or

(ii) Defeat or substantially impair accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to individuals with handicaps.

(4) The Commission may not, in determining the site or location of a facility, make selections the purpose or effect of which would—

(i) Exclude individuals with handicaps from, deny them the benefits of, or otherwise subject them to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Commission; or

(ii) Defeat or substantially impair the accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to individuals with handicaps.

(5) The Commission, in the selection of procurement contractors, may not use criteria that subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap.

(c) The exclusion of nonhandicapped persons from the benefits of a program limited by Federal statute or Executive order to individuals with handicaps or the exclusion of a specific class of individuals with handicaps from a program limited by Federal statute or Executive order to a different class of individuals with handicaps is not prohibited by this part.

(d) The Commission shall administer programs and activities in the most integrated setting appropriate to the needs of qualified individuals with handicaps.

§§6.131–6.139 [Reserved]

§6.140 Employment.

No qualified individual with handicaps shall, on the basis of handicap, be subjected to discrimination in employment under any program or activity conducted by the Commission. The

definitions, requirements and procedures of section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791), as established by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission in 29 CFR part 1613, shall apply to employment in federally conducted programs or activities.

§§ 6.141–6.148 [Reserved]

§ 6.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.

Except as otherwise provided in § 6.150, no qualified individuals with handicaps shall, because the Commission's facilities are inaccessible to or unusable by individuals with handicaps, be denied the benefits of, be excluded from participation in, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Commission.

§ 6.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.

(a) *General*. The Commission shall operate each program or activity so that the program or activity, when viewed in its entirety, is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. This paragraph does not—

(1) Necessarily require the Commission to make each of its existing facilities accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps, or

(2) Require the Commission to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where Commission personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the Commission has the burden of proving that compliance with § 6.150(a) would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the Chairman or his or her designee after considering all Commission resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity, and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. If an action would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the Commission shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or such burdens, but would, nevertheless, ensure that individuals with handicaps receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

(b) *Methods*. The Commission may comply with the requirements of this section through such means as redesign of equipment, reassignment of services to accessible buildings, assignment of aides to beneficiaries, home visits, delivery of services at alternate accessible sites, alteration of existing facilities and construction of new facilities, use of accessible rolling stock, or any methods that result in making its programs or activities readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. The Commission is not required to make structural changes in existing facilities where other methods are effective in achieving compliance with this section. The Commission, in making alterations to existing buildings, shall meet accessibility requirements to the extent compelled by the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157) and any regulations implementing it. In choosing among available methods for meeting the requirements of this section, the Commission shall give priority to those methods that offer programs and activities to qualified individuals with handicaps in the most integrated setting appropriate.

(c) *Time period for compliance*. The Commission shall comply with the obligations established under this section by April 1, 1988, except that where structural changes in facilities are undertaken, such changes shall be made by February 1, 1991, but in any event as expeditiously as possible.

(d) *Transition plan*. In the event that structural changes to facilities will be undertaken to achieve program accessibility, the Commission shall develop, by August 1, 1988, a transition plan setting forth the steps necessary to complete such changes. The Commission shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including individuals with handicaps or organizations representing individuals with handicaps,

to participate in the development of the transition plan by submitting comments (both oral and written). A copy of the transition plan shall be made available for public inspection. The plan shall, at a minimum—

(1) Identify physical obstacles in the Commission's facilities that limit the accessibility of its programs or activities to individuals with handicaps;

(2) Describe in detail the methods that will be used to make the facilities accessible;

(3) Specify the schedule for taking the steps necessary to achieve compliance with this section and, if the time period of the transition plan is longer than one year, identify steps that will be taken during each year of the transition period;

(4) Indicate the official responsible for implementation of the plan; and

(5) Identify the persons or groups with whose assistance the plan was prepared.

§ 6.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.

Each building or part of a building that is constructed or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of the Commission shall be designed, constructed, or altered so as to be readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. The definitions, requirements, and standards of the Architectural Barriers Act (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157), as established in 41 CFR 101–19.600 to 101–19.607, apply to buildings covered by this section.

§ 6.152 Program accessibility: Electronic and information technology.

(a) When developing, procuring, maintaining, or using electronic and information technology, the Commission shall ensure, unless an undue burden would be imposed on the agency, that the electronic and information technology allows, regardless of the type of medium of the technology:

(1) individuals with disabilities who are employees to have access to and use of information and data that is comparable to the access to and use of the information and data by employees who are not individuals with disabilities; and

(2) individuals with disabilities who are members of the public seeking information or services from the Commission to have access to and use of information and data that is comparable to the access to and use of the information and data by members of the public who are not individuals with disabilities.

(b) When the development, procurement, maintenance, or use of electronic and information technology that meets the standards published by the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board pursuant to section 508(a)(2) of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, would impose an undue burden on the Commission, the Commission shall provide individuals with disabilities covered by paragraph (a) of this section with the information and data involved by an alternative means of access that allows such individuals to use the information and data.

(c) This section shall not apply to any matter legally exempted by section 508, by the standards referenced in paragraph (b) of this section, or by other applicable law or regulation. Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit any right, remedy, or procedure otherwise available under any provision of federal law (including sections 501 through 505 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended) that provides greater or equal protection for the rights of individuals with disabilities than section 508.

[66 FR 51863, Oct. 11, 2001]

§§ 6.153–6.159 [Reserved]

§ 6.160 Communications.

(a) The Commission shall take appropriate steps to ensure effective communication with applicants, participants, personnel of other Federal entities, and members of the public.

(1) The Commission shall furnish appropriate auxiliary aids where necessary to afford an individual with handicaps an equal opportunity to participate in, and enjoy the benefits of, a program or activity conducted by the Commission.

(i) In determining what type of auxiliary aid is necessary, the Commission shall give primary consideration to the

requests of the individual with handicaps.

(ii) The Commission need not provide individually prescribed devices, readers for personal use or study, or other devices of a personal nature.

(2) Where the Commission communicates with applicants and beneficiaries by telephone, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (TDD's), or equally effective telecommunication systems shall be used.

(b) The Commission shall ensure that interested persons, including persons with impaired vision or hearing, can obtain information as to the existence and location of accessible services, activities, and facilities.

(c) The Commission shall provide signs at a primary entrance to each of its inaccessible facilities, directing users to a location at which they can obtain information about accessible facilities. The international symbol for accessibility shall be used at each primary entrance of an accessible facility.

(d) This section does not require the Commission to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity, or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where Commission personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the Commission has the burden of proving that compliance with § 6.160 would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the Chairman or his or her designee after considering all Commission resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity, and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. If an action required to comply with this section would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the Commission shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or burdens but would nevertheless ensure that, to the maximum extent possible, individuals with handicaps receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

§§ 6.161–6.169 [Reserved]

§ 6.170 Compliance procedures.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, this section applies to all allegations of discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by the Commission.

(b) The Commission shall process complaints alleging violations of section 504 with respect to employment according to the procedures established by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission in 29 CFR part 1613 pursuant to section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791). The Commission shall apply the same procedures to process complaints alleging violations of section 508. Complaints alleging a violation of section 508 may not be filed with respect to any exempted matters as described in § 6.152(c) of this chapter, and may be filed only with respect to electronic and information technology procured by the Commission on or after June 21, 2001.

(c) Responsibility for implementation and operation of this section is vested in the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity.

(d)(1) A complete complaint under this section may be filed by any person who believes that he or she or any specific class of persons of which he or she is a member has been subjected to discrimination prohibited by this part. The complaint may also be filed by an authorized representative of any such person.

(2) The complaint must be filed within 180 days of the alleged act of discrimination unless the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity extends the time period for good cause.

(3) The complaint must be addressed to the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(e) If the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity receives a complaint over which the Commission does not have jurisdiction, he or she shall promptly notify the complainant and shall make reasonable efforts to refer

the complaint to the appropriate Government entity.

(f) The Director of Equal Employment Opportunity shall notify the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board upon receipt of any complaint alleging that a building or facility that is subject to the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157) is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps.

(g)(1) The Director of Equal Employment Opportunity shall accept and investigate a complete complaint that is filed in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section and over which the Commission has jurisdiction.

(2) If the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity receives a complaint that is not complete (see § 6.103), he or she shall, within 30 days thereafter, notify the complainant that additional information is needed. If the complainant fails to complete the complaint within 30 days of the date of the Director's notice, the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity may dismiss the complaint without prejudice.

(h) Within 180 days of the receipt of a complete complaint over which the Commission has jurisdiction, the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity shall notify the complainant of the results of the investigation in a letter containing—

(1) Findings of fact and conclusions of law;

(2) A description of a remedy for each violation found; and

(3) A notice of the right to appeal to the Commission's General Counsel.

(i)(1) An appeal under this section must be filed within 90 days of the complainant's receipt of the letter under paragraph (h) of this section unless the General Counsel extends the time period for good cause.

(2) The appeal must be addressed to the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(3) The appeal shall specify the questions raised by the appeal and the arguments on the points of fact and law relied upon in support of the position taken on each question; and it shall include copies of the complaint filed under paragraph (d) of this section and the letter by the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity under paragraph (h) of this section as well as any other material relied upon in support of the appeal.

(j) The General Counsel shall notify the complainant of the results of the appeal within 60 days of the receipt of the appeal. If the General Counsel determines that additional information is needed from the complainant, the General Counsel shall have 60 days from the date of receipt of the additional information to make a final determination on the appeal. The General Counsel may submit the appeal to the Commission for final determination provided that any final determination of the appeal is made by the Commission within the 60-day period specified by this paragraph.

(k) The time limits specified by paragraphs (h) and (j) of this section may be extended by the Chairman for good cause.

(l) The Commission may delegate its authority for conducting complaint investigations to other Federal agencies, except that the authority for making the final determination may not be delegated.

[52 FR 45628, Dec. 1, 1987, as amended at 66 FR 51864, Oct. 11, 2001]

§§ 6.171–6.999 [Reserved]

PART 14—ADMINISTRATIVE INTERPRETATIONS, GENERAL POLICY STATEMENTS, AND ENFORCEMENT POLICY STATEMENTS

Sec.

14.9 Requirements concerning clear and conspicuous disclosures in foreign language advertising and sales materials.
14.12 Use of secret coding in marketing research.
14.15 In regard to comparative advertising.
14.16 Interpretation of Truth-in-Lending Orders consistent with amendments to the Truth-in-Lending Act and Regulation Z.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

§ 14.9 Requirements concerning clear and conspicuous disclosures in foreign language advertising and sales materials.

The Federal Trade Commission has noted that, with increasing intensity,

advertisers are making special efforts to reach foreign language-speaking consumers. As part of this special effort, advertisements, brochures and sales documents are being printed in foreign languages. In recent years the Commission has issued various cease-and-desist orders as well as rules, guides and other statements, which require affirmative disclosures in connection with certain kinds of representations and business activities. Generally, these disclosures are required to be ''clear and conspicuous.'' Because questions have arisen as to the meaning and application of the phrase ''clear and conspicuous'' with respect to foreign language advertisements and sales materials, the Commission deems it appropriate to set forth the following enforcement policy statement:

(a) Where cease-and-desist orders as well as rules, guides and other statements require ''clear and conspicuous'' disclosure of certain information in an advertisement or sales material in a newspaper, magazine, periodical, or other publication that is not in English, the disclosure shall appear in the predominant language of the publication in which the advertisement or sales material appears. In the case of any other advertisement or sales material, the disclosure shall appear in the language of the target audience (ordinarily the language principally used in the advertisement or sales material).

(b) Any respondent who fails to comply with this requirement may be the subject of a civil penalty or other law enforcement proceeding for violating the terms of a Commission cease-and-desist order or rule.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 45)

[38 FR 21494, Aug. 9, 1973, as amended at 63 FR 34808, June 26, 1998]

§ 14.12 Use of secret coding in marketing research.

(a) The Federal Trade Commission has determined to close its industry-wide investigation of marketing research firms that was initiated in November 1975, to determine if the firms were using questionnaires with invisible coding that could be used to reveal a survey respondent's identity. After a thorough investigation, the Commission has determined that invisible coding has been used by the marketing research industry, but it is neither a commonly used nor widespread practice. Moreover, use of the practice appears to have diminished in recent years. For these reasons, the Commission has determined that further action is not warranted at this time.

(b) However, for the purpose of providing guidance to the marketing research industry, the Commission is issuing the following statement with regard to its future enforcement intentions. The Commission has reason to believe that it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice, violative of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to induce consumers to provide information about themselves by expressly or implicitly promising that such information is being provided anonymously, when, in fact, a secret or invisible code is used on the survey form or return envelope that allows identification of the consumer who has provided the information.

(c) While the Commission has made no final determination regarding the legality of the foregoing practice, the Commission will take appropriate enforcement action should it discover the practice to be continuing in the future, and in the event that it may be causing substantial consumer injury. Among the circumstances in which the Commission believes that the use of secret coding may cause significant consumer harm are those in which:

(1) A misleading promise of anonymity is used to obtain highly sensitive information about a consumer that such consumer would not choose to disclose if he or she were informed that a code was being used that would allow his or her name to be associated with the response; and

(2) Information of any sort is used for purposes other than those of the market survey.

[43 FR 42742, Sept. 21, 1978]

§ 14.15 In regard to comparative advertising.

(a) *Introduction.* The Commission's staff has conducted an investigation of industry trade associations and the advertising media regarding their comparative advertising policies. In the course of this investigation, numerous

industry codes, statements of policy, interpretations and standards were examined. Many of the industry codes and standards contain language that could be interpreted as discouraging the use of comparative advertising. This Policy Statement enunciates the Commission's position that industry self-regulation should not restrain the use by advertisers of truthful comparative advertising.

(b) *Policy Statement.* The Federal Trade Commission has determined that it would be of benefit to advertisers, advertising agencies, broadcasters, and self-regulation entities to restate its current policy concerning comparative advertising.[1] Commission policy in the area of comparative advertising encourages the naming of, or reference to competitiors, but requires clarity, and, if necessary, disclosure to avoid deception of the consumer. Additionally, the use of truthful comparative advertising should not be restrained by broadcasters or self-regulation entities.

(c) The Commission has supported the use of brand comparisions where the bases of comparision are clearly identified. Comparative advertising, when truthful and nondeceptive, is a source of important information to consumers and assists them in making rational purchase decisions. Comparative advertising encourages product improvement and innovation, and can lead to lower prices in the marketplace. For these reasons, the Commission will continue to scrutinize carefully restraints upon its use.

(1) *Disparagement.* Some industry codes which prohibit practices such as ''disparagement,'' ''disparagement of competitors,'' ''improper disparagement,'' ''unfairly attaching,'' ''discrediting,'' may operate as a restriction on comparative advertising. The Commission has previously held that disparaging advertising is permissible so long as it is truthful and not deceptive. In *Carter Products, Inc.*, 60 F.T.C. 782, *modified*, 323 F.2d 523 (5th Cir. 1963), the Commission narrowed an order recommended by the hearing examiner which would have prohibited respondents from disparaging competing products through the use of false or misleading pictures, depictions, or demonstrations, ''or otherwise'' disparaging such products. In explaining why it eliminated ''or otherwise'' from the final order, the Commission observed that the phrase would have prevented:

> respondents from making truthful and non-deceptive statements that a product has certain desirable properties or qualities which a competing product or products do not possess. Such a comparison may have the effect of disparaging the competing product, but we know of no rule of law which prevents a seller from honestly informing the public of the advantages of its products as opposed to those of competing products. 60 F.T.C. at 796.

Industry codes which restrain comparative advertising in this manner are subject to challenge by the Federal Trade Commission.

(2) *Substantiation.* On occasion, a higher standard of substantiation by advertisers using comparative advertising has been required by self-regulation entities. The Commission evaluates comparative advertising in the same manner as it evaluates all other advertising techniques. The ultimate question is whether or not the advertising has a tendency or capacity to be false or deceptive. This is a factual issue to be determined on a case-by-case basis. However, industry codes and interpretations that impose a higher standard of substantiation for comparative claims than for unilateral claims are inappropriate and should be revised.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 45)

[44 FR 47328, Aug. 13, 1979]

§ 14.16 Interpretation of Truth-in-Lending Orders consistent with amendments to the Truth-in-Lending Act and Regulation Z.

Introduction

The Federal Trade Commission (FTC) has determined that there is a need to clarify the compliance responsibilities under the Truth-in-Lending Act (TILA) (Title I, Consumer Credit Protection Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*), as amended by the Truth-in-Lending Simplification

[1] For purposes of this Policy Statement, comparative advertising is defined as advertising that compares alternative brands on objectively measurable attributes or price, and identifies the alternative brand by name, illustration or other distinctive information.

and Reform Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–221, 94 Stat. 168), and under revised Regulation Z (12 CFR part 226, 46 FR 20848), and subsequent amendments to the TILA and Regulation Z, of those creditors and advertisers who are subject to final cease and desist orders that require compliance with provisions of the Truth-in-Lending statute or Regulation Z. Clarification is necessary because the Truth-in-Lending Simplification and Reform Act and revised Regulation Z significantly relaxed prior Truth-in-Lending requirements on which provisions of numerous outstanding orders were based. The Policy Statement provides that the Commission will interpret and enforce Truth-in-Lending provisions of all orders so as to impose no greater or different disclosure obligations on creditors and advertisers named in such orders than are required generally of creditors and advertisers under the TILA and Regulation Z, and subsequent amendments to the TILA and Regulation Z.

Policy Statement

(a) All cease and desist orders issued by the FTC that require compliance with provisions of the Truth-in-Lending Act and Regulation Z (12 CFR part 226) will be interpreted and enforced consistent with the amendments to the TILA incorporated by the Truth-in-Lending Simplification and Reform Act of 1980, and the revision of Regulation Z implementing the same, promulgated on April 1, 1981 by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (46 FR 20848), and by subsequent amendments to the TILA and Regulation Z. Likewise, the Federal Reserve Board staff commentary to revised Regulation Z (46 FR 50288, October 9, 1981), and subsequent revisions to the Federal Reserve Board staff commentary to Regulation Z, will be considered in interpreting the requirements of existing orders.

(b) After an amendment to Regulation Z becomes effective, compliance with the revised credit disclosure requirements will be considered compliance with the existing order, and:

(1) To the extent that revised Regulation Z deletes disclosure requirements imposed by any Commission order, compliance with these requirements will no longer be required; however,

(2) To the extent that revised Regulation Z imposes additional disclosure or format requirements, a failure to comply with the added requirements will be considered a violation of the TILA.

(c) A creditor or advertiser must continue to comply with all provisions of the order which do not relate to Truth-in-Lending Act requirements or are unaffected by Regulation Z. These provisions are not affected by this policy statement and will remain in full force and effect.

Staff Clarifications

The Commission intends that this Enforcement Policy Statement obviate the need for any creditor or advertiser to file a petition to reopen and modify any affected order under section 2.51 of the Commission's rules of practice (16 CFR 2.51). However, the Commission recognizes that the policy statement may not provide clear guidance to every creditor or advertiser under order. The staff of the Division of Enforcement, Bureau of Consumer Protection, will respond to written requests for clarification of any order affected by this policy statement.

[60 FR 42033, Aug. 15, 1995]

PART 16—ADVISORY COMMITTEE MANAGEMENT

Sec.
16.1 Purpose and scope.
16.2 Definitions.
16.3 Policy.
16.4 Advisory Committee Management Officer.
16.5 Establishment of advisory committees.
16.6 Charter.
16.7 Meetings.
16.8 Closed meetings.
16.9 Notice of meetings.
16.10 Minutes and transcripts of meetings.
16.11 Annual comprehensive review.
16.12 Termination of advisory committees.
16.13 Renewal of advisory committees.
16.14 Amendments.
16.15 Reports of advisory committees.
16.16 Compensation.

AUTHORITY: Federal Advisory Committee Act, 5 U.S.C. App. I Section 8(a).

SOURCE: 51 FR 30055, Aug. 22, 1986, unless otherwise noted.

§ 16.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) The regulations in this part implement the Federal Advisory Committee Act, 5 U.S.C. App. I.

(b) These regulations shall apply to any advisory committee, as defined in paragraph (b) of § 16.2 of this part. However, to the extent that an advisory committee is subject to particular statutory provisions that are inconsistent with the Federal Advisory Committee Act, these regulations do not apply.

§ 16.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) *Administrator* means the Administrator of the General Services Administration.

(b) *Advisory committee*, subject to exclusions described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, means any committee, board, commission, council, panel, task force, or other similar group, or any subcommittee or other subgroup thereof, which is established or utilized by the Commission for the purpose of obtaining advice or recommendations for the Commission or other agency or officer of the Federal Government on matters that are within the scope of the Commission's jurisdiction.

(1) Where a group provides some advice to the Commission but the group's advisory function is incidental and inseparable from other (e.g., operational or management) functions, the provisions of this part do not apply. However, if the advisory function is separable, the group is subject to this part to the extent that the group operates as an advisory committee.

(2) Groups excluded from the effect of the provisions of this part include:

(i) Any committee composed wholly of full-time officers or employees of the Federal Government;

(ii) Any committee, subcommittee or subgroup that is exclusively operational in nature (e.g., has functions that include making or implementing decisions, as opposed to the offering of advice or recommendations);

(iii) Any inter-agency advisory committee unless specifically made applicable by the establishing authority.

(c) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) *GSA* means the General Services Administration.

(e) *Secretariat* means the Committee Management Secretariat of the General Services Administration.

(f) *Sunshine Act* means the Government in the Sunshine Act, 5 U.S.C. 552b.

§ 16.3 Policy.

(a) The Commission's policy shall be to:

(1) Establish an advisory committee only when it is essential to the conduct of agency business;

(2) Insure that adequate information is provided to the Congress and the public regarding advisory committees, and that there are adequate opportunities for access by the public to advisory committee meetings;

(3) Insure that the membership of the advisory committee is balanced in terms of the points of view represented and the functions to be performed; and

(4) Terminate an advisory committee whenever the stated objectives of the committee have been accomplished; the subject matter or work of the advisory committee has become obsolete; the cost of operating the advisory committee is excessive in relation to the benefits accruing to the Commission; or the advisory committee is otherwise no longer a necessary or appropriate means to carry out the purposes for which it was established.

(b) No advisory committee may be used for functions that are not solely advisory unless specifically authorized to do so by law. The Commission shall be solely responsible for making policy decisions and determining action to be taken with respect to any matter considered by an advisory committee.

§ 16.4 Advisory Committee Management Officer.

(a) The Commission shall designate the Executive Director as the Advisory Committee Management Officer who shall:

(1) Exercise control and supervision over the establishment, procedures, and accomplishments of the advisory committees established by the Commission;

(2) Assemble and maintain the reports, records, and other papers of any

advisory committee during its existence;

(3) Carry out, on behalf of the Commission, the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, with respect to such reports, records, and other papers;

(4) Maintain in a single location a complete set for the charters and membership lists of each of the Commission's advisory committees;

(5) Maintain information on the nature, functions, and operations of each of the Commission's advisory committees; and

(6) Provide information on how to obtain copies of minutes of meetings and reports of each of the Commission's advisory committees.

(b) The name of the Advisory Committee Management Officer designated in accordance with this part, and his or her agency address and telephone number, shall be provided to the Secretariat.

§ 16.5 Establishment of advisory committees.

(a) No advisory committee shall be established under this part unless such establishment is:

(1) Specifically authorized by statute; or

(2) Determined as a matter of formal record by the Commission, after consultation with the Administrator, to be in the public interest in connection with the performance of duties imposed on the Commission by law.

(b) In establishing an advisory committee, the Commission shall:

(1) Prepare a proposed charter for the advisory committee in accordance with § 16.6 of this part; and

(2) Submit an original and one copy of a letter to the Administrator requesting concurrence in the Commission's proposal to establish an advisory committee. The letter from the Commission shall describe the nature and purpose of the proposed advisory committee, including an explanation of why establishment of the advisory committee is essential to the conduct of agency business and in the public interest and why the functions of the proposed committee could not be performed by the Commission, by an existing committee, or through other means. The letter shall also describe the Commission's plan to attain balanced membership on the proposed advisory committee in terms of points of view to be represented and functions to be performed. The letter shall be accompanied by two copies of the proposed charter.

(c) Upon the receipt of notification from the Administrator of his or her concurrence or nonconcurrence, the Commission shall notify the Administrator in writing that either:

(1) The advisory committee is being established. The filing of an advisory committee charter as specified in § 16.6 of this part shall be deemed appropriate written notification in this instance; or

(2) The advisory committee is not being established.

(d) If the Commission determines that an advisory committee should be established in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, the Commission shall publish notice to that effect in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least fifteen days prior to the filing of the advisory committee's charter unless the Administrator authorizes publication of such notice within a shorter period of time. The notice shall identify the name and purpose of the advisory committee, state that the committee is necessary and in the public interest, and identify the name and address of the Commission official to whom the public may submit comments.

(e) The Commission may issue regulations or guidelines as may be necessary to operate and oversee a particular advisory committee.

§ 16.6 Charter.

(a) No advisory committee established, utilized, reestablished or renewed by the Commission under this part shall meet or take any action until its charter has been filed by the Commission with the standing committees of the Senate and House of Representatives having legislative jurisdiction over the Commission.

(b) The charter required by paragraph (a) of this section shall include the following information:

(1) The committee's official designation;

(2) The committee's objectives and the scope of its activity;

(3) The period of time necessary for the committee to carry out its purposes;

(4) The Commission component or official to whom the committee reports;

(5) The agency or official responsible for providing the necessary support for the committee;

(6) A description of the duties for which the committee is responsible, and, if such duties are not solely advisory, a specification of the authority for such functions;

(7) The estimated annual operating cost in dollars and man-years for the committee;

(8) The estimated number and frequency of committee meetings;

(9) The committee's termination date, if less than two years from the date of committee's establishment; and

(10) The date the charter is filed.

(c) A copy of the charter required by paragraph (a) of this section shall also be furnished at the time of filing to the Secretariat and the Library of Congress.

(d) The requirements of this section shall also apply to committees utilized as advisory committees, even though not expressly established for that purpose.

§ 16.7 Meetings.

(a) The Commission shall designate an officer or employee of the Federal Government as the Designated Federal Officer for the advisory committee. The Designated Federal Officer shall attend the meetings of the advisory committee, and shall adjourn committee meetings whenever he or she determines that adjournment is in the public interest. The Commission, in its discretion, may authorize the Designated Federal Officer to chair meetings of the advisory committee.

(b) No meeting of any advisory committee shall be held except at the call of, or with the advance approval of, the Designated Federal Officer and with an agenda approved by such official.

(c) The agenda required by paragraph (b) of this section shall identify, in general terms, matters to be considered at the meeting and shall indicate whether any part of the meeting will concern matters that the General Counsel has determined to be covered by one or more of the exemptions of the Sunshine Act.

(d) Timely notice of each meeting of the advisory committee shall be provided in accordance with § 16.9 of this part.

(e) Subject to the provisions of § 16.8 of this part, each meeting of an advisory committee as defined in § 16.2(b) of this part shall be open to the public. Subcommittees and subgroups that are not utilized by the Commission for the purpose of obtaining advice or recommendations do not constitute advisory committees within the meaning of § 16.2(b) and are not subject to the meeting and other requirements of this part.

(f) Meetings that are completely or partly open to the public shall be held at reasonable times and at places that are reasonably accessible to members of the public. The size of the meeting room shall be sufficient to accommodate members of the public who can reasonably be expected to attend.

(g) Any member of the public shall be permitted to file a written statement with the committee concerning any matter to be considered in a meeting. Interested persons may be permitted by the committee chairman to speak at such meetings in accordance with procedures established by the committee and subject to the time constraints under which the meeting is to be conducted.

(h) No meeting of any advisory committee shall be held in the absence of a quorum. Unless otherwise established by statute or in the charter of the committee, a quorum shall consist of a majority of the committee's authorized membership.

§ 16.8 Closed meetings.

(a) Paragraphs (e), (f), and (g) of § 16.7 of this part, which require that meetings shall be open to the public and that the public shall be afforded an opportunity to participate in such meetings, shall not apply to any advisory committee meeting (or any portion thereof) which the Commission determines is concerned with any matter

covered by one or more of the exemptions set forth in paragraph (c) of the Sunshine Act, 5 U.S.C. section 552b(c).

(b) An advisory committee that seeks to have all or part of its meeting closed shall notify the Commission at least thirty days before the scheduled date of the meeting. The notification shall be in writing and shall identify the specific provisions of the Sunshine Act which justify closure. The Commission may waive the thirty-day requirement when a lesser period of time is requested and justified by the advisory committee.

(c) The General Counsel shall review all requests to close meetings and shall advise the Commission on the disposition of each such request.

(d) If the Commission determines that the request is consistent with the policies of the Sunshine Act and the Federal Advisory Committee Act, it shall issue a determination that all or part of the meeting may be closed. A copy of the Commission's determination shall be made available to the public upon request.

(e) The advisory committee shall issue, on an annual basis, a report that sets forth a summary of its activities in meetings closed pursuant to this section, addressing those related matters as would be informative to the public and consistent with the policy of the Sunshine Act and of this part. Notice of the availability of such annual reports shall be published in accordance with § 16.15 of this part.

§ 16.9 Notice of meetings.

(a) Notice of each advisory committee meeting, whether open or closed to the public, shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least 15 days before the meeting date. Such notice shall include the exact name of the advisory committee as chartered; the time, date, place and purpose of the meeting; and a summary of the meeting agenda. Notice shall also state that the meeting is open to the public or closed in whole or in part, and, if closed, cite the specific exemptions of the Sunshine Act as the basis for closure. The Commission may permit the advisory committee to provide notice of less than fifteen days in extraordinary situations, provided that the reasons for doing so are included in the meeting notice.

(b) In addition to the notice required by paragraph (a) of this section, other forms of notice such as press releases and notices in professional journals may be used to inform interested members of the public of advisory committee meetings.

§ 16.10 Minutes and transcripts of meetings.

(a) Detailed minutes of each advisory committee meeting shall be kept. The minutes shall reflect the time, date and place of the meeting; and accurate summary of each matter that was discussed and each conclusion reached; and a copy of each report or other document received, issued, or approved by the advisory committee. In addition, the minutes shall include a list of advisory committee members and staff and full-time Federal employees who attended the meeting; a list of members of the public who presented oral or written statements; and an estimated number of members of the public who were present at the meeting. The minutes shall describe the extent to which the meeting was open to the public and the nature and extent of any public participation. If it is impracticable to attach to the minutes of the meeting any document received, issued, or approved by the advisory committee, then the minutes shall describe the document in sufficient detail to enable any person who may request the document to identify it readily.

(b) The accuracy of all minutes shall be certified to by the chairperson of the advisory committee.

(c) Minutes need not be kept if a verbatim transcript is made.

§ 16.11 Annual comprehensive review.

(a) The Commission shall conduct an annual comprehensive review of the activities and responsibilities of each advisory committee to determine:

(1) Whether such committee is carrying out its purpose;

(2) Whether, consistent with the provisions of applicable statutes, the responsibilities assigned to it should be revised;

(3) Whether it should be merged with any other advisory committee or committees; or

(4) Whether it should be abolished.

(b) Pertinent factors to be considered in the comprehensive review required by paragraph (a) of this section include the following:

(1) The number of times the committee has met in the past year;

(2) The number of reports or recommendations submitted by the committee;

(3) An evaluation of the substance of the committee's reports or recommendations with respect to the Commission's programs or operations;

(4) An evaluation (with emphasis on the preceding twelve month period of the committee's work) of the history of the Commission's utilization of the committee's recommendations in policy formulation, program planning, decision making, more effective achievement of program objectives, and more economical accomplishment of programs in general.

(5) Whether information or recommendations could be obtained from sources within the Commission or from another advisory committee already in existence;

(6) The degree of duplication of effort by the committee as compared with that of other parts of the Commission or other advisory committees; and

(7) The estimated annual cost of the committee.

(c) The annual review required by this section shall be conducted on a fiscal year basis, and results of the review shall be included in the annual report to the GSA required by § 16.15 of this part. The report shall contain a justification of each advisory committee which the Commission determines should be continued, making reference, as appropriate, to the factors specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

§ 16.12 Termination of advisory committees.

Any advisory committee shall automatically terminate not later than two years after it is established, reestablished, or renewed, unless:

(a) Its duration is otherwise provided by law;

(b) It is renewed in accordance with § 16.13 of this part; or

(c) The Commission terminates it before that time.

§ 16.13 Renewal of advisory committees.

(a) Any advisory committee established under this part may be renewed by appropriate action of the Commission and the filing of a new charter. An advisory committee may be continued by such action for successive two-year periods.

(b) Before it renews an advisory committee in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, the Commission will inform the Administrator by letter, not more than sixty days nor less than thirty days before the committee expires, of the following:

(1) Its determination that a renewal is necessary and in the public interest;

(2) The reasons for its determination;

(3) The Commission's plan to maintain balanced membership on the committee;

(4) An explanation of why the committee's functions cannot be performed by the Commission or by an existing advisory committee.

(c) Upon receipt of the Administrator's notification of concurrence or nonconcurrence, the Commission shall publish a notice of the renewal in the FEDERAL REGISTER, which shall certify that the renewal of the advisory committee is in the public interest and shall include all the matters set forth in paragraph (b) of this section. The Commission shall cause a new charter to be prepared and filed in accordance with the provisions of §§ 16.5 and 16.6 of this part.

(d) No advisory committee that is required under this section to file a new charter for the purpose of renewal shall take any action, other than preparation and filing of such charter, between the date the new charter is required and the date on which such charter is actually filed.

§ 16.14 Amendments.

(a) The charter of an advisory committee may be amended when the Commission determines that the existing charter no longer accurately describes

the committee itself or its goals or procedures. Changes may be minor, such as revising the name of the advisory committee, or may be major, to the extent that they deal with the basic objectives or composition of the committee.

(1) To make a minor amendment to an advisory committee charter, the Commission shall:

(i) Amend the charter language as necessary; and

(ii) File the amended charter in accordance with the provisions of § 16.6 of this part.

(2) To make a major amendment to an advisory committee charter, the Commission shall:

(i) Amend the charter language as necessary;

(ii) Submit the proposed amended charter with a letter to the Administrator requesting concurrence in the amended language and an explanation of why the changes are essential and in the public interest; and

(iii) File the amended charter in accordance with the provisions of § 16.6 of this part.

(b) Amendment of an existing charter does not constitute renewal of the advisory committee under § 16.13 of this part.

§ 16.15 Reports of advisory committees.

(a) The Commission shall furnish, on a fiscal year basis, a report of the activities of each of its advisory committees to the GSA.

(b) Results of the annual comprehensive review of the advisory committee made under § 16.11 shall be included in the annual report.

(c) The Commission shall notify the GSA, by letter, of the termination of, changes in the membership of, or other significant developments with respect to, an advisory committee.

§ 16.16 Compensation.

(a) *Committee members.* Unless otherwise provided by law, the Commission shall not compensate advisory committee members for their service on an advisory committee. In the exceptional case where the Commission is unable to meet the need for technical expertise or the requirement for balanced membership solely through the appointment of noncompensated members, the Commission may contract for or authorize the advisory committee to contract for the services of a specific consultant who may be appointed as a member of the advisory committee. In such a case, the Commission shall follow the procedures set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) *Consultants.* Prior to hiring or authorizing the advisory committee to hire a consultant to an advisory committee, the Commission shall determine that the expertise or viewpoint to be offered by the consultant is not otherwise available without cost to the Commission. The compensation to be paid to such consultant may not exceed the maximum rate of pay authorized by 5 U.S.C. section 3109. Hiring of consultants shall be in accordance with OMB Circular A–120 and applicable statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders.

(c) *Staff members.* The Commission may fix the pay of each advisory committee staff member at a rate of the General Schedule, General Management Schedule, or Senior Executive Service in which the Staff member's position would appropriately be placed (5 U.S.C. chapter 51). The Commission may not fix the pay of a staff member at a rate higher than the daily equivalent of the maximum rate for GS–15, unless the Commission has determined that under the General Schedule, General Management Schedule, or Senior Executive Service classification system, the staff member's position would appropriately be placed at a grade higher than GS–15. The Commission shall review this determination annually.

SUBCHAPTER B—GUIDES AND TRADE PRACTICE RULES

PART 17—APPLICATION OF GUIDES IN PREVENTING UNLAWFUL PRACTICES

NOTE: Industry guides are administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. They provide the basis for voluntary and simultaneous abandonment of unlawful practices by members of industry. Failure to comply with the guides may result in corrective action by the commission under applicable statutory provisions. Guides may relate to a practice common to many industries or to specific practices of a particular industry.
(Authority: Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 722; (15 U.S.C. 46(g))

[44 FR 11176, Feb. 27, 1979]

PART 18—GUIDES FOR THE NURSERY INDUSTRY

Sec.
18.0 Definitions.
18.1 Deception (general).
18.2 Deception through use of names.
18.3 Substitution of products.
18.4 Size and grade designations.
18.5 Deception as to blooming, fruiting, or growing ability.
18.6 Plants collected from the wild state.
18.7 Misrepresentation as to character of business.
18.8 Deception as to origin or source of industry products.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6 FTC Act; 38 Stat. 719, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

§ 18.0 Definitions.

Industry products. As used in this part, the term *industry products* includes all types of trees, small fruit plants, shrubs, vines, ornamentals, herbaceous annuals, biennials and perennials, bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers which are offered for sale or sold to the general public. Included are products propagated sexually or asexually and whether grown in a commercial nursery or collected from the wild state. Such products are customarily used for outdoor planting. Not included are florists' or greenhouse plants solely for inside culture or use and annual vegetable plants.

Industry members. Any person, firm, corporation, or organization engaged in the sale, offering for sale, or distribution in commerce of industry products, as defined above.

Lining-out stock. Includes all plant material coming from propagating houses, beds, or frames, and young material such as seedlings rooted or unrooted cuttings, grafts or layers, of suitable size to transplant either in the nursery row or in containers for ''growing on.''

Nursery-propagated. Reproduced and grown under cultivation, including reproduced and grown under cultivation from plants, seeds or cuttings lawfully collected from the wild state.

Propagated. Reproduced from seeds, cuttings, callus or other plant tissue, spores or other propagules under a controlled environment that is intensely manipulated by human intervention for the purpose of producing selected species or hybrids.

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.1 Deception (general).

(a) It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice to sell, offer for sale, or distribute industry products by any method or under any circumstance or condition that misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers the products with respect to quantity, size, grade, kind, species, age, maturity, condition, vigor, hardiness, number of times transplanted, growth ability, growth characteristics, rate of growth or time required before flowering or fruiting, price, origin or place where grown, or any other material aspect of the industry product.

(b) The inhibitions of this section shall apply to every type of advertisement or method of representation, whether in newspaper, periodical, sales catalog, circular, by tag, label or insignia, by radio or television, by sales representatives, or otherwise.

(c) Among practices inhibited by the foregoing are direct or indirect representations:

(1) That plants have been propagated by grafting or bud selection methods, when such is not the fact.

(2) That industry products are healthy, will grow anywhere without the use of fertilizer, or will survive and produce without special care, when such is not the fact.

(3) That plants will bloom the year round, or will bear an extraordinary number of blooms of unusual size or quality, when such is not the fact.

(4) That an industry product is a new variety, when in fact it is a standard variety to which the industry member has given a new name.

(5) That an industry product cannot be purchased through usual retail outlets, or that there are limited stocks available, when such is not the fact.

(6) That industry products offered for sale will be delivered in time for the next (or any specified) seasonal planting when the industry member is aware of factors which make such delivery improbable.

(7) That the appearance of an industry product as to size, color, contour, foliage, bloom, fruit or other physical characteristic is normal or usual when the appearance so represented is in fact abnormal or unusual.

(8) That the root system of any plant is larger in depth or diameter than that which actually exists, whether accomplished by excessive packaging material, or excessive balling, or other deceptive or misleading practice.

(9) That bulblets are bulbs.

(10) That an industry product is a rare or unusual item when such is not the fact. [Guide 1]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994; 72 FR 902, Jan. 9, 2007]

§ 18.2 Deception through use of names.

(a) In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of an industry product, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any industry member to use a name for such product that misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers its true identity.

(b) Subject to the foregoing:

(1) When an industry product has a generally recognized and well-established common name, it is proper to use such name as a designation therefor, either alone or in conjunction with the correct botanical name of the product.

(2) When an industry product has a generally recognized and well-established common name, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for an industry member to adopt and use a new name for the product unless such new name is immediately accompanied by the generally recognized and well-established common name, or by the correct botanical name, or by a description of the nature and properties of the product which is of sufficient detail to prevent confusion and deception of purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the true identity of the product.

(3) When an industry product does not have a generally recognized and well-established common name, and a name other than the correct botanical name of the product is applied thereto, such other name shall be immediately accompanied by either the correct botanical name of the product, or a description of the nature and properties of the product which is of sufficient detail as to prevent confusion and deception of purchasers and prospective purchasers as to the true identity of the product.

NOTE: *Industry recommendation*. The industry recommends that in administering the guide in this section the Commission give consideration to the use of plant names listed in such works as Checklist of Woody Ornamental Plants of California, 1977, University of California; Hillier's Manual of Trees and Shrubs, 1971, Hillier & Sons; Manual of Cultivated Conifers, 1965, P. Den Ouden & B. K. Boom; Hortus III, 1976, L. H. Bailey Hortorium; Naming and Registering New Cultivars, 1974, American Association of Nurserymen, Inc.; and to plant name lists periodically published by the plant societies and the horticultural organizations selected as international and national cultivar registration authorities as enumerated in Appendix of Naming and Registering New Cultivars.

[Guide 2]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.3 Substitution of products.

With respect to industry products offered for sale by an industry member, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any member of the industry:

(a) To ship or deliver industry products which do not conform to representations made prior to securing the order or to specifications upon which the sale is consummated, without advising the purchaser of the substitution and obtaining the purchaser's consent thereto prior to making shipment or delivery, where failure to advise would be misleading to purchasers; or

(b) To falsely represent the reason for making a substitution: *Provided, however*, That nothing in this section is intended to inhibit the shipment of products different from those ordered, prior to obtaining the purchaser's consent to such substitution, when the order is received by the industry member near the close of the planting season for the products ordered and the substitution involved relates but to a product or products the total price of which is comparatively small, and when:

(1) At the commencement of the planting season for the products ordered the industry member had a supply of such products sufficient to meet normal and reasonably expected orders therefor, and such supply has been exhausted; and

(2) The products substituted are of similar variety and of equal or greater value to those ordered by the purchaser and no additional charge is made therefor; and

(3) Notice of the substitution, with adequate identification of the substituted item or items, and with commitment of the industry member to refund any purchase price received for the substituted products if such products are not acceptable to the purchaser and to compensate the purchaser for any expense involved in the return of the substituted products if refund is conditioned on the return thereof, is given the purchaser at the time of his receipt of such products: *And provided further*, That nothing in this section is to be construed as sanctioning the dissemination of an advertisement of an industry product or products or the personal solicitation of orders therefor unless at the time of such dissemination or solicitation the industry member has a supply of such product or products sufficient to meet normal and reasonably expected orders therefor. [Guide 3]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.4 Size and grade designations.

(a) In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for an industry member to use any term, designation, number, letter, mark, or symbol as a size or grade designation for any industry product in a manner or under any circumstance that misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers the actual size or grade of such products.

(b) Under this section industry members offering lining-out stock for sale shall specify conspicuously and accurately the size and age of such stock when failure to do so may misrepresent directly or by implication such stock to purchasers or prospective purchasers.

(c) Nothing in this section is to be construed as inhibiting the designation of the size or grade of an industry product by use of a size or grade designation for which a standard has been established which is generally recognized in the industry when the identity of such standard is conjunctively disclosed, the product qualifies for the designation under such standard, and no deception of purchasers or prospective purchasers results in the use of such designation.

NOTE: It is the consensus of the industry that the grade and size standard set forth in the current edition of American Standard for Nursery Stock, ANSI Z60.1, as approved by the American National Standard Institute, Inc., is generally recognized in the industry, and that use of the size and grade designation therein set forth, in accordance with the requirements of the standard for the designations, in the marketing of industry products to which such standard relates, will prevent deception and confusion of purchasers and prospective purchasers of such products. [Guide 4]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.5 Deception as to blooming, fruiting, or growing ability.

In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any industry member to misrepresent directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers the ability of such products:

(a) To bloom, flower, or fruit within a specified period of time; or

(b) To produce crops within a specified period of time, or to give multiple crops each year, or to produce crops in unfavorable climatic regions; or

(c) To bear fruit through self-pollinization; or

(d) To grow, flourish, and survive irrespective of the climatic conditions, the care exercised in or after planting, or the soil characteristics of the locality in which they are to be planted.

NOTE 1: Under this section, when flower bulbs are of such immaturity as not reasonably to be expected to bloom and flower the first season of their planting, such fact shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in all advertisements and sales promotional literature relating to such products: *Provided, however,* That such disclosure need not be made when sales are confined to nurseries and commercial growers for their use as planting stock.

NOTE 2: Under this section, in order to avoid deception of purchasers and prospective purchasers thereof, when rose bushes have been used in a greenhouse for the commercial production of cut flowers, they shall be tagged or labeled so as to clearly, adequately and conspicuously disclose such fact, and such tags and labels shall be so attached thereto as to remain thereon until consummation of consumer sale. A similar disclosure shall be made in all advertising and sales promotional literature relating to such products. And when, by reason of such previous greenhouse use or their condition at the time of removal therefrom or their handling during or subsequent thereto, there is probability that such rose bushes will not satisfactorily thrive and produce flowers when replanted outdoors, or will satisfactorily thrive and produce flowers outdoors only if given special treatment and attention during and after their replanting, such fact shall also be clearly, conspicuously, and nondeceptively disclosed in close conjunction with, and in the same manner as, the aforesaid required disclosure that such products have been used in a greenhouse for the commercial production of cut flowers.

[Guide 5]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.6 Plants collected from the wild state.

It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice to sell, offer for sale, or distribute industry products collected from the wild state without disclosing that they were collected from the wild state; *provided, however,* that plants propagated in nurseries from plants lawfully collected from the wild state may be designated as ''nursery-propagated.'' [Guide 6]

[59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.7 Misrepresentation as to character of business.

(a) In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any industry member to represent itself directly or by implication to be a grower or propagator of such products, or any portion thereof, or to have any other experience or qualification either relating to the growing or propagation of such products or enabling the industry member to be of assistance to purchasers or prospective purchasers in the selection by them of the kinds or types of products, or the placement thereof, when such is not the fact, or in any other manner to misrepresent directly or by implication the character, nature, or extent of the industry member's business.

NOTE: Among practices subject to the inhibitions of this section is a representation by an industry member to the effect that he is a landscape architect when his training, experience, and knowledge do not qualify him for such representation.

(b) It is also an unfair or deceptive act or practice for an industry member to use the word ''guild,'' ''club,'' ''association,'' ''council,'' ''society,'' ''foundation,'' or any other word of similar import or meaning, as part of a trade name, or otherwise, in such a manner or under such circumstances as to indicate or imply that its business is other than a commercial enterprise operated for profit, unless such be true in fact,

or so as to deceive purchasers or prospective purchasers in any other material respect. [Guide 7]

[59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

§ 18.8 Deception as to origin or source of industry products.

(a) It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice to sell, offer for sale, or advertise an industry product by misrepresenting directly or by implication the origin or source of such product to purchasers or prospective purchasers (e.g., by use of the term *Holland* to describe bulbs grown in the U.S.A.); *provided, however*, that when a plant has an accepted common name that incorporates a geographical term and such term has lost its geographical significance as so used, the mere use of such common names does not constitute a misrepresentation as to source or origin (e.g., ''Colorado Blue Spruce,'' ''Arizona Cypress,'' ''Black Hills Spruce,'' ''California Privet,'' ''Japanese Barberry,'' etc.).

(b) It is also an unfair or deceptive act or practice to advertise, sell, or offer for sale an industry product of foreign origin without adequate and non-deceptive disclosure of the name of the foreign country from which it came, where the failure to make such disclosure would be misleading to purchasers or prospective purchasers. [Guide 8]

[59 FR 64550, Dec. 14, 1994]

PART 20—GUIDES FOR THE REBUILT, RECONDITIONED AND OTHER USED AUTOMOBILE PARTS INDUSTRY

Sec.
20.0 Scope and purpose of the guides.
20.1 Deception generally.
20.2 Deception as to identity of rebuilder, remanufacturer, reconditioner or reliner.
20.3 Misrepresentation of the terms ''rebuilt,'' ''factory rebuilt,'' ''remanufactured,'' etc.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 44 FR 11182, Feb. 27, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

§ 20.0 Scope and purpose of the guides.

The Guides in this part apply to the manufacture, sale, distribution, marketing and advertising (including advertising in electronic format, such as on the Internet) of used parts and assemblies containing used parts designed for use in automobiles, trucks, motorcycles, tractors, or similar self-propelled vehicles whether or not such parts or assemblies have been reconstructed in any way (hereinafter ''industry products''). Such automotive parts and assemblies include, but are not limited to, anti-lock brake systems, air conditioners, alternators, armatures, air brakes, brake cylinders, ball bearings, brake shoes, heavy duty vacuum brakes, calipers, carburetors, cruise controls, cylinder heads, clutches, crankshafts, constant velocity joints, differentials, drive shafts, distributors, electronic control modules, engines, fan clutches, fuel injectors, fuel pumps, front wheel drive axles, generators, master cylinders, oil pumps, power brake units, power steering gears, power steering pumps, power window motors, rack and pinion steering units, rotors, starter drives, speedometers, solenoids, smog pumps, starters, stators, throttle body injectors, torque convertors, transmissions, turbo chargers, voltage regulators, windshield wiper motors, and water pumps. Tires are not included. (Tires are covered by the Tire Advertising and Labeling Guides, 16 CFR Part 228.)

[67 FR 9922, Mar. 5, 2002]

§ 20.1 Deception generally.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that any industry product or part of an industry product is new or unused when such is not the fact, or to misrepresent the current condition, or extent of previous use, reconstruction or repair of any industry product.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to offer for sale or sell any industry product unless a clear and conspicuous disclosure that such product has been used or contains used parts is made in advertising, sales promotional literature and invoices and on product packaging. Additionally, it is unfair or deceptive to offer for sale or to sell any rebuilt, remanufactured, reconditioned, or otherwise new-appearing industry product unless such disclosure using appropriate descriptive terms is made on the

product itself with sufficient permanency to remain visible for a reasonable period of time after installation. Examples of appropriate descriptive terms include, but are not limited to ''Used,'' ''Secondhand,'' ''Repaired,'' ''Remanufactured,'' ''Reconditioned,'' ''Rebuilt,'' or ''Relined.''[1] On invoices to the trade only, the disclosure may be made by use of any number, mark, or other symbol that is clearly understood by industry members as meaning that the products or parts identified on the invoices have been used.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to place any means or instrumentality in the hands of others so that they may mislead consumers as to the previous use of industry products or parts.

[67 FR 9922, Mar. 5, 2002]

§ 20.2 Deception as to identity of rebuilder, remanufacturer, reconditioner or reliner.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the identity of the rebuilder, remanufacturer, reconditioner or reliner of an industry product.

(b) In connection with the sale or offering for sale of an industry product, if the identity of the original manufacturer of the product, or the identity of the manufacturer for which the product was originally made, is revealed and the product was rebuilt, remanufactured, reconditioned or relined by someone else, it is unfair or deceptive to fail to disclose such fact wherever the original manufacturer is identified in advertising and sales promotional literature concerning the product, on the container in which the product is packed, and on the product, in close conjunction with, and of the same permanency and conspicuousness as, the disclosure of previous use of the product described by this section. Examples of such disclosures include:

(1) Disclosure of the identity of the rebuilder:

Rebuilt by John Doe Co.

(2) Disclosure that the product was rebuilt by an independent rebuilder:

Rebuilt by an Independent Rebuilder.

(3) Disclosure that the product was rebuilt by someone other than the manufacturer so identified:

Rebuilt by other than XYZ Motors.

(4) Disclosure that the product was rebuilt for the identified manufacturer, if such is the case:

Rebuilt for XYZ Motors.

[67 FR 9922, Mar. 5, 2002]

§ 20.3 Misrepresentation of the terms "rebuilt," "factory rebuilt," "remanufactured," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the words ''Rebuilt,'' ''Remanufactured,'' or words of similar import, to describe an industry product which, since it was last subjected to any use, has not been dismantled and reconstructed as necessary, all of its internal and external parts cleaned and made rust and corrosion free, all impaired, defective or substantially worn parts restored to a sound condition or replaced with new, rebuilt (in accord with the provisions of this paragraph) or unimpaired used parts, all missing parts replaced with new, rebuilt or unimpaired used parts, and such rewinding or machining and other operations performed as are necessary to put the industry product in sound working condition.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to represent an industry product as ''Factory Rebuilt'' unless the product was rebuilt as described in paragraph (a) of this section at a factory generally engaged in the rebuilding of such products. (See also § 20.2.)

[67 FR 9922, Mar. 5, 2002]

PART 23—GUIDES FOR THE JEWELRY, PRECIOUS METALS, AND PEWTER INDUSTRIES

Sec.

23.0 Scope and application.
23.1 Deception (general).
23.2 Misleading illustrations.
23.3 Misuse of the terms ''hand-made,'' ''hand-polished,'' etc.
23.4 Misrepresentation as to gold content.
23.5 Misuse of the word ''vermeil.''
23.6 Misrepresentation as to silver content.

[1] If the term ''recycled'' is used, it should be used in a manner consistent with the requirements for that term set forth in the Guides for the Use of Environmental Marketing Claims, 16 CFR 260.7(e).

23.7 Misuse of the words ''platinum,'' ''iridium,'' ''palladium,'' ''ruthenium,'' ''rhodium,'' and ''osmium.''
23.8 Misrepresentation as to content of pewter.
23.9 Additional guidance for the use of quality marks.
23.10 Misuse of ''corrosion proof,'' ''noncorrosive,'' ''corrosion resistant,'' ''rust proof,'' ''rust resistant,'' etc.
23.11 Definition and misuse of the word ''diamond.''
23.12 Misuse of the words ''flawless,'' ''perfect,'' etc.
23.13 Disclosure of treatments to diamonds.
23.14 Misuse of the term ''blue white.''
23.15 Misuse of the term ''properly cut,'' etc.
23.16 Misuse of the words ''brilliant'' and ''full cut.''
23.17 Misrepresentation of weight and ''total weight.''
23.18 Definitions of various pearls.
23.19 Misuse of the word ''pearl.''
23.20 Misuse of terms such as ''cultured pearl,'' ''seed pearl,'' ''Oriental pearl,'' ''natura,'' ''kultured,'' ''real,'' ''gem,'' ''synthetic,'' and regional designations.
23.21 Misrepresentation as to cultured pearls.
23.22 Disclosure of treatment to gemstones.
23.23 Misuse of the words ''ruby,'' ''sapphire,'' ''emerald,'' ''topaz,'' ''stone,'' ''birthstone,'' ''gemstone,'' etc.
23.24 Misuse of the words ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''natural,'' ''precious,'' etc.
23.25 Misuse of the word ''gem.''
23.26 Misuse of the words ''flawless,'' ''perfect,'' etc.

APPENDIX TO PART 23—EXEMPTIONS RECOGNIZED IN THE ASSAY FOR QUALITY OF GOLD ALLOY, GOLD FILLED, GOLD OVERLAY, ROLLED GOLD PLATE, SILVER, AND PLATINUM INDUSTRY PRODUCTS

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 5, 38 Stat. 721, 719; 15 U.S.C. 46, 45.

SOURCE: 61 FR 27212, May 30, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§23.0 Scope and application.

(a) These guides apply to jewelry industry products, which include, but are not limited to, the following: gemstones and their laboratory-created and imitation substitutes; natural and cultured pearls and their imitations; and metallic watch bands not permanently attached to watches. These guides also apply to articles, including optical frames, pens and pencils, flatware, and hollowware, fabricated from precious metals (gold, silver and platinum group metals), precious metal alloys, and their imitations. These guides also apply to all articles made from pewter. For the purposes of these guides, all articles covered by these guides are defined as ''industry products.''

(b) These guides apply to persons, partnerships, or corporations, at every level of the trade (including but not limited to manufacturers, suppliers, and retailers) engaged in the business of offering for sale, selling, or distributing industry products.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (b): To prevent consumer deception, persons, partnerships, or corporations in the business of appraising, identifying, or grading industry products should utilize the terminology and standards set forth in the guides.

(c) These guides apply to claims and representations about industry products included in labeling, advertising, promotional materials, and all other forms of marketing, whether asserted directly or by implication, through words, symbols, emblems, logos, illustrations, depictions, product brand names, or through any other means.

[61 FR 27212, May 30, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 33194, June 22, 1999]

§23.1 Deception (general).

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the type, kind, grade, quality, quantity, metallic content, size, weight, cut, color, character, treatment, substance, durability, serviceability, origin, price, value, preparation, production, manufacture, distribution, or any other material aspect of an industry product.

NOTE 1 TO §23.1: If, in the sale or offering for sale of an industry product, any representation is made as to the grade assigned the product, the identity of the grading system used should be disclosed.

NOTE 2 TO §23.1: To prevent deception, any qualifications or disclosures, such as those described in the guides, should be sufficiently clear and prominent. Clarity of language, relative type size and proximity to the claim being qualified, and an absence of contrary claims that could undercut effectiveness, will maximize the likelihood that the qualifications and disclosures are appropriately clear and prominent.

§23.2 Misleading illustrations.

It is unfair or deceptive to use, as part of any advertisement, packaging

material, label, or other sales promotion matter, any visual representation, picture, televised or computer image, illustration, diagram, or other depiction which, either alone or in conjunction with any accompanying words or phrases, misrepresents the type, kind, grade, quality, quantity, metallic content, size, weight, cut, color, character, treatment, substance, durability, serviceability, origin, preparation, production, manufacture, distribution, or any other material aspect of an industry product.

NOTE TO § 23.2: An illustration or depiction of a diamond or other gemstone that portrays it in greater than its actual size may mislead consumers, unless a disclosure is made about the item's true size.

§ 23.3 Misuse of the terms "hand-made," "hand-polished," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that any industry product is hand-made or hand-wrought unless the entire shaping and forming of such product from raw materials and its finishing and decoration were accomplished by hand labor and manually-controlled methods which permit the maker to control and vary the construction, shape, design, and finish of each part of each individual product.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (a): As used herein, ''raw materials'' include bulk sheet, strip, wire, and similar items that have not been cut, shaped, or formed into jewelry parts, semi-finished parts, or blanks.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that any industry product is hand-forged, hand-engraved, hand-finished, or hand-polished, or has been otherwise hand-processed, unless the operation described was accomplished by hand labor and manually-controlled methods which permit the maker to control and vary the type, amount, and effect of such operation on each part of each individual product.

§ 23.4 Misrepresentation as to gold content.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the presence of gold or gold alloy in an industry product, or the quantity or karat fineness of gold or gold alloy contained in the product, or the karat fineness, thickness, weight ratio, or manner of application of any gold or gold alloy plating, covering, or coating on any surface of an industry product or part thereof.

(b) The following are examples of markings or descriptions that may be misleading:[2]

(1) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation, without qualification, to describe all or part of an industry product, which is not composed throughout of fine (24 karat) gold.

(2) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product composed throughout of an alloy of gold, unless a correct designation of the karat fineness of the alloy immediately precedes the word ''Gold'' or its abbreviation, and such fineness designation is of at least equal conspicuousness.

(3) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product that is not composed throughout of gold or a gold alloy, but is surface-plated or coated with gold alloy, unless the word ''Gold'' or its abbreviation is adequately qualified to indicate that the product or part is only surface-plated.

(4) Use of the term ''Gold Plate,'' ''Gold Plated,'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product unless such product or part contains a surface-plating of gold alloy, applied by any process, which is of such thickness and extent of surface coverage that reasonable durability is assured.

(5) Use of the terms ''Gold Filled,'' ''Rolled Gold Plate,'' ''Rolled Gold Plated,'' ''Gold Overlay,'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product unless such product or part contains a surface-plating of gold alloy applied by a mechanical process and of such thickness and extent of surface coverage that reasonable durability is assured, and unless the term is immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness of the alloy that is of at least equal conspicuousness as the term used.

(6) Use of the terms ''Gold Plate,'' ''Gold Plated,'' ''Gold Filled,'' ''Rolled

[2] See § 23.4(c) for examples of acceptable markings and descriptions.

Gold Plate,'' ''Rolled Gold Plated,'' ''Gold Overlay,'' or any abbreviation to describe a product in which the layer of gold plating has been covered with a base metal (such as nickel), which is covered with a thin wash of gold, unless there is a disclosure that the primary gold coating is covered with a base metal, which is gold washed.

(7) Use of the term ''Gold Electroplate,'' ''Gold Electroplated,'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product unless such product or part is electroplated with gold or a gold alloy and such electroplating is of such karat fineness, thickness, and extent of surface coverage that reasonable durability is assured.

(8) Use of any name, terminology, or other term to misrepresent that an industry product is equal or superior to, or different than, a known and established type of industry product with reference to its gold content or method of manufacture.

(9) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation, or of a quality mark implying gold content (e.g., 9 karat), to describe all or part of an industry product that is composed throughout of an alloy of gold of less than 10 karat fineness.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (b) § 23.4: The provisions regarding the use of the word ''Gold,'' or any abbreviation, as described above, are applicable to ''Duragold,'' ''Diragold,'' ''Noblegold,'' ''Goldine,'' ''Layered Gold,'' or any words or terms of similar meaning.

(c) The following are examples of markings and descriptions that are consistent with the principles described above:

(1) An industry product or part thereof, composed throughout of an alloy of gold of not less than 10 karat fineness, may be marked and described as ''Gold'' when such word ''Gold,'' wherever appearing, is immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness of the alloy, and such karat designation is of equal conspicuousness as the word ''Gold'' (for example, ''14 Karat Gold,'' ''14 K. Gold,'' or ''14 Kt. Gold''). Such product may also be marked and described by a designation of the karat fineness of the gold alloy unaccompanied by the word ''Gold'' (for example, ''14 Karat,'' ''14 Kt.,'' or ''14 K.'').

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (c)(1): Use of the term ''Gold'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of a product that is composed throughout of gold alloy, but contains a hollow center or interior, may mislead consumers, unless the fact that the product contains a hollow center is disclosed in immediate proximity to the term ''Gold'' or its abbreviation (for example, ''14 Karat Gold-Hollow Center,'' or ''14 K. Gold Tubing,'' when of a gold alloy tubing of such karat fineness). Such products should not be marked or described as ''solid'' or as being solidly of gold or of a gold alloy. For example, when the composition of such a product is 14 karat gold alloy, it should not be described or marked as either ''14 Kt. Solid Gold'' or as ''Solid 14 Kt. Gold.''

(2) An industry product or part thereof, on which there has been affixed on all significant surfaces, by any process, a coating, electroplating, or deposition by any means, of gold or gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness that is of substantial thickness,[3] and the minimum thickness throughout of which is equivalent to one-half micron (or approximately 20 millionths of an inch) of fine gold,[4] may be marked or described as ''Gold Plate'' or ''Gold Plated,'' or abbreviated, as, for example, G.P. The exact thickness of the plate may be marked on the item, if it is immediately followed by a designation of the karat fineness of the plating which is of equal conspicuousness as the term used (as, for example, ''2 microns 12 K. gold plate'' or ''2μ 12 K. G.P.'' for an item plated with 2 microns of 12 karat gold.)

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (c)(2): If an industry product has a thicker coating or electroplating of gold or gold alloy on some areas than others, the minimum thickness of the plate should be marked.

(3) An industry product or part thereof on which there has been affixed on all significant surfaces by soldering,

[3] The term *substantial thickness* means that all areas of the plating are of such thickness as to assure a durable coverage of the base metal to which it has been affixed. Since industry products include items having surfaces and parts of surfaces that are subject to different degrees of wear, the thickness of plating for all items or for different areas of the surface of individual items does not necessarily have to be uniform.

[4] A product containing 1 micron (otherwise known as 1μ) of 12 karat gold is equivalent to one-half micron of 24 karat gold.

brazing, welding, or other mechanical means, a plating of gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness and of substantial thickness[5] may be marked or described as ''Gold Filled,'' ''Gold Overlay,'' ''Rolled Gold Plate,'' or an adequate abbreviation, when such plating constitutes at least 1/20th of the weight of the metal in the entire article and when the term is immediately preceded by a designation of the karat fineness of the plating which is of equal conspicuousness as the term used (for example, ''14 Karat Gold Filled,'' ''14 Kt. Gold Filled,'' ''14 Kt. G.F.,'' ''14 Kt. Gold Overlay,'' or ''14K. R.G.P.''). When conforming to all such requirements except the specified minimum of 1/20th of the weight of the metal in the entire article, the terms ''Gold Overlay'' and ''Rolled Gold Plate'' may be used when the karat fineness designation is immediately preceded by a fraction accurately disclosing the portion of the weight of the metal in the entire article accounted for by the plating, and when such fraction is of equal conspicuousness as the term used (for example, ''1/40th 12 Kt. Rolled Gold Plate'' or ''1/40 12 Kt. R.G.P.'').

(4) An industry product or part thereof, on which there has been affixed on all significant surfaces by an electrolytic process, an electroplating of gold, or of a gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness, which has a minimum thickness throughout equivalent to .175 microns (approximately $^{7}/_{1,000,000}$ths of an inch) of fine gold, may be marked or described as ''Gold Electroplate'' or ''Gold Electroplated,'' or abbreviated, as, for example, ''G.E.P.'' When the electroplating meets the minimum fineness but not the minimum thickness specified above, the marking or description may be ''Gold Flashed'' or ''Gold Washed.'' When the electroplating is of the minimum fineness specified above and of a minimum thickness throughout equivalent to two and one half (2½) microns (or approximately $^{100}/_{1,000,000}$ths of an inch) of fine gold, the marking or description may be ''Heavy Gold Electroplate'' or ''Heavy Gold Electroplated.'' When electroplatings qualify for the term ''Gold Electroplate'' (or ''Gold Electroplated''), or the term ''Heavy Gold Electroplate'' (or ''Heavy Gold Electroplated''), and have been applied by use of a particular kind of electrolytic process, the marking may be accompanied by identification of the process used, as for example, ''Gold Electroplated (X Process)'' or ''Heavy Gold Electroplated (Y Process).''

(d) The provisions of this section relating to markings and descriptions of industry products and parts thereof are subject to the applicable tolerances of the National Stamping Act or any amendment thereof.[6]

NOTE 4 TO PARAGRAPH (d): Exemptions recognized in the assay of karat gold industry products and in the assay of gold filled, gold overlay, and rolled gold plate industry products, and not to be considered in any assay for quality, are listed in the appendix.

§ 23.5 Misuse of the word "vermeil."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that an industry product is ''vermeil'' if such mark or description misrepresents the product's true composition.

(b) An industry product may be described or marked as ''vermeil'' if it consists of a base of sterling silver coated or plated on all significant surfaces with gold, or gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness, that is of substantial thickness[7] and a minimum thickness throughout equivalent to two and one half (2½) microns (or approximately $^{100}/_{1,000,000}$ths of an inch) of fine gold.

NOTE 1 TO § 23.5: It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''vermeil'' to describe a product in which the sterling silver has been covered with a base metal (such as nickel) plated with gold unless there is a disclosure that the sterling silver is covered with a base metal that is plated with gold.

NOTE 2 TO § 23.5: Exemptions recognized in the assay of gold filled, gold overlay, and rolled gold plate industry products are listed in the appendix.

[5] See footnote 3.

[6] Under the National Stamping Act, articles or parts made of gold or of gold alloy that contain no solder have a permissible tolerance of three parts per thousand. If the part tested contains solder, the permissible tolerance is seven parts per thousand. For full text, see 15 U.S.C. 295, *et seq.*

[7] See footnote 3.

§ 23.6 Misrepresentation as to silver content.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent that an industry product contains silver, or to misrepresent an industry product as having a silver content, plating, electroplating, or coating.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as ''silver,'' ''solid silver,'' ''Sterling Silver,'' ''Sterling,'' or the abbreviation ''Ster.'' unless it is at least $^{925}/_{1,000}$ths pure silver.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as ''coin'' or ''coin silver'' unless it is at least $^{900}/_{1,000}$ths pure silver.

(d) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as being plated or coated with silver unless all significant surfaces of the product or part contain a plating or coating of silver that is of substantial thickness.[8]

(e) The provisions of this section relating to markings and descriptions of industry products and parts thereof are subject to the applicable tolerances of the National Stamping Act or any amendment thereof.[9]

NOTE 1 TO § 23.6: The National Stamping Act provides that silverplated articles shall not ''be stamped, branded, engraved or imprinted with the word 'sterling' or the word 'coin,' either alone or in conjunction with other words or marks.'' 15 U.S.C. 297(a).

NOTE 2 TO § 23.6: Exemptions recognized in the assay of silver industry products are listed in the appendix.

§ 23.7 Misuse of the words "platinum," "iridium," "palladium," "ruthenium," "rhodium," and "osmium."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the words ''platinum,'' ''iridium,'' ''palladium,'' ''ruthenium,'' ''rhodium,'' and ''osmium,'' or any abbreviation to mark or describe all or part of an industry product if such marking or description misrepresents the product's true composition. The Platinum Group Metals (PGM) are Platinum, Iridium, Palladium, Ruthenium, Rhodium, and Osmium.

(b) The following are examples of markings or descriptions that may be misleading:[10]

(1) Use of the word ''Platinum'' or any abbreviation, without qualification, to describe all or part of an industry product that is not composed throughout of 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum.

(2) Use of the word ''Platinum'' or any abbreviation accompanied by a number indicating the parts per thousand of pure Platinum contained in the product without mention of the number of parts per thousand of other PGM contained in the product, to describe all or part of an industry product that is not composed throughout of at least 850 parts per thousand pure platinum, for example, ''600Plat.''

(3) Use of the word ''Platinum'' or any abbreviation thereof, to mark or describe any product that is not composed throughout of at least 500 parts per thousand pure Platinum.

(c) The following are examples of markings and descriptions that are not considered unfair or deceptive:

(1) The following abbreviations for each of the PGM may be used for quality marks on articles: ''Plat.'' or ''Pt.'' for Platinum; ''Irid.'' or ''Ir.'' for Iridium; ''Pall.'' or ''Pd.'' for Palladium; ''Ruth.'' or ''Ru.'' for Ruthenium; ''Rhod.'' or ''Rh.'' for Rhodium; and ''Osmi.'' or ''Os.'' for Osmium.

(2) An industry product consisting of at least 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum may be marked or described as ''Platinum.''

(3) An industry product consisting of 850 parts per thousand pure Platinum, 900 parts per thousand pure Platinum, or 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum may be marked ''Platinum,'' provided that the Platinum marking is preceded by a number indicating the amount in parts per thousand of pure

[8] See footnote 3.

[9] Under the National Stamping Act, sterling silver articles or parts that contain no solder have a permissible tolerance of four parts per thousand. If the part tested contains solder, the permissible tolerance is ten parts per thousand. For full text, see 15 U.S.C. 294, *et seq*.

[10] See paragraph (c) of this section for examples of acceptable markings and descriptions.

Platinum (for industry products consisting of 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum, the marking described in § 23.7(b)(2) above is also appropriate). Thus, the following markings may be used: ''950Pt.,'' ''950Plat.,'' ''900Pt.,'' ''900Plat.,'' ''850Pt.,'' or ''850Plat.''

(4) An industry product consisting of at least 950 parts per thousand PGM, and of at least 500 parts per thousand pure Platinum, may be marked ''Platinum,'' provided that the mark of each PGM constituent is preceded by a number indicating the amount in parts per thousand of each PGM, as for example, ''600Pt.350Ir.,'' ''600Plat.350Irid.,'' or ''550Pt.350Pd.50Ir.,'' ''550Plat.350Pall.50Irid.''

NOTE TO § 23.7: Exemptions recognized in the assay of platinum industry products are listed in appendix A of this part.

[62 FR 16675, Apr. 8, 1997]

§ 23.8 Misrepresentation as to content of pewter.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as ''Pewter'' or any abbreviation if such mark or description misrepresents the product's true composition.

(b) An industry product or part thereof may be described or marked as ''Pewter'' or any abbreviation if it consists of at least 900 parts per 1000 Grade A Tin, with the remainder composed of metals appropriate for use in pewter.

§ 23.9 Additional guidance for the use of quality marks.

As used in these guides, the term *quality mark* means any letter, figure, numeral, symbol, sign, word, or term, or any combination thereof, that has been stamped, embossed, inscribed, or otherwise placed on any industry product and which indicates or suggests that any such product is composed throughout of any precious metal or any precious metal alloy or has a surface or surfaces on which there has been plated or deposited any precious metal or precious metal alloy. Included are the words ''gold,'' ''karat,'' ''carat,'' ''silver,'' ''sterling,'' ''vermeil,'' ''platinum,'' ''iridium,'' ''palladium,'' ''ruthenium,'' ''rhodium,'' or ''osmium,'' or any abbreviations thereof, whether used alone or in conjunction with the words ''filled,'' ''plated,'' ''overlay,'' or ''electroplated,'' or any abbreviations thereof. Quality markings include those in which the words or terms ''gold,'' ''karat,'' ''silver,'' ''vermeil,'' ''platinum'' (or platinum group metals), or their abbreviations are included, either separately or as suffixes, prefixes, or syllables.

(a) *Deception as to applicability of marks.* (1) If a quality mark on an industry product is applicable to only part of the product, the part of the product to which it is applicable (or inapplicable) should be disclosed when, absent such disclosure, the location of the mark misrepresents the product or part's true composition.

(2) If a quality mark is applicable to only part of an industry product, but not another part which is of similar surface appearance, each quality mark should be closely accompanied by an identification of the part or parts to which the mark is applicable.

(b) *Deception by reason of difference in the size of letters or words in a marking or markings.* It is unfair or deceptive to place a quality mark on a product in which the words or letters appear in greater size than other words or letters of the mark, or when different markings placed on the product have different applications and are in different sizes, when the net impression of any such marking would be misleading as to the metallic composition of all or part of the product. (An example of improper marking would be the marking of a gold electroplated product with the word ''electroplate'' in small type and the word ''gold'' in larger type, with the result that purchasers and prospective purchasers of the product might only observe the word ''gold.'')

NOTE 1 TO § 23.9: Legibility of markings. If a quality mark is engraved or stamped on an industry product, or is printed on a tag or label attached to the product, the quality mark should be of sufficient size type as to be legible to persons of normal vision, should be so placed as likely to be observed by purchasers, and should be so attached as to remain thereon until consumer purchase.

NOTE 2 TO § 23.9: Disclosure of identity of manufacturers, processors, or distributors. The National Stamping Act provides that any person, firm, corporation, or association, being a manufacturer or dealer subject to

section 294 of the Act, who applies or causes to be applied a quality mark, or imports any article bearing a quality mark ''which indicates or purports to indicate that such article is made in whole or in part of gold or silver or of an alloy of either metal'' shall apply to the article the trademark or name of such person. 15 U.S.C. 297.

§ 23.10 Misuse of "corrosion proof," "noncorrosive," "corrosion resistant," "rust proof," "rust resistant," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to:

(1) Use the terms ''corrosion proof,'' ''noncorrosive,'' ''rust proof,'' or any other term of similar meaning to describe an industry product unless all parts of the product will be immune from rust and other forms of corrosion during the life expectancy of the product; or

(2) Use the terms ''corrosion resistant,'' ''rust resistant,'' or any other term of similar meaning to describe an industry product unless all parts of the product are of such composition as to not be subject to material damage by corrosion or rust during the major portion of the life expectancy of the product under normal conditions of use.

(b) Among the metals that may be considered as corrosion (and rust) resistant are: Pure nickel; Gold alloys of not less than 10 Kt. fineness; and Austenitic stainless steels.

§ 23.11 Definition and misuse of the word "diamond."

(a) A diamond is a natural mineral consisting essentially of pure carbon crystallized in the isometric system. It is found in many colors. Its hardness is 10; its specific gravity is approximately 3.52; and it has a refractive index of 2.42.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified word ''diamond'' to describe or identify any object or product not meeting the requirements specified in the definition of diamond provided above, or which, though meeting such requirements, has not been symmetrically fashioned with at least seventeen (17) polished facets.

NOTE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (b): It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that industrial grade diamonds or other non-jewelry quality diamonds are of jewelry quality.

(c) The following are examples of descriptions that are not considered unfair or deceptive:

(1) The use of the words ''rough diamond'' to describe or designate uncut or unfaceted objects or products satisfying the definition of diamond provided above; or

(2) The use of the word ''diamond'' to describe or designate objects or products satisfying the definition of diamond but which have not been symmetrically fashioned with at least seventeen (17) polished facets when in immediate conjunction with the word ''diamond'' there is either a disclosure of the number of facets and shape of the diamond or the name of a type of diamond that denotes shape and that usually has less than seventeen (17) facets (e.g., ''rose diamond'').

NOTE 2 TO PARAGRAPH (c): Additional guidance about imitation and laboratory-created diamond representations and misuse of words ''gem,'' ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''natural,'' etc., are set forth in §§ 23.23, 23.24, and 23.25.

§ 23.12 Misuse of the words "flawless," "perfect," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''flawless'' to describe any diamond that discloses flaws, cracks, inclusions, carbon spots, clouds, internal lasering, or other blemishes or imperfections of any sort when examined under a corrected magnifier at 10-power, with adequate illumination, by a person skilled in diamond grading.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''perfect,'' or any representation of similar meaning, to describe any diamond unless the diamond meets the definition of ''flawless'' and is not of inferior color or make.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the words ''flawless'' or ''perfect'' to describe a ring or other article of jewelry having a ''flawless'' or ''perfect'' principal diamond or diamonds, and supplementary stones that are not of such quality, unless there is a disclosure that the description applies only to the principal diamond or diamonds.

§ 23.13 Disclosure of treatments to diamonds

A diamond is a gemstone product. Treatments to diamonds should be disclosed in the manner prescribed in

§ 23.22 of these guides, Disclosure of treatments to gemstones.

[65 FR 78743, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 23.14 Misuse of the term "blue white."

It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''blue white'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any diamond that under normal, north daylight or its equivalent shows any color or any trace of any color other than blue or bluish.

§ 23.15 Misuse of the term "properly cut," etc.

It is unfair or deceptive to use the terms ''properly cut,'' ''proper cut,'' ''modern cut,'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any diamond that is lopsided, or is so thick or so thin in depth as to detract materially from the brilliance of the stone.

NOTE TO § 23.15: Stones that are commonly called ''fisheye'' or ''old mine'' should not be described as ''properly cut,'' ''modern cut,'' etc.

§ 23.16 Misuse of the words "brilliant" and "full cut."

It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified expressions ''brilliant,'' ''brilliant cut,'' or ''full cut'' to describe, identify, or refer to any diamond except a round diamond that has at least thirty-two (32) facets plus the table above the girdle and at least twenty-four (24) facets below.

NOTE TO § 23.16: Such terms should not be applied to single or rose-cut diamonds. They may be applied to emerald-(rectangular) cut, pear-shaped, heart-shaped, oval-shaped, and marquise-(pointed oval) cut diamonds meeting the above-stated facet requirements when, in immediate conjunction with the term used, the form of the diamond is disclosed.

§ 23.17 Misrepresentation of weight and "total weight."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the weight of a diamond.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''point'' or any abbreviation in any representation, advertising, marking, or labeling to describe the weight of a diamond, unless the weight is also stated as decimal parts of a carat (e.g., 25 points or .25 carat).

NOTE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (b): A carat is a standard unit of weight for a diamond and is equivalent to 200 milligrams (⅕ gram). A point is one one hundredth (1/100) of a carat.

(c) If diamond weight is stated as decimal parts of a carat (e.g., .47 carat), the stated figure should be accurate to the last decimal place. If diamond weight is stated to only one decimal place (e.g., .5 carat), the stated figure should be accurate to the second decimal place (e.g., ''.5 carat'' could represent a diamond weight between .495–.504).

(d) If diamond weight is stated as fractional parts of a carat, a conspicuous disclosure of the fact that the diamond weight is not exact should be made in close proximity to the fractional representation and a disclosure of a reasonable range of weight for each fraction (or the weight tolerance being used) should also be made.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (d): When fractional representations of diamond weight are made, as described in paragraph d of this section, in catalogs or other printed materials, the disclosure of the fact that the actual diamond weight is within a specified range should be made conspicuously on every page where a fractional representation is made. Such disclosure may refer to a chart or other detailed explanation of the actual ranges used. For example, ''Diamond weights are not exact; see chart on p.X for ranges.''

§ 23.18 Definitions of various pearls.

As used in these guides, the terms set forth below have the following meanings:

(a) *Pearl:* A calcareous concretion consisting essentially of alternating concentric layers of carbonate of lime and organic material formed within the body of certain mollusks, the result of an abnormal secretory process caused by an irritation of the mantle of the mollusk following the intrusion of some foreign body inside the shell of the mollusk, or due to some abnormal physiological condition in the mollusk, neither of which has in any way been caused or induced by humans.

(b) *Cultured pearl:* The composite product created when a nucleus (usually a sphere of calcareous mollusk shell) planted by humans inside the shell or in the mantle of a mollusk is coated with nacre by the mollusk.

(c) *Imitation pearl:* A manufactured product composed of any material or materials that simulate in appearance a pearl or cultured pearl.

(d) *Seed pearl:* A small pearl, as defined in (a), that measures approximately two millimeters or less.

§ 23.19 Misuse of the word "pearl."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified word ''pearl'' or any other word or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any object or product that is not in fact a pearl, as defined in § 23.18(a).

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''pearl'' to describe, identify, or refer to a cultured pearl unless it is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''cultured'' or ''cultivated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is not a pearl.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''pearl'' to describe, identify, or refer to an imitation pearl unless it is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''artificial,'' ''imitation,'' or ''simulated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is not a pearl.

(d) It is unfair or deceptive to use the terms ''faux pearl,'' ''fashion pearl,'' ''Mother of Pearl,'' or any other such term to describe or qualify an imitation pearl product unless it is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''artificial,'' ''imitation,'' or ''simulated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is not a pearl.

§ 23.20 Misuse of terms such as "cultured pearl," "seed pearl," "Oriental pearl," "natura," "kultured," "real," "gem," "synthetic," and regional designations.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''cultured pearl,'' ''cultivated pearl,'' or any other word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any imitation pearl.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''seed pearl'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to a cultured or an imitation pearl, without using the appropriate qualifying term ''cultured'' (e.g., ''cultured seed pearl'') or ''simulated,'' ''artificial,'' or ''imitation'' (e.g., ''imitation seed pearl'').

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''Oriental pearl'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any industry product other than a pearl taken from a salt water mollusk and of the distinctive appearance and type of pearls obtained from mollusks inhabiting the Persian Gulf and recognized in the jewelry trade as Oriental pearls.

(d) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''Oriental'' to describe, identify, or refer to any cultured or imitation pearl.

(e) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''natura,'' ''natural,'' ''nature's,'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to a cultured or imitation pearl. It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''organic'' to describe, identify, or refer to an imitation pearl, unless the term is qualified in such a way as to make clear that the product is not a natural or cultured pearl.

(f) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''kultured,'' ''semi-cultured pearl,'' ''cultured-like,'' ''part-cultured,'' ''pre-mature cultured pearl,'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to an imitation pearl.

(g) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''South Sea pearl'' unless it describes, identifies, or refers to a pearl that is taken from a salt water mollusk of the Pacific Ocean South Sea Islands, Australia, or Southeast Asia. It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''South Sea cultured pearl'' unless it describes, identifies, or refers to a cultured pearl formed in a salt water mollusk of the Pacific Ocean South Sea Islands, Australia, or Southeast Asia.

(h) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''Biwa cultured pearl'' unless it describes, identifies, or refers to cultured pearls grown in fresh water mollusks in the lakes and rivers of Japan.

(i) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''precious,'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any imitation pearl.

(j) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''gem'' to describe, identify, or refer to a pearl or cultured pearl that does not possess the beauty, symmetry, rarity, and value necessary for qualification as a gem.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (j): Use of the word ''gem'' with respect to cultured pearls should be avoided since few cultured pearls possess the necessary qualifications to properly be termed ''gems.'' Imitation pearls should not be described as ''gems.''

(k) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''synthetic'' or similar terms to describe cultured or imitation pearls.

(l) It is unfair or deceptive to use the terms ''Japanese Pearls,'' ''Chinese Pearls,'' ''Mallorca Pearls,'' or any regional designation to describe, identify, or refer to any cultured or imitation pearl, unless the term is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''cultured,'' ''artificial,'' ''imitation,'' or ''simulated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is a cultured or imitation pearl.

§ 23.21 Misrepresentation as to cultured pearls.

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the manner in which cultured pearls are produced, the size of the nucleus artificially inserted in the mollusk and included in cultured pearls, the length of time that such products remained in the mollusk, the thickness of the nacre coating, the value and quality of cultured pearls as compared with the value and quality of pearls and imitation pearls, or any other material matter relating to the formation, structure, properties, characteristics, and qualities of cultured pearls.

§ 23.22 Disclosure of treatments to gemstones.

It is unfair or deceptive to fail to disclose that a gemstone has been treated if:

(a) The treatment is not permanent. The seller should disclose that the gemstone has been treated and that the treatment is or may not be permanent;

(b) The treatment creates special care requirements for the gemstone. The seller should disclose that the gemstone has been treated and has special care requirements. It is also recommended that the seller disclose the special care requirements to the purchaser;

(c) The treatment has a significant effect on the stone's value. The seller should disclose that the gemstone has been treated.

NOTE TO § 23.22: The disclosures outlined in this section are applicable to sellers at every level of trade, as defined in § 23.0(b) of these Guides, and they may be made at the point of sale prior to sale; except that where a jewelry product can be purchased without personally viewing the product, (e.g., direct mail catalogs, online services, televised shopping programs) disclosure should be made in the solicitation for or description of the product.

[65 FR 78743, Dec. 15, 2000]

§ 23.23 Misuse of the words "ruby," "sapphire," "emerald," "topaz," "stone," "birthstone," "gemstone," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified words ''ruby,'' ''sapphire,'' ''emerald,'' ''topaz,'' or the name of any other precious or semi-precious stone to describe any product that is not in fact a natural stone of the type described.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''ruby,'' ''sapphire,'' ''emerald,'' ''topaz,'' or the name of any other precious or semi-precious stone, or the word ''stone,'' ''birthstone,'' ''gemstone,'' or similar term to describe a laboratory-grown, laboratory-created, [manufacturer name]-created, synthetic, imitation, or simulated stone, unless such word or name is immediately preceded with equal conspicuousness by the word ''laboratory-grown,'' ''laboratory-created,'' ''[manufacturer name]-created,'' ''synthetic,'' or by the word ''imitation'' or ''simulated,'' so as to disclose clearly the nature of the product and the fact it is not a natural gemstone.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (h): The use of the word ''faux'' to describe a laboratory-created or imitation stone is not an adequate disclosure that the stone is not natural.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''laboratory-grown,'' ''laboratory-created,'' ''[manufacturer name]-created,'' or ''synthetic'' with the name of any natural stone to describe any industry product unless such industry product has essentially the same optical, physical, and chemical properties as the stone named.

§ 23.24 Misuse of the words "real," "genuine," "natural," "precious," etc.

It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''natural,'' ''precious,'' ''semi-precious,'' or similar terms to describe any industry product that is manufactured or produced artificially.

§ 23.25 Misuse of the word "gem."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''gem'' to describe, identify, or refer to a ruby, sapphire, emerald, topaz, or other industry product that does not possess the beauty, symmetry, rarity, and value necessary for qualification as a gem.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''gem'' to describe any laboratory-created industry product unless the product meets the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section and unless such word is immediately accompanied, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''laboratory-grown,'' ''laboratory-created,'' or ''[manufacturer-name]-created,'' ''synthetic,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to clearly disclose that it is not a natural gem.

NOTE TO § 23.25: In general, use of the word ''gem'' with respect to laboratory-created stones should be avoided since few laboratory-created stones possess the necessary qualifications to properly be termed ''gems.'' Imitation diamonds and other imitation stones should not be described as ''gems.'' Not all diamonds or natural stones, including those classified as precious stones, possess the necessary qualifications to be properly termed ''gems.''

§ 23.26 Misuse of the words "flawless," "perfect," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''flawless'' as a quality description of any gemstone that discloses blemishes, inclusions, or clarity faults of any sort when examined under a corrected magnifier at 10-power, with adequate illumination, by a person skilled in gemstone grading.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''perfect'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any gemstone unless the gemstone meets the definition of ''flawless'' and is not of inferior color or make.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''flawless,'' ''perfect,'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any imitation gemstone.

APPENDIX TO PART 23—EXEMPTIONS RECOGNIZED IN THE ASSAY FOR QUALITY OF GOLD ALLOY, GOLD FILLED, GOLD OVERLAY, ROLLED GOLD PLATE, SILVER, AND PLATINUM INDUSTRY PRODUCTS

(a) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a karat gold industry product include springs, posts, and separable backs of lapel buttons, posts and nuts for attaching interchangeable ornaments, metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering, field pieces and bezels for lockets,[1] and wire pegs or rivets used for applying mountings and other ornaments, which mountings or ornaments shall be of the quality marked.

NOTE: Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a karat gold optical product include: the hinge assembly (barrel or other special types such as are customarily used in plastic frames); washers, bushings, and nuts of screw assemblies; dowels; springs for spring shoe straps; metal parts permanently encased in a non-metallic covering; and for oxfords,[2] coil and joint springs.

(b) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a gold filled, gold overlay and rolled gold plate industry product, other than watchcases, include joints, catches, screws, pin stems, pins of scarf pins, hat pins, etc., field pieces and bezels for lockets, posts and separate backs of lapel buttons, bracelet and necklace snap tongues, springs,

[1] Field pieces of lockets are those inner portions used as frames between the inside edges of the locket and the spaces for holding pictures. Bezels are the separable inner metal rings to hold the pictures in place.

[2] Oxfords are a form of eyeglasses where a flat spring joins the two eye rims and the tension it exerts on the nose serves to hold the unit in place. Oxfords are also referred to as pince nez.

and metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering.

NOTE: Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a gold filled, gold overlay and rolled gold plate optical product include: screws; the hinge assembly (barrel or other special types such as are customarily used in plastic frames); washers, bushings, tubes and nuts of screw assemblies; dowels; pad inserts; springs for spring shoe straps, cores and/or inner windings of comfort cable temples; metal parts permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering; and for oxfords, the handle and catch.

(c) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a silver industry product include screws, rivets, springs, spring pins for wrist watch straps; posts and separable backs of lapel buttons; wire pegs, posts, and nuts used for applying mountings or other ornaments, which mountings or ornaments shall be of the quality marked; pin stems (e.g., of badges, brooches, emblem pins, hat pins, and scarf pins, etc.); levers for belt buckles; blades and skeletons of pocket knives; field pieces and bezels for lockets; bracelet and necklace snap tongues; any other joints, catches, or screws; and metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering.

(d) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of an industry product of silver in combination with gold include joints, catches, screws, pin stems, pins of scarf pins, hat pins, etc., posts and separable backs of lapel buttons, springs, and metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering.

(e) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a platinum industry product include springs, winding bars, sleeves, crown cores, mechanical joint pins, screws, rivets, dust bands, detachable movement rims, hatpin stems, and bracelet and necklace snap tongues. In addition, the following exemptions are recognized for products marked in accordance with section 23.8(b)(5) of these Guides (i.e., products that are less than 500 parts per thousand platinum): pin tongues, joints, catches, lapel button backs and the posts to which they are attached, scarf-pin stems, hat pin sockets, shirt-stud backs, vest-button backs, and ear-screw backs, provided such parts are made of the same quality platinum as is used in the balance of the article.

PART 24—GUIDES FOR SELECT LEATHER AND IMITATION LEATHER PRODUCTS

Sec.
24.0 Scope and purpose of guides.
24.1 Deception (general).
24.2 Deception as to composition.
24.3 Misuse of the terms ''waterproof,'' ''dustproof,'' ''warpproof,'' ''scuffproof,'' ''scratchproof,'' ''scuff resistant,'' or ''scratch resistant.''

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 61 FR 51583, Oct. 3, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 24.0 Scope and purpose of guides.

(a) The Guides in this part apply to the manufacture, sale, distribution, marketing, or advertising of all kinds or types of leather or simulated-leather trunks, suitcases, traveling bags, sample cases, instrument cases, brief cases, ring binders, billfolds, wallets, key cases, coin purses, card cases, French purses, dressing cases, stud boxes, tie cases, jewel boxes, travel kits, gadget bags, camera bags, ladies' handbags, shoulder bags, purses, pocketbooks, footwear, belts (when not sold as part of a garment) and similar articles (hereinafter, ''industry products'').

(b) These Guides represent administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Federal Trade Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. These Guides specifically address the application of section 5 of the FTC Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to the manufacture, sale, distribution, marketing, and advertising of industry products listed in paragraph (a) of this section. They provide the basis for voluntary compliance with such laws by members of industry. Conduct inconsistent with the positions articulated in these Guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under section 5 if, after investigation, the Commission has reason to believe that the behavior falls within the scope of conduct declared unlawful by the statute.

§ 24.1 Deception (general).

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, the

kind, grade, quality, quantity, material content, thickness, finish, serviceability, durability, price, origin, size, weight, ease of cleaning, construction, manufacture, processing, distribution, or any other material aspect of an industry product.

§ 24.2 Deception as to composition.

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, the composition of any industry product or part thereof. It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified term ''leather'' or other unqualified terms suggestive of leather to describe industry products unless the industry product so described is composed in all substantial parts of leather.[1] This section includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(a) *Imitation or simulated leather*. If all or part of an industry product is made of non-leather material that appears to be leather, the fact that the material is not leather, or the general nature of the material as something other than leather, should be disclosed. For example: Not leather; Imitation leather; Simulated leather; Vinyl; Vinyl coated fabric; or Plastic.

(b) *Embossed or processed leather*. The kind and type of leather from which an industry product is made should be disclosed when all or part of the product has been embossed, dyed, or otherwise processed so as to simulate the appearance of a different kind or type of leather. For example:

(1) An industry product made wholly of top grain cowhide that has been processed so as to imitate pigskin may be represented as being made of Top Grain Cowhide.

(2) Any additional representation concerning the simulated appearance of an industry product composed of leather should be immediately accompanied by a disclosure of the kind and type of leather in the product. For example: Top Grain Cowhide With Simulated Pigskin Grain.

(c) *Backing material*. (1) The backing of any material in an industry product with another kind of material should be disclosed when the backing is not apparent upon casual inspection of the product, or when a representation is made which, absent such disclosure, would be misleading as to the product's composition. For example: Top Grain Cowhide Backed With Vinyl.

(2) The composition of the different backing material should be disclosed if it is visible and consists of non-leather material with the appearance of leather, or leather processed so as to simulate a different kind of leather.

(d) *Misuse of trade names, etc.* A trade name, coined name, trademark, or other word or term, or any depiction or device should not be used if it misrepresents, directly or by implication, that an industry product is made in whole or in part from animal skin or hide, or that material in an industry product is leather or other material. This includes, among other practices, the use of a stamp, tag, label, card, or other device in the shape of a tanned hide or skin or in the shape of a silhouette of an animal, in connection with any industry product that has the appearance of leather but that is not made wholly or in substantial part from animal skin or hide.

(e) *Misrepresentation that product is wholly of a particular composition*. A misrepresentation should not be made, directly or by implication, that an industry product is made wholly of a particular composition. A representation as to the composition of a particular part of a product should clearly indicate the part to which the representation applies.[2] Where a product is made principally of leather but has certain non-leather parts that appear to be leather, the product may be described

[1] For purposes of these Guides, footwear is composed of three parts: the upper, the lining and sock, and the outersole. These three parts are defined as follows: (1) The upper is the outer face of the structural element which is attached to the outersole; (2) the lining and sock are the lining of the upper and the insole, constituting the inside of the footwear article; and (3) the outersole is the bottom part of the footwear article subjected to abrasive wear and attached to the upper.

[2] With regard to footwear, it is sufficient to disclose the presence of non-leather materials in the upper, the lining and sock, or the outersole, provided that the disclosure is made according to predominance of materials. For example, if the majority of the upper is composed of manmade material: Upper of manmade materials and leather.

as made of leather so long as accompanied by clear disclosure of the non-leather parts. For example:

(1) An industry product made of top grain cowhide except for frame covering, gussets, and partitions that are made of plastic but have the appearance of leather may be described as: Top Grain Cowhide With Plastic Frame Covering, Gussets and Partitions; or Top Grain Cowhide With Gussets, Frame Covering and Partitions Made of Non-Leather Material.

(2) An industry product made throughout, except for hardware, of vinyl backed with cowhide may be described as: Vinyl Backed With Cowhide (See also disclosure provision concerning use of backing material in paragraph (c) of this section).

(3) An industry product made of top grain cowhide except for partitions and stay, which are made of plastic-coated fabric but have the appearance of leather, may be described as: Top Grain Cowhide With Partitions and Stay Made of Non-leather Material; or Top Grain Cowhide With Partitions and Stay Made of Plastic-Coated Fabric.

(f) *Ground, pulverized, shredded, reconstituted, or bonded leather.* A material in an industry product that contains ground, pulverized, shredded, reconstituted, or bonded leather and thus is not wholly the hide of an animal should not be represented, directly or by implication, as being leather. This provision does not preclude an accurate representation as to the ground, pulverized, shredded, reconstituted, or bonded leather content of the material. However, if the material appears to be leather, it should be accompanied by either:

(1) An adequate disclosure as described by paragraph (a) of this section; or

(2) If the terms ''ground leather,'' ''pulverized leather,'' ''shredded leather,'' ''reconstituted leather,'' or ''bonded leather'' are used, a disclosure of the percentage of leather fibers and the percentage of non-leather substances contained in the material. For example: An industry product made of a composition material consisting of 60% shredded leather fibers may be described as: Bonded Leather Containing 60% Leather Fibers and 40% Non-leather Substances.

(g) *Form of disclosures under this section.* All disclosures described in this section should appear in the form of a stamping on the product, or on a tag, label, or card attached to the product, and should be affixed so as to remain on or attached to the product until received by the consumer purchaser. All such disclosures should also appear in all advertising of such products irrespective of the media used whenever statements, representations, or depictions appear in such advertising which, absent such disclosures, serve to create a false impression that the products, or parts thereof, are of a certain kind of composition. The disclosures affixed to products and made in advertising should be of such conspicuousness and clarity as to be noted by purchasers and prospective purchasers casually inspecting the products or casually reading, or listening to, such advertising. A disclosure necessitated by a particular representation should be in close conjunction with the representation.

§ 24.3 Misuse of the terms "waterproof," "dustproof," "warpproof," "scuffproof," "scratchproof," "scuff resistant," and "scratch resistant."

It is unfair or deceptive to:

(a) Use the term ''Waterproof'' to describe all or part of an industry product unless the designated product or material prevents water from contact with its contents under normal conditions of intended use during the anticipated life of the product or material.

(b) Use the term ''Dustproof'' to describe an industry product unless the product is so constructed that when it is closed dust cannot enter it.

(c) Use the term ''Warpproof'' to describe all or part of an industry product unless the designated product or part is such that it cannot warp.

(d) Use the term ''Scuffproof,'' ''Scratchproof,'' or other terms indicating that the product is not subject to wear in any other respect, to describe an industry product unless the outside surface of the product is immune to scratches or scuff marks, or is not subject to wear as represented.

(e) Use the term ''Scuff Resistant,'' ''Scratch Resistant,'' or other terms

indicating that the product is resistant to wear in any other respect, unless there is a basis for the representation and the outside surface of the product is meaningfully and significantly resistant to scuffing, scratches, or to wear as represented.

PARTS 25–227 [RESERVED]

PART 233—GUIDES AGAINST DECEPTIVE PRICING

Sec.
233.1 Former price comparisons.
233.2 Retail price comparisons; comparable value comparisons.
233.3 Advertising retail prices which have been established or suggested by manufacturers (or other nonretail distributors).
233.4 Bargain offers based upon the purchase of other merchandise.
233.5 Miscellaneous price comparisons.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 32 FR 15534, Nov. 8, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

§ 233.1 Former price comparisons.

(a) One of the most commonly used forms of bargain advertising is to offer a reduction from the advertiser's own former price for an article. If the former price is the actual, bona fide price at which the article was offered to the public on a regular basis for a reasonably substantial period of time, it provides a legitimate basis for the advertising of a price comparison. Where the former price is genuine, the bargain being advertised is a true one. If, on the other hand, the former price being advertised is not bona fide but fictitious—for example, where an artificial, inflated price was established for the purpose of enabling the subsequent offer of a large reduction—the ''bargain'' being advertised is a false one; the purchaser is not receiving the unusual value he expects. In such a case, the ''reduced'' price is, in reality, probably just the seller's regular price.

(b) A former price is not necessarily fictitious merely because no sales at the advertised price were made. The advertiser should be especially careful, however, in such a case, that the price is one at which the product was openly and actively offered for sale, for a reasonably substantial period of time, in the recent, regular course of his business, honestly and in good faith—and, of course, not for the purpose of establishing a fictitious higher price on which a deceptive comparison might be based. And the advertiser should scrupulously avoid any implication that a former price is a selling, not an asking price (for example, by use of such language as, ''Formerly sold at $_____''), unless substantial sales at that price were actually made.

(c) The following is an example of a price comparison based on a fictitious former price. John Doe is a retailer of Brand X fountain pens, which cost him $5 each. His usual markup is 50 percent over cost; that is, his regular retail price is $7.50. In order subsequently to offer an unusual ''bargain'', Doe begins offering Brand X at $10 per pen. He realizes that he will be able to sell no, or very few, pens at this inflated price. But he doesn't care, for he maintains that price for only a few days. Then he ''cuts'' the price to its usual level—$7.50—and advertises: ''Terrific Bargain: X Pens, Were $10, Now Only $7.50!'' This is obviously a false claim. The advertised ''bargain'' is not genuine.

(d) Other illustrations of fictitious price comparisons could be given. An advertiser might use a price at which he never offered the article at all; he might feature a price which was not used in the regular course of business, or which was not used in the recent past but at some remote period in the past, without making disclosure of that fact; he might use a price that was not openly offered to the public, or that was not maintained for a reasonable length of time, but was immediately reduced.

(e) If the former price is set forth in the advertisement, whether accompanied or not by descriptive terminology such as ''Regularly,'' ''Usually,'' ''Formerly,'' etc., the advertiser should make certain that the former price is not a fictitious one. If the former price, or the amount or percentage of reduction, is not stated in the advertisement, as when the ad merely states, ''Sale,'' the advertiser must take care that the amount of reduction

is not so insignificant as to be meaningless. It should be sufficiently large that the consumer, if he knew what it was, would believe that a genuine bargain or saving was being offered. An advertiser who claims that an item has been ''Reduced to $9.99,'' when the former price was $10, is misleading the consumer, who will understand the claim to mean that a much greater, and not merely nominal, reduction was being offered. [Guide I]

§ 233.2 Retail price comparisons; comparable value comparisons.

(a) Another commonly used form of bargain advertising is to offer goods at prices lower than those being charged by others for the same merchandise in the advertiser's trade area (the area in which he does business). This may be done either on a temporary or a permanent basis, but in either case the advertised higher price must be based upon fact, and not be fictitious or misleading. Whenever an advertiser represents that he is selling below the prices being charged in his area for a particular article, he should be reasonably certain that the higher price he advertises does not appreciably exceed the price at which substantial sales of the article are being made in the area—that is, a sufficient number of sales so that a consumer would consider a reduction from the price to represent a genuine bargain or saving. Expressed another way, if a number of the principal retail outlets in the area are regularly selling Brand X fountain pens at $10, it is not dishonest for retailer Doe to advertise: ''Brand X Pens, Price Elsewhere $10, Our Price $7.50''.

(b) The following example, however, illustrates a misleading use of this advertising technique. Retailer Doe advertises Brand X pens as having a ''Retail Value $15.00, My Price $7.50,'' when the fact is that only a few small suburban outlets in the area charge $15. All of the larger outlets located in and around the main shopping areas charge $7.50, or slightly more or less. The advertisement here would be deceptive, since the price charged by the small suburban outlets would have no real significance to Doe's customers, to whom the advertisement of ''Retail Value $15.00'' would suggest a prevailing, and not merely an isolated and unrepresentative, price in the area in which they shop.

(c) A closely related form of bargain advertising is to offer a reduction from the prices being charged either by the advertiser or by others in the advertiser's trade area for other merchandise of like grade and quality—in other words, comparable or competing merchandise—to that being advertised. Such advertising can serve a useful and legitimate purpose when it is made clear to the consumer that a comparison is being made with other merchandise and the other merchandise is, in fact, of essentially similar quality and obtainable in the area. The advertiser should, however, be reasonably certain, just as in the case of comparisons involving the same merchandise, that the price advertised as being the price of comparable merchandise does not exceed the price at which such merchandise is being offered by representative retail outlets in the area. For example, retailer Doe advertises Brand X pen as having ''Comparable Value $15.00''. Unless a reasonable number of the principal outlets in the area are offering Brand Y, an essentially similar pen, for that price, this advertisement would be deceptive. [Guide II]

§ 233.3 Advertising retail prices which have been established or suggested by manufacturers (or other nonretail distributors).

(a) Many members of the purchasing public believe that a manufacturer's list price, or suggested retail price, is the price at which an article is generally sold. Therefore, if a reduction from this price is advertised, many people will believe that they are being offered a genuine bargain. To the extent that list or suggested retail prices do not in fact correspond to prices at which a substantial number of sales of the article in question are made, the advertisement of a reduction may mislead the consumer.

(b) There are many methods by which manufacturers' suggested retail or list prices are advertised: Large scale (often nationwide) mass-media advertising by the manufacturer himself; preticketing by the manufacturer; direct mail advertising; distribution of

promotional material or price lists designed for display to the public. The mechanics used are not of the essence. This part is concerned with any means employed for placing such prices before the consuming public.

(c) There would be little problem of deception in this area if all products were invariably sold at the retail price set by the manufacturer. However, the widespread failure to observe manufacturers' suggested or list prices, and the advent of retail discounting on a wide scale, have seriously undermined the dependability of list prices as indicators of the exact prices at which articles are in fact generally sold at retail. Changing competitive conditions have created a more acute problem of deception than may have existed previously. Today, only in the rare case are all sales of an article at the manufacturer's suggested retail or list price.

(d) But this does not mean that all list prices are fictitious and all offers of reductions from list, therefore, deceptive. Typically, a list price is a price at which articles are sold, if not everywhere, then at least in the principal retail outlets which do not conduct their business on a discount basis. It will not be deemed fictitious if it is the price at which substantial (that is, not isolated or insignificant) sales are made in the advertiser's trade area (the area in which he does business). Conversely, if the list price is significantly in excess of the highest price at which substantial sales in the trade area are made, there is a clear and serious danger of the consumer being misled by an advertised reduction from this price.

(e) This general principle applies whether the advertiser is a national or regional manufacturer (or other nonretail distributor), a mail-order or catalog distributor who deals directly with the consuming public, or a local retailer. But certain differences in the responsibility of these various types of businessmen should be noted. A retailer competing in a local area has at least a general knowledge of the prices being charged in his area. Therefore, before advertising a manufacturer's list price as a basis for comparison with his own lower price, the retailer should ascertain whether the list price is in fact the price regularly charged by principal outlets in his area.

(f) In other words, a retailer who advertises a manufacturer's or distributor's suggested retail price should be careful to avoid creating a false impression that he is offering a reduction from the price at which the product is generally sold in his trade area. If a number of the principal retail outlets in the area are regularly engaged in making sales at the manufacturer's suggested price, that price may be used in advertising by one who is selling at a lower price. If, however, the list price is being followed only by, for example, small suburban stores, house-to-house canvassers, and credit houses, accounting for only an insubstantial volume of sales in the area, advertising of the list price would be deceptive.

(g) On the other hand, a manufacturer or other distributor who does business on a large regional or national scale cannot be required to police or investigate in detail the prevailing prices of his articles throughout so large a trade area. If he advertises or disseminates a list or preticketed price in good faith (i.e., as an honest estimate of the actual retail price) which does not appreciably exceed the highest price at which substantial sales are made in his trade area, he will not be chargeable with having engaged in a deceptive practice. Consider the following example:

(h) Manufacturer Roe, who makes Brand X pens and sells them throughout the United States, advertises his pen in a national magazine as having a ''Suggested Retail Price $10,'' a price determined on the basis of a market survey. In a substantial number of representative communities, the principal retail outlets are selling the product at this price in the regular course of business and in substantial volume. Roe would not be considered to have advertised a fictitious ''suggested retail price.'' If retailer Doe does business in one of these communities, he would not be guilty of a deceptive practice by advertising, ''Brand X Pens, Manufacturer's Suggested Retail Price, $10, Our Price, $7.50.''

(i) It bears repeating that the manufacturer, distributor or retailer must in every case act honestly and in good

faith in advertising a list price, and not with the intention of establishing a basis, or creating an instrumentality, for a deceptive comparison in any local or other trade area. For instance, a manufacturer may not affix price tickets containing inflated prices as an accommodation to particular retailers who intend to use such prices as the basis for advertising fictitious price reductions. [Guide III]

§ 233.4 Bargain offers based upon the purchase of other merchandise.

(a) Frequently, advertisers choose to offer bargains in the form of additional merchandise to be given a customer on the condition that he purchase a particular article at the price usually offered by the advertiser. The forms which such offers may take are numerous and varied, yet all have essentially the same purpose and effect. Representative of the language frequently employed in such offers are ''Free,'' ''Buy One—Get One Free,'' ''2-For-1 Sale,'' ''Half Price Sale,'' ''1¢ Sale,'' ''50% Off,'' etc. Literally, of course, the seller is not offering anything ''free'' (i.e., an unconditional gift), or ½ free, or for only 1¢, when he makes such an offer, since the purchaser is required to purchase an article in order to receive the ''free'' or ''1¢'' item. It is important, therefore, that where such a form of offer is used, care be taken not to mislead the consumer.

(b) Where the seller, in making such an offer, increases his regular price of the article required to be bought, or decreases the quantity and quality of that article, or otherwise attaches strings (other than the basic condition that the article be purchased in order for the purchaser to be entitled to the ''free'' or ''1¢'' additional merchandise) to the offer, the consumer may be deceived.

(c) Accordingly, whenever a ''free,'' ''2-for-1,'' ''half price sale,'' ''1¢ sale,'' ''50% off'' or similar type of offer is made, all the terms and conditions of the offer should be made clear at the outset. [Guide IV]

§ 233.5 Miscellaneous price comparisons.

The practices covered in the provisions set forth above represent the most frequently employed forms of bargain advertising. However, there are many variations which appear from time to time and which are, in the main, controlled by the same general principles. For example, retailers should not advertise a retail price as a ''wholesale'' price. They should not represent that they are selling at ''factory'' prices when they are not selling at the prices paid by those purchasing directly from the manufacturer. They should not offer seconds or imperfect or irregular merchandise at a reduced price without disclosing that the higher comparative price refers to the price of the merchandise if perfect. They should not offer an advance sale under circumstances where they do not in good faith expect to increase the price at a later date, or make a ''limited'' offer which, in fact, is not limited. In all of these situations, as well as in others too numerous to mention, advertisers should make certain that the bargain offer is genuine and truthful. Doing so will serve their own interest as well as that of the public. [Guide V]

PART 238—GUIDES AGAINST BAIT ADVERTISING

Sec.
238.0 Bait advertising defined.
238.1 Bait advertisement.
238.2 Initial offer.
238.3 Discouragement of purchase of advertised merchandise.
238.4 Switch after sale.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 32 FR 15540, Nov. 8, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

§ 238.0 Bait advertising defined.[1]

Bait advertising is an alluring but insincere offer to sell a product or service which the advertiser in truth does not intend or want to sell. Its purpose is to switch consumers from buying the advertised merchandise, in order to sell something else, usually at a higher price or on a basis more advantageous to the advertiser. The primary aim of a bait advertisement is to obtain leads as

[1] For the purpose of this part ''advertising'' includes any form of public notice however disseminated or utilized.

to persons interested in buying merchandise of the type so advertised.

§ 238.1 Bait advertisement.

No advertisement containing an offer to sell a product should be published when the offer is not a bona fide effort to sell the advertised product. [Guide 1]

§ 238.2 Initial offer.

(a) No statement or illustration should be used in any advertisement which creates a false impression of the grade, quality, make, value, currency of model, size, color, usability, or origin of the product offered, or which may otherwise misrepresent the product in such a manner that later, on disclosure of the true facts, the purchaser may be switched from the advertised product to another.

(b) Even though the true facts are subsequently made known to the buyer, the law is violated if the first contact or interview is secured by deception. [Guide 2]

§ 238.3 Discouragement of purchase of advertised merchandise.

No act or practice should be engaged in by an advertiser to discourage the purchase of the advertised merchandise as part of a bait scheme to sell other merchandise. Among acts or practices which will be considered in determining if an advertisement is a bona fide offer are:

(a) The refusal to show, demonstrate, or sell the product offered in accordance with the terms of the offer,

(b) The disparagement by acts or words of the advertised product or the disparagement of the guarantee, credit terms, availability of service, repairs or parts, or in any other respect, in connection with it,

(c) The failure to have available at all outlets listed in the advertisement a sufficient quantity of the advertised product to meet reasonably anticipated demands, unless the advertisement clearly and adequately discloses that supply is limited and/or the merchandise is available only at designated outlets,

(d) The refusal to take orders for the advertised merchandise to be delivered within a reasonable period of time,

(e) The showing or demonstrating of a product which is defective, unusable or impractical for the purpose represented or implied in the advertisement,

(f) Use of a sales plan or method of compensation for salesmen or penalizing salesmen, designed to prevent or discourage them from selling the advertised product. [Guide 3]

§ 238.4 Switch after sale.

No practice should be pursued by an advertiser, in the event of sale of the advertised product, of ''unselling'' with the intent and purpose of selling other merchandise in its stead. Among acts or practices which will be considered in determining if the initial sale was in good faith, and not a strategem to sell other merchandise, are:

(a) Accepting a deposit for the advertised product, then switching the purchaser to a higher-priced product,

(b) Failure to make delivery of the advertised product within a reasonable time or to make a refund,

(c) Disparagement by acts or words of the advertised product, or the disparagement of the guarantee, credit terms, availability of service, repairs, or in any other respect, in connection with it,

(d) The delivery of the advertised product which is defective, unusable or impractical for the purpose represented or implied in the advertisement. [Guide 4]

NOTE: *Sales of advertised merchandise.* Sales of the advertised merchandise do not preclude the existence of a bait and switch scheme. It has been determined that, on occasions, this is a mere incidental byproduct of the fundamental plan and is intended to provide an aura of legitimacy to the overall operation.

PART 239—GUIDES FOR THE ADVERTISING OF WARRANTIES AND GUARANTEES

Sec.

239.1 Purpose and scope of the guides.
239.2 Disclosures in warranty or guarantee advertising.
239.3 ''Satisfaction Guarantees'' and similar representations in advertising; disclosure in advertising that mentions ''satisfaction guarantees'' or similar representations.

239.4 ''Lifetime'' and similar representations.
239.5 Performance of warranties or guarantees.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719 as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 50 FR 18470, May 1, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§ 239.1 Purpose and scope of the guides.

The Guides for the Advertising of Warranties and Guarantees are intended to help advertisers avoid unfair or deceptive practices in the advertising of warranties or guarantees. The Guides are based upon Commission cases, and reflect changes in circumstances brought about by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act (15 U.S.C. 2301 *et seq.*) and the FTC Rules promulgated pursuant to the Act (16 CFR parts 701 and 702). The Guides do not purport to anticipate all possible unfair or deceptive acts or practices in the advertising of warranties or guarantees and the Guides should not be interpreted to limit the Commission's authority to proceed against such acts or practices under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act. The Commission may bring an action under section 5 against any advertiser who misrepresents the product or service offered, who misrepresents the terms or conditions of the warranty offered, or who employs other deceptive or unfair means.

Section 239.2 of the Guides applies only to advertisements for written warranties on consumer products, as ''written warranty'' and ''consumer product'' are defined in the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, that are covered by the Rule on Pre-Sale Availability or Written Warranty Terms, 16 CFR part 702. The other sections of the Guides apply to the advertising of any warranty or guarantee.

[50 FR 18470, May 1, 1985; 50 FR 20899, May 21, 1985]

§ 239.2 Disclosures in warranty or guarantee advertising.

(a) If an advertisement mentions a warranty or guarantee that is offered on the advertised product, the advertisement should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, that prior to sale, at the place where the product is sold, prospective purchasers can see the written warranty or guarantee for complete details of the warranty coverage.[1]

Examples: The following are examples of disclosures sufficient to convey to prospective purchasers that, prior to sale, at the place where the product is sold, they can see the written warranty or guarantee for complete details of the warranty coverage. These examples are for both print and broadcast advertising. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive. In each example, the portion of the advertisement that mentions the warranty or guarantee is in regular type and the disclosure is in italics.

A. ''The XYZ washing machine is backed by our limited 1 year warranty. *For complete details, see our warranty at a dealer near you.*''

B. ''The XYZ bicycle is warranted for 5 years. *Some restrictions may apply. See a copy of our warranty wherever XYZ products are sold.*''

C. ''We offer the best guarantee in the business. *Read the details and compare wherever our fine products are sold.*''

D. ''*See our full 2 year warranty at the store nearest you.*''

E. ''Don't take our word—take our warranty. *See our limited 2 year warranty where you shop.*''

(b) If an advertisement in any catalogue, or in any other solicitation[2] for mail order sales or for telephone order sales mentions a warranty or guarantee that is offered on the advertised product, the advertisement should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, that prospective purchasers can obtain complete details of the written warranty or guarantee free from the seller upon specific written request or from the catalogue or other solicitation (whichever is applicable).

Examples: The following are examples of disclosures sufficient to convey to consumers how they can obtain complete details of the

[1] In television advertising, the Commission will regard any disclosure of the pre-sale availability of warranties as complying with this Guide if the advertisement makes the necessary disclosure simultaneously with or immediately following the warranty claim and the disclosure is made in the audio portion, or, if in the video portion, it remains on the screen for at least five seconds.

[2] See note 1.

written warranty or guarantee prior to placing a mail or telephone order. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive. In each example, the portion of the advertisement that mentions the warranty or guarantee is in regular typeface and the disclosure is in italics.

A. ''ABC quality cutlery is backed by our 10 year warranty. *Write to us for a free copy at: (address).*''

B. ''ABC power tools are guaranteed. *Read about our limited 90 day warranty in this catalogue.*''

C. ''*Write to us for a free copy of our full warranty*. You'll be impressed how we stand behind our product.''

[50 FR 20899, May 21, 1985]

§ 239.3 "Satisfaction Guarantees" and similar representations in advertising; disclosure in advertising that mentions "satisfaction guarantees" or similar representations.

(a) A seller or manufacturer should use the terms ''Satisfaction Guarantee,'' ''Money Back Guarantee,'' ''Free Trial Offer,'' or similar representations in advertising only if the seller or manufacturer, as the case may be, refunds the full purchase price of the advertised product at the purchaser's request.

(b) An advertisement that mentions a ''Satisfaction Guarantee'' or a similar representation should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, any material limitations or conditions that apply to the ''Satisfaction Guarantee'' or similar representation.

Examples: These examples are for both print and broadcast advertising. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive.

Example A: (In an advertisement mentioning a satisfaction guarantee that is conditioned upon return of the unused portion within 30 days) ''We guarantee your satisfaction. If not completely satisfied with Acme Spot Remover, return the unused portion within 30 days for a full refund.''

Example B: (In an advertisement mentioning a money back guarantee that is conditioned upon return of the product in its original packaging) ''Money Back Guarantee! Just return the ABC watch in its original package and ABC will fully refund your money.''

§ 239.4 "Lifetime" and similar representations.

If an advertisement uses ''lifetime,'' ''life,'' or similar representations to describe the duration of a warranty or guarantee, then the advertisement should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, the life to which the representation refers.

Examples: These examples are for both print and broadcast advertising. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive.

Example A: (In an advertisement mentioning a lifetime guarantee on an automobile muffler where the duration of the guarantee is measured by the life of the car in which it is installed) ''Our lifetime guarantee on the Whisper Muffler protects you for as long as your car runs—even if you sell it, trade it, or give it away!''

Example B: (In an advertisement mentioning a lifetime guarantee on a battery where the duration of the warranty is for as long as the original purchaser owns the car in which it was installed) ''Our battery is backed by our lifetime guarantee. Good for as long as you own the car!''

§ 239.5 Performance of warranties or guarantees.

A seller or manufacturer should advertise that a product is warranted or guaranteed only if the seller or manufacturer, as the case may be, promptly and fully performs its obligations under the warranty or guarantee.

PART 240—GUIDES FOR ADVERTISING ALLOWANCES AND OTHER MERCHANDISING PAYMENTS AND SERVICES

Sec.

240.1 Purpose of the Guides.
240.2 Applicability of the law.
240.3 Definition of seller.
240.4 Definition of customer.
240.5 Definition of competing customers.
240.6 Interstate commerce.
240.7 Services or facilities.
240.8 Need for a plan.
240.9 Proportionally equal terms.
240.10 Availability to all competing customers.
240.11 Wholesaler or third party performance of seller's obligations.
240.12 Checking customer's use of payments.
240.13 Customer's and third party liability.
240.14 Meeting competition.
240.15 Cost justification.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46; 49 Stat. 1526; 15 U.S.C. 13, as amended.

SOURCE: 55 FR 33663, Aug. 17, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

§ 240.1 Purpose of the Guides.

The purpose of these Guides is to provide assistance to businesses seeking to comply with sections 2 (d) and (e) of the Robinson-Patman Act (the ''Act''). The guides are based on the language of the statute, the legislative history, administrative and court decisions, and the purposes of the Act. Although the Guides are consistent with the case law, the Commission has sought to provide guidance in some areas where no definitive guidance is provided by the case law. The Guides are what their name implies—guidelines for compliance with the law. They do not have the force of law.

§ 240.2 Applicability of the law.

(a) The substantive provisions of section 2 (d) and (e) apply only under certain circumstances. Section 2(d) applies only to:

(1) A seller of products

(2) Engaged in interstate commerce

(3) That either directly or through an intermediary

(4) Pays a customer for promotional services or facilities provided by the customer

(5) In connection with the resale (not the initial sale between the seller and the customer) of the seller's products

(6) Where the customer is in competition with one or more of the seller's other customers also engaged in the resale of the seller's products of like grade and quality.

(b) Section 2(e) applies only to:

(1) A seller of products

(2) Engaged in interstate commerce

(3) That either directly or through an intermediary

(4) Furnishes promotional services or facilities to a customer

(5) In connection with the resale (not the initial sale between the seller and the customer) of the seller's products

(6) Where the customer is in competition with one or more of the seller's other customers also engaged in the resale of the seller's products of like grade and quality.

(c) Additionally, section 5 of the FTC Act may apply to buyers of products for resale or to third parties. See § 240.13 of these Guides.

§ 240.3 Definition of seller.

Seller includes any person (manufacturer, wholesaler, distributor, etc.) who sells products for resale, with or without further processing. For example, selling candy to a retailer is a sale for resale without processing. Selling corn syrup to a candy manufacturer is a sale for resale with processing.

§ 240.4 Definition of customer.

A *customer* is any person who buys for resale directly from the seller, or the seller's agent or broker. In addition, a ''customer'' is any buyer of the seller's product for resale who purchases from or through a wholesaler or other intermediate reseller. The word ''customer'' which is used in section 2(d) of the Act includes ''purchaser'' which is used in section 2(e).

NOTE: There may be some exceptions to this general definition of ''customer.'' For example, the purchaser of distress merchandise would not be considered a ''customer'' simply on the basis of such purchase. Similarly, a retailer or purchasing solely from other retailers, or making sporadic purchases from the seller or one that does not regularly sell the seller's product, or that is a type of retail outlet not usually selling such products (e.g., a hardware store stocking a few isolated food items) will not be considered a ''customer'' of the seller unless the seller has been put on notice that such retailer is selling its product.

Example 1: A manufacturer sells to some retailers directly and to others through wholesalers. Retailer A purchases the manufacturer's product from a wholesaler and resells some of it to Retailer B. Retailer A is a customer of the manufacturer. Retailer B is not a customer unless the fact that it purchases the manufacturer's product is known to the manufacturer.

Example 2: A manufacturer sells directly to some independent retailers, to the headquarters of chains and of retailer-owned cooperatives, and to wholesalers. The manufacturer offers promotional services or allowances for promotional activity to be performed at the retail level. With respect to such services and allowances, the direct-buying independent retailers, the headquarters of the chains and retailer-owned cooperatives, and the wholesaler's independent retailer customers are customers of the manufacturer. Individual retail outlets of the

chains and the members of the retailer-owned cooperatives are not customers of the manufacturer.

Example 3: A seller offers to pay wholesalers to advertise the seller's product in the wholesalers' order books or in the wholesalers' price lists directed to retailers purchasing from the wholesalers. The wholesalers and retailer-owned cooperative headquarters and headquarters of other bona-fide buying groups are customers. Retailers are not customers for purposes of this promotion.

§ 240.5 Definition of competing customers.

Competing customers are all businesses that compete in the resale of the seller's products of like grade and quality at the same functional level of distribution regardless of whether they purchase directly from the seller or through some intermediary.

Example 1: Manufacturer A, located in Wisconsin and distributing shoes nationally, sells shoes to three competing retailers that sell only in the Roanoke, Virginia area. Manufacturer A has no other customers selling in Roanoke or its vicinity. If Manufacturer A offers its promotion to one Roanoke customer, it should include all three, but it can limit the promotion to them. The trade area should be drawn to include retailers who compete.

Example 2: A national seller has direct-buying retailing customers reselling exclusively within the Baltimore area, and other customers within the area purchasing through wholesalers. The seller may lawfully engage in a promotional campaign confined to the Baltimore area, provided that it affords all of its retailing customers within the area the opportunity to participate, including those that purchase through wholesalers.

Example 3: B manufactures and sells a brand of laundry detergent for home use. In one metropolitan area, B's detergent is sold by a grocery store and a discount department store. If these stores compete with each other, any allowance, service or facility that B makes available to the grocery store should also be made available on proportionally equal terms to the discount department store.

§ 240.6 Interstate commerce.

The term *interstate commerce* has not been precisely defined in the statute. In general, if there is any part of a business which is not wholly within one state (for example, sales or deliveries of products, their subsequent distribution or purchase, or delivery of supplies or raw materials), the business may be subject to sections 2(d) and 2(e) of the Act. (The commerce standard for sections 2 (d) and (e) is at least as inclusive as the commerce standard for section 2(a).) Sales or promotional offers within the District of Columbia and most United States possessions are also covered by the Act.

§ 240.7 Services or facilities.

The terms *services* and *facilities* have not been exactly defined by the statute or in decisions. One requirement, however, is that the services or facilities be used primarily to promote the resale of the seller's product by the customer. Services or facilities that relate primarily to the original sale are covered by section 2(a). The following list provides some examples—the list is not exhaustive—of promotional services and facilities covered by sections 2 (d) and (e):

Cooperative advertising;
Handbills;
Demonstrators and demonstrations;
Catalogues;
Cabinets;
Displays;
Prizes or merchandise for conducting promotional contests;
Special packaging, or package sizes.

§ 240.8 Need for a plan.

A seller who makes payments or furnishes services that come under the Act should do so according to a plan. If there are many competing customers to be considered or if the plan is complex, the seller would be well advised to put the plan in writing. What the plan should include is describe in more detail in the remainder of these Guides. Briefly, the plan should make payments or services functionally available to all competing customers on proportionally equal terms. (See § 240.9 of this part.) Alternative terms and conditions should be made available to customers who cannot, in a practical sense, take advantage of some of the plan's offerings. The seller should inform competing customers of the plans available to them, in time for them to decide whether to participate. (See § 240.10 of this part.)

§ 240.9 Proportionally equal terms.

(a) Promotional services and allowances should be made available to all competing customers on proportionally equal terms. No single way to do this is prescribed by law. Any method that treats competing customers on proportionally equal terms may be used. Generally, this can be done most easily by basing the payments made or the services furnished on the dollar volume or on the quantity of the product purchased during a specified period. However, other methods that result in proportionally equal allowances and services being offered to all competing customers are acceptable.

(b) When a seller offers more than one type of service, or payments for more than one type of service, all the services or payments should be offered on proportionally equal terms. The seller may do this by offering all the payments or services at the same rate per unit or amount purchased. Thus, a seller might offer promotional allowances of up to 12 cents a case purchased for expenditures on either newspaper advertising or handbills.

Example 1: A seller may offer to pay a specified part (e.g., 50 percent) of the cost of local advertising up to an amount equal to a specified percentage (e.g., 5 percent) of the dollar volume of purchases during a specified period of time.

Example 2: A seller may place in reserve for each customer a specified amount of money for each unit purchased, and use it to reimburse these customers for the cost of advertising the seller's product.

Example 3: A seller should not provide an allowance or service on a basis that has rates graduated with the amount of goods purchased, as, for instance, 1 percent of the first $1,000 purchased per month, 2 percent of the second $1,000 per month, and 3 percent of all over that.

Example 4: A seller should not identify or feature one or a few customers in its own advertising without making the same service available on proportionally equal terms to customers competing with the identified customer or customers.

Example 5: A seller who makes employees available or arranges with a third party to furnish personnel for purposes of performing work for a customer should make the same offer available on proportionally equal terms to all other competing customers or offer useable and suitable services or allowances on proportionally equal terms to competing customers for whom such services are not useable and suitable.[1]

Example 6: A seller should not offer to pay a straight line rate for advertising if such payment results in a discrimination between competing customers; e.g., the offer of $1.00 per line for advertising in a newspaper that charges competing customers different amounts for the same advertising space. The straight line rate is an acceptable method for allocating advertising funds if the seller offers small retailers that pay more than the lowest newspaper rate an alternative that enables them to obtain the same percentage of their advertising cost as large retailers. If the $1.00 per line allowance is based on 50 percent of the newspaper's lowest contract rate of $2.00 per line, the seller should offer to pay 50 percent of the newspaper advertising cost of smaller retailers that establish, by invoice or otherwise, that they paid more than that contract rate.

Example 7: A seller offers each customer promotional allowances at the rate of one dollar for each unit of its product purchased during a defined promotional period. If Buyer A purchases 100 units, Buyer B 50 units, and Buyer C 25 units, the seller maintains proportional equality by allowing $100 to Buyer A, $50 to Buyer B, and $25 to Buyer C, to be used for the Buyers' expenditures on promotion.

§ 240.10 Availability to all competing customers.

(a) Functional availability:

(1) The seller should take reasonable steps to ensure that services and facilities are useable in a practical sense by all competing customers. This may require offering alternative terms and conditions under which customers can participate. When a seller provides alternatives in order to meet the availability requirement, it should take reasonable steps to ensure that the alternatives are proportionally equal, and the seller should inform competing customers of the various alternative plans.

(2) The seller should insure that promotional plans or alternatives offered to retailers do not bar any competing retailers from participation, whether they purchase directly from the seller

[1] The discriminatory purchase of display or shelf space, whether directly or by means of so-called allowances, may violate the Act, and may be considered an unfair method of competition in violation of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

or through a wholesaler or other intermediary.

(3) When a seller offers to competing customers alternative services or allowances that are proportionally equal and at least one such offer is useable in a practical sense by all competing customers, and refrains from taking steps to prevent customers from participating, it has satisfied its obligation to make services and allowances ''functionally available'' to all customers. Therefore, the failure of any customer to participate in the program does not place the seller in violation of the Act.

Example 1: A manufacturer offers a plan for cooperative advertising on radio, TV, or in newspapers of general circulation. Because the purchases of some of the manufacturer's customers are too small this offer is not useable in a practical sense by them. The manufacturer should offer them alternative(s) on proportionally equal terms that are useable in a practical sense by them.

Example 2: A seller furnishes demonstrators to large department store customers. The seller should provide alternatives useable in a practical sense on proportionally equal terms to those competing customers who cannot use demonstrators. The alternatives may be services useable in a practical sense that are furnished by the seller, or payments by the seller to customers for their advertising or promotion of the seller's product.

Example 3: A seller offers to pay 75 percent of the cost of advertising in daily newspapers, which are the regular advertising media of the seller's large or chain store customers, but a lesser amount, such as only 50 percent of the cost, or even nothing at all, for advertising in semi-weekly, weekly, or other newspapers or media that may be used by small retail customers. Such a plan discriminates against particular customers or classes of customers. To avoid that discrimination, the seller in offering to pay allowances for newspaper advertising should offer to pay the same percent of the cost of newspaper advertising for all competing customers in a newspaper of the customer's choice, or at least in those newspapers that meet the requirements for second class mail privileges. While a small customer may be offered, as an alternative to advertising in daily newspapers, allowances for other media and services such as envelope stuffers, handbills, window banners, and the like, the small customer should have the choice to use its promotional allowance for advertising similar to that available to the larger customers, if it can practicably do so.

Example 4: A seller offers short term displays of varying sizes, including some which are useable by each of its competing customers in a practical business sense. The seller requires uniform, reasonable certification of performance by each customer. Because they are reluctant to process the required paper work, some customers do not participate. This fact does not place the seller in violation of the functional availability requirement and it is under no obligation to provide additional alternatives.

(b) Notice of available services and allowances: The seller has an obligation to take steps reasonably designed to provide notice to competing customers of the availability of promotional services and allowances. Such notification should include enough details of the offer in time to enable customers to make an informed judgment whether to participate. When some competing customers do not purchase directly from the seller, the seller must take steps reasonably designed to provide notice to such indirect customers. Acceptable notification may vary. The following is a non-exhaustive list of acceptable methods of notification:

(1) By providing direct notice to customers;

(2) When a promotion consists of providing retailers with display materials, by including the materials within the product shipping container;

(3) By including brochures describing the details of the offer in shipping containers;

(4) By providing information on shipping containers or product packages of the availability and essential features of an offer, identifying a specific source for further information;

(5) By placing at reasonable intervals in trade publications of general and widespread distribution announcements of the availability and essential features of promotional offers, identifying a specific source for further information; and

(6) If the competing customers belong to an identifiable group on a specific mailing list, by providing relevant information of promotional offers to customers on that list. For example, if a product is sold lawfully only under Government license (alcoholic beverages, etc.), the seller may inform only its customers holding licenses.

(c) A seller may contract with intermediaries or other third parties to provide notice. See § 240.11.

Example 1: A seller has a plan for the retail promotion of its product in Philadelphia. Some of its retailing customers purchase directly and it offers the plan to them. Other Philadelphia retailers purchase the seller's product through wholesalers. The seller may use the wholesalers to reach the retailing customers that buy through them, either by having the wholesalers notify these retailers, or by using the wholesalers' customer lists for direct notification by the seller.

Example 2: A seller that sells on a direct basis to some retailers in an area, and to other retailers in the area through wholsesalers, has a plan for the promotion of its product at the retail level. If the seller directly notifies competing direct purchasing retailers, and competing retailers purchasing through the wholesalers, the seller is not required to notify its wholesalers.

Example 3: A seller regularly promotes its product at the retail level and during the year has various special promotional offers. The seller's competing customers include large direct-purchasing retailers and smaller retailers that purchase through wholesalers. The promotions offered can best be used by the smaller retailers if the funds to which they are entitled are pooled and used by the wholesalers on their behalf (newspaper advertisements, for example). If retailers purchasing through a wholesaler designate that wholesaler as their agent for receiving notice of, collecting, and using promotional allowances for them, the seller may assume that notice of, and payment under, a promotional plan to such wholesaler constitutes notice and payment to the retailer. The seller must have a reasonable basis for concluding that the retailers have designated the wholesaler as their agent.

§ 240.11 Wholesaler or third party performance of seller's obligations.

A seller may contract with intermediaries, such as wholesalers, distributors, or other third parties, to perform all or part of the seller's obligations under sections 2 (d) and (e). The use of intermediaries does not relieve a seller of its responsibility to comply with the law. Therefore, in contracting with an intermediary, a seller should ensure that its obligations under the law are in fact fulfilled.

§ 240.12 Checking customer's use of payments.

The seller should take reasonable precautions to see that the services the seller is paying for are furnished and that the seller is not overpaying for them. The customer should expend the allowance solely for the purpose for which it was given. If the seller knows or should know that what the seller is paying for or furnishing is not being properly used by some customers, the improper payments or services should be discontinued.

§ 240.13 Customer's and third party liability.

(a) Customer's liability: Sections 2 (d) and (e) apply to sellers and not to customers. However, the Commission may proceed under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act against a customer who knows, or should know, that it is receiving a discriminatory price through services or allowances not made available on proportionally equal terms to its competitors engaged in the resale of a seller's product. Liability for knowingly receiving such a discrimination may result whether the discrimination takes place directly through payments or services, or indirectly through deductions from purchase invoices or other similar means.

Example 1: A customer should not induce or receive advertising allowances for special promotion of the seller's product in connection with the customer's anniversary sale or new store opening when the customer knows or should know that such allowances, or suitable alternatives, are not available on proportionally equal terms to all other customers competing with it in the distribution of the seller's product.

Example 2: Frequently the employees of sellers or third parties, such as brokers, perform in-store services for their grocery retailer customers, such as stocking of shelves, building of displays and checking or rotating inventory, etc. A customer operating a retail grocery business should not induce or receive such services when the customer knows or should know that such services (or usable and suitable alternative services) are not available on proportionally equal terms to all other customers competing with it in the distribution of the seller's product.

Example 3: Where a customer has entered into a contract, understanding, or arrangement for the purchase of advertising with a newspaper or other advertising medium that provides for a deferred rebate or other reduction in the price of the advertising, the customer should advise any seller from whom reimbursement for the advertising is claimed that the claimed rate of reimbursement is subject to a deferred rebate or other reduction in price. In the event that any rebate or

adjustment in the price is received, the customer should refund to the seller the amount of any excess payment or allowance.

Example 4: A customer should not induce or receive an allowance in excess of that offered in the seller's advertising plan by billing the seller at ''vendor rates'' or for any other amount in excess of that authorized in the seller's promotional program.

(b) Third party liability: Third parties, such as advertising media, may violate section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act through double or fictitious rates or billing. An advertising medium, such as a newspaper, broadcast station, or printer of catalogues, that publishes a rate schedule containing fictitious rates (or rates that are not reasonably expected to be applicable to a representative number of advertisers), may violate section 5 if the customer uses such deceptive schedule or invoice for a claim for an advertising allowance, payment or credit greater than that to which it would be entitled under the seller's promotional offering. Similarly, an advertising medium that furnishes a customer with an invoice that does not reflect the customer's actual net advertising cost may violate section 5 if the customer uses the invoice to obtain larger payments than it is entitled to receive.

Example 1: A newspaper has a ''national'' rate and a lower ''local'' rate. A retailer places an advertisement with the newspaper at the local rate for a seller's product for which the retailer will seek reimbursement under the seller's cooperative advertising plan. The newspaper should not send the retailer two bills, one at the national rate and another at the local rate actually charged.

Example 2: A newspaper has several published rates. A large retailer has in the past earned the lowest rate available. The newspaper should not submit invoices to the retailer showing a high rate by agreement between them unless the invoice discloses that the retailer may receive a rebate and states the amount (or approximate amount) of the rebate, if known, and if not known, the amount of rebate the retailer could reasonably anticipate.

Example 3: A radio station has a flat rate for spot announcements, subject to volume discounts. A retailer buys enough spots to qualify for the discounts. The station should not submit an invoice to the retailer that does not show either the actual net cost or the discount rate.

Example 4: An advertising agent buys a large volume of newspaper advertising space at a low, unpublished negotiated rate. Retailers then buy the space from the agent at a rate lower than they could buy this space directly from the newspaper. The agent should not furnish the retailers invoices showing a rate higher than the retailers actually paid for the space.

§240.14 Meeting competition.

A seller charged with discrimination in violation of sections 2 (d) and (e) may defend its actions by showing that particular payments were made or services furnished in good faith to meet equally high payments or equivalent services offered or supplied by a competing seller. This defense is available with respect to payments or services offered on an area-wide basis, to those offered to new as well as old customers, and regardless of whether the discrimination has been caused by a decrease or an increase in the payments or services offered. A seller must reasonably believe that its offers are necessary to meet a competitor's offer.

§240.15 Cost justification.

It is no defense to a charge of unlawful discrimination in the payment of an allowance or the furnishing of a service for a seller to show that such payment or service could be justified through savings in the cost of manufacture, sale or delivery.

PART 251—GUIDE CONCERNING USE OF THE WORD ''FREE'' AND SIMILAR REPRESENTATIONS

§251.1 The guide.

(a) *General.* (1) The offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service is a promotional device frequently used to attract customers. Providing such merchandise or service with the purchase of some other article or service has often been found to be a useful and valuable marketing tool.

(2) Because the purchasing public continually searches for the best buy, and regards the offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service to be a special bargain, all such offers must be made with extreme care so as to avoid any possibility that consumers will be misled or

deceived. Representative of the language frequently used in such offers are ''Free'', ''Buy 1-Get 1 Free'', ''2-for-1 Sale'', ''50% off with purchase of Two'', ''1¢ Sale'', etc. (Related representations that raise many of the same questions include ''___ Cents-Off'', ''Half-Price Sale'', ''½ Off'', etc. See the Commission's ''Fair Packaging and Labeling Regulation Regarding 'Cents-Off' and Guides Against Deceptive Pricing.'')

(b) *Meaning of ''Free''*. (1) The public understands that, except in the case of introductory offers in connection with the sale of a product or service (See paragraph (f) of this section), an offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service is based upon a regular price for the merchandise or service which must be purchased by consumers in order to avail themselves of that which is represented to be ''Free''. In other words, when the purchaser is told that an article is ''Free'' to him if another article is purchased, the word ''Free'' indicates that he is paying nothing for that article and no more than the regular price for the other. Thus, a purchaser has a right to believe that the merchant will not directly and immediately recover, in whole or in part, the cost of the free merchandise or service by marking up the price of the article which must be purchased, by the substitution of inferior merchandise or service, or otherwise.

(2) The term *regular* when used with the term *price*, means the price, in the same quantity, quality and with the same service, at which the seller or advertiser of the product or service has openly and actively sold the product or service in the geographic market or trade area in which he is making a ''Free'' or similar offer in the most recent and regular course of business, for a reasonably substantial period of time, i.e., a 30-day period. For consumer products or services which fluctuate in price, the ''regular'' price shall be the lowest price at which any substantial sales were made during the aforesaid 30-day period. Except in the case of introductory offers, if no substantial sales were made, in fact, at the ''regular'' price, a ''Free'' or similar offer would not be proper.

(c) *Disclosure of conditions*. When making ''Free'' or similar offers all the terms, conditions and obligations upon which receipt and retention of the ''Free'' item are contingent should be set forth clearly and conspicuously at the outset of the offer so as to leave no reasonable probability that the terms of the offer might be misunderstood. Stated differently, all of the terms, conditions and obligations should appear in close conjunction with the offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service. For example, disclosure of the terms of the offer set forth in a footnote of an advertisement to which reference is made by an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the offer, is not regarded as making disclosure at the outset. However, mere notice of the existence of a ''Free'' offer on the main display panel of a label or package is not precluded provided that (1) the notice does not constitute an offer or identify the item being offered ''Free'', (2) the notice informs the customer of the location, elsewhere on the package or label, where the disclosures required by this section may be found, (3) no purchase or other such material affirmative act is required in order to discover the terms and conditions of the offer, and (4) the notice and the offer are not otherwise deceptive.

(d) *Supplier's responsibilities*. Nothing in this section should be construed as authorizing or condoning the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a supplier. However, if the supplier knows, or should know, that a ''Free'' offer he is promoting is not being passed on by a reseller, or otherwise is being used by a reseller as an instrumentality for deception, it is improper for the supplier to continue to offer the product as promoted to such reseller. He should take appropriate steps to bring an end to the deception, inlcuding the withdrawal of the ''Free'' offer.

(e) *Resellers' participation in supplier's offers*. Prior to advertising a ''Free'' promotion, a supplier should offer the product as promoted to all competing resellers as provided for in the Commission's ''Guides for Advertising Allowances and Other Merchandising

Payments and Services.'' In advertising the ''Free'' promotion, the supplier should identify those areas in which the offer is not available if the advertising is likely to be seen in such areas, and should clearly state that it is available only through participating resellers, indicating the extent of participation by the use of such terms as ''some'', ''all'', ''a majority'', or ''a few'', as the case may be.

(f) *Introductory offers.* (1) No ''Free'' offer should be made in connection with the introduction of a new product or service offered for sale at a specified price unless the offeror expects, in good faith, to discontinue the offer after a limited time and to commence selling the product or service promoted, separately, at the same price at which it was promoted with the ''Free'' offer.

(2) In such offers, no representation may be made that the price is for one item and that the other is ''Free'' unless the offeror expects, in good faith, to discontinue the offer after a limited time and to commence selling the product or service promoted, separately, at the same price at which it was promoted with a ''Free'' offer.

(g) *Negotiated sales.* If a product or service usually is sold at a price arrived at through bargaining, rather than at a regular price, it is improper to represent that another product or service is being offered ''Free'' with the sale. The same representation is also improper where there may be a regular price, but where other material factors such as quantity, quality, or size are arrived at through bargaining.

(h) *Frequency of offers.* So that a ''Free'' offer will be special and meaningful, a single size of a product or a single kind of service should not be advertised with a ''Free'' offer in a trade area for more than 6 months in any 12-month period. At least 30 days should elapse before another such offer is promoted in the same trade area. No more than three such offers should be made in the same area in any 12-month period. In such period, the offeror's sale in that area of the product in the size promoted with a ''Free'' offer should not exceed 50 percent of the total volume of his sales of the product, in the same size, in the area.

(i) *Similar terms.* Offers of ''Free'' merchandise or services which may be deceptive for failure to meet the provisions of this section may not be corrected by the substitution of such similar words and terms as ''gift'', ''given without charge'', ''bonus'', or other words or terms which tend to convey the impression to the consuming public that an article of merchandise or service is ''Free''.

(38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[36 FR 21517, Nov. 10, 1971]

PART 254—GUIDES FOR PRIVATE VOCATIONAL AND DISTANCE EDUCATION SCHOOLS

Sec.

254.0 Scope and application.
254.1 Definitions.
254.2 Deceptive trade or business names.
254.3 Misrepresentation of extent or nature of accreditation or approval.
254.4 Misrepresentation of facilities, services, qualifications of staff, status, and employment prospects for students after training.
254.5 Misrepresentations of enrollment qualifications or limitations.
254.6 Deceptive use of diplomas, degrees, or certificates.
254.7 Deceptive sales practices.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

§ 254.0 Scope and application.

(a) The Guides in this part apply to persons, firms, corporations, or organizations engaged in the operation of privately owned schools that offer resident or distance courses, training, or instruction purporting to prepare or qualify individuals for employment in any occupation or trade, or in work requiring mechanical, technical, artistic, business, or clerical skills, or that is for the purpose of enabling a person to improve his appearance, social aptitude, personality, or other attributes. These Guides do not apply to resident primary or secondary schools or institutions of higher education offering at least a 2-year program of accredited college level studies generally acceptable for credit toward a bachelor's degree.

(b) These Guides represent administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Federal Trade Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. These Guides specifically address the application of section 5 of the FTC Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to the advertising, promotion, marketing, and sale of courses or programs of instruction offered by private vocational or distance education schools. The Guides provide the basis for voluntary compliance with the law by members of the industry. Practices inconsistent with these Guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under section 5 if, after investigation, the Commission has reason to believe that the practices fall within the scope of conduct declared unlawful by the statute.

[63 FR 42572, Aug. 10, 1998]

§ 254.1 Definitions.

(a) *Accredited*. A school or course has been evaluated and found to meet established criteria by an accrediting agency or association recognized for such purposes by the U.S. Department of Education.

(b) *Approved*. A school or course has been recognized by a State or Federal agency as meeting educational standards or other related qualifications as prescribed by that agency for the school or course to which the term is applied. The term is not and should not be used interchangeably with ''accredited.'' The term ''approved'' is not justified by the mere grant of a corporate charter to operate or license to do business as a school and should not be used unless the represented ''approval'' has been affirmatively required or authorized by State or Federal law.

(c) *Industry member*. Industry members are the persons, firms, corporations, or organizations covered by these Guides, as explained in § 254.0(a).

[63 FR 42572, Aug. 10, 1998]

§ 254.2 Deceptive trade or business names.

(a) It is deceptive for an industry member to use any trade or business name, label, insignia, or designation which misleads or deceives prospective students as to the nature of the school, its accreditation, programs of instruction, methods of teaching, or any other material fact.

(b) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent, directly or indirectly, by the use of a trade or business name or in any other manner that:

(1) It is a part of or connected with a branch, bureau, or agency of the U.S. Government, or of any State, or civil service commission;

(2) It is an employment agency or an employment agent or authorized training facility for any industry or business or otherwise deceptively conceal the fact that it is a school.

(c) If an industry member conducts its instruction by correspondence, or other form of distance education, it is deceptive to fail to clearly and conspicuously disclose that fact in all promotional materials.

[63 FR 42573, Aug. 10, 1998]

§ 254.3 Misrepresentation of extent or nature of accreditation or approval.

(a) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent, directly or indirectly, the extent or nature of any approval by a State agency or accreditation by an accrediting agency or association. For example, an industry member should not:

(1) Represent, without qualification, that its school is accredited unless all programs of instruction have been accredited by an accrediting agency recognized by the U.S. Department of Education. If an accredited school offers courses or programs of instruction that are not accredited, all advertisements or promotional materials pertaining to those courses or programs, and making reference to the accreditation of the school, should clearly and conspicuously disclose that those particular courses or programs are not accredited.

(2) Represent that its school or a course is approved, unless the nature, extent, and purpose of that approval are disclosed.

(3) Misrepresent that students successfully completing a course or program of instruction can transfer the credit to an accredited institution of higher education.

(b) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent that a course of instruction has been approved by a particular industry, or that successful completion of the course qualifies the student for admission to a labor union or similar organization or for receiving a State or Federal license to perform certain functions.

(c) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent that its courses are recommended by vocational counselors, high schools, colleges, educational organizations, employment agencies, or members of a particular industry, or that it has been the subject of unsolicited testimonials or endorsements from former students. It is deceptive for an industry member to use testimonials or endorsements that do not accurately reflect current practices of the school or current conditions or employment opportunities in the industry or occupation for which students are being trained.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (c): The Commission's Guides Concerning Use of Endorsements and Testimonials in Advertising (part 255 of this chapter) provide further guidance in this area.

[63 FR 42573, Aug. 10, 1998]

§ 254.4 Misrepresentation of facilities, services, qualifications of staff, status, and employment prospects for students after training.

(a) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent, directly or indirectly, in advertising, promotional materials, or in any other manner, the size, location, services, facilities, or equipment of its school or the number or educational qualifications of its faculty and other personnel. For example, an industry member should not:

(1) Misrepresent the qualifications, credentials, experience, or educational background of its instructors, sales representatives, or other employees.

(2) Misrepresent, through statements or pictures, the nature or efficacy of its courses, training devices, methods, or equipment.

(3) Misrepresent the availability of employment while the student is undergoing instruction or the role of the school in providing or arranging for such employment.

(4) Misrepresent the availability or nature of any financial assistance available to students. If the cost of training is financed in whole or in part by loans, students should be informed that loans must be repaid whether or not they are successful in completing the program and obtaining employment.

(5) Misrepresent the nature of any relationship between the school or its personnel and any government agency or that students of the school will receive preferred consideration for employment with any government agency.

(6) Misrepresent that certain individuals or classes of individuals are members of its faculty or advisory board; have prepared instructional materials; or are otherwise affiliated with the school.

(7) Misrepresent the nature and extent of any personal instruction, guidance, assistance, or other service, including placement assistance, it will provide students either during or after completion of a course.

(b) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent that it is a nonprofit organization or to misrepresent affiliation or connection with any public institution or private religious or charitable organization.

(c) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent that a course has been recently revised or instructional equipment is up-to-date, or misrepresent its ability to keep a program current and up-to-date.

(d) It is deceptive for an industry member, in promoting any course of training in its advertising, promotional materials, or in any other manner, to misrepresent, directly or by implication, whether through the use of text, images, endorsements, or by other means, the availability of employment after graduation from a course of training, the success that the member's graduates have realized in obtaining such employment, or the salary that the member's graduates will receive in such employment.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (d): The Commission's Guides Concerning Use of Endorsements and Testimonials in Advertising (part 255 of this

chapter) provide further guidance in this area.

[63 FR 42573, Aug. 10, 1998 as amended at, 63 FR 72350, Dec. 31, 1998]

§ 254.5 Misrepresentations of enrollment qualifications or limitations.

(a) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent the nature or extent of any prerequisites or qualifications for enrollment in a course or program of instruction.

(b) It is deceptive for an industry member to misrepresent that the lack of a high school education or prior training or experience is not an impediment to successful completion of a course or obtaining employment in the field for which the course provides training.

[63 FR 42574, Aug. 10, 1998]

§ 254.6 Deceptive use of diplomas, degrees, or certificates.

(a) It is deceptive for an industry member to issue a degree, diploma, certificate of completion, or any similar document, that misrepresents, directly or indirectly, the subject matter, substance, or content of the course of study or any other material fact concerning the course for which it was awarded or the accomplishments of the student to whom it was awarded.

(b) It is deceptive for an industry member to offer or confer an academic, professional, or occupational degree, if the award of such degree has not been authorized by the appropriate State educational agency or approved by a nationally recognized accrediting agency, unless it clearly and conspicuously discloses, in all advertising and promotional materials that contain a reference to such degree, that its award has not been authorized or approved by such an agency.

(c) It is deceptive for an industry member to offer or confer a high school diploma unless the program of instruction to which it pertains is substantially equivalent to that offered by a resident secondary school, and unless the student is informed, by a clear and conspicuous disclosure in writing prior to enrollment, that the industry member cannot guarantee or otherwise control the recognition that will be accorded the diploma by institutions of higher education, other schools, or prospective employers, and that such recognition is a matter solely within the discretion of those entities.

[63 FR 42574, Aug. 10, 1998]

§ 254.7 Deceptive sales practices.

(a) It is deceptive for an industry member to use advertisements or promotional materials that misrepresent, directly or by implication, that employment is being offered or that a talent hunt or contest is being conducted. For example, captions such as, ''Men/women wanted to train for * * *,'' ''Help Wanted,'' ''Employment,'' ''Business Opportunities,'' and words or terms of similar import, may falsely convey that employment is being offered and therefore should be avoided.

(b) It is deceptive for an industry member to fail to disclose to a prospective student, prior to enrollment, the total cost of the program and the school's refund policy if the student does not complete the program.

(c) It is deceptive for an industry member to fail to disclose to a prospective student, prior to enrollment, all requirements for successfully completing the course or program and the circumstances that would constitute grounds for terminating the student's enrollment prior to completion of the program.

[63 FR 42574, Aug. 10, 1998 as amended at, 63 FR 72350, Dec. 31, 1998]

PART 255—GUIDES CONCERNING USE OF ENDORSEMENTS AND TESTIMONIALS IN ADVERTISING

Sec.
255.0 Definitions.
255.1 General considerations.
255.2 Consumer endorsements.
255.3 Expert endorsements.
255.4 Endorsements by organizations.
255.5 Disclosure of material connections.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

§ 255.0 Definitions.

(a) The Commission intends to treat endorsements and testimonials identically in the context of its enforcement of the Federal Trade Commission Act and for purposes of this part. The term

endorsements is therefore generally used hereinafter to cover both terms and situations.

(b) For purposes of this part, an *endorsement* means any advertising message (including verbal statements, demonstrations, or depictions of the name, signature, likeness or other identifying personal characteristics of an individual or the name or seal of an organization) which message consumers are likely to believe reflects the opinions, beliefs, findings, or experience of a party other than the sponsoring advertiser. The party whose opinions, beliefs, findings, or experience the message appears to reflect will be called the endorser and may be an individual, group or institution.

(c) For purposes of this part, the term *product* includes any product, service, company or industry.

(d) For purposes of this part, an *expert* is an individual, group or institution possessing, as a result of experience, study or training, knowledge of a particular subject, which knowledge is superior to that generally acquired by ordinary individuals.

Example 1: A film critic's review of a movie is excerpted in an advertisement. When so used, the review meets the definition of an endorsement since it is viewed by readers as a statement of the critic's own opinions and not those of the film producer, distributor or exhibitor. Therefore, any alteration in or quotation from the text of the review which does not fairly reflect its substance would be a violation of the standards set by this part.

Example 2: A TV commercial depicts two women in a supermarket buying a laundry detergent. The women are not identified outside the context of the advertisement. One comments to the other how clean her brand makes her family's clothes, and the other then comments that she will try it because she has not been fully satisfied with her own brand. This obvious fictional dramatization of a real life situation would not be an endorsement.

Example 3: In an advertisement for a pain remedy, an announcer who is not familiar to consumers except as a spokesman for the advertising drug company praises the drug's ability to deliver fast and lasting pain relief. He purports to speak, not on the basis of his own opinions, but rather in the place of and on behalf of the drug company. Such an advertisement would not be an endorsement.

Example 4: A manufacturer of automobile tires hires a well known professional automobile racing driver to deliver its advertising message in television commercials. In these commercials, the driver speaks of the smooth ride, strength, and long life of the tires. Even though the message is not expressly declared to be the personal opinion of the driver, it may nevertheless constitute an endorsement of the tires. Many consumers will recognize this individual as being primarily a racing driver and not merely a spokesman or announcer for the advertiser. Accordingly, they may well believe the driver would not speak for an automotive product unless he/she actually believed in what he/she was saying and had personal knowledge sufficient to form that belief. Hence they would think that the advertising message reflects the driver's personal views as well as those of the sponsoring advertiser. This attribution of the underlying views to the driver brings the advertisement within the definition of an endorsement for purposes of this part.

Example 5: A television advertisement for golf balls shows a prominent and well-recognized professional golfer hitting the golf balls. This would be an endorsement by the golfer even though he makes no verbal statement in the advertisement.

[40 FR 22128, May 21, 1975, as amended at 45 FR 3872, Jan. 18, 1980]

§ 255.1 General considerations.

(a) Endorsements must always reflect the honest opinions, findings, beliefs, or experience of the endorser. Furthermore, they may not contain any representations which would be deceptive, or could not be substantiated if made directly by the advertiser. [See Example 2 to Guide 3 (§ 255.3) illustrating that a valid endorsement may constitute all or part of an advertiser's substantiation.]

(b) The endorsement message need not be phrased in the exact words of the endorser, unless the advertisement affirmatively so represents. However, the endorsement may neither be presented out of context nor reworded so as to distort in any way the endorser's opinion or experience with the product. An advertiser may use an endorsement of an expert or celebrity only as long as it has good reason to believe that the endorser continues to subscribe to the views presented. An advertiser may satisfy this obligation by securing the

endorser's views at reasonable intervals where reasonableness will be determined by such factors as new information on the performance or effectiveness of the product, a material alteration in the product, changes in the performance of competitors' products, and the advertiser's contract commitments.

(c) In particular, where the advertisement represents that the endorser uses the endorsed product, then the endorser must have been a bona fide user of it at the time the endorsement was given, Additionally, the advertiser may continue to run the advertisement only so long as he has good reason to believe that the endorser remains a bona fide user of the product. [See § 255.1(b) regarding the ''good reason to believe'' requirement.]

Guide 1, Example 1: A building contractor states in an advertisement that he specifies the advertiser's exterior house paint because of its remarkable quick drying properties and its durability. This endorsement must comply with the pertinent requirements of Guide 3. Subsequently, the advertiser reformulates its paint to enable it to cover exterior surfaces with only one coat. Prior to continued use of the contractor's endorsement, the advertiser must contact the contractor in order to determine whether the contractor would continue to specify the paint and to subscribe to the views presented previously.

Example 2: A television advertisment portrays a woman seated at a desk on which rest five unmarked electric typewriters. An announcer says ''We asked Mrs. X, an executive secretary for over ten years, to try these five unmarked typewriters and tell us which one she liked best.''

The advertisement portrays the secretary typing on each machine, and then picking the advertiser's brand. The announcer asks her why, and Mrs. X gives her reasons. Assuming that consumers would perceive this presentation as a ''blind'' test, this endorsement would probably not represent that Mrs. X actually uses the advertiser's machines in her work. In addition, the endorsement may also be required to meet the standards of Guide 3 on Expert Endorsements.

[Guide 1]

[45 FR 3872, Jan. 18, 1980]

§ 255.2 Consumer endorsements.

(a) An advertisement employing an endorsement reflecting the experience of an individual or a group of consumers on a central or key attribute of the product or service will be interpreted as representing that the endorser's experience is representative of what consumers will generally achieve with the advertised product in actual, albeit variable, conditions of use. Therefore, unless the advertiser possesses and relies upon adequate substantiation for this representation, the advertisement should either clearly and conspicuously disclose what the generally expected performance would be in the depicted circumstances or clearly and conspicuously disclose the limited applicability of the endorser's experience to what consumers may generally expect to achieve. The Commission's position regarding the acceptance of disclaimers or disclosures is described in the preamble to these Guides published in the FEDERAL REGISTER on January 18, 1980.

(b) Advertisements presenting endorsements by what are represented, directly or by implication, to be ''actual consumers'' should utilize actual consumers, in both the audio and video or clearly and conspicuously disclose that the persons in such advertisements are not actual consumers of the advertised product.

(c) Claims concerning the efficacy of any drug or device as defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 55, shall not be made in lay endorsements unless (1) the advertiser has adequate scientific substantiation for such claims and (2) the claims are not inconsistent with any determination that has been made by the Food and Drug Administration with respect to the drug or device that is the subject of the claim.

Guide 2, Example 1: An advertisement presents the endorsement of an owner of one of the advertiser's television sets. The consumer states that she has needed to take the set to the shop for repairs only one time during her 2-year period of ownership and the costs of servicing the set to date have been under $10.00. Unless the advertiser possesses and relied upon adequate substantiation for the implied claim that such performance reflects that which a significant proportion of consumers would be likely to experience, the advertiser should include a disclosure that either states clearly and conspicuously what the generally expectable performance would be or clearly and conspicuously informs consumers that the performance experienced by

the endorser is not what they should expect to experience. The mere disclosure that ''not all consumers will get this result'' is insufficient because it can imply that while all consumers cannot expect the advertised results, a substantial number can expect them. [See the cross reference in Guide 2(a) regarding the acceptability of disclaimers or disclosures.]

Example 2: An advertiser presents the results of a poll of consumers who have used the advertiser's cake mixes as well as their own recipes. The results purport to show that the majority believed that their families could not tell the difference between the advertised mix and their own cakes baked from scratch. Many of the consumers are actually pictured in the advertisement along with relevant, quoted portions of their statements endorsing the product. This use of the results of a poll or survey of consumers probably represents a promise to consumers that this is the typical result that ordinary consumers can expect from the advertiser's cake mix.

Example 3: An advertisement purports to portray a ''hidden camera'' situation in a crowded cafeteria at breakfast time. A spokesperson for the advertiser asks a series of actual patrons of the cafeteria for their spontaneous, honest opinions of the advertiser's recently introduced breakfast cereal. Even though the words ''hidden camera'' are not displayed on the screen, and even though none of the actual patrons is specifically identified during the advertisement, the net impression conveyed to consumers may well be that these are actual customers, and not actors. If actors have been employed, this fact should be disclosed.

[Guide 2]

[45 FR 3872, Jan. 18, 1980]

§ 255.3 Expert endorsements.

(a) Whenever an advertisement represents, directly or by implication, that the endorser is an expert with respect to the endorsement message, then the endorser's qualifications must in fact give him the expertise that he is represented as possessing with respect to the endorsement.

(b) While the expert may, in endorsing a product, take into account factors not within his expertise (e.g., matters of taste or price), his endorsement must be supported by an actual exercise of his expertise in evaluating product features or characteristics with respect to which he is expert and which are both relevant to an ordinary consumer's use of or experience with the product and also are available to the ordinary consumer. This evaluation must have included an examination or testing of the product at least as extensive as someone with the same degree of expertise would normally need to conduct in order to support the conclusions presented in the endorsement. Where, and to the extent that, the advertisement implies that the endorsement was based upon a comparison such comparison must have been included in his evaluation; and as a result of such comparison, he must have concluded that, with respect to those features on which he is expert and which are relevant and available to an ordinary consumer, the endorsed product is at least equal overall to the competitors' products. Moreover, where the net impression created by the endorsement is that the advertised product is superior to other products with respect to any such feature or features, then the expert must in fact have found such superiority.

Example 1: An endorsement of a particular automobile by one described as an ''engineer'' implies that the endorser's professional training and experience are such that he is well acquainted with the design and performance of automobiles. If the endorser's field is, for example, chemical engineering, the endorsement would be deceptive.

Example 2: A manufacturer of automobile parts advertises that its products are approved by the ''American Institute of Science.'' From its very name, consumers would infer that the ''American Institute of Science'' is a bona fide independent testing organization with expertise in judging automobile parts and that, as such, it would not approve any automobile part without first testing its efficacy by means of valid scientific methods. Even if the American Institute of Science is such a bona fide expert testing organization, as consumers would expect, the endorsement may nevertheless be deceptive unless the Institute has conducted valid scientific tests of the advertised products and the test results support the endorsement message.

Example 3: A manufacturer of a non-prescription drug product represents that its product has been selected in preference to competing products by a large metropolitan hospital. The hospital has selected the product because the manufacturer, unlike its competitors, has packaged each dose of the product separately. This package form is not generally available to the public. Under the circumstances, the endorsement would be deceptive because the basis for the choice of the manufacturer's product, convenience of

packaging, is neither relevant nor available to consumers.

Example 4: The president of a commercial ''home cleaning service'' states in a television advertisement that the service uses a particular brand of cleanser in its business. Since the cleaning service's professional success depends largely upon the performance of the cleansers it uses, consumers would expect the service to be expert with respect to judging cleansing ability, and not be satisfied using an inferior cleanser in its business when it knows of a better one available to it. Accordingly, the cleaning service's endorsement must at least conform to those consumer expectations. The service must, of course, actually use the endorsed cleanser. Additionally, on the basis of its expertise, it must have determined that the cleansing ability of the endorsed cleanser is at least equal (or superior, if such is the net impression conveyed by the advertisement) to that of competing products with which the service has had experience and which remain reasonably available to it. Since in this example, the cleaning service's president makes no mention that the endorsed cleanser was ''chosen,'' ''selected,'' or otherwise evaluated in side-by-side comparisons against its competitors, it is sufficient if the service has relied solely upon its accumulated experience in evaluating cleansers without having to have performed side-by-side or scientific comparisons.

Example 5: An association of professional athletes states in an advertisement that it has ''selected'' a particular brand of beverages as its ''official breakfast drink''. As in Example 4, the association would be regarded as expert in the field of nutrition for purposes of this section, because consumers would expect it to rely upon the selection of nutritious foods as part of its business needs. Consequently, the association's endorsement must be based upon an expert evaluation of the nutritional value of the endorsed beverage. Furthermore, unlike Example 4, the use of the words ''selected'' and ''official'' in this endorsement imply that it was given only after direct comparisons had been performed among competing brands. Hence, the advertisement would be deceptive unless the association has in fact performed such comparisons between the endorsed brand and its leading competitors in terms of nutritional criteria, and the results of such comparisons conform to the net impression created by the advertisement.

[Guide 3]

[40 FR 22128, May 21, 1975]

§ 255.4 Endorsements by organizations.

Endorsements by organizations, especially expert ones, are viewed as representing the judgment of a group whose collective experience exceeds that of any individual member, and whose judgments are generally free of the sort of subjective factors which vary from individual to individual. Therefore an organization's endorsement must be reached by a process sufficient to ensure that the endorsement fairly reflects the collective judgment of the organization. Moreover, if an organization is represented as being expert, then, in conjunction with a proper exercise of its expertise in evaluating the product under § 255.3 of this part (Expert endorsements), it must utilize an expert or experts recognized as such by the organization or standards previously adopted by the organization and suitable for judging the relevant merits of such products.

Example: A mattress seller advertises that its product is endorsed by a chiropractic association. Since the association would be regarded as expert with respect to judging mattresses, its endorsement must be supported by an expert evaluation by an expert or experts recognized as such by the organization, or by compliance with standards previously adopted by the organization and aimed at measuring the performance of mattresses in general and not designed with the particular attributes of the advertised mattress in mind. (See also § 255.3, Example 5.)

[Guide 4]

[40 FR 22128, May 21, 1975]

§ 255.5 Disclosure of material connections.

When there exists a connection between the endorser and the seller of the advertised product which might materially affect the weight or credibility of the endorsement (i.e., the connection is not reasonably expected by the audience) such connection must be fully disclosed. An example of a connection that is ordinarily expected by viewers and need not be disclosed is the payment or promise of payment to an endorser who is an expert or well known personality, as long as the advertiser does not represent that the endorsement was given without compensation. However, when the endorser is neither represented in the advertisement as an expert nor is known to a significant portion of the viewing public, then the advertiser should clearly

and conspicuously disclose either the payment or promise of compensation prior to and in exchange for the endorsement or the fact that the endorser knew or had reasons to know or to believe that if the endorsement favors the advertised product some benefit, such as an appearance on TV, would be extended to the endorser.

Example 1: A drug company commissions research on its product by a well-known research organization. The drug company pays a substantial share of the expenses of the research project, but the test design is under the control of the research organization. A subsequent advertisement by the drug company mentions the research results as the ''findings'' of the well-known research organization. The advertiser's payment of expenses to the research organization need not be disclosed in this advertisement. Application of the standards set by Guides 3 and 4 provides sufficient assurance that the advertiser's payment will not affect the weight or credibility of the endorsement.

Example 2: A film star endorses a particular food product. The endorsement regards only points of taste and individual preference. This endorsement must of course comply with § 255.1; but even though the compensation paid the endorser is substantial, neither the fact nor the amount of compensation need be revealed.

Example 3: An actual patron of a restaurant, who is neither known to the public nor presented as an expert, is shown seated at the counter. He is asked for his ''spontaneous'' opinion of a new food product served in the restaurant. Assume, first, that the advertiser had posted a sign on the door of the restaurant informing all who entered that day that patrons would be interviewed by the advertiser as part of its TV promotion of its new soy protein ''steak''. This notification would materially affect the weight or credibility of the patron's endorsement, and, therefore, viewers of the advertisement should be clearly and conspicuously informed of the circumstances under which the endorsement was obtained.

Assume, in the alternative, that the advertiser had not posted a sign on the door of the restaurant, but had informed all interviewed customers of the ''hidden camera'' only after interviews were completed and the customers had no reason to know or believe that their response was being recorded for use in an advertisement. Even if patrons were also told that they would be paid for allowing the use of their opinions in advertising, these facts need not be disclosed.

[Guide 5]

[45 FR 3873, Jan. 18, 1980]

PART 259—GUIDE CONCERNING FUEL ECONOMY ADVERTISING FOR NEW AUTOMOBILES

Sec.
259.1 Definitions.
259.2 Advertising disclosures.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

§ 259.1 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

(a) *New automobile.* Any passenger automobile or light truck for which a fuel economy label is required under the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6201 *et seq.*) or rules promulgated thereunder, the equitable or legal title to which has never been transferred by a manufacturer, distributor, or dealer to an ultimate purchaser. The term *manufacturer* shall mean any person engaged in the manufacturing or assembling of new automobiles, including any person importing new automobiles for resale and any person who acts for and is under control of such manufacturer, assembler, or importer in connection with the distribution of new automobiles. The term *dealer* shall mean any person, resident or located in the United States or any territory thereof, engaged in the sale or distribution of new automobiles to the ultimate purchaser. The term *ultimate purchaser* means, for purposes of this part, the first person, other than a dealer purchasing in his or her capacity as a dealer, who in good faith purchases such new automobile for purposes other than resale, including a person who leases such vehicle for his or her personal use.

(b) *Estimated city mpg.* The gasoline consumption or mileage of new automobiles as determined in accordance with the city test procedure employed and published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as described in 40 CFR 600.209–85 and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon, as measured, reported, published, or accepted by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

(c) *Estimated highway mpg.* The gasoline consumption or mileage of new automobiles as determined in accordance with the highway test procedure employed and published by the U.S.

Environmental Protection Agency as described in 40 CFR 600.209–85 and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon, as measured, reported, published, or accepted by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

(d) *Vehicle configuration*. The unique combination of automobile features, as defined in 40 CFR 600.002–85(24).

(e) *Estimated in-use fuel economy range*. The estimated range of city and highway fuel economy of the particular new automobile on which the label is affixed, as determined in accordance with procedures employed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as described in 40 CFR 600.311 (for the appropriate model year), and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon, as measured, reported or accepted by the U.S. Environment Protection Agency.

(f) *Range of estimated fuel economy values for the class of new automobiles*. The estimated city and highway fuel economy values of the class of automobile (e.g., compact) as determined by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency pursuant to 40 CFR 600.315 (for the appropriate model year) and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon.

[60 FR 56231, Nov. 8, 1995]

§ 259.2 Advertising disclosures.

(a) No manufacturer or dealer shall make any express or implied representation in advertising concerning the fuel economy of any new automobile[1] unless such representation is accompanied by the following clear and conspicuous disclosures:

(1) If the advertisement makes:

(i) Both a city and a highway fuel economy representation, both the ''estimated city mpg'' and the ''estimated highway mpg'' of such new automobile,[2] must be disclosed;

(ii) A representation regarding only city or only highway fuel economy, only the corresponding EPA estimate must be disclosed;[3]

(iii) A general fuel economy claim without reference to either city or highway, or if the representation refers to any combined fuel economy number, the ''estimated city mpg'' must be disclosed;[4] and

(2) That the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is the source of the ''estimated city mpg'' and ''estimated highway mpg'' and that the numbers are estimates.[5]

(b) If an advertisement for a new automobile cites:

(1) The ''estimated in-use fuel economy range,'' the advertisement must state with equal prominence both the upper and lower number of the range, an explanation of the meaning of the numbers (i.e., city mpg range or highway mpg range or both), and that the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is the source of the figures.

(2) The ''range of estimated fuel economy values for the class of new automobiles'' as a basis for comparing the fuel economy of two or more automobiles, such comparison must be

[1] The Commission will regard as an express or implied fuel economy representation one which a reasonable consumer, upon considering the representation in the context of the entire advertisement, would understand as referring to the fuel economy performance of the vehicle or vehicles advertised.

[2] For purposes of § 259.2(a), the ''estimated city mpg'' and the ''estimated highway mpg'' must be those applicable to the specific nameplate being advertised. Fuel economy estimates assigned to ''unique nameplates'' (see 40 CFR 600.207–86(a)(2)) apply only to such unique car lines. For example, if a manufacturer has a model named the ''XZA'' that has fuel economy estimates assigned to it and a derivative model named the ''Econo-XZA'' that has separate, higher fuel economy estimates assigned to it, these higher numbers assigned to the ''Econo-XZA'' cannot be used in advertisements for the ''XZA.''

[3] For example, if the representation clearly refers only to highway fuel economy, only the ''estimated highway mpg'' need be disclosed.

[4] Nothing in this section should be construed as prohibiting disclosure of both the city and highway estimates.

[5] The Commission will regard the following as the minimum disclosure necessary to comply with § 259.2(a)(2), regardless of the media in which the advertisement appears: ''EPA estimate(s).''

For television, if the estimated mpg appears in the video, the disclosure must appear in the video; if the estimated mpg is audio, the disclosure must be audio.

made to the same type of range (i.e., city or highway).[6]

(c) Fuel economy estimates derived from a non-EPA test may be disclosed provided that:

(1) The advertisement also discloses the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg,'' as required by §259.2(a), and the disclosure required by §259.2(a), and gives the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg'' figure(s) substantially more prominence than any other estimate;[7] provided, however, for radio and television advertisements in which any other estimate is used only in the audio, equal prominence must be given the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg'' figure(s);[8]

(2) The source of the non-EPA test is clearly and conspicuously identified;

(3) The driving conditions and variables simulated by the test which differ from those used to measure the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg,'' and which result in a change in fuel economy, are clearly and conspicuously disclosed.[9] Such conditions and variables may include, but are not limited to, road or dynamometer test, average speed, range of speed, hot or cold start, and temperature; and

(4) The advertisement clearly and conspicuously discloses any distinctions in ''vehicle configuration'' and other equipment affecting mileage performance (e.g., design or equipment differences which distinguish subconfigurations as defined by EPA) between the automobiles tested in the non-EPA test and the EPA tests.

[60 FR 56231, Nov. 8, 1995]

PART 260—GUIDES FOR THE USE OF ENVIRONMENTAL MARKETING CLAIMS

Sec.

260.1 Statement of purpose.
260.2 Scope of guides.
260.3 Structure of the guides.
260.4 Review procedure.
260.5 Interpretation and substantiation of environmental marketing claims.
260.6 General principles.
260.7 Environmental marketing claims.
260.8 Environmental assessment.

[6] For example, an advertisement could not state that ''according to EPA estimates new automobiles in this class get as little as X mpg (citing a figure from the city range) while EPA estimates that this automobile gets X + mpg (citing the EPA highway estimates or a number from the EPA estimated in-use fuel economy highway range for the automobile).

[7] The Commission will regard the following as constituting ''substantially more prominence:''

For television only: If the estimated city and/or highway mpg and any other mileage estimate(s) appear only in the visual portion, the estimated city and/or highway mpg must appear in numbers twice as large as those used for any other estimate, and must remain on the screen at least as long as any other estimate. If the estimated city and highway mpg appear in the audio portion, visual broadcast of any other estimate must be accompanied by the simultaneous, at least equally prominent, visual broadcast of the estimated city and/or highway mpg. Each visual estimated city and highway mpg must be broadcast against a solid color background that contrasts easily with the color used for the numbers when viewed on both color and black and white television.

For print only: The estimated city and/or highway mpg must appear in clearly legible type at least twice as large as that used for any other estimate. Alternatively, if the estimated city and highway mpg appear in type of the same size as such other estimate, they must be clearly legible and conspicuously circled. The estimated city and highway mpg must appear against a solid color, contrasting background. They may not appear in a footnote unless all references to fuel economy appear in a footnote.

[8] The Commission will regard the following as constituting equal prominence. For radio and television when any other estimate is used in the audio: The estimated city and/or highway mpg must be stated, either before or after each disclosure of such other estimate at least as audibly as such other estimate.

[9] For dynamometer tests any difference between the EPA and non-EPA tests must be disclosed. For in-use tests, the Commission realizes that it is impossible to duplicate the EPA test conditions, and that in-use tests may be designed to simulate a particular driving situation. It must be clear from the context of the advertisement what driving situation is being simulated (e.g., cold weather driving, highway driving, heavy load conditions). Furthermore, any driving or vehicle condition must be disclosed if it is significantly different from that which an appreciable number of consumers (whose driving condition is being simulated) would expect to encounter.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 61 FR 53316, Oct. 11, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 260.1 Statement of purpose.

The guides in this part represent administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Federal Trade Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. These guides specifically address the application of Section 5 of the FTC Act to environmental advertising and marketing practices. They provide the basis for voluntary compliance with such laws by members of industry. Conduct inconsistent with the positions articulated in these guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under Section 5 if, after investigation, the Commission has reason to believe that the behavior falls within the scope of conduct declared unlawful by the statute.

§ 260.2 Scope of guides.

(a) These guides apply to environmental claims included in labeling, advertising, promotional materials and all other forms of marketing, whether asserted directly or by implication, through words, symbols, emblems, logos, depictions, product brand names, or through any other means, including marketing through digital or electronic means, such as the Internet or electronic mail. The guides apply to any claim about the environmental attributes of a product, package or service in connection with the sale, offering for sale, or marketing of such product, package or service for personal, family or household use, or for commercial, institutional or industrial use.

(b) Because the guides are not legislative rules under Section 18 of the FTC Act, they are not themselves enforceable regulations, nor do they have the force and effect of law. The guides themselves do not preempt regulation of other federal agencies or of state and local bodies governing the use of environmental marketing claims. Compliance with federal, state or local law and regulations concerning such claims, however, will not necessarily preclude Commission law enforcement action under Section 5.

[63 FR 24248, May 1, 1998]

§ 260.3 Structure of the guides.

The guides are composed of general principles and specific guidance on the use of environmental claims. These general principles and specific guidance are followed by examples that generally address a single deception concern. A given claim may raise issues that are addressed under more than one example and in more than one section of the guides. In many of the examples, one or more options are presented for qualifying a claim. These options are intended to provide a ''safe harbor'' for marketers who want certainty about how to make environmental claims. They do not represent the only permissible approaches to qualifying a claim. The examples do not illustrate all possible acceptable claims or disclosures that would be permissible under Section 5. In addition, some of the illustrative disclosures may be appropriate for use on labels but not in print or broadcast advertisements and vice versa. In some instances, the guides indicate within the example in what context or contexts a particular type of disclosure should be considered.

§ 260.4 Review procedure.

The Commission will review the guides as part of its general program of reviewing all industry guides on an ongoing basis. Parties may petition the Commission to alter or amend these guides in light of substantial new evidence regarding consumer interpretation of a claim or regarding substantiation of a claim. Following review of such a petition, the Commission will take such action as it deems appropriate.

§ 260.5 Interpretation and substantiation of environmental marketing claims.

Section 5 of the FTC Act makes unlawful deceptive acts and practices in or affecting commerce. The Commission's criteria for determining whether an express or implied claim has been

made are enunciated in the Commission's Policy Statement on Deception.[1] In addition, any party making an express or implied claim that presents an objective assertion about the environmental attribute of a product, package or service must, at the time the claim is made, possess and rely upon a reasonable basis substantiating the claim. A reasonable basis consists of competent and reliable evidence. In the context of environmental marketing claims, such substantiation will often require competent and reliable scientific evidence, defined as tests, analyses, research, studies or other evidence based on the expertise of professionals in the relevant area, conducted and evaluated in an objective manner by persons qualified to do so, using procedures generally accepted in the profession to yield accurate and reliable results. Further guidance on the reasonable basis standard is set forth in the Commission's 1983 Policy Statement on the Advertising Substantiation Doctrine. 49 FR 30999 (1984); *appended to Thompson Medical Co.*, 104 F.T.C. 648 (1984). The Commission has also taken action in a number of cases involving alleged deceptive or unsubstantiated environmental advertising claims. A current list of environmental marketing cases and/or copies of individual cases can be obtained by calling the FTC Consumer Response Center at (202) 326–2222.

[63 FR 24248, May 1, 1998]

§ 260.6 General principles.

The following general principles apply to all environmental marketing claims, including, but not limited to, those described in § 260.7. In addition, § 260.7 contains specific guidance applicable to certain environmental marketing claims. Claims should comport with all relevant provisions of these guides, not simply the provision that seems most directly applicable.

(a) *Qualifications and disclosures.* The Commission traditionally has held that in order to be effective, any qualifications or disclosures such as those described in these guides should be sufficiently clear, prominent and understandable to prevent deception. Clarity of language, relative type size and proximity to the claim being qualified, and an absence of contrary claims that could undercut effectiveness, will maximize the likelihood that the qualifications and disclosures are appropriately clear and prominent.

(b) *Distinction between benefits of product, package and service.* An environmental marketing claim should be presented in a way that makes clear whether the environmental attribute or benefit being asserted refers to the product, the product's packaging, a service or to a portion or component of the product, package or service. In general, if the environmental attribute or benefit applies to all but minor, incidental components of a product or package, the claim need not be qualified to identify that fact. There may be exceptions to this general principle. For example, if an unqualified ''recyclable'' claim is made and the presence of the incidental component significantly limits the ability to recycle the product, then the claim would be deceptive.

Example 1: A box of aluminum foil is labeled with the claim ''recyclable,'' without further elaboration. Unless the type of product, surrounding language, or other context of the phrase establishes whether the claim refers to the foil or the box, the claim is deceptive if any part of either the box or the foil, other than minor, incidental components, cannot be recycled.

Example 2: A soft drink bottle is labeled ''recycled.'' The bottle is made entirely from recycled materials, but the bottle cap is not. Because reasonable consumers are likely to consider the bottle cap to be a minor, incidental component of the package, the claim is not deceptive. Similarly, it would not be deceptive to label a shopping bag ''recycled'' where the bag is made entirely of recycled material but the easily detachable handle, an incidental component, is not.

(c) *Overstatement of environmental attribute:* An environmental marketing claim should not be presented in a manner that overstates the environmental attribute or benefit, expressly

[1] *Cliffdale Associates, Inc.*, 103 F.T.C. 110, at 176, 176 n.7, n.8, Appendix, *reprinting* letter dated Oct. 14, 1983, from the Commission to The Honorable John D. Dingell, Chairman, Committee on Energy and Commerce, U.S. House of Representatives (1984) (''Deception Statement'').

or by implication. Marketers should avoid implications of significant environmental benefits if the benefit is in fact negligible.

Example 1: A package is labeled, ''50% more recycled content than before.'' The manufacturer increased the recycled content of its package from 2 percent recycled material to 3 percent recycled material. Although the claim is technically true, it is likely to convey the false impression that the advertiser has increased significantly the use of recycled material.

Example 2: A trash bag is labeled ''recyclable'' without qualification. Because trash bags will ordinarily not be separated out from other trash at the landfill or incinerator for recycling, they are highly unlikely to be used again for any purpose. Even if the bag is technically capable of being recycled, the claim is deceptive since it asserts an environmental benefit where no significant or meaningful benefit exists.

Example 3: A paper grocery sack is labeled ''reusable.'' The sack can be brought back to the store and reused for carrying groceries but will fall apart after two or three reuses, on average. Because reasonable consumers are unlikely to assume that a paper grocery sack is durable, the unqualified claim does not overstate the environmental benefit conveyed to consumers. The claim is not deceptive and does not need to be qualified to indicate the limited reuse of the sack.

Example 4: A package of paper coffee filters is labeled ''These filters were made with a chlorine-free bleaching process.'' The filters are bleached with a process that releases into the environment a reduced, but still significant, amount of the same harmful byproducts associated with chlorine bleaching. The claim is likely to overstate the product's benefits because it is likely to be interpreted by consumers to mean that the product's manufacture does not cause any of the environmental risks posed by chlorine bleaching. A claim, however, that the filters were ''bleached with a process that substantially reduces, but does not eliminate, harmful substances associated with chlorine bleaching'' would not, if substantiated, overstate the product's benefits and is unlikely to be deceptive.

(d) *Comparative claims:* Environmental marketing claims that include a comparative statement should be presented in a manner that makes the basis for the comparison sufficiently clear to avoid consumer deception. In addition, the advertiser should be able to substantiate the comparison.

Example 1: An advertiser notes that its shampoo bottle contains ''20% more recycled content.'' The claim in its context is ambiguous. Depending on contextual factors, it could be a comparison either to the advertiser's immediately preceding product or to a competitor's product. The advertiser should clarify the claim to make the basis for comparison clear, for example, by saying ''20% more recycled content than our previous package.'' Otherwise, the advertiser should be prepared to substantiate whatever comparison is conveyed to reasonable consumers.

Example 2: An advertiser claims that ''our plastic diaper liner has the most recycled content.'' The advertised diaper does have more recycled content, calculated as a percentage of weight, than any other on the market, although it is still well under 100% recycled. Provided the recycled content and the comparative difference between the product and those of competitors are significant and provided the specific comparison can be substantiated, the claim is not deceptive.

Example 3: An ad claims that the advertiser's packaging creates ''less waste than the leading national brand.'' The advertiser's source reduction was implemented sometime ago and is supported by a calculation comparing the relative solid waste contributions of the two packages. The advertiser should be able to substantiate that the comparison remains accurate.

[61 FR 53316, Oct. 11, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 24248, May 1, 1998]

§ 260.7 Environmental marketing claims.

Guidance about the use of environmental marketing claims is set forth in this section. Each guide is followed by several examples that illustrate, but do not provide an exhaustive list of, claims that do and do not comport with the guides. In each case, the general principles set forth in § 260.6 should also be followed.[2]

(a) *General environmental benefit claims.* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product, package or service offers a general environmental benefit. Unqualified general claims of environmental benefit are difficult to interpret, and depending on their context, may convey a wide range of meanings to consumers. In many cases, such claims may convey that the product, package or service

[2]These guides do not currently address claims based on a ''lifecycle'' theory of environmental benefit. The Commission lacks sufficient information on which to base guidance on such claims.

has specific and far-reaching environmental benefits. As explained in the Commission's Advertising Substantiation Statement, every express and material implied claim that the general assertion conveys to reasonable consumers about an objective quality, feature or attribute of a product or service must be substantiated. Unless this substantiation duty can be met, broad environmental claims should either be avoided or qualified, as necessary, to prevent deception about the specific nature of the environmental benefit being asserted.

Example 1: A brand name like ''Eco-Safe'' would be deceptive if, in the context of the product so named, it leads consumers to believe that the product has environmental benefits which cannot be substantiated by the manufacturer. The claim would not be deceptive if ''Eco-Safe'' were followed by clear and prominent qualifying language limiting the safety representation to a particular product attribute for which it could be substantiated, and provided that no other deceptive implications were created by the context.

Example 2: A product wrapper is printed with the claim ''Environmentally Friendly.'' Textual comments on the wrapper explain that the wrapper is ''Environmentally Friendly because it was not chlorine bleached, a process that has been shown to create harmful substances.'' The wrapper was, in fact, not bleached with chlorine. However, the production of the wrapper now creates and releases to the environment significant quantities of other harmful substances. Since consumers are likely to interpret the ''Environmentally Friendly'' claim, in combination with the textual explanation, to mean that no significant harmful substances are currently released to the environment, the ''Environmentally Friendly'' claim would be deceptive.

Example 3: A pump spray product is labeled ''environmentally safe.'' Most of the product's active ingredients consist of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that may cause smog by contributing to ground-level ozone formation. The claim is deceptive because, absent further qualification, it is likely to convey to consumers that use of the product will not result in air pollution or other harm to the environment.

Example 4: A lawn care pesticide is advertised as ''essentially non-toxic'' and ''practically non-toxic.'' Consumers would likely interpret these claims in the context of such a product as applying not only to human health effects but also to the product's environmental effects. Since the claims would likely convey to consumers that the product does not pose any risk to humans or the environment, if the pesticide in fact poses a significant risk to humans or environment, the claims would be deceptive.

Example 5: A product label contains an environmental seal, either in the form of a globe icon, or a globe icon with only the text ''Earth Smart'' around it. Either label is likely to convey to consumers that the product is environmentally superior to other products. If the manufacturer cannot substantiate this broad claim, the claim would be deceptive. The claims would not be deceptive if they were accompanied by clear and prominent qualifying language limiting the environmental superiority representation to the particular product attribute or attributes for which they could be substantiated, provided that no other deceptive implications were created by the context.

Example 6: A product is advertised as ''environmentally preferable.'' This claim is likely to convey to consumers that this product is environmentally superior to other products. If the manufacturer cannot substantiate this broad claim, the claim would be deceptive. The claim would not be deceptive if it were accompanied by clear and prominent qualifying language limiting the environmental superiority representation to the particular product attribute or attributes for which it could be substantiated, provided that no other deceptive implications were created by the context.

(b) *Degradable/biodegradable/photodegradable:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is degradable, biodegradable or photodegradable. An unqualified claim that a product or package is degradable, biodegradable or photodegradable should be substantiated by competent and reliable scientific evidence that the entire product or package will completely break down and return to nature, i.e., decompose into elements found in nature within a reasonably short period of time after customary disposal. Claims of degradability, biodegradability or photodegradability should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception about:

(1) The product or package's ability to degrade in the environment where it is customarily disposed; and

(2) The rate and extent of degradation.

Example 1: A trash bag is marketed as ''degradable,'' with no qualification or other disclosure. The marketer relies on soil burial

tests to show that the product will decompose in the presence of water and oxygen. The trash bags are customarily disposed of in incineration facilities or at sanitary landfills that are managed in a way that inhibits degradation by minimizing moisture and oxygen. Degradation will be irrelevant for those trash bags that are incinerated and, for those disposed of in landfills, the marketer does not possess adequate substantiation that the bags will degrade in a reasonably short period of time in a landfill. The claim is therefore deceptive.

Example 2: A commercial agricultural plastic mulch film is advertised as ''Photodegradable'' and qualified with the phrase, ''Will break down into small pieces if left uncovered in sunlight.'' The claim is supported by competent and reliable scientific evidence that the product will break down in a reasonably short period of time after being exposed to sunlight and into sufficiently small pieces to become part of the soil. The qualified claim is not deceptive. Because the claim is qualified to indicate the limited extent of breakdown, the advertiser need not meet the elements for an unqualified photodegradable claim, i.e., that the product will not only break down, but also will decompose into elements found in nature.

Example 3: A soap or shampoo product is advertised as ''biodegradable,'' with no qualification or other disclosure. The manufacturer has competent and reliable scientific evidence demonstrating that the product, which is customarily disposed of in sewage systems, will break down and decompose into elements found in nature in a short period of time. The claim is not deceptive.

Example 4: A plastic six-pack ring carrier is marked with a small diamond. Many state laws require that plastic six-pack ring carriers degrade if littered, and several state laws also require that the carriers be marked with a small diamond symbol to indicate that they meet performance standards for degradability. The use of the diamond, by itself, does not constitute a claim of degradability.[3]

(c) *Compostable.* (1) It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is compostable. A claim that a product or package is compostable should be substantiated by competent and reliable scientific evidence that all the materials in the product or package will break down into, or otherwise become part of, usable compost (e.g., soil-conditioning material, mulch) in a safe and timely manner in an appropriate composting program or facility, or in a home compost pile or device. Claims of compostability should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception. An unqualified claim may be deceptive if:

(i) The package cannot be safely composted in a home compost pile or device; or

(ii) The claim misleads consumers about the environmental benefit provided when the product is disposed of in a landfill.

(2) A claim that a product is compostable in a municipal or institutional composting facility may need to be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid deception about the limited availability of such composting facilities.

Example 1: A manufacturer indicates that its unbleached coffee filter is compostable. The unqualified claim is not deceptive provided the manufacturer can substantiate that the filter can be converted safely to usable compost in a timely manner in a home compost pile or device. If this is the case, it is not relevant that no local municipal or institutional composting facilities exist.

Example 2: A lawn and leaf bag is labeled as ''Compostable in California Municipal Yard Trimmings Composting Facilities.'' The bag contains toxic ingredients that are released into the compost material as the bag breaks down. The claim is deceptive if the presence of these toxic ingredients prevents the compost from being usable.

Example 3: A manufacturer makes an unqualified claim that its package is compostable. Although municipal or institutional composting facilities exist where the product is sold, the package will not break down into usable compost in a home compost pile or device. To avoid deception, the manufacturer should disclose that the package is not suitable for home composting.

Example 4: A nationally marketed lawn and leaf bag is labeled ''compostable.'' Also printed on the bag is a disclosure that the bag is not designed for use in home compost piles. The bags are in fact composted in yard trimmings composting programs in many communities around the country, but such programs are not available to a substantial majority of consumers or communities where the bag is sold. The claim is deceptive because reasonable consumers living in areas not served by yard trimmings programs may understand the reference to mean that

[3] The guides' treatment of unqualified degradable claims is intended to help prevent consumer deception and is not intended to establish performance standards for laws intended to ensure the degradability of products when littered.

composting facilities accepting the bags are available in their area. To avoid deception, the claim should be qualified to indicate the limited availability of such programs, for example, by stating, ''Appropriate facilities may not exist in your area.'' Other examples of adequate qualification of the claim include providing the approximate percentage of communities or the population for which such programs are available.

Example 5: A manufacturer sells a disposable diaper that bears the legend, ''This diaper can be composted where solid waste composting facilities exist. There are currently [X number of] solid waste composting facilities across the country.'' The claim is not deceptive, assuming that composting facilities are available as claimed and the manufacturer can substantiate that the diaper can be converted safely to usable compost in solid waste composting facilities.

Example 6: A manufacturer markets yard trimmings bags only to consumers residing in particular geographic areas served by county yard trimmings composting programs. The bags meet specifications for these programs and are labeled, ''Compostable Yard Trimmings Bag for County Composting Programs.'' The claim is not deceptive. Because the bags are compostable where they are sold, no qualification is required to indicate the limited availability of composting facilities.

(d) *Recyclable.* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is recyclable. A product or package should not be marketed as recyclable unless it can be collected, separated or otherwise recovered from the solid waste stream for reuse, or in the manufacture or assembly of another package or product, through an established recycling program. Unqualified claims of recyclability for a product or package may be made if the entire product or package, excluding minor incidental components, is recyclable. For products or packages that are made of both recyclable and non-recyclable components, the recyclable claim should be adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception about which portions or components of the product or package are recyclable. Claims of recyclability should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception about any limited availability of recycling programs and collection sites. If an incidental component significantly limits the ability to recycle a product or package, a claim of recyclability would be deceptive. A product or package that is made from recyclable material, but, because of its shape, size or some other attribute, is not accepted in recycling programs for such material, should not be marketed as recyclable.[4]

Example 1: A packaged product is labeled with an unqualified claim, ''recyclable.'' It is unclear from the type of product and other context whether the claim refers to the product or its package. The unqualified claim is likely to convey to reasonable consumers that all of both the product and its packaging that remain after normal use of the product, except for minor, incidental components, can be recycled. Unless each such message can be substantiated, the claim should be qualified to indicate what portions are recyclable.

Example 2: A nationally marketed 8 oz. plastic cottage-cheese container displays the Society of the Plastics Industry (SPI) code (which consists of a design of arrows in a triangular shape containing a number and abbreviation identifying the component plastic resin) on the front label of the container, in close proximity to the product name and logo. The manufacturer's conspicuous use of the SPI code in this manner constitutes a recyclability claim. Unless recycling facilities for this container are available to a substantial majority of consumers or communities, the claim should be qualified to disclose the limited availability of recycling programs for the container. If the SPI code, without more, had been placed in an inconspicuous location on the container (e.g., embedded in the bottom of the container) it would not constitute a claim of recyclability.

Example 3: A container can be burned in incinerator facilities to produce heat and power. It cannot, however, be recycled into another product or package. Any claim that the container is recyclable would be deceptive.

Example 4: A nationally marketed bottle bears the unqualified statement that it is

[4]The Mercury-Containing and Rechargeable Battery Management Act establishes uniform national labeling requirements regarding certain types of nickel-cadmium rechargeable and small lead-acid rechargeable batteries to aid in battery collection and recycling. The Battery Act requires, in general, that the batteries must be labeled with the three-chasing-arrows symbol or a comparable recycling symbol, and the statement ''Battery Must Be Recycled Or Disposed Of Properly.'' 42 U.S.C. 14322(b). Batteries labeled in accordance with this federal statute are deemed to be in compliance with these guides.

''recyclable.'' Collection sites for recycling the material in question are not available to a substantial majority of consumers or communities, although collection sites are established in a significant percentage of communities or available to a significant percentage of the population. The unqualified claim is deceptive because, unless evidence shows otherwise, reasonable consumers living in communities not served by programs may conclude that recycling programs for the material are available in their area. To avoid deception, the claim should be qualified to indicate the limited availability of programs, for example, by stating ''This bottle may not be recyclable in your area,'' or ''Recycling programs for this bottle may not exist in your area.'' Other examples of adequate qualifications of the claim include providing the approximate percentage of communities or the population to whom programs are available.

Example 5: A paperboard package is marketed nationally and labeled, ''Recyclable where facilities exist.'' Recycling programs for this package are available in a significant percentage of communities or to a significant percentage of the population, but are not available to a substantial majority of consumers. The claim is deceptive because, unless evidence shows otherwise, reasonable consumers living in communities not served by programs that recycle paperboard packaging may understand this phrase to mean that such programs are available in their area. To avoid deception, the claim should be further qualified to indicate the limited availability of programs, for example, by using any of the approaches set forth in Example 4 above.

Example 6: A foam polystyrene cup is marketed as follows: ''Recyclable in the few communities with facilities for foam polystyrene cups.'' Collection sites for recycling the cup have been established in a half-dozen major metropolitan areas. This disclosure illustrates one approach to qualifying a claim adequately to prevent deception about the limited availability of recycling programs where collection facilities are not established in a significant percentage of communities or available to a significant percentage of the population. Other examples of adequate qualification of the claim include providing the number of communities with programs, or the percentage of communities or the population to which programs are available.

Example 7: A label claims that the package ''includes some recyclable material.'' The package is composed of four layers of different materials, bonded together. One of the layers is made from the recyclable material, but the others are not. While programs for recycling this type of material are available to a substantial majority of consumers, only a few of those programs have the capability to separate the recyclable layer from the non-recyclable layers. Even though it is technologically possible to separate the layers, the claim is not adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception. An appropriately qualified claim would be, ''includes material recyclable in the few communities that collect multi-layer products.'' Other examples of adequate qualification of the claim include providing the number of communities with programs, or the percentage of communities or the population to which programs are available.

Example 8: A product is marketed as having a ''recyclable'' container. The product is distributed and advertised only in Missouri. Collection sites for recycling the container are available to a substantial majority of Missouri residents, but are not yet available nationally. Because programs are generally available where the product is marketed, the unqualified claim does not deceive consumers about the limited availability of recycling programs.

Example 9: A manufacturer of one-time use photographic cameras, with dealers in a substantial majority of communities, collects those cameras through all of its dealers. After the exposed film is removed for processing, the manufacturer reconditions the cameras for resale and labels them as follows: ''Recyclable through our dealership network.'' This claim is not deceptive, even though the cameras are not recyclable through conventional curbside or drop off recycling programs.

Example 10: A manufacturer of toner cartridges for laser printers has established a recycling program to recover its cartridges exclusively through its nationwide dealership network. The company advertises its cartridges nationally as ''Recyclable. Contact your local dealer for details.'' The company's dealers participating in the recovery program are located in a significant number—but not a substantial majority—of communities. The ''recyclable'' claim is deceptive unless it contains one of the qualifiers set forth in Example 4. If participating dealers are located in only a few communities, the claim should be qualified as indicated in Example 6.

Example 11: An aluminum beverage can bears the statement ''Please Recycle.'' This statement is likely to convey to consumers that the package is recyclable. Because collection sites for recycling aluminum beverage cans are available to a substantial majority of consumers or communities, the claim does not need to be qualified to indicate the limited availability of recycling programs.

(e) *Recycled content.* (1) A recycled content claim may be made only for materials that have been recovered or otherwise diverted from the solid waste

stream, either during the manufacturing process (pre-consumer), or after consumer use (post-consumer). To the extent the source of recycled content includes pre-consumer material, the manufacturer or advertiser must have substantiation for concluding that the pre-consumer material would otherwise have entered the solid waste stream. In asserting a recycled content claim, distinctions may be made between pre-consumer and post-consumer materials. Where such distinctions are asserted, any express or implied claim about the specific pre-consumer or post-consumer content of a product or package must be substantiated.

(2) It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is made of recycled material, which includes recycled raw material, as well as used,[5] reconditioned and remanufactured components. Unqualified claims of recycled content may be made if the entire product or package, excluding minor, incidental components, is made from recycled material. For products or packages that are only partially made of recycled material, a recycled claim should be adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception about the amount, by weight, of recycled content in the finished product or package. Additionally, for products that contain used, reconditioned or remanufactured components, a recycled claim should be adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception about the nature of such components. No such qualification would be necessary in cases where it would be clear to consumers from the context that a product's recycled content consists of used, reconditioned or remanufactured components.

Example 1: A manufacturer routinely collects spilled raw material and scraps left over from the original manufacturing process. After a minimal amount of reprocessing, the manufacturer combines the spills and scraps with virgin material for use in further production of the same product. A claim that the product contains recycled material is deceptive since the spills and scraps to which the claim refers are normally reused by industry within the original manufacturing process, and would not normally have entered the waste stream.

Example 2: A manufacturer purchases material from a firm that collects discarded material from other manufacturers and resells it. All of the material was diverted from the solid waste stream and is not normally reused by industry within the original manufacturing process. The manufacturer includes the weight of this material in its calculations of the recycled content of its products. A claim of recycled content based on this calculation is not deceptive because, absent the purchase and reuse of this material, it would have entered the waste stream.

Example 3: A greeting card is composed 30% by fiber weight of paper collected from consumers after use of a paper product, and 20% by fiber weight of paper that was generated after completion of the paper-making process, diverted from the solid waste stream, and otherwise would not normally have been reused in the original manufacturing process. The marketer of the card may claim either that the product ''contains 50% recycled fiber,'' or may identify the specific pre-consumer and/or post-consumer content by stating, for example, that the product ''contains 50% total recycled fiber, including 30% post-consumer.''

Example 4: A paperboard package with 20% recycled fiber by weight is labeled as containing ''20% recycled fiber.'' Some of the recycled content was composed of material collected from consumers after use of the original product. The rest was composed of overrun newspaper stock never sold to customers. The claim is not deceptive.

Example 5: A product in a multi-component package, such as a paperboard box in a shrink-wrapped plastic cover, indicates that it has recycled packaging. The paperboard box is made entirely of recycled material, but the plastic cover is not. The claim is deceptive since, without qualification, it suggests that both components are recycled. A claim limited to the paperboard box would not be deceptive.

Example 6: A package is made from layers of foil, plastic, and paper laminated together, although the layers are indistinguishable to consumers. The label claims that ''one of the three layers of this package is made of recycled plastic.'' The plastic layer is made entirely of recycled plastic. The claim is not deceptive provided the recycled plastic layer constitutes a significant component of the entire package.

Example 7: A paper product is labeled as containing ''100% recycled fiber.'' The claim is not deceptive if the advertiser can substantiate the conclusion that 100% by weight of the fiber in the finished product is recycled.

Example 8: A frozen dinner is marketed in a package composed of a cardboard box over

[5] The term ''used'' refers to parts that are not new and that have not undergone any type of remanufacturing and/or reconditioning.

a plastic tray. The package bears the legend, ''package made from 30% recycled material.'' Each packaging component amounts to one-half the weight of the total package. The box is 20% recycled content by weight, while the plastic tray is 40% recycled content by weight. The claim is not deceptive, since the average amount of recycled material is 30%.

Example 9: A paper greeting card is labeled as containing 50% recycled fiber. The seller purchases paper stock from several sources and the amount of recycled fiber in the stock provided by each source varies. Because the 50% figure is based on the annual weighted average of recycled material purchased from the sources after accounting for fiber loss during the production process, the claim is permissible.

Example 10: A packaged food product is labeled with a three-chasing-arrows symbol without any further explanatory text as to its meaning. By itself, the symbol is likely to convey that the packaging is both ''recyclable'' and is made entirely from recycled material. Unless both messages can be substantiated, the claim should be qualified as to whether it refers to the package's recyclability and/or its recycled content. If a ''recyclable'' claim is being made, the label may need to disclose the limited availability of recycling programs for the package. If a recycled content claim is being made and the packaging is not made entirely from recycled material, the label should disclose the percentage of recycled content.

Example 11: A laser printer toner cartridge containing 25% recycled raw materials and 40% reconditioned parts is labeled ''65% recycled content; 40% from reconditioned parts.'' This claim is not deceptive.

Example 12: A store sells both new and used sporting goods. One of the items for sale in the store is a baseball helmet that, although used, is no different in appearance than a brand new item. The helmet bears an unqualified ''Recycled'' label. This claim is deceptive because, unless evidence shows otherwise, consumers could reasonably believe that the helmet is made of recycled raw materials, when it is in fact a used item. An acceptable claim would bear a disclosure clearly stating that the helmet is used.

Example 13: A manufacturer of home electronics labels its video cassette recorders (''VCRs'') as ''40% recycled.'' In fact, each VCR contains 40% reconditioned parts. This claim is deceptive because consumers are unlikely to know that the VCR's recycled content consists of reconditioned parts.

Example 14: A dealer of used automotive parts recovers a serviceable engine from a vehicle that has been totaled. Without repairing, rebuilding, remanufacturing, or in any way altering the engine or its components, the dealer attaches a ''Recycled'' label to the engine, and offers it for resale in its used auto parts store. In this situation, an unqualified recycled content claim is not likely to be deceptive because consumers are likely to understand that the engine is used and has not undergone any rebuilding.

Example 15: An automobile parts dealer purchases a transmission that has been recovered from a junked vehicle. Eighty-five percent by weight of the transmission was rebuilt and 15% constitutes new materials. After rebuilding[6] the transmission in accordance with industry practices, the dealer packages it for resale in a box labeled ''Rebuilt Transmission,'' or ''Rebuilt Transmission (85% recycled content from rebuilt parts),'' or ''Recycled Transmission (85% recycled content from rebuilt parts).'' These claims are not likely to be deceptive.

(f) *Source reduction:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package has been reduced or is lower in weight, volume or toxicity. Source reduction claims should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception about the amount of the source reduction and about the basis for any comparison asserted.

Example 1: An ad claims that solid waste created by disposal of the advertiser's packaging is ''now 10% less than our previous package.'' The claim is not deceptive if the advertiser has substantiation that shows that disposal of the current package contributes 10% less waste by weight or volume to the solid waste stream when compared with the immediately preceding version of the package.

Example 2: An advertiser notes that disposal of its product generates ''10% less waste.'' The claim is ambiguous. Depending on contextual factors, it could be a comparison either to the immediately preceding product or to a competitor's product. The ''10% less waste'' reference is deceptive unless the seller clarifies which comparison is intended and substantiates that comparison, or substantiates both possible interpretations of the claim.

(g) *Refillable:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a package is refillable. An unqualified refillable claim should not be

[6] The term ''rebuilding'' means that the dealer dismantled and reconstructed the transmission as necessary, cleaned all of its internal and external parts and eliminated rust and corrosion, restored all impaired, defective or substantially worn parts to a sound condition (or replaced them if necessary), and performed any operations required to put the transmission in sound working condition.

asserted unless a system is provided for the collection and return of the package for refill or the later refill of the package by consumers with product subsequently sold in another package. A package should not be marketed with an unqualified refillable claim, if it is up to the consumer to find new ways to refill the package.

Example 1: A container is labeled ''refillable x times.'' The manufacturer has the capability to refill returned containers and can show that the container will withstand being refilled at least x times. The manufacturer, however, has established no collection program. The unqualified claim is deceptive because there is no means for collection and return of the container to the manufacturer for refill.

Example 2: A bottle of fabric softener states that it is in a ''handy refillable container.'' The manufacturer also sells a large-sized container that indicates that the consumer is expected to use it to refill the smaller container. The manufacturer sells the large-sized container in the same market areas where it sells the small container. The claim is not deceptive because there is a means for consumers to refill the smaller container from larger containers of the same product.

(h) *Ozone safe and ozone friendly:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product is safe for or ''friendly'' to the ozone layer or the atmosphere. For example, a claim that a product does not harm the ozone layer is deceptive if the product contains an ozone-depleting substance.

Example 1: A product is labeled ''ozone friendly.'' The claim is deceptive if the product contains any ozone-depleting substance, including those substances listed as Class I or Class II chemicals in Title VI of the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990, Public Law 101–549, and others subsequently designated by EPA as ozone-depleting substances. Chemicals that have been listed or designated as Class I are chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), halons, carbon tetrachloride, 1,1,1-trichloroethane, methyl bromide and hydrobromofluorocarbons (HBFCs). Chemicals that have been listed as Class II are hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs).

Example 2: An aerosol air freshener is labeled ''ozone friendly.'' Some of the product's ingredients are volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that may cause smog by contributing to ground-level ozone formation. The claim is likely to convey to consumers that the product is safe for the atmosphere as a whole, and is therefore, deceptive.

Example 3: The seller of an aerosol product makes an unqualified claim that its product ''Contains no CFCs.'' Although the product does not contain CFCs, it does contain HCFC–22, another ozone depleting ingredient. Because the claim ''Contains no CFCs'' may imply to reasonable consumers that the product does not harm the ozone layer, the claim is deceptive.

Example 4: A product is labeled ''This product is 95% less damaging to the ozone layer than past formulations that contained CFCs.'' The manufacturer has substituted HCFCs for CFC–12, and can substantiate that this substitution will result in 95% less ozone depletion. The qualified comparative claim is not likely to be deceptive.

[57 FR 36363, Aug. 13, 1992, as amended at 61 FR 53318, Oct. 11, 1996; 61 FR 67109, Dec. 19, 1996; 63 FR 24248, May 1, 1998]

§ 260.8 Environmental assessment.

(a) National Environmental Policy Act. In accordance with section 1.83 of the FTC's Procedures and Rules of Practice[7] and section 1501.3 of the Council on Environmental Quality's regulations for implementing the procedural provisions of National Environmental Policy Act, 42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.* (1969),[8] the Commission prepared an environmental assessment when the guides were issued in July 1992 for purposes of providing sufficient evidence and analysis to determine whether issuing the Guides for the Use of Environmental Marketing Claims required preparation of an environmental impact statement or a finding of no significant impact. After careful study, the Commission concluded that issuance of the Guides would not have a significant impact on the environment and that any such impact ''would be so uncertain that environmental analysis would be based on speculation.''[9] The Commission concluded that an environmental impact statement was therefore not required. The Commission based its conclusions on the findings in the environmental assessment that issuance of the guides would have no quantifiable environmental impact because the guides are voluntary in nature, do not preempt inconsistent state laws, are based on the FTC's deception policy, and, when used in conjunction with the Commission's policy of case-by-case enforcement, are

[7] 16 CFR 1.83.
[8] 40 CFR 1501.3.
[9] 16 CFR 1.83(a).

intended to aid compliance with section 5(a) of the FTC Act as that Act applies to environmental marketing claims.

(b) The Commission has concluded that the modifications to the guides in this part will not have a significant effect on the environment, for the same reasons that the issuance of the original guides in 1992 and the modifications to the guides in 1996 were deemed not to have a significant effect on the environment. Therefore, the Commission concludes that an environmental impact statement is not required in conjunction with the issuance of the 1998 modifications to the Guides for the Use of Environmental Marketing Claims.

[63 FR 24251, May 1, 1998, as amended at 63 FR 24248, May 1, 1998]

SUBCHAPTER C—REGULATIONS UNDER SPECIFIC ACTS OF CONGRESS

PART 300—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER THE WOOL PRODUCTS LABELING ACT OF 1939

DEFINITIONS

Sec.
300.1 Terms defined.

LABELING

300.2 General requirement.
300.3 Required label information.
300.4 Registered identification numbers.
300.5 Required label and method of affixing.
300.6 Labels to be avoided.
300.7 English language requirement.
300.8 Use of fiber trademark and generic names.
300.9 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks.
300.10 Disclosure of information on labels.
300.11 Improper methods of labeling.
300.12 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.
300.13 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.
300.14 Substitute label requirement.
300.15 Labeling of containers or packaging of wool products.
300.16 Ornamentation.
300.17 Use of the term ''all'' or ''100%''.
300.18 Use of name of specialty fiber.
300.19 Use of terms ''mohair'' and ''cashmere''.
300.20 Use of the terms ''virgin'' or ''new''.
300.21 Marking of samples, swatches, or specimens.
300.22 Sectional disclosure of content.
300.23 Linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings and facings.
300.24 Representations as to fiber content.
300.25 Country where wool products are processed or manufactured.
300.25a Country of origin in mail order advertising.
300.26 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.
300.27 Wool products containing superimposed or added fibers.
300.28 Undetermined quantities of reclaimed fibers.
300.29 Garments or products composed of or containing miscellaneous cloth scraps.
300.30 Deceptive labeling in general.

MANUFACTURERS' RECORDS

300.31 Maintenance of records.

GUARANTEES

300.32 Form of separate guaranty.
300.33 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.
300.34 Reference to existing guaranty on labels not permitted.

GENERAL

300.35 Hearings under section 4(d) of the act.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 68 *et seq.* and 15 U.S.C. 70 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941, unless otherwise noted.

DEFINITIONS

§ 300.1 Terms defined.

(a) The term *Act* means the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 (approved October 14, 1940, Public No. 850, 76th Congress, Third Session, 54 Stat. 1128, 15 U.S.C. 68 et. seq. as amended by Pub. L. 96–242, 94 Stat. 344).

(b) The terms *rule*, *rules*, *regulations* and *rules and regulations* mean the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission pursuant to the Act.

(c) The term *ornamentation* means any fibers or yarns imparting a visibly discernible pattern or design to a yarn or fabric.

(d) The term *fiber trademark* means a word or words used by a person to identify a particular fiber produced or sold by him and to distinguish it from fibers of the same generic class produced or sold by others. Such term shall not include any trademark, product mark, house mark, trade name or other name which does not identify a particular fiber.

(e) The terms *required information* or *information required* mean such information as is required to be disclosed on the required stamp, tag, label or other means of identification under the Act and regulations.

(f) The definitions of terms contained in section 2 of the Act shall be applicable also to such terms when used in rules promulgated under the Act.

(g) The term *United States* means the several States, the District of Columbia, and the territories and possessions of the United States.

(h) The terms *mail order catalog* and *mail order promotional material* mean

any materials, used in the direct sale or direct offering for sale of wool products, that are disseminated to ultimate consumers in print or by electronic means, other than by broadcast, and that solicit ultimate consumers to purchase such wool products by mail, telephone, electronic mail, or some other method without examining the actual product purchased.

(i) The terms *label*, *labels*, *labeled*, and *labeling* mean the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification, or authorized substitute therefore, required to be on or affixed to wool products by the Act or Regulations and on which the information required is to appear.

(j) The terms *invoice* and *invoice or other paper* have the meaning set forth in § 303.1(h) of this chapter.

(k) The term *trimmings* has the meaning set forth in § 303.12 of this chapter.

[29 FR 6623, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985; 63 FR 7516, Feb. 13, 1998]

LABELING

§ 300.2 General requirement.

Each and every wool product subject to the act shall be marked by a stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification, in conformity with the requirements of the act and the rules and regulations thereunder.

§ 300.3 Required label information.

(a) The marking of wool products under the Act shall be in the form of a stamp, tag, label or other means of identification, showing and displaying upon the product the required information legibly, conspicuously, and nondeceptively. The information required to be shown and displayed upon the product in the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification, shall be that which is required by the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, including the following:

(1) The fiber content of the product specified in section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act. The generic names and percentages by weight of the constituent fibers present in the wool product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, shall appear on such label with any percentage of fiber or fibers designated as ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' as provided by section 4(a)(2)(A)(5) of the Act appearing last.

(2) The maximum percentage of the total weight of the wool product of any nonfibrous loading, filling or adulterating matter as prescribed by section 4(a)(2)(B) of the Act.

(3) The name or registered identification number issued by the Commission of the manufacturer of the wool product or the name or registered identification number of one or more persons subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such wool product.

(4) The name of the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured.

(b) In disclosing the constituent fibers in information required by the Act and regulations in this part or in any non-required information, no fiber present in the amount of less than 5 percent shall be designated by its generic name or fiber trademark but shall be designated as ''other fiber,'' except that the percentage of wool or recycled wool shall always be stated, in accordance with section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act. When more than one of such fibers, other than wool or recycled wool, are present in amounts of less than 5 percent, they shall be designated in the aggregate as ''other fibers.'' Provided, however, that nothing in this section shall prevent the disclosure of any fiber present in the product which has a clearly established and definite functional significance when present in the amount stated, as for example:

''98% wool
2% nylon.''

[29 FR 6623, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985; 63 FR 7516, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.4 Registered identification numbers.

(a) A registered identification number assigned by the Federal Trade Commission under and in accordance with the provisions of this section may be used upon the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification required under the Act to be affixed to a wool product, as and for the name of the person to whom such number has been assigned.

(b) Any manufacturer of a wool product or person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such wool product, residing in the United States, may apply to the Federal Trade Commission for a registered identification number for use by the applicant on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification required under the Act.

(c) Registered identification numbers shall be used only by the person or firm to whom they are issued, and such numbers are not transferable or assignable. Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation whenever any such number was procured or has been used improperly or contrary to the requirements of the Acts administered by the Federal Trade Commission, and regulations in this part, or when otherwise deemed necessary in the public interest. Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation if the Commission fails to receive prompt notification of any change in name, business address, or legal business status of a person or firm to whom a registered identification number has been assigned, by application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (e) of this section, reflecting the current name, business address, and legal business status of the person or firm.

(d) Registered identification numbers assigned under this section may be used on labels required in labeling products subject to the provisions of the Fur Products Labeling Act and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and numbers previously assigned by the Commission under such Acts may be used as and for the required name in labeling under this Act. When so used by the person or firm to whom assigned, the use of the numbers shall be construed as identifying and binding the applicant as fully and in all respects as though assigned under the specific Act for which it is used.

(e) The form to apply for a registered identification number or to update information pertaining to an existing number is found in § 303.20(d) of this chapter. The form is available upon request from the Textile Section, Enforcement Division, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20580, or on the Internet at *http://www.ftc.gov*.

[29 FR 6623, May 21, 1964, as amended at 48 FR 12516, Mar. 25, 1983; 63 FR 7516, Feb. 13, 1998; 63 FR 71582, Dec. 28, 1998; 65 FR 75156, Dec. 1, 2000]

§ 300.5 Required label and method of affixing.

(a) A label is required to be affixed to each wool product and, where required, to its package or container in a secure manner. Such label shall be conspicuous and shall be of such durability as to remain attached to the product and its package throughout any distribution, sale, resale and until sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

(b) Each wool product with a neck must have a label disclosing the country of origin affixed to the inside center of the neck midway between the shoulder seams or in close proximity to another label affixed to the inside center of the neck. The fiber content and RN or name of the company may be disclosed on the same label as the country of origin or on another conspicuous and readily accessible label or labels on the inside or outside of the garment. On all other wool products, the required information shall be disclosed on a conspicuous and readily accessible label or labels on the inside or outside of the product. The country of origin disclosure must always appear on the front side of the label. Other required information may appear either on the front side or the reverse side of a label, provided that the information is conspicuous and readily accessible.

(c) In the case of hosiery products, this section does not require affixing a label to each hosiery product contained in a package if, (1) such hosiery products are intended for sale to the ultimate consumer in such package, (2) such package has affixed to it a label bearing the required information for the hosiery products contained in the package, and (3) the information on the label affixed to the package is equally applicable to each wool product contained therein.

[50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985, as amended at 63 FR 7516, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.6 Labels to be avoided.

Stamps, tags, labels, or other marks of identification, which are insecurely attached, or which in the course of offering the product for sale, selling, reselling, transporting, marketing, or handling incident thereto are likely to become detached, indistinct, obliterated, illegible, mutilated, inaccessible, or inconspicuous, shall not be used.

§ 300.7 English language requirement.

All words, statements and other information required by or under authority of the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder to appear on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification, shall appear in the English language. If the product bears any stamp, tag, label, or mark of identification which contains any of the required information in a language other than English, all of the required information shall appear both in such other language and in the English language.

§ 300.8 Use of fiber trademark and generic names.

(a) Except where another name is required or permitted under the Act or regulations, the respective common generic name of the fiber shall be used when naming fibers in the required information; as for example, ''wool,'' ''recycled wool,'' ''cotton,'' ''rayon,'' ''silk,'' ''linen,'' ''acetate,'' ''nylon,'' ''polyester.''

(b) The generic names of manufactured fibers as heretofore or hereafter established in § 303.7 of this part (Rule 7) of the regulations promulgated under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. 70) shall be used in setting forth the required fiber content information as to wool products.

(c) A non-deceptive fiber trademark may be used on a label in conjunction with the generic name of the fiber to which it relates. Where such a trademark is placed on a label in conjunction with the required information, the generic name of the fiber must appear in immediate conjunction therewith, and such trademark and generic name must appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(d) Where a generic name or a fiber trademark is used on any label, whether required or nonrequired, a full and complete fiber content disclosure with percentages shall be made on such label in accordance with the Act and regulations.

(e) If a fiber trademark is not used in the required information, but is used elsewhere on the label as nonrequired information, the generic name of the fiber shall accompany the fiber trademark in legible and conspicuous type or lettering the first time the trademark is used.

(f) No fiber trademark or generic name or word, coined word, symbol or depiction which connotes or implies any fiber trademark or generic name shall be used on any label or elsewhere on the product in such a manner as to be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content, or to indicate directly or indirectly that a wool product is composed wholly or in part of a particular fiber, when such is not the case.

(g) The term *fur fiber* may be used to describe the hair or fur fiber or mixtures thereof of any animal or animals other than the sheep, lamb, Angora goat, Cashmere goat, camel, alpaca, llama and vicuna. If the name, symbol, or depiction of any animal producing the hair or fur fiber is used on the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification applied or affixed to the wool product, the percentage by weight of such hair or fur fiber in the total fiber weight of the wool product shall be separately stated in the required fiber content disclosure: *Provided*, That no such name, symbol or depiction shall be used where such hair or fur fiber is present in the amount of less than five per centum of the total fiber weight. No such name, symbol or depiction shall be used in such a way as to imply in any manner that a wool product contains the fur or hair of an animal when the hair or fur fiber of such animal is not present in the product in the amount of five per centum or more of the total fiber weight. The following are examples of fiber content disclosures under this paragraph:

60% Wool
40% Fur Fiber
or
60% Wool
30% Fur Fiber
10% Angora Rabbit

or
100% Cashgora Hair
or
100% Paco-Vicuna Hair

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980; 63 FR 7516, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.9 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks.

(a) In disclosing required information, words or terms shall not be designated by ditto marks or appear in footnotes referred to by asterisks or other symbols in required information, and shall not be abbreviated.

(b) Where the generic name of a textile fiber is required to appear in immediate conjunction with a fiber trademark, a disclosure of the generic name by means of a footnote, to which reference is made by use of an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the fiber trademark, shall not be sufficient in itself to constitute compliance with the Act and regulations.

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964]

§ 300.10 Disclosure of information on labels.

(a) Subject to the provisions of § 300.5(b), the required information may appear on any label or labels attached to the product, including the care label required by 16 CFR part 423, provided all the pertinent requirements of the Act and regulations in this part are met and so long as the combination of required information and non-required information is not misleading. All parts of the required information shall be set forth in such a manner as to be clearly legible, conspicuous, and readily accessible to the prospective purchaser. All parts of the required fiber content information shall appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(b) Subject to the provisions of § 300.8, any non-required information or representations placed on the product shall not minimize, detract from, or conflict with required information and shall not be false, deceptive, or misleading.

[63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.11 Improper methods of labeling.

The stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification required under the act, or the required information contained therein, shall not be minimized, rendered obscure or inconspicuous, or be so placed as likely to be unnoticed or unseen by purchasers and purchaser-consumers when the product is offered or displayed for sale or sold to purchasers or the consuming public, by reason of, among others:

(a) Small or indistinct type.

(b) Failure to use letters and numerals of equal size and conspicuousness in naming all fibers and percentages of such fibers as required by the act.

(c) Insufficient background contrast.

(d) Crowding, intermingling, or obscuring with designs, vignettes, or other written, printed or graphic matter.

§ 300.12 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.

(a) Where a wool product consists of two or more parts, units, or items of different fiber content, a separate label containing the required information shall be affixed to each of such parts, units, or items showing the required information as to such part, unit, or item, provided that where such parts, units, or items, are marketed or handled as a single product or ensemble and are sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer as a single product or ensemble, the required information may be set out on a single label in such a manner as to separately show the fiber composition of each part, unit, or item.

(b) Where garments, wearing apparel, or other wool products are marketed or handled in pairs or ensembles of the same fiber content, only one unit of the pair or ensemble need be labeled with the required information when sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

(c) Where parts or units of wool products of the types referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section are sold separately, such parts or units shall be labeled with the information required by the Act and regulations.

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964]

§ 300.13 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.

(a) The name required by the Act to be used on labels shall be the name under which the manufacturer of the wool product or other person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such product is doing business. Trade names, trade marks or other names which do not constitute the name under which such person is doing business shall not be used for required identification purposes.

(b) Registered identification numbers, as provided for in § 300.4 of this part (Rule 4), may be used for identification purposes in lieu of the required name.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964]

§ 300.14 Substitute label requirement.

When necessary to avoid deception, the name of any person other than the manufacturer of the product appearing on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification affixed to such product shall be accompanied by appropriate words showing that the product was not manufactured by such person; as for example:

Manufactured for: _____
Distributed by: _____
_____ Distributors

§ 300.15 Labeling of containers or packaging of wool products.

When wool products are marketed and delivered in a package which is intended to remain unbroken and intact until after delivery to the ultimate consumer, each wool product in the package, except hosiery, and the package shall be labeled with the required information. If the package is transparent to the extent it allows for a clear reading of the required information on the wool product, the package is not required to be labeled.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

§ 300.16 Ornamentation.

(a) Where the wool product contains fiber ornamentation not exceeding 5 percent of the total fiber weight of the product and the stated percentages of fiber content of the product are exclusive of such ornamentation, the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification shall contain a phrase or statement showing such fact; as for example:

50% Wool
25% Recycled Wool
25% Cotton
Exclusive of Ornamentation

The fiber content of such ornamentation may be disclosed where the percentage of the ornamentation in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers is shown; as for example:

70% Recycled Wool
30% Acetate
Exclusive of 4% Metallic Ornamentation

(b) Where the fiber ornamentation exceeds five per centum it shall be included in the statement of required percentages of fiber content.

(c) Where the ornamentation constitutes a distinct section of the product, sectional disclosure may be made in accordance with § 300.23 of this part (Rule 23).

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.17 Use of the term "all" or "100%."

Where the fabric or product to which the stamp, tag, label, or mark of identification applies is composed wholly of one kind of fiber, either the word *all* or the term *100%* may be used with the correct fiber name; as for example ''100% Wool,'' ''All Wool,'' ''100% Recycled Wool,'' ''All Recycled Wool.'' If any such product is composed wholly of one fiber with the exception of fiber ornamentation not exceeding 5%, such term ''all'' or ''100%'' as qualifying the name of the fiber may be used, provided it is immediately followed by the phrase ''exclusive of ornamentation,'' or by a phrase of like meaning; such as, for example:

All Wool—Exclusive of Ornamentation
or
100% Wool—Exclusive of Ornamentation.

[45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.18 Use of name of specialty fiber.

(a) In setting forth the required fiber content of a product containing any of the specialty fibers named in Section

2(b) of the Act, the name of the specialty fiber present may be used in lieu of the word ''wool,'' provided the percentage of each named specialty fiber is given, and provided further that the name of the specialty fiber so used is qualified by the word ''recycled'' when the fiber referred to is ''recycled wool'' as defined in the Act. The following are examples of fiber content designation permitted under this rule:

55% Alpaca—45% Camel Hair
50% Recycled Camel Hair—50% Wool
60% Recycled Alpaca—40% Rayon
35% Recycled Llama—35% Recycled Vicuna—30% Cotton
60% Cotton—40% Recycled Llama.

(b) Where an election is made to use the name of a specialty fiber in lieu of the word ''wool'' in describing such specialty fiber, such name shall be used at any time reference is made to the specialty fiber either in required or nonrequired information. The name of the specialty fiber or any word, coined word, symbol or depiction connoting or implying the presence of such specialty fiber shall not be used in nonrequired information on the required label or on any secondary or auxiliary label attached to the wool product if the name of such specialty fiber does not appear in the required fiber content disclosure.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.19 Use of terms "mohair" and "cashmere."

(a) In setting forth the required fiber content of a product containing hair of the Angora goat known as mohair or containing hair or fleece of the Cashmere goat known as cashmere, the term *mohair* or *cashmere*, respectively, may be used for such fiber in lieu of the word ''wool,'' provided the respective percentage of each such fiber designated as ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' is given, and provided further that such term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' where used is qualified by the word ''recycled'' when the fiber referred to is ''recycled wool'' as defined in the Act. The following are examples of fiber content designations permitted under this rule:

50% Mohair—50% Wool
60% Recycled Mohair—40% Cashmere
60% Cotton—40% Recycled Cashmere.

(b) Where an election is made to use the term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' in lieu of the term *wool* as permitted by this section, the appropriate designation of ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' shall be used at any time reference is made to such fiber in either required or nonrequired information. The term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' or any words, coined words, symbols or depictions connoting or implying the presence of such fibers shall not be used in nonrequired information on the required label or on any secondary or auxiliary label attached to the wool product if the term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' as the case may be does not appear in the required fiber content disclosure.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.20 Use of the terms "virgin" or "new."

The terms ''virgin'' or ''new'' as descriptive of a wool product, or any fiber or part thereof, shall not be used when the product or part so described is not composed wholly of new or virgin fiber which has never been reclaimed from any spun, woven, knitted, felted, braided, bonded, or otherwise manufactured or used product.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964]

§ 300.21 Marking of samples, swatches or specimens.

Where samples, swatches or specimens of wool products subject to the act were used to promote or effect sales of such wool products in commerce, said samples, swatches and specimens, as well as the products themselves, shall be labeled or marked to show their respective fiber contents and other information required by law.

[6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941. Redesignated at 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.22 Sectional disclosure of content.

(a) *Permissive*. Where a wool product is composed of two or more sections which are of different fiber composition, the required information as to fiber content may be separated on the same label in such manner as to show the fiber composition of each section.

(b) *Mandatory*. The disclosure as above provided shall be made in all instances where such form of marking is necessary to avoid deception.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964. Redesignated at 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.23 Linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings and facings.

(a) In labeling or marking garments or articles of apparel which are wool products, the fiber content of any linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings of such garments or articles of apparel shall be given and shall be set forth separately and distinctly in the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification of the products.

(1) If such linings, trimmings or facings contain, purport to contain or are represented as containing wool, or recycled wool; or

(2) If such linings are metallically coated, or coated or laminated with any substance for warmth, or if such linings are composed of pile fabrics, or any fabrics incorporated for warmth or represented directly or by implication as being incorporated for warmth, which articles the Commission finds constitute a class of articles which is customarily accompanied by express or implied representations of fiber content; or

(3) If any express or implied representations of fiber content of any of such linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings are customarily made.

(b) In the case of garments which contain interlinings, the fiber content of such interlinings shall be set forth separately and distinctly as part of the required information on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification of such garment. For purposes of this paragraph (b) the term *interlining* means any fabric or fibers incorporated into a garment or article of wearing apparel as a layer between an outershell and an inner lining.

(c) In the case of wool products which are not garments or articles of apparel, but which contain linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings, or facings, the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification of the product shall show the fiber content of such linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings, set forth separately and distinctly in such stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification.

(d) Wool products which are or have been manufactured for sale or sold for use as linings, interlinings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings, but not contained in a garment, article of apparel, or other product, shall be labeled or marked with the required information as in the case of other wool products.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980. Redesignated at 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.24 Representations as to fiber content.

(a) Words, coined words, symbols, or depictions which constitute or imply the name or designation of a fiber which is not present in the product shall not appear on labels. Any word or coined word which is phonetically similar to the name or designation of a fiber or which is only a slight variation in spelling from the name or designation of a fiber shall not be used in such a manner as to represent or imply that such fiber is present in the product when the fiber is not present as represented.

(b) Where a word, coined word, symbol or depiction which connotes or implies the presence of a fiber is used on any label, whether required or nonrequired, a full and complete fiber content disclosure with percentages shall be made on such label in accordance with the Act and regulations.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985. Redesignated at 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.25 Country where wool products are processed or manufactured.

(a) In addition to the other information required by the Act and Regulations:

(1) Each imported wool product shall be labeled with the name of the country where such imported product was processed or manufactured;

(2) Each wool product completely made in the United States of materials that were made in the United States shall be labeled using the term *Made in U.S.A.* or some other clear and equivalent term.

(3) Each wool product made in the United States, either in whole or in part of imported materials, shall contain a label disclosing these facts; for example:

''Made in USA of imported fabric''

or

''Knitted in USA of imported yarn'' and

(4) Each wool product partially manufactured in a foreign country and partially manufactured in the United States shall contain on a label the following information:

(i) The manufacturing process in the foreign country and in the USA; for example:

''Imported cloth, finished in USA''

or

''Sewn in USA of imported components''

or

''Made in [foreign country], finished in USA''

or

''Scarf made in USA of fabric made in China''

or

''Comforter Filled, Sewn and Finished in the U.S. With Shell Made in China''

or

''Made in [Foreign Country]/fabric made in USA''

or

''Knit in USA, assembled in [Foreign Country]''.

(ii) When the U.S. Customs Service requires an origin label on the unfinished product, the manufacturing processes as required in paragraph (a)(4)(i) of this section or the name of the foreign country required by Customs, for example:

''Made in (foreign country)''

(b) For the purpose of determining whether a product should be marked under paragraphs (a) (2), (3), or (4) of this section, a manufacturer needs to consider the origin of only those materials that are covered under the Act and that are one step removed from that manufacturing process. For example, a yarn manufacturer must identify fiber if it is imported, a cloth manufacturer must identify imported yarn and a household product manufacturer must identify imported cloth or imported yarn for household products made directly from yarn, or imported fiber used as filling for warmth.

(c) The term country means the political entity known as a nation. Except for the United States, colonies, possessions or protectorates outside the boundaries of the mother country shall be considered separate countries, and the name thereof shall be deemed acceptable in designating the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured unless the Commission shall otherwise direct.

(d) The country where the imported wool product was principally made shall be considered to be the country where such wool product was processed or manufactured. Further work or material added to the wool product in another country must effect a basic change in form in order to render such other country the place where such wool product was processed or manufactured.

(e) The English name of the country where the imported wool product was processed or manufactured shall be used. The adjectival form of the name of the country will be accepted as the name of the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured, provided the adjectival form of the name does not appear with such other words so as to refer to a kind of species of product. Variant spellings which clearly indicate the English name of the country, such as Brasil for Brazil and Italie for Italy, are acceptable. Abbreviations which unmistakenly indicate the name of a country, such as *Gt. Britain* for *Great Britain,* are acceptable.

(f) Nothing in this Rule shall be construed as limiting in any way the information required to be disclosed on labels under the provisions of any Tariff Act of the United States or regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985. Redesignated and amended at 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998; 65 FR 75156, Dec. 1, 2000]

§ 300.25a Country of origin in mail order advertising.

When a wool product is advertised in any mail order catalog or mail order promotional material, the description of such product shall contain a clear

and conspicuous statement that the product was either made in U.S.A., imported, or both. Other words or phrases with the same meaning may be used. The statement of origin required by this section shall not be inconsistent with the origin labeling of the product being advertised.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985. Redesignated at 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 300.26 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.

The fiber content of pile fabrics or products made thereof may be stated in the label or mark of identification in such segregated form as will show the fiber content of the face or pile and of the back or base, with the percentages of the respective fibers as they exist in the face or pile and in the back or base: *Provided,* That in such disclosure the respective percentages of the face and the back be given in such manner as will show the ratio between the face and the back. Examples of the form of marking pile fabrics as to fiber content provided for in this section are as follows:

100% Wool Pile
100% Cotton Back
(Back constitutes 60% of fabric and pile 40%)
Pile—60% Recycled Wool, 40% Wool
Back—70% Cotton, 30% Rayon
(Pile constitutes 60% of fabric and back 40%).

[6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.27 Wool products containing superimposed or added fibers.

Where a wool product is made wholly of one fiber or a blend of fibers with the exception of an additional fiber in minor proportion superimposed or added in certain separate and distinct areas or sections for reinforcing or other useful purposes, the product may be designated according to the fiber content of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, with an excepting naming the superimposed or added fiber, giving the percentage thereof in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, and indicating the area or section which contains the superimposed or added fiber. An example of this type of fiber content disclosure, as applied to products having reinforcing fibers added to a particular area or section, is as follows:

55% Recycled Wool
45% Rayon
Except 5% Nylon added to toe and heel

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.28 Undetermined quantities of reclaimed fibers.

(a) Where a wool product is composed in part of various man-made fibers recovered from textile products containing underdetermined qualities of such fibers, the percentage content of the respective fibers recovered from such products may be disclosed on the required stamp, tag, or label, in aggregate form as ''man-made fibers'' followed by the naming of such fibers in the order of their predominance by weight, as for example:

60% Wool
40% Man-made fibers
Rayon
Acetate
Nylon

(b) Where a wool product is composed in part of wool, or recycled wool and in part of unknown and, for practical purposes, undeterminable non-woolen fibers reclaimed from any spun, woven, knitted, felted, braided, bonded or otherwise manufactured or used product, the required fiber content disclosure may, when truthfully applicable, in lieu of the fiber content disclosure otherwise required by the Act and regulations, set forth (1) the percentages of wool or recycled wool, and (2) the generic names and the percentages of all other fibers whose presence is known or practically ascertainable and (3) the percentage of the unknown and undeterminable reclaimed fibers, designating such reclaimed fibers as ''unknown reclaimed fibers'' or ''undetermined reclaimed fibers,'' as for example:

75% Recycled Wool—25% Unknown Reclaimed Fibers.
35% recycled Wool—30% Acetate—15% Cotton—20% Undetermined Reclaimed Fibers.

In making the required fiber content disclosure any fibers referred to as ''unknown reclaimed fibers'' or ''undetermined reclaimed fibers'' shall be listed last.

(c) The terms *unknown recycled fibers* and *undetermined recycled fibers* may be used in describing the unknown and undeterminable reclaimed fibers referred to in paragraph (b) of this rule in lieu of the terms specified therein, provided, however, That the same standard is used in determining the applicability of the term *recycled* as is used in defining ''recycled wool'' in section 2(c) of the Act.

(d) For purposes of this rule undetermined or unascertained amounts of wool or recycled wool may be classified and designated as recycled wool.

(e) Nothing contained in this rule shall excuse a full and accurate disclosure of fiber content with correct percentages if the same is known or practically ascertainable, or permit a deviation from the requirements of section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act with respect to products not labeled under the provisions of this rule or permit a higher classification of wool or recycled wool than that provided by Section 2 of the Act.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980; 45 FR 49542, July 25, 1980]

§ 300.29 Garments or products composed of or containing miscellaneous cloth scraps.

(a) For wool products which consist of, or are made from, miscellaneous cloth scraps comprising manufacturing by-products and containing various fibers of undetermined percentages, the following form of disclosure as to fiber content of such wool products, where truthfully appliable and with appropriate percentage figure inserted, may be used in the stamp, tag, label, or mark of identification of such product:

(1) Where the product contains chiefly cotton as well as woolen fibers in the minimum percentage designated for recycled wool:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Composed Chiefly of Cotton With Minimum of ____% Recycled Wool.

(2) Where the product contains chiefly rayon as well as woolen fibers in the minimum percentage designated for recycled wool:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Composed Chiefly of Rayon With Minimum of ____% Recycled Wool.

(3) Where the product is composed chiefly of a mixture of cotton and rayon as well as woolen fibers in the minimum percentage designated for recycled wool:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Composed Chiefly of Cotton and Rayon With Minimum of ____% Recycled Wool.

(4) Where the product contains chiefly woolen fibers with the balance of undetermined mixtures of cotton, rayon or other non-woolen fibers:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Containing Cotton, Rayon and Other Non-Woolen Fibers, With Minimum of ____% Recycled Wool.

(b) Where the cotton or rayon content or the non-woolen fiber content mentioned in such forms of disclosure is not known to comprise as much as 50% of the fiber content of the product, the word ''chiefly'' in the respective form of disclosure specified in this section shall be omitted.

(c) The words ''Contents are'' may be used in the above-mentioned forms of marking in lieu of the words ''Made of'' where appropriate to the nature of the product.

(d) For purposes of this rule, undetermined or unascertained amounts of wool or recycled wool which may be contained in the product may be classified and designated as recycled wool.

[6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

§ 300.30 Deceptive labeling in general.

Products subject to the act shall not bear, nor have used in connection therewith, any stamp, tag, label, mark or representation which is false, misleading or deceptive in any respect.

MANUFACTURERS' RECORDS

§ 300.31 Maintenance of records.

(a) Pursuant to the provisions of section 6 of the Act, every manufacturer of a wool product subject to the Act, irrespective of whether any guaranty has been given or received, shall maintain records showing the information required by the Act and Regulations with respect to all such wool products made

by such manufacturer. Such records shall show:

(1) The fiber content of the product specified in section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act.

(2) The maximum percentage of the total weight of the wool product of any non-fibrous loading, filling or adulterating matter as prescribed by section 4(a)(2)(B) of the Act.

(3) The name, or registered identification number issued by the Commission, of the manufacturer of the wool product or the name or registered identification number of one or more persons subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such wool product.

(4) The name of the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured as prescribed by sections 300.25a and/or .25b.

(b) Any person substituting labels shall keep such records as will show the information on the label removed and the name or names of the person or persons from whom the wool product was received.

(c) The purpose of these records is to permit a determination that the requirements of the Act and Regulations have been met and to establish a traceable line of continuity from raw material through processing to finished product. The records shall be preserved for at least three years.

[53 FR 31314, Aug. 18, 1988]

GUARANTIES

§ 300.32 Form of separate guaranty.

(a) The following are suggested forms of separate guaranties under section 9 of the Act which may be used by a guarantor residing in the United States on or as part of an invoice or other paper relating to the marketing or handling of any wool products listed and designated therein and showing the date of such invoice or other paper and the signature and address of the guarantor:

(1) *General form.*

We guarantee that the wool products specified herein are not misbranded under the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

(2) *Guaranty based on guaranty.*

Based upon a guaranty received, we guarantee that the wool products specified herein are not misbranded under the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

NOTE: The printed name and address on the invoice or other paper will suffice to meet the signature and address requirements.

(b) The mere disclosure of required information including the fiber content of wool products on a label or on an invoice or other paper relating to its marketing or handling shall not be considered a form of separate guaranty.

[29 FR 6627, May 21, 1964]

§ 300.33 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.

(a)(1) Under section 9 of the Act any person residing in the United States and marketing or handling wool products may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission.

(2) When filed with the Commission a continuing guaranty shall be fully executed in duplicate. Forms for use in preparing continuing guaranties will be supplied by the Commission upon request.

(3) Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission shall continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor shall promptly report any change in business status to the Commission.

(b) The prescribed form for a continuing guaranty is found in § 303.38(b) of this chapter. The form is available upon request from the Textile Section, Enforcement Division, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20580.

(c) Any person who has a continuing guaranty on file with the Commission may, during the effective dates of the guaranty, give notice of such fact by setting forth on the invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of the product guaranteed the following:

Continuing Guaranty under the Wool Products Labeling Act filed with the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) Any person who falsely represents that he has a continuing guaranty on file with the Federal Trade Commission shall be deemed to have furnished

a false guaranty under section 9(b) of the Act.

[29 FR 6627, May 21, 1964, as amended at 48 FR 12517, Mar. 25, 1983; 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998; 63 FR 71583, Dec. 28, 1998]

§ 300.34 Reference to existing guaranty on labels not permitted.

No representation or suggestion that a wool product is guaranteed under the act by the Government, or any branch thereof shall be made on or in the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification, applied or affixed to wool products.

GENERAL

§ 300.35 Hearings under section 4(d) of the act.

Hearings under section 4(d) of the act will be held when deemed by the Commission to be in the public interest. Interested persons may file applications for such hearings. Such applications shall be filed in quadruplicate and shall contain a detailed technical description of the class or classes of articles or products regarding which applicant requests a determination and announcement by the Commission concerning express or implied representations of fiber content of articles or concerning insignificant or inconsequential textile content of products.

(Sec. 4(d), 54 Stat. 1129; 15 U.S.C. 68b(d))

PART 301—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER FUR PRODUCTS LABELING ACT

NAME GUIDE

Sec.
301.0 Fur products name guide.

REGULATIONS

301.1 Terms defined.
301.2 General requirements.
301.3 English language requirements.
301.4 Abbreviations or ditto marks prohibited.
301.5 Use of Fur Products Name Guide.
301.6 Animals not listed in Fur Products Name Guide.
301.7 Describing furs by certain breed names prohibited.
301.8 Use of terms ''Persian Lamb,'' ''Broadtail Lamb,'' and ''Persian-broadtail Lamb'' permitted.
301.9 Use of terms ''Mouton Lamb'' and ''Shearling Lamb'' permitted.
301.10 Use of term ''Broadtail-processed Lamb'' permitted.
301.11 Fictitious or non-existing animal designations prohibited.
301.12 Country of origin of imported furs.
301.13 Fur products having furs with different countries of origin.
301.14 Country of origin of used furs.
301.15 Designation of section producing domestic furs permitted.
301.16 Disclosure of origin of certain furs raised or taken in United States.
301.17 Misrepresentation of origin of furs.
301.18 Passing off domestic furs as imported furs prohibited.
301.19 Pointing, dyeing, bleaching or otherwise artificially coloring.
301.20 Fur products composed of pieces.
301.21 Disclosure of used furs.
301.22 Disclosure of damaged furs.
301.23 Second-hand fur products.
301.24 Repairing, restyling and remodeling fur products for consumer.
301.25 Name required to appear on labels and invoices.
301.26 Registered identification numbers.
301.27 Label and method of affixing.
301.28 Labels to be avoided.
301.29 Requirements in respect to disclosure on label.
301.30 Arrangement of required information on label.
301.31 Labeling of fur products consisting of two or more units.
301.32 Fur product containing material other than fur.
301.33 Labeling of samples.
301.34 Misbranded or falsely invoiced fur products.
301.35 Substitution of labels.
301.36 Sectional fur products.
301.37 Manner of invoicing furs and fur products.
301.38 Advertising of furs and fur products.
301.39 Exempted fur products.
301.40 Item number or mark to be assigned to each fur product.
301.41 Maintenance of records.
301.42 Deception as to nature of business.
301.43 Use of deceptive trade or corporate names, trademarks or graphic representations prohibited.
301.44 Misrepresentation of prices.
301.45 Representations as to construction of fur products.
301.46 Reference to guaranty by Government prohibited.
301.47 Form of separate guaranty.
301.48 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.
301.48a Guaranties not received in good faith.
301.49 Deception in general.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 69 *et seq.*

NAME GUIDE

§ 301.0 Fur products name guide.

NAME GUIDE

Name	Order	Family	Genus-species
Alpaca	Ungulata	Camelidae	Lama pacos.
Antelope	.....do	Bovidae	Hippotragus niger and Antilope cervicapra.
Badger	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Taxida sp. and Meles sp.
Bassarisk	.....do	Procyonidae	Bassariscus astutus.
Bear	.....do	Ursidae	Ursus sp.
Bear, Polar	.....do	.....do	Thalarctos sp.
Beaver	Rodentia	Castoridae	Castor canadensis.
Burunduk	.....do	Sciuridae	Eutamias asiaticus.
Calf	Ungulata	Bovidae	Bos taurus.
Cat, Caracal	Carnivora	Felidae	Caracal caracal.
Cat, Domestic	.....do	.....do	Felis catus.
Cat, Lynx	.....do	.....do	Lynx refus.
Cat, Manul	.....do	.....do	Felis manul.
Cat, Margay	.....do	.....do	Felis wiedii.
Cat, Spotted	.....do	.....do	Felis sp. (South America).
Cat, Wild	.....do	.....do	Felis catus and Felis lybica.
Cheetah	.....do	.....do	Acinonyx jubatus.
Chinchilla	Rodentia	Chinchillidae	Chinchilla chinchilla.
Chipmunk	.....do	Sciuridae	Eutamias sp.
Civet	Carnivora	Viverridae	Viverra sp., Viverricula sp., Paradoxurus sp., Paguma sp., and Herpestes sp.
Desman	Insectivora	Talpidae	Desmana moschata and Galemys pyrenaicus.
Dog	Carnivora	Canidae	Canis familiaris.
Ermine	.....do	Mustelidae	Mustela erminea.
Fisher	.....do	.....do	Martes pennanti.
Fitch	.....do	.....do	Mustela putorius.
Fox	.....do	Canidae	Vulpes fulva, Vulpes, vulpes, and Vulpes macrotis.
Fox, Blue	.....do	.....do	Alopex sp.
Fox, Grey	.....do	.....do	Urocyon cinereoargenteus and Urocyon littoralis.
Fox, Kit	.....do	.....do	Vulpes velox.
Fox, White	Carnivora	Canidae	Alpoex sp.
Genet	.....do	Viverridae	Genetta genetta.
Goat	Ungulata	Bovidae	Cpara prisca.
Guanaco, or its young, the Guanaquito..	.....do	Camelidae	Lama guanicoe.
Hamster	Rodentia	Cricetidae	Cricetus cricetus.
Hare	.....do	Leporidae	Lepus sp. and Lepus europaeus occidentalis.
Jackal	Carnivora	Canidae	Canis aureus and Canis adustus.
Jackal, Cape	.....do	.....do	Canis mesomelas.
Jaguar	.....do	Felidae	Felis onca.
Jaguarondi	.....do	.....do	Felis yagouaroundi.
Kangaroo	Marsupialia	Macropodidae	Macropus sp.
Kangaroo-rat	.....do	.....do	Bettongia sp.
Kid	Ungulata	Bovidae	Capra prisca.
Kinkajou	Carnivora	Procyonidae	Potos flavus.
Koala	Marsupialia	Phasocolarctidae	Phascolarctos cinereus.
Kolinsky	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Mustela sibirica.
Lamb	Ungulata	Bovidae	Ovis aries.
Leopard	Carnivora	Felidae	Felis pardus.
Llama	Ungulata	Cemelidae	Lama glama.
Lynx	Carnivora	Felidae	Lynx canadensis and Lynx lynx.
Marmot	Rodentia	Scinridae	Marmota bobak.
Marten, American	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Martes americana and Martes caurina.
Marten, Baum	.....do	.....do	Martes martes.
Marten, Japanese	.....do	.....do	Martes melampus.
Marten, Stone	.....do	.....do	Martes foina.
Mink	.....do	.....do	Mustela vison and Mustela lutreola.
Mole	Insectivora	Talpidae	Talpa sp.
Monkey	Primates	Colobidae	Colobus polykomos.
Muskrat	Rodentia	Muridae	Ondatra zibethicus.
Nutria	.....do	Capromyidae	Myocastor coypus.
Ocelot	Carnivora	Felidae	Felis pardalis.
Opossum	Marsupialia	Didelphiidae	Didelphis sp.
Oppossum, Australian	.....do	Phalangeridae	Trichosurus vulpecula.
Opossum, Ring-tail	.....do	.....do	Pseudocheirus sp.
Oppossum, South American.	.....do	Didelphiidae	Lutreolina crassicaudata.

NAME GUIDE—Continued

Name	Order	Family	Genus-species
Opossum, Water	.....do	.....do	Chironectes minimus.
Otter	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Lutra canadensis, Pteronura brasitionsis, Lutra annectens and Lutra lutra.
Otter, Sea	.....do	.....do	Enhydra lutris.
Pahmi	.....do	.....do	Helictis moschata and Helictis personata.
Panda	.....do	Procyonidae	Ailurus fulgens.
Peschanik	Rodentia	Sciuridae	Citellus fulvus.
Pony	Ungulata	Equidae	Equus caballus.
Rabbit	Rodentia	Leporidae	Oryctolagus cuniculus.
Raccoon	Carnivora	Procyonidae	Procyon lotor and Procyon cancrivorus.
Raccoon, Asiatic	.....do	Canidae	Nyctereutes procyonoidos.
Raccoon, Mexican	.....do	.....do	Nasua sp.
Reindeer	Ungulata	Cervidae	Rangifer tarandus.
Sable	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Martes zibellina.
Sable, American	.....do	.....do	Martes americana and Martes caurina.
Seal, Fur	Pinnipedia	Otariidae	Callorhinus ursinus and Arctocephalus sp.
Seal, Hair	.....do	Phocidae	Phoca sp.
Seal, Roc	.....do	Otariidae	Otaria flavescens.
Sheep	Ungulata	Bovidae	Ovis aries.
Skunk	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Mephitis mephitis, Mephitis macroura, Conepatus semistriatus and Conepatus sp.
Skunk, Spotted	.....do	.....do	Spilogale sp.
Squirrel	Rodentia	Sciuridae	Sciurus vulgaris.
Squirrel, Flying	.....do	.....do	Eupetaurus cinereus, Pteromys volans and Petaurista leucogenys.
Susilk	.....do	.....do	Citellus citellus, Citellus rufescens and Citellus suslica.
Vicuna	Ungulata	Camelidae	Vicugna vicugna.
Viscacha	Rodentia	Chinchillidae	Ligidium viscacia.
Wallaby	Marsupialia	Macropodidae	Wallabia sp., Petrogale sp., and Thylogale sp.
Weasel	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Mustela frenata.
Weasel, Chinese	.....do	.....do	Mustela sibirica.
Weasel, Japanese	.....do	.....do	Mustela itatsi (also classified as Mustela sibirica itatsi).
Weasel, Manchurian	Carnivora	Mustelidae	Mustela altaica and Mustela rixosa.
Wolf	.....do	Canidae	Canis lupus and Canis niger.
Wolverine	.....do	Mustelidae	Gulo luscus and Gulo gulo.
Wombat	Marsupialia	Vombatidae	Vombatus sp.
Woodchuck	Rodentia	Sciuridae	Marmota monax.

(Secs. 7, 8, 65 Stat. 179; 15 U.S.C. 69e, 69f)

[17 FR 1205, Feb. 3, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 10446, Nov. 4, 1961; 32 FR 6023, Apr. 15, 1967]

REGULATIONS

SOURCE: 17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, unless otherwise noted.

§301.1 Terms defined.

(a) As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(1) The term *act* means the *Fur Products Labeling Act* (approved Aug. 8, 1951, Pub. L. 110, 82d Cong., 1st Sess.; 15 U.S.C.A. sec. 69; 65 Stat. 179).

(2) The terms *rule*, *rules*, *regulations*, and *rules and regulations*, mean the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission pursuant to section 8 (b) of the act.

(3) The definitions of terms contained in section 2 of the act shall be applicable also to such terms when used in rules promulgated under the act.

(4) The terms *Fur Products Name Guide* and *Name Guide* mean the register of names of hair fleece and fur bearing animals issued by the Commission on February 8, 1952, pursuant to the provisions of section 7 (a) of the act.

(5) The terms *required information* and *information required* mean the information required to be disclosed on labels, invoices and in advertising under the act and rules and regulations, and such further information as may be permitted by the regulations, when and if used.

(6) The term *cat fur* means the pelt or skin of any animal of the species *Felis catus*.

(7) The term *dog fur* means the pelt or skin of any animal of the species *Canis familiaris*.

(8) The term *dog or cat fur product* means any item of merchandise which consists, or is composed in whole or in part, of any dog fur, cat fur, or both.

(b) The term *wearing apparel* as used in the definition of a fur product in section 2(d) of the Act means (1) Any articles of clothing or covering for any part of the body; and (2) shall include any assembled furs, used furs, or waste furs, in attached form, including mats, plates or garment shells or furs flat off the board, and furs which have been dyed, tip-dyed, bleached or artificially colored, intended for use as or in wearing apparel: *Provided, however,* That the provisions of section 4(2) of the Act shall not be applicable to those fur products set out in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961; 61 FR 67709, Dec. 24, 1996; 65 FR 82270, Dec. 28, 2000]

§ 301.2 General requirements.

(a) Each and every fur product, except those exempted under § 301.39 of this part, shall be labeled and invoiced in conformity with the requirements of the act and rules and regulations.

(b) Each and every fur shall be invoiced in conformity with the requirements of the act and rules and regulations.

(c) Any advertising of fur products or furs shall be in conformity with the requirements of the act and rules and regulations.

§ 301.3 English language requirements.

All information required under the act and rules and regulations to appear on labels, invoices, and in advertising, shall be set out in the English language. If labels, invoices or advertising matter contain any of the required information in a language other than English, all of the required information shall appear also in the English language. The provisions of this section shall not apply to advertisements in foreign language newspapers or periodicals, but such advertising shall in all other respects comply with the act and regulations.

§ 301.4 Abbreviations or ditto marks prohibited.

In disclosing required information in labeling and advertising, words or terms shall not be abbreviated or designated by the use of ditto marks but shall be spelled out fully, and in invoicing the required information shall not be abbreviated but shall be spelled out fully.

§ 301.5 Use of Fur Products Name Guide.

(a) The Fur Products Name Guide (§ 301.0 of this part) is set up in four columns under the headings of Name, Order, Family and Genus-Species. The applicable animal name appearing in the column headed ''Name'' shall be used in the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising of fur products and furs. The scientific names appearing under the columns headed Order, Family, and Genus-Species are furnished for animal identification purposes and shall not be used.

(b) Where the name of the animal appearing in the Name Guide consists of two separate words the second word shall precede the first in designating the name of the animal in the required information; as for example: ''Fox, Black'' shall be disclosed as ''Black Fox.''

§ 301.6 Animals not listed in Fur Products Name Guide.

(a) All furs are subject to the act and regulations regardless of whether the name of the animal producing the fur appears in the Fur Products Name Guide.

(b) Where fur is obtained from an animal not listed in the Fur Products Name Guide it shall be designated in the required information by the true English name of the animal or in the absence of a true English name, by the name which properly identifies such animal in the United States.

§ 301.7 Describing furs by certain breed names prohibited.

If the fur of an animal is described in any manner by its breed, species, strain or coloring, irrespective of former usage, such descriptive matter shall not contain the name of another animal either in the adjective form or

otherwise nor shall such description (subject to any exception contained in this part or animal names appearing in the Fur Products Name Guide) contain a name in an adjective form or otherwise which connotes a false geographic origin of the animal. For example, such designations as ''Sable Mink,'' ''Chinchilla Rabbit,'' and ''Aleutian Mink'' shall not be used.

§ 301.8 Use of terms "Persian Lamb," "Broadtail Lamb," and "Persian-broadtail Lamb" permitted.

(a) The term *Persian Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of the young lamb of the Karakul breed of sheep or top-cross breed of such sheep, having hair formed in knuckled curls.

(b) The term *Broadtail Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of the prematurely born, stillborn, or very young lamb of the Karakul breed of sheep or top-cross breed of such sheep, having flat light-weight fur with a moire pattern.

(c) The term *Persian-broadtail Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of the very young lamb of the Karakul breed of sheep or top-cross breed of such sheep, having hair formed in flattened knuckled curls with a moire pattern.

(d) The terms ''Persian Lamb'', ''Broadtail Lamb'', or ''Persian-broadtail Lamb'' shall not be used to describe: (1) The so-called Krimmer, Bessarabian, Rumanian, Shiraz, Salzfelle, Metis, Dubar, Meshed, Caracul, Iranian, Iraqi, Chinese, Mongolian, Chekiang, or Indian lamb skins, unless such lamb skins conform with the requirements set out in paragraph (a), (b), or (c) of this section respectively; or (2) any other lamb skins having hair in a wavy or open curl pattern.

§ 301.9 Use of terms "Mouton Lamb" and "Shearling Lamb" permitted.

(a) The term *Mouton Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of a lamb which has been sheared, the hair straightened, chemically treated, and thermally set to produce a moisture repellant finish; as for example:

Dyed Mouton Lamb

(b) The term *Shearling Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of a lamb which has been sheared and combed.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961]

§ 301.10 Use of term "Broadtail-processed Lamb" permitted.

The term *Broadtail-processed Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of a lamb which has been sheared, leaving a moire hair pattern on the pelt having the appearance of the true fur pattern of ''Broadtail Lamb''; as for example:

Dyed Broadtail-processed Lamb
Fur origin: Argentina

§ 301.11 Fictitious or non-existing animal designations prohibited.

No trade names, coined names, nor other names or words descriptive of a fur as being the fur of an animal which is in fact fictitious or non-existent shall be used in labeling, invoicing or advertising of a fur or fur product.

§ 301.12 Country of origin of imported furs.

(a)(1) In the case of furs imported into the United States from a foreign country, the country of origin of such furs shall be set forth as a part of the information required by the act in invoicing and advertising.

(2) In the case of fur products imported into the United States from a foreign country, or fur products made from furs imported into the United States from a foreign country, the country of origin of the furs contained in such products shall be set forth as a part of the information required by the act in labeling, invoicing and advertising.

(b) The term *country* means the political entity known as a nation. Colonies, possessions or protectorates outside the boundaries of the mother country shall be considered separate countries and the name thereof shall be deemed acceptable in designating the ''country of origin'' unless the Commission shall otherwise direct.

(c) The country in which the animal producing the fur was raised, or if in a feral state, was taken, shall be considered the ''country of origin.''

(d) When furs are taken within the territorial waters of a country, such

country shall be considered the ''country of origin.'' Furs taken outside such territorial waters, or on the high seas, shall have as their country of origin the country having the nearest mainland.

(e)(1) The English name of the country of origin shall be used. Abbreviations which unmistakably indicate the name of a country, such as ''Gt. Britain'' for ''Great Britain,'' are acceptable. Abbreviations such as ''N.Z.'' for ''New Zealand'' are not acceptable.

(2) The name of the country of origin, when used as a part of the required information in labeling shall be preceded by the term *fur origin;* as for example:

Dyed Muskrat
Fur Origin: Russia

or

Dyed China Mink
Fur Origin: China

(3) In addition to the required disclosure of country of origin the name of the country may also appear in adjective form in connection with the name of the animal; as for example:

Tip-dyed Canadian American Sable
Fur Origin: Canada

or

Russian Sable
Fur Origin: Russia

(f) Nothing in this section shall be construed as limiting in any way the information required to be disclosed on labels under the provisions of any Tariff Act of the United States or regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961; 61 FR 67709, Dec. 24, 1996]

§ 301.13 Fur products having furs with different countries of origin.

When a fur product is composed of furs with different countries of origin the names of such countries shall be set forth in the required information in the order of predominance by surface areas of the furs in the fur product.

§ 301.14 Country of origin of used furs.

When the country of origin of used furs is unknown, and no representations are made directly or by implication with respect thereto, this fact shall be set out as a part of the required information in lieu of the country of origin as ''Fur origin: Unknown.''

§ 301.15 Designation of section producing domestic furs permitted.

In the case of furs produced in the United States the name of the section or area producing the furs used in the fur product may be set out in connection with the name of the animal; as for example:

Dyed Fur Seal
Fur origin: Alaska

or

Dyed Muskrat
Fur origin: Minnesota

§ 301.16 Disclosure of origin of certain furs raised or taken in United States.

If the name of any animal set out in the Fur Products Name Guide or term permitted by the regulations to be used in connection therewith connotes foreign origin and such animal is raised or taken in the United States, furs obtained therefrom shall be described in disclosing the required information as having the United States as the country of origin; as for example:

Dyed Persian Lamb
Fur origin: United States

or

Mexican Raccoon
Fur origin: United States

§ 301.17 Misrepresentation of origin of furs.

No misleading nor deceptive statements as to the geographical or zoological origin of the animal producing a fur shall be used directly or indirectly in labeling, invoicing or advertising furs or fur products.

§ 301.18 Passing off domestic furs as imported furs prohibited.

No domestic furs nor fur products shall be labeled, invoiced or advertised in such a manner as to represent directly or by implication that they have been imported.

§ 301.19 Pointing, dyeing, bleaching or otherwise artificially coloring.

(a) Where a fur or fur product is pointed or contains or is composed of bleached, dyed or otherwise artificially

colored fur, such facts shall be disclosed as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising.

(b) The term *pointing* means the process of inserting separate hairs into furs or fur products for the purpose of adding guard hairs, either to repair damaged areas or to simulate other furs.

(c) The term *bleaching* means the process for producing a lighter shade of a fur, or removing off-color spots and stains by a bleaching agent.

(d) The term *dyeing* (which includes the processes known in the trade of tipping the hair or fur, feathering, and beautifying) means the process of applying dyestuffs to the hair or fur, either by immersion in a dye bath or by application of the dye by brush, feather, spray, or otherwise, for the purpose of changing the color of the fur or hair, or to accentuate its natural color. When dyestuff is applied by immersion in a dye bath or by application of the dye by brush, feather, or spray, it may respectively be described as ''vat dyed'', ''brush dyed'', ''feather dyed'', or ''spray dyed'', as the case may be. When dyestuff is applied only to the ends of the hair or fur, by feather or otherwise, it may also be described as ''tip-dyed''. The application of dyestuff to the leather or the skin (known in the trade as ''tipping'', as distinguished from tip-dyeing the hair or fur as above described) and which does not affect a change of, nor accentuate the natural color of the hair or fur, shall not be considered as ''dyeing''. When fluorescent dye is applied to a fur or fur product it may be described as ''brightener added''.

(e) The term *artificial coloring* means any change or improvement in color of a fur or fur product in any manner other than by pointing, bleaching, dyeing, or tip-dyeing, and shall be described in labeling, invoicing and advertising as ''color altered'' or ''color added''.

(f) The term *blended* shall not be used as a part of the required information to describe the pointing, bleaching, dyeing, tip-dyeing, or otherwise artificially coloring of furs.

(g) Where a fur or fur product is not pointed, bleached, dyed, tip-dyed, or otherwise artificially colored it shall be described as ''natural''.

(h) Where any fur or fur product is dressed, processed or treated with a solution or compound containing any metal and such compound or solution effects any change or improvement in the color of the hair, fleece or fur fiber, such fur or fur product shall be described in labeling, invoicing and advertising as ''color altered'' or ''color added''.

(i)(1) Any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt in such a manner that it is required under paragraph (e) or (h) of this section to be described as ''color altered'' or ''color added'' shall place a black stripe at least one half inch (1.27 cm) in width across the leather side of the skin immediately above the rump or place a stamp with a solid black center in the form of either a two inch (5.08 cm) square or a circle at least two inches (5.08 cm) in diameter on the leather side of the pelt and shall use black ink for all other stamps or markings on the leather side of the pelt.

(2) Any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt which after processing is considered natural under paragraph (g) of this section shall place a white stripe at least one half inch (1.27 cm) in width across the leather side of the skin immediately above the rump or place a stamp with a solid white center in the form of either a two inch (5.08 cm) square or a circle at least two inches (5.08 cm) in diameter on the leather side of the pelt and shall use white ink for all other stamps or markings on the leather side of the pelt.

(3) Any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt in such a manner that it is considered dyed under paragraph (d) of this section shall place a yellow stripe at least one half inch (1.27 cm) in width across the leather side immediately above the rump or place a stamp with a solid yellow center in the form of either a two inch (5.08 cm) square or a circle at least two inches (5.08 cm) in diameter on the leather side of the pelt and shall use yellow ink for all other stamps or markings on the leather side of the pelt.

(4) In lieu of the marking or stamping otherwise required by paragraphs

(i) (1), (2), and (3) of this section, any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt so as to be subject to the stamping or marking requirements of this paragraph may stamp the leather side of the pelt with the appropriate truthful designation ''dyed'', ''color altered'', ''color added'', or ''natural'', as the case may be, in such manner that the stamp will not be obliterated or mutilated by further processing and will remain clearly legible until the finished fur product reaches the ultimate consumer.

(5) Where, after assembling, fur garment shells, mats, plates or other assembled furs are processed or treated in such a manner as to fall within the stamping or marking provisions of this paragraph, such assembled furs, in lieu of the stamping or marking of each individual pelt or piece, may be appropriately stamped on the leather side as provided in this paragraph in such a manner that the stamp will remain on the finished fur product and clearly legible until it reaches the ultimate consumer and will not be mutilated or obliterated by further processing.

(j) Any person who shall process a fur pelt in such a manner that after such processing it is no longer considered as natural shall clearly, conspicuously and legibly stamp on the leather side of the pelt and on required invoices relating thereto a lot number or other identifying number which relates to such records of the processor as will show the source and disposition of the pelts and the details of the processing performed. Such person shall also stamp his name or registered identification number on the leather side of the pelt.

(k) Any person who possesses fur pelts of a type which are always considered as dyed under paragraph (d) of this section after processing or any person who processes fur pelts which are always natural at the time of sale to the ultimate consumer, which pelts for a valid reason cannot be marked or stamped as provided in this section, may file an affidavit with the Federal Trade Commission's Bureau of Consumer Protection setting forth such facts as will show that the pelts are always dyed or natural as the case may be and that the stamping of such pelts cannot be reasonably accomplished. If the Bureau of Consumer Protection is satisfied that the public interest will be protected by the filing of the affidavit, it may accept such affidavit and advise the affiant that marking of the fur pelts themselves as provided in this section will be unnecessary until further notice. Any person filing such an affidavit shall promptly notify the Commission of any change in circumstances with respect to its operations.

(l) Any person subject to this section who incorrectly marks or fails to mark fur pelts as provided in paragraphs (i) and (j) of this section shall be deemed to have misbranded such products under section 4(l) of the Act. Any person subject to this section who furnishes a false or misleading affidavit under paragraph (k) of this section or fails to give the notice required by paragraph (k) of this section shall be deemed to have neglected and refused to maintain the records required by section 8(d) of the Act.

(1) In connection with paragraph (h) of this section, the following method may be used for detection of parts per million of iron and copper in hairs from fur pelts including hairs from mink pelts. Procedure for detection of parts per million of iron and copper in hairs from fur pelts including mink hairs.

(2) A recommended method for preparation of samples would be: Carefully pluck hair samples from 10 to 15 different representative sites on the pelt or garment. This can best be accomplished by using a long nose stainless steel pliers with a tip diameter of 1/16 inch (1.59 mm). The pliers should be inserted at the same angle as the guard hairs with the tip opened to 1/4 inch (6.35 mm). After contact with the hide, the tip should be raised about 1/4 inch (6.35 mm), closed tightly and pulled quickly and firmly to remove the hair.

(3) Place an accurately weighed sample of approximately .1000 grams of mink hair into a beaker with 20 ml. concentrated nitric acid. Evaporate just to dryness on a hot plate.

(4) If there is any organic matter still present, add 10 ml. of concentrated nitric acid (see paragraph 7) and again evaporate just to dryness on a hot plate. This step should be repeated until the nitric acid solution becomes

clear to light green. Add 10 ml. of 1% hydrochloric acid to the dried residue in the beaker. Warm on a hot plate to insure complete solution of the residue.

(5) A recommended analytical procedure would be atomic absorption spectrophotometry. In testing for iron, the atomic absorption instrument must have the capability of a 2 angstrom band pass at the 2483 A line. When analyzing for iron the air-acetylene flame should be as lean as possible.

(6) A reagent blank should be carried through the entire procedure as outlined above and the final results corrected for the amounts of iron and copper found in the reagent blank.

(7) If facilities are available for handling perchloric acid, a preferred alternate to the additional nitric acid treatment would be to add 2 ml. of perchloric acid and 8 ml. of nitric acid, cover the beaker with a watch glass and allow the solutions to become clear to light green before removal of the watch glass and evaporation just to dryness.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961; 34 FR 381, Jan. 10, 1969; 36 FR 5689, Mar. 26, 1971; 41 FR 2636, Jan. 19, 1976; 53 FR 31314, Aug. 18, 1988; 61 FR 67709, Dec. 24, 1996]

§ 301.20 Fur products composed of pieces.

(a) Where fur products, or fur mats and plates, are composed in whole or in substantial part of paws, tails, bellies, sides, flanks, gills, ears, throats, heads, scrap pieces, or waste fur, such fact shall be disclosed as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising. Where a fur product is made of the backs of skins such fact may be set out in labels, invoices and advertising.

(b) Where fur products, or fur mats and plates, are composed wholly or substantially of two or more of the parts set out in paragraph (a) of this section or one or more of such parts and other fur, disclosure in respect thereto shall be made by naming such parts or other fur in order of predominance by surface area.

(c) The terms *substantial part* and *substantially* mean ten per centum (10 percent) or more in surface area.

(d) The term *assembled* shall not be used in lieu of the terms set forth in paragraph (a) of this section to describe fur products or fur mats and plates composed of such parts.

§ 301.21 Disclosure of used furs.

(a) When fur in any form has been worn or used by an ultimate consumer it shall be designated ''used fur'' as a part of the required information in invoicing and advertising.

(b) When fur products or fur mats and plates are composed in whole or in part of used fur, such fact shall be disclosed as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising; as for example:

Leopard
Used Fur
or
Dyed Muskrat
Contains Used Fur

§ 301.22 Disclosure of damaged furs.

(a) The term *damaged fur,* as used in this part, means a fur, which, because of a known or patent defect resulting from natural causes or from processing, is of such a nature that its use in a fur product would decrease the normal life and durability of such product.

(b) When damaged furs are used in a fur product, full disclosure of such fact shall be made as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing, or advertising such product; as for example:

Mink
Fur origin: Canada
Contains Damaged Fur

§ 301.23 Second-hand fur products.

When a fur product has been used or worn by an ultimate consumer and is subsequently marketed in its original, reconditioned, or rebuilt form with or without the addition of any furs or used furs, the requirements of the act and regulations in respect to labeling, invoicing and advertising of such product shall be applicable thereto, subject, however, to the provisions of § 301.14 of this part as to country of origin requirement, and in addition, as a part of the required information such product shall be designated ''Second-hand'',

''Reconditioned-Second-hand'', or ''Rebuilt-Second-hand'', as the case may be.

§ 301.24 Repairing, restyling and remodeling fur products for consumer.

When fur products owned by and to be returned to the ultimate-consumer are repaired, restyled or remodeled and used fur or fur is added thereto, labeling of the fur product shall not be required. However, the person adding such used fur or fur to the fur product, or who is responsible therefor, shall give to the owner an invoice disclosing the information required under the act and regulations respecting the used fur or fur added to the fur product, subject, however, to the provisions of § 301.14 of this part as to country of origin requirements.

§ 301.25 Name required to appear on labels and invoices.

The name required by the act to be used on labels and invoices shall be the full name under which the person is doing business, and no trade-mark, trade name nor other name which does not constitute such full name shall be used in lieu thereof.

§ 301.26 Registered identification numbers.

(a) Registered numbers for use as the required identification in lieu of the name on fur product labels as provided in section 4(2)(E) of the act will be issued by the Commission to qualified persons residing in the United States upon receipt of an application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b)(1) Registered identification numbers shall be used only by the person or concern to whom they are issued, and such numbers are not transferable or assignable.

(2) Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation if the Federal Trade Commission fails to receive prompt notification of any change in name, business address, or legal business status of a person or firm to whom a registered identification number has been assigned, by application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (d) of this section, reflecting the current name, business address, and legal business status of the person or firm.

(3) Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation whenever any such number was procured or has been used improperly or contrary to the requirements of the act and regulations, or when otherwise deemed necessary in the public interest.

(c) Registered identification numbers assigned under this rule may be used on labels required in labeling products subject to the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and numbers previously assigned or to be assigned by the Commission under such Acts may be used as and for the required name in labeling under this Act. When so used by the person or firm to whom assigned, the use of the numbers shall be construed as identifying and binding the applicant as fully and in all respects as though assigned under the specific Act for which it is used.

(d) The form to apply for a registered identification number or to update information pertaining to an existing number is found in § 303.20(d) of this chapter. The form is available upon request from the Textile Section, Enforcement Division, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20580, or on the Internet at *http://www.ftc.gov*.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961; 48 FR 12516, Mar. 25, 1983; 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998; 63 FR 71583, Dec. 28, 1998]

§ 301.27 Label and method of affixing.

At all times during the marketing of a fur product the required label shall have a minimum dimension of one and three-fourths (1¾) inches by two and three-fourths (2¾) inches (4.5 cm × 7 cm). Such label shall be of a material of sufficient durability and shall be conspicuously affixed to the product in a secure manner and with sufficient permanency to remain thereon throughout the sale, resale, distribution and handling incident thereto, and shall remain on or be firmly affixed to the respective product when sold and delivered to the purchaser and purchaser-consumer thereof.

[61 FR 67710, Dec. 24, 1996]

§ 301.28 Labels to be avoided.

Labels which are insecurely or inconspicuously attached, or which in the course of offering the fur product for sale, selling, transporting, marketing, or handling incident thereto, are likely to become detached, indistinct, obliterated, illegible, mutilated, inaccessible or inconspicuous shall not be used.

§ 301.29 Requirements in respect to disclosure on label.

(a) The required information shall be set out on the label in a legible manner and in not smaller than pica or twelve (12) point type, and all parts of the required information shall be set out in letters of equal size and conspicuousness. All of the required information with respect to the fur product shall be set out on one side of the label and no other information shall appear on such side except the lot or style designation and size. The lot or style designation may include non-deceptive terms indicating the type of garment, color of fur, and brand name for fur. The other side of the label may be used to set out any nonrequired information which is true and non-deceptive and which is not prohibited by the Act and regulations, but in all cases the animal name used shall be that set out in the Name Guide.

(b) The required information may be set out in hand printing provided it conforms to the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, and is set out in indelible ink in a clear, distinct, legible and conspicuous manner. Handwriting shall not be used in setting out any of the required information on the label.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961]

§ 301.30 Arrangement of required information on label.

(a) The applicable parts of the information required with respect to the fur to appear on labels affixed to fur products shall be set out in the following sequence:

(1) That the fur product contains or is composed of natural, pointed, bleached, dyed, tip-dyed or otherwise artificially colored fur, when such is the fact;

(2) That the fur product contains fur which has been sheared, plucked, or letout, when such is the fact;

(3) That the fur contained in the fur product originated in a particular country (when so used the name of the country should be stated in the adjective form), when such is the fact;

(4) The name or names (as set forth in the Fur Products Name Guide) of the animal or animals that produced the fur;

(5) That the fur product is composed in whole of backs or in whole or in substantial part of paws, tails, bellies, sides flanks, gills, ears, throats, heads, scrap pieces, or waste fur, when such is the fact;

(6) The name of the country of origin of any imported furs used in the fur product;

(7) Any other information required or permitted by the Act and regulations with respect to the fur.

NOTE: The information set out in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section and the term *backs* set out in paragraph (a)(5) of this section are not mandatory, but when and if used, shall be set out in the sequence noted.

(b) That part of the required information with respect to the name or registered identification number of the manufacturer or dealer may precede or follow the required information set out in paragraph (a) of this section.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961]

§ 301.31 Labeling of fur products consisting of two or more units.

(a) The label shall be attached to and appear upon each garment or separate article of wearing apparel subject to the act irrespective of whether two or more garments or articles may be sold or marketed together or in combination with each other.

(b) In the case of fur products manufactured for use in pairs or groups, only one label will be required if all units in the pair or group are of the same fur and have the same country of origin, and are firmly attached to each other when marketed and delivered in the channels of trade and to the purchaser-consumer and the information set out on the label is clearly applicable to

each unit in the pair or group and supplies the information required under the act and rules and regulations.

§ 301.32 Fur product containing material other than fur.

(a) Where a fur product contains a material other than fur the content of which is required to be disclosed on labels under other statutes administered by the Commission, such information may be set out on the same side of the label and in immediate conjunction with the information required under this Act; as for example:

100% Wool
Interlining—100% Recycled Wool
Trim—Dyed Muskrat
Fur Origin: Canada

or

Body: 100% Cotton
Lining: 100% Nylon
Collar: Dyed Mouton Lamb
Fur Origin: Argentina

(b) Information which may be desirable or necessary to fully inform the purchaser of other material content of a fur product may be set out on the same side of the label as used for disclosing the information required under the Act and rules and regulations; as for example:

Body—Leather
Trim—Dyed Mink

[26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961, as amended at 45 FR 44263, July 1, 1980]

§ 301.33 Labeling of samples.

Where samples of furs or fur products subject to the act are used to promote or effect sales of fur products, said samples, as well as the fur products purchased therefrom, shall be labeled to show the information required under the act and regulations.

§ 301.34 Misbranded or falsely invoiced fur products.

(a) If a person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to a fur product finds that a fur product is misbranded he shall correct the label or replace same with a substitute containing the required information.

(b) If a person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to a fur or fur product finds that the invoice issued to him is false or deceptive, he shall, in connection with any invoice issued by him in relation to such fur or fur product correctly set forth all of the information required by the Act and regulations in relation to such fur or fur product.

[26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961]

§ 301.35 Substitution of labels.

(a) Persons authorized under the provisions of section 3(e) of the act to substitute labels affixed to fur products may do so, provided the substitute label is complete and carries all the information required under the act and rules and regulations in the same form and manner as required in respect to the original label. The substitute label need not, however, show the name or registered number appearing on the original label if the name or registered number of the person who affixes the substitute appears thereon.

(b) The original label may be used as a substitute label provided the name or registered number of the person making the substitution, together with the item number or mark assigned by such person to said fur product for record purposes is inserted thereon without interfering with or obscuring in any manner other required information. In connection with such substitution the name or registered number as well as any record numbers appearing on the original label may be removed.

(c) Persons substituting labels under the provision of this section shall maintain the records required under § 301.41 of this part.

§ 301.36 Sectional fur products.

(a) Where a fur product is composed of two or more sections containing different animal furs the required information with respect to each section shall be separately set forth in labeling, invoicing or advertising; as for example:

Dyed Rabbit
Fur origin: France
Trimming: Dyed Mouton-processed Lamb
Fur origin: Argentina

or

Body: Dyed Kolinsky
Fur origin: Russia
Tail: Dyed Mink
Fur origin: Canada

(b) The provisions of this section shall not be interpreted so as to require the disclosure of very small amounts of different animal furs added to complete a fur product or skin such as the ears, snoot, or under part of the jaw.

§ 301.37 Manner of invoicing furs and fur products.

(a) In the invoicing of furs and fur products, all of the required information shall be set out in a clear, legible, distinct and conspicuous manner. The invoice shall be issued at the time of the sale or other transaction involving furs or fur products, but the required information need not be repeated in subsequent periodic statements of account respecting the same furs or fur products.

(b) Non-required information or representations appearing in the invoicing of furs and fur products shall in no way be false or deceptive nor include any names, terms or representations prohibited by the act and regulations. Nor shall such information or representations be set forth or used in such manner as to interfere with the required information.

§ 301.38 Advertising of furs and fur products.

(a)(1) In advertising furs or fur products, all parts of the required information shall be stated in close proximity with each other and, if printed, in legible and conspicuous type of equal size.

(2) Non-required information or representations appearing in the advertising of furs and fur products shall in no way be false or deceptive nor include any names, terms or representations prohibited by the act and regulations. Nor shall such information or representations be set forth or used in such manner as to interfere with the required information.

(b)(1) In general advertising of a group of fur products composed in whole or in part of imported furs having various countries of origin, the disclosure of such countries of origin may, by reference, be made through the use of the following statement in the advertisement in a clear and conspicuous manner:

Fur products labeled to show country of origin of imported furs

(2) The provisions of this paragraph shall not be applicable in the case of catalogue, mail order, or other types of advertising which solicit the purchase of fur products in such a manner that the purchaser or prospective purchaser would not have the opportunity of viewing the product and attached label prior to delivery thereof.

(c) In advertising of an institutional type referring only to the general nature or kind of business conducted or to the general classification of the types or kinds of furs or fur products manufactured or handled, and which advertising is not intended to aid, promote, or assist directly or indirectly in the sale or offering for sale of any specific fur products or furs, the required information need not be set forth: *Provided, however,* That if reference is made in the advertisement to a color of the fur which was caused by dyeing, bleaching or other artificial coloring, such facts shall be disclosed in the advertising, and provided further, that when animal names are used in such advertising, such names shall be those set forth in the Fur Products Name Guide. For example, the kind of advertising contemplated by this paragraph is as follows:

X Fur Company
Famous for its Black Dyed Persian Lamb Since 1900

or

X Company
Manufacturers of Fine Muskrat Coats, Capes and Stoles

§ 301.39 Exempted fur products.

(a) If the cost of any fur trim or other manufactured fur or furs contained in a fur product, exclusive of any costs incident to its incorporation therein, does not exceed one hundred fifty dollars ($150) to the manufacturer of the finished fur product, or if a manufacturer's selling price of a fur product does not exceed one hundred fifty dollars ($150), and the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section are met, the fur product shall be exempted from the requirements of the Act and regulations in this part; provided, however, that if the fur product is made of or contains any used fur, or if the fur product itself is or purports to be the whole skin of an animal with

the head, ears, paws and tail, such as a choker or scarf, the fur product is to be labeled, invoiced and advertised in accordance with the requirements of the Act and regulations in this part, regardless of the cost of the fur used in the fur product or the manufacturer's selling price. The exemption provided for herein shall not be applicable:

(1) To any dog or cat fur product;

(2) If any false, deceptive, or misleading representations as to the fur contained in the fur product are made; or

(3) If any representations as to the fur are made in labeling, invoicing, or advertising without disclosing:

(i) In the case of labels, the information required to be disclosed under section 4(2)(A), (C), and (D) of the Act;

(ii) In the case of advertising, the information required to be disclosed under section 5(a)(1), (3), and (4) of the Act; and

(iii) In the case of invoicing, the information required to be disclosed under section 5(b)(1)(A), (C), and (D) of the Act.

(b) Where a fur product is exempt under this section from the requirements of the act and regulations, the manufacturer thereof shall maintain, in addition to the other records required under the act and regulations, adequate records showing the cost of the fur used in such fur product, or copies of invoices showing the manufacturer's selling price of the fur product, provided such price is used as the basis for exemption. Such records shall be preserved for at least three years.

(c) If a fur product is exempt under this section and the manufacturer's selling price exceeds one hundred fifty dollars ($150), the manufacturer's or wholesaler's invoice shall carry information indicating such fur product is exempt from the provisions of the Act and regulations in this part; as for example: ''FPL EXEMPT.''

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961; 26 FR 3771, May 2, 1961; 34 FR 381, Jan. 10, 1969; 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998; 65 FR 82270, Dec. 28, 2000]

§ 301.40 Item number or mark to be assigned to each fur product.

(a) For the purpose of identification, each fur product shall be assigned a separate item number or mark by the manufacturer thereof: *Provided, however,* That where all of the furs used in a group of fur products are obtained through the same purchase and from the same source and all of the required information with respect to such furs is identical, then a single item number or mark may be assigned to identify all of the fur products in such group. Each number or mark so assigned shall appear on the required label and invoice pertaining to such product and used for the identification thereof in the records required by § 301.41 of this part.

(b) Any subsequent dealer in fur products may assign to each fur product handled a different item number or mark to be used on the required label and invoice pertaining to such product, in lieu of that of the manufacturer or other supplier, and for the identification of such fur product in the records required by § 301.41 of this part.

§ 301.41 Maintenance of records.

(a) Pursuant to section 3(e) and section 8(d)(1), of the Act, each manufacturer or dealer in fur products or furs (including dressers, dyers, bleachers and processors), irrespective of whether any guaranty has been given or received, shall maintain records showing all of the required information relative to such fur products or furs in such manner as will readily identify each fur or fur product manufactured or handled. Such records shall show:

(1) That the fur product contains or is composed of natural, pointed, bleached, dyed, tip-dyed or otherwise artificially colored fur, when such is the fact;

(2) That the fur product contains used fur, when such is the fact;

(3) The name or names (as set forth in the Fur Products Name Guide) of the animal or animals that produced the fur;

(4) That the fur product is composed in whole or in substantial part of paws, tails, bellies, sides, flanks, gills, ears, throats, heads, scrap pieces, or waste fur, when such is the fact;

(5) The name of the country of origin of any imported furs used in the fur products;

(6) The name, or other identification issued and registered by the Commission, of one or more of the persons who manufacture, import, sell, advertise, offer, transport or distribute the fur product in commerce.

(7) The item number assigned, or reassigned, to each fur or fur product as set out in § 301.40

(b) The purpose of the records is to permit a determination that the requirements of the Act and Regulations have been met and to establish a traceable line of continuity from raw material through processing to finished product. The records shall be preserved for at least three years.

[53 FR 31315, Aug. 18, 1988]

§ 301.42 Deception as to nature of business.

When necessary to avoid deception, the name of any person other than the manufacturer of the fur product appearing on the label or invoice shall be accompanied by appropriate words showing that the fur product was not manufactured by such person; as for example:

Distributed by _____
or
_____ Wholesalers

§ 301.43 Use of deceptive trade or corporate names, trademarks or graphic representations prohibited.

No person shall use in labeling, invoicing or advertising any fur or fur product a trade name, corporate name, trademark or other trade designation or graphic representation which misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers, prospective purchasers or the consuming public:

(a) The character of the product including method of construction;

(b) The name of the animal producing the fur;

(c) The method or manner of distribution; or

(d) The geographical or zoological origin of the fur.

[61 FR 67710, Dec. 24, 1996]

§ 301.44 Misrepresentation of prices.

(a) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product at alleged wholesale prices or at alleged manufacturers cost or less, unless such representations are true in fact; nor shall any person advertise a fur or fur product at prices purported to be reduced from what are in fact fictitious prices, nor at a purported reduction in price when such purported reduction is in fact fictitious.

(b) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product with comparative prices and percentage savings claims except on the basis of current market values or unless the time of such compared price is given.

(c) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product as being ''made to sell for'', being ''worth'' or ''valued at'' a certain price, or by similar statements, unless such claim or representation is true in fact.

(d) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product as being of a certain value or quality unless such claims or representations are true in fact.

(e) Persons making pricing claims or representations of the types described in paragraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) of this section shall maintain full and adequate records disclosing the facts upon which such claims or representations are based.

(f) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product by the use of an illustration which shows such fur or fur product to be a higher priced product than the one so advertised.

(g) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product as being ''bankrupt stock'', ''samples'', ''show room models'', ''Hollywood Models'', ''Paris Models'', ''French Models'', ''Parisian Creations'', ''Furs Worn by Society Women'', ''Clearance Stock'', ''Auction Stock'', ''Stock of a business in a state of liquidation'', or similar statements, unless such representations or claims are true in fact.

§ 301.45 Representations as to construction of fur products.

(a) No misleading nor deceptive statements as to the construction of fur products shall be used directly or

indirectly in labeling, invoicing or advertising such products. (For example, a fur product made by the skin-on-skin method should not be represented as having been made by the letout method.)

(b) Where a fur product is made by the method known in the trade as letting-out, or is made of fur which has been sheared or plucked, such facts may be set out in labels, invoices and advertising.

§ 301.46 Reference to guaranty by Government prohibited.

No representation nor suggestion that a fur or fur product is guaranteed under the act by the Government, or any branch thereof, shall be made in the labeling, invoicing or advertising in connection therewith.

§ 301.47 Form of separate guaranty.

The following is a suggested form of separate guaranty under section 10 of the Act which may be used by a guarantor residing in the United States, on and as part of an invoice in which the merchandise covered is listed and specified and which shows the date of such document, the date of shipment of the merchandise and the signature and address of the guarantor:

We guarantee that the fur products or furs specified herein are not misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Fur Products Labeling Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

§ 301.48 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.

(a)(1) Under section 10 of the Act any person residing in the United States and handling fur or fur products may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. When filed with the Commission a continuing guaranty shall be fully executed in duplicate. Forms for use in preparing continuing guaranties shall be supplied by the Commission upon request.

(2) Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission shall continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor shall promptly report any change in business status to the Commission.

(3) The prescribed form for a continuing guaranty is found in § 303.38(b) of this chapter. The form is available upon request from the Textile Section, Enforcement Division, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20580.

(b) Any person who has a continuing guaranty on file with the Commission may, during the effective date of the guaranty, give notice of such fact by setting forth on the invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of the product guaranteed the following: ''Continuing guaranty under the Fur Products Labeling Act filed with the Federal Trade Commission.''

(c) Any person who falsely represents in writing that he has a continuing guaranty on file with the Federal Trade Commission when such is not a fact shall be deemed to have furnished a false guaranty under section 10(b) of the Act.

[26 FR 3188, Apr. 14, 1961, as amended at 48 FR 12517, Mar. 25, 1983; 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998; 63 FR 71583, Dec. 28, 1998]

§ 301.48a Guaranties not received in good faith.

A guaranty shall not be deemed to have been received in good faith within the meaning of section 10(a) of the Act:

(a) Unless the recipient of such guaranty shall have examined the required label, required invoice and advertisement relating to the fur product or fur so guaranteed;

(b) If the recipient of the guaranty has knowledge that the fur or fur product guaranteed is misbranded, falsely invoiced or falsely advertised.

[26 FR 3188, Apr. 14, 1961]

§ 301.49 Deception in general.

No furs nor fur products shall be labeled, invoiced, or advertised in any manner which is false, misleading or deceptive in any respect.

PART 303—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER THE TEXTILE FIBER PRODUCTS IDENTIFICATION ACT

Sec.

303.1 Terms defined.
303.2 General requirements.
303.3 Fibers present in amounts of less than 5 percent.
303.4 English language requirement.

303.5 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks prohibited.
303.6 Generic names of fibers to be used.
303.7 Generic names and definitions for manufactured fibers.
303.8 Procedure for establishing generic names for manufactured fibers.
303.9 Use of fur-bearing animal names and symbols prohibited.
303.10 Fiber content of special types of products.
303.11 Floor coverings containing backings, fillings, and paddings.
303.12 Trimmings of household textile articles.
303.13 Sale of remnants and products made of remnants.
303.14 Products containing unknown fibers.
303.15 Required label and method of affixing.
303.16 Arrangement and disclosure of information on labels.
303.17 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names on labels.
303.18 Terms implying fibers not present.
303.19 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.
303.20 Registered identification numbers.
303.21 Marking of samples, swatches, or specimens and products sold therefrom.
303.22 Products containing linings, interlinings, fillings, and paddings.
303.23 Textile fiber products containing superimposed or added fibers.
303.24 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.
303.25 Sectional disclosure of content.
303.26 Ornamentation.
303.27 Use of the term ''All'' or ''100%.''
303.28 Products contained in packages.
303.29 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.
303.30 Textile fiber products in form for consumer.
303.31 Invoice in lieu of label.
303.32 Products containing reused stuffing.
303.33 Country where textile fiber products are processed or manufactured.
303.34 Country of origin in mail order advertising.
303.35 Use of terms ''virgin'' or ''new.''
303.36 Form of separate guaranty.
303.37 Form of continuing guaranty from seller to buyer.
303.38 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.
303.39 Maintenance of records.
303.40 Use of terms in written advertisements that imply presence of a fiber.
303.41 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names in advertising.
303.42 Arrangement of information in advertising textile fiber products.
303.43 Fiber content tolerances.
303.44 Products not intended for uses subject to the act.
303.45 Exclusions from the act.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 70 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, unless otherwise noted.

§ 303.1 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) The term *Act* means the *Textile Fiber Products Identification Act* (approved September 2, 1958, 85th Congress, 2d Sess.; 15 U.S.C. 70, 72 Stat. 1717).

(b) The terms *rule*, *rules*, *regulations*, and *rules and regulations* mean the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission pursuant to section 7(c) of the Act.

(c) The definition of terms contained in section 2 of the Act shall be applicable also to such terms when used in rules promulgated under the Act.

(d) The term *United States* means the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Territories and possessions of the United States.

(e) The terms *required information* and *information required* mean such information as is required to be disclosed on labels or invoices and in advertising under the Act and regulations.

(f) The terms *label*, *labels*, *labeled*, and *labeling* mean the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification, or authorized substitute therefor, required to be on or affixed to textile fiber products by the Act and regulations and on which the information required is to appear.

(g) The terms *marketing or handling* and *marketed or handled*, when applied to textile fiber products, mean any one or all of the transactions set forth in section 3 of the Act.

(h) The terms *invoice* and *invoice or other paper* mean an account, order, memorandum, list, or catalog, which is issued to a purchaser, consignee, bailee, correspondent, agent, or any other person, in writing or in some other form capable of being read and preserved in a tangible form, in connection with the marketing or handling of any textile fiber product transported or delivered to such person.

(i) The term *outer coverings of furniture, mattresses, and box springs* means those coverings as are permanently incorporated in such articles.

(j) The term *wearing apparel* means any costume or article of clothing or covering for any part of the body worn or intended to be worn by individuals.

(k) The term *beddings* means sheets, covers, blankets, comforters, pillows, pillowcases, quilts, bedspreads, pads, and all other textile fiber products used or intended to be used on or about a bed or other place for reclining or sleeping but shall not include furniture, mattresses or box springs.

(l) The term *headwear* means any textile fiber product worn exclusively on or about the head or face by individuals.

(m) The term *backings,* when applied to floor coverings, means that part of a floor covering to which the pile, face, or outer surface is woven, tufted, hooked, knitted, or otherwise attached, and which provides the structural base of the floor covering. The term *backing* shall also include fabrics attached to the structural base of the floor covering in such a way as to form a part of such structural base, but shall not include the pile, face, or outer surface of the floor covering or any part thereof.

(n) The term *elastic material* means a fabric composed of yarn consisting of an elastomer or a covered elastomer.

(o) The term *coated fabric* means any fabric which is coated, filled, impregnated, or laminated with a continuous-film-forming polymeric composition in such a manner that the weight added to the base fabric is at least 35 percent of the weight of the fabric before coating, filling, impregnation, or lamination.

(p) The term *upholstered product* means articles of furniture containing stuffing and shall include mattresses and box springs.

(q) The term *ornamentation* means any fibers or yarns imparting a visibly discernible pattern or design to a yarn or fabric.

(r) The term *fiber trademark* means a word or words used by a person to identify a particular fiber produced or sold by him and to distinguish it from fibers of the same generic class produced or sold by others. Such term shall not include any trade mark, product mark, house mark, trade name or other name which does not identify a particular fiber.

(s) The term *wool* means the fiber from the fleece of the sheep or lamb or hair of the Angora or Cashmere goat (and may include the so-called specialty fibers from the hair of the camel, alpaca, llama, and vicuna) which has never been reclaimed from any woven or felted wool product.

(t) The term *recycled wool* means (1) the resulting fiber when wool has been woven or felted into a wool product which, without ever having been utilized in any way by the ultimate consumer, subsequently has been made into a fibrous state, or (2) the resulting fiber when wool or reprocessed wool has been spun, woven, knitted, or felted into a wool product which, after having been used in any way by the ultimate consumer, subsequently has been made into a fibrous state.

(u) The terms *mail order catalog* and *mail order promotional material* mean any materials, used in the direct sale or direct offering for sale of textile products, that are disseminated to ultimate consumers in print or by electronic means, other than by broadcast, and that solicit ultimate consumers to purchase such textile products by mail, telephone, electronic mail, or some other method without examining the actual product purchased.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 45 FR 44263, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985; 63 FR 7517, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 303.2 General requirements.

(a) Each textile fiber product, except those exempted or excluded under section 12 of the Act, shall be labeled or invoiced in conformity with the requirements of the Act and regulations.

(b) Any advertising of textile fiber products subject to the Act shall be in conformity with the requirements of the Act and regulations.

(c) The requirements of the Act and regulations shall not be applicable to products required to be labeled under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 (Pub. L. 76–850, 15 U.S.C. 68, 54 Stat. 1128).

(d) Any person marketing or handling textile fiber products who shall cause or direct a processor or finisher to label, invoice, or otherwise identify any textile fiber product with required information shall be responsible under

the Act and regulations for any failure of compliance with the Act and regulations by reason of any statement or omission in such label, invoice, or other means of identification utilized in accordance with his direction: *Provided*, That nothing herein shall relieve the processor or finisher of any duty or liability to which he may be subject under the Act and regulations.

§ 303.3 Fibers present in amounts of less than 5 percent.

(a) Except as permitted in sections 4(b)(1) and 4(b)(2) of the Act, as amended, no fiber present in the amount of less than 5 percent of the total fiber weight shall be designated by its generic name or fiber trademark in disclosing the constituent fibers in required information, but shall be designated as ''other fiber.'' When more than one of such fibers are present in a product, they shall be designated in the aggregate as ''other fibers.'' Provided, however, that nothing in this section shall be construed as prohibiting the disclosure of any fiber present in a textile fiber product which has a clearly established and definite functional significance when present in the amount contained in such product, as for example:

96 percent Acetate
4 percent Spandex.

(b) In making such disclosure, all of the provisions of the Act and regulations in this part setting forth the manner and form of disclosure of fiber content information, including the provisions of §§ 303.17 and 303.41 of this part relating to the use of generic names and fiber trademarks, shall be applicable.

[63 FR 7518, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 303.4 English language requirement.

All required information shall be set out in the English language. If the required information appears in a language other than English, it also shall appear in the English language. The provisions of this section shall not apply to advertisements in foreign language newspapers or periodicals, but such advertising shall in all other respects comply with the Act and regulations.

§ 303.5 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks prohibited.

(a) In disclosing required information, words or terms shall not be designated by ditto marks or appear in footnotes referred to by asterisks or other symbols in required information, and shall not be abbreviated except as permitted in § 303.33(e) of this part.

(b) Where the generic name of a textile fiber is required to appear in immediate conjunction with a fiber trademark in advertising, labeling, or invoicing, a disclosure of the generic name by means of a footnote, to which reference is made by use of an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the fiber trademark, shall not be sufficient in itself to constitute compliance with the Act and regulations.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 65 FR 75156, Dec. 1, 2000]

§ 303.6 Generic names of fibers to be used.

(a) Except where another name is permitted under the Act and regulations, the respective generic names of all fibers present in the amount of 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the textile fiber product shall be used when naming fibers in the required information; as for example: ''cotton,'' ''rayon,'' ''silk,'' ''linen,'' ''nylon,'' etc.

(b) Where a textile fiber product contains the hair or fiber of a fur-bearing animal present in the amount 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the product, the name of the animal producing such fiber may be used in setting forth the required information, provided the name of such animal is used in conjunction with the words ''fiber,'' ''hair,'' or ''blend;'' as for example:

80 percent Rabbit hair.
20 percent Nylon.

or

80 percent Silk.
20 percent Mink fiber.

(c) The term *fur fiber* may be used to describe the hair or fur fiber or mixtures thereof of any animal or animals other than the sheep, lamb, Angora goat, Cashmere goat, camel, alpaca, llama or vicuna where such hair or fur fiber or mixture is present in the

amount of 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the textile fiber product and no direct or indirect representations are made as to the animal or animals from which the fiber so designated was obtained; as for example:

60 percent Cotton.
40 percent Fur fiber.

or

50 percent Nylon.
30 percent Mink hair.
20 percent Fur fiber.

(d) Where textile fiber products subject to the Act contain (1) wool or (2) recycled wool in amounts of five per centum or more of the total fiber weight, such fibers shall be designated and disclosed as wool or recycled wool as the case may be.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 45 FR 44263, July 1, 1980]

§ 303.7 Generic names and definitions for manufactured fibers.

Pursuant to the provisions of section 7(c) of the Act, the Commission hereby establishes the generic names for manufactured fibers, together with their respective definitions, set forth in this section, and the generic names for manufactured fibers, together with their respective definitions, set forth in International Organization for Standardization ISO 2076: 1999(E), ''Textiles—Man-made fibres—Generic names.'' This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., 13th floor, New York, NY 10036. Copies may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html.*

(a) *Acrylic.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of acrylonitrile units

$$(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{CH}-).$$

(b) *Modacrylic.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of less than 85 percent but at least 35 percent by weight of acrylonitrile units

$$(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{CH}-),$$

except fibers qualifying under paragraph (j)(2) of this section and fibers qualifying under paragraph (q) of this section. (Sec. 7, 72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. section 70e)

(c) *Polyester.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85% by weight of an ester of a substituted aromatic carboxylic acid, including but not restricted to substituted terephthalate units,

$$p(-R-O-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-C_6H_4-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-),$$

and para substituted hydroxy-benzoate units,

$$p(-R-O-C_6H_4-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-).$$

Where the fiber is formed by the interaction of two or more chemically distinct polymers (of which none exceeds 85% by weight), and contains ester groups as the dominant functional unit (at least 85% by weight of the total polymer content of the fiber), and which, if stretched at least 100%, durably and rapidly reverts substantially to its unstretched length when the tension is removed, the term *elasterell-p* may be used as a generic description of the fiber.

(d) *Rayon*—A manufactured fiber composed of regenerated cellulose, as well as manufactured fibers composed

of regenerated cellulose in which substituents have replaced not more than 15% of the hydrogens of the hydroxyl groups. Where the fiber is composed of cellulose precipitated from an organic solution in which no substitution of the hydroxyl groups takes place and no chemical intermediates are formed, the term *lyocell* may be used as a generic description of the fiber.

(e) *Acetate*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is cellulose acetate. Where not less than 92 percent of the hydroxyl groups are acetylated, the term triacetate may be used as a generic description of the fiber.

(f) *Saran*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 80 percent by weight of vinylidene chloride units ($-CH_9-CCl_2-$).

(g) *Azlon*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is composed of any regenerated naturally occurring proteins.

(h) *Nytril*. A manufactured fiber containing at least 85 percent of a long chain polymer of vinylidene dinitrile ($-CH_2-C(CN)_2-$) where the vinylidene dinitrile content is no less than every other unit in the polymer chain.

(i) *Nylon*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long-chain synthetic polyamide in which less than 85 percent of the amide

$$\left(\begin{array}{c}-C-NH-\\ \|\\ O\end{array}\right)$$

linkages are attached directly to two aromatic rings.

(j) *Rubber*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is comprised of natural or synthetic rubber, including the following categories:

(1) A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a hydrocarbon such as natural rubber, polyisoprene, polybutadiene, copolymers of dienes and hydrocarbons, or amorphous (noncrystalline) polyolefins.

(2) A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a copolymer of acrylonitrile and a diene (such as butadiene) composed of not more than 50 percent but at least 10 percent by weight of acrylonitrile units

$$\left(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{CH}-\right)$$

The term *lastrile* may be used as a generic description for fibers falling within this category.

(3) A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a polychloroprene or a copolymer of chloroprene in which at least 35 percent by weight of the fiber-forming substance is composed of chloroprene units

$$\left(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{C}=CH-CH_2-\right).$$

(k) *Spandex*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long chain synthetic polymer comprised of at least 85 percent of a segmented polyurethane.

(l) *Vinal*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 50 percent by weight of vinyl alcohol units ($-CH_2-CHOH-$), and in which the total of the vinyl alcohol units and any one or more of the various acetal units is at least 85 percent by weight of the fiber.

(m) *Olefin*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of ethylene, propylene, or other olefin units, except amorphous (noncrystalline) polyolefins qualifying under paragraph (j)(1) of this section [Rule 7]. Where the fiber-forming substance is a cross-linked synthetic polymer, with low but significant crystallinity, composed of at least 95 percent by weight of ethylene and at least one other olefin unit, and the fiber is substantially elastic and heat resistant, the term *lastol* may be used as a generic description of the fiber.

(n) *Vinyon*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is

any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of vinyl chloride units ($-CH_2-CHCl-$).

(o) *Metallic*. A manufactured fiber composed of metal, plastic-coated metal, metal-coated plastic, or a core completely covered by metal.

(p) *Glass*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is glass.

(q) *Anidex*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 50 percent by weight of one or more esters of a monohydric alcohol and acrylic acid, $CH_2=CH—COOH$.

(r) *Novoloid*. A manufactured fiber containing at least 85 percent by weight of a cross-linked novolac.

(s) *Aramid*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long-chain synthetic polyamide in which at least 85 percent of the amide

$$\left(-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NH- \right)$$

linkages are attached directly to two aromatic rings.

(t) *Sulfar*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long chain synthetic polysulfide in which at least 85% of the sulfide (—S—) linkages are attached directly to two (2) aromatic rings.

(u) *PBI*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long chain aromatic polymer having reoccurring imidazole groups as an integral part of the polymer chain.

(v) *Elastoester*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long-chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 50% by weight of aliphatic polyether and at least 35% by weight of polyester, as defined in 16 CFR 303.7(c).

(w) *Melamine*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a synthetic polymer composed of at least 50% by weight of a cross-linked melamine polymer.

(x) *Fluoropolymer*. A manufactured fiber containing at least 95% of a long-chain polymer synthesized from aliphatic fluorocarbon monomers.

(y) *PLA*. A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is composed of at least 85% by weight of lactic acid ester units derived from naturally occurring sugars.

(Sec. 6, 72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. 70e)

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959; 24 FR 5737, July 17, 1959, as amended at 31 FR 2652, Feb. 11, 1966; 31 FR 3002, Feb. 22, 1966; 34 FR 14595, Sept. 19, 1969; 38 FR 21782, Aug. 13, 1973; 38 FR 34115, Dec. 11, 1973; 39 FR 1834, Jan. 15, 1974; 51 FR 20807, 20809, June 9, 1986; 61 FR 16387, Apr. 15, 1996; 62 FR 28344, May 23, 1997; 63 FR 7518, Feb. 13, 1998; 63 FR 36174, July 2, 1998; 63 FR 71583, Dec. 28, 1998; 65 FR 75156, Dec. 1, 2000; 67 FR 4903, Feb. 1, 2002; 67 FR 70839, Nov. 27, 2002; 68 FR 3816, Jan. 27, 2003; 69 FR 18803, Apr. 9, 2004]

§ 303.8 Procedure for establishing generic names for manufactured fibers.

(a) Prior to the marketing or handling of a manufactured fiber for which no generic name has been established or otherwise recognized by the Commission, the manufacturer or producer thereof shall file a written application with the Commission, requesting the establishment of a generic name for such fiber, stating therein:

(1) The reasons why the applicant's fiber should not be identified by one of the generic names established by the Commission in § 303.7 of this part;

(2) The chemical composition of the fiber, including the fiber-forming substances and respective percentages thereof, together with samples of the fiber;

(3) Suggested names for consideration as generic, together with a proposed definition for the fiber;

(4) Any other information deemed by the applicant to be pertinent to the application, including technical data in the form of test methods;

(5) The earliest date on which the application proposes to market or handle the fiber in commerce for other than developmental or testing purposes.

(b) Upon receipt of the application, the Commission will, within sixty (60) days, either deny the application or assign to the fiber a numerical or alphabetical symbol for temporary use during further consideration of such application.

(c) After taking the necessary procedure in consideration of the application, the Commission in due course shall establish a generic name or advise the applicant of its refusal to grant the application and designate the proper existing generic name for the fiber.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 63 FR 7518, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 303.9 Use of fur-bearing animal names and symbols prohibited.

(a) The advertising or the labeling of a textile fiber product shall not contain any names, words, depictions, descriptive matter, or other symbols which connote or signify a fur-bearing animal, unless such product or the part thereof in connection with which the names, words, depictions, descriptive matter, or other symbols are used is a fur product within the meaning of the Fur Products Labeling Act.

(b) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section and § 303.6 of this part, a textile fiber product shall not be described or referred to in any manner in an advertisement or label with:

(1) The name or part of the name of a fur-bearing animal, whether as a single word or a combination word, or any coined word which is phonetically similar to a fur-bearing animal name, or which is only a slight variation in spelling of a fur-bearing animal name or part of the name. As for example, such terms as ''Ermine,'' ''Mink,'' ''Persian,'' ''Broadtail,'' ''Beaverton,'' ''Marmink,'' ''Sablelon,'' ''Lam,'' ''Pershian,'' ''Minx,'' or similar terms shall not be used.

(2) Any word or name symbolic of a fur-bearing animal by reason of conventional usage or by reason of its close relationship with fur-bearing animals. As for example, such terms as ''guardhair,'' ''underfur,'' and ''mutation,'' or similar terms, shall not be used.

(c) Nothing contained herein shall prevent:

(1) The nondeceptive use of animal names or symbols in referring to a textile fiber product where the fur of such animal is not commonly or commercially used in fur products, as that term is defined in the Fur Products Labeling Act, as for example ''kitten soft'', ''Bear Brand'', etc.

(2) The nondeceptive use of a trademark or trade name containing the name, symbol, or depiction of a fur-bearing animal unless:

(i) The textile fiber product in connection with which such trademark or trade name is used simulates a fur or fur product; or

(ii) Such trademark or trade name is used in any advertisement of a textile fiber product together with any depiction which has the appearance of a fur or fur product; or

(iii) The use of such trademark or trade name is prohibited by the Fur Products Labeling Act.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 28 FR 722, Jan. 16, 1963]

§ 303.10 Fiber content of special types of products.

(a) Where a textile product is made wholly of elastic yarn or material, with minor parts of non-elastic material for structural purposes, it shall be identified as to the percentage of the elastomer, together with the percentage of all textile coverings of the elastomer and all other yarns or materials used therein.

Where a textile fiber product is made in part of elastic material and in part of other fabric, the fiber content of such fabric shall be set forth sectionally by percentages as in the case of other fabrics. In such cases the elastic material may be disclosed by describing the material as elastic followed by a listing in order of predominance by weight of the fibers used in such elastic, including the elastomer, where such fibers are present by 5 per centum or more with the designation ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' appearing last when fibers required to be so designated are present. An example of labeling under this paragraph is:

Front and back non-elastic sections:
50 percent Acetate.
50 percent Cotton.
Elastic: Rayon, cotton, nylon, rubber.

(b) Where drapery or upholstery fabrics are manufactured on hand-operated looms for a particular customer after the sale of such fabric has been consummated, and the amount of the

order does not exceed 100 yards (91.44 m) of fabric, the required fiber content disclosure may be made by listing the fibers present in order of predominance by weight with any fiber or fibers required to be designated as ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' appearing last, as for example:

Rayon
Wool
Acetate
Metallic
Other fibers

(c)(1) Where a manufactured textile fiber is essentially a physical combination or mixture of two or more chemically distinct constituents or components combined at or prior to the time of extrusion, which components if separately extruded would each fall within different existing definitions of textile fibers as set forth in § 303.7 of this part (Rule 7), the fiber content disclosure as to such fiber, shall for all purposes under the regulations in this part (i) disclose such fact in the required fiber content information by appropriate nondeceptive descriptive terminology, such as ''biconstituent fiber'' or ''multiconstituent fiber,'' (ii) set out the components contained in the fiber by the appropriate generic name specified in § 303.7 of this part (Rule 7) in the order of their predominance by weight, and (iii) set out the respective percentages of such components by weight.

(2) If the components of such fibers are of a matrix-fibril configuration, the term *matrix-fibril fiber* or *matrix fiber* may be used in setting forth the information required by this paragraph.

(3) Examples of proper fiber content designations under this paragraph are:

100% Biconstituent Fiber
(65% Nylon, 35% Polyester)
80% Matrix Fiber (60% Nylon, 40% Polyester)
15% Polyester
5% Rayon

(4) All of the provisions as to fiber content disclosures contained in the Act and regulations, including the provisions relative to fiber content tolerances and disclosures of fibers present in amounts of less than 5 percentum of the total fiber weight, shall also be applicable to the designations and disclosures prescribed by this paragraph.

[25 FR 7044, July 26, 1960, as amended at 30 FR 14253, Nov. 13, 1965; 34 FR 12134 July 19, 1969; 61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

§ 303.11 Floor coverings containing backings, fillings, and paddings.

In disclosing the required fiber content information as to floor coverings containing exempted backings, fillings, or paddings, the disclosure shall be made in such manner as to indicate that it relates only to the face, pile, or outer surface of the floor covering and not to the backing, filling, or padding. Examples of the form of marking these types of floor coverings as to fiber content are as follows:

100% Cotton Pile
Face—60% Rayon, 40% Cotton
Outer Surface—100% Wool

§ 303.12 Trimmings of household textile articles.

(a) Trimmings incorporated in articles of wearing apparel and other household textile articles may, among other forms of trim, include: (1) Rickrack, tape, belting, binding, braid, labels (either required or non-required), collars, cuffs, wrist bands, leg bands, waist bands, gussets, gores, welts, and findings, including superimposed garters in hosiery, and elastic materials and threads inserted in or added to the basic product or garment in minor proportion for holding, reinforcing or similar structural purposes; (2) decorative trim, whether applied by embroidery, overlay, applique, or attachment; and (3) decorative patterns or designs which are an integral part of the fabric out of which the household textile article is made: *Provided,* That such decorative trim or decorative pattern or design, as specified in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section, does not exceed 15 percent of the surface area of the household textile article. If no representation is made as to the fiber content of the decorative trim or decoration, as provided for in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section, the fiber content designation of the basic fabric shall be followed by the statement ''exclusive of decoration.''

(b) The term *findings* may also include elastic material which constitutes a part of the basic fabric or material out of which the household textile article is made, where such elastic material does not exceed 20 percent of the surface area of the household textile article: *Provided*, That the required information as to fiber content of products subject to this paragraph is followed by the statement ''exclusive of elastic.''

§ 303.13 Sale of remnants and products made of remnants.

(a) In disclosing the required fiber content information as to remnants of fabric which are for practical purposes of unknown or undeterminable fiber content:

(1) The fiber content disclosure of such remnants of fabrics may be designated in the required information as ''remnants of undetermined fiber content.''

(2) Where such remnants of fabrics are displayed for sale at retail, a conspicuous sign may, in lieu of individual labeling, be used in immediate conjunction with such display, stating with respect to required fiber content disclosure that the goods are ''remnants of undetermined fiber content.''

(3) Where textile fiber products are made of such remnants, the required fiber content information of the products may be disclosed as ''made of remnants of undetermined fiber content.'' If any representations as to fiber content are made with respect to such remnants, the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply.

(b) Where remnants of fabrics are marketed or handled in bales, bundles, or packages and are all of the same fiber content or are designated in the manner permitted by paragraph (a) of this section, the individual remnants need not be labeled if the bales, bundles, or packages containing such remnants are labeled with the required information including fiber content percentages or the designation permitted by paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) Where remnants of fabrics of the same fiber content are displayed for sale at retail, a conspicuous sign may, in lieu of individual labeling, be used in immediate conjunction with such display, stating the fiber content information with respect to such remnants; as for example: ''remnants, 100 percent cotton,'' ''remnants, 50 percent rayon, 50 percent acetate,'' etc.

§ 303.14 Products containing unknown fibers.

(a) Where a textile fiber product is made from miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, secondhand materials, textile by-products, or waste materials of unknown, and for practical purposes, undeterminable fiber content, the required fiber content disclosure may, when truthfully applicable, in lieu of the fiber content disclosure otherwise required by the Act and regulations, indicate that such product is composed of miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, textile by-products, secondhand materials (in case of secondhand materials, words of like import may be used) or waste materials, as the case may be, of unknown or undetermined fiber content, as for example:

Made of miscellaneous scraps of undetermined fiber content
100% unknown fibers—rags
All undetermined fibers—textile by-products
100% miscellaneous odd lots of undetermined fiber content
Secondhand materials—fiber content unknown
Made of unknown fibers—waste materials

(b) Where a textile fiber product is made in part from miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, textile by-products, second-hand materials or waste materials of unknown and, for practical purposes, undeterminable fiber content together with a percentage of known or determinable fibers, the required fiber content disclosure may, when truthfully applicable, in lieu of the fiber content disclosure otherwise required by the Act and regulations, indicate the percentage of miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, secondhand materials (in case of secondhand materials, words of like import may be used), textile by-products, or waste materials of unknown or undetermined fiber content and the percentage of known fibers, as for example:

45% Rayon
30% Acetate
25% Miscellaneous scraps of undetermined fiber content.

60% Cotton
40% Unknown fibers—waste materials.

40% Acrylic
20% Modacrylic
40% Undetermined fibers—odd lots.

50% Polyester
30% Cotton
20% Textile by-products of undetermined fiber content.

50% Rayon
50% Secondhand materials—fiber content unknown.

45% Acetate
30% Cotton
25% Miscellaneous rags—undetermined fiber content.

(c) No representation as to fiber content shall be made as to any textile product or any portion of a textile fiber product designated as composed of unknown or undetermined fibers. If any such representation is made, a full and complete fiber content disclosure shall be required.

(d) Nothing contained in this section shall excuse a full disclosure as to fiber content if the same is known or practically ascertainable.

[25 FR 4317, May 14, 1960]

§ 303.15 Required label and method of affixing.

(a) A label is required to be affixed to each textile product and, where required, to its package or container in a secure manner. Such label shall be conspicuous and shall be of such durability as to remain attached to the product and its package throughout any distribution, sale, resale and until sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

(b) Each textile fiber product with a neck must have a label disclosing the country of origin affixed to the inside center of the neck midway between the shoulder seams or in close proximity to another label affixed to the inside center of the neck. The fiber content and RN or name of the company may be disclosed on the same label as the country of origin or on another conspicuous and readily accessible label or labels on the inside or outside of the garment. On all other textile products, the required information shall be disclosed on a conspicuous and readily accessible label or labels on the inside or outside of the product. The country of origin disclosure must always appear on the front side of the label. Other required information may appear either on the front side or the reverse side of a label, provided that the information is conspicuous and readily accessible.

(c) In the case of hosiery products, this section shall not be construed as requiring the affixing of a label to each hosiery product contained in a package if, (1) such hosiery products are intended for sale to the ultimate consumer in such package, (2) such package has affixed to it a label bearing the required information for the hosiery products contained in the package, and (3) the information on the label affixed to the package is equally applicable to each textile fiber product contained therein.

(d) Socks provided for in subheading 6115.92.90, 6115.93.90, 6115.99.18, 6111.20.60, 6111.30.50, or 6111.90.50 of the Harmonized Tariff Schedule of the United States, as in effect on September 1, 2003, shall be marked, as legibly, indelibly, and permanently as the nature of the article or package will permit, to disclose the English name of the country of origin. This disclosure shall appear on the front of the package, adjacent to the size designation of the product, and shall be set forth in such a manner as to be clearly legible, conspicuous, and readily accessible to the ultimate consumer. *Provided, however,* any package that contains several different types of goods and includes socks classified under subheading 6115.92.90, 6115.93.90, 6115.99.18, 6111.20.60, 6111.30.50, or 6111.90.50 of the Harmonized Tariff Schedule of the United States, as in effect on September 1, 2003, shall not be subject to the requirements of this subsection.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985, as amended at 63 FR 7518, Feb. 13, 1998; 70 FR 73369, Dec. 12, 2005]

§ 303.16 Arrangement and disclosure of information on labels.

(a) Subject to the provisions of § 303.15(b), information required by the Act and regulations in this part may appear on any label or labels attached to the textile fiber product, including the care label required by 16 CFR part 423, provided all the pertinent requirements of the Act and regulations in

this part are met and so long as the combination of required information and non-required information is not misleading. The required information shall include the following:

(1) The generic names and percentages by weight of the constituent fibers present in the textile fiber product, excluding permissive ornamentation, in amounts of 5 percent or more and any fibers disclosed in accordance with § 303.3(a) shall appear in order of predominance by weight with any percentage of fiber or fibers required to be designated as ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' appearing last.

(2) The name, provided for in § 303.19, or registered identification number issued by the Commission, of the manufacturer or of one or more persons marketing or handling the textile fiber product.

(3) The name of the country where such product was processed or manufactured, as provided for in § 303.33.

(b) All parts of the required information shall be set forth in such a manner as to be clearly legible, conspicuous, and readily accessible to the prospective purchaser. All parts of the fiber content information shall appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(c) Subject to the provisions of § 303.17, any non-required information or representations placed on the product shall not minimize, detract from, or conflict with required information and shall not be false, deceptive, or misleading.

(d) Non-deceptive terms which are properly and truthfully descriptive of a fiber may be used in conjunction with the generic name of such fiber; as for example: ''100 percent cross-linked rayon,'' ''100 percent solution dyed acetate,'' ''100 percent combed cotton,'' ''100 percent nylon 66,'' etc.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 25 FR 4317, May 14, 1960; 30 FR 14254, Nov. 13, 1965; 30 FR 15313, Dec. 11, 1965; 50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985; 53 FR 31315, Aug. 18, 1988; 63 FR 7518, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 303.17 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names on labels.

(a) A non-deceptive fiber trademark may be used on a label in conjunction with the generic name of the fiber to which it relates. Where such a trademark is placed on a label in conjunction with the required information, the generic name of the fiber must appear in immediate conjunction therewith, and such trademark and generic name must appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(b) Where a generic name or a fiber trademark is used on any label, whether required or non-required, a full and complete fiber content disclosure shall be made in accordance with the Act and regulations the first time the generic name or fiber trademark appears on the label.

(c) If a fiber trademark is not used in the required information, but is used elsewhere on the label as non-required information, the generic name of the fiber shall accompany the fiber trademark in legible and conspicuous type or lettering the first time the trademark is used.

(d) No fiber trademark or generic name shall be used in non-required information on a label in such a manner as to be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content, or to indicate directly or indirectly that a textile fiber product is composed wholly or in part of a particular fiber, when such is not the case.

§ 303.18 Terms implying fibers not present.

Words, coined words, symbols or depictions, (a) which constitute or imply the name or designation of a fiber which is not present in the product, (b) which are phonetically similar to the name or designation of such a fiber, or (c) which are only a slight variation of spelling from the name or designation of such a fiber shall not be used in such a manner as to represent or imply that such fiber is present in the product.

[30 FR 13693, Oct. 28, 1965]

§ 303.19 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.

(a) The name required by the Act to be used on labels shall be the name under which the person is doing business. Where a person has a word trademark, used as a house mark, registered in the United States Patent Office, such word trademark may be used on

labels in lieu of the name otherwise required: *Provided*, The owner of such word trademark furnishes the Commission a copy of the registration prior to its use. No trademark, trade names, or other names except those provided for above shall be used for required identification purposes.

(b) Registered identification numbers, as provided for in § 303.20 of this part, may be used for identification purposes in lieu of the required name.

§ 303.20 Registered identification numbers.

(a) Registered numbers for use as the required identification in lieu of the name on textile fiber product labels, as provided in section 4(b)(3) of the Act, will be issued by the Commission to qualified persons residing in the United States upon receipt of an application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b)(1) Registered identification numbers shall be used only by the person or concern to whom they are issued, and such numbers are not transferable or assignable.

(2) Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation whenever any such number was procured or has been used improperly or contrary to the requirements of the Acts administered by the Federal Trade Commission, and regulations promulgated thereunder, or when otherwise deemed necessary in the public interest.

(3) Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation if the Commission fails to receive prompt notification of any change in name, business address, or legal business status of a person or firm to whom a registered identification number has been assigned, by application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (d) of this section, reflecting the current name, business address, and legal business status of the person or firm.

(c) Registered identification numbers assigned under this section may be used on labels required in labeling products subject to the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and Fur Products Labeling Act, and numbers previously assigned by the Commission under such Acts may be used as and for the required name in labeling under this Act. When so used by the person or firm to whom assigned, the use of the numbers shall be construed as identifying and binding the applicant as fully and in all respects as though assigned under the specific Act for which it is used.

(d) Form to apply for a registered identification number or to update information pertaining to an existing number (the form is available upon request from: Enforcement Division, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580, or on the Internet at *http://www.ftc.gov;* application may also be made directly on the Internet):

APPLICATION FOR A REGISTERED IDENTIFICATION NUMBER ("RN")

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS SPACE

DATE ISSUED: _____ **DATE UPDATED:** _____ **RN:** _____ **BY:** _____

1. PURPOSE OF APPLICATION (Both new applicants and update applicants must complete all entries on this form)

☐ APPLY FOR A NEW RN
☐ UPDATE INFORMATION ON AN EXISTING RN OR WPL NUMBER. ENTER EXISTING RN OR WPL NUMBER _____

2. LEGAL NAME OF APPLICANT FIRM (Note: Proprietorships, please provide full legal name of the person who is the proprietor)

3. NAME UNDER WHICH APPLICANT DOES BUSINESS (Only if different from legal name)

4. TYPE OF COMPANY (if "OTHER" is checked, please state the type of company)

☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION ☐ LLC / LLP ☐ OTHER _____

5. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS (Include zip code. Address must be actual location where business is conducted in the US. An *additional* mailing address or PO Box address may also be listed, if desired) STREET ADDRESS (Required)	OPTIONAL ADDITIONAL MAILING ADDRESS	CONTACT INFORMATION TELEPHONE NUMBER (___)_____ FAX NUMBER (___)_____ E-MAIL ADDRESS _____@_____ INTERNET URL ADDRESS _____

6. TYPE OF BUSINESS (Mark *all* that apply)

☐ MANUFACTURING ☐ IMPORTING ☐ WHOLESALING ☐ RETAILING ☐ MAIL-ORDER ☐ INTERNET ☐ OTHER _____

7. LIST PRODUCTS (To qualify for an RN, a company must be engaged in the importation, manufacturing, selling or other marketing of at least one (1) product line subject to the Textile, Wool or Fur Act)

8. CERTIFICATION

By filing this form with the Federal Trade Commission, the company named above applies for a registered number to use on labels required by one or more of the following acts: the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (15 U.S.C. §§70-70k), the Wool Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§68-68j), or the Fur Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§69-69k). The company official (proprietor, partner, or corporate officer) listed below verifies that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

9. NAME OF COMPANY OFFICIAL (Type or print legibly)	10. TITLE OF COMPANY OFFICIAL	11. DATE SUBMITTED
INSTRUCTIONS Regulations under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, the Wool Products Labeling Act, and the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any USA company that is a manufacturer or marketer of fiber or fur products may, in lieu of the name under which it does business, be identified by its RN on labels required by these statutes. In completing this form, please observe the following: (a) All numbered boxes must be filled in except for optional information. (b) PLEASE, Type or Print legibly.	(c) Submit one (1) completed application: By Mail to: Federal Trade Commission Division of Enforcement 600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW Washington, DC 20580 Or By Fax to: (202) 326-3197 Or On-Line at: www.ftc.gov	CANCELLATION POLICY RNs are subject to cancellation if the holder fails to promptly submit an updated FTC Form 31 upon any change(s) in its legal name (Line #2), type of company information (Line #4), or business address (Line #5).

FTC Form 31 (rev. 9/2000)

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 12516, Mar. 25, 1983; 63 FR 7518, Feb. 13, 1998; 63 FR 71583, Dec. 28, 1998; 65 FR 75156, Dec. 1, 2000]

§ 303.21 Marking of samples, swatches, or specimens and products sold therefrom.

(a) Where samples, swatches, or specimens of textile fiber products subject to the Act are used to promote or effect sales of such textile fiber products, the samples, swatches, or specimens, as well as the products themselves, shall be labeled to show their respective fiber contents and other required information: *Provided*, That such samples, swatches or specimens need not be labeled:

(1) If the samples, swatches, or specimens are less than two square inches (12.9 cm^2) in area and the information otherwise required to appear on the label is clearly, conspicuously, and non-deceptively disclosed on accompanying promotional matter in accordance with the Act and regulations.

(2) If the samples, swatches, or specimens are keyed to a catalogue to which reference is necessary in order to complete the sale of the textile fiber products, and which catalogue at the necessary point of reference clearly, conspicuously, and non-deceptively discloses the information otherwise required to appear on the label in accordance with the Act and regulations; or

(3) If such samples, swatches, or specimens are not used to effect sales to ultimate consumers and are not in the form intended for sale or delivery to, or for use by, the ultimate consumer, and are accompanied by an invoice or other paper showing the required information.

(b) Where properly labeled samples, swatches, or specimens are used to effect the sale of articles of wearing apparel or other household textile articles which are manufactured specifically for a particular customer after the sale is consummated, the articles of wearing apparel or other household textile articles need not be labeled if they are of the same fiber content as the samples, swatches, or specimens from which the sale was effected and an invoice or other paper accompanies them showing the information otherwise required to appear on the label.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

§ 303.22 Products containing linings, interlinings, fillings, and paddings.

In disclosing the required information as to textile fiber products, the fiber content of any linings, interlinings, fillings, or paddings shall be set forth separately and distinctly if such linings, interlinings, fillings, or paddings are incorporated in the product for warmth rather than for structural purposes, or if any express or implied representations are made as to their fiber content. Examples are as follows:

100% Nylon
Interlining: 100% Rayon
Covering: 100% Rayon
Filling: 100% Cotton.

§ 303.23 Textile fiber products containing superimposed or added fibers.

Where a textile fiber product is made wholly of one fiber or a blend of fibers with the exception of an additional fiber in minor proportion superimposed or added in certain separate and distinct areas or sections for reinforcing or other useful purposes, the product may be designated according to the fiber content of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, with an exception naming the superimposed or added fiber, giving the percentage thereof in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, and indicating the area or section which contains the superimposed or added fiber. Examples of this type of fiber content disclosure, as applied to products having reinforcing fibers added to a particular area or section, are as follows:

55% Cotton
45% Rayon
Except 5% Nylon added to toe and heel.
All Cotton except 1% Nylon added to neckband.

§ 303.24 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.

The fiber content of pile fabrics or products composed thereof may be stated on the label in such segregated form as will show the fiber content of the face or pile and of the back or base, with percentages of the respective fibers as they exist in the face or pile and in the back or base: *Provided*, That

in such disclosure the respective percentages of the face and back be given in such manner as will show the ratio between the face and the back. Examples of the form of marking pile fabric as to fiber content provided for in this section are as follows:

100% Nylon Pile
100% Cotton Back
(Back constitutes 60% of fabric and pile 40%).
Face—60% Rayon, 40% Nylon
Back—70% Cotton, 30% Rayon
(Face constitutes 60% of fabric and back 40%).

§ 303.25 Sectional disclosure of content.

(a) *Permissive*. Where a textile fiber product is composed of two or more sections which are of different fiber composition, the required information as to fiber content may be separated in the same label in such manner as to show the fiber composition of each section.

(b) *Mandatory*. The disclosure as above provided shall be made in all instances where such form of marking is necessary to avoid deception.

§ 303.26 Ornamentation.

(a)(1) Where the textile fiber product contains fiber ornamentation not exceeding five per centum of the total fiber weight of the product and the stated percentages of the fiber content are exclusive of such ornamentation, the label or any invoice used in lieu thereof shall contain a phrase or statement showing such fact; as for example:

60% Cotton
40% Rayon
Exclusive of Ornamentation;
or
All Cotton
Exclusive of Ornamentation.

(2) The fiber content of such ornamentation may be disclosed where the percentage of the ornamentation in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers is shown; as for example:

70% Nylon
30% Acetate
Exclusive of 4% Metallic Ornamentation;
or
100% Rayon
Exclusive of 3% Silk Ornamentation.

(b) Where the fiber ornamentation exceeds five per centum, it shall be included in the statement of required percentages of fiber content.

(c) Where the ornamentation constitutes a distinct section of the product, sectional disclosure may be made in accordance with § 303.25 of this part.

§ 303.27 Use of the term "All" or "100%."

Where a textile fiber product or part thereof is comprised wholly of one fiber, other than any fiber ornamentation, decoration, elastic, or trimming as to which fiber content disclosure is not required, either the word *All* or the term *100%* may be used in labeling, together with the correct generic name of the fiber and any qualifying phrase, when required; as for example: ''100% Cotton,'' ''All Rayon, Exclusive of Ornamentation,'' ''100% Acetate, Exclusive of Decoration,'' ''All Nylon, Exclusive of Elastic,'' etc.

§ 303.28 Products contained in packages.

When textile products are marketed and delivered in a package which is intended to remain unbroken and intact until after delivery to the utlimate consumer, each textile product in the package, except hosiery, and the package shall be labeled with the required information. If the package is transparent to the extent it allows for a clear reading of the required information on the textile product, the package is not required to be labeled.

[50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985]

§ 303.29 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.

(a) Where a textile fiber product consists of two or more parts, units, or items of different fiber content, a separate label containing the required information shall be affixed to each of such parts, units or items showing the required information as to such part, unit, or item: *Provided*, That where such parts, units, or items are marketed or handled as a single product or ensemble and are sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer as a single

product or ensemble, the required information may be set out on a single label in such a manner as to separately show the fiber composition of each part, unit, or item.

(b) Where garments, wearing apparel, or other textile fiber products are marketed or handled in pairs or ensembles of the same fiber content, only one unit of the pair or ensemble need be labeled with the required information when sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 25 FR 4318, May 14, 1960]

§ 303.30 Textile fiber products in form for consumer.

A textile fiber product shall be considered to be in the form intended for sale or delivery to, or for use by, the ultimate consumer when the manufacturing or processing of the textile fiber product is substantially complete. The fact that minor or insignificant details of the manufacturing or processing have not been completed shall not excuse the labeling of such products as to the required information. For example, a garment must be labeled even though such matters as the finishing of a hem or cuff or the affixing of buttons thereto remain to be completed.

§ 303.31 Invoice in lieu of label.

Where a textile fiber product is not in the form intended for sale, delivery to, or for use by the ultimate consumer, an invoice or other paper may be used in lieu of a label, and such invoice or other paper shall show, in addition to the name and address of the person issuing the invoice or other paper, the fiber content of such product as provided in the Act and regulations as well as any other required information.

§ 303.32 Products containing reused stuffing.

Any upholstered product, mattress, or cushion which contains stuffing which has been previously used as stuffing in any other upholstered product, mattress, or cushion shall have securely attached thereto a substantial tag or label, at least 2 inches (5.08 cm) by 3 inches (7.62 cm) in size, and statements thereon conspicuously stamped or printed in the English language and in plain type not less than ⅓ inch (8.38 mm) high, indicating that the stuffing therein is composed in whole or in part of ''reused stuffing,'' ''secondhand stuffing,'' ''previously used stuffing,'' or ''used stuffing.''

[61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

§ 303.33 Country where textile fiber products are processed or manufactured.

(a) In addition to the other information required by the Act and Regulations:

(1) Each imported textile fiber product shall be labeled with the name of the country where such imported product was processed or manufactured;

(2) Each textile fiber product completely made in the United States of materials that were made in the United States shall be labeled using the term *Made in U.S.A.* or some other clear and equivalent term.

(3) Each textile fiber product made in the United States, either in whole or in part of imported materials, shall contain a label disclosing these facts; for example:

Made in USA of imported fabric

or

Knitted in USA of imported yarn

and

(4) Each textile fiber product partially manufactured in a foreign country and partially manufactured in the United States shall contain on a label the following information:

(i) The manufacturing process in the foreign country and in the USA; for example:

''Imported cloth, finished in USA''

or

''Sewn in USA of imported components''

or

''Made in [foreign country], finished in USA''

or

''Scarf made in USA of fabric made in China''

or

''Comforter Filled, Sewn and Finished in the U.S. With Shell Made in China''

or

''Made in [Foreign Country]/fabric made in USA''

or

''Knit in USA, assembled in [Foreign Country]''.

(ii) When the U.S. Customs Service requires an origin label on the unfinished product, the manufacturing processes as required in paragraph (a)(4)(i) of this section or the name of the foreign country required by Customs, for example:

''Made in (foreign country)''

(b) For the purpose of determining whether a product should be marked under paragraphs (a) (2), (3), or (4) of this section, a manufacturer needs to consider the origin of only those materials that are covered under the Act and that are one step removed from that manufacturing process. For example, a yarn manufacturer must identify fiber if it is imported, a cloth manufacturer must identify imported yarn and a household product manufacturer must identify imported cloth or imported yarn for household products made directly from yarn, or imported fiber used as filling for warmth.

(c) The term *country* means the political entity known as a nation. Except for the United States, colonies, possessions or protectorates outside the boundaries of the mother country shall be considered separate countries, and the name thereof shall be deemed acceptable in designating the country where the textile fiber product was processed or manufactured unless the Commission shall otherwise direct.

(d) The country where the imported textile fiber product was principally made shall be considered to be the country where such textile fiber product was processed or manufactured. Further work or material added to the textile fiber product in another country must effect a basic change in form in order to render such other country the place where such textile fiber product was processed or manufactured.

(e) The English name of the country where the imported textile fiber product was processed or manufactured shall be used. The adjectival form of the name of the country will be accepted as the name of the country where the textile fiber product was processed or manufactured, provided the adjectival form of the name does not appear with such other words so as to refer to a kind or species of product. Variant spellings which clearly indicate the English name of the country, such as Brasil for Brazil and Italie for Italy, are acceptable. Abbreviations which unmistakably indicate the name of a country, such as ''Gt. Britain'' for ''Great Britain,'' are acceptable.

(f) Nothing in this rule shall be construed as limiting in any way the information required to be disclosed on labels under the provisions of any Tariff Act of the United States or regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985; 63 FR 7521, Feb. 13, 1998; 65 FR 75158, Dec. 1, 2000]

§ 303.34 Country of origin in mail order advertising.

When a textile fiber product is advertised in any mail order catalog or mail order promotional material, the description of such product shall contain a clear and conspicuous statement that the product was either made in U.S.A., imported, or both. Other words or phrases with the same meaning may be used. The statement of origin required by this section shall not be inconsistent with the origin labeling of the product being advertised.

[50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985]

§ 303.35 Use of terms "virgin" or "new."

The terms *virgin* or *new* as descriptive of a textile fiber product, or any fiber or part thereof, shall not be used when the product or part so described is not composed wholly of new or virgin fiber which has never been reclaimed from any spun, woven, knitted, felted, bonded, or similarly manufactured product.

§ 303.36 Form of separate guaranty.

(a) The following are suggested forms of separate guaranties under section 10 of the Act which may be used by a guarantor residing in the United States on or as part of an invoice or other paper relating to the marketing or handling of any textile fiber products listed and designated therein, and showing the date of such invoice or other paper and the signature and address of the guarantor.

(1) *General form.* We guarantee that the textile fiber products specified herein are not misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

(2) *Guaranty based on guaranty.* Based upon a guaranty received, we guarantee that the textile fiber products specified herein are not misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

NOTE: The printed name and address on the invoice or other paper will suffice to meet the signature and address requirements.

(b) The mere disclosure of required information including the fiber content of a textile fiber product on a label or on an invoice or other paper relating to its marketing or handling shall not be considered a form of separate guaranty.

§ 303.37 Form of continuing guaranty from seller to buyer.

Under section 10 of the Act, a seller residing in the United States may give a buyer a continuing guaranty to be applicable to all textile fiber products sold or to be sold. The following is the prescribed form of continuing guaranty from seller to buyer.

We, the undersigned, guaranty that all textile fiber products now being sold or which may hereafter be sold or delivered to _____ are not, and will not be misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and rules and regulations thereunder. This guaranty effective until _____.

Dated, signed, and certified this ____ day of ____, 19____, at _____ (City), _____ (State or Territory) _____ (name under which business is conducted.)

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied in this form is true and correct.

_____

Signature of Proprietor, Principal Partner, or Corporate Official

_____

Name (Print or Type) Title

[48 FR 12518, Mar. 25, 1983]

§ 303.38 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.

(a)(1) Under section 10 of the act any person residing in the United States and marketing or handling textile fiber products may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. When filed with the Commission a continuing guaranty shall be fully executed in duplicate. Forms for use in preparing continuing guaranties will be supplied by the Commission upon request.

(2) Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission shall continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor shall promptly report any change in business status to the Commission.

(b) Prescribed form for a continuing guaranty:

CONTINUING GUARANTY

1. LEGAL NAME OF GUARANTOR FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH GUARANTOR FIRM DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY
☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS *(Include Zip Code)*

OPTIONAL INFORMATION
TELEPHONE NUMBER:
FAX NUMBER:
INTERNET ADDRESS:

5. LAW UNDER WHICH THE CONTINUING GUARANTY IS TO BE FILED *(Put an 'X' in the appropriate boxes)*

☐ Under the **Textile Fiber Products Identification Act** (15 U.S.C. § § 70-70k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles textile fiber products, guarantees that when it ships or delivers any textile fiber product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Wool Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. § § 68-68j): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles wool products, guarantees that when it ships or delivers any wool product, the product will not be misbranded within the meaning of the Wool Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Fur Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. § § 69-69k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles fur products, guarantees that when it ships or delivers any fur product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Fur Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

6. CERTIFICATION

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PRINCIPAL PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL

7. NAME *(Please print or type)*

8. TITLE

9. CITY AND STATE WHERE SIGNED

10. DATE

INSTRUCTIONS

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, the Wool Products Labeling Act, and the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fiber or fur products covered by those Acts may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. A continuing guaranty on file assures customer firms that the guarantor's products are in conformance with the Act(s) under which the guarantor has filed. Customer firms rely on the continuing guaranties for protection from liability if violations occur.

In completing this form, please observe the following:

(a) All appropriate blanks on the form should be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 6, signature of proprietor, partner, or corporate official of guarantor firm.

(c) Send two completed, signed original copies to:
Federal Trade Commission
Division of Enforcement
600 Pennsylvania Ave, NW
Washington, DC 20580

(d) Do not fax application - mail signed originals only.

Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor must immediately notify the Commission in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the guarantor's principal office and place of business must also be promptly reported.

DO NOT USE THIS SPACE

Filed _____ 19 ____

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

FTC Form **31-A** (rev. 11/98)

10

(c) Any person who has a continuing guaranty on file with the Commission may, during the effective dates of the guaranty, give notice of such fact by setting forth on the invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of the product guaranteed the following:

Continuing guaranty under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act filed with the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) Any person who falsely represents in writing that he has a continuing guaranty on file with the Federal Trade Commission when such is not a fact shall be deemed to have furnished a false guaranty under section 10(b) of the Act.

[24 FR 4486, June 2, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 12517, Mar. 25, 1983; 63 FR 7521, Feb. 18, 1998; 63 FR 71585, Dec. 28, 1998]

§ 303.39 Maintenance of records.

(a) Pursuant to the provisions of section 6 of the Act, every manufacturer of a textile fiber product subject to the Act, irrespective of whether any guaranty has been given or received, shall maintain records showing the information required by the Act and Regulations with respect to all such textile fiber products made by such manufacturer. Such records shall show:

(1) The generic names and percentages by weight of the constituent fibers present in the textile fiber product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, in amounts of five per centum or more.

(2) The name, provided for in § 303.19, or registered identification number issued by the Commission, of the manufacturer or of one or more persons marketing or handling the textile fiber product.

(3) The name of the country where such product was processed or manufactured as provided for in § 303.33.

The purpose of the records is to permit a determination that the requirements of the Act and Regulations have been met and to establish a traceable line of continuity from raw material through processing to finished product.

(b) Any person substituting a stamp, tag, label, or other identification pursuant to section 5(b) of the Act shall keep such records as will show the information set forth on the stamp, tag, label, or other identification that he removed and the name or names of the person or persons from whom such textile fiber product was received.

(c) The records required to be maintained pursuant to the provisions of this rule shall be preserved for at least three years.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 31315, Aug. 18, 1988]

§ 303.40 Use of terms in written advertisements that imply presence of a fiber.

The use of terms in written advertisements, including advertisements disseminated through the Internet and similar electronic media, that are descriptive of a method of manufacture, construction, or weave, and that by custom and usage are also indicative of a textile fiber or fibers, or the use of terms in such advertisements that constitute or connote the name or presence of a fiber or fibers, shall be deemed to be an implication of fiber content under section 4(c) of the Act, except that the provisions of this section shall not be applicable to non-deceptive shelf or display signs in retail stores indicating the location of textile fiber products and not intended as advertisements.

[63 FR 7523, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 303.41 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names in advertising.

(a) In advertising textile fiber products, the use of a fiber trademark shall require a full disclosure of the fiber content information required by the Act and regulations in at least one instance in the advertisement.

(b) Where a fiber trademark is used in advertising textile fiber products containing more than one fiber, other than permissible ornamentation, such fiber trademark and the generic name of the fiber must appear in the required fiber content information in immediate proximity and conjunction with each other in plainly legible type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(c) Where a fiber trademark is used in advertising textile fiber products containing only one fiber, other than permissive ornamentation, such fiber trademark and the generic name of the fiber must appear in immediate proximity and conjunction with each other in plainly legible and conspicuous type or lettering at least once in the advertisement.

(d) Where a fiber trademark or generic name is used in non-required information in advertising, such fiber trademark or generic name, shall not be used in such a manner as to be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content, or to indicate, directly or indirectly, that a textile fiber product is composed wholly or in part of a particular fiber, when such is not the case.

§ 303.42 Arrangement of information in advertising textile fiber products.

(a) Where a textile fiber product is advertised in such manner as to require disclosure of the information required by the Act and regulations, all parts of the required information shall be stated in immediate conjunction with each other in legible and conspicuous type or lettering of equal size and prominence. In making the required disclosure of the fiber content of the product, the generic names of fibers present in an amount 5 percent or more of the total fiber weight of the product, together with any fibers disclosed in accordance with § 303.3(a), shall appear in order of predominance by weight, to be followed by the designation ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' if a fiber or fibers required to be so designated are present.

(b) Non-required information or representations shall in no way be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content and shall not include any names, terms, or representations prohibited by the Act and regulations. Such non-required information or representations shall not be set forth or so used as to interfere with, minimize, or detract from the required information.

(c) Non-deceptive terms which are properly and truthfully descriptive of a fiber may be used in conjunction with the generic name of such fiber; as for example: ''cross-linked rayon,'' ''solution dyed acetate,'' ''combed cotton,'' ''nylon 66,'' etc.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 30 FR 14254, Nov. 13, 1965; 30 FR 15313, Dec. 11, 1965; 63 FR 7523, Feb. 13, 1998]

§ 303.43 Fiber content tolerances.

(a) A textile fiber product which contains more than one fiber shall not be deemed to be misbranded as to fiber content percentages if the percentages by weight of any fibers present in the total fiber content of the product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, do not deviate or vary from the percentages stated on the label in excess of 3 percent of the total fiber weight of the product. For example, where the label indicates that a particular fiber is present in the amount of 40 percent, the amount of such fiber present may vary from a minimum of 37 percent of the total fiber weight of such product to a maximum of 43 percent of the total fiber weight of such product.

(b) Where the percentage of any fiber or fibers contained in a textile fiber product deviates or varies from the percentage stated on the label by more than the tolerance or variation provided in paragraph (a) of this section, such product shall be misbranded unless the person charged proves that the entire deviation or variation from the fiber content percentages stated on the label resulted from unavoidable variations in manufacture and despite the exercise of due care.

(c) Where representations are made to the effect that a textile fiber product is composed wholly of one fiber, the tolerance provided in section 4(b)(2) of the Act and paragraph (a) of this section shall not apply, except as to permissive ornamentation where the textile fiber product is represented to be composed of one fiber ''exclusive of ornamentation.''

§ 303.44 Products not intended for uses subject to the act.

Textile fiber products intended for uses not within the scope of the Act and regulations or intended for uses in other textile fiber products which are exempted or excluded from the Act shall not be subject to the labeling and invoicing requirements of the Act and regulations: *Provided*, An invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of such products is given, which indicates that the products are not intended for uses subject to the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act.

§ 303.45 Exclusions from the act.

(a) Pursuant to section 12(b) of the Act, the Commission hereby excludes from the operation of the Act:

(1) All textile fiber products except:

(i) Articles of wearing apparel:

(ii) Handkerchiefs;

(iii) Scarfs;

(iv) Beddings;

(v) Curtains and casements;

(vi) Draperies;

(vii) Tablecloths, napkins, and doilies;

(viii) Floor coverings;

(ix) Towels;

(x) Wash cloths and dish cloths;

(xi) Ironing board covers and pads;

(xii) Umbrellas and parasols;

(xiii) Batts;

(xiv) Products subject to section 4(h) of the Act;

(xv) Flags with heading or more than 216 square inches (13.9 dm^2) in size;

(xvi) Cushions;

(xvii) All fibers, yarns and fabrics (including narrow fabrics except packaging ribbons);

(xviii) Furniture slip covers and other covers or coverlets for furniture;

(xix) Afghans and throws;

(xx) Sleeping bags;

(xxi) Antimacassars and tidies;

(xxii) Hammocks;

(xxiii) Dresser and other furniture scarfs.

(2) Belts, suspenders, arm bands, permanently knotted neckties, garters, sanitary belts, diaper liners, labels (either required or non-required) individually and in rolls, looper clips intended for handicraft purposes, book cloth, artists' canvases, tapestry cloth, and shoe laces.

(3) All textile fiber products manufactured by the operators of company stores and offered for sale and sold exclusively to their own employees as ultimate consumers.

(4) Coated fabrics and those portions of textile fiber products made of coated fabrics.

(5) Secondhand household textile articles which are discernibly secondhand or which are marked to indicate their secondhand character.

(6) Non-woven products of a disposable nature intended for one-time use only.

(7) All curtains, casements, draperies, and table place mats, or any portions thereof otherwise subject to the Act, made principally of slats, rods, or strips, composed of wood, metal, plastic, or leather.

(8) All textile fiber products in a form ready for the ultimate consumer procured by the military services of the United States which are bought according to specifications, but shall not include those textile fiber products sold and distributed through post exchanges, sales commissaries, or ship stores; provided, however, that if the military services sell textile fiber products for nongovernmental purposes the information with respect to the fiber content of such products shall be furnished to the purchaser thereof who shall label such products in conformity with the Act and regulations before such products are distributed for civilian use.

(9) All hand woven rugs made by Navajo Indians which have attached thereto the ''Certificate of Genuineness'' supplied by the Indian Arts and Crafts Board of the United States Department of Interior. The term *Navajo Indian* means any Indian who is listed on the register of the Navajo Indian Tribe or is eligible for listing thereon.

(b) The exclusions provided for in paragraph (a) of this section shall not be applicable (1) if any representations as to the fiber content of such products are made on any label or in any advertisement without making a full and complete fiber content disclosure on such label or in such advertisement in accordance with the Act and regulations with the exception of those products excluded by paragraph (a)(6) of this section, or (2) if any false, deceptive, or misleading representations are made as to the fiber content of such products.

(c) The exclusions from the Act provided in paragraph (a) of this section are in addition to the exemptions from the Act provided in section 12(a) of the Act and shall not affect or limit such exemptions.

(Sec. 12, 72 Stat. 1723; 15 U.S.C. 70j)

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 25 FR 4318, May 14, 1960; 25 FR 7044, July 26, 1960; 29 FR 48, Jan. 3, 1964; 61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

PART 304—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER THE HOBBY PROTECTION ACT

Sec.
304.1 Terms defined.
304.2 General requirement.
304.3 Applicability.
304.4 Application of other law or regulation.
304.5 Marking requirements for imitation political items.
304.6 Marking requirements for imitation numismatic items.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2101 et seq.

SOURCE: 40 FR 5496, Feb. 6, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

§ 304.1 Terms defined.

(a) *Act* means the Hobby Protection Act (approved November 29, 1973; Pub. L. 93–167, 87 Stat. 686, (15 U.S.C. 2101 et seq.)).

(b) *Commerce* has the same meanings as such term has under the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(c) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) *Imitation numismatic item* means an item which purports to be, but in fact is not, an original numismatic item or which is a reproduction, copy, or counterfeit of an original numismatic item. Such term includes an original numismatic item which has been altered or modified in such a manner that it could reasonably purport to be an original numismatic item other than the one which was altered or modified. The term shall not include any re-issue or re-strike of any original numismatic item by the United States or any foreign government.

(e) *Imitation political item* means an item which purports to be, but in fact is not, an original political item, or which is a reproduction, copy or counterfeit of an original item.

(f) *Original numismatic item* means anything which has been a part of a coinage or issue which has been used in exchange or has been used to commemorate a person, object, place, or event. Such term includes coins, tokens, paper money, and commemorative medals.

(g) *Original political item* means any political button, poster, literature, sticker, or any advertisement produced for use in any political cause.

(h) *Person* means any individual, group, association, partnership, or any other business entity.

(i) *Regulations* means any or all regulations prescribed by the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to the Act.

(j) *United States* means the States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(k) *Diameter of a reproduction* means the length of the longest possible straight line connecting two points on the perimeter of the reproduction.

[40 FR 5496, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 53 FR 38942, Oct. 4, 1988]

§ 304.2 General requirement.

Imitation political or numismatic items subject to the Act shall be marked in conformity with the requirements of the Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder. Any violation of these regulations shall constitute a violation of the Act and of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

§ 304.3 Applicability.

Any person engaged in the manufacturing, or importation into the United States for introduction into or distribution in commerce, of imitation political or imitation numismatic items shall be subject to the requirements of the Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

§ 304.4 Application of other law or regulation.

The provisions of these regulations are in addition to, and not in substitution for or limitation of, the provisions of any other law or regulation of the United States (including the existing statutes and regulations prohibiting the reproduction of genuine currency) or of the law or regulation of any State.

§ 304.5 Marking requirements for imitation political items.

(a) An imitation political item which is manufactured in the United States, or imported into the United States for introduction into or distribution in commerce, shall be plainly and permanently marked with the calendar year in which such item was manufactured.

(b) The calendar year shall be marked upon the item legibly, conspicuously and nondeceptively, and in accordance with the further requirements of these regulations.

(1) The calendar year shall appear in arabic numerals, shall be based upon the Gregorian calendar and shall consist of four digits.

(2) The calendar year shall be marked on either the obverse or the reverse surface of the item. It shall not be marked on the edge of the item.

(3) An imitation political item of incusable material shall be incused with the calendar year in sans-serif numerals. Each numeral shall have a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm) and a minimum depth of three-tenths of one millimeter (0.3 mm) or one-half (½) the thickness of the reproduction, whichever is the lesser. The minimum total horizontal dimension for the four numerals composing the calendar year shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm).

(4) An imitation political button, poster, literature, sticker, or advertisement composed of nonincusable material shall be imprinted with the calendar year in sans-serif numerals. Each numeral shall have a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm). The minimum total horizontal dimension of the four numerals composing the calendar year shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm).

§ 304.6 Marking requirements for imitation numismatic items.

(a) An imitation numismatic item which is manufactured in the United States, or imported into the United States for introduction into or distribution in commerce, shall be plainly and permanently marked ''COPY''.

(b) The word ''COPY'' shall be marked upon the item legibly, conspicuously, and nondeceptively, and in accordance with the further requirements of these regulations.

(1) The word ''COPY'' shall appear in capital letters, in the English language.

(2) The word ''COPY'' shall be marked on either the obverse or the reverse surface of the item. It shall not be marked on the edge of the item.

(3) An imitation numismatic item of incusable material shall be incused with the word ''COPY'' in sans-serif letters having a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm) or not less than one-sixth of the diameter of the reproduction, and a minimum depth of three-tenths of one millimeter (0.3 mm) or to one-half (½) the thickness of the reproduction, whichever is the lesser. The minimum total horizontal dimension of the word ''COPY'' shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm) or not less than one-half of the diameter of the reproduction.

(4) An imitation numismatic item composed of nonincusable material shall be imprinted with the word ''COPY'' in sans-serif letters having a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm) or not less than one-sixth of the diameter of the reproduction. The minimum total horizontal dimension of the word ''COPY'' shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm) or not less than one-half of the diameter of the reproduction.

[40 FR 5496, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 53 FR 38942, Oct. 4, 1988]

PART 305—RULE CONCERNING DISCLOSURES REGARDING ENERGY CONSUMPTION AND WATER USE OF CERTAIN HOME APPLIANCES AND OTHER PRODUCTS REQUIRED UNDER THE ENERGY POLICY AND CONSERVATION ACT (''APPLIANCE LABELING RULE'')

SCOPE

Sec.
305.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

DEFINITIONS

305.2 Definitions.
305.3 Description of covered products.

GENERAL

305.4 Prohibited acts.

TESTING

305.5 Determinations of estimated annual energy consumption, estimated annual operating cost, and energy efficiency rating, and of water use rate.
305.6 Sampling.
305.7 Determinations of capacity.
305.8 Submission of data.

REPRESENTATIVE AVERAGE UNIT ENERGY COSTS

305.9 Representative average unit energy costs.
305.10 Ranges of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings.

REQUIRED DISCLOSURES

305.11 Labeling for covered products.
305.12 Additional information relating to energy consumption.
305.13 Promotional material displayed or distributed at point of sale.
305.14 Catalogs.

ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

305.15 Test data records.
305.16 Required testing by designated laboratory.

EFFECT OF THIS PART

305.17 Effect on other law.
305.18 Stayed or invalid parts.
305.19 Exemptions.

APPENDIX A1 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST
APPENDIX A2 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS AND REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST
APPENDIX A3 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH PARTIAL AUTOMATIC DEFROST
APPENDIX A4 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A5 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A6 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH BOTTOM-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A7 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A8 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX B1 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST
APPENDIX B2 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST
APPENDIX B3 TO PART 305—CHEST FREEZERS AND ALL OTHER FREEZERS
APPENDIX C1 TO PART 305—COMPACT DISHWASHERS
APPENDIX C2 TO PART 305—STANDARD DISHWASHERS
APPENDIX D1 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—GAS
APPENDIX D2 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—ELECTRIC
APPENDIX D3 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—OIL
APPENDIX D4 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—INSTANTANEOUS—GAS
APPENDIX D5 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—HEAT PUMP
APPENDIX E TO PART 305—ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS
APPENDIX F1 TO PART 305—STANDARD CLOTHES WASHERS
APPENDIX F2 TO PART 305—COMPACT CLOTHES WASHERS
APPENDIX G1 TO PART 305—FURNACES—GAS
APPENDIX G2 TO PART 305—FURNACES—ELECTRIC
APPENDIX G3 TO PART 305—FURNACES—OIL
APPENDIX G4 TO PART 305—MOBIL HOME FURNACES
APPENDIX G5 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (EXCEPT STEAM)
APPENDIX G6 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (STEAM)
APPENDIX G7 TO PART 305—BOILERS—OIL
APPENDIX G8 TO PART 305—BOILERS—ELECTRIC
APPENDIX H TO PART 305—COOLING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS
APPENDIX I TO PART 305—HEATING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS
APPENDIX J1 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—GAS
APPENDIX J2 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—OIL
APPENDIX K TO PART 305—SUGGESTED DATA REPORTING FORMAT
APPENDIX L TO PART 305—SAMPLE LABELS

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 6294.

SOURCE: 52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

SCOPE

§ 305.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

The rule in this part establishes requirements for consumer appliance products, as hereinafter described, in commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6291, with respect to:

(a) Labeling and/or marking the products with information required by this part indicating their operating cost (or different useful measure of energy consumption) and related information, disclosing their water use rate and related information, or stating their compliance with applicable standards under section 325 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295;

(b) Including in printed matter displayed or distributed at the point of sale of such products, or including in any catalog from which the products may be purchased, information concerning their water use or their energy consumption;

(c) Including on the labels, separately attaching to the products, or shipping with the products, additional information relating to energy consumption, energy efficiency, or energy cost; and

(d) Making representations, in writing or in broadcast advertising, respecting the water use, energy consumption, or energy efficiency of the products, or the cost of water used or energy consumed by the products.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28034, July 5, 1989]

DEFINITIONS

§ 305.2 Definitions.

(a) *Act* means the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94–163), and amendments thereto.

(b) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Manufacturer* means any person who manufactures, produces, assembles, or imports a consumer appliance product. Assembly operations which are solely decorative are not included.

(d) *Retailer* means a person to whom a consumer appliance product is delivered or sold, if such delivery or sale is for purposes of sale or distribution in commerce to purchasers who buy such product for purposes other than resale. The term *retailer* includes purchasers of appliances who install such appliances in newly constructed or newly rehabilitated housing, or mobile homes, with the intent to sell the covered appliances as part of the sale of such housing or mobile homes.

(e) *Distributor* means a person (other than a manufacturer or retailer) to whom a consumer appliance product is delivered or sold for purposes of distribution in commerce.

(f) *Private labeler* means an owner of a brand or trademark on the label of a consumer appliance product which bears a private label.

(g) *Range of comparability* means a group of models within a class of covered products, each model of which satisfies approximately the same consumer needs.

(h) *Estimated annual energy consumption and estimated annual operating cost*—(1) *Estimated annual energy consumption* means the energy or (for products described in sections 305.3(n)–(q)) water that is likely to be consumed annually in representative use of a consumer product, as determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293).

(i) *Kilowatt-hour use per year*, or *kWh/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in kilowatt-hours of electricity.

(ii) *Therm use per year*, or *therms/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in therms of natural gas.

(iii) *Gallon use per year*, or *gallons/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in gallons of propane or No. 2 heating oil.

(2) *Estimated annual operating cost* means the aggregate retail cost of the energy that is likely to be consumed annually in representative use of a consumer product, as determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293).

(i) *Energy efficiency rating* means the following product-specific energy usage descriptors: *annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE)* for furnaces; *energy efficiency ratio (EER)* for room air conditioners; *seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER)* for the cooling function of central air conditioners and heat pumps; *heating seasonal performance factor (HSPF)* for the heating function of heat pumps; and, *thermal efficiency (TE)* for pool heaters, as these descriptors are determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293). These product-specific energy usage descriptors shall be used in satisfying all the requirements of this part.

(j) *Range of estimated annual energy consumption* means the range of estimated annual energy consumption per year of all models within a designated range of comparability.

(k) *Range of energy efficiency ratings* means the range of energy efficiency ratings for all models within a designated range of comparability.

(l) *New covered product*, as used in § 305.4, means a covered product the title of which has not passed to a purchaser who buys the product for purposes other than resale or leasing for a period in excess of one year.

(m) *Catalog* means printed material which contains the terms of sale, retail price, and instructions for ordering, from which a retail consumer can order a covered product.

(n) *Consumer product* means any article (other than an automobile, as ''automobile'' is defined in 15 U.S.C. 2001(1) [sec. 501(1) of the Motor Vehicle Information and Cost Savings Act]) of a type—

(1) which in operation consumes, or is designed to consume, energy or, with respect to showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals, water; and

(2) which, to any significant extent, is distributed in commerce for personal use or consumption by individuals;

without regard to whether such article or such type is in fact distributed in commerce for personal use or consumption by an individual, except that such term includes fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals distributed in commerce for personal or commercial use or consumption.

(o) *Consumer appliance product* means any of the following consumer products, excluding those products designed solely for use in recreational vehicles and other mobile equipment:

(1) Refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers which can be operated by alternating current electricity, excluding—

(i) any type designed to be used without doors; and

(ii) any type which does not include a compressor and condenser unit as an integral part of the cabinet assembly.

(2) Dishwashers.

(3) Water heaters.

(4) Room air conditioners.

(5) Clothes washers.

(6) Clothes dryers.

(7) Central air conditioners and central air conditioning heat pumps.

(8) Furnaces.

(9) Direct heating equipment.

(10) Pool heaters.

(11) Kitchen ranges and ovens.

(12) Television sets.

(13) Fluorescent lamp ballasts.

(14) General service fluorescent lamps.

(15) Medium base compact fluorescent lamps.

(16) General service incandescent lamps, including incandescent reflector lamps.

(17) Showerheads.

(18) Faucets.

(19) Water closets.

(20) Urinals.

(21) Any other type of consumer product which the Department of Energy classifies as a covered product under section 322(b) of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6292).

(p) *Covered product* means any consumer product or consumer appliance product described in § 305.3 of this part.

(q) *Luminaire* means a complete lighting unit consisting of a fluorescent lamp or lamps, together with parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect such lamps, and to connect such lamps to the power supply through the ballast.

(r) *Ballast efficacy factor* means the relative light output divided by the power input of a fluorescent lamp ballast, as measured under test conditions specified in American National Standards Institute (''ANSI'') standard C82.2–1984, or as may be prescribed by the Secretary of Energy. Copies of ANSI standard C82.2–1984 may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036.

(s) *Bulb shape* means the shape of the lamp, especially the glass portion.

(t) *Base* for lamps means the portion of the lamp which screws into the socket.

(u) *Color rendering index* or *CRI* for lamps means the measure of the degree of color shift objects undergo when illuminated by a light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source of comparable color temperature.

(v) *Correlated color temperature* for lamps means the absolute temperature of a blackbody whose chromaticity

most nearly resembles that of the light source.

(w) *Lamp type* means all lamps designated as having the same electrical and lighting characteristics and made by one manufacturer.

(x) *Wattage* for lamps means the total electrical power consumed by a lamp in watts, after an initial seasoning period and including, for fluorescent lamps, arc watts plus cathode watts.

(y) *Light output* for lamps means the total luminous flux (power) of a lamp in lumens.

(z) *Life* and *lifetime* for lamps mean length of operating time of a statistically large group of lamps between first use and failure of 50 percent of the group.

(aa) *Lamp efficacy* means the light output of a lamp divided by its wattage, expressed in lumens per watt (LPW).

(bb) *Average lamp efficacy* means the lamp efficacy readings taken over a statistically significant period of manufacture with the readings averaged over that period.

(cc) *IES* means the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America and, as used herein, is the prefix for test procedures adopted by IES.

(dd) *ASME* means the American Society of Mechanical Engineers and, as used herein, is the prefix for national standards and codes adopted by ASME.

(ee) *ANSI* means the American National Standards Institute and, as used herein, is the prefix for national standards and codes adopted by ANSI.

(ff) *Water use* means the quantity of water flowing through a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal at point of use, determined in accordance with test procedures under section 323 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293.

(gg) *Flushometer valve* means a valve attached to a pressured water supply pipe and so designed that, when actuated, it opens the line for direct flow into the fixture at a rate and quantity to operate properly the fixture, and then gradually closes to provide trap reseal in the fixture in order to avoid water hammer. The pipe to which this device is connected is in itself of sufficient size that, when opened, will allow the device to deliver water at a sufficient rate of flow for flushing purposes.

(hh) *Flow restricting or controlling spout end device* means an aerator used in a faucet.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 34031, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49563, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67524, Dec. 29, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78063, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.2 was amended by revising paragraphs (i) and (o)(21) and adding paragraph (o)(22), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added and revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.2 Definitions.

* * * * *

(i) *Energy efficiency rating* means the following product-specific energy usage descriptors: *annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE)* for furnaces; *energy efficiency ratio (EER)* for room air conditioners; *seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER)* for the cooling function of central air conditioners and heat pumps; *heating seasonal performance factor (HSPF)* for the heating function of heat pumps; *airflow efficiency for ceiling fans; and, thermal efficiency (TE)* for pool heaters, as these descriptors are determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293). These product-specific energy usage descriptors shall be used in satisfying all the requirements of this part.

* * * * *

(o) * * *

(21) Ceiling fans.

(22) Any other type of consumer product which the Department of Energy classifies as a covered product under section 322(b) of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6292).

* * * * *

2. At 72 FR 49965, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.2 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.2 Definitions.

(a) *Act* means the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94–163), and amendments thereto.

(b) *ANSI* means the American National Standards Institute and, as used herein, is the prefix for national standards and codes adopted by ANSI.

(c) *ASME* means the American Society of Mechanical Engineers and, as used herein, is the prefix for national standards and codes adopted by ASME.

(d) *Average lamp efficacy* means the lamp efficacy readings taken over a statistically

significant period of manufacture with the readings averaged over that period.

(e) *Ballast efficacy factor* means the relative light output divided by the power input of a fluorescent lamp ballast, as measured under test conditions specified in American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard C82.2–1984, or as may be prescribed by the Secretary of Energy. Copies of ANSI standard C82.2–1984 may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036.

(f) *Base* for lamps means the portion of the lamp which screws into the socket.

(g) *Bulb shape* means the shape of the lamp, especially the glass portion.

(h) *Catalog* means printed material, including material disseminated over the Internet, which contains the terms of sale, retail price, and instructions for ordering, from which a retail consumer can order a covered product.

(i) *Color rendering index* or *CRI* for lamps means the measure of the degree of color shift objects undergo when illuminated by a light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source of comparable color temperature.

(j) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(k) *Consumer product* means any article (other than an automobile, as ''automobile'' is defined in 15 U.S.C. 2001(1) [sec. 501(1) of the Motor Vehicle Information and Cost Savings Act]) of a type—

(1) Which in operation consumes, or is designed to consume, energy or, with respect to showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals, water; and

(2) Which, to any significant extent, is distributed in commerce for personal use or consumption by individuals; without regard to whether such article or such type is in fact distributed in commerce for personal use or consumption by an individual, except that such term includes fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals distributed in commerce for personal or commercial use or consumption.

(l) *Consumer appliance product* means any of the following consumer products, excluding those products designed solely for use in recreational vehicles and other mobile equipment:

(1) Refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers that can be operated by alternating current electricity, excluding—

(i) Any type designed to be used without doors; and

(ii) Any type which does not include a compressor and condenser unit as an integral part of the cabinet assembly.

(2) Dishwashers.

(3) Water heaters.

(4) Room air conditioners.

(5) Clothes washers.

(6) Clothes dryers.

(7) Central air conditioners and central air conditioning heat pumps.

(8) Furnaces.

(9) Direct heating equipment.

(10) Pool heaters.

(11) Kitchen ranges and ovens.

(12) Television sets.

(13) Fluorescent lamp ballasts.

(14) General service fluorescent lamps.

(15) Medium base compact fluorescent lamps.

(16) General service incandescent lamps, including incandescent reflector lamps.

(17) Showerheads.

(18) Faucets.

(19) Water closets.

(20) Urinals.

(21) Any other type of consumer product that the Department of Energy classifies as a covered product under section 322(b) of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6292).

(m) *Correlated color temperature* for lamps means the absolute temperature of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.

(n) *Covered product* means any consumer product or consumer appliance product described in §305.3 of this part.

(o) *Distributor* means a person (other than a manufacturer or retailer) to whom a consumer appliance product is delivered or sold for purposes of distribution in commerce.

(p) *Energy efficiency rating* means the following product-specific energy usage descriptors: *annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE)* for furnaces; *energy efficiency ratio (EER)* for room air conditioners; *seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER)* for the cooling function of central air conditioners and heat pumps; *heating seasonal performance factor (HSPF)* for the heating function of heat pumps; and, *thermal efficiency (TE)* for pool heaters, as these descriptors are determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293). These product-specific energy usage descriptors shall be used in satisfying all the requirements of this part.

(q) *Estimated annual energy consumption and estimated annual operating cost*—

(1) *Estimated annual energy consumption* means the energy or (for products described in sections 305.3(n)–(q)) water that is likely to be consumed annually in representative use of a consumer product, as determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293).

(i) *Kilowatt-hour use per year*, or *kWh/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in kilowatt-hours of electricity.

(ii) *Therm use per year*, or *therms/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in therms of natural gas.

(iii) *Gallon use per year*, or *gallons/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in gallons of propane or No. 2 heating oil.

(2) *Estimated annual operating cost* means the aggregate retail cost of the energy that is likely to be consumed annually in representative use of a consumer product, as determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293).

(r) *Flow restricting or controlling spout end device* means an aerator used in a faucet.

(s) *Flushometer valve* means a valve attached to a pressured water supply pipe and so designed that, when actuated, it opens the line for direct flow into the fixture at a rate and quantity to operate properly the fixture, and then gradually closes to provide trap reseal in the fixture in order to avoid water hammer. The pipe to which this device is connected is in itself of sufficient size that, when opened, will allow the device to deliver water at a sufficient rate of flow for flushing purposes.

(t) *IES* means the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America and, as used herein, is the prefix for test procedures adopted by IES.

(u) *Lamp efficacy* means the light output of a lamp divided by its wattage, expressed in lumens per watt (LPW).

(v) *Lamp type* means all lamps designated as having the same electrical and lighting characteristics and made by one manufacturer.

(w) *Life* and *lifetime* for lamps mean length of operating time of a statistically large group of lamps between first use and failure of 50 percent of the group.

(x) *Light output* for lamps means the total luminous flux (power) of a lamp in lumens.

(y) *Luminaire* means a complete lighting unit consisting of a fluorescent lamp or lamps, together with parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect such lamps, and to connect such lamps to the power supply through the ballast.

(z) *Manufacturer* means any person who manufactures, produces, assembles, or imports a consumer appliance product. Assembly operations which are solely decorative are not included.

(aa) *New covered product*, as used in § 305.4, means a covered product the title of which has not passed to a purchaser who buys the product for purposes other than resale or leasing for a period in excess of one year.

(bb) *Private labeler* means an owner of a brand or trademark on the label of a consumer appliance product which bears a private label.

(cc) *Range of comparability* means a group of models within a class of covered products, each model of which satisfies approximately the same consumer needs.

(dd) *Range of energy efficiency ratings* means the range of energy efficiency ratings for all models within a designated range of comparability.

(ee) *Range of estimated annual energy cost* means the range of estimated annual energy cost per year of all models within a designated range of comparability.

(ff) *Retailer* means a person to whom a consumer appliance product is delivered or sold, if such delivery or sale is for purposes of sale or distribution in commerce to purchasers who buy such product for purposes other than resale. The term *retailer* includes purchasers of appliances who install such appliances in newly constructed or newly rehabilitated housing, or mobile homes, with the intent to sell the covered appliances as part of the sale of such housing or mobile homes.

(gg) *Water use* means the quantity of water flowing through a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal at point of use, determined in accordance with test procedures under section 323 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293.

(hh) *Wattage* for lamps means the total electrical power consumed by a lamp in watts, after an initial seasoning period and including, for fluorescent lamps, arc watts plus cathode watts.

§ 305.3 Description of covered products.

(a) *Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers.* (1) *Electric refrigerator* means a cabinet designed for the refrigerated storage of food at temperatures above 32 °F., and having a source of refrigeration requiring single phase, alternating current electric energy input only. An electric refrigerator may include a compartment for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 32 °F., but does not provide a separate low temperature compartment designed for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 8 °F. An ''all-refrigerator'' is an electric refrigerator which does not include a compartment for the freezing and long time storage of food at temperatures below 32 °F (0.0 °C). An ''all-refrigerator'' may include a compartment of 0.50 cubic capacity (14.2 liters) or less for the freezing and storage of ice.

(2) *Electric refrigerator-freezer* means a cabinet which consists of two or more compartments with at least one of the compartments designed for the refrigerated storage of food at temperatures above 32 °F. and with at least one of the compartments designed for the

freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 8 °F. which may be adjusted by the user to a temperature of 0 °F. or below. The source of refrigeration requires single phase, alternating current electric energy input only.

(b) *Freezer* means a cabinet designed as a unit for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures of 0 °F. or below, and having a source of refrigeration requiring single phase, alternating current electric energy input only.

(c) *Dishwasher* means a cabinetlike appliance which, with the aid of water and detergent, washes, rinses, and dries (when a drying process is included) dishware, glassware, eating utensils and most cooking utensils by chemical, mechanical, and/or electrical means and discharges to the plumbing drainage system.

(1) *Water Heating Dishwasher* means a dishwasher which is designed for heating cold inlet water (nominal 50 °F.) or a dishwasher for which the manufacturer recommends operation with a nominal inlet water temperature of 120 °F. and may operate at either of these inlet water temperatures by providing internal water heating to above 120 °F. in at least one wash phase of the normal cycle.

(2) [Reserved]

(d)(1) *Water heater* means a product which utilizes oil, gas, or electricity to heat potable water for use outside the heater upon demand, including—

(i) Storage type units which heat and store water at a thermostatically controlled temperature, including gas storage water heaters with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, oil storage water heaters with an input of 105,000 Btu per hour or less, and electric storage water heaters with an input of 12 kilowatts or less;

(ii) Instantaneous type units which heat water but contain no more than one gallon of water per 4,000 Btu per hour of input, including gas instantaneous water heaters with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less, oil instantaneous water heaters with an input of 210,000 Btu per hour or less, and electric instantaneous water heaters with an input of 12 kilowatts or less; and

(iii) Heat pump type units, with a maximum current rating of 24 amperes at a voltage no greater than 250 volts, which are products designed to transfer thermal energy from one temperature level to a higher temperature level for the purpose of heating water, including all ancillary equipment such as fans, storage tanks, pumps, or controls necessary for the device to perform its function.

(2) The requirements of this part are limited to those water heaters for which the Department of Energy has adopted and published test procedures for measuring energy usage.

(e) *Room air conditioner* means a consumer product, other than a packaged terminal air conditioner, which is powered by a single phase electric current and which is an encased assembly designed as a unit for mounting in a window or through the wall for the purpose of providing delivery of conditioned air to an enclosed space. It includes a prime source of refrigeration and may include a means for ventilating and heating.

(f) *Clothes washer* means a consumer product designed to clean clothes, utilizing a water solution of soap and/or detergent and mechanical agitation or other movement, and must be one of the following classes: automatic clothes washers, semi-automatic clothes washers, and other clothes washers.

(1) *Automatic clothes washer* means a class of clothes washer which has a control system capable of scheduling a pre-selected combination of operations, such as regulation of water fill level, and performance of wash, rinse, drain and spin functions, without the need for the user to intervene subsequent to the initiation of machine operation. Some models may require user intervention to initiate these different segments of the cycle after the machine has begun operation, but they do not require the user to intervene to regulate the water temperature by adjusting the external water faucet valves.

(2) *Semi-automatic clothes washer* means a class of clothes washer that is the same as an automatic clothes washer except that the user must intervene to regulate the water temperature by adjusting the external water faucet valves.

(3) *Other clothes washer* means a class of clothes washer which is not an automatic or semi-automatic clothes washer.

(g) *Furnaces.* (1) *Furnace* means a product which utilizes only single-phase electric current, or single-phase electric current or DC current in conjunction with natural gas, propane, or home heating oil, and which—

(i) Is designed to be the principal heating sources for the living space of a residence;

(ii) Is not contained within the same cabinet with a central air conditioner whose rated cooling capacity is above 65,000 Btu per hour;

(iii) Is an electric central furnace, electric boiler, forced-air central furnace, gravity central furnace, or low pressure steam or hot water boiler; and

(iv) Has a heat input rate of less than 300,000 Btu per hour for electric boilers and low pressure steam or hot water boilers and less than 225,000 Btu per hour for forced-air central furnaces, gravity central furnaces, and electric central furnaces.

(2) *Electric central furnace* means a furnace designed to supply heat through a system of ducts with air as the heating medium, in which heat is generated by one or more electric resistance heating elements and the heated air is circulated by means of a fan or blower.

(3) *Forced air central furnace* means a gas or oil burning furnace designed to supply heat through a system of ducts with air as the heating medium. The heat generated by combustion of gas or oil is transferred to the air within a casing by conduction through heat exchange surfaces and is circulated through the duct system by means of a fan or blower.

(4) *Gravity central furnace* means a gas fueled furnace which depends primarily on natural convection for circulation of heated air and which is designed to be used in conjunction with a system of ducts.

(5) *Electric boiler* means an electrically powered furnace designed to supply low pressure steam or hot water for space heating application. A low pressure steam boiler operates at or below 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) steam pressure; a hot water boiler operates at or below 160 psig water pressure and 250 °F. water temperature.

(6) *Low pressure steam or hot water boiler* means an electric, gas or oil burning furnace designed to supply low pressure steam or hot water for space heating application. A low pressure steam boiler operates at or below 15 pounds psig steam pressure; a hot water boiler operates at or below 160 psig water pressure and 250 °F. water temperature.

(7) *Outdoor furnace or boiler* is a furnace or boiler normally intended for installation out-of-doors or in an unheated space (such as an attic or a crawl space).

(8) *Weatherized warm air furnace or boiler* means a furnace or boiler designed for installation outdoors, approved for resistance to wind, rain, and snow, and supplied with its own venting system.

(h) *Central air conditioner* means a product, other than a packaged terminal air conditioner, which is powered by single phase electric current, air cooled, rated below 65,000 Btu per hour, not contained within the same cabinet as a furnace, the rated capacity of which is above 225,000 Btu per hour, and is a heat pump or a cooling only unit.

(1) *Condenser-evaporator coil combination* means a condensing unit made by one manufacturer and one of several evaporator coils, either manufactured by the same manufacturer or another manufacturer, intended to be combined with that particular condensing unit.

(2) *Condensing unit* means a component of a ''central air conditioner'' which is designed to remove heat absorbed by the refrigerant and to transfer it to the outside environment, and which consists of an outdoor coil, compressor(s), and air moving device.

(3) *Evaporator coil* means a component of a central air conditioner which is designed to absorb heat from an enclosed space and transfer the heat to a refrigerant.

(4) *Single package unit* means any central air conditioner in which all the major assemblies are enclosed in one cabinet.

(5) *Split system* means any central air conditioner in which one or more of the major assemblies are separate from the others.

(i) *Heat pump* means a product, other than a packaged terminal heat pump, which consists of one or more assemblies, powered by single phase electric current, rated below 65,000 Btu per hour, utilizing an indoor conditioning coil, compressor, and refrigerant-to-outdoor air heat exchanger to provide air heating, and may also provide air cooling, dehumidifying, humidifying, circulating, and air cleaning.

(j) *Fluorescent lamp ballast* means a device that is used to start and operate fluorescent lamps by providing a starting voltage and current and limiting the current during normal operation, and that is designed to operate at nominal input voltages of 120 or 277 volts with a frequency of 60 Hertz and is for use in connection with F40T12, F96T12 or F96T12HO lamps.

(k) *Fluorescent lamp:* (1) Means a low pressure mercury electric-discharge source in which a fluorescing coating transforms some of the ultra-violet energy generated by the mercury discharge into light, including only the following:

(i) Any straight-shaped lamp (commonly referred to as 4-foot medium bi-pin lamps) with medium bi-pin bases of nominal overall length of 48 inches and rated wattage of 28 or more;

(ii) Any U-shaped lamp (commonly referred to as 2-foot U-shaped lamps) with medium bi-pin bases of nominal overall length between 22 and 25 inches and rated wattage of 28 or more;

(iii) Any rapid start lamp (commonly referred to as 8-foot high output lamps) with recessed double contact bases of nominal overall length of 96 inches and 0.800 nominal amperes, as defined in ANSI C78.1–1978 and related supplements (copies of ANSI C78.1–1978 and related supplements may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036); and

(iv) Any instant start lamp (commonly referred to as 8-foot slimline lamps) with single pin bases of nominal overall length of 96 inches and rated wattage of 52 or more, as defined in ANSI C78.3–1978 (R1984) and related supplement ANSI C78.3a–1985 (copies of ANSI C78.3–1978 (R1984) and related supplement ANSI C78.3a–1985 may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036); but

(2) *Fluorescent lamp* does not mean any lamp excluded by the Department of Energy, by rule, as a result of a determination that standards for such lamp would not result in significant energy savings because such lamp is designed for special applications or has special characteristics not available in reasonably substitutable lamp types; and

(3) *General service fluorescent lamp* means a fluorescent lamp which can be used to satisfy the majority of fluorescent applications, but does not mean any lamp designed and marketed for the following nongeneral lighting applications:

(i) Fluorescent lamps designed to promote plant growth;

(ii) Fluorescent lamps specifically designed for cold temperature installations;

(iii) Colored fluorescent lamps;

(iv) Impact-resistant fluorescent lamps;

(v) Reflectorized or aperture lamps;

(vi) Fluorescent lamps designed for use in reprographic equipment;

(vii) Lamps primarily designed to produce radiation in the ultra-violet region of the spectrum; and

(viii) Lamps with a color rendering index of 82 or greater.

(l) *Medium base compact fluorescent lamp* means an integrally ballasted fluorescent lamp with a medium screw base, a rated input voltage range of 115 to 130 volts and which is designed as direct replacement for a general service incandescent lamp; however, the term does not include—

(1) Any lamp that is—

(i) Specifically designed to be used for special purpose applications; and

(ii) Unlikely to be used in general purpose applications, such as the applications described in the definition of ''General Service Incandescent Lamp'' in this section; or

(2) Any lamp not described in the definition of ''General Service Incandescent Lamp'' in this section that is excluded by the Department of Energy, by rule, because the lamp is—

(i) Designed for special applications; and

(ii) Unlikely to be used in general purpose applications.

(m) *Incandescent lamp:* (1) Means a lamp in which light is produced by a filament heated to incandescence by an electric current, including only the following:

(i) Any lamp (commonly referred to as lower wattage nonreflector general service lamps, including any tungsten-halogen lamp) that has a rated wattage between 30 and 199 watts, has an E26 medium screw base, has a rated voltage or voltage range that lies at least partially within 115 and 130 volts, and is not a reflector lamp;

(ii) Any lamp (commonly referred to as a reflector lamp) which is not colored or designed for rough or vibration service applications, that contains an inner reflective coating on the outer bulb to direct the light, an R, PAR, or similar bulb shapes (excluding ER or BR) with E26 medium screw bases, a rated voltage or voltage range that lies at least partially within 115 and 130 volts, a diameter which exceeds 2.75 inches, and is either—

(A) A low(er) wattage reflector lamp which has a rated wattage between 40 and 205 watts; or

(B) A high(er) wattage reflector lamp which has a rated wattage above 205 watts;

(iii) Any general service incandescent lamp (commonly referred to as a high- or higher-wattage lamp) that has a rated wattage above 199 watts (above 205 watts for a high wattage reflector lamp); but

(2) *Incandescent lamp* does not mean any lamp excluded by the Secretary of Energy, by rule, as a result of a determination that standards for such lamp would not result in significant energy savings because such lamp is designed for special applications or has special characteristics not available in reasonably substitutable lamp types; and

(3) *General service incandescent lamp* means any incandescent lamp (other than a miniature or photographic lamp), including an incandescent reflector lamp, that has an E26 medium screw base, a rated voltage range at least partially within 115 and 130 volts, and which can be used to satisfy the majority of lighting applications, but does not include any lamp specifically designed for:

(i) Traffic signal, or street lighting service;

(ii) Airway, airport, aircraft, or other aviation service;

(iii) Marine or marine signal service;

(iv) Photo, projection, sound reproduction, or film viewer service;

(v) Stage, studio, or television service;

(vi) Mill, saw mill, or other industrial process service;

(vii) Mine service;

(viii) Headlight, locomotive, street railway, or other transportation service;

(ix) Heating service;

(x) Code beacon, marine signal, lighthouse, reprographic, or other communication service;

(xi) Medical or dental service;

(xii) Microscope, map, microfilm, or other specialized equipment service;

(xiii) Swimming pool or other underwater service;

(xiv) Decorative or showcase service;

(xv) Producing colored light;

(xvi) Shatter resistance which has an external protective coating; or

(xvii) Appliance service; and

(4) *Incandescent reflector lamp* means a lamp described in paragraph (m)(1)(ii) of this section; and

(5) *Tungsten-halogen lamp* means a gas-filled tungsten filament incandescent lamp containing a certain proportion of halogens in an inert gas.

(n) *Showerhead* means any showerhead (including a handheld showerhead), except a safety shower showerhead.

(o) *Faucet* means a lavatory faucet, kitchen faucet, metering faucet, or replacement aerator for a lavatory or kitchen faucet.

(p) *Water closet* means a plumbing fixture having a water-containing receptor which receives liquid and solid body waste and, upon actuation, conveys the waste through an exposed integral trap seal into a gravity drainage system, except such term does not include fixtures designed for installation in prisons.

(q) *Urinal* means a plumbing fixture which receives only liquid body waste and, on demand, conveys the waste through a trap seal into a gravity

drainage system, except such term does not include fixtures designed for installation in prisons.

(r) *Pool heater* means an appliance designed for heating nonpotable water contained at atmospheric pressure, including heating water in swimming pools, spas, hot tubs and similar applications. The requirements of this part are limited to those pool heaters for which the Department of Energy has adopted and published test procedures for measuring energy usage (see 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, appendix P).

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 34031, 34032, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49563, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67525, Dec. 29, 1994; 71 FR 4984, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78063, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.3 was amended by adding paragraph (s), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.3 Description of covered products.

* * * * *

(s) *Ceiling fan* means a nonportable device that is suspended from a ceiling for circulating air via the rotation of fan blades. The requirements of this part are limited to those ceiling fans for which the Department of Energy has adopted and published test procedures for measuring energy usage.

2. At 72 FR 49966, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.3 was amended by revising paragraphs (a)(1), (d) and (r), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth below:

§ 305.3 Description of covered products.

(a) * * *

(1) *Electric refrigerator* means a cabinet designed for the refrigerated storage of food at temperatures above 32 °F and below 39 °F, configured for general refrigerated food storage, and having a source of refrigeration requiring single phase, alternating current electric energy input only. An electric refrigerator may include a compartment for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 32 °F, but does not provide a separate low temperature compartment designed for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 8 °F.

* * * * *

(d) *Water heater* means a product which utilizes oil, gas, or electricity to heat potable water for use outside the heater upon demand, including—

(1) Storage type units which heat and store water at a thermostatically controlled temperature, including gas storage water heaters with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, oil storage water heaters with an input of 105,000 Btu per hour or less, and electric storage water heaters with an input of 12 kilowatts or less;

(2) Instantaneous type units which heat water but contain no more than one gallon of water per 4,000 Btu per hour of input, including gas instantaneous water heaters with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less, oil instantaneous water heaters with an input of 210,000 Btu per hour or less, and electric instantaneous water heaters with an input of 12 kilowatts or less; and

(3) Heat pump type units, with a maximum current rating of 24 amperes at a voltage no greater than 250 volts, which are products designed to transfer thermal energy from one temperature level to a higher temperature level for the purpose of heating water, including all ancillary equipment such as fans, storage tanks, pumps, or controls necessary for the device to perform its function.

* * * * *

(r) *Pool heater* means an appliance designed for heating nonpotable water contained at atmospheric pressure, including heating water in swimming pools, spas, hot tubs and similar applications.

GENERAL

§ 305.4 Prohibited acts.

(a) It shall be unlawful and subject to the enforcement penalties of section 333 of the Act, as adjusted for inflation pursuant to § 1.98 of this chapter, for each unit of any new covered product to which the part applies:

(1) For any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to distribute in commerce any new covered product unless such covered product is marked and/or labeled in accordance with § 305.11 with a marking, label, flap tag, hang tag, or energy fact sheet which conforms to the provisions of the Act and this part.

(2) For any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler knowingly to remove or render illegible any marking or label required to be provided with such product by this part.

(3) For any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to distribute in commerce any new covered product, if there is not included (i) on the label, (ii) separately attached to the product,

or (iii) shipped with the product, additional information relating to energy consumption or energy efficiency which conforms to the requirements in this part.

(b) It shall be unlawful and subject to the enforcement penalties of section 333 of the Act, as adjusted for inflation pursuant to § 1.98 of this chapter, for any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to:

(1) Refuse a request by the Commission or its designated representative for access to, or copying of, records required to be supplied under this part.

(2) Refuse to make reports or provide upon request by the Commission or its designated representative any information required to be supplied under this part.

(3) Refuse upon request by the Commission or its designated representative to permit a representative designated by the Commission to observe any testing required by this part while such testing is being conducted or to inspect the results of such testing. This section shall not limit the Commission from requiring additional testing under this part.

(4) Refuse, when requested by the Commission or its designated representative, to supply at the manufacturer's expense, no more than two of each model of each covered product to any laboratory designated by the Commission for the purpose of ascertaining whether the information in catalogs or set out on the label or marked on the product as required by this part is accurate. This action will be taken only after review of a manufacturer's testing records and an opportunity to revalidate test data has been extended to the manufacturer.

(5) Distribute in commerce any catalog containing a listing for a covered product without the information required by § 305.14 of this part. This subsection shall also apply to distributors and retailers.

(c) Pursuant to section 333(c) of the Act, it shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1)) for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler in or affecting commerce to display or distribute at point of sale any printed material applicable to a covered product under this rule if such printed material does not contain the information required by § 305.13. This requirement does not apply to any broadcast advertisement or to any advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical.

(d)(1) It shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1), for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler to make any representation in or affecting commerce, in writing (including a representation on a label) or in any broadcast advertisement, with respect to the energy use or efficiency or, in the case of showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals, water use of a covered product to which a test procedure is applicable under section 323 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293, or the cost of energy consumed by such product, unless such product has been tested in accordance with such test procedure and such representation fairly discloses the results of such testing.

(2) Effective 180 days after an amended or new test procedure applicable to a covered product is prescribed or established under section 323(b) of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293(b), it shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1), for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler to make any representation in or affecting commerce, in writing (including a representation on a label) or in any broadcast advertisement, with respect to the energy use or efficiency or, in the case of showerheads, faucets, water closets and urinals, water use of such product, or cost of energy consumed by such product, unless the product has been tested in accordance with such amended or new test procedures and such representation fairly discloses the results of such testing. This requirement is not limited to consumer appliance products covered by the labeling requirements of this part.

(3) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler may file a petition with the Commission not later

than sixty (60) days before the expiration of the period involved for an extension of the 180 day period. If the Commission finds that the requirements would impose an undue hardship on the petitioner, the Commission may extend the 180 day period with respect to the petitioner up to an additional 180 days.

(e) This part shall not apply to:

(1) Any covered product if it is manufactured, imported, sold, or held for sale for export from the United States, so long as such product is not in fact distributed in commerce for use in the United States, and such covered product or the container thereof bears a stamp or label stating that such covered product is intended for export.

(2) Any covered product, other than central air conditioners, pulse combustion and condensing furnaces, fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, pool heaters, instantaneous water heaters, heat pump water heaters, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, and general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), if the manufacture of the product was completed prior to May 19, 1980. Any central air conditioner or any pulse combustion or condensing furnace if its manufacture was completed prior to June 7, 1988. Any fluorescent lamp ballast if its manufacture was completed prior to January 1, 1990. Any showerhead, faucet, water closet or urinal if its manufacture was completed prior to October 24, 1994. Any pool heater, instantaneous water heater, or heat pump water heater if its manufacture was completed prior to December 29, 1994. Any general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including any incandescent reflector lamp), if its manufacture was completed prior to May 15, 1995.

(3) Any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any covered products that were manufactured prior to May 19, 1980; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any central air conditioners or pulse combustion or condensing furnaces manufactured prior to June 7, 1988; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any fluorescent lamp ballasts manufactured prior to June 23, 1989; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals manufactured prior to October 24, 1994; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any pool heaters, instantaneous water heaters, or heat pump water heaters manufactured prior to December 29, 1994; or any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), that were manufactured prior to May 15, 1995; except that any representations respecting the energy consumption, energy efficiency, or water use of any covered product or other consumer appliance product, or respecting the cost of energy consumed or water used by such product, are subject to the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section.

(f) As used in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the term *knowingly* means:

(1) The having of actual knowledge, or

(2) The presumed having of knowledge deemed to be possessed by a reasonable person who acts in the circumstances, including knowledge obtainable upon the exercise of due care.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28035, July 5, 1989; 58 FR 54964, Oct. 25, 1993; 59 FR 49563, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67526, Dec. 29, 1994; 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49966, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.4 was amended by revising paragraphs (a)(1), (b)(5) and (c), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.4 Prohibited acts.

(a) * * *

(1) For any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to distribute in commerce any new covered product unless such covered product is marked and/or labeled in accordance with this part with a marking, label, hang tag, or energy fact sheet which conforms to the provisions of the Act and this part.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

(5) Distribute in commerce any catalog containing a listing for a covered product without the information required by § 305.20 of this part. This subsection shall also apply to distributors and retailers.

(c) Pursuant to section 333(c) of the Act, it shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1)) for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler in or affecting commerce to display or distribute at point of sale any printed material applicable to a covered product under this rule if such printed material does not contain the information required by § 305.19. This requirement does not apply to any broadcast advertisement or to any advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical.

* * * * *

TESTING

§ 305.5 Determinations of estimated annual energy consumption, estimated annual operating cost, and energy efficiency rating, and of water use rate.

(a) Procedures for determining the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating costs, the energy efficiency ratings and the efficacy factors of covered products are those found in 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, in the following sections:

(1) Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers § 430.23(a).

(2) Freezers—§ 430.23(b).

(3) Dishwashers—§ 430.23(c).

(4) Water heaters—§ 430.23(e).

(5) Room air conditioners—§ 430.23(f).

(6) Clothes washers—§ 430.23(j).

(7) Central air conditioners and heat pumps—§ 430.23(m).

(8) Furnaces—§ 430.23(n).

(9) Pool Heaters—§ 430.23(p)

(10) Fluorescent lamp ballasts—§ 430.23(q).

(b) Manufacturers and private labelers of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), must, for any representation of the design voltage, wattage, light output or life of such lamp or for any representation made by the encircled ''E'' that such a lamp is in compliance with an applicable standard established by section 325 of the Act, possess and rely upon a reasonable basis consisting of competent and reliable scientific tests substantiating the representation. For representations of the light output and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), the Commission will accept as a reasonable basis competent and reliable scientific tests conducted according to the following applicable IES test protocols that substantiate the representations:

For measuring light output (in lumens):	
General Service Fluorescent ..	IES LM 9
Compact Fluorescent	IES LM 66
General Service Incandescent (Other than Reflector Lamps).	IES LM 45
General Service Incandescent (Reflector Lamps)	IES LM 20
For measuring laboratory life (in hours):	
General Service Fluorescent ..	IES LM 40
Compact Fluorescent	IES LM 65
General Service Incandescent (Other than Reflector Lamps).	IES LM 49
General Service Incandescent (Reflector Lamps)	IES LM 49

(c) Procedures for determining the water use rates of covered products are those found in the following standards:

(1) Showerheads and faucets—- ASME A112.18.1M–1989, Plumbing Fixture Fittings. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASME A112.18.1M may be obtained from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html.*

(2) Water closets and urinals—ASME A112.19.2M–1990, Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51.

Copies of ASME A112.19.2M may be obtained from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html*.

[58 FR 54964, Oct. 25, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67527, Dec. 29, 1994; 66 FR 27858, May 21, 2001; 69 FR 18803, Apr. 9, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78063, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.5 was amended by adding paragraph (a)(11), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added and revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.5 Determinations of estimated annual energy consumption, estimated annual operating cost, and energy efficiency rating, and of water use rate.

(a) * * *

(11) Ceiling Fans—§ 430.23.

* * * * *

2. At 72 FR 49967, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.5 was amended by revising paragraph (a), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.5 Determinations of estimated annual energy consumption, estimated annual operating cost, energy efficiency rating, and water use rate.

(a) Procedures for determining the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating costs, the energy efficiency ratings, and the efficacy factors of the following covered products are those located in 10 CFR part 430, subpart B. For the following list of covered products, the requirements of this part apply only to products for which the Department of Energy has adopted and published test procedures for measuring energy usage or efficiency.

(1) Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers—§ 430.23(a).

(2) Freezers—§ 430.23(b).

(3) Dishwashers—§ 430.23(c).

(4) Water heaters—§ 430.23(e).

(5) Room air conditioners—§ 430.23(f).

(6) Clothes washers—§ 430.23(j).

(7) Central air conditioners and heat pumps—§ 430.23(m).

(8) Furnaces—§ 430.23(n).

(9) Pool Heaters—§ 430.23(p)

(10) Fluorescent lamp ballasts—§ 430.23(q).

* * * * *

§ 305.6 Sampling.

(a) For any covered product (except general service flouroscent lamps, medium base compact florescent lamps, and general service incandescent lamps, including incandescent reflector lamps), any representation with respect to or based upon a measure or measures of energy consumption incorporated into § 305.5 shall be based upon the sampling procedures set forth in § 430.24 of 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(b) For any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), any representation of design voltage, wattage, light output or life and, for any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or incandescent reflector lamp, any representation made by the encircled ''E'' that such lamp is in compliance with an applicable standard established by section 325 of the Act shall be based upon tests using a competent and reliable scientific sampling procedure. The Commission will accept ''Military Standard 105—Sampling Procedures and Tables for Inspection by Attributes'' as such a sampling procedure.

[59 FR 67527, Dec. 29, 1994, as amended at 66 FR 27858, May 21, 2001]

§ 305.7 Determinations of capacity.

The capacity of covered products shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers*. The capacity shall be the total refrigerated volume (VT) in cubic feet, rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a cubic foot, as determined according to appendix A1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(b) *Freezers*. The capacity shall be the total refrigerated volume (VT) in cubic feet, rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a cubic foot, as determined according to appendix B1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(c) *Dishwashers*. The capacity shall be the place-setting capacity, determined according to appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(d) *Water heaters*. The capacity shall be the first hour rating, as determined according to appendix E to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(e) *Pool heaters*. The capacity shall be the heating capacity in Btu's per hour, rounded to the nearest 1,000 Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix P to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(f) *Room air conditioners*. The capacity shall be the cooling capacity in Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix F to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, but rounded to the nearest value ending in hundreds that will satisfy the relationship that the value of EER used in representations equals the rounded value of capacity divided by the value of input power in watts. If a value ending in hundreds will not satisfy this relationship, the capacity may be rounded to the nearest value ending in 50 that will.

(g) *Clothes washers*. The capacity shall be the tub capacity as determined according to appendix J1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, in the terms ''standard'' or ''compact'' as defined in appendix J1.

(h) *Furnaces*. The capacity shall be the heating capacity in Btu's per hour, rounded to the nearest 1,000 Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix N to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(i) *Central air conditioners, cooling*. The capacity shall be the cooling capacity in Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix M to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, rounded to the nearest 100 Btu's per hour for capacities less than 20,000 Btu's per hour; to the nearest 200 Btu's per hour for capacities between 20,000 and 37,999 Btu's per hour; and to the nearest 500 Btu's per hour for capacities between 38,000 and 64,999 Btu's per hour.

(j) *Central air conditioners, heating*. The capacity shall be the heating capacity in Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix M to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, rounded to the nearest 100 Btu's per hour for capacities less than 20,000 Btu's per hour; to the nearest 200 Btu's per hour for capacities between 20,000 and 37,999 Btu's per hour; and to the nearest 500 Btu's per hour for capacities between 38,000 and 64,999 Btu's per hour.

(k) *Fluorescent lamp ballasts*. The capacity shall be the ballast input voltage, as determined according to appendix Q to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

[59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 70 FR 3875, Jan. 27, 2005]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: 1. At 71 FR 78064, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.7 was amended by adding paragraph (l), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.7 Determinations of capacity.

* * * * *

(l) *Ceiling fans*. The capacity shall be the airflow in cubic feet per minute as determined according to appendix U of 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

2. At 72 FR 49967, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.7 was amended by revising paragraphs (a) and (b), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.7 Determinations of capacity.

* * * * *

(a) *Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers*. The capacity shall be the total refrigerated volume (VT) and the adjusted total volume (AV) in cubic feet, rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a cubic foot, as determined according to appendix A1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(b) *Freezers*. The capacity shall be the total refrigerated volume (VT) and the adjusted total volume (AV) in cubic feet, rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a cubic foot, as determined according to appendix B1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

* * * * *

§ 305.8 Submission of data.

(a)(1) Each manufacturer of a covered product (except manufacturers of fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps) shall submit annually to the Commission a report listing the estimated annual energy consumption (for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters) or the energy efficiency rating (for

room air conditioners, central air conditioners, heat pumps, furnaces, and pool heaters) for each basic model in current production, determined according to §305.5 and statistically verified according to §305.6. The report must also list, for each basic model in current production: the model numbers for each basic model; the total energy consumption, determined in accordance with §305.5, used to calculate the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating; the number of tests performed; and, its capacity, determined in accordance with §305.7. For those models that use more than one energy source or more than one cycle, each separate amount of energy consumption or energy cost, measured in accordance with §305.5, shall be listed in the report. appendix K illustrates a suggested reporting format. Starting serial numbers or other numbers identifying the date of manufacture of covered products shall be submitted whenever a new basic model is introduced on the market.

(2) Each manufacturer of a covered fluorescent lamp ballast shall submit annually to the Commission a report for each basic model of fluorescent lamp ballast in current production. The report shall contain the following information:

(i) Name and address of manufacturer;

(ii) All trade names under which the fluorescent lamp ballast is marketed;

(iii) Model number;

(iv) Starting serial number, date code or other means of identifying the date of manufacture (date of manufacture information must be included with only the first submission for each basic model);

(v) Nominal input voltage and frequency;

(vi) Ballast efficacy factor; and

(vii) Type (F40T12, F96T12 or F96T12HO) and number of lamp or lamps with which the fluorescent lamp ballast is designed to be used.

(3) Each manufacturer of a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall submit annually to the Commission a report for each lamp type in current production. The report shall contain the following information:

(i) Name and address of manufacturer;

(ii) All trade names under which the lamp is marketed;

(iii) Model number;

(iv) Starting serial number, date code or other means of identifying the date of manufacture (date of manufacture information must be included with only the first submission for each lamp type); and

(v) For all covered lamps, the test results for the lamp's wattage and light output ratings and, in addition, for all covered fluorescent lamps, the test results for the lamp's color rendering index.

(4) Each manufacturer of a covered showerhead, faucet, water closet or urinal shall submit annually to the Commission a report for each basic model of such products in current production. The report shall contain the following information:

(i) Name and address of manufacturer;

(ii) All trade names under which the product is marketed;

(iii) Model number;

(iv) Starting serial number, date code or other means of identifying the date of manufacture (date of manufacture information must be included with only the first submission for each basic model);

(v) The product's water use, expressed in gallons and liters per flush (gpf and Lpf) or gallons and liters per minute (gpm and L/min) or per cycle (gpc and L/cycle) as determined in accordance with §305.5.

(b)(1) All data required by §305.8(a) except serial numbers shall be submitted to the Commission annually, on or before the following dates:

Product category	Deadline for data submission
Refrigerators	Aug. 1
Refrigerator-freezers	Aug. 1
Freezers	Aug. 1
Central air conditioners	July 1
Heat pumps	July 1
Dishwashers	June 1
Water heaters	May 1
Room air conditioners	May 1
Furnaces	May 1
Pool heaters	May 1

Product category	Deadline for data submission
Clothes washers	Oct. 1
Fluorescent lamp ballasts	Mar. 1
Showerheads	Mar. 1
Faucets	Mar. 1
Water closets	Mar. 1
Urinals	Mar. 1
Fluorescent lamps	Mar. 1 [Stayed]
Medium Base Compact Fluorescent Lamps	Mar. 1 [Stayed]
Incandescent Lamps, incl. Reflector Lamps	Mar. 1 [Stayed]

(2) All revisions to such data (both additions to and deletions from the preceding data) shall be submitted to the Commission as part of the next annual report period.

(c) All information required by paragraph (a) of this section must be submitted for new models prior to any distribution of such model. Models subject to design or retrofit alterations which change the data contained in any annual report shall be reported in the manner required for new models. Models which are discontinued shall be reported in the next annual report.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28035, July 5, 1989; 59 FR 54965, Oct. 25, 1993; 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67527, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14210, Mar. 16, 1995; 67 FR 35008, May 17, 2002; 68 FR 8449, Feb. 21, 2003]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78064, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.8 was amended by revising paragraphs (a)(1) and (b)(1), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.8 Submission of data.

(a)(1) Each manufacturer of a covered product (except manufacturers of fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps) shall submit annually to the Commission a report listing the estimated annual energy consumption (for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters) or the energy efficiency rating (for room air conditioners, central air conditioners, heat pumps, furnaces, ceiling fans, and pool heaters) for each basic model in current production, determined according to § 305.5 and statistically verified according to § 305.6. The report must also list, for each basic model in current production: the model numbers for each basic model; the total energy consumption, determined in accordance with § 305.5, used to calculate the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating; the number of tests performed; and, its capacity, determined in accordance with § 305.7. For those models that use more than one energy source or more than one cycle, each separate amount of energy consumption or energy cost, measured in accordance with § 305.5, shall be listed in the report. Appendix K illustrates a suggested reporting format. Starting serial numbers or other numbers identifying the date of manufacture of covered products shall be submitted whenever a new basic model is introduced on the market. For ceiling fans, the report shall contain the fan diameter in inches and also shall contain efficiency ratings, energy consumption, and capacity at high speed.

* * * * *

(b)(1) All data required by § 305.8(a) except serial numbers shall be submitted to the Commission annually, on or before the following dates:

Product category	Deadline for data submission
Refrigerators	Aug. 1.
Refrigerator-freezers	Aug. 1.
Freezers	Aug. 1.
Central air conditioners	July 1.
Heat pumps	July 1.
Dishwashers	June 1.
Water heaters	May 1.
Room air conditioners	May 1.
Furnaces	May 1.
Pool heaters	May 1.
Clothes washers	Oct. 1.
Fluorescent lamp ballasts	Mar. 1.
Showerheads	Mar. 1.
Faucets	Mar. 1.
Water closets	Mar. 1.
Urinals	Mar. 1.
Ceiling fans	Mar. 1.
Fluorescent lamps	Mar. 1 [Stayed].
Medium Base Compact Fluorescent Lamps	Mar. 1 [Stayed].

Product category	Deadline for data submission
Incandescent Lamps, incl. Reflector Lamps	Mar. 1 [Stayed].

* * * * *

2. At 72 FR 49967, Aug. 29, 2007, §305.8 was amended by revising paragraph (a)(1), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§305.8 Submission of data.

(a)(1) Each manufacturer of a covered product (except manufacturers of fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps) shall submit annually to the Commission a report listing the estimated annual energy consumption (for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers, and water heaters) or the energy efficiency rating (for room air conditioners, central air conditioners, heat pumps, furnaces, and pool heaters) for each basic model in current production, determined according to §305.5 and statistically verified according to §305.6. The report must also list, for each basic model in current production: the brand name; the model numbers for each basic model; the total energy consumption, determined in accordance with §305.5, used to calculate the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating; the number of tests performed; and, its capacity, determined in accordance with §305.7. For those models that use more than one energy source or more than one cycle, each separate amount of energy consumption, measured in accordance with §305.5, shall be listed in the report. Starting serial numbers or other numbers identifying the date of manufacture of covered products shall be submitted whenever a new basic model is introduced on the market.

* * * * *

§305.9 Representative average unit energy cost.

(a) Table 1, below, contains the representative unit energy costs to be utilized for operating cost disclosures for furnaces and central air conditioners on fact sheets or in directories as required by §305.11(b)&(c) of this part.

TABLE 1—REPRESENTATIVE AVERAGE UNIT COSTS OF ENERGY FOR FIVE RESIDENTIAL ENERGY SOURCES (2005)

Type of energy	In commonly used terms	As required by DOE test procedure	Dollars per million Btu [1]
Electricity	9.06¢/kWh [2,3]	$0.0906/kWh	$26.55
Natural gas	$1.092/therm [4] or $11.23 MCF [5,6]	$0.00001092/Btu	10.92
No. 2 heating oil	$1.76/gallon [7]	$0.00001268/Btu	12.68
Propane	$1.55/gallon [8]	$0.00001694/Btu	16.94
Kerosene	$2.20/gallon [9]	$0.00001632/Btu	16.32

[1] Btu stands for British thermal unit.
[2] Wh stands for kiloWatt hour.
[3] 1 kWh = 3,412 Btu.
[4] 1 therm = 100,000 Btu. Natural gas prices include taxes.
[5] MCF stands for 1,000 cubic feet.
[6] For the purposes of this table, 1 cubic foot of natural gas has an energy equivalence of 1,028 Btu.
[7] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of No. 2 heating oil has an energy equivalence of 138,690 Btu.
[8] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of liquid propane has an energy equivalence of 91,333 Btu.
[9] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of kerosene has an energy equivalence of 135,000 Btu.

(b) Table 1, above, will be revised on the basis of future information provided by the Secretary of the Department of Energy, but not more often than annually.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 5700, Feb. 8, 1994; 59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994; 60 FR 9296, Feb. 17, 1995; 61 FR 5680, Feb. 14, 1996; 62 FR 67562, Dec. 29, 1997; 64 FR 7784, Feb. 17, 1999; 65 FR 20354, Apr. 17, 2000; 66 FR 27858, May 21, 2001; 67 FR 39271, June 7, 2002; 68 FR 23586, May 5, 2003; 69 FR 23653, Apr. 30, 2004; 70 FR 32486, June 3, 2005]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49967, Aug. 29, 2007, §305.9 was removed, effective February 29, 2008.

§ 305.10 Ranges of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings.

(a) The range of estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings for each covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall be taken from the appropriate appendix to this rule in effect at the time the labels are affixed to the product. The Commission shall publish revised ranges annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER, if appropriate, or a statement that the specific prior ranges are still applicable for the new year. Ranges will be changed if the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings of the products within the range change in a way that would alter the upper or lower estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating limits of the range by 15% or more from that previously published. When a range is revised, all information disseminated after 90 days following the publication of the revision shall conform to the revised range. Products that have been labeled prior to the effective date of a modification under this section need not be relabeled.

(b) When the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating of a given model of a covered product falls outside the limits of the current range for that product, which could result from the introduction of a new or changed model, the manufacturer shall

(1) Omit placement of such product on the scale, and

(2) Add one of the two sentences below, as appropriate, in the space just below the scale, as follows:

The estimated annual energy consumption of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

The energy efficiency rating of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

[59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994, as amended at 67 FR 35008, May 17, 2002; 68 FR 8449, Feb. 21, 2003]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78064, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.10 was amended by revising paragraph (a), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.10 Ranges of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings.

(a) The range of estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings for each covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, or ceiling fans) shall be taken from the appropriate appendix to this rule in effect at the time the labels are affixed to the product. The Commission shall publish revised ranges annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER, if appropriate, or a statement that the specific prior ranges are still applicable for the new year. Ranges will be changed if the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings of the products within the range change in a way that would alter the upper or lower estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating limits of the range by 15% or more from that previously published. When a range is revised, all information disseminated after 90 days following the publication of the revision shall conform to the revised range. Products that have been labeled prior to the effective date of a modification under this section need not be relabeled.

* * * * *

2. At 72 FR 49967, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.10 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.10 Ranges of comparability on the required labels.

(a) *Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs or Energy Efficiency Ratings*. The range of estimated annual operating costs or energy efficiency ratings for each covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets and urinals) shall be taken from the appropriate appendix to this part in effect at the time the labels are affixed to the product. The Commission shall publish revised ranges every five years beginning in 2012 in the Federal Register. When the ranges are revised, all information disseminated after 90 days following the publication of the revision shall conform to the revised ranges. Products that have been labeled prior to the effective date of a modification under this section need not be relabeled.

(b) *Representative average unit energy cost*. The Representative Average Unit Energy Cost to be used on labels as required by § 305.11 and disclosures as required by § 305.20 are listed in appendix K to this part. The Commission shall publish revised Representative Average Unit Energy Cost figures every five years beginning in 2012 in the Federal Register. When the cost figures are revised, all information disseminated after 90

days following the publication of the revision shall conform to the new cost figure.

(c) *Operating Costs or Efficiency Ratings Outside Current Range.* When the estimated annual operating cost or energy efficiency rating of a given model of a covered product falls outside the limits of the current range for that product, which could result from the introduction of a new or changed model, the manufacturer shall:

(1) Omit placement of such product on the scale that appears as required by §§ 305.11 and 305.12 of this part, and

(2) Add one of the two sentences below, as appropriate, in the space just below the scale on the label, as follows:

The estimated yearly operating cost of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

The energy efficiency rating of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

REQUIRED DISCLOSURES

§ 305.11 Labeling for covered products.

(a) *Labels for covered products other than fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), showerheads, faucets, water closets and urinals*—(1) *Layout.* All energy labels for each category of covered product shall use one size, similar colors and typefaces with consistent positioning of headline, copy and charts to maintain uniformity for immediate consumer recognition and readability. Trim size dimensions for all labels shall be as follows: width must be between 5¼ inches and 5½ inches (13.34 cm. and 13.97 cm.); length must be 7⅜ inches (18.73 cm.). Copy is to be set between 27 picas and 29 picas and copy page should be centered (right to left and top to bottom). Depth is variable but should follow closely the prototype labels appearing at the end of this part illustrating the basis layout. All positioning, spacing, type sizes and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype labels.

(2) *Type style and setting.* The Helvetica Condensed series typeface or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels. No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or copy text. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely. Generally, text must be set flush left with two points leading except where otherwise indicated. Helvetica Condensed Regular shall be used for all copy except the large number indicating the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating, which shall be in Helvetica Condensed Black, and all other numerals and letters used in immediate connection with the Energy Efficiency Scale, which shall be in Helvetica Condensed Bold. See the prototype labels for specific directions.

(3) *Colors.* The basic colors of all labels shall be process yellow or equivalent and process black. The label shall be printed full bleed process yellow. All type and graphics shall be print process black.

(4) *Paper stock*—(i) *Adhesive labels.* All adhesive labels should be applied so they can be easily removed without the use of tools or liquids, other than water, but should be applied with an adhesive with an adhesion capacity sufficient to prevent their dislodgment during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer. The paper stock for pressure-sensitive or other adhesive labels shall have a basic weight of not less than 58 pounds per 500 sheets (25″×38″) or equivalent, exclusive of the release liner and adhesive. A minimum peel adhesion capacity for the adhesive of 12 ounces per square inch is suggested, but not required if the adhesive can otherwise meet the above standard. The pressure-sensitive adhesive shall be applied in no fewer than two strips not less than 0.5 inches (1.27 cm.) wide. The strips shall be within 0.25 inches (.64 cm.) of the opposite edges of the label. For a ''flap-tag'' label, the pressure-sensitive adhesive shall be applied in one strip not less that 0.5 inches (1.27 cm.) wide. The strip shall be within 0.25 inches (.64 cm.) of the top edge of the label.

(ii) *Hang tags.* The paper stock for hang tags shall have a basic weight of not less than 110 pounds per 500 sheets (25½″×30½″ index). When materials are used to attach the hang tags to appliance products, the materials shall be of sufficient strength to insure that if gradual pressure is applied to the hang tag by pulling it away from where it is

affixed to the product, the hang tag will tear before the material used to affix the hang tag to the product breaks.

(5) *Contents*—(i) *Labels for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, dishwashers, clothes washers, water heaters and room air conditioners.* (A) Headlines and texts, as illustrated in the Prototype Labels in Appendix L to this Part, are standard for all labels except clothes washer labels, which must have the text and features described in 305.11(a)(5)(i)(L) of this part.

(B) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(C) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(D) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7.

(E) Estimated annual energy consumption for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters and energy efficiency ratings for room air conditioners are as determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(F) Ranges of comparability and of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings, as applicable, are found in the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(G) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(H) Labels must contain a statement disclosing the product's estimated annual operating cost derived using the DOE National Average Representative Unit Cost for the appropriate fuel that was current when the label was printed. The statement must disclose the specific cost per unit for the fuel and the year DOE published it.

(*1*) For refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, and water heaters, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate appliance name, the operating cost, the year, and the energy cost figures):

[Refrigerators, or Freezers, or Water Heaters] using more energy cost more to operate.

This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: [Cost figure will be boxed] Based on a [Year] U.S. Government national average cost of $____ per [kWh, therm, or gallon] for [electricity, natural gas, propane, or oil]. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

(2) For clothes washers and dishwashers, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate appliance name, the operating cost, the number of loads per week, the year, and the energy cost figures): [Clothes Washers, or Dishwashers] using more energy cost more to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: [Electric cost figure will be boxed] when used with an electric water heater [Gas cost figure will be boxed] when used with a natural gas water heater. Based on [4 washloads a week for dishwashers, or 8 washloads a week for clothes washers], and a [Year] U.S. Government national average cost of $__ per kWh for electricity and $__ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

(*3*) For room air conditioners, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate operating cost, the year, and the energy cost figures):

More efficient air conditioners cost less to operate.

This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: [Cost figure will be boxed] Based on a [Year] U.S. Government national average cost of $____ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

(I) The following statement shall appear at the bottom of the label:

IMPORTANT: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 CFR Part 305).

(J) A statement that the estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings, as applicable, are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required on all labels, as indicated in the prototype labels.

(K) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label, except a part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer, and the energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(L) Clothes washer labels must have the headlines and texts as illustrated in Prototype Label 2 of Appendix L of this Part. In particular, clothes washer labels must have the following headline as illustrated in Prototype Label 2: ''Compare the energy use of this clothes washer only with other models tested using the 2004 test procedure.'' In addition to the requirements for other labels, clothes washer labels must have a 10/16 inch (1.59 cm.) in height, process black bar across the top that contains the following text in process yellow as illustrated in Prototype Label 2: ''This model has been tested using the 2004 test procedure. Compare only with models displaying this statement.''

(ii) *Labels for furnaces and pool heaters.* (A) The headline, as illustrated in Figure 3, is standard for all labels.

(B) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(C) The annual fuel utilization efficiency for furnaces and the thermal efficiency for pool heaters are determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(D) Each furnace and pool heater label shall contain a generic range consisting of the lowest and highest annual fuel utilization efficiencies (for furnaces) or thermal efficiencies (for pool heaters) for all furnaces or pool heaters that utilize the same energy source.

(E) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest annual fuel utilization efficiency ratings or thermal efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(F) The following statement shall appear on furnace labels beneath the range(s) in bold print:

Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information regarding the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

(G) A statement that the annual fuel utilization efficiency ratings or thermal efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required on all labels.

(H) The following statement shall appear at the bottom of the label:

IMPORTANT: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 CFR Part 305).

(I) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label, except a part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer, and the energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(J) Manufacturers of boilers that are shipped without jackets must label their products with hang-tags that also have adhesive backing on them that complies with the specifications contained in § 305.11(a)(4).

(K) Manufacturers of boilers shipped with more than one input nozzle to be installed in the field must label such

boilers with the AFUE of the system when it is set up with the nozzle that results in the lowest annual fuel utilization efficiency rating.

(L) Manufacturers that ship out boilers that may be set up as either steam or hot water units must label the boilers with the AFUE rating derived by conducting the required test on the boiler as a hot water unit.

(iii) *Labels for central air conditioners.* (A) The headline, as illustrated in Figures 4, 5 and 6, is standard for all labels.

(B) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(C) The seasonal energy efficiency ratio for the cooling function of central air conditioners is determined in accordance with § 305.5. For the heating function, the heating seasonal performance factor shall be calculated for heating Region IV for the standardized design heating requirement nearest the capacity measured in the High Temperature Test in accordance with § 305.5. In addition, the energy efficiency rating(s) for split system condenser-evaporator coil combinations shall be either:

(*1*) The energy efficiency rating of the condenser-evaporator coil combination that is the particular manufacturer's most commonly sold combination for that condenser model; or

(*2*) The energy efficiency rating of the actual condenser-evaporator coil combination comprising the system to which the label is to be attached.

(D)(*1*) Each cooling only central air conditioner label shall contain a generic range consisting of the lowest and highest seasonal energy efficiency ratios for all cooling only central air conditioners.

(*2*) Each heat pump label, except as noted in paragraph (a)(5)(iii)(D)(*3*) of this section, shall contain two generic ranges. The first range shall consist of the lowest and highest seasonal energy efficiency ratios for the cooling side of all heat pumps. The second range shall consist of the lowest and highest heating seasonal performance factors for the heating side of all heat pumps.

(*3*) Each heating only heat pump label shall contain a generic range consisting of the lowest and highest heating seasonal performance factors for all heating only heat pumps.

(E) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(F) The following statement shall appear on the label beneath the range(s) in bold print:

Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information regarding the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

(G) A statement that the efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required on all labels.

In addition, all labels disclosing energy efficiency ratings for the ''most common'' condenser-evaporator coil combinations must contain one of the following three statements:

(*1*) For labels disclosing the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.

(*2*) For labels disclosing both the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling and the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(*3*) For labels disclosing the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

Central air conditioner labels disclosing the efficiency ratings for specific condenser/coil combinations do not have to contain any of the above three statements. They must contain only the general disclosure that the energy costs and efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government tests.

(H) The following statement shall appear at the bottom of the label:

IMPORTANT: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 CFR Part 305).

(6) *Placement*. Manufacturers shall affix a label to the exterior surface on covered products in such a position that it can easily be read while standing in front of the product as it is displayed for sale. The label should be generally located on the upper-right-front corner of the product, except that for low-standing products or products with configurations that make application in that location impractical, some other prominent location may be used. The top of the label should not exceed 74 inches from the base of taller products. The label in the form of a ''flap tag'' shall be adhered to the top of the appliance and bent (folded at 90°) to hang over the front, if this can be done with assurance that it will be readily visible. Labels for split system central air conditioners shall be affixed to the condensing unit.

(7) *Use of hang tags*. Information prescribed above for labels may be displayed in the form of a hang tag, which may be used in place of an affixed label. If a hang tag is used, it shall be affixed in such a position that it will be prominent to a consumer examining the product.

(b) *Fact sheets*—(1) *Distribution*. (i) Except as provided in Subsection c, manufacturers and private labelers must give distributors and retailers, including assemblers, fact sheets for the furnaces and central air conditioners they sell to them. Distributors must give the fact sheets to the retailers, including assemblers, they supply. Each fact sheet must contain the information listed in § 305.11(b)(3).

(ii) Retailers, including assemblers, who sell furnaces or central air conditioners to consumers must have fact sheets for the furnaces and central air conditioners they sell. They must make the fact sheets available to their customers. The fact sheets may be made available to customers in any manner, as long as customers are likely to notice them. For example, they can be available in a display, where customers can take copies of them. They can be kept in a binder at a counter or service desk, with a sign telling customers where the fact sheets are. Retailers, including assemblers, who negotiate or make sales at a place other than their regular places of business must show the fact sheets to their customers and let them read the fact sheets before they agree to purchase the product.

(2) *Format*. All information required to be contained in fact sheets must be disclosed clearly and conspicuously.

(3) *Contents*. (i) ''Energy Guide'' headline is standard for all fact sheets, as for labels.

(ii) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used.

(iii) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(iv) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7.

(v) Energy efficiency rating is that determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(vi) Ranges of comparability and of energy efficiency ratings are found in section 1 of the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(vii) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to energy efficiency ratings of the lowest and highest efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(viii) Yearly cost information text and tables are found in section 2 of Appendices G, H and I accompanying this part. Cost figures are to be determined in accordance with § 305.5 using the unit energy costs found in table 1 of § 305.9.

(ix) A statement that the energy costs and energy efficiency ratings are

based on U.S. Government standard tests is required in all fact sheets.

(x) For central air conditioner fact sheets disclosing efficiency ratings for the ''most common'' condenser-evaporator coil combinations, the statement should be made in one of the following three ways:

(A) For fact sheets disclosing the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.

(B) For fact sheets disclosing both the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling and the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(C) For fact sheets disclosing the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(xi) Central air conditioner fact sheets disclosing the efficiency ratings for specific condenser/coil combinations do not have to contain any of the above three statements. Instead, they must contain a general disclosure that the energy costs and efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government tests.

(c) Manufacturers of furnaces and central air conditioners may elect to disseminate information regarding the efficiencies and costs of operation of their products by means of a directory or similar publication, rather than on fact sheets, provided the publication meets the following criteria:

(1) *Distribution*. (i) It must be distributed to substantially all retailers and assemblers of central air conditioners and furnaces selling or assembling models listed in the directory.

(ii) It must be made available at cost to all other interested parties.

(2) *Format*. All required information must be disclosed clearly and conspicuously.

(3) *Contents*. (i) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(ii) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7.

(iii) Efficiency rating is that determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(iv) Cost disclosures must be substantially equivalent to those required on fact sheets.

(v) A statement that the energy costs and efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests.

(vi) Ranges of comparability and of energy efficiency ratings are found in section 1 of the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(d) *Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts and Luminaires*—(1) *Contents*. Fluorescent lamp ballasts that are ''covered products,'' as defined in § 305.2(o), and to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, shall be marked conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle. Packaging for such fluorescent lamp ballasts, as well as packaging for luminaires into which they are incorporated, shall also be marked conspicuously with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle. For purposes of this section, the encircled capital letter ''E'' will be deemed ''conspicuous,'' in terms of size, if it is as large as either the manufacturer's name or another logo, such as the ''UL,'' ''CBM'' or ''ETL'' logos, whichever is larger, that appears on the fluorescent lamp ballast, the packaging for such ballast or the packaging for the luminaire into which the covered ballast is incorporated, whichever is applicable for purpose of labeling.

(2) *Product Labeling*. The encircled capital letter ''E'' on fluorescent lamp ballasts must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, (i.e., in a color that contrasts with the background on which the encircled capital letter ''E'' is placed) on the surface that is normally labeled. It may be printed on the label that normally appears on the fluorescent lamp ballast, printed on a separate label, or stamped indelibly on the surface of the fluorescent lamp ballast.

(3) *Package Labeling*. For purposes of labeling under this section, packaging for such fluorescent lamp ballasts and the luminaires into which they are incorporated consists of the plastic sheeting, or ''shrink-wrap,'' covering pallet loads of fluorescent lamp ballasts or luminaires as well as any containers in which such fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated are marketed individually or in small numbers. The encircled capital letter ''E'' on packages containing fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, on the surface of the package on which printing or a label normally appears. If the package contains printing on more than one surface, the label must appear on the surface on which the product inside the package is described. The encircled capital letter ''E'' may be printed on the surface of the package, printed on a label containing other information, printed on a separate label, or indelibly stamped on the surface of the package. In the case of pallet loads containing fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated, the encircled capital letter ''E'' must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, on the plastic sheeting, unless clear plastic sheeting is used and the encircled capital letter ''E'' is legible underneath this packaging. The encircled capital letter ''E'' must also appear conspicuously on any documentation that would normally accompany such a pallet load. The encircled capital letter ''E'' may appear on a label affixed to the sheeting or may be indelibly stamped on the sheeting. It may be printed on the documentation, printed on a separate label that is affixed to the documentation or indelibly stamped on the documentation.

(e) *Lamps*—(1)(i) Any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp) shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously on the product's principal display panel with the following information:

(A) The number of lamps included in the package, if more than one;

(B) The design voltage of each lamp included in the package, if other than 120 volts;

(C) The light output of each lamp included in the package, expressed in average initial lumens;

(D) The electrical power consumed (energy used) by each lamp included in the package, expressed in average initial wattage;

(E) The life of each lamp included in the package, expressed in hours.

(ii) The light output, energy usage and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall appear in that order and with equal clarity and conspicuousness on the product's principal display panel. The light output, energy usage and life ratings shall be disclosed in terms of ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' respectively, with the lumens, watts and hours rating numbers each appearing in the same type style and size and with the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' each appearing in the same type style and size. The words ''light output,'' ''energy used'' and ''life'' shall precede and have the same conspicuousness as both the rating numbers and the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours,'' except that the letters of the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' shall be approximately 50% of the sizes of those used for the words ''light output,'' ''energy used'' and ''life'' respectively.

(iii) The light output, energy usage and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall be measured at 120 volts, regardless of the lamp's design voltage. If a lamp's design voltage is 125 volts or 130 volts, the disclosures of the wattage, light output and life ratings shall in each instance be:

(A) At 120 volts and followed by the phrase ''at 120 volts.'' In such case, the labels for such lamps also may disclose the lamp's wattage, light output and life at the design voltage (e.g., ''Light Output 1710 Lumens at 125 volts''); or

(B) At the design voltage and followed by the phrase ''at (125 volts/130 volts)'' if the ratings at 120 volts are

disclosed clearly and conspicuously on another panel of the package, and if all panels of the package that contain a claimed light output, wattage or life clearly and conspicuously identify the lamp as ''(125 volt/130 volt),'' and if the principal display panel clearly and conspicuously discloses the following statement:

This product is designed for (125/130) volts. When used on the normal line voltage of 120 volts, the light output and energy efficiency are noticeably reduced. See (side/back) panel for 120 volt ratings.

(iv) For any covered product that is an incandescent reflector lamp, the required disclosure of light output shall be given for the lamp's total forward lumens.

(v) For any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp, the required light output disclosure shall be measured at a base-up position; but, if the manufacturer or private labeler has reason to believe that the light output at a base-down position would be more than 5% different, the label also shall disclose the light output at the base-down position or, if no test data for the base-down position exist, the fact that at a base-down position the light output might be more than 5% less.

(vi) For any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), there shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed on the principal display panel the following statement:

To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the (beam spread and) light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts.''

(vii) For any covered product that is a general service incandescent lamp and operates with multiple filaments, the principal display panel shall disclose clearly and conspicuously, in the manner required by paragraph (e)(1)(i)–(iii) and (vi) of this section, the lamp's wattage and light output at each of the lamp's levels of light output and the lamp's life measured on the basis of the filament that fails first.

(2) Any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or an incandescent reflector lamp shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle and followed by an asterisk. The label shall also clearly and conspicuously disclose, either in close proximity to that asterisk or elsewhere on the label, the following statement:

*[The encircled ''E''] means this bulb meets Federal minimum efficiency standards.

(i) If the statement is not disclosed on the principal display panel, the asterisk shall be followed by the following statement:

See [Back,Top, Side] panel for details.

(ii) For purposes of this paragraph (e), the encircled capital letter ''E'' shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in color-contrasting ink on the label of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp and will be deemed ''conspicuous,'' in terms of size, if it appears in typeface at least as large as either the manufacturer's name or logo or another logo disclosed on the label, such as the ''UL'' or ''ETL'' logos, whichever is larger.

(3)(i) A manufacturer or private labeler who distributes general service fluorescent lamps, compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps) without labels attached to the lamps or without labels on individual retail-sale packaging for one or more lamps may meet the disclosure requirements of paragraphs (e)(1) and (e)(2) of this section by making the required disclosures, in the manner and form required by those paragraphs, on the bulk shipping cartons that are to be used to display the lamps for retail sale.

(ii) Instead of labeling any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp with the encircled ''E'' and with the statement described in paragraph (e)(2) of this section, a manufacturer or private labeler who would not otherwise put a label on such a lamp may meet the disclosure requirements of that paragraph by permanently marking the lamp clearly and conspicuously with the encircled ''E''.

(4) Any manufacturer or private labeler who makes any representation on a label of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector

lamp), regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, e.g., purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, patterns of use.

(5) Any cartons in which any covered products that are general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), are shipped within the United States or imported into the United States shall disclose clearly and conspicuously the following statement:

These lamps comply with Federal energy efficiency labeling requirements.

(f) *Plumbing Fixtures*—(1) *Showerheads and Faucets.* Showerheads and faucets shall be marked and labeled as follows:

(i) Each showerhead and flow restricting or controlling spout end device shall bear a permanent legible marking indicating the flow rate, expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or gallons per cycle (gpc), and the flow rate value shall be the actual flow rate or the maximum flow rate specified by the standards established in subsection (j) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(j). Except where impractical due to the size of the fitting, each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per minute (L/min) or liters per cycle (L/cycle). For purposes of this section, the marking indicating the flow rate will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking.

(ii) Each showerhead and faucet shall bear a permanent legible marking to identify the manufacturer. This marking shall be the trade name, trademark, or other mark known to identify the manufacturer. Such marking shall be located where it can be seen after installation.

(iii) Each showerhead and faucet shall be marked ''A112.18.1M'' to demonstrate compliance with the applicable ASME standard. The marking shall be by means of either a permanent mark on the product, a label on the product, or a tag attached to the product.

(iv) The package for each showerhead and faucet shall disclose the manufacturer's name and the model number.

(v) The package or any label attached to the package for each showerhead or faucet shall contain at least the following: ''A112.18.1M'' and the flow rate expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or gallons per cycle (gpc), and the flow rate value shall be the actual flow rate or the maximum flow rate specified by the standards established in subsection (j) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(j). Each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per minute (L/min) or liters per cycle (L/cycle).

(2) *Water Closets and Urinals.* Water closets and urinals shall be marked and labeled as follows:

(i) Each such fixture (and flushometer valve associated with such fixture) shall bear a permanent legible marking indicating the flow rate, expressed in gallons per flush (gpf), and the water use value shall be the actual water use or the maximum water use specified by the standards established in subsection (k) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(k). Except where impractical due to the size of the fixture, each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per flush (Lpf). For purposes of this section, the marking indicating the flow rate will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking.

(ii) Each water closet (and each component of the water closet if the fixture is comprised of two or more components) and urinal shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark or, in the case of private labeling, the name or registered trademark of the customer for whom the unit was manufactured. This mark shall be legible, readily identified, and applied so as to be permanent. The mark shall be located so as to be visible after the fixture is installed, except for fixtures built into or for a counter or cabinet.

(iii) Each water closet (and each component of the water closet if the fixture is comprised of two or more components) and urinal shall be marked at a location determined by the manufacturer with the designation ''ASME A112.19.2M'' to signify compliance with the applicable standard. This

mark need not be permanent, but shall be visible after installation.

(iv) The package, and any labeling attached to the package, for each water closet and urinal shall disclose the flow rate, expressed in gallons per flush (gpf), and the water use value shall be the actual water use or the maximum water use specified by the standards established in subsection (k) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(k). Each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per flush (Lpf).

(v) With respect to any gravity tank-type white 2-piece toilet offered for sale or sold before January 1, 1997, which has a water use greater than 1.6 gallons per flush (gpf), any printed matter distributed or displayed in connection with such product (including packaging and point-of-sale material, catalog material, and print advertising) shall include, in a conspicuous manner, the words ''For Commercial Use Only.''

(3) *Annual Operating Cost Claims for Covered Plumbing Products.* Until such time as the Commission has prescribed a format and manner of display for labels conveying estimated annual operating costs of covered showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals or ranges of estimated annual operating costs for the types or classes of such plumbing products, the Act prohibits manufacturers from making such representations on the labels of such covered products. 42 U.S.C. 6294(c)(8). If, before the Commission has prescribed such a format and manner of display for labels of such products, a manufacturer elects to provide for any such product a label conveying such a claim, it shall submit the proposed claim to the Commission so that a format and manner of display for a label may be prescribed.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28035, July 5, 1989; 59 FR 54965, Oct. 25, 1993; 59 FR 34033–34035, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67528, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14210, Mar. 16, 1995; 60 FR 31081, June 13, 1995; 61 FR 33653, June 28, 1996; 63 FR 38745, July 20, 1998; 65 FR 17563, Apr. 3, 2000; 67 FR 47444, July 19, 2002; 68 FR 36463, June 18, 2003; 68 FR 55821, Sept. 20, 2003]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78064, Dec. 28, 2006, § 305.11 was amended by revising paragraph (a)(1) and adding paragraph (g), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added and revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.11 Labeling for covered products.

(a) *Labels for covered products other than fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, and ceiling fans*—(1) *Layout.* All energy labels for each category of covered product shall use one size, similar colors and typefaces with consistent positioning of headline, copy and charts to maintain uniformity for immediate consumer recognition and readability. Trim size dimensions for all labels shall be as follows: width must be between 5 ¼ inches and 5 ½ inches (13.34 cm. and 13.97 cm.); length must be 7 ⅜ inches (18.73 cm.). Copy is to be set between 27 picas and 29 picas and copy page should be centered (right to left and top to bottom). Depth is variable but should follow closely the prototype labels appearing at the end of this part illustrating the basic layout. All positioning, spacing, type sizes and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype labels.

* * * * *

(g) *Ceiling Fans*—(1) *Content.* Any covered product that is a ceiling fan shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously on the principal display panel with the following information in order from top to bottom on the label:

(i) The words ''ENERGY INFORMATION'' shall appear at the top of the label with the words ''at High Speed'' directly underneath;

(ii) The product's airflow at high speed expressed in cubic feet per minute and determined pursuant to § 305.5 of this part;

(iii) The product's electricity usage at high speed expressed in watts and determined pursuant to § 305.5 of this part, including the phrase ''excludes lights'' as indicated in Ceiling Fan Label Illustration of Appendix L of this part;

(iv) The product's airflow efficiency rating at high speed expressed in cubic feet per minute per watt and determined pursuant to § 305.5 of this part;

(v) The following statement shall appear on the label for fans fewer than 49 inches in diameter: ''Compare: 36'' to 48'' ceiling fans have airflow efficiencies ranging from approximately 71 to 86 cubic feet per minute per watt at high speed.'';

(vi) The following statement shall appear on the label for fans 49 inches or more in diameter: ''Compare: 49'' to 60'' ceiling fans have airflow efficiencies ranging from approximately 51 to 176 cubic feet per minute per watt at high speed.''; and

(vii) The following statements shall appear at the bottom of the label as indicated in Ceiling Fan Label Illustration of Appendix L

of this part: ''Money-Saving Tip: Turn off fan when leaving room.''

(2) *Label Size and Text Font*. The label shall be four inches wide and three inches high. The text font shall be Arial or another equivalent font. The text on the label shall be black with a white background. The label's text size and content, and the order of the required disclosures shall be consistent with Ceiling Fan Label Illustration of Appendix L of this part.

(3) *Placement*. The ceiling fan label shall be printed on the principal display panel of the product's packaging.

(4) *Additional Information:* No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on this label, except a model name, number, or similar identifying information.

2. At 72 FR 49967, Aug. 29, 2007, §305.11 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§305.11 Labeling for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, dishwashers, clothes washers, water heaters, room air conditioners, and pool heaters.

(a) *Layout*. All energy labels for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, dishwashers, clothes washers, water heaters, pool heaters, and room air conditioners shall use one size, similar colors, and typefaces with consistent positioning of headline, copy, and charts to maintain uniformity for immediate consumer recognition and readability. Trim size dimensions for all labels shall be as follows: width must be between 5 1/4 inches and 5 1/2 inches (13.34 cm. and 13.97 cm.); length must be between 7 3/8 inches (18.78 cm.) and 7 5/8 (19.34 cm.). Copy is to be set between 27 picas and 29 picas and copy page should be centered (right to left and top to bottom). Depth is variable but should follow closely the prototype labels appearing at the end of this part illustrating the basis layout. All positioning, spacing, type sizes, and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype and sample labels in appendix L.

(b) *Type style and setting*. The Arial series typeface or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels. No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or copy text. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely. Generally, text must be set flush left with two points leading except where otherwise indicated. See the prototype labels for specific directions.

(c) *Colors*. The basic colors of all labels covered by this section shall be process yellow or equivalent and process black. The label shall be printed full bleed process yellow. All type and graphics shall be print process black.

(d) *Label Types*—The labels must be affixed to the product in the form of an adhesive label or a hang tag as follows:

(1) *Adhesive labels*. All adhesive labels should be applied so they can be easily removed without the use of tools or liquids, other than water, but should be applied with an adhesive with an adhesion capacity sufficient to prevent their dislodgment during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer. The paper stock for pressure-sensitive or other adhesive labels shall have a basic weight of not less than 58 pounds per 500 sheets (25''x38'') or equivalent, exclusive of the release liner and adhesive. A minimum peel adhesion capacity for the adhesive of 12 ounces per square inch is suggested, but not required if the adhesive can otherwise meet the above standard.

(2) *Hang tags*. Labels may be affixed to the product in the form of a hang tag using string or similar material. The paper stock for hang tags shall have a basic weight of not less than 110 pounds per 500 sheets (25 1/2''x30 1/2''; index). When materials are used to attach the hang tags to appliance products, the materials shall be of sufficient strength to insure that if gradual pressure is applied to the hang tag by pulling it away from where it is affixed to the product, the hang tag will tear before the material used to affix the hang tag to the product breaks.

(e) *Placement*—(1) *Adhesive labels*: Manufacturers shall affix adhesive labels to the covered products in such a position that it is easily read by a consumer examining the product. The label should be generally located on the upper-right-front corner of the product's front exterior. However, some other prominent location may be used as long as the label will not become dislodged during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer. The top of the label should not exceed 74 inches from the base of taller products. The label can be displayed in the form of a flap tag adhered to the top of the appliance and bent (folded at 90°) to hang over the front, as long as this can be done with assurance that it will be readily visible.

(2) *Hang tags*. A hang tag shall be affixed to the interior of the product in such a position that it can be easily read by a consumer examining the product. A hang tag can be affixed in any position that meets this requirement as long as the label will not become dislodged during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer.

(f) *Label Content*—(1) Headlines and texts, as illustrated in the prototype and sample labels in appendix L to this part.

(2) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or

followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(3) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(4) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7. For refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers, the capacity provided on the label shall be the model's total refrigerated volume (VT) as determined in accordance § 305.7.

(5) Estimated annual operating costs for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers, room air conditioners, and water heaters are as determined in accordance with § 305.5 and appendix K to this part. Thermal efficiencies for pool heaters are as determined in accordance with § 305.5 . Labels for clothes washers and dishwashers must disclose estimated annual operating cost for both electricity and natural gas as illustrated in the sample labels in appendix L.

(6) Ranges of comparability for estimated annual operating costs or thermal efficiencies, as applicable, are found in the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(7) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest estimated annual operating costs or thermal efficiencies, as applicable.

(8) Labels for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, dishwashers, clothes washers, and water heaters must contain the model's estimated annual energy consumption as determined in accordance with § 305.5 and as indicated on the sample labels in appendix L. Labels for room air conditioners and pool heaters must contain the model's energy efficiency rating or thermal efficiency, as applicable, as determined in accordance with § 305.5 and as indicated on the sample labels in appendix L.

(9) Labels must contain a statement explaining information on the label as illustrated in the prototype labels in appendix L and specified as follows by product type:

(i) For refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate year and energy cost figures):

Your costs will depend on your utility rates and use.

[Insert statement required by § 305.11(f)(9)((ii)].

Estimated operating cost is based on a [Year] national average electricity cost of _____ cents per kWh.

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(ii) For refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers, the following sentence shall be included as part of the statement required by § 305.11(f)(10)(i):

(A) For models covered under appendix A1, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on refrigerator models of similar capacity with automatic defrost.

(B) For models covered under appendix A2, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with manual defrost.

(C) For models covered under appendix A3, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with partial automatic defrost.

(D) For models covered under appendix A4, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with automatic defrost, top-mounted freezer, and without through-the-door ice.

(E) For models covered under appendix A5, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with automatic defrost, side-mounted freezer, and without through-the-door ice.

(F) For models covered under appendix A6, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with automatic defrost, bottom-mounted freezer, and without through-the-door ice.

(G) For models covered under appendix A7, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with automatic defrost, top-mounted freezer, and through-the-door ice.

(H) For models covered under appendix A8, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity with automatic defrost, side-mounted freezer, and through-the-door ice.

(I) For models covered under appendix B1, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on upright freezer models of similar capacity with manual defrost.

(J) For models covered under appendix B2, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on upright freezer models of similar capacity with automatic defrost.

(K) For models covered under appendix B3, the sentence shall read:

Cost range based only on chest and other freezer models of similar capacity.

(iii) For room air conditioners, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate model type, year, energy type, and energy cost figure):

Your costs will depend on your utility rates and use.

Cost range based only on models [of similar capacity without reverse cycle and with louvered sides; of similar capacity without

reverse cycle and without louvered sides; with reverse cycle and with louvered sides; or with reverse cycle and without louvered sides].

Estimated operating cost is based on a [Year] national average electricity cost of _____ cents per kWh.

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(iv) For water heaters covered by Appendices D1, D2, and D3, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate fuel type, year, and energy cost figures):

Your costs will depend on your utility rates and use.

Cost range based only on models of similar capacity fueled by [natural gas, oil, propane, or electricity].

Estimated operating cost is based on a [Year] national average [electricity, natural gas, propane, or oil] cost of [_____ cents per kWh or $_____ per therm or gallon].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(v) For instantaneous gas water heaters (appendix D4) and heat pump water heaters (appendix D5), the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate model type, the operating cost, the year, and the energy cost figures):

Your costs will depend on your utility rates and use.

Cost range based only on [instantaneous gas water heater or heat pump water heater] models of similar capacity. Estimated operating cost is based on a [Year] national average [electricity, natural gas, or propane] cost of [_____ cents per kWh or $_____ per therm or gallon].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(vi) For clothes washers and dishwashers, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate appliance type, the operating cost, the number of loads per week, the year, and the energy cost figures):

Your costs will depend on your utility rates and use.

Cost range based only on [compact/standard] capacity models.

Estimated operating cost is based on [4 washloads a week for dishwashers, or 8 washloads a week for clothes washers] and a [Year] national average electricity cost of _____ cents per kWh and natural gas cost of $_____ per therm.

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(vii) For pool heaters, the statement will read as follows:

Efficiency range based only on models fueled by [natural gas or oil].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(11) The following statement shall appear on each label as illustrated in the prototype and sample labels in appendix L:

Federal law prohibits removal of this label before consumer purchase.

(12) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label except that:

(i) A part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(ii) The energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer.

(iii) The manufacturer may include the ENERGY STAR logo on the bottom right corner of the label for qualified products. The logo must be 1 inch by 1 inch in size. Only manufacturers that have signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the Department of Energy or the Environmental Protection Agency may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels on qualifying covered products; such manufacturers may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels only on those covered products that are contemplated by the Memorandum of Understanding.

§ 305.12 Additional information relating to energy consumption.

Additional information relating to energy consumption which must be included on labels, separately attached to the product, or shipped with the product will be published as a separate section 3 of the appendices accompanying this part. No additional information will be required without public notice and an opportunity for written comments.

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49969, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.12 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.12 Labeling for Central Air Conditioners, Heat Pumps, and Furnaces.

(a) *Layout*. All energy labels for central air conditioners, heat pumps, and furnaces (including boilers) shall use one size, similar colors, and typefaces with consistent positioning of headline, copy, and charts to maintain uniformity for immediate consumer recognition and readability. Trim size dimensions for all labels shall be as follows: width must be between 5 1/4 inches and 5 1/2 inches (13.34 cm. and 13.97 cm.); length must be between 7 3/8 inches (18.78 cm.) and 7 5/8 (19.34 cm.). Copy is to be set between 27 picas

and 29 picas and copy page should be centered (right to left and top to bottom). Depth is variable but should follow closely the prototype labels appearing at the end of this part illustrating the basic layout. All positioning, spacing, type sizes, and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype and sample labels in appendix L.

(b) *Type style and setting*. The Arial series typeface or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels. No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or copy text. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely. Generally, text must be set flush left with two points leading except where otherwise indicated. See the prototype labels for specific directions.

(c) *Colors*. The basic colors of all labels covered by this section shall be process yellow or equivalent and process black. The label shall be printed full bleed process yellow. All type and graphics shall be print process black.

(d) *Label Type*. The labels must be affixed to the product in the form of an adhesive label.

All adhesive labels should be applied so they can be easily removed without the use of tools or liquids, other than water, but should be applied with an adhesive with an adhesion capacity sufficient to prevent their dislodgment during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer. The paper stock for pressure-sensitive or other adhesive labels shall have a basic weight of not less than 58 pounds per 500 sheets (25''x38'') or equivalent, exclusive of the release liner and adhesive. A minimum peel adhesion capacity for the adhesive of 12 ounces per square inch is suggested, but not required if the adhesive can otherwise meet the above standard.

(e) *Placement*. Manufacturers shall affix adhesive labels to the covered products in such a position that it is easily read by a consumer examining the product. The label should be generally located on the upper-right-front corner of the product's front exterior. However, some other prominent location may be used as long as the label will not become dislodged during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer. The top of the label should not exceed 74 inches from the base of taller products. The label can be displayed in the form of a flap tag adhered to the top of the appliance and bent (folded at 90°) to hang over the front, as long as this can be done with assurance that it will be readily visible. Labels for split system central air conditioners shall be affixed to the condensing unit.

(f) *Content of Labels for furnaces*. (1) Headlines and texts, as illustrated in the prototype and sample labels in appendix L to this part.

(2) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(3) The annual fuel utilization efficiency for furnaces is determined in accordance with §305.5.

(4) Ranges of comparability consisting of the lowest and highest annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE) (for furnaces) for all furnaces that utilize the same energy source as indicated in the appendices to this part.

(5) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest annual fuel utilization efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(6) The following statement shall appear on furnace labels beneath the range(s) as illustrated in the sample labels in appendix L. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate product subcategory listed in brackets:

Efficiency range based only on [natural gas furnaces; electric furnaces; oil furnaces; mobile home furnaces; gas (except steam) boilers; gas (steam) boilers; oil boilers; or electric boilers].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(7) The following statement shall appear at the top of the label as illustrated as illustrated in the sample labels in appendix L:

Federal law prohibits removal of this label before consumer purchase.

(8) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label except that:

(i) A part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(ii) The energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer.

(iii) The manufacturer may include the ENERGY STAR logo on the bottom right corner of the label for qualified products. The logo must be 1 inch by 1 inch in size. Only manufacturers that have signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the Department of Energy or the Environmental Protection Agency may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels on qualifying covered products; such manufacturers may add the

ENERGY STAR logo to labels only on those covered products that are contemplated by the Memorandum of Understanding.

(9) Manufacturers of boilers shipped with more than one input nozzle to be installed in the field must label such boilers with the AFUE of the system when it is set up with the nozzle that results in the lowest annual fuel utilization efficiency rating.

(10) Manufacturers that ship out boilers that may be set up as either steam or hot water units must label the boilers with the AFUE rating derived by conducting the required test on the boiler as a hot water unit.

(g) *Content of Labels for central air conditioners and heat pumps.* (1) Headlines and texts, as illustrated in the prototype and sample labels in appendix L to this part.

(2) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(3) The seasonal energy efficiency ratio for the cooling function of central air conditioners is determined in accordance with §305.5. For the heating function, the heating seasonal performance factor shall be calculated for heating Region IV for the standardized design heating requirement nearest the capacity measured in the High Temperature Test in accordance with §305.5. In addition, the energy efficiency rating(s) for split system condenser-evaporator coil combinations shall be either:

(i) The energy efficiency rating of the condenser-evaporator coil combination that is the particular manufacturer's most commonly sold combination for that condenser model; or

(ii) The energy efficiency rating of the actual condenser-evaporator coil combination comprising the system to which the label is to be attached.

(4)(i) Each cooling only central air conditioner label shall contain a range of comparability consisting of the lowest and highest seasonal energy efficiency ratios for all cooling only central air conditioners.

(ii) Each heat pump label, except as noted in paragraph (g)(4)(iii) of this section, shall contain two ranges of comparability. The first range shall consist of the lowest and highest seasonal energy efficiency ratios for the cooling side of all heat pumps. The second range shall consist of the lowest and highest heating seasonal performance factors for the heating side of all heat pumps.

(iii) Each heating only heat pump label shall contain a range of comparability consisting of the lowest and highest heating seasonal performance factors for all heating only heat pumps.

(5) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(6) The following statement shall appear on the label beneath the range(s) in bold print (fill in the blank the appropriate unit type):

Efficiency range based only on [single package units or split system units].

[Insert statement required by 305.12(g)(7) if applicable].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(7) All labels on split system condenser units disclosing energy efficiency ratings for the ''most common'' condenser-evaporator coil combinations must contain one of the following three statements:

(i) For labels disclosing the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling, the statement should read:

This energy efficiency rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.

(ii) For labels disclosing both the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling and the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy efficiency rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(iii) For labels disclosing the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy efficiency rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

Central air conditioner labels disclosing the efficiency ratings for specific condenser/coil combinations do not have to contain any of the above three statements.

(8) The following statement shall appear at the top of the label as illustrated in the sample labels in appendix L:

Federal law prohibits removal of this label before consumer purchase.

(9) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label except that:

(i) A part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(ii) The energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer.

(iii) The manufacturer may include the ENERGY STAR logo on the bottom right corner of the label for qualified products. The logo must be 1 inch by 1 inch in size. Only manufacturers that have signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the Department of Energy or the Environmental Protection Agency may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels on qualifying covered products; such manufacturers may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels only on those covered products that are contemplated by the Memorandum of Understanding.

§ 305.13 Promotional material displayed or distributed at point of sale.

(a)(1) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall clearly and conspicuously include in such printed material the following required disclosure:

Before purchasing this appliance, read important information about its estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating that is available from your retailer.

(2) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product that is a fluorescent lamp ballast to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, shall disclose conspicuously in such printed material, in each description of such fluorescent lamp ballast, an encircled capital letter ''E''.

(3) Any manufacturer, distributer, retailer, or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), and who makes any representation in such promotional material regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, e.g., purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, and patterns of use.

(4) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point-of-sale concerning a covered product that is a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal shall clearly and conspicuously include in such printed material the product's water use, expressed in gallons and liters per minute (gpm and L/min) or per cycle (gpc and L/cycle) or gallons and liters per flush (gpf and Lpf) as specified in § 305.11(f).

(b) This section shall not apply to:

(1) Written warranties.

(2) Use and care manuals, installation instructions, or other printed material containing primarily post-purchase information for the purchaser.

(3) Printed material containing only the identification of a covered product, pricing information and/or non-energy related representations concerning that product.

(4) Any printed material distributed prior to the effective date listed in § 305.4(e).

[59 FR 34036, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14211, Mar. 16, 1995]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.13 was redesignated as § 305.19, and a new § 305.13 was reserved, and at 72 FR 49974, Aug. 29, 2007, the new § 305.19 was amended by revising paragraph (a)(1), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.19 Promotional material displayed or distributed at point of sale.

(a)(1) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall clearly and conspicuously include in such printed material the following required disclosure:

Before purchasing this appliance, read important information about its estimated annual energy consumption, yearly operating cost, or energy efficiency rating that is available from your retailer.

* * * * *

§305.14 Catalogs.

(a) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises in a catalog a covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall include in such catalog, on each page that lists the covered product, the following information required to be disclosed on the label:

(1) The capacity of the model.

(2) The estimated annual energy consumption for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters.

(3) The energy efficiency rating for room air conditioners, central air conditioners, furnaces, and pool heaters.

(4) The range of estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings, which shall be those that are current at the closing date for printing or the printing deadline of the catalog.

(b) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises fluorescent lamp ballasts that are ''covered products,'' as defined in §305.2(o), and to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, in a catalog, from which they may be purchased by cash, charge account or credit terms, shall disclose conspicuously in such catalog, in each description of such fluorescent lamp ballasts, a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle.

(c)(1) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises in a catalog a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall disclose clearly and conspicuously in such catalog:

(i) On each page listing any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), all the information concerning that lamp, except for the number of units in the package, required by §305.11(e)(1) of this part to be disclosed on the lamp's label; *provided, however*, that, for a catalog not distributed to consumers for making purchases for personal use or consumption by individuals, the disclosures need not comply with the format provisions of §305.11 (e)(1)(ii) of this part, but must be clear and conspicuous; and

(ii) On each page listing a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or an incandescent reflector lamp, all the information required by §305.11(e)(2) of this part to be disclosed on the lamp's label according to the following format:

(A) The encircled ''E'' shall appear with each lamp entry; and

(B) The accompanying statement shall appear at least once on the page.

(2) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), in a catalog who makes any representation in such catalog regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, e.g., purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, patterns of use.

(d) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises a covered product that is a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal in a catalog, from which it may be purchased, shall include in such catalog, on each page that lists the covered product, the product's water use, expressed in gallons and liters per minute (gpm and L/min) or per cycle (gpc and L/cycle) or gallons and liters per flush (gpf and Lpf) as specified in §305.11(f).

[59 FR 34036, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14211, Mar. 16, 1995]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78065, Dec. 28, 2006, §305.14 was amended by adding

paragraph (e), effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.14 Catalogs.

* * * * *

(e) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises a covered product that is a ceiling fan in a catalog, from which it may be purchased, shall disclose clearly and conspicuously in such catalog, on each page that lists the covered product, all the information concerning the product required by § 305.11(g)(1).

2. At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.14 was redesignated as § 305.20 and at 72 FR 49974, Aug. 29, 2007, the new § 305.20 was amended by revising the section heading and paragraph (a), removing the reference to ''§ 305.2(o)'' and replacing it with ''§ 305.2(l)'' in paragraph (b), removing the reference to ''§ 305.11(e)(1)'' and replacing it with ''§ 305.15(b)(1),'' and removing the reference to ''§ 305.11(e)(1)(ii)'' and replacing it with ''§ 305.15(b)(1)(ii)'' in paragraph (c)(1)(i), removing the reference ''§ 305.11(e)(2)'' and replacing it with ''§ 305.15(b)(2),'' in paragraph (c)(1)(ii) introductory text, and removing the reference ''§ 305.11(f)'' and replacing it with ''§ 305.16'' in paragraph (d), effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.20 Paper catalogs and websites.

(a) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises in a catalog, a covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets, or urinals) shall include in such catalog either the EnergyGuide labels prepared in accordance with §§ 305.11 and 305.12 for products they offer or the following information:

(1) The capacity of the model on each page that lists the covered product.

(2) The estimated annual operating costs for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers, room air conditioners, and water heaters as determined in accordance with § 305.5 and appendix K of this part on each page that lists the covered product.

(3) A statement conspicuously placed in the catalog:

(i) For refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers (fill in the blanks with the appropriate year and energy cost figures):

Your operating costs will depend on your utility rates and use. The estimated operating cost is based on a [Year] national average electricity cost of [_____ cents per kWh].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(ii) For room air conditioners and water heaters, (fill in the blanks with the appropriate year and energy cost figures):

Your operating costs will depend on your utility rates and use. The estimated operating cost is based on a [Year] national average [electricity, natural gas, propane, or oil] cost of [$ _____ per kWh, therm, or gallon].

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(iii) For clothes washers and dishwashers, (fill in the blanks with the appropriate information such as the year, and the energy cost figures):

Your operating costs will depend on your utility rates and use. The estimated operating cost is based on [4 washloads a week for dishwashers, or 8 washloads a week for clothes washers] and a [Year] national average cost of _____ cents per kWh for electricity and $ _____ per therm for natural gas.

For more information, visit *www.ftc.gov/appliances*.

(4) The energy efficiency or thermal efficiency ratings for pool heaters, central air conditioners, heat pumps, and furnaces (including boilers) as determined in accordance with §305.5 on each page that lists the covered product.

* * * * *

3. At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, a new § 305.14 was added, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.14 Energy Information Disclosures for Heating and Cooling Equipment.

(a) *Required Information*: Manufacturers and private labelers of central air conditioners, heat pumps, and furnaces (including boilers) must provide energy information about the equipment they sell to distributors and retailers, including contractors. This information can be provided through means such as fact sheets, product brochures, and directories. All required information must be disclosed clearly and conspicuously. The information must include:

(1) Name of manufacturer or private labeler which, in the case of a corporation, shall be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used;

(2) Trade name (if different from manufacturer);

(3) Model number(s) given by the manufacturer or private labeler;

(4) Capacity or size as determined in accordance with § 305.7;

(5) Energy efficiency rating as determined in accordance with §305.5. The energy efficiency rating(s) for split system condenser-evaporator coil combinations shall be either:

(i) The energy efficiency rating of the actual condenser-evaporator coil combination comprising the listed split system; or

(ii) The energy efficiency rating of the condenser-evaporator coil combination that is the particular manufacturer's most commonly sold combination for that condenser model.

(6) Ranges of comparability and of energy efficiency ratings found in the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(7) A statement that the energy efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests.

(8) If the ''most common'' condenser-evaporator coil combinations are given for central air conditioners and heat pump efficiency ratings pursuant to §305.14(a)(5)(ii), the statement required by §305.14(a)(7) as follows:

(i) For information disclosing the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.

(ii) For information disclosing both the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling and the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(iii) For information disclosing the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(9) For central air conditioners disclosing the efficiency ratings for specific condenser/coil combinations pursuant to §305.14(a)(5)(i), a general disclosure that the efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government tests.

(b) *Distribution.* (1) Manufacturers and private labelers must give distributors and retailers, including assemblers, the information specified under §305.14(a) for the central air conditioners, heat pumps, and furnaces (including boilers) they sell to them. This information may be provided in paper or electronic form (including Internet-based access). Distributors must give this information to retailers, including assemblers, they supply.

(2) Retailers, including assemblers, who sell central air conditioners, heat pumps, and furnaces (including boilers) to consumers must make the information specified under §305.14(a) available to customers in any manner, as long as customers are likely to notice it. For example, it may be available in a display, where customers can take copies of them. It may be kept in a binder or made available electronically at a counter or service desk, with a sign telling customers where the required information is.

(3) Retailers, including assemblers, who negotiate or make sales at a place other than their regular places of business must show the required information to their customers and let them read the information before they agree to purchase the product. If the information is Internet-based, retailers, including assemblers, who negotiate or make sales at a place other than their regular places of business, may choose to provide customers with instructions to access such information in lieu of showing them a paper version of the information. Retailers who choose to use the Internet for the required information, must let customers read such information before the customers agree to purchase the product.

ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

§305.15 Test data records.

(a) Test data shall be kept on file by the manufacturer of a covered product for a period of two years after production of that model has been terminated.

(b) Upon notification by the Commission or its designated representative, a manufacturer or private labeler shall provide, within 30 days of the date of such request, the underlying test data from which the water use or energy consumption rate, the energy efficiency rating, the estimated annual cost of using each basic model, or the light output, energy usage and life ratings and, for fluorescent lamps, the color rendering index, for each basic model or lamp type were derived.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, §305.15 was redesignated as §305.21 and a new §305.15 was added, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

§305.15 Labeling for lighting products.

(a) *Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts and Luminaires*—(1) *Contents.* Fluorescent lamp ballasts that are ''covered products,'' as defined in §305.2(n), and to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, shall

be marked conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle. Packaging for such fluorescent lamp ballasts, as well as packaging for luminaires into which they are incorporated, shall also be marked conspicuously with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle. For purposes of this section, the encircled capital letter ''E'' will be deemed ''conspicuous,'' in terms of size, if it is as large as either the manufacturer's name or another logo, such as the ''UL,'' ''CBM'' or ''ETL'' logos, whichever is larger, that appears on the fluorescent lamp ballast, the packaging for such ballast or the packaging for the luminaire into which the covered ballast is incorporated, whichever is applicable for purpose of labeling.

(2) *Product Labeling*. The encircled capital letter ''E'' on fluorescent lamp ballasts must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, (*i.e.*, in a color that contrasts with the background on which the encircled capital letter ''E'' is placed) on the surface that is normally labeled. It may be printed on the label that normally appears on the fluorescent lamp ballast, printed on a separate label, or stamped indelibly on the surface of the fluorescent lamp ballast.

(3) *Package Labeling*. For purposes of labeling under this section, packaging for such fluorescent lamp ballasts and the luminaires into which they are incorporated consists of the plastic sheeting, or ''shrink-wrap,'' covering pallet loads of fluorescent lamp ballasts or luminaires as well as any containers in which such fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated are marketed individually or in small numbers. The encircled capital letter ''E'' on packages containing fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, on the surface of the package on which printing or a label normally appears. If the package contains printing on more than one surface, the label must appear on the surface on which the product inside the package is described. The encircled capital letter ''E'' may be printed on the surface of the package, printed on a label containing other information, printed on a separate label, or indelibly stamped on the surface of the package. In the case of pallet loads containing fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated, the encircled capital letter ''E'' must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, on the plastic sheeting, unless clear plastic sheeting is used and the encircled capital letter ''E'' is legible underneath this packaging. The encircled capital letter ''E'' must also appear conspicuously on any documentation that would normally accompany such a pallet load. The encircled capital letter ''E'' may appear on a label affixed to the sheeting or may be indelibly stamped on the sheeting. It may be printed on the documentation, printed on a separate label that is affixed to the documentation or indelibly stamped on the documentation.

(b) *Lamps*—(1)(i) Any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp) shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously on the product's principal display panel with the following information:

(A) The number of lamps included in the package, if more than one;

(B) The design voltage of each lamp included in the package, if other than 120 volts;

(C) The light output of each lamp included in the package, expressed in average initial lumens;

(D) The electrical power consumed (energy used) by each lamp included in the package, expressed in average initial wattage;

(E) The life of each lamp included in the package, expressed in hours.

(ii) The light output, energy usage and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall appear in that order and with equal clarity and conspicuousness on the product's principal display panel. The light output, energy usage and life ratings shall be disclosed in terms of ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' respectively, with the lumens, watts and hours rating numbers each appearing in the same type style and size and with the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' each appearing in the same type style and size. The words ''light output,'' ''energy used'' and ''life'' shall precede and have the same conspicuousness as both the rating numbers and the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours,'' except that the letters of the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' shall be approximately 50% of the sizes of those used for the words ''light output,'' ''energy used'' and ''life'' respectively.

(iii) The light output, energy usage and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall be measured at 120 volts, regardless of the lamp's design voltage. If a lamp's design voltage is 125 volts or 130 volts, the disclosures of the wattage, light output and life ratings shall in each instance be:

(A) At 120 volts and followed by the phrase ''at 120 volts.'' In such case, the labels for such lamps also may disclose the lamp's wattage, light output and life at the design voltage (*e.g.*, ''Light Output 1710 Lumens at 125 volts''); or

(B) At the design voltage and followed by the phrase ''at (125 volts/130 volts)'' if the

ratings at 120 volts are disclosed clearly and conspicuously on another panel of the package, and if all panels of the package that contain a claimed light output, wattage or life clearly and conspicuously identify the lamp as ''(125 volt/130 volt),'' and if the principal display panel clearly and conspicuously discloses the following statement:

This product is designed for (125/130) volts. When used on the normal line voltage of 120 volts, the light output and energy efficiency are noticeably reduced. See (side/back) panel for 120 volt ratings.

(iv) For any covered product that is an incandescent reflector lamp, the required disclosure of light output shall be given for the lamp's total forward lumens.

(v) For any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp, the required light output disclosure shall be measured at a base-up position; but, if the manufacturer or private labeler has reason to believe that the light output at a base-down position would be more than 5% different, the label also shall disclose the light output at the base-down position or, if no test data for the base-down position exist, the fact that at a base-down position the light output might be more than 5% less.

(vi) For any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), there shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed on the principal display panel the following statement:

To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the (beam spread and) light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts.''

(vii) For any covered product that is a general service incandescent lamp and operates with multiple filaments, the principal display panel shall disclose clearly and conspicuously, in the manner required by paragraph (b)(1)(i)—(iii) and (vi) of this section, the lamp's wattage and light output at each of the lamp's levels of light output and the lamp's life measured on the basis of the filament that fails first.

(2) Any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or an incandescent reflector lamp shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle and followed by an asterisk. The label shall also clearly and conspicuously disclose, either in close proximity to that asterisk or elsewhere on the label, the following statement:

*[The encircled ''E''] means this bulb meets Federal minimum efficiency standards.

(i) If the statement is not disclosed on the principal display panel, the asterisk shall be followed by the following statement:

See [Back,Top, Side] panel for details.

(ii) For purposes of this paragraph (b), the encircled capital letter ''E'' shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in color-contrasting ink on the label of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp and will be deemed ''conspicuous,'' in terms of size, if it appears in typeface at least as large as either the manufacturer's name or logo or another logo disclosed on the label, such as the ''UL'' or ''ETL'' logos, whichever is larger.

(3)(i) A manufacturer or private labeler who distributes general service fluorescent lamps, compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps) without labels attached to the lamps or without labels on individual retail-sale packaging for one or more lamps may meet the disclosure requirements of paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section by making the required disclosures, in the manner and form required by those paragraphs, on the bulk shipping cartons that are to be used to display the lamps for retail sale.

(ii) Instead of labeling any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp with the encircled ''E'' and with the statement described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, a manufacturer or private labeler who would not otherwise put a label on such a lamp may meet the disclosure requirements of that paragraph by permanently marking the lamp clearly and conspicuously with the encircled ''E''.

(4) Any manufacturer or private labeler who makes any representation on a label of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, *e.g.*, purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, patterns of use.

(5) Any cartons in which any covered products that are general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), are shipped within the United States or imported into the United States shall disclose clearly and conspicuously the following statement:

These lamps comply with Federal energy efficiency labeling requirements.

§ 305.16 Required testing by designated laboratory.

Upon notification by the Commission or its designated representative, a manufacturer of a covered product shall supply, at the manufacturer's expense, no more than two of each model of each product to a laboratory, which will be identified by the Commission or

its designated representative in the notice, for the purpose of ascertaining whether the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating cost, or the energy efficiency rating, or the light output, energy usage and life ratings or, for general service fluorescent lamps, the color rendering index, disclosed on the label or fact sheet or in an industry directory, or, as required in a catalog, or the representation made by the label that the product is in compliance with applicable standards in section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295, is accurate. Such a procedure will only be followed after the Commission or its staff has examined the underlying test data provided by the manufacturer as required by § 305.15(b) and after the manufacturer has been afforded the opportunity to reverify test results from which the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating cost, or the energy efficiency rating for each basic model was derived, or the light output, energy usage and life ratings or, for general service fluorescent lamps, the color rendering index, for each basic model or lamp type was derived. A representative designated by the Commission shall be permitted to observe any reverification procedures required by this part, and to inspect the results of such reverification. The Commission will pay the charges for testing by designated laboratories.

[59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2006, § 305.16 was redesignated as § 305.22 and at 72 FR 49974, Aug. 29, 2007, the new § 305.22 was amended by removing the reference to ''§ 305.15(b)'' and replacing it with ''§ 305.21(b)'', effective February 29, 2008.

2. At 72 FR 49973, Aug. 29, 2007, a new § 305.16 was added. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

§ 305.16 Labeling and Marking for Plumbing Products.

(a) *Showerheads and Faucets.* Showerheads and faucets shall be marked and labeled as follows:

(1) Each showerhead and flow restricting or controlling spout end device shall bear a permanent legible marking indicating the flow rate, expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or gallons per cycle (gpc), and the flow rate value shall be the actual flow rate or the maximum flow rate specified by the standards established in subsection (j) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(j). Except where impractical due to the size of the fitting, each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per minute (L/min) or liters per cycle (L/cycle). For purposes of this section, the marking indicating the flow rate will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking.

(2) Each showerhead and faucet shall bear a permanent legible marking to identify the manufacturer. This marking shall be the trade name, trademark, or other mark known to identify the manufacturer. Such marking shall be located where it can be seen after installation.

(3) Each showerhead and faucet shall be marked ''A112.18.1M'' to demonstrate compliance with the applicable ASME standard. The marking shall be by means of either a permanent mark on the product, a label on the product, or a tag attached to the product.

(4) The package for each showerhead and faucet shall disclose the manufacturer's name and the model number.

(5) The package or any label attached to the package for each showerhead or faucet shall contain at least the following: ''A112.18.1M'' and the flow rate expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or gallons per cycle (gpc), and the flow rate value shall be the actual flow rate or the maximum flow rate specified by the standards established in subsection (j) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(j). Each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per minute (L/min) or liters per cycle (L/cycle).

(b) *Water Closets and Urinals.* Water closets and urinals shall be marked and labeled as follows:

(1) Each such fixture (and flushometer valve associated with such fixture) shall bear a permanent legible marking indicating the flow rate, expressed in gallons per flush (gpf), and the water use value shall be the actual water use or the maximum water use specified by the standards established in subsection (k) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(k). Except where impractical due to the size of the fixture, each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per flush (Lpf). For purposes of this section, the marking indicating the flow rate will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking.

(2) Each water closet (and each component of the water closet if the fixture is comprised of two or more components) and urinal shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark or, in the case of private labeling, the name or registered trademark of the customer for whom the unit was manufactured. This mark shall be legible, readily identified, and applied so as to be permanent. The mark shall be located so as to be visible after the

fixture is installed, except for fixtures built into or for a counter or cabinet.

(3) Each water closet (and each component of the water closet if the fixture is comprised of two or more components) and urinal shall be marked at a location determined by the manufacturer with the designation ''ASME A112.19.2M'' to signify compliance with the applicable standard. This mark need not be permanent, but shall be visible after installation.

(4) The package, and any labeling attached to the package, for each water closet and urinal shall disclose the flow rate, expressed in gallons per flush (gpf), and the water use value shall be the actual water use or the maximum water use specified by the standards established in subsection (k) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(k). Each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per flush (Lpf).

(5) With respect to any gravity tank-type white 2-piece toilet offered for sale or sold before January 1, 1997, which has a water use greater than 1.6 gallons per flush (gpf), any printed matter distributed or displayed in connection with such product (including packaging and point-of-sale material, catalog material, and print advertising) shall include, in a conspicuous manner, the words ''For Commercial Use Only.''

(c) *Annual Operating Cost Claims for Covered Plumbing Products.* Until such time as the Commission has prescribed a format and manner of display for labels conveying estimated annual operating costs of covered showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals or ranges of estimated annual operating costs for the types or classes of such plumbing products, the Act prohibits manufacturers from making such representations on the labels of such covered products. 42 U.S.C. 6294(c)(8). If, before the Commission has prescribed such a format and manner of display for labels of such products, a manufacturer elects to provide for any such product a label conveying such a claim, it shall submit the proposed claim to the Commission so that a format and manner of display for a label may be prescribed.

EFFECT OF THIS PART

§ 305.17 Effect on other law.

This regulation supersedes any State regulation to the extent required by section 327 of the Act. Pursuant to the Act, all State regulations that require the disclosure for any covered product of information with respect to energy consumption, other than the information required to be disclosed in accordance with this part, are superseded.

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.17 was redesignated as § 305.23, effective February 29, 2008.

§ 305.18 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any section or portion of a section of this part is stayed or held invalid, the remainder of the part will not be affected.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987. Redesignated at 59 FR 34036, July 1, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.18 was redesignated as § 305.24, effective February 29, 2008.

§ 305.19 Exemptions.

The Commission has exempted manufacturers, private labelers, distributors, and/or retailers in some instances from specific requirements of this part. These exemptions are listed in this section. In some circumstances, use of the exemptions is conditioned on alternative performance by manufacturers, private labelers, distributors, and/or retailers.

(a) Limited conditional exemption for manufacturers from the prohibition against the inclusion of non-required information on the label of covered products that qualify for inclusion in the ENERGY STAR Program maintained by the Department of Energy (''DOE'') and the Environmental Protection Agency (''EPA''). Those manufacturers participating in the DOE/EPA ENERGY STAR Program who wish to place the ENERGY STAR logo on EnergyGuides affixed to covered products they manufacture that qualify for inclusion in the ENERGY STAR Program are granted a conditional exemption from the prohibition against placing ''information other than that specified'' by the Rule on the EnergyGuides they attach to their qualifying products. This exemption is based on several conditions:

(1) The ENERGY STAR logo is permitted on the EnergyGuides of only those covered products that meet the ENERGY STAR Program qualification criteria that are current at the time the products are labeled.

(2) Only manufacturers that have signed a Memorandum of Understanding with DOE or EPA may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels on

qualifying covered products; such manufacturers may add the ENERGY STAR logo to labels only on those covered products that are contemplated by the Memorandum of Understanding.

(3) Manufacturers that choose to avail themselves of the conditional exemption may print the ENERGY STAR logo on EnergyGuides for qualified products as part of the usual label printing process or may place the logo on EnergyGuides for qualified products by whatever means is most efficient for them, provided such placement complies with the requirements of paragraph (a)(4), of this section.

(4) Manufacturers must place the logo on the EnergyGuide above the comparability bar in the box that contains the applicable range of comparability. The precise location of the logo will vary depending on where the caret indicating the position of the labeled model on the scale appears (see the sample label). The required dimensions of the logo must be one and one-eighth inches (3 cm.) in width and three-quarters of an inch (2 cm.) in height. Manufacturers are prohibited from placing the logo in a way that would obscure, detract from, alter the dimensions of, or touch any element of the EnergyGuide, which in all other respects must conform to the requirements of this part. The ENERGY STAR logo must be in process black ink to match the print specifications for the EnergyGuide. The background must remain in process yellow to match the rest of the label.

(5) Manufacturers must add a sentence in process black ink that explains the significance of the ENERGY STAR logo in ten-point Helvetica Condensed Black typeface. The sentence must be next to the logo, above the comparability bar that shows the ''least'' and ''most'' numbers. The sentence must read:

ENERGY STAR A symbol of energy efficiency.

(b) [Reserved]

[65 FR 17563, Apr. 3, 2000]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49971, Aug. 29, 2007, § 305.19 was redesignated as § 305.25 and at 72 FR 49974, Aug. 29, 2007, the new § 305.25 was removed and reserved, effective February 29, 2008.

APPENDIX A1 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 2.5	327	327
2.5 to 4.4	307	385
4.5 to 6.4	305	511
6.5 to 8.4	(*)	(*)
8.5 to 10.4	348	348
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	311	311
14.5 to 16.4	428	428
16.5 and over	372	438

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4984, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49974, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A1 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	**Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs** (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	**High**
Less than 2.5	$32	$35
2.5 to 4.4	$33	$42
4.5 to 6.4	$32	$58
6.5 to 8.4	$48	$48
8.5 to 10.4	$37	$37
10.5 to 12.4	$35	$35
12.5 to 14.4	$33	$33
14.5 to 16.4	$46	$46

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
16.5 and over	$36	$50

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A2 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS AND REFRIGERATORS-FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 2.5	253	318
2.5 to 4.4	260	343
4.5 to 6.4	268	357
6.5 to 8.4	277	277
8.5 to 10.4	230	336
10.5 to 12.4	288	345
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	335	404
18.5 to 20.4	(*)	(*)
20.5 to 22.4	(*)	(*)
22.5 to 24.4	449	449
24.5 to 26.4	(*)	(*)
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4984, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49975, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A2 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS AND REFRIGERATORS-FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 2.5	$29	$36
2.5 to 4.4	$29	$37
4.5 to 6.4	$29	$39
6.5 to 8.4	$39	$39
8.5 to 10.4	$24	$36
10.5 to 12.4	$35	$35
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	$36	$43
18.5 to 20.4	(*)	(*)
20.5 to 22.4	(*)	(*)
22.5 to 24.4	$48	$48
24.5 to 26.4	(*)	(*)
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A3 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH PARTIAL AUTOMATIC DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	254	434
10.5 to 12.4	314	314
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	(*)	(*)
20.5 to 22.4	(*)	(*)
22.5 to 24.4	(*)	(*)
24.5 to 26.4	(*)	(*)
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4984, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49975, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A3 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A3 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH PARTIAL AUTOMATIC DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	$27	$46
10.5 to 12.4	$33	$33
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	(*)	(*)
20.5 to 22.4	(*)	(*)
22.5 to 24.4	(*)	(*)
24.5 to 26.4	(*)	(*)
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A4 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	325	460
10.5 to 12.4	369	408
12.5 to 14.4	373	440
14.5 to 16.4	372	455
16.5 to 18.4	391	484
18.5 to 20.4	387	489
20.5 to 22.4	405	527
22.5 to 24.4	450	499
24.5 to 26.4	445	520
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4985, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49975, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A4 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A4 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	$35	$49
10.5 to 12.4	$41	$44
12.5 to 14.4	$40	$47
14.5 to 16.4	$40	$48
16.5 to 18.4	$42	$52
18.5 to 20.4	$41	$53
20.5 to 22.4	$44	$56
22.5 to 24.4	(*)	(*)
24.5 to 26.4	$51	$51
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A5 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	530	530
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	610	624
20.5 to 22.4	510	640
22.5 to 24.4	643	653
24.5 to 26.4	561	661
26.5 to 28.4	668	668
28.5 and over	585	689

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4985, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49976, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A5 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A5 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	$56	$56
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	$66	$66
20.5 to 22.4	$46	$68
22.5 to 24.4	$59	$73
24.5 to 26.4	$58	$78
26.5 to 28.4	$71	$71
28.5 and over	$62	$73

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4985, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49976, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A6 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A6 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH BOTTOM-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	$46	$54
10.5 to 12.4	$47	$47
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	$48	$58
16.5 to 18.4	$50	$59
18.5 to 20.4	$47	$61
20.5 to 22.4	$49	$61
22.5 to 24.4	$62	$62
24.5 to 26.4	$51	$63
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A6 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH BOTTOM-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	430	451
10.5 to 12.4	439	500
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	453	544
16.5 to 18.4	465	548
18.5 to 20.4	476	573
20.5 to 22.4	483	569
22.5 to 24.4	440	520
24.5 to 26.4	465	594
26.5 to 28.4	475	530
28.5 and over	499	499

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A7 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	(*)	(*)
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	(*)	(*)
20.5 to 22.4	(*)	(*)
22.5 to 24.4	(*)	(*)
24.5 to 26.4	(*)	(*)
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4985, Jan. 31, 2006; 71 FR 28921, May 18, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49977, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A7 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A7 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	(*)	(*)
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	$43	$43
18.5 to 20.4	(*)	(*)
20.5 to 22.4	$56	$56
22.5 to 24.4	(*)	(*)
24.5 to 26.4	(*)	(*)
26.5 to 28.4	(*)	(*)
28.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX A8 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	(*)	(*)
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	553	651
20.5 to 22.4	432	671
22.5 to 24.4	539	698
24.5 to 26.4	578	732
26.5 to 28.4	615	751
28.5 and over	565	790

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

COST INFORMATION FOR APPENDICES A1 THROUGH A8

When the ranges of comparability in Appendices A1 through A8 are used on EnergyGuide labels for refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2005 Representative Average Unit Cost for electricity (9.06¢ per kilowatt-hour), and the text below the box must identify the cost as such.

[71 FR 4985, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49977, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix A8 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX A8 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 10.5	(*)	(*)
10.5 to 12.4	(*)	(*)
12.5 to 14.4	(*)	(*)
14.5 to 16.4	(*)	(*)
16.5 to 18.4	(*)	(*)
18.5 to 20.4	$59	$69
20.5 to 22.4	$57	$72
22.5 to 24.4	$57	$74
24.5 to 26.4	$60	$78
26.5 to 28.4	$65	$80
28.5 and over	$70	$84

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX B1 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST

RANGE INFORMATION

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 5.5	272	328
5.5 to 7.4	354	354
7.5 to 9.4	292	341
9.5 to 11.4	353	392
11.5 to 13.4	354	410
13.5 to 15.4	409	454
15.5 to 17.4	430	477
17.5 to 19.4	392	392
19.5 to 21.4	512	512
21.5 to 23.4	(*)	(*)
23.5 to 25.4	580	580
25.5 to 27.4	(*)	(*)
27.5 to 29.4	477	477
29.5 and over	512	512

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4985, Jan. 31, 2006; 71 FR 28921, May 18, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49977, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix B1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX B1 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 5.5	$29	$35
5.5 to 7.4	$32	$38
7.5 to 9.4	$36	$40
9.5 to 11.4	(*)	(*)
11.5 to 13.4	$44	$44
13.5 to 15.4	$42	$48
15.5 to 17.4	$44	$51
17.5 to 19.4	$46	$51
19.5 to 21.4	$55	$56
21.5 to 23.4	(*)	(*)
23.5 to 25.4	$62	$62
25.5 to 27.4	(*)	(*)
27.5 to 29.4	(*)	(*)
29.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX B2 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST

RANGE INFORMATION

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 5.5	482	491
5.5 to 7.4	(*)	(*)
7.5 to 9.4	(*)	(*)
9.5 to 11.4	(*)	(*)
11.5 to 13.4	575	575
13.5 to 15.4	582	655
15.5 to 17.4	601	683
17.5 to 19.4	635	742
19.5 to 21.4	671	770
21.5 to 23.4	796	796
23.5 to 25.4	855	855
25.5 to 27.4	(*)	(*)
27.5 to 29.4	683	683
29.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

[71 FR 4986, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49978, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix B2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX B2 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 5.5	$51	$52
5.5 to 7.4	(*)	(*)
7.5 to 9.4	(*)	(*)
9.5 to 11.4	$60	$60
11.5 to 13.4	$61	$61
13.5 to 15.4	$60	$70
15.5 to 17.4	$62	$73
17.5 to 19.4	$68	$79
19.5 to 21.4	$71	$82
21.5 to 23.4	$85	$85
23.5 to 25.4	$91	$91
25.5 to 27.4	(*)	(*)
27.5 to 29.4	(*)	(*)
29.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX B3 TO PART 305—CHEST FREEZERS AND ALL OTHER FREEZERS

RANGE INFORMATION

Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume (in cubic feet	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Less than 5.5	185	357
5.5 to 7.4	215	381
7.5 to 9.4	251	251
9.5 to 11.4	248	312
11.5 to 13.4	276	350
13.5 to 15.4	354	394
15.5 to 17.4	282	360
17.5 to 19.4	(*)	(*)
19.5 to 21.4	350	415
21.5 to 23.4	460	512
23.5 to 25.4	570	570
25.5 to 27.4	354	394
27.5 to 29.4	(*)	(*)
29.5 and over	512	512

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

COST INFORMATION FOR APPENDICES B1 THROUGH B3

When the ranges of comparability in Appendices B1 through B3 are used on EnergyGuide labels for freezers, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2005 Representative Average Unit Cost for electricity (9.06¢ per kilowatt-hour), and the text below the box must identify the cost as such.

[71 FR 4986, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49978, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix B3 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX B3 TO PART 305—CHEST FREEZERS AND ALL OTHER FREEZERS

Range Information

Manufacturer's Rated Total Refrigerated Volume in Cubic feet	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Less than 5.5	$20	$26
5.5 to 7.4	$25	$37
7.5 to 9.4	$31	$38
9.5 to 11.4	$30	$33
11.5 to 13.4	$35	$39
13.5 to 15.4	$38	$57
15.5 to 17.4	$38	$38
17.5 to 19.4	(*)	(*)
19.5 to 21.4	$46	$51
21.5 to 23.4	$49	$55
23.5 to 25.4	$55	$61
25.5 to 27.4	(*)	(*)
27.5 to 29.4	(*)	(*)
29.5 and over	(*)	(*)

(*) No data submitted for units meeting the Department of Energy's Energy Conservation Standards effective July 1, 2001.

APPENDIX C1 TO PART 305—COMPACT DISHWASHERS

RANGE INFORMATION

''Compact'' includes countertop dishwasher models with a capacity of fewer than eight (8) place settings. Place settings shall be in accordance with appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B. Load patterns shall conform to the operation normal for the model being tested.

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.)	
	Low	High
Compact	143	320

COST INFORMATION

When the above ranges of comparability are used on EnergyGuide labels for compact-sized dishwashers, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2005 Representative Average Unit Costs for electricity (9.06¢ per kiloWatt-hour) and natural gas ($1.09 per therm), and the text below the box must identify the costs as such.

[70 FR 60717, Oct. 19, 2005]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix C1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX C1 TO PART 305—COMPACT DISHWASHERS

Range Information

''Compact'' includes countertop dishwasher models with a capacity of fewer than eight (8) place settings. Place settings shall be in accordance with appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B. Load patterns shall conform to the operating normal for the model being tested.

Capacity	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	High
Compact	$19	$34

APPENDIX C2 TO PART 305—STANDARD DISHWASHERS

RANGE INFORMATION

''Standard'' includes portable or built-in dishwasher models with a capacity of eight (8) or more place settings. Place settings shall be in accordance with appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B. Load patterns shall conform to the operating normal for the model being tested.

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.)	
	Low	High
Standard	194	531

COST INFORMATION

When the above ranges of comparability are used on EnergyGuide labels for standard-sized dishwashers, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2004 Representative Average Unit Costs for electricity (8.60¢ per kiloWatt-hour) and natural gas (91.0¢ per therm), and the text below the box must identify the costs as such.

[69 FR 54560, Sept. 9, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix C2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX C2 TO PART 305—STANDARD DISHWASHERS

Range Information

''Standard'' includes dishwasher models with a capacity of fewer than eight (8) or more place settings. Place settings shall be in accordance with appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B. Load patterns shall conform to the operating normal for the model being tested.

Capacity	**Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs** (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	**High**
Standard	$20	$50

APPENDIX D1 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—GAS

[Range information]

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (therms/yr. and gallons/yr.)			
First hour rating	Natural gas therms/yr.		Propane gallons/yr.	
	Low	High	Low	High
Less than 21	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
21 to 24	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
25 to 29	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
30 to 34	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
35 to 40	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
41 to 47	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
48 to 55	234	254	256	278
56 to 64	246	254	269	278
65 to 74	234	258	256	283
75 to 86	230	272	256	288
87 to 99	242	272	265	288
100 to 114	230	283	252	298
115 to 131	242	312	265	309
Over 131	254	312	278	342

*No data submitted.

[69 FR 42108, Oct. 12, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix D1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX D1 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—GAS

Range Information

CAPACITY	**Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs** (Dollars/Year)			
FIRST HOUR RATING	**Natural Gas ($/year)**		**Propane ($/year)**	
	Low	**High**	**Low**	**High**
Less than 21	*	*	*	*
21 to 24	*	*	*	*
25 to 29	*	*	*	*
30 to 34	*	*	*	*
35 to 40	*	*	*	*
41 to 47	*	*	*	*
48 to 55	$285	$309	$479	$520
56 to 64	$295	$309	$496	$520
65 to 74	$273	$314	$458	$529
75 to 86	$273	$331	$458	$529
87 to 99	$285	$331	$471	$557
100 to 114	$276	$345	$466	$557
115 to 131	$276	$380	$466	$578

Range Information

CAPACITY	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)			
FIRST HOUR RATING	Natural Gas ($/year)		Propane ($/year)	
	Low	High	Low	High
Over 131	$309	$380	$520	$640

* No data submitted.

APPENDIX D2 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—ELECTRIC

[Range information]

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (KWh/yr.)	
First hour rating	Low	High
Less than 21	(*)	(*)
21 to 24	(*)	(*)
25 to 29	4721	4721
30 to 34	4721	4773
35 to 40	4671	4934
41 to 47	4671	4990
48 to 55	4622	4879
56 to 64	4622	4879
65 to 74	4671	4934
75 to 86	4622	5106
87 to 99	4773	5166
100 to 114	4825	5421
115 to 131	5106	5355
Over 131	(*)	(*)

*No data submitted.

[69 FR 42108, Oct. 12, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix D2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX D2 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—ELECTRIC

Range Information

CAPACITY	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
FIRST HOUR RATING	Low	High
Less than 21	$503	$503
21 to 24	*	*
25 to 29	$503	$503
30 to 34	$503	$508
35 to 40	$497	$508
41 to 47	$492	$531
48 to 55	$492	$531
56 to 64	$492	$520
65 to 74	$492	$531
75 to 86	$492	$544
87 to 99	$503	$550
100 to 114	$514	$577
115 to 131	$544	$563
Over 131	*	*

* No data submitted.

APPENDIX D3 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—OIL

[Range information]

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (gallons/yr.)	
First hour rating	Low	High
Less than 65	(*)	(*)
65 to 74	(*)	(*)
75 to 86	(*)	(*)
87 to 99	(*)	(*)
100 to 114	174	200
115 to 131	159	200
Over 131	164	212

*No data submitted.

[69 FR 42108, Oct. 12, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix D3 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX D3 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—OIL

Range Information

CAPACITY	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
FIRST HOUR RATING	Low	High
Less than 65	*	*
65 to 74	*	*
75 to 86	*	*
87 to 99	*	*
100 to 114	$386	$444
115 to 131	$364	$471
Over 131	$353	$471

* No data submitted.

APPENDIX D4 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS-INSTANTANEOUS-GAS

RANGE INFORMATION

Capacity (maximum flow rate); gallons per minute (gpm)	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (therms/yr. and gallons/ yr.)			
	Natural gas therms/yr.		Propane gallons/yr.	
	Low	High	Low	High
Under 1.00	235	235	256	256
1.00 to 2.00	230	230	252	252
2.01 to 3.00	185	220	196	239
Over 3.00	177	238	187	260

[69 FR 54560, Sept. 9, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix D4 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX D4 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS-INSTANTANEOUS-GAS

Range Information

CAPACITY	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)			
FIRST HOUR RATING	Natural Gas ($/year)		Propane ($/year)	
	Low	High	Low	High
Under 1.00	$285	$285	$479	$479
1.00 to 2.00	$280	$285	$456	$471
2.01 to 3.00	$174	$268	$346	$445
Over 3.00	$199	$290	$301	$486

* No data submitted.

APPENDIX D5 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—HEAT PUMP

[Range information]

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (KWh/Yr.)	
First hour rating	Low	High
Less than 21	(*)	(*)
21 to 24	(*)	(*)
25 to 29	(*)	(*)
30 to 34	(*)	(*)
35 to 40	(*)	(*)
41 to 47	(*)	(*)
48 to 55	(*)	(*)
56 to 64	1830	1830
65 to 74	(*)	(*)
75 to 86	(*)	(*)
87 to 99	(*)	(*)
100 to 114	(*)	(*)
115 to 131	(*)	(*)
Over 131	(*)	(*)

* No data submitted.

COST INFORMATION

When the above ranges of comparability in Appendices D1 through D5 are used on EnergyGuide labels for water heaters, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2004 Representative Average Unit Costs for electricity (8.60¢ per kiloWatt-hour), natural gas (91.0¢ per therm), propane ($1.23 per gallon, and heating oil ($1.28 per gallon) and the text below the box must identify the costs as such.

[69 FR 42108, Oct. 12, 2004]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49979, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix D5 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX D5 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—HEAT PUMP

Range Information

CAPACITY	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
FIRST HOUR RATING	Low	High
Less than 21	*	*
21 to 24	*	*
25 to 29	*	*
30 to 34	*	*
35 to 40	*	*
41 to 47	*	*
48 to 55	*	*
56 to 64	*	*
65 to 74	*	*
75 to 86	*	*
87 to 99	*	*

Range Information

CAPACITY	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
FIRST HOUR RATING	Low	High
100 to 114	*	*
115 to 131	*	*
Over 131	*	*

* No data submitted.

APPENDIX E TO PART 305—ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS

[Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated cooling capacity in Btu's/yr	Range of energy efficiency ratios (EERs)	
	Low	High
Without Reverse Cycle and with Louvered Sides:		
Less than 6,000 Btu	9.7	11.2
6,000 to 7,999 Btu	8.7	11.5
8,000 to 13,999 Btu	8.5	12.0
14,000 to 19,999 Btu	8.5	11.5
20,000 and more Btu	8.5	9.9
Without Reverse Cycle and without Louvered Sides:		
Less than 6,000 Btu	(*)	(*)
6,000 to 7,999	9.0	10.0
8,000 to 13,999 Btu	8.5	10.5
14,000 to 19,999 Btu	9.0	9.0
20,000 and more Btu	(*)	(*)
With Reverse Cycle and with Louvered Sides	9.0	12.0
With Reverse Cycle, without Louvered Sides	8.5	10.0

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Minimum Efficiency Standards effective October 1, 2000.

COST INFORMATION FOR APPENDIX E

When the ranges of comparability in Appendix E are used on EnergyGuide labels for room air conditioners, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2006 Representative Average Unit Costs for electricity (9.81¢ per kiloWatt-hour) and the text below the box must identify the costs as such

[71 FR 45373, Aug. 9, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49981, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix E to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX E TO PART 305—ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated cooling capacity in Btu's/yr	Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs (Dollars/Year)	
	LOW	HIGH
Without Reverse Cycle and with Louvered Sides:.		
Less than 6,000 Btu	$37	$48
6,000 to 7,999 Btu	$44	$64
8,000 to 13,999 Btu	$59	$112
14,000 to 19,999 Btu	$105	$176
20,000 and more Btu	$166	$338
.		
Without Reverse Cycle and without Louvered Sides:.		
Less than 6,000 Btu	*	*
6,000 to 7,999 Btu	$48	$48
8,000 to 13,999 Btu	$61	$127
14,000 to 19,999 Btu	$124	$140
20,000 and more Btu	*	*
.		
With Reverse Cycle and with Louvered Sides	$61	$192
With Reverse Cycle, without Louvered Sides	$67	$111

* No data submitted for units meeting Federal Minimum Efficiency Standards effective October 1, 2000.

APPENDIX F1 TO PART 305—STANDARD CLOTHES WASHERS

RANGE INFORMATION

''Standard'' includes all household clothes washers with a tub capacity of 1.6 cu. ft. or more.

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.)	
	Low	High
Standard	113	680

COST INFORMATION

When the above range of comparability is used on EnergyGuide labels for standard clothes washers, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2004 Representative Average Unit Costs for electricity (8.60¢ per kiloWatt-hour) and natural gas (91.0¢ per therm), and the text below the box must identify the costs as such.

[70 FR 3875, Jan. 27, 2005]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49981, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix F1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX F1 TO PART 305—STANDARD CLOTHES WASHERS

Range Information

"Standard" includes all household clothes washers with a tub capacity of 1.6 cu. ft. or more.

Capacity	**Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs** (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	**High**
Standard	$10	$71

APPENDIX F2 TO PART 305—COMPACT CLOTHES WASHERS

RANGE INFORMATION

''Compact'' includes all household clothes washers with a tub capacity of less than 1.6 cu. ft.

RANGE INFORMATION

Capacity	Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr)	
	Low	High
Compact	125	462

COST INFORMATION

When the above range of comparability is used on EnergyGuide labels for compact clothes washers, the estimated annual operating cost disclosure appearing in the box at the bottom of the labels must be derived using the 2004 Representative Average Unit Costs for electricity (8.60¢ per kiloWatt-hour) and natural gas (91.0¢ per therm), and the text below the box must identify the costs as such.

[71 FR 4986, Jan. 31, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49981, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix F2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX F2 TO PART 305—COMPACT CLOTHES WASHERS

Range Information

"Compact" includes all household clothes washers with a tub capacity of less than 1.6 cu. ft.

Capacity	**Range of Estimated Annual Operating Costs** (Dollars/Year)	
	Low	**High**
Compact	$19	$49

APPENDIX G1 TO PART 305—FURNACES—GAS

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	78	96.6

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G1 TO PART 305—FURNACES—GAS

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	78.0	96.6

APPENDIX G2 TO PART 305—FURNACES—ELECTRIC

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Ranges of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	100	100

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G2 TO PART 305—FURNACES—ELECTRIC

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	100	100

APPENDIX G3 TO PART 305—FURNACES—OIL

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	78	86.7

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour[1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G3 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G3 TO PART 305—FURNACES—OIL

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	78.0	86.1

APPENDIX G4 TO PART 305—MOBILE HOME FURNACES

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	75	83.2

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G4 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G4 TO PART 305—MOBILE HOME FURNACES

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	75.0	92.1

APPENDIX G5 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (EXCEPT STEAM)

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	80	90.6

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G5 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G5 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (EXCEPT STEAM)

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	80	95.5

APPENDIX G6 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (STEAM)

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	75	83.5

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢,¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G6 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G6 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (STEAM)

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	75.8	84.0

APPENDIX G7 TO PART 305—BOILERS—OIL

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	80	88.7

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000) Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G7 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G7 TO PART 305—BOILERS—OIL

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	80.0	92.0

APPENDIX G8 TO PART 305—BOILERS—ELECTRIC

[1. Range Information]

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's)	
	Low	High
All Capacities	100	100

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

Cost per kilowatt hour [1]	Btu heat loss of home (see chart below)
4¢.	
6¢.	
8¢.	
10¢.	
12¢.	
14¢.	

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour)	Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour)	Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000) Btu's per hour)
5,000 to 10,000	5	5
11,000 to 16,000	10	5, 10
17,000 to 25,000	15	10, 15
26,000 to 42,000	20	15, 20, 25
43,000 to 59,000	30	25, 30, 35, 40
60,000 to 76,000	40	35, 40, 45, 50
77,000 to 93,000	50	40, 45, 50, 60
94,000 to 110,000	60	50, 60, 70, 80
111,000 to 127,000	70	60, 70, 80, 90
128,000 to 144,000	80	70, 80, 90, 100
145,000 to 161,000	90	80, 90, 100, 110, 120
162,000 to 178,000	100	90, 100, 110, 120, 130
179,000 to 195,000	110	100, 110, 120, 130, 140
196,000 and over	130	120, 130, 140, 150, 160

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49982, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix G8 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX G8 TO PART 305—BOILERS—ELECTRIC

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.)	**Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies** (AFUE's)	
	Low	**High**
All Capacities	100	100

APPENDIX H TO PART 305—COOLING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS

1. Range Information

Manufacturer's rated cooling capacity (Btu's/hr.)	Range of SEER's	
	Low	High
Single Package Units		
Central Air Conditioners (Cooling Only): All capacities	10.60	16.05
Heat Pumps (Cooling Function): All capacities	10.60	15.60

Manufacturer's rated cooling capacity (Btu's/hr.)	Range of SEER's	
	Low	High
Split System Units		
Central Air Conditioners (Cooling Only): All capacities	10.90	20.50
Heat Pumps (Cooling Function): All capacities	10.90	18.60

2. *Yearly Cost Information:*

For each model, display three annual operating costs, based on 9.06¢ per kilowatt hour, rounded to the nearest $10, corresponding to the three building heat gains from the chart below:

Manufacturers rated cooling capacity (BTU/hr)	Building heat gain (in 1000's BTU's/hr)		
Up to 9,000	3	6	9
9,100 to 15,000	9	12	15
15,100 to 21,000	15	18	21
21,100 to 27,000	21	24	27
27,200 to 33,000	27	30	33
33,200 to 39,000	33	36	39
39,500 to 45,000	39	42	45
45,500 to 51,000	45	48	51
51,500 to 57,000	51	54	57
57,500 to 63,000	57	60	63
63,500 and over	63	66	69

The values of building heat gain are to be considered cooling capacities in the calculation of annual operating cost in accordance with 10 CFR 430.22 (m)(1)(i).

Include the following note on every fact sheet page that lists annual operating costs.

NOTE: These figures are based on U.S. Government standard tests and are for national averages of 1000 cooling load hours and 9.06¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is given [direct user to location].

The methodology referred to in the note is provided below. This information shall be included a least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this methodology must be provided on or with the unbound fact sheets.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR COOLING COST

To estimate your actual cost of operation, find your cooling load hours from the map, your average annual operating cost from the National Average Annual Operating Cost Table, and determine your electrical rate in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electric bill.

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \begin{matrix}\text{Listed average annual}\\ \text{operating cost *}\end{matrix} \times \frac{\begin{matrix}\text{Your cooling}\\ \text{load hours **}\end{matrix}}{1{,}000} \times \frac{\begin{matrix}\text{Your electrical rate}\\ \text{in cents per KWH}\end{matrix}}{9.06¢}$$

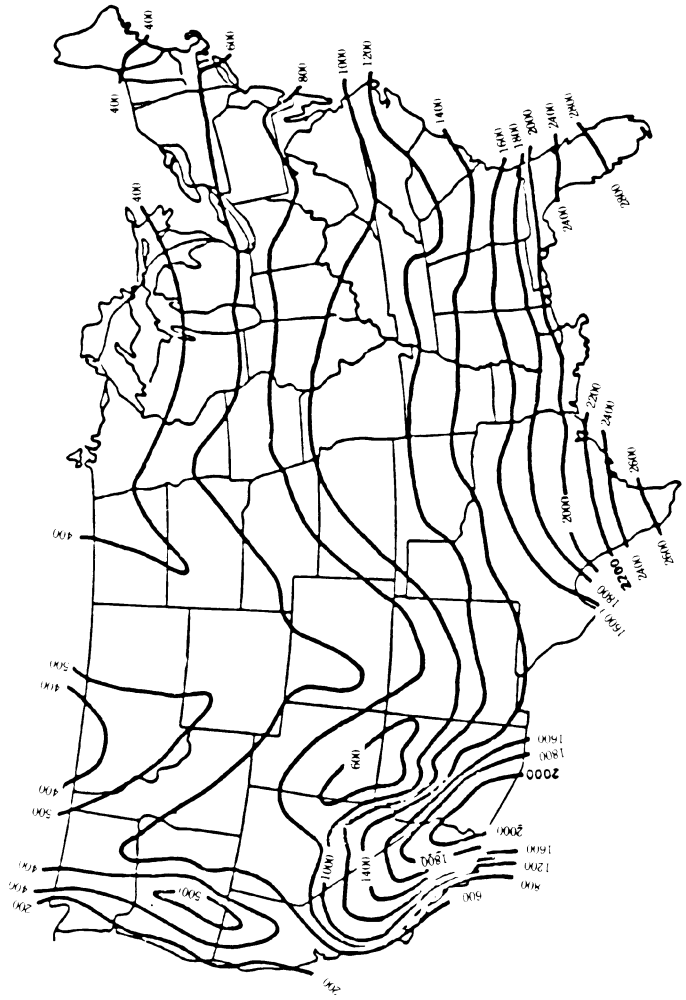
Example: If your cooling load hours = 1500, and your electric rate is 13.60¢/KWH and your listed annual operating cost is $100, then:,

Your estimated cost = $100 × 1,500 / 1,000 × 13.60¢ / 9.06¢

Your estimated cost = $100 × 1.5 × 1.5 = $225

Your estimated cost = $225

Cooling Load Hour Map


400
500
600
800
1000
1200
1400
1600
1800
2000
2200
2400
2600
2800
2000
2200
2400
2600
2800
2000
1800
1600
1400
1200
1000
800
600
400
500
400
400
400
200
400
400
400

[An example of a fact sheet for central air conditioners or for only the cooling function of heat pumps]

ENERGYGUIDE

Split System Central Air Conditioner (Cooling Only)

Cooling Capacity:

Models	XXX/C1	31,000 BTU/hr
	XXX/C2	31,400 BTU/hr
	YYY/C3	29,000 BTU/hr
	YYY/C6	29,400 BTU/hr

Cooling Performance:

Model XXX/C1
12.7 SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient Model 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

Model XXX/C2
12.6 SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient Model 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

Model YYY/C3
13.0 SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient Model 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

Model YYY/C6
12.9 SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient Model 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

This (or these) energy rating(s) is (or are) based on U.S. Government standard tests of this (or these) condenser model(s) combined with the most common coil(s). The ratings may vary slightly with different coils.

[This is Page 1 of Sample Fact Sheet]

* * * * *

NATIONAL AVERAGE ANNUAL OPERATING COST TABLE ($ PER YEAR)

Model	Building Heat Gain (BTU/hour)		
	27,000	30,000	33,000
XXX/C1	$200	$220	$240
XXX/C2	$200	$220	$240
XXX/C3	$190	$210	$230
XXX/C6	$190	$210	$230

NOTE: These figures are based on U.S. Goverment standard tests and are for national averages of 1000 cooling load hours and 9.06¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is provided on page 2 of this fact sheet.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR COOLING COST

To estimate your actual cost of operation, find your actual cooling load hours from the map, your average annual operating cost from the National Average Annual Operating Cost Table, and determine your electrical rate in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electrical bill.

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \frac{\text{Listed average annual}}{\text{operating cost *}} \times \frac{\text{Your cooling load hours **}}{1{,}000} \times \frac{\text{Your electrical rate in cents per KWH}}{9.06¢}$$

Example: If your cooling load hours are 1500, and your electric rate is 13.60¢/KWH, and your listed annual operating cost is $100, then:
Your estimated cost = $100 × 1,500 / 1,000 × 13.6¢/ 9.06¢
Your estimated cost = $100 × 1.5 × 1.5 = $225
Your estimated cost = $225

(THIS IS PAGE 2 OF SAMPLE FACT SHEET)

[53 FR 19729, May 27, 1988, as amended at 54 FR 53318, Dec. 28, 1989; 55 FR 43093, Oct. 26, 1990; 56 FR 46728, Sept. 16, 1991; 57 FR 44332, Sept. 25, 1992; 59 FR 34049, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 39951 and 39952, Aug. 5, 1994; 60 FR 56949, Nov. 13, 1995; 61 FR 48622, Sept. 16, 1996; 62 FR 44891, Aug. 25, 1997; 63 FR 66431, Dec. 2, 1998; 64 FR 926, Jan. 6, 1999; 64 FR 71021, Dec. 20, 1999; 65 FR 53166, Sept. 1, 2000; 66 FR 49531, Sept. 28, 2001; 66 FR 57872, Nov. 19, 2001; 67 FR 58328, Sept. 16, 2002; 68 FR 47451, Aug. 11, 2003; 69 FR 54560, Sept. 9, 2004; 70 FR 32487, June 3, 2005; 70 FR 60717, Oct. 19, 2005]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49983, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix H to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX H TO PART 305—COOLING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS

Manufacturer's rated cooling capacities (Btu's/hr.)	Range of SEER's	
	Low	High
Single Package Units.		
Central Air Conditioners (Cooling Only): All capacities	10.6	16.5
Heat Pumps (Cooling Function): All capacities	10.6	16.0
Split System Units.		
Central Air Conditioners (Cooling Only): All capacities	10.9	23.0
Heat Pumps (Cooling Function): All capacities	10.9	21.0

APPENDIX I TO PART 305—HEATING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS

1. Range Information

Manufacturer's rated heating capacity (Btu's/hr.)	Range of HSPF's	
	Low	High
Single Package Units		
Heat Pumps (Heating Function): All capacities	7.00	8.20
Split System Units		
Heat Pumps (Heating Function): All capacities	7.10	10.55

The HSPF shall be the Region IV value based on the appropriate average design heat loss from the table below.

2. *Yearly Heating Cost Information:*

For each model, display a regional annual operating cost, based on 9.06¢ per kilowatt hour, rounded to the nearest $10, calculated according to 10 CFR 430.22(m)(3)(ii) for each region. The heat loss of home values given in the chart below are to be considered standardized design heating requirements in the calculation of annual operating cost in accordance with 10 CFR 430.22(m)(3)(ii).

Capacity	Region	Average design heat loss (in 1000's Btu's/hr.)	Heat loss of home values used on the grid (in 1000's Btu's/hr.)
Up to 9,000	1	10	5, 10
	2		5, 10, 15
	3		5, 10, 15
	4		10, 15, 20
	5		10, 15, 20
	6		5, 10, 15
9,100 to 15,000	1	20	5, 10, 15
	2		5, 10, 15, 20
	3		10, 15, 20, 25
	4		10, 15, 20, 25, 30
	5		10, 15, 20, 25, 30
	6		5, 10, 15, 20
15,100 to 21,000	1	25	10, 15, 20
	2		10, 15, 20, 25
	3		15, 20, 25, 30
	4		15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	5		15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	6		10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35
21,100 to 27,000	1	30	10, 15, 20, 25
	2		15, 20, 25, 30
	3		15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	4		20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50
	5		20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	6		10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35
21,100 to 27,000	1	30	10, 15, 20, 25
	2		15, 20, 25, 30
	3		15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	4		20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50
	5		20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	6		15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40
27,100 to 33,000	1	35	15, 20, 25, 30
	2		20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	3		20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50
	4		25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	5		25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80
	6		20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60
33,200 to 39,000	1	50	15, 20, 25, 30, 35
	2		25, 30, 35, 40, 50
	3		30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	4		35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90
	5		35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90
	6		25, 30, 35, 40, 50
39,500 to 45,000	1	60	20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	2		25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60

Capacity	Region	Average design heat loss (in 1000's Btu's/hr.)	Heat loss of home values used on the grid (in 1000's Btu's/hr.)
	3		30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	4		40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100
	5		40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110
	6		25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80
45,500 to 51,000	1	70	20, 25, 30, 35, 40
	2		30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	3		35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80
	4		50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110
	5		50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130
	6		30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130
51,500 to 57,000	1	70	25, 30, 35, 40, 50
	2		35, 40, 50, 60, 70
	3		40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90
	4		50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110
	5		50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 ,110, 130
	6		35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100
57,500 to 63,000	1	80	25, 30, 35, 40, 50
	2		35, 40, 50, 60, 70
	3		50, 60, 70, 80, 90
	4		60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110
	5		60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130
	6		35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100
63,500 and over	1	90	30, 35, 40, 50, 60
	2		40, 50, 60, 70, 80
	3		50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100
	4		70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130
	5		70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130
	6		40, 50, 60, 70, 80

Include the following note on every fact sheet page that lists annual operating costs.

NOTE: These annual heating costs are based on U.S. Government standard tests and on a national average cost of electricity of 9.06¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is given [direct user to location].

The methodology referred to in the note is provided below. This information shall be included at least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this methodology must be provided on or with the unbound fact sheets.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR HEATING COSTS

To estimate your heating cost, determine your cost of electricity in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electric bill, your listed average annual heating cost from the National Average Annual Heating Cost Table, and use that number in the following equation:

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \text{Listed annual heating cost} * \times \frac{\text{Your electrical cost in cents per KWH}}{9.06¢}$$

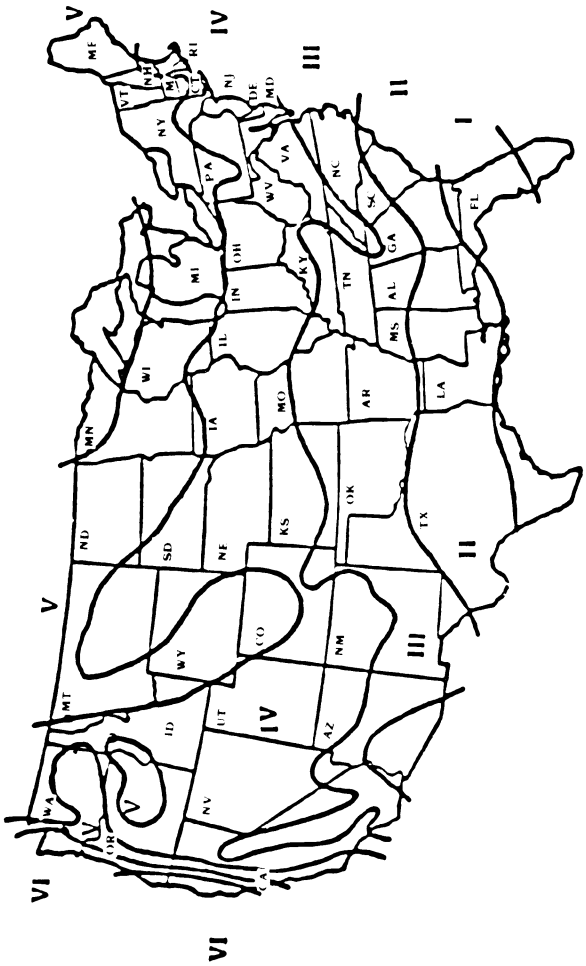
Example: If your electric rate is 12.62¢/KWH and the annual heating cost listed in the chart is $200:

Your estimated cost = $200 × 13.6¢/9.06¢

Your estimated cost = $200 × 1.5 = $300

Your estimated cost = $300

Heating Region Map



This map must be included at least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this map must be provided on or with the separate fact sheets.

[An example of a fact sheet showing only the heating function for heat pumps]

ENERGYGUIDE

Heating Capacity:

Models	XXX/C1	33,000 BTU/hr
	XXX/C2	35,000 BTU/hr

Heating Performance for Region IV

Model XXX/C1
7.9 HSPF

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient Model 6.8 — **Most Efficient Model** 10.2

Model XXX/C2
8.9 HSPF

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient Model 6.8 — **Most Efficient Model** 10.2

This (or these) energy rating(s) is (or are) based on U.S. Government standard tests of this (or these) condenser model(s) combined with the most common coil(s). The ratings will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

NATIONAL AVERAGE ANNUAL HEATING COST TABLE ($ per year)

MODEL XXX/C1	Heat Loss of Home (in 1000's Btu's/hr.)									
	15	20	25	30	35	40	50	60	70	80
* Region 1	$60	$80	$100	$120						
" 2		$140	$170	$200	$240	$280				
" 3			$250	$300	$350	$400	$520			
" 4			$350	$410	$480	$550	$710	$910	$1110	$1330
" 5				$560	$660	$750	$970	$1200	$1460	$1720
" 6		$300	$370	$430	$500	$590				

MODEL XXX/C2	Heat Loss of Home (in 1000's Btu's/hr.)									
	15	20	25	30	35	40	50	60	70	80
* Region 1	$50	$70	$90	$110						
" 2		$130	$160	$190	$220	$260				
" 3			$240	$280	$330	$400	$500			
" 4			$330	$400	$450	$520	$580	$880	$1020	$1230
" 5				$540	$640	$730	$940	$1100	$1300	$1620
" 6		$300	$350	$400	$470	$560				

*From Heating Region Map

(This is Page 1 of Sample Fact Sheet)

NOTE: These annual heating costs are based on U.S. Government standard tests and on a national average cost of electricity of 9.06¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is given below.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR HEATING COST

To estimate your heating cost, determine your cost of electricity in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electric bill, your listed average annual heating cost from the National Average Annual Heating Cost Table, and substitute that number in the following equation:

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \text{Listed annual heating cost} * \times \frac{\text{Your electrical cost in cents per KWH}}{9.06¢}$$

Example: If your electric cost is 13.6¢/KWH and the annual heating cost listed in the table is $200:
Your estimated cost = $200 × 13.6¢/9.06¢
Your estimated cost = $200 × 1.5 = $300
Your estimated cost = $300

(THIS IS PAGE 2 OF SAMPLE FACT SHEET)

[53 FR 19729, May 27, 1988, as amended at 54 FR 53318, Dec. 28, 1989; 55 FR 43093, Oct. 26, 1990; 56 FR 46728, Sept. 16, 1991; 57 FR 44332, Sept. 25, 1992; 59 FR 34051, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 39952, Aug. 5, 1994; 60 FR 56949, Nov. 13, 1995; 61 FR 48623, Sept. 16, 1996; 62 FR 44891, Aug. 25, 1997; 64 FR 926, Jan. 6, 1999; 64 FR 71021, Dec. 20, 1999; 65 FR 53166, Sept. 1, 2000; 66 FR 49531, Sept. 28, 2001; 66 FR 57872, Nov. 19, 2001; 67 FR 58328, Sept. 16, 2002; 68 FR 47451, Aug. 11, 2003; 69 FR 54560, Sept. 9, 2004; 70 FR 32487, June 3, 2005; 70 FR 60718, Oct. 19, 2005]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49983, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix I to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX I TO PART 305—HEATING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS

Manufacturer's rated heating capacity (Btu's/hr.)	Range of HSPF's	
	Low	High
Single Package Units.		
Heat Pumps (Heating Function): All capacities	7.0	8.2
Split System Units.		
Heat Pumps (Heating Function): All capacities	7.1	10.2

APPENDIX J1 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—GAS

RANGE INFORMATION

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities	Range of thermal efficiencies (percent)			
	Natural gas		Propane	
	Low	High	Low	High
All capacities	78.4	97.0	78.4	97.0

[60 FR 43369, Aug. 21, 1995]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49983, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix J1 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX J1 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—GAS

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated heating capacity	Range of Thermal Efficiencies (percent)			
	Natural Gas		Propane	
	Low	High	Low	High
All capacities	79.0	95.0	79.0	95.0

APPENDIX J2 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—OIL

RANGE INFORMATION

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities	Range of thermal efficiencies (percent)	
	Low	High
All capacities	78.0	78.0

[60 FR 43370, Aug. 21, 1995]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49983, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix J2 to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX J2 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—OIL

Range Information

Manufacturer's rated heating capacities	Range of Thermal Efficiencies (percent)	
	Low	High
All capacities	79.0	79.0

APPENDIX K TO PART 305—SUGGESTED DATA REPORTING FORMAT

1. Date of Report _____
2. Company Name _____
3. City _____
4. State _____
5. Product _____
6. Energy Type (gas, oil, etc.) _____
7. Model Number _____
8. Estimated Annual Energy Consumption or Energy Efficiency Rating _____
9. Capacity _____
10. Number of Tests Performed _____
11. Total Energy Consumption (based on all tests performed) _____

[52 FR 49647, Dec. 31, 1987; as amended at 59 FR 34053, July 1, 1994. Redesignated at 59 FR 49565, Sept. 28, 1994]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 72 FR 49984, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix K to part 305 was revised, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX K TO PART 305—SUGGESTED DATA REPORTING FORMAT

This Table contains the representative unit energy costs that must be utilized to calculate estimated annual operating cost disclosures required under sections 305.11 and 305.20. This Table is based on information published by the U.S. Department of Energy in 2007. Unless otherwise indicated by the Commission, this table will be revised in 2012.

Representative Average Unit Costs of Energy for Five Residential Energy Sources (2007)			
Type of Energy	In Commonly Used Terms	As required by DOE test procedure	Dollars per million Btu[1]
Electricity	10.65¢/kWh[2,3]	$.1065/kWh	$31.21
Natural Gas	$1.218/therm[4] $12.53/MCF[5,6]	$0.00001218/Btu	$12.18

This Table contains the representative unit energy costs that must be utilized to calculate estimated annual operating cost disclosures required under sections 305.11 and 305.20. This Table is based on information published by the U.S. Department of Energy in 2007. Unless otherwise indicated by the Commission, this table will be revised in 2012.

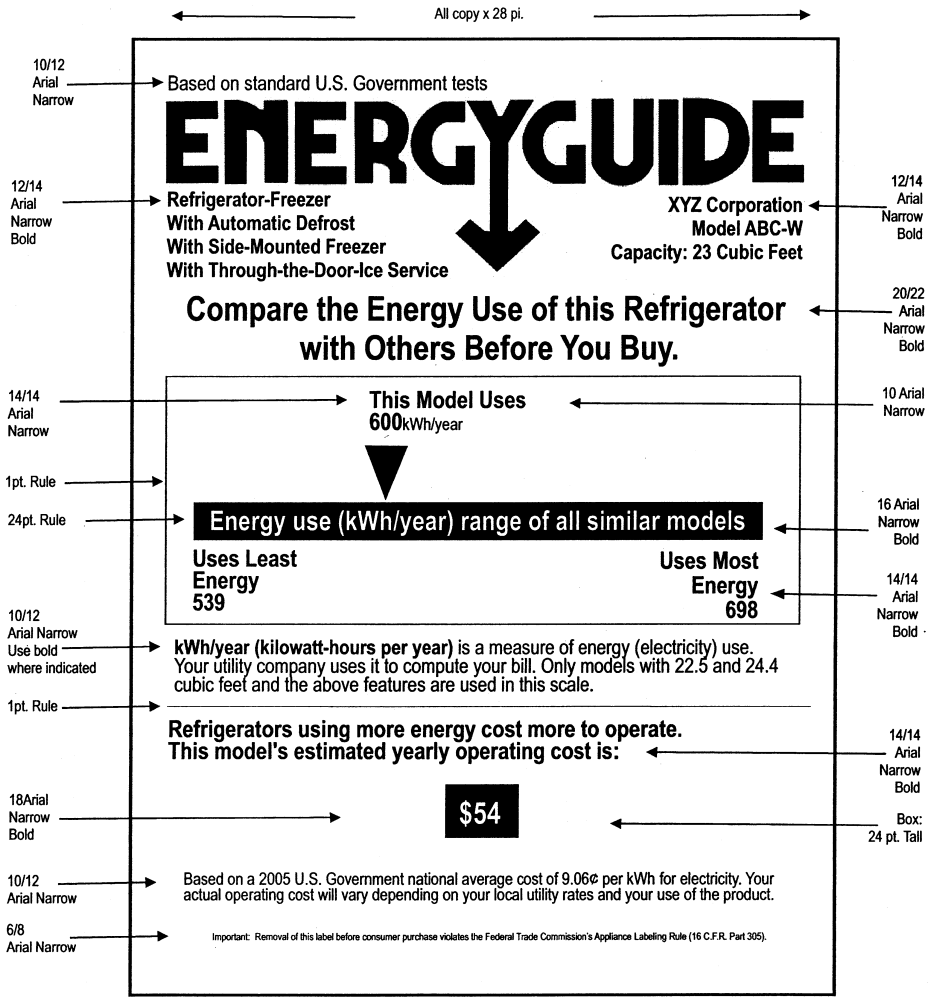
Representative Average Unit Costs of Energy for Five Residential Energy Sources (2007)

Type of Energy	In Commonly Used Terms	As required by DOE test procedure	Dollars per million Btu[1]
No. 2 heating oil	$2.22/gallon[7]	$0.00001601/Btu	$16.01
Propane	$1.87/gallon[8]	$0.00002047/Btu	$20.47
Kerosene	$2.63/gallon[9]	$0.00001948/Btu	$19.48

[1] Btu stands for British termal unit.
[2] kWh stands for kilo Watt hour.
[3] 1 kWh = 3,412 Btu.
[4] 1 therm = 100,000 Btu. Natural gas prices include taxes.
[5] MCF stands for 1,000 cubic feet.
[6] For the purposes of this table, 1 cubic foot of natural gas has an energy equivalence of 1,029 Btu.
[7] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of No. 2 heating oil has an energy equivalence of 138,690 Btu.
[8] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of liquid propane has an energy equivalence of 91,333 Btu.
[9] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of kerosene has an energy equivalence of 135,000 Btu.

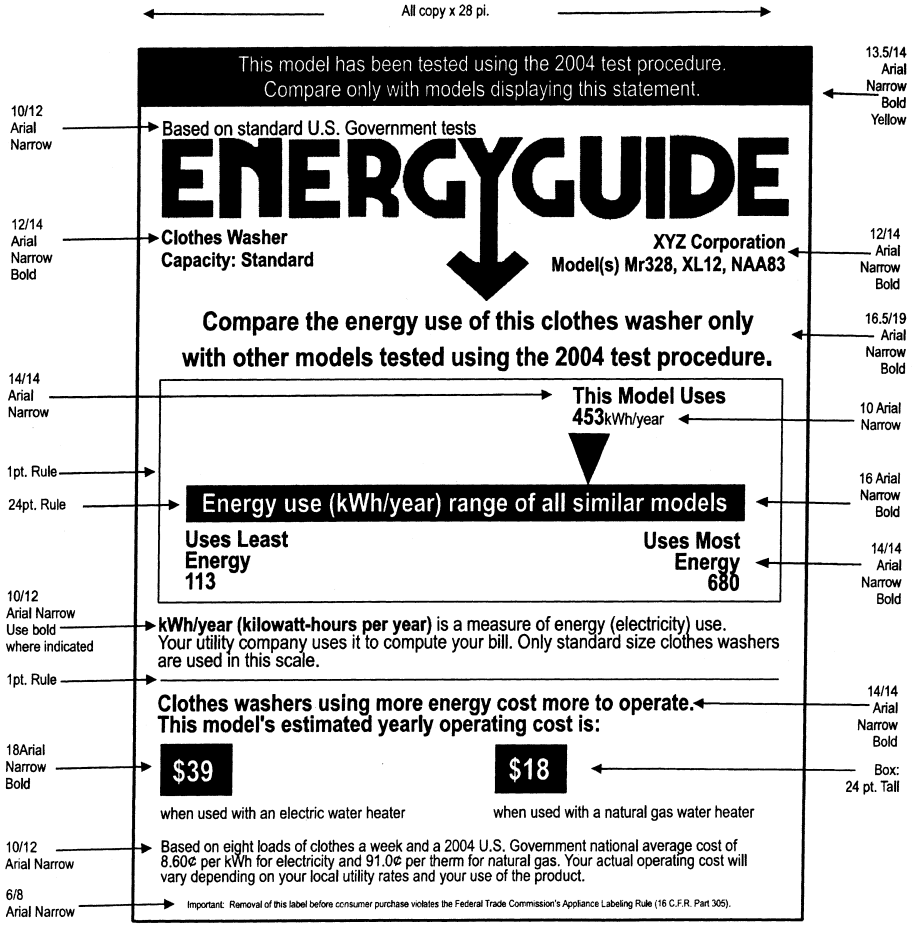
APPENDIX L TO PART 305—SAMPLE LABELS

All copy Arial Narrow Regular or Bold as below.
Helvetica Condensed series typeface or other equivalent also acceptable.



Prototype Label 1

All copy Arial Narrow Regular or Bold as below.
Helvetica Condensed series typeface or other equivalent also acceptable.



Prototype Label 2

All copy Arial Narrow Regular or Bold as below.
Helvetica Condensed series typeface or other equivalent also acceptable.

All copy x 28 pi.

10/12 Arial Narrow — Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

12/14 Arial Narrow Bold — **Water Heater – Natural Gas**
Capacity (first hour rating):
60 gallons

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) RP23
RP38 — 12/14 Arial Narrow Bold

Compare the Energy Use of this Water Heater with Others Before You Buy. — 20/22 Arial Narrow Bold

14/14 Arial Narrow — **This Model Uses**
240 Therms/year — 10 Arial Narrow

24 pt. rule — **Energy use (Therms/year) range of all similar models**

1 pt. rule

Uses Least Energy 246 — **Uses Most Energy 254** — 16 Arial Narrow Bold

The Estimated Annual Energy Consumption of this model was not available at the time the range was published. — 14/14 Arial Narrow Bold

10/12 Arial Narrow Use bold where indicated — **Therms/year** is a measure of energy use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with first hour ratings of 56 to 64 gallons are used in this scale.

1 pt. rule

Natural gas water heaters that use fewer therms/year cost less to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: — 14/14 Arial Narrow Bold

18 Arial Narrow Bold — **$218** — Box. 24 pt. tall

10/12 Arial Narrow — Based on a 2004 U.S. Government national average cost of 91.0¢ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

6/8 Arial Narrow — Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Prototype Label 3

All copy Arial Narrow Regular or Bold as below.
Helvetica Condensed series typeface or other equivalent also acceptable.

All copy x 28 pi.

10/12 Arial Narrow

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

12/14 Arial Narrow Bold

Central Air Conditioner
Cooling Only
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 12345

12/14 Arial Narrow Bold

Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Air Conditioner with Others Before You Buy.

20/22 Arial Narrow Bold

14/14 Arial Narrow

This Model's Efficiency
13.2SEER

10 Arial Narrow

1pt. Rule

24pt. Rule

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

16 Arial Narrow Bold

10/12 Arial Narrow Use bold where indicated

Least Efficient 10.9	**Most Efficient 20.50**

14/14 Arial Narrow Bold

SEER, the Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio, is a measure of energy efficiency for central air conditioners.

1pt. Rule

Central air conditioners with higher SEERs are more energy efficient.

14/14 Arial Narrow Bold

Bullets 10 pt.

- This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.
- Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

6/8 Arial Narrow

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Prototype Label 4

All copy Arial Narrow Regular or Bold as below.
Helvetica Condensed series typeface or other equivalent also acceptable.

All copy x 28 pi.

10/12 Arial Narrow

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

12/14 Arial Narrow Bold

Heat Pump
Cooling and Heating
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 12345

12/14 Arial Narrow Bold

Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Heat Pump with Others Before You Buy.

20/22 Arial Narrow Bold

14/14 Arial Narrow

This Model (Cooling)
13.4SEER

10 Arial Narrow

24 pt. Rule

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

16 Arial Narrow Bold

1pt. Rule

Least Efficient 10.9

Most Efficient 18.60

14/14 Arial Narrow Bold

SEER, the Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio, is a measure of energy efficiency for heat pumps when cooling.

1pt. Rule

This Model (Heating)
8.4HSPF

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient 7.10

Most Efficient 10.55

10/12 Arial Narrow Use bold where indicated

HSPF, the Heating Seasonal Performance Factor, is a measure of energy efficiency for heat pumps when heating.

Bullets 10 pt.

- These energy ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The ratings will vary slightly with different coils
- Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

6/8 Arial Narrow

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Prototype Label 5

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Refrigerator-Freezer
With Automatic Defrost
With Side-Mounted Freezer
With Through-the-Door-Ice Service

XYZ Corporation
Model ABC-W
Capacity: 23 Cubic Feet

Compare the Energy Use of this Refrigerator with Others Before You Buy.

This Model Uses
600kWh/year

Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models

Uses Least Energy
539

Uses Most Energy
698

kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year) is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with 22.5 and 24.4 cubic feet and the above features are used in this scale.

Refrigerators using more energy cost more to operate.
This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$54

Based on a 2005 U.S. Government national average cost of 9.06¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 1

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Freezer
Upright Type
With Manual Defrost

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) MR328, XI12, NA 83
Capacity: 21.2 Cubic Feet

Compare the Energy Use of this Refrigerator with Others Before You Buy.

This Model Uses
700kWh/year

Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models

Uses Least Energy
671

Uses Most Energy
770

kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year) is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with 19.5 to 21.4 cubic feet with the above features are used in this scale.

Freezers using more energy cost more to operate.
This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$63

Based on a 2005 U.S. Government national average cost of 9.06¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 2

This model has been tested using the 2004 test procedure.
Compare only with models displaying this statement.

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Clothes Washer
Capacity: Standard

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) Mr328, XL12, NAA83

Compare the energy use of this clothes washer only with other models tested using the 2004 test procedure.

This Model Uses
453kWh/year

Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models

Uses Least Energy
113

Uses Most Energy
680

kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year) is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only standard size clothes washers are used in this scale.

Clothes washers using more energy cost more to operate.
This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$39
when used with an electric water heater

$18
when used with a natural gas water heater

Based on eight loads of clothes a week and a 2004 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.60¢ per kWh for electricity and 91.0¢ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 3

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Dishwasher
Capacity: Standard

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) MR328, XI12, NAA83

Compare the Energy Use of this Dishwasher with Others Before You Buy.

This Model Uses
500kWh/year

Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models

Uses Least Energy	Uses Most Energy
194	531

kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year) is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only standard size dishwashers are used in this scale.

Dishwashers using more energy cost more to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$43	$31
When used with an electric water heater	When used with a natural gas water heater

Based on four wash loads a week and a 2004 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.60¢ per kWh for electricity and 91.0¢ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 4

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Water Heater – Natural Gas
Capacity (first hour rating):
60 gallons

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) RP23
RP38

Compare the Energy Use of this Water Heater with Others Before You Buy.

This Model Uses
240 Therms/year

Energy use (Therms/year) range of all similar models

Uses Least Energy	Uses Most Energy
246	254

The Estimated Annual Energy Consumption of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

Therms/year is a measure of energy use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with first hour ratings of 56 to 64 gallons are used in this scale.

Natural gas water heaters that use fewer therms/year cost less to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$218

Based on a 2004 U.S. Government national average cost of 91.0¢ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 5

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Room Air Conditioner
Without Reverse Cycle
With Louvered Sides

XYZ Corporation
Model 122345
Capacity: 13,000 BTUs

Compare the Energy Use of this Air Conditioner with Others Before You Buy.

This Model Efficiency
10.0 EER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient	Most Efficient
8.5	12.0

EER, the Energy Efficiency Ratio, is a measure of energy efficiency for room air conditioners. Only models between 8,000 and 13,000 BTUs with the above features are used in this scale.

More efficient air conditioners cost less to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$96

Based on a 2006 U.S. Government national average cost of 9.81¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 6

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Furnace – Natural Gas

XYZ Corporation
Model 2345X

Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Furnace with Others Before You Buy.

This Model's Efficiency
80.7 AFUE

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient	Most Efficient
78.0	97.0

The **AFUE, Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency,** is a measure of energy efficiency for furnaces and boilers. Only furnaces fueled by natural gas are used in this scale.

Natural gas furnaces that have higher AFUEs are more energy efficient.

Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment.

Ask for this information.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 7

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Central Air Conditioner
Cooling Only
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 12345

Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Air Conditioner with Others Before You Buy.

This Model's Efficiency
13.2SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient	Most Efficient
10.9	20.50

SEER, the Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio, is a measure of energy efficiency for central air conditioners.

Central air conditioners with higher SEERs are more energy efficient.

- This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.
- Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 8

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Heat Pump
Cooling and Heating
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 12345

Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Heat Pump with Others Before You Buy.

This Model (Cooling)
13.4SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient	Most Efficient
10.9	18.60

SEER, the Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio, is a measure of energy efficiency for heat pumps when cooling.

This Model (Heating)
8.4HSPF

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient	Most Efficient
7.10	10.55

HSPF, the Heating Seasonal Performance Factor, is a measure of energy efficiency for heat pumps when heating.

- These energy ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The ratings will vary slightly with different coils
- Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 9

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Pool Heater
Natural Gas

ABC Corporation
Model 1428

Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Pool Heater with Others Before You Buy.

This Model's Efficiency
80 Thermal Efficiency

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

Least Efficient	Most Efficient
78	97

The **Thermal Efficiency** (expressed as a percent) is the measure of energy efficiency for pool heaters. Only pool heaters fueled by natural gas are used in this scale.

Natural gas pool heaters that have higher Thermal Efficiencies are more energy efficient.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 10

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

ENERGYGUIDE

Refrigerator-Freezer
With Automatic Defrost
With Side-Mounted Freezer
With Through-the-Door-Ice Service

XYZ Corporation
Model ABC-W
Capacity: 23 Cubic Feet

Compare the Energy Use of this Refrigerator with Others Before You Buy.

This Model Uses
800kWh/year

ENERGY STAR
A symbol of
energy efficiency

Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models

Uses Least Energy	Uses Most Energy
685	1000

kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year) is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with 22.5 and 24.4 cubic feet and the above features are used in this scale.

Refrigerators using more energy cost more to operate.
This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:

$65

Based on a 2000 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.03¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase violates the Federal Trade Commission's Appliance Labeling Rule (16 C.F.R. Part 305).

Sample Label 11

Lamp Packaging Disclosures

Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

Illustration

Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.

Principal Display Panel

Light Output	1710 Lumens	To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts.
Energy Used	100 Watts	
Life	750 Hours	

Incandescent (non-reflector) Lamp Illustration

Lamp Packaging Disclosures

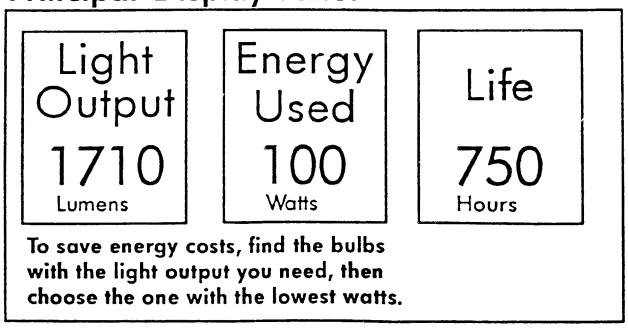
Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

Illustration

Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.

Principal Display Panel



Incandescent (non-reflector) Lamp Illustration

Lamp Packaging Disclosures

Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," "hours," and "at beam spread" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

Illustration

Note: *This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

Principal Display Panel

Light Output at beam spread	985 Lumens	To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts.	E*
Energy Used	75 Watts		* E means this bulb meets Federal minimum efficiency standards.
Life	2,000 Hours		

The explanatory statement next to the encircled "E" on the principal display panel above could be disclosed (clearly and conspicuously) on another panel, provided asterisks and the words "See [Back, Top, Side] panel for details" are used.

Incandescent Reflector Lamp Illustration

Lamp Packaging Disclosures

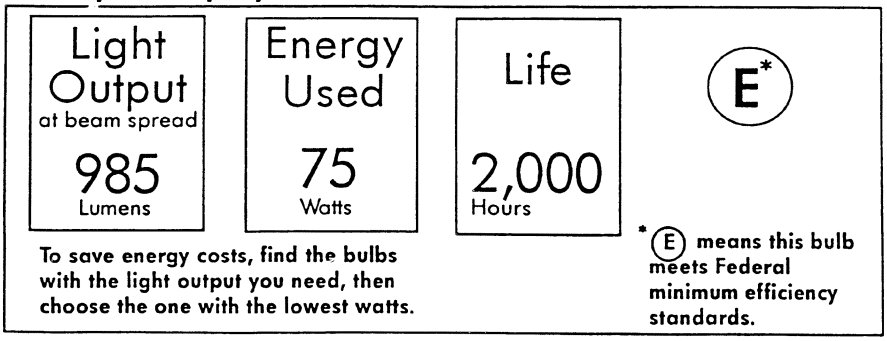
Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," "hours," and "at beam spread" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

Illustration

Note: *This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

Principal Display Panel



The explanatory statement next to the encircled "E" on the principal display panel above could be disclosed (clearly and conspicuously) on another panel, provided asterisks and the words "See [Back, Top, Side] panel for details" are used.

Incandescent Reflector Lamp Illustration

Lamp Packaging Disclosures

Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

Illustration

Note: *This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

Principal Display Panel

Light Output	1200 Lumens	To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts.
Energy Used	20 Watts	
Life	10,000 Hours	

Compact Fluorescent Lamp Illustration

Lamp Packaging Disclosures

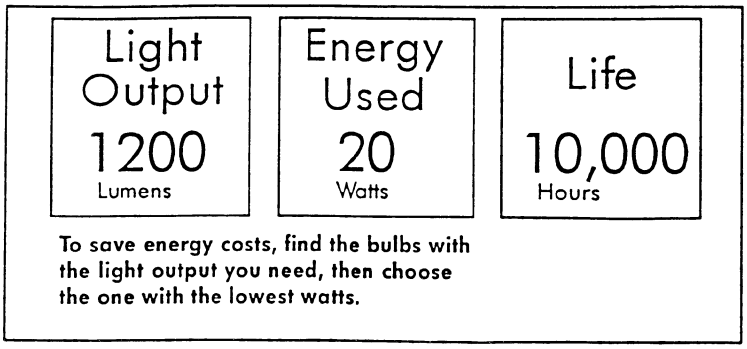
Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

Illustration

Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.

Principal Display Panel



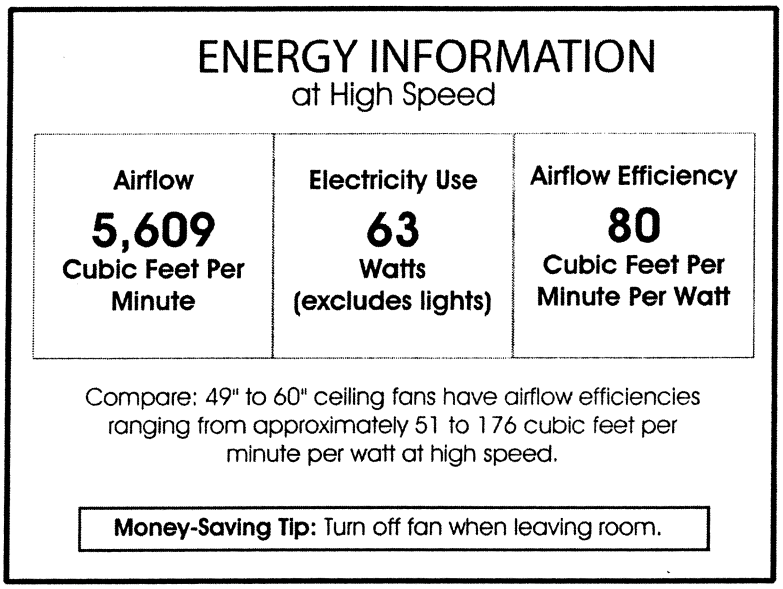
Compact Fluorescent Lamp Illustration

[59 FR 25212, May 13, 1994; 59 FR 34053, July 1, 1994. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 49565, 49567, Sept. 28, 1994; 65 FR 16142, Mar. 27, 2000; 65 FR 17564, Apr. 3, 2000; 67 FR 47445, July 19, 2002; 68 FR 36463, June 18, 2003; 68 FR 47451, Aug. 11, 2003; 68 FR 55821, Sept. 29, 2003; 69 FR 42110, July 14, 2004; 69 FR 54561, Sept. 9, 2004; 70 FR 3875, Jan. 27, 2005; 70 FR 60718, Oct. 19, 2005; 71 FR 4987, Jan. 31, 2006; 71 FR 45373, Aug. 9, 2006]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 71 FR 78065, Dec. 28, 2006, appendix L was amended by adding Ceiling Fan Label Illustration at the end, effective Jan. 1, 2009. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

APPENDIX L TO PART 305—SAMPLE LABELS

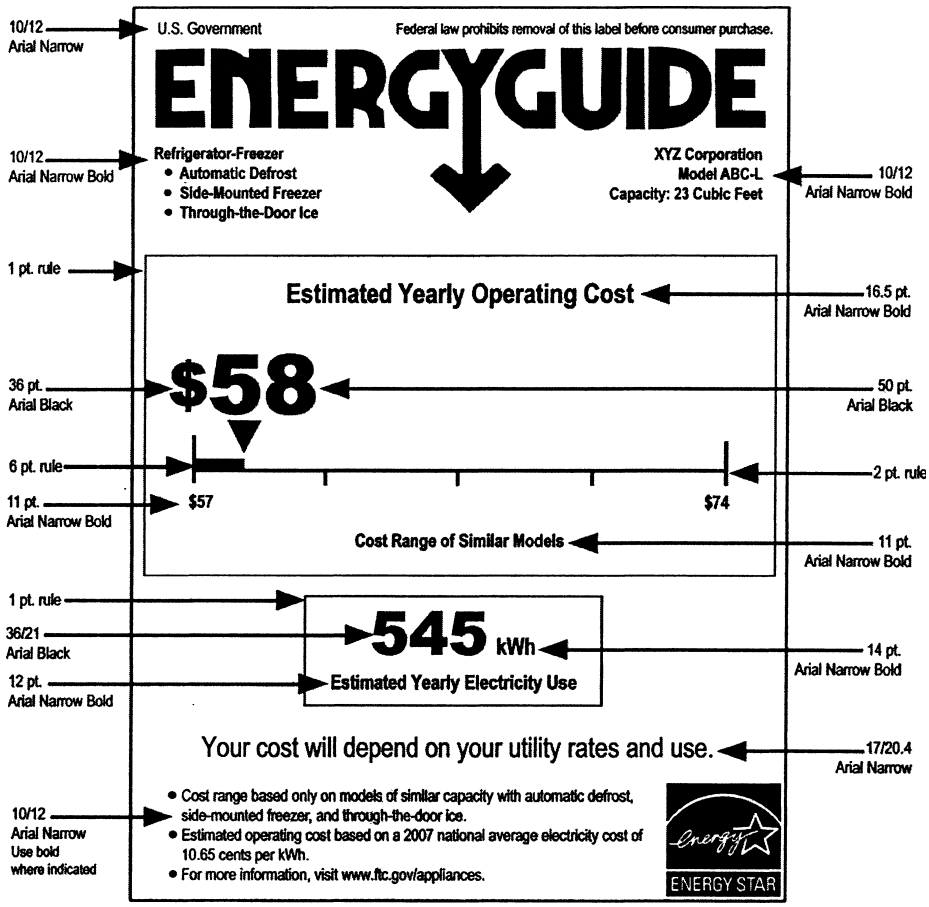
* * * * *



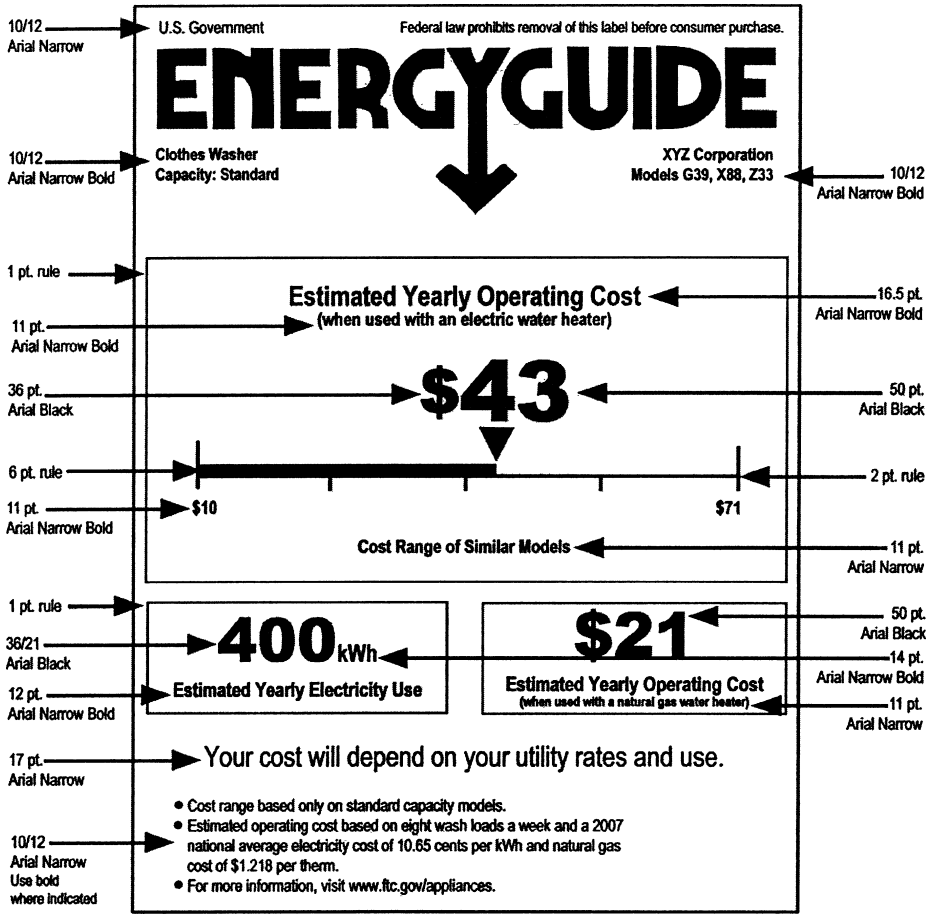
Ceiling Fan Label Illustration

2. At 72 FR 49984, Aug. 29, 2007, appendix L to part 305 was amended by revising prototype labels 1 through 4, and sample labels 1 through 9 and by removing prototype label 5 and sample labels 10 and 11, effective February 29, 2008. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:

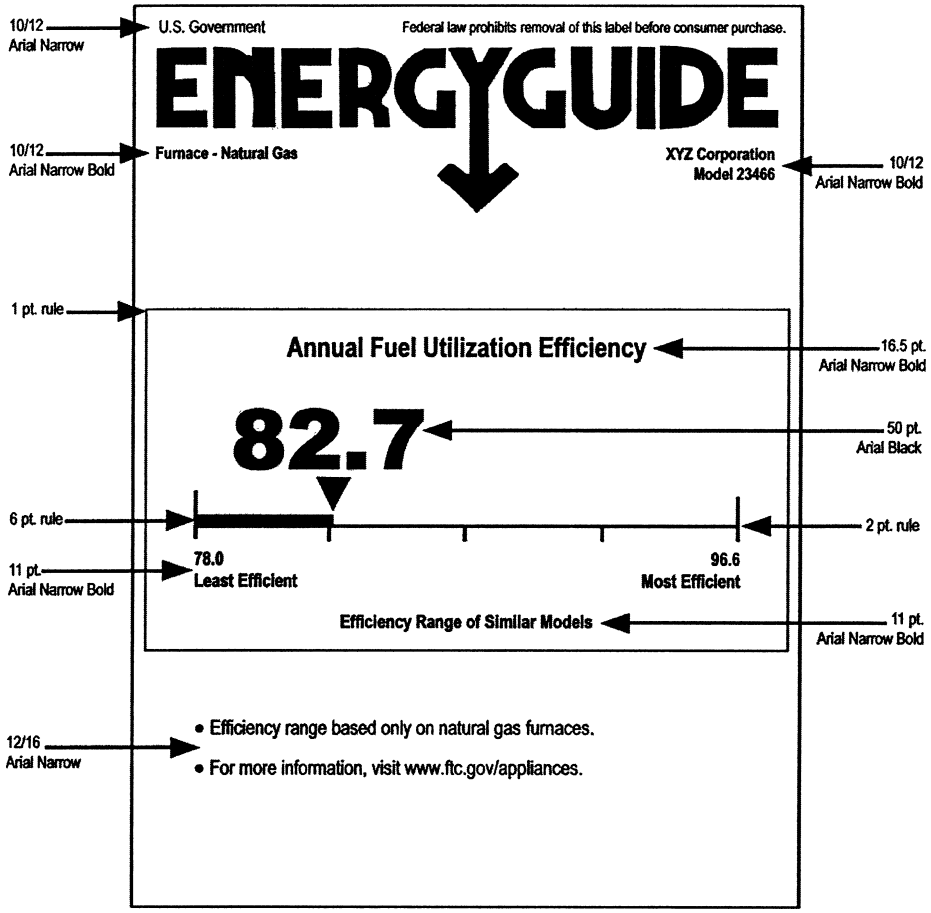
APPENDIX L TO PART 305—SAMPLE LABELS



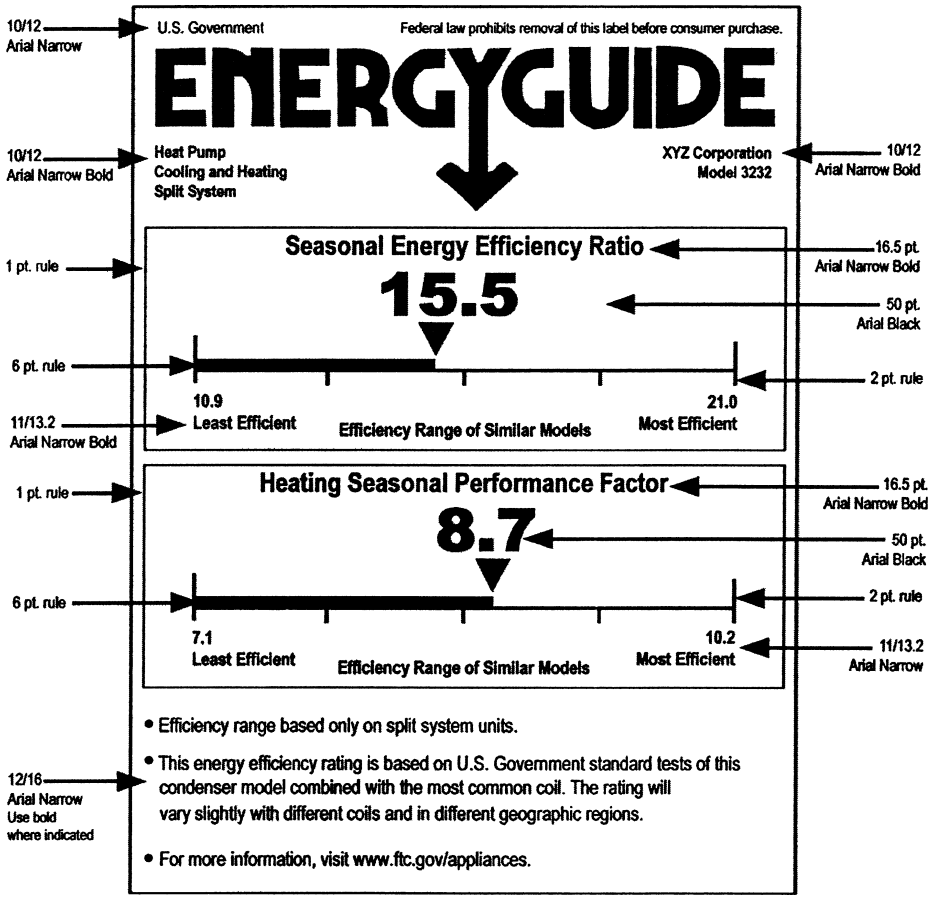
PROTOTYPE LABEL 1



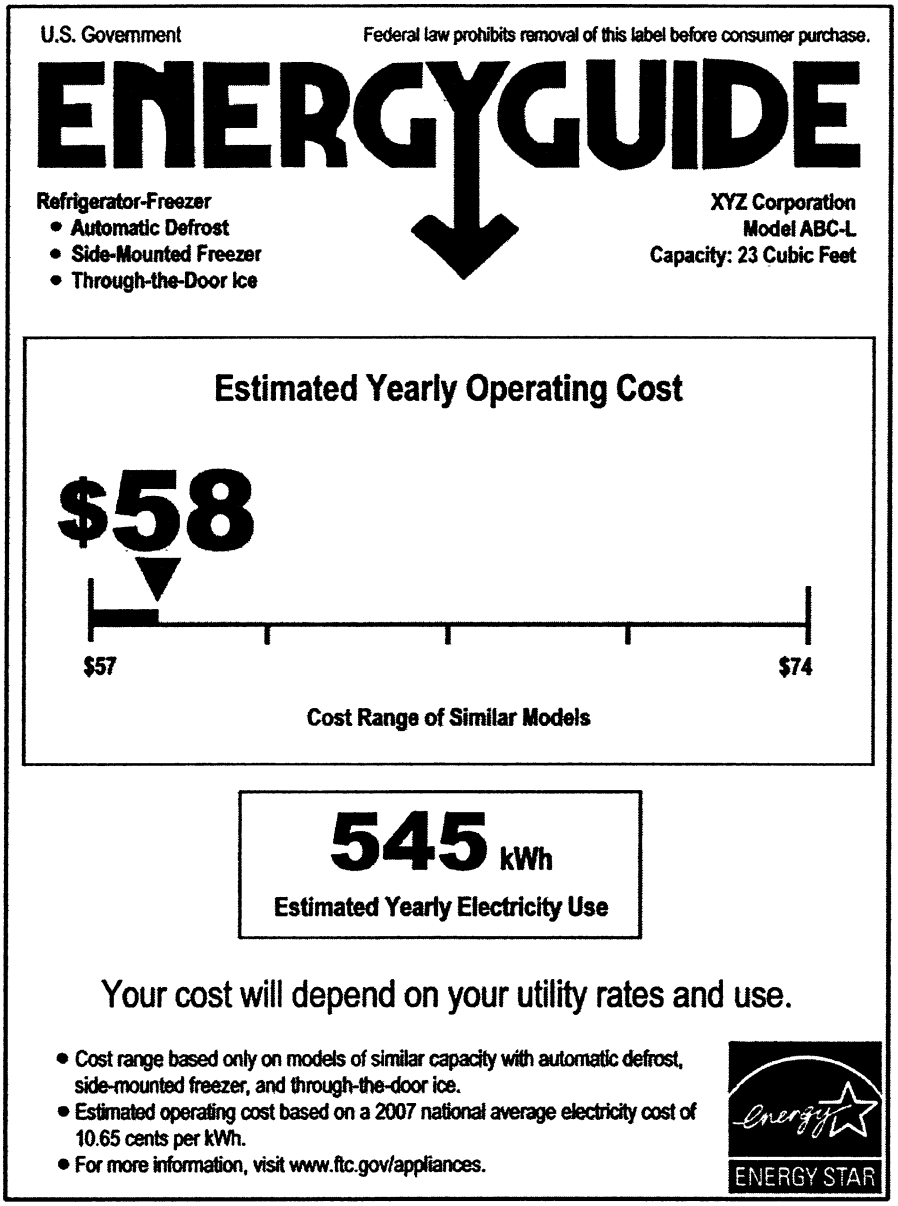
PROTOTYPE LABEL 2



PROTOTYPE LABEL 3



PROTOTYPE LABEL 4



SAMPLE LABEL 1

U.S. Government

Federal law prohibits removal of this label before consumer purchase.

ENERGYGUIDE

Clothes Washer
Capacity: Standard

XYZ Corporation
Models G39, X88, Z33

Estimated Yearly Operating Cost
(when used with an electric water heater)

$43

$10 $71

Cost Range of Similar Models

400 kWh
Estimated Yearly Electricity Use

$21
Estimated Yearly Operating Cost
(when used with a natural gas water heater)

Your cost will depend on your utility rates and use.

- Cost range based only on standard capacity models.
- Estimated operating cost based on eight wash loads a week and a 2007 national average electricity cost of 10.65 cents per kWh and natural gas cost of $1.218 per therm.
- For more information, visit www.ftc.gov/appliances.

SAMPLE LABEL 2

U.S. Government

Federal law prohibits removal of this label before consumer purchase.

ENERGYGUIDE

Dishwasher
Capacity: Standard

XYZ Corporation
Models G39, X88, Z33

Estimated Yearly Operating Cost
(when used with an electric water heater)

$19

$20 — $50

Cost Range of Similar Models

The estimated yearly operating cost of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

175 kWh
Estimated Yearly Electricity Use

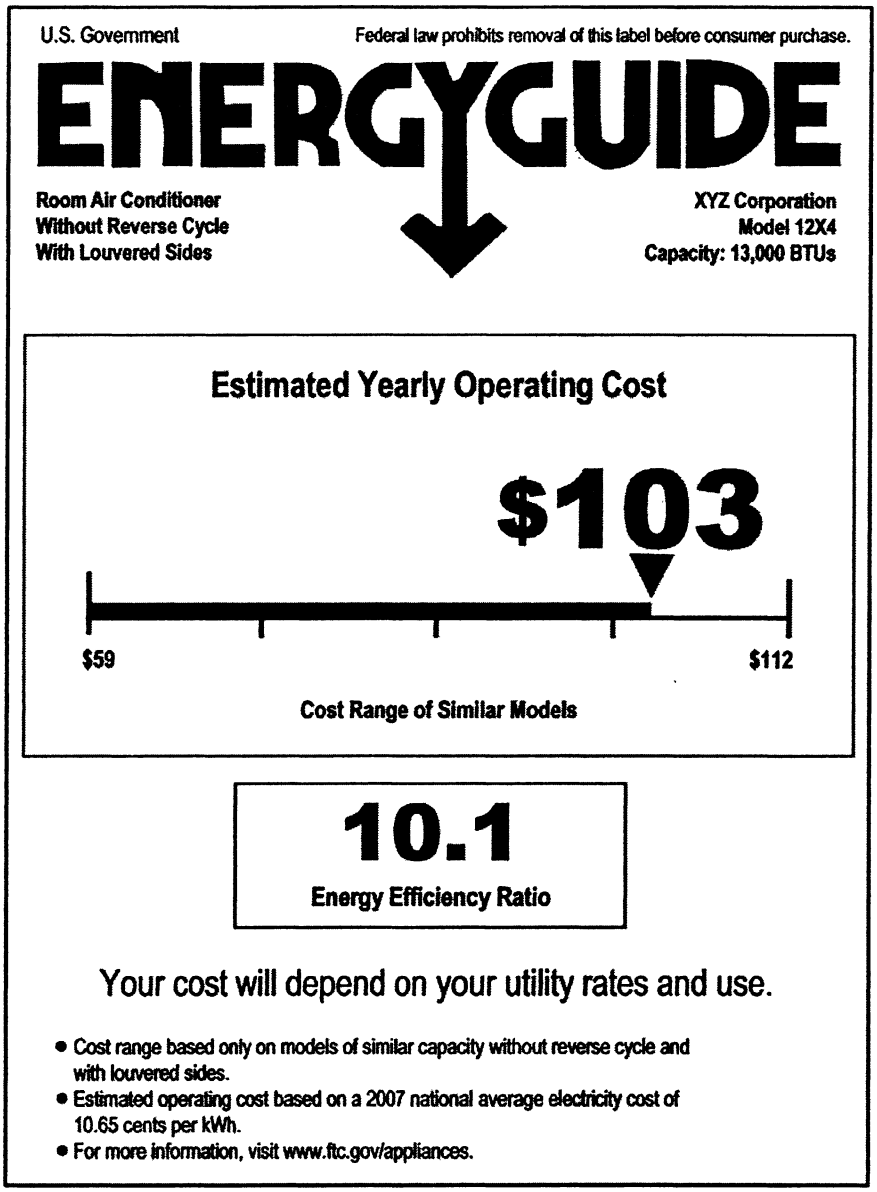
$13
Estimated Yearly Operating Cost
(when used with a natural gas water heater)

Your cost will depend on your utility rates and use.

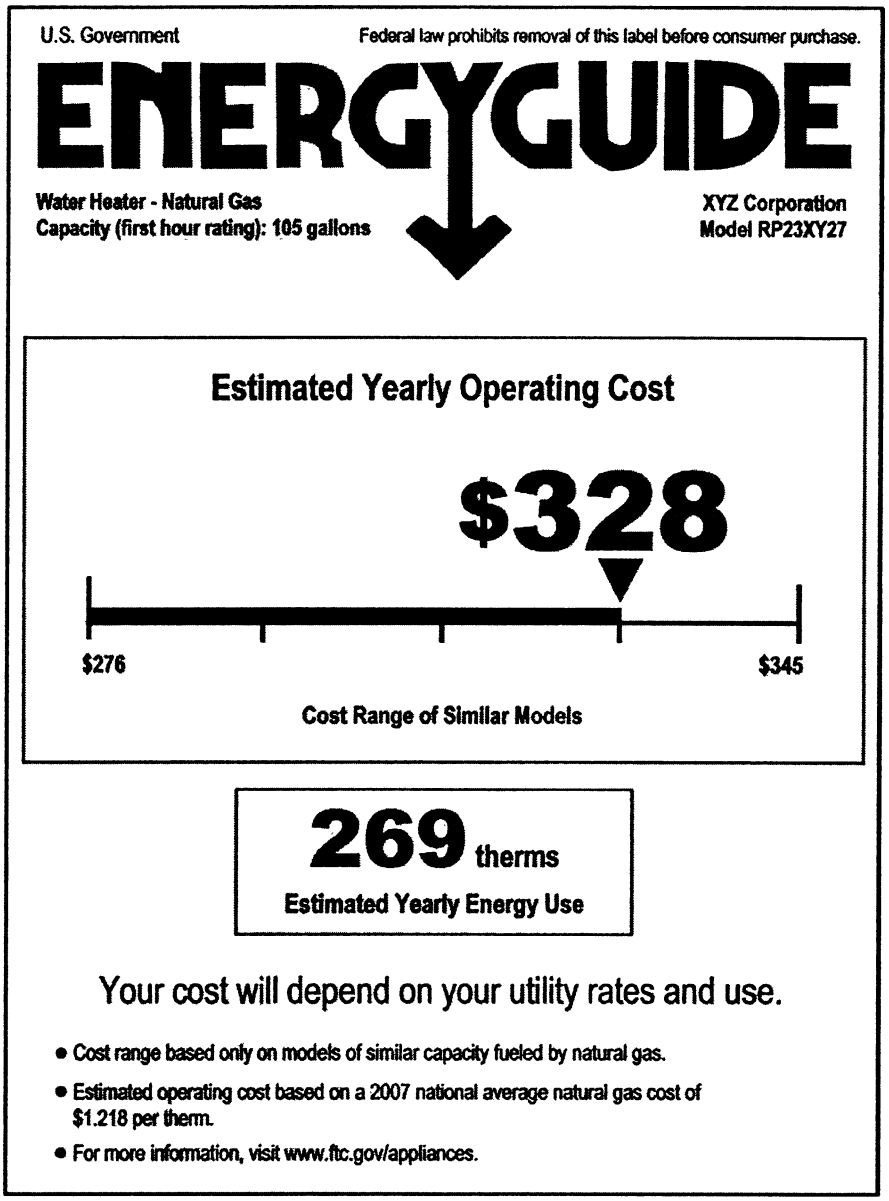
- Cost range based only on standard capacity models.
- Estimated operating cost based on four wash loads a week and a 2007 national average electricity cost of 10.65 cents per kWh and natural gas cost of $1.218 per therm.
- For more information, visit www.ftc.gov/appliances.

ENERGY STAR

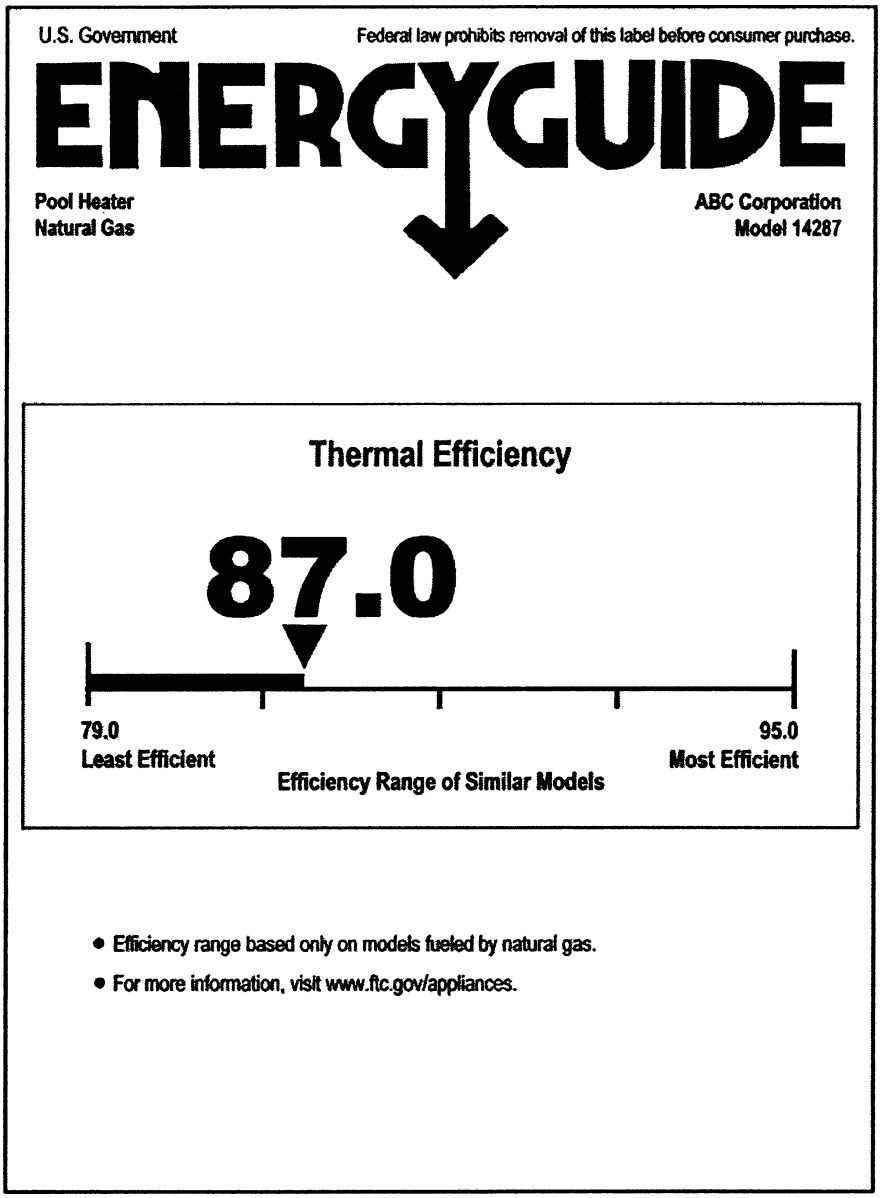
SAMPLE LABEL 3



SAMPLE LABEL 4



SAMPLE LABEL 5



SAMPLE LABEL 6

U.S. Government

Federal law prohibits removal of this label before consumer purchase.

ENERGYGUIDE

Central Air Conditioner
Cooling Only
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 6645

Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio

13.3

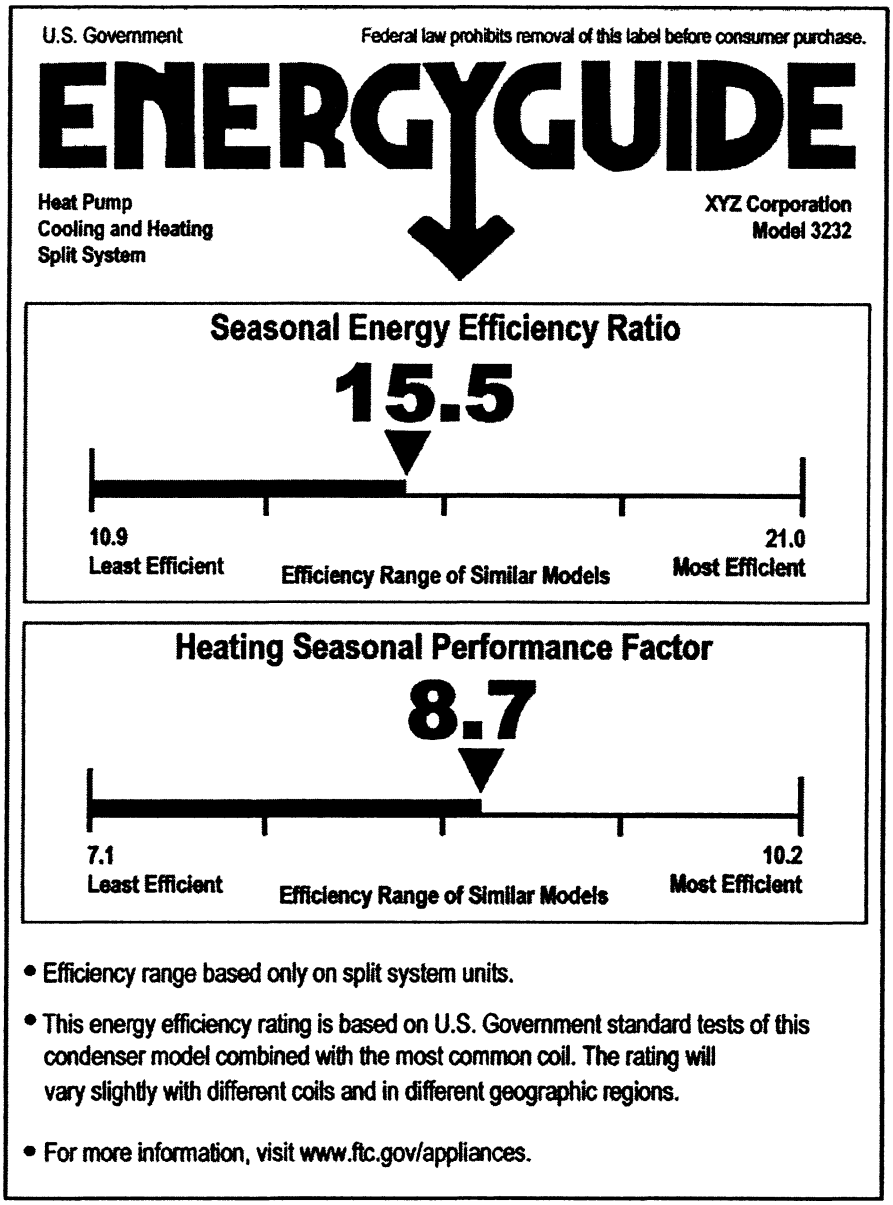
10.9
Least Efficient

23.0
Most Efficient

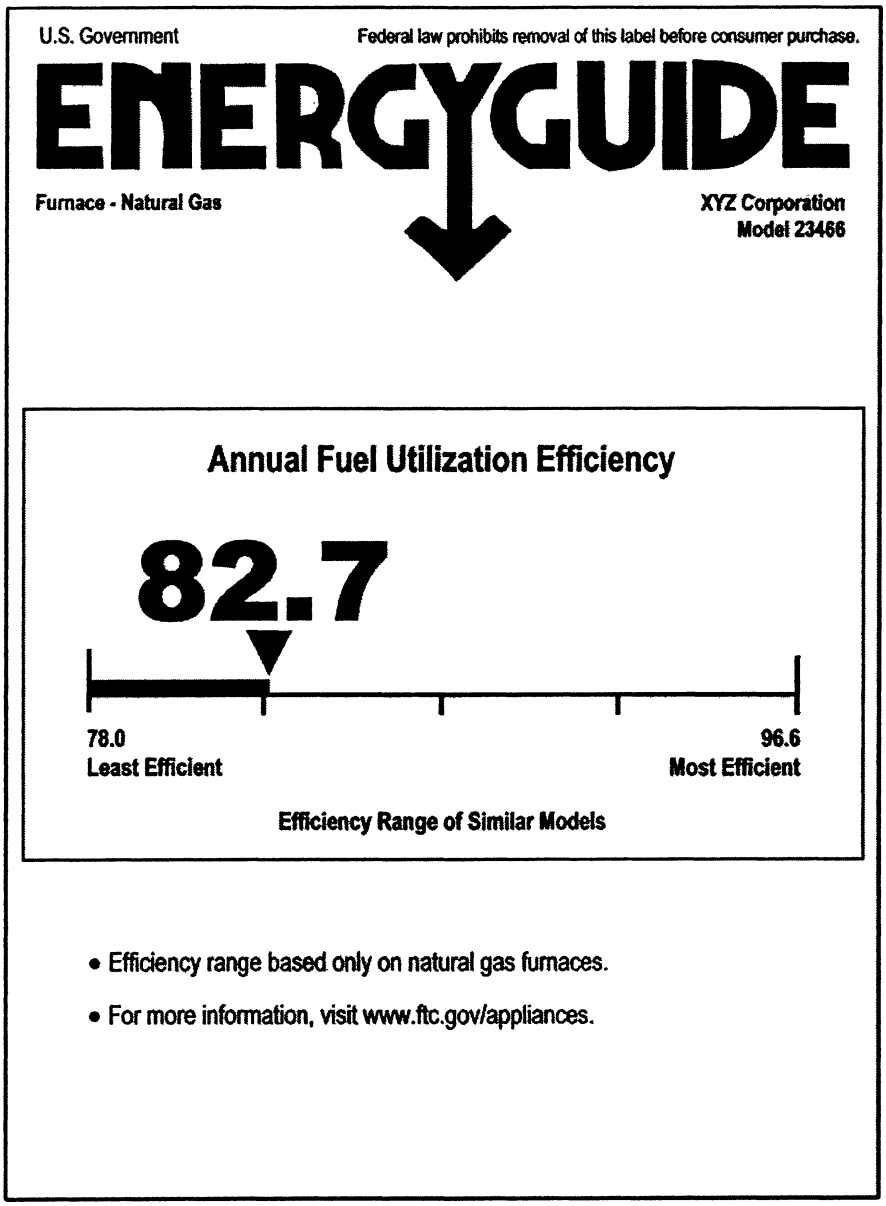
Efficiency Range of Similar Models

- Efficiency range based only on split system units.
- This energy efficiency rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.
- For more information, visit www.ftc.gov/appliances.

SAMPLE LABEL 7



SAMPLE LABEL 8



SAMPLE LABEL 9

* * * * *

PART 306—AUTOMOTIVE FUEL RATINGS, CERTIFICATION AND POSTING

GENERAL

Sec.
306.0 Definitions.
306.1 What this rule does.
306.2 Who is covered.
306.3 Stayed or invalid parts.
306.4 Preemption.

DUTIES OF REFINERS, IMPORTERS, AND PRODUCERS

306.5 Automotive fuel rating.
306.6 Certification.
306.7 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS

306.8 Certification.
306.9 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

306.10 Automotive fuel rating posting.
306.11 Recordkeeping.

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

306.12 Labels.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 44 FR 19169, Mar. 30, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

GENERAL

§ 306.0 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Octane rating* means the rating of the anti-knock characteristics of a grade or type of gasoline as determined by dividing by 2 the sum of the research octane number plus the motor octane number.

(b) *Research octane number* and *motor octane number* have the meanings given such terms in the specifications of the American Society for Testing and Materials (''ASTM'') entitled ''Standard Specification for Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine Fuel'' designated D4814–92c and, with respect to any grade or type of gasoline, are determined in accordance with test methods set forth in ASTM D2699–92, ''Standard Test Method for Knock Characteristics of Motor Fuels by the Research Method'' and ASTM D2700–92, ''Standard Test Method for Knock Characteristics of Motor and Aviation Fuels by the Motor Method.'' These incorporations by reference were approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASTM D4814–92c, ASTM D2699–92, and ASTM D2700–92 may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA, 19103, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC., or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html.*

(c) *Refiner* means any person engaged in the production or importation of automotive fuel.

(d) *Producer* means any person who purchases component elements and combines them to produce and market automotive fuel.

(e) *Distributor* means any person who receives automotive fuel and distributes such automotive fuel to another person other than the ultimate purchaser.

(f) *Retailer* means any person who markets automotive fuel to the general public for ultimate consumption.

(g) *Ultimate purchaser* means, with respect to any item, the first person who purchases such item for purposes other than resale.

(h) *Person*, for purposes of applying any provision of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*, with respect to any provision of this part, includes a partnership and a corporation.

(i) *Automotive fuel* means liquid fuel of a type distributed for use as a fuel in any motor vehicle, and the term includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Gasoline, an automotive spark-ignition engine fuel, which includes, but is not limited to, gasohol (generally a mixture of approximately 90% unleaded gasoline and 10% denatured ethanol) and fuels developed to comply with the Clean Air Act, 42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.*, such as reformulated gasoline and oxygenated gasoline; and

(2) alternative liquid automotive fuels, including, but not limited to:

(i) Methanol, denatured ethanol, and other alcohols;

(ii) Mixtures containing 85 percent or more by volume of methanol, denatured ethanol, and/or other alcohols (or such other percentage, but not less than 70 percent, as determined by the Secretary of the United States Department of Energy, by rule, to provide for requirements relating to cold start, safety, or vehicle functions), with gasoline or other fuels;

(iii) Liquefied natural gas;

(iv) Liquefied petroleum gas;

(v) Coal-derived liquid fuels.

(j) *Automotive fuel rating* means—

(1) For gasoline, the octane rating; or

(2) For an alternative liquid automotive fuel, the commonly used name of the fuel with a disclosure of the amount, expressed as a minimum percentage by volume, of the principal component of the fuel. A disclosure of other components, expressed as a minimum percentage by volume, may be included, if desired.

[58 FR 41372, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 69 FR 18803, Apr. 9, 2004]

§ 306.1 What this rule does.

This rule deals with the certification and posting of automotive fuel ratings in or affecting commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq*. It applies to persons, partnerships, and corporations. If you are covered by this regulation, breaking any of its rules is an unfair or deceptive act or practice under section 5 of that Act. You can be fined up to $10,000 (plus an adjustment for inflation, under § 1.98 of this chapter) each time you break a rule.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996; 61 FR 55840, Oct. 29, 1996]

§ 306.2 Who is covered.

You are covered by this rule if you are a refiner, importer, producer, distributor, or retailer of automotive fuel.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993]

§ 306.3 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this rule is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

[44 FR 19169, Mar. 30, 1979. Redesignated at 58 FR 41372, Aug. 3, 1993]

§ 306.4 Preemption.

The Petroleum Marketing Practices Act (''PMPA''), 15 U.S.C. 2801 *et seq.*, as amended, is the law that directs the FTC to enact this rule. Section 204 of PMPA, 15 U.S.C. 2824, provides:

(a) To the extent that any provision of this title applies to any act or omission, no State or any political subdivision thereof may adopt or continue in effect, except as provided in subsection (b), any provision of law or regulation with respect to such act or omission, unless such provision of such law or regulation is the same as the applicable provision of this title.

(b) A State or political subdivision thereof may provide for any investigative or enforcement action, remedy, or penalty (including procedural actions necessary to carry out such investigative or enforcement actions, remedies, or penalties) with respect to any provision of law or regulation permitted by subsection (a).

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993]

DUTIES OF REFINERS, IMPORTERS AND PRODUCERS

§ 306.5 Automotive fuel rating.

If you are a refiner, importer, or producer, you must determine the automotive fuel rating of all automotive fuel before you transfer it. You can do that yourself or through a testing lab.

(a) To determine the automotive fuel rating of gasoline, add the research octane number and the motor octane number and divide by two, as explained by the American Society for Testing and Materials (''ASTM'') in ASTM D4814–92c, entitled ''Standard Specifications for Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine Fuel.'' To determine the research octane number, use ASTM standard test method D2699–92, and to determine the motor octane number, use ASTM standard test method D2700–92.

(b) To determine automotive fuel ratings for alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must possess a reasonable

basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the percentage by volume of the principal component of the alternative liquid automotive fuel that you must disclose. You also must have a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the minimum percentages by volume of other components that you choose to disclose.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993]

§ 306.6 Certification

In each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel consistent with your determination. You can do this in either of two ways:

(a) Include a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of automotive fuel. It may be an invoice, bill of lading, bill of sale, terminal ticket, delivery ticket, or any other written proof of transfer. It must contain at least these four items:

(1) Your name;

(2) The name of the person to whom the automotive fuel is transferred;

(3) The date of the transfer;

(4) The automotive fuel rating. Octane rating numbers may be rounded off to a whole or half number equal to or less than the number determined by you.

(b) Give the person a letter or other written statement. This letter must include the date, your name, the other person's name, and the automotive fuel rating of any automotive fuel you will transfer to that person from the date of the letter onwards. Octane rating numbers may be rounded to a whole or half number equal to or less than the number determined by you. This letter of certification will be good until you transfer automotive fuel with a lower automotive fuel rating. When this happens, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the new automotive fuel either with a delivery ticket or by sending a new letter of certification.

(c) When you transfer automotive fuel to a common carrier, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

§ 306.7 Recordkeeping.

You must keep records of how you determined automotive fuel ratings for one year. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission and Environmental Protection Agency staff members, or by people authorized by FTC or EPA.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993]

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS

§ 306.8 Certification.

If you are a distributor, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer.

(a) In the case of gasoline, if you do not blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must certify the gasoline's octane rating consistent with the octane rating certified to you. If you blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must certify consistent with your determination of the average, weighted by volume, of the octane ratings certified to you for each gasoline in the blend, or consistent with the lowest octane rating certified to you for any gasoline in the blend. Whether you blend gasoline or not, you may choose to certify the octane rating of the gasoline consistent with your determination of the octane rating according to the method in § 306.5. In cases involving gasoline, the octane rating may be rounded to a whole or half number equal to or less than the number certified to you or determined by you.

(b) If you do not blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must certify consistent with the automotive fuel rating certified to you. If you blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the automotive fuel rating that you certify for the blend.

(c) You may certify either by using a delivery ticket with each transfer of automotive fuel, as outlined in

§ 306.6(a), or by using a letter of certification, as outlined in § 306.6(b).

(d) When you transfer automotive fuel to a common carrier, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper. When you receive automotive fuel from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper.

[58 FR 41374, Aug, 3, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

§ 306.9 Recordkeeping

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets or letters of certification on which you based your automotive fuel rating certifications. You must also keep for one year records of any automotive fuel rating determinations you made according to § 306.5. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission and Environmental Protection Agency staff members, or by persons authorized by FTC or EPA.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993]

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

§ 306.10 Automotive fuel rating posting.

(a) If you are a retailer, you must post the automotive fuel rating of all automotive fuel you sell to consumers. You must do this by putting at least one label on each face of each dispenser through which you sell automotive fuel. If you are selling two or more kinds of automotive fuel with different automotive fuel ratings from a single dispenser, you must put separate labels for each kind of automotive fuel on each face of the dispenser.

(b)(1) The label, or labels, must be placed conspicuously on the dispenser so as to be in full view of consumers and as near as reasonably practical to the price per unit of the automotive fuel.

(2) You may petition for an exemption from the placement requirements by writing the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the reasons that you want the exemption.

(c) In the case of gasoline, if you do not blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must post the octane rating of the gasoline consistent with the octane rating certified to you. If you blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must post consistent with your determination of the average, weighted by volume, of the octane ratings certified to you for each gasoline in the blend, or consistent with the lowest octane rating certified to you for any gasoline in the blend. Whether you blend gasoline or not, you may choose to post the octane rating of the gasoline consistent with your determination of the octane rating according to the method in § 306.5. In cases involving gasoline, the octane rating must be shown as a whole or half number equal to or less than the number certified to you or determined by you.

(d) If you do not blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must post consistent with the automotive fuel rating certified to you. If you blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the automotive fuel rating that you post for the blend.

(e)(1) You must maintain and replace labels as needed to make sure consumers can easily see and read them.

(2) If the labels you have are destroyed or are unusable or unreadable for some unexpected reason, you can satisfy the law by posting a temporary label as much like the required label as possible. You must still get and post the required label without delay.

(f) The following examples of automotive fuel rating disclosures for some presently available alternative liquid automotive fuels are meant to serve as illustrations of compliance with this part, but do not limit the Rule's coverage to only the mentioned fuels:

(1) ''Methanol/Minimum _____% Methanol''

(2) ''Ethanol/Minimum _____% Ethanol''

(3) ''M–85/Minimum _____% Methanol''

(4) ''E–85/Minimum _____% Ethanol''

(5) ''LPG/Minimum _____% Propane'' or

''LPG/Minimum _____% Propane and _____% Butane''

(6) ''LNG/Minimum _____% Methane''

(g) When you receive automotive fuel from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

§ 306.11 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets or letters of certification on which you based your posting of automotive fuel ratings. You also must keep for one year records of any automotive fuel rating determinations you made according to § 306.5. These records may be kept at the retail outlet or at another, reasonably close location. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission and Environmental Protection Agency staff members or by persons authorized by FTC or EPA.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993]

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

§ 306.12 Labels.

All labels must meet the following specifications:

(a) *Layout*—(1) *For gasoline labels.* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. The illustrations appearing at the end of this rule are prototype labels that demonstrate the proper layout. ''Helvetica Black'' type is used throughout except for the octane rating number on octane labels, which is in Franklin gothic type. All type is centered. Spacing of the label is ¼″ (.64 cm) between the top border and the first line of text, ⅛″ (.32 cm) between the first and second line of text, ¼″ (.64 cm) between the octane rating and the line of text above it. All text and numerals are centered within the interior borders.

(2) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels (one principal component).* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is ⅛″ (.32 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between each line. The bottom line of type is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the dimensions of this single component label to accommodate a fuel descriptor that is longer than shown in the sample labels, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(3) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels (two components).* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between each line. The bottom line of type is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the dimensions of this two component label to accommodate additional fuel components, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(b) *Type size and setting*—(1) *For gasoline labels.* The Helvetica series is used for all numbers and letters with the exception of the octane rating number. Helvetica is available in a variety of phototype setting systems, by linotype, and in a variety of computer desk-top and phototype setting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The line ''Minimum Octane Rating'' is set in 12 point Helvetica Bold, all capitals, with letterspace set at 12½ points. The line ''(R+M)/2 METHOD'' is set in 10 point Helvetica Bold, all capitals, with letterspace set at 10½ points. The octane number is set in 96 point Franklin gothic condensed with ⅛″ (.32 cm) space between the numbers.

(2) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel lables (one principal component).* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototype setting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ (1.27 cm) cap height) ''Helvetica Black,'' knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. The type for the words ''MINIMUM'' and the principal component is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height.) The type for percentage is 36 pt. (⅜″ (.96 cm) cap height).

(3) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels (two components).* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototype setting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ 1.27 cm) cap height) ''Helvetica Black,'' knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. All other type is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height.)

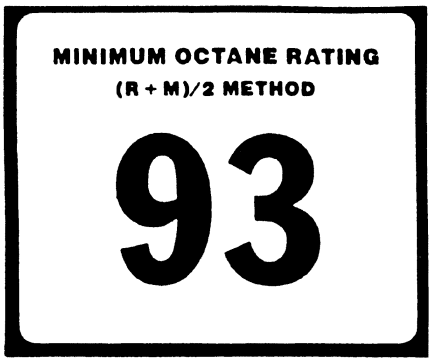
(c) *Colors*—(1) *For gasoline labels.* The basic color on all octane labels is process yellow. All type is process black. All borders are process black. All colors must be non-fade.

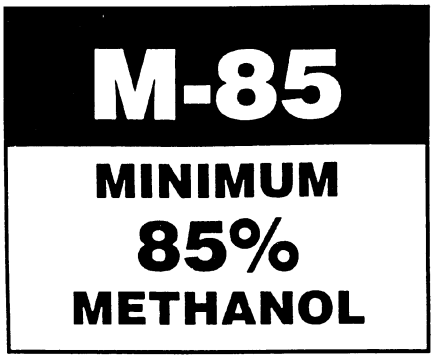
(2) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels.* The background color on all the labels is Orange: PMS 1495. The knock-out type within the black band is orange PMS 1495. All other type is process black. All borders are process black. All colors must be non-fade.

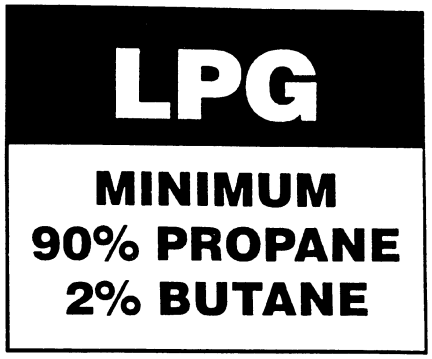
(d) *Contents.* Examples of the contents are shown in the sample labels. The proper octane rating for each gasoline must be shown. The proper automotive fuel rating for each alternative liquid automotive fuel must be shown. No marks or information other than that called for by this rule may appear on the labels.

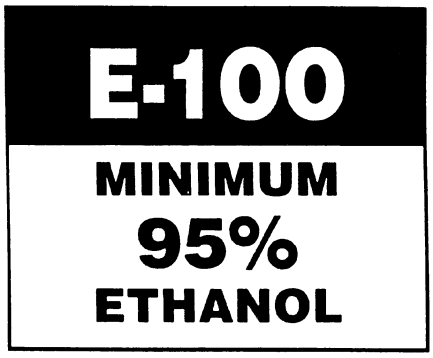
(e) *Special label protection.* All labels must be capable of withstanding extremes of weather conditions for a period of at least one year. They must be resistant to automotive fuel, oil, grease, solvents, detergents, and water.

(f) *Illustrations of labels.* Labels should meet the specifications in this section, and should look like these examples, except the black print should be on the appropriately colored background.









[58 FR 41375, Aug. 3, 1993]

PART 307—REGULATIONS UNDER THE COMPREHENSIVE SMOKELESS TOBACCO HEALTH EDUCATION ACT OF 1986

SCOPE

Sec.
307.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
307.2 Required warnings.

DEFINITIONS

307.3 Terms defined.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

307.4 Prohibited acts.
307.5 Language requirements.

LABEL DISCLOSURES

307.6 Requirements for disclosure on the label.

ADVERTISING DISCLOSURES

307.7 Requirements for disclosure in print advertising.
307.8 Requirements for disclosure in audio-visual and audio advertising.
307.9 Requirements for disclosure on utilitarian objects.
307.10 Cooperative advertising.

PLANS

307.11 Rotation, display, and distribution of warning statements on smokeless tobacco packages.
307.12 Rotation, display, and dissemination of warning statements in smokeless tobacco advertising.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 4401 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986, unless otherwise noted.

SCOPE

§ 307.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

These regulations implement the Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 *to be codified at* 15 U.S.C. 4401.

§ 307.2 Required warnings.

The Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 is the law that requires the enactment of these regulations. Section 7 of this law provides that no statement, other than the three warning statements required by the Act, shall be required by any Federal, State, or local statute or regulation to be included on the package or in the advertisement (unless the advertisement is an outdoor billboard) of a smokeless tobacco product. The warning statements required by the Act are as follows:

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE MOUTH CANCER

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE GUM DISEASE AND TOOTH LOSS

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT IS NOT A SAFE ALTERNATIVE TO CIGARETTES

DEFINITIONS

§ 307.3 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) *Act* means the Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 (Pub. L. 99–252) and any amendments thereto.

(b) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Regulation(s)* means regulations promulgated by the Commission pursuant to sections 3 and 5 of the Act.

(d) *Commerce* means (1) commerce between any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, or Johnston Island and any place outside thereof; (2) commerce between points in any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, or Johnston Island, but through any place outside thereof; or (3) commerce wholly within the District of Columbia, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, or Johnston Island.

(e) *United States*, when used in a geographical sense, means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, Johnston Island, and installations of the Armed Forces.

(f) *Smokeless tobacco product* means any finely cut, ground, powered, or leaf tobacco that is intended to be placed in the oral cavity, including snuff, chewing tobacco, and plug tobacco.

(g) *Brand* means smokeless tobacco products that bear a common identifying name or mark, regardless of whether the products are differentiated by type of product, size, shape, packaging, or other characteristic, and, in the case of generic or private label smokeless tobacco products, means all products produced by a single manufacturer or its affiliates or imported by a single importer or its affiliates.

(h) *Package* means any pack, can, box, jar, carton, pouch, container, or wrapping in which any smokeless tobacco product is offered for sale, sold, or otherwise distributed to consumers, but for purposes of these regulations *package* does not include (1) any shipping container or wrapping used solely for transporting smokeless tobacco products in bulk or quantity to manufacturers, packagers, processors, wholesalers, or retailers unless the container or wrapping is intended for use as a retail display or (2) any wrapping or container that bears no written, printed, or graphic matter.

(i) *Label* means any written, printed, or graphic matter affixed to or appearing on any smokeless tobacco product or any package containing a smokeless tobacco product with the exception of any revenue stamp affixed to a smokeless tobacco product.

(j) *Billboard* means any outdoor sign with an area of more than 150 square feet.

(k) *Manufacturer* means any person who manufacturers, produces, or processes any smokeless tobacco product.

(l) *Packager* means any person who puts any smokeless tobacco product into packages to be offered for sale, sold, or distributed to consumers.

(m) *Importer* means any person who puts any smokeless tobacco product that was not manufactured inside the United States into commerce to be offered for sale, sold, or distributed to consumers.

(n) *Utilitarian objects* means items, other than smokeless tobacco products, that are sold or given or caused to be sold or given by any manufacturer, packager or importer to consumers for their personal use and that display the brand name, logo, or selling message of any smokeless tobacco product. Such items include, but are not limited to, pens, pencils, clothing or sporting goods.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986, as amended at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

§ 307.4 Prohibited acts.

(a) No manufacturer, packager, or importer of any smokeless tobacco product shall distribute, or cause to be distributed, in commerce any smokeless tobacco product in a package that, in accordance with the labeling requirements of the Act and these regulations, does not bear one of the following warning statements.

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE MOUTH CANCER

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE GUM DISEASE AND TOOTH LOSS

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT IS NOT A SAFE ALTERNATIVE TO CIGARETTES

Each smokeless tobacco product shall upon being prepared for distribution in commerce for retail sale, but before it is distributed to be offered for retail sale, be labeled in accordance with the Act and regulations in this part. In the case of an importer, the label statements may be affixed in the country of origin or after importation into the United States, but shall be affixed before the smokeless tobacco product is removed from bond for sale or distribution. This section does not apply to any smokeless tobacco product that is manufactured, packaged, or imported in the United States for export from the United States, if the product is not in fact distributed in commerce for use in the United States.

(b) No manufacturer, packager, or importer of any smokeless tobacco product shall advertise or cause to be advertised (other than through the use of billboard advertising) within the United States any smokeless tobacco product unless the advertising bears one of the warning statements as required by the Act and the regulations and set forth in § 307.4(a). This requirement is not applicable to company and divisional names, when used as such, to signs on factories, plants, warehouses, and other facilities related to the manufacturer or factory storage of smokeless tobacco, to corporate or financial reports, to communications to security holders and others who customarily receive copies of these communications, to employment advertising, to advertising in tobacco trade publications, or to promotional materials that are distributed to smokeless tobacco wholesalers, dealers, or merchants, but not to consumers. In addition, this requirement does not apply to shelf-talkers and similar product locators with a display area of 12 square inches or less.

(c) No manufacturer, packager, or importer shall fail to submit a plan to the Commission which specifies the method that will be used to rotate, display, and distribute the statements required by the Act and regulations in this part. The Commission shall approve a plan if the plan provides for the rotation, display, and distribution of the statements in a manner that complies with the Act and these regulations. Authority to approve plans submitted by smokeless tobacco manufacturers, packagers, and importers has been delegated by the Commission to the Associate Director for Advertising Practices. Where significant issues not previously considered by the Commission are present, however, those plans will be referred by the Associate Director for Advertising Practices to the Commission in the first instance. This delegation is authorized by section 1(a) of the Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1961 in order to enhance the efficiency and

result in expedited treatment of these plans. Pursuant to section 1(b) of the Reorganization Plan, the Commission will retain the discretionary right to review the actions of the delegate. Any smokeless tobacco manufacturer, packager, or importer may within 30 days of the delegate's action file with the Secretary of the Commission a request for full Commission review of the action. If no review is sought by petition of the submitter of a plan or any intervenor or upon the Commission's own initiative within 30 days of the action, or if a review is sought and denied in this 30 day period, the delegate's action shall be deemed to be the action of the Commission.

(d) A manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products shall be deemed to be in compliance with the Act and these regulations if it has taken reasonable steps to:

(1) Provide, by written contract or other clear instructions, for the rotation of the label statements required by the Act;

(2) Give clear instructions and, if possible, furnish materials (such as film negatives, acetates, or other facsimiles) for the production of smokeless tobacco packages and advertising that contain the required warning statements; and

(3) Prevent and correct mistakes, errors, or omissions that have come to its attention.

In the event of the distribution of labels or the publication of advertisements that do not conform with the Act and these regulations, the burden of establishing that reasonable steps have been taken (including fulfilling the conditions described in paragraphs (d)(1) through (3) of this section) to comply shall rest with the manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986, as amended at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

§ 307.5 Language requirements.

The warning statement on the label of a smokeless tobacco product required by the Act and these regulations shall be set out in the English language. If the label of a smokeless tobacco product contains a required warning in a language other than English, the required warning must also appear in English. In the case of an advertisement for a smokeless tobacco product in a newspaper, magazine, periodical, or other publication that is not in English, the warning statement shall appear in the predominant language of the publication in which the advertisement appears. In the case of any other advertisement, the warning statement shall appear in the same language as that principally used in the advertisement.

LABEL DISCLOSURES

§ 307.6 Requirements for disclosure on the label.

(a) In the case of the label of a smokeless tobacco package, the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and prominent place on the package. A conspicuous and prominent place is a part of a label that is likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined. For example, in the case of the following types of packages, the following places shall be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent.

Cylindrical can—Side of the package

Pouch—Front of the package, provided that, in the case of a pouch with two identical face panels, the front of the pouch is the face panel upon which the warning is printed

Rectangular box of snuff, plug of chewing tobacco, or dispenser of individual packages of smokeless tobacco that may be purchased in its entirety—Any side of the package, provided that the side panel used does not bear any written or graphic matter other than the background color of the side panel and reasonable extensions of graphic matter from other panels

However, in the case of any package of smokeless tobacco, absent special circumstances, the required warning statement shall not be deemed to be in a conspicuous and prominent place if it appears on the bottom (that is, the underside) of the package or is printed on the tear line or on any other surface where it will be obliterated when the package is opened. However, in the case of a rectangular package that is wrapped in a continuous sheet of foil or plastic with randomly appearing label information, the required warning shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous

and prominent place if it appears at least once in its entirety on any part of the package that is not crimped or seamed.

(b) The label statement required by the Act and these regulations must also be in a conspicuous format and in a conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material on the package. The required warning statement shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous format if it appears in two to four lines that are parallel to each other as well as to the base of the package. However, in the case of a cylindrical package with a diameter of 1 and ¾ inches or less the required warning statement need not be parallel with the base of the package to be deemed to be in a conspicuous format. In the case of all packages the required warning statement shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous format if it is separated in every direction from other written or graphic matter on the label by the equivalent of at least twice the point size of the type in which the warning is printed or if it is the only written matter on the surface of the package. The required warning statement shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous and legible type if it appears in all capitals in Univers 57 normal or an equivalent type style. For example, in the case of the following types of packages with the specified capacity, the following type sizes shall be deemed to be conspicuous and legible.

1 and ½ ounce snuff can—Seven point type

2 to 4 ounce pouch or plug of chewing tobacco—Eight point type, provided that if the warning statement is printed in one line, it will be deemed to be conspicuous and legible in eleven point type

Can roll consisting of cans wrapped for sale as a single unit—Twelve point type, provided that, if the warning statements on the individual cans are completely visible no warning statement is required on the outer wrapping

Dispenser of individual packages of smokeless tobacco that may be purchased in its entirety—Twelve point type

The required warning statement shall be deemed to be in contrast with all other printed material on the package if it is printed in a color (including black and white) that is clearly visible against the background on which the warning appears.

ADVERTISING DISCLOSURES

§ 307.7 Requirements for disclosure in print advertising.

(a) In the case of print advertisements for smokeless tobacco, including but not limited to, advertisements in newspapers, magazines, or other periodicals; point-of-sale promotional materials; non-point of sale promotional materials such as leaflets, pamphlets, coupons, direct mail circulars, or paperback book inserts; and posters and placards (other than outdoor billboard advertising), the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and prominent location, in conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material in the advertisement and must appear in capital letters in a circle and arrow format. A conspicuous and prominent location is anywhere within the trim area other than the margin in the case of an advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical, and in all cases is not immediately next to other written matter or to any circular designs, elements, or similar geometric forms (other than a picture of a smokeless tobacco package such as a cylindrical snuff can). A circle and arrow will not be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is included as an integral part of a specific design or illustration, such as a picture of the package, in the advertisement, unless at least 80 percent of the area of the advertisement is taken up by a picture of the package.

(b) The advertising warning statements required by the Act and these regulations must be in conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material in the advertisement and must appear in all capital letters in a circle and arrow format. The proportions of the circle and arrow shall be deemed to be conspicuous if they are such that the base of the arrow is equal to ¾ of the diameter of the circle; the neck of the arrow is equal to ⅛ of the diameter of the circle; the widest part of the head of the arrow is equal to the diameter of the circle; the tip of the arrow is centered at a point equal to ¾ of the diameter from the lowest point of the circle; and the distance between the tip of the arrow and the base of the

arrow is equal to ⅜ of the diameter of the circle. The statements shall be deemed to be conspicous if they are parallel to the foot of the advertisement and centered in the circle, and the word ''WARNING'' followed by a colon appears in the neck of the arrow.

(c) The required warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous if it is printed in all capitals in Univers 57 normal or an equivalent type style and:

(1) The rule and the statement are printed in a color (including black and white) that is clearly visible against the background upon which they appear; and

(2) The background field within the circle and arrow is clearly visible against the background of the advertisement; and

(3) The warning has the following minimum outside dimensions in relation to the size of the advertisement.

1
Display Area: ***Up to 15 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1/2"***
Rule Width: ***1 point***
Type Size: ***4 1/2 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

2
Display Area: ***15 to 65 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1"***
Rule Width: ***1 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***8 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

3
Display Area: ***65 to 110 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1 1/4"***
Rule Width: ***2 point***
Type Size: ***10 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

4
Display Area: ***110 to 180 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1 1/2"***
Rule Width: ***2 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***12 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

5
Display Area: ***180 to 360 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***2 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***14 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

6
Display Area: ***360 to 470 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***2"***
Rule Width: ***2 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***16 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

7
Display Area: ***470 to 720 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***3 1/4"***
Rule Width: ***3 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***27 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

8
Display Area: ***5 to 10 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***3 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***3 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***30 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

9
Display Area: ***10 to 20 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***6"***
Rule Width: ***3 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***48 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

10
Display Area: ***20 to 30 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***7"***
Rule Width: ***7 point***
Type Size: ***58 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

11
Display Area: ***30 to 40 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***8 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***9 point***
Type Size: ***72 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

12
Display Area: ***40 to 80 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***11 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***12 point***
Type Size: ***96 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

13
Display Area: ***Over 80 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***1' 4 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***14 point***
Type Size: ***1 7/16" cap height, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 57***

A warning printed in black in a circle with a black rule and a white interior background shall be deemed a clearly visible color against a clearly visible background, except that any such black on white warning that appears against a uniform white background in an advertisement shall be deemed to be conspicuous only if it meets the size requirements of § 307.7(d) of this section.

(d) As an alternative to the format specified in § 307.7(c), the required

warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous if it is printed in all capitals in Univers 67 normal or an equivalent type style and

(1) The rule that forms the circle and arrow and the required statement are printed in a color (including black and white) that is clearly visible against the background upon which they appear,

(2) The background of the circle and arrow is a uniform color, and

(3) The warning has the following minimum outside dimensions in relation to the size of the advertisement.

1
Display Area: ***Up to 15 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***5/8"***
Rule Width: ***1 point***
Type Size: ***5 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

2
Display Area: ***15 to 65 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1 1/4"***
Rule Width: ***2 point***
Type Size: ***10 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

3
Display Area: ***65 to 110 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***1 5/8"***
Rule Width: ***2 1/2 point***
Type Size: ***12 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

4
Display Area: ***110 to 180 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***2"***
Rule Width: ***3 point***
Type Size: ***15 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

5
Display Area: ***180 to 360 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***2 1/4"***
Rule Width: ***3 point***
Type Size: ***17 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

6
Display Area: ***360 to 470 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***2 5/8"***
Rule Width: ***3 point***
Type Size: ***20 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

7
Display Area: ***470 to 720 square inches***
Circle Diameter: ***4 1/4"***
Rule Width: ***4 point***
Type Size: ***34 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

8
Display Area: ***5 to 10 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***4 7/8"***
Rule Width: ***4 point***
Type Size: ***36 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

9
Display Area: ***10 to 20 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***7 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***6 point***
Type Size: ***57 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

10
Display Area: ***20 to 30 square feet***
Circle diameter: ***9 1/8"***
Rule Width: ***9 point***
Type Size: ***76 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

11
Display Area: ***30 to 40 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***11 3/8"***
Rule Width: ***11 point***
Type Size: ***94 point, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

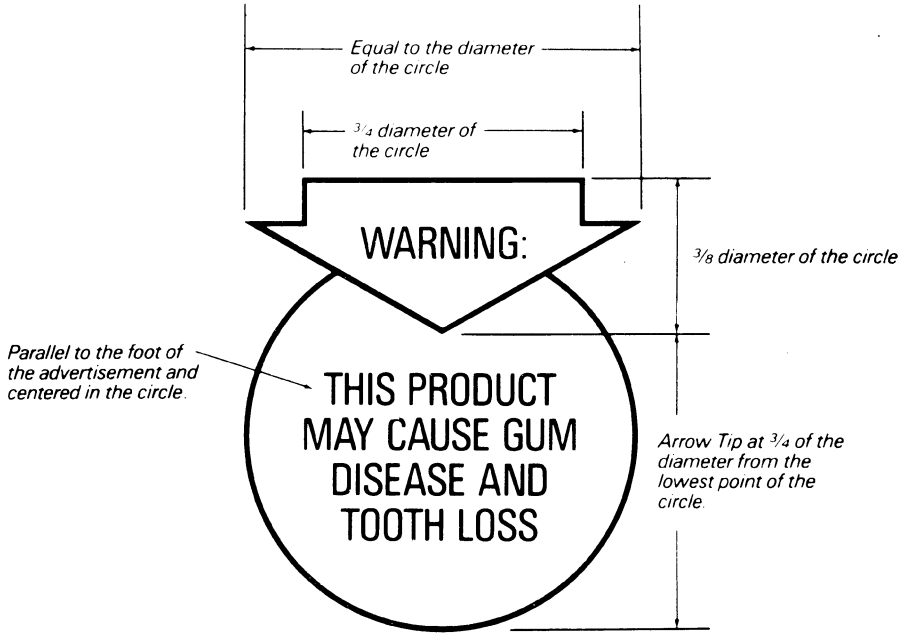
12
Display Area: ***40 to 80 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***15 1/4"***
Rule Width: ***15 point***
Type Size: ***1 5/16" cap height, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

13
Display Area: ***Over 80 square feet***
Circle Diameter: ***1' 9 3/4"***
Rule Width: ***17 point***
Type Size: ***1 13/16" cap height, set solid***
Type Style: ***Univers 67***

(e) An advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical that occupies more than one page shall not be required to have more than one warning statement, but the dimensions of the circle and arrow shall be determined by the aggregate area of the entire advertisement, and the warning

statement shall appear on the page that contains most of the advertisement. Point-of-sale and non-point of sale promotional materials of more than one page in length shall not be required to have more than one warning statement, and the dimensions of the circle and arrow shall be determined by the size of the advertisement on the page on which most of the advertisement appears. Warning statements in circles and arrows that meet the specifications of this section and conform to the following diagram shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous format.

How to Conform to the Rule



§307.8 Requirements for disclosure in audiovisual and audio advertising.

In the case of advertisements for smokeless tobacco on videotapes, casettes, or discs; promotional films or filmstrips; and promotional audiotapes or other types of sound recordings, the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be conspicuous and prominent. If the advertisement has a visual component, the warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is superimposed on the screen in a circle and arrow format at the end of the advertisement for a length of time and in graphics so that it is easily legible. If the advertisement has an audio component, the warning statement shall be

deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is announced at the end of the advertisement in a manner that is clearly audible. If an advertisement has both a visual and an audio component, the warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is superimposed on the screen in a circle and arrow format and announced simultaneously at the end of the advertisement in a manner that is easily legible and clearly audible. Provided, however, in the case of an audio advertisement in a retail store or other place where smokeless tobacco products are offered for sale, no warning shall be required, even if a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products provides an incentive for disseminating the ad, so long as the announcement includes only the brand name or product identifier, the price, and the product's location in the store.

§ 307.9 Requirements for disclosure on utilitarian objects.

(a) In the case of advertisements for smokeless tobacco products on utilitarian objects, the warning statements required by the Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material on the object and must appear within the circle and arrow format. The proportions of the circle and arrow shall be deemed to be conspicuous if in accordance with with those set forth in § 307.7(b). The required warning statement shall be deemed conspicuous if it conforms to the requirements and proportions as set forth in §§ 307.7(c) and 307.7(d). For purposes of determining the size of the warning statement, the display area for an advertisement on a utilitarian object shall be the visible area on which the brand name, logo or selling message appears. For example, the display area for a t-shirt with a brand name, logo or selling message on the front or back is the entire front or back of the shirt, excluding any sleeves. For a t-shirt with a brand name, logo or selling message on the sleeve, the display area is the sleeve. However, in no case must the diameter of the circle exceed the longest line displayed in the brand name, logo or selling message. The Commission considers a logo to include any brand specific characteristics of a smokeless tobacco product, including but not limited to any recognizable pattern of colors or symbols associated with a particular brand.

(b) The warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be printed, embossed, embroidered or otherwise affixed to the utilitarian object with a permanence and durability that is comparable to the permanence and durability of the brand name, logo, or selling message. For example, if a product brand name or logo is embroidered on a hat, and a legible warning cannot be embroidered in the proper size due to technological limitations, the warning may be affixed to the hat by another method, so long as its permanence and durability is comparable to that of the brand name, logo or selling message.

(c) The warning statement required by this Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and prominent location on the object. A conspicuous and prominent location on the object is one that is proximate to and on the same surface as the smokeless tobacco brand name, logo, or selling message, and is visible when the brand name, logo or selling message is visible. If the brand name, logo or selling message is displayed in more than one location on the utilitarian object, the warning must appear proximate to each brand name, logo or selling message. In the alternative, the warning may appear only once on the object; in that case, however, the advertising display area consists of the aggregate of all the surface areas on which any brand names, logos or selling messages appear.

(d) *Small Items*. For those utilitarian objects under 8 square inches which are viewed predominantly by the user, the warning statement required by this Act and by these regulations shall be deemed conspicuous and prominent when:

(1) Printed on the package of an item, if the item is disseminated in a package to the consumer. The entire surface area of the package would comprise the display area for purposes of determining warning size in accordance

with §§ 307.7 (c) and (d) of the current regulations; or

(2) Placed in the form of a sticker or decal directly onto the item in the Number 1 warning size as set forth in §§ 307.7 (c) and (d) of the current regulations. The item should be packaged in such a way to ensure that the sticker cannot be removed before placement in the hands of the consumer.

(e) *Hats.* For fabric baseball style hats, the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations shall be deemed conspicuous and prominent in the Number 3 size as set forth in §§ 307.7 (c) and (d).

(f) Any manufacturer, packager or importer may apply to the Commission for an exemption from the warning requirements of the Act and these regulations for items such as food products to which the health warnings could logically apply. Authority to grant such exemptions has been delegated by the Commission to the Associate Director for Advertising Practices. Where significant issues not previously considered by the Commission are present, however, those plans will be referred by the Associate Director for Advertising Practices to the Commission in the first instance. This delegation is authorized by section 1(a) of the Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1961 in order to enhance the efficiency and result in expedited treatment of any request for an exemption. The Commission's discretionary right to review actions of the delegate, and the procedure by which a smokeless tobacco manufacturer, packager, or importer may request full Commission review of the delegate's action are as set forth in § 307.4(c) of these regulations.

[56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

§ 307.10 Cooperative advertising.

The Act prohibits any manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products from advertising or causing to advertise any smokeless tobacco product within the United States without the required warning. Accordingly, all advertisements for smokeless tobacco products (including cooperative advertisement) paid for, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products must bear the required warning. Provided, however, in the case of a print advertisement for a smokeless tobacco product disseminated by a retailer of smokeless tobacco products, other than a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products, with a display area of 4 square inches or less, no warning is required so long as the advertisement contains only the brand name or other product identifier and a price. In addition, no warning is required in the case of certain in-store audio announcements as described in § 307.8. Any advertisement of a smokeless tobacco product paid for entirely by a retailer or any person other than a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products need not carry a warning statement.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986. Redesignated at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

PLANS

§ 307.11 Rotation, display, and distribution of warning statements on smokeless tobacco packages.

(a) In the case of the package of a smokeless tobacco product, each of the three warning statements required by the Act must (1) be displayed randomly by each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product in each 12-month period in as equal a number of times as possible on each brand of the product and (2) be randomly distributed in all parts of the United States in which the product is marketed. The Commission will interpret the statutory language ''equal number of times as possible'' as permitting deviations of 4 percent or less in a 12-month period. Random distribution means that there is nothing in the production or distribution process of a smokeless tobacco product that would prevent the three warning statements on the package from being distributed evenly in all parts of the United States where the product is marketed.

(b) Each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product shall submit to the Commission or its designated representative a plan that provides for the display of the three warning statements on the package of a smokeless tobacco product as

required by the Act and these regulations. This plan shall be sufficiently detailed to enable the Commission to determine whether the warning statements appear on the package in a manner consistent with the Act and these regulations. These requirements may be satisfied in a number of ways. For example, a plan may satisfy the equal display requirement by providing for the engraving or preparation of cylinders, plates, or equivalent production materials in a manner that results in the simultaneous printing of the three required warnings in as near an equal number of times as possible under the circumstances. Alternatively, a plan may satisfy the equal display requirement by providing that stickers bearing the three required warnings be printed in equal numbers and affixed randomly to packages of the product. Alternatively, a plan may satisfy the equal display requirement by providing for the preparation of separate cylinders, plates, and equivalent production materials and requiring that they be changed at fixed intervals in a manner that results in the display of the three required warnings in as near an equal number of times as possible under the circumstances during a 1-year period. In any event, nothing in these regulations requires the use of more than one warning statement on the label of any brand during a given 4-month period.

(c) A plan for the rotation, display, and distribution of warning statements on smokeless tobacco packages shall include representative samples of labels with each of the three warning statements required by the Act and these regulations. This provision does not require submission of a label with each of the required warning statements for every brand marketed by a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products and shall be deemed to be satisfied by submission of labels for different types of smokeless tobacco products, such as moist snuff, scotch snuff, and loose-leaf and plug chewing tobacco, and a range of package sizes for each type of product.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986. Redesignated at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

§ 307.12 Rotation, display, and dissemination of warning statements in smokeless tobacco advertising.

(a) In the case of advertising for a smokeless tobacco product, each of the three warning statements required by the Act must be rotated every 4 months by each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product in an alternating sequence in the advertisement for each brand of the product. Any rotational system, however, may take into account practical constraints on the production and distribution of advertising.

(b) Each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product must submit a plan to the Commission or its designated representative that ensures that the three warning statements are rotated every four (4) months in alternating sequence. There may be more than one system, however, that complies with the Act and these regulations. For example, a plan may require all brands to display the same warning during each four-month period or require each brand to display a different warning during a given four-month period. A plan shall describe the method of rotation and shall include a list of the designated warnings for each four-month period during the first year for each brand. A plan shall describe the method that will be used to ensure the proper rotation in different advertising media in sufficient detail to ensure compliance with the Act and these regulations, although a number of different methods may satisfy these requirements. For example, a satisfactory plan for advertising in newspapers, magazines, or other periodicals could provide for rotation according to either the cover or closing date of the publication. A satisfactory plan for posters and placards, other than billboard advertising, could provide for rotation according to either the scheduled or the actual appearance of the advertising. A satisfactory plan for point-of-sale and non-point-of-sale promotional materials such as leaflets, pamphlets, coupons, direct mail circulars, paperback book inserts, or non-print items, or for utilitarian objects, could provide for rotation according to the date the materials or objects are

ordered by the smokeless tobacco manufacturer, or the date the objects or materials are scheduled to be disseminated, provided that the production of such materials or objects is carried out in a manner consistent with customary business practices.

(c) A plan for the rotation, display, and dissemination of warning statements in smokeless tobacco advertising shall include a representative sample of each of the three warning statements required by the Act and these regulations. This provision does not require the submission of all advertising for each brand marketed by a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products and shall be deemed to be satisfied by submission of actual examples of different types of advertising materials for various brands, prototypes of actual advertising materials, the warning statement as it would appear in different sizes of advertisements, or acetates or other facsimiles for the warning statement as it would appear in different sizes of advertisements.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986. Redesignated and amended at 56 FR 11662, 11663, Mar. 20, 1991; 58 FR 4874, Jan. 15, 1993; 61 FR 45886, Aug. 30, 1996]

PART 308—TRADE REGULATION RULE PURSUANT TO THE TELEPHONE DISCLOSURE AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION ACT OF 1992

Sec.
308.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
308.2 Definitions.
308.3 Advertising of pay-per-call services.
308.4 Special rule for infrequent publications.
308.5 Pay-per-call service standards.
308.6 Access to information.
308.7 Billing and collection for pay-per-call services.
308.8 Severability.
308.9 Rulemaking review.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 102–556, 106 Stat. 4181 (15 U.S.C. 5701, et seq.)

SOURCE: 58 FR 42400, Aug. 9, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

§ 308.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

This rule implements titles II and III of the Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act of 1992, to be codified in relevant part at 15 U.S.C. 5711–14, 5721–24.

§ 308.2 Definitions.

(a) *Bona fide educational service* means any pay-per-call service dedicated to providing information or instruction relating to education, subjects of academic study, or other related areas of school study.

(b) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Pay-per-call service* has the meaning provided in section 228 of the Communications Act of 1934, 47 U.S.C. 228.[1]

(d) *Person* means any individual, partnership, corporation, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency, or other entity.

(e)(1) *Presubscription or comparable arrangement* means a contractual agreement in which

(i) The service provider clearly and conspicuously discloses to the consumer all material terms and conditions associated with the use of the service, including the service provider's name and address, a business telephone number which the consumer

[1] Section 228 of the Communications Act of 1934 states:

(1) The term *pay-per-call services* means any service—

(A) In which any person provides or purports to provide—

(i) Audio information or audio entertainment produced or packaged by such person;

(ii) Access to simultaneous voice conversation services; or

(iii) Any service, including the provision of a product, the charges for which are assessed on the basis of the completion of the call;

(B) For which the caller pays a per-call or per-time-interval charge that is greater than, or in addition to, the charge for transmission of the call; and

(C) Which is accessed through use of a 900 telephone number or other prefix or area code designated by the (Federal Communications) Commission in accordance with subsection (b)(5) (47 U.S.C. 228(b)(5)).

(2) Such term does not include directory services provided by a common carrier or its affiliate or by a local exchange carrier or its affiliate, or any service the charge for which is tariffed, or any service for which users are assessed charges only after entering into a presubcription or comparable arrangement with the provider of such service.

may use to obtain additional information or to register a complaint, and the rates for the service;

(ii) The service provider agrees to notify the consumer of any future rate changes;

(iii) The consumer agrees to utilize the service on the terms and conditions disclosed by the service provider; and

(iv) The service provider requires the use of an identification number or other means to prevent unauthorized access to the service by nonsubscribers.

(2) Disclosure of a credit card or charge card number, along with authorization to bill that number, made during the course of a call to a pay-per-call service shall constitute a presubscription or comparable arrangement if the credit or charge card is subject to the dispute resolution requirements of the Fair Credit Billing Act and the Truth in Lending Act, as amended. No other action taken by the consumer during the course of a call to a pay-per-call service can be construed as creating a presubscription or comparable arrangement.

(f) *Program-length commercial* means any commercial or other advertisement fifteen (15) minutes in length or longer or intended to fill a television or radio broadcasting or cablecasting time slot of fifteen (15) minutes in length or longer.

(g) *Provider of pay-per-call services* means any person who sells or offers to sell a pay-per-call service. A person who provides only transmission services or billing and collection services shall not be considered a provider of pay-per-call services.

(h) *Reasonably understandable volume* means at an audible level that renders the message intelligible to the receiving audience, and, in any event, at least the same audible level as that principally used in the advertisement or the pay-per-call service.

(i) *Service bureau* means any person, other than a common carrier, who provides, among other things, access to telephone service and voice storage to pay-per-call service providers.

(j) *Slow and deliberate manner* means at a rate that renders the message intelligible to the receiving audience, and, in any event, at a cadence or rate no faster than that principally used in the advertisement or the pay-per-call service.

(k) *Sweepstakes*, including games of chance, means a game or promotional mechanism that involves the elements of a prize and chance and does not require consideration.

§ 308.3 Advertising of pay-per-call services.

(a) *General requirements*. The following requirements apply to disclosures required in advertisements under §§ 308.3 (b)–(d), and (f):

(1) The disclosures shall be made in the same language as that principally used in the advertisement.

(2) Television video and print disclosures shall be of a color or shade that readily contrasts with the background of the advertisement.

(3) In print advertisements, disclosures shall be parallel with the base of the advertisement.

(4) Audio disclosures, whether in television or radio, shall be delivered in a slow and deliberate manner and in a reasonably understandable volume.

(5) Nothing contrary to, inconsistent with, or in mitigation of, the required disclosures shall be used in any advertisement in any medium; nor shall any audio, video or print technique be used that is likely to detract significantly from the communication of the disclosures.

(6) In any program-length commercial, required disclosures shall be made at least three times (unless more frequent disclosure is otherwise required) near the beginning, middle and end of the commercial.

(b) *Cost of the call*. (1) The provider of pay-per-call services shall clearly and conspicuously disclose the cost of the call, in Arabic numerals, in any advertisement for the pay-per-call service, as follows:

(i) If there is a flat fee for the call, the advertisement shall state the total cost of the call.

(ii) If the call is billed on a time-sensitive basis, the advertisement shall state the cost per minute and any minimum charges. If the length of the program can be determined in advance, the advertisement shall also state the

maximum charge that could be incurred if the caller listens to the complete program.

(iii) If the call is billed on a variable rate basis, the advertisement shall state, in accordance with §§ 308.3(b)(1) (i) and (ii), the cost of the initial portion of the call, any minimum charges, and the range of rates that may be charged depending on the options chosen by the caller.

(iv) The advertisement shall disclose any other fees that will be charged for the service.

(v) if the caller may be transferred to another pay-per-call service, the advertisement shall disclose the cost of the other call, in accordance with §§ 308.3(b)(1) (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv).

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(b), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, the video disclosure shall appear adjacent to each video presentation of the pay-per-call number. However, in an advertisement displaying more than one pay-per-call number with the same cost, the video disclosure need only appear adjacent to the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number. Each letter or numeral of the video disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the pay-per-call number to which the disclosure is adjacent. In addition, the video disclosure shall appear on the screen for the duration of the presentation of the pay-per-call number. An audio disclosure shall be made at least once, simultaneously with a video presentation of the disclosure. However, no audio presentation of the disclosure is required in: (A) An advertisement fifteen (15) seconds or less in length in which the pay-per-call number is not presented in the audio portion, or (B) an advertisement in which there is no audio presentation of information regarding the pay-per-call service, including the pay-per-call number. In an advertisement in which the pay-per-call number is presented *only* in the audio portion, the cost of the call shall be delivered immediately following the first and last delivery of the pay-per-call number, except that in a program-length commercial, the disclosure shall be delivered immediately following each delivery of the pay-per-call number.

(ii) In a print advertisement, the disclosure shall be placed adjacent to each presentation of the pay-per-call number. However, in an advertisement displaying more than one pay-per-call number with the same cost, the disclosure need only appear adjacent to the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number. Each letter or numeral of the disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the pay-per-call number to which the disclosure is adjacent.

(iii) In a radio advertisement, the disclosure shall be made at least once, and shall be delivered immediately following the first delivery of the pay-per-call number. In a program-length commercial, the disclosure shall be delivered immediately following each delivery of the pay-per-call number.

(c) *Sweepstakes; games of chance.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services that advertises a prize or award or a service or product at no cost or for a reduced cost, to be awarded to the winner of any sweepstakes, including games of chance, shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in the advertisement the odds of being able to receive the prize, award, service, or product at no cost or reduced cost. If the odds are not calculable in advance, the advertisement shall disclose the factors used in calculating the odds. Either the advertisement or the preamble required by § 308.5(a) for such service shall clearly and conspicuously disclose that no call to the pay-per-call service is required to participate, and shall also disclose the existence of a free alternative method of entry, and either instructions on how to enter, or a local or toll-free telephone number or address to which consumers may call or write for information on how to enter the sweepstakes. Any description or characterization of the prize, award, service, or product that is being offered at no cost or reduced cost shall be truthful and accurate.

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(c), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, the disclosures may be made in either the audio or video portion of the advertisement. If the disclosures are made in the video portion, they shall appear on the screen in sufficient size and for sufficient time to allow consumers to read and comprehend the disclosures.

(ii) In a print advertisement, the disclosures shall appear in a sufficient size and prominence and such location to be readily noticeable, readable and comprehensible.

(d) *Federal programs.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services that advertises a pay-per-call service that is not operated or expressly authorized by a Federal agency, but that provides information on a Federal program, shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in the advertisement that the pay-per-call service is not authorized, endorsed, or approved by any Federal agency. Advertisements providing information on a Federal program shall include, but not be limited to, advertisements that contain a seal, insignia, trade or brand name, or any other term or symbol that reasonably could be interpreted or construed as implying any Federal government connection, approval, or endorsement.

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(d), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, the disclosure may be made in either the audio or video portion of the advertisement. If the disclosure is made in the video portion, it shall appear on the screen in sufficient size and for sufficient time to allow consumers to read and comprehend the disclosure. The disclosure shall begin within the first fifteen (15) seconds of the advertisement.

(ii) In a print advertisement, the disclosure shall appear in a sufficient size and prominence and such location to be readily noticeable, readable and comprehensible. The disclosure shall appear in the top one-third of the advertisement.

(iii) In a radio advertisement, the disclosure shall begin within the first fifteen (15) seconds of the advertisement.

(e) *Prohibition on advertising to children.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services shall not direct advertisements for such pay-per-call services to children under the age of 12, unless the service is a bona fide educational service.

(2) For the purposes of this regulation, advertisements directed to children under 12 shall include: any pay-per-call advertisement appearing during or immediately adjacent to programming for which competent and reliable audience composition data demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience is composed of children under 12, and any pay-per-call advertisement appearing in a periodical for which competent and reliable readership data demonstrate that more than 50% of the readership is composed of children under 12.

(3) For the purposes of this regulation, if competent and reliable audience composition or readership data does not demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience or readership is composed of children under 12, then the Commission shall consider the following criteria in determining whether an advertisement is directed to children under 12:

(i) Whether the advertisement appears in a publication directed to children under 12, including, but not limited to, books, magazines and comic books;

(ii) Whether the advertisement appears during or immediately adjacent to television programs directed to children under 12, including, but not limited to, children's programming as defined by the Federal Communications Commission, animated programs, and after-school programs;

(iii) Whether the advertisement appears on a television station or channel directed to children under 12;

(iv) Whether the advertisement is broadcast during or immediately adjacent to radio programs directed to children under 12, or broadcast on a radio station directed to children under 12;

(v) Whether the advertisement appears on the same video as a commercially-prepared video directed to children under 12, or preceding a movie directed to children under 12 shown in a movie theater;

(vi) Whether the advertisement or promotion appears on product packaging directed to children under 12; and

(vii) Whether the advertisement, regardless of when or where it appears, is directed to children under 12 in light of its subject matter, visual content, age of models, language, characters, tone, message, or the like.

(f) *Advertising to individuals under the age of 18.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services shall ensure that any pay-per-call advertisement directed primarily to individuals under the age of 18 shall contain a clear and conspicuous disclosure that all individuals under the age of 18 must have the permission of such individual's parent or legal guardian prior to calling such pay-per-call service.

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(f), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, each letter or numeral of the video disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number. The video disclosure shall appear on the screen for sufficient time to allow consumers to read and comprehend the disclosure. An audio disclosure shall be made at least once, simultaneously with a video presentation of the disclosure. However, no audio presentation of the disclosure is required in: (A) An advertisement fifteen (15) seconds or less in length in which the pay-per-call number is not presented in the audio portion, or (B) an advertisement in which there is no audio presentation of information regarding the pay-per-call service, including the pay-per-call number.

(ii) In a print advertisement, each letter or numeral of the disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number.

(3) For the purposes of this regulation, advertisements directed primarily to individuals under 18 shall include: Any pay-per-call advertisement appearing during or immediately adjacent to programming for which competent and reliable audience composition data demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience is composed of individuals under 18, and any pay-per-call advertisement appearing in a periodical for which competent and reliable readership data demonstrate that more than 50% of the readership is composed of individuals under 18.

(4) For the purposes of this regulation, if competent and reliable audience composition or readership data does not demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience or readership is composed of individuals under 18, then the Commission shall consider the following criteria in determining whether an advertisement is directed primarily to individuals under 18:

(i) Whether the advertisement appears in publications directed primarily to individuals under 18, including, but not limited to, books, magazines and comic books;

(ii) Whether the advertisement appears during or immediately adjacent to television programs directed primarily to individuals under 18, including, but not limited to, mid-afternoon weekday television shows;

(iii) Whether the advertisement is broadcast on radio stations that are directed primarily to individuals under 18;

(iv) Whether the advertisement appears on a cable or broadcast television station directed primarily to individuals under 18;

(v) Whether the advertisement appears on the same video as a commercially-prepared video directed primarily to individuals under 18, or preceding a movie directed primarily to individuals under 18 shown in a movie theater; and

(vi) Whether the advertisement, regardless of when or where it appears, is directed primarily to individuals under 18 in light of its subject matter, visual content, age of models, language, characters, tone, massage, or the like.

(g) *Electronic tones in advertisements.* The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from using advertisements that emit electronic tones that can automatically dial a pay-per-call service.

(h) *Telephone solicitations.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall ensure that any telephone message that solicits calls to the pay-per-call service

discloses the cost of the call in a slow and deliberate manner and in a reasonably understandable volume, in accordance with §§ 308.3(b)(1)(i)-(v).

(i) *Referral to toll-free telephone numbers*. The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from referring in advertisements to an 800 telephone number, or any other telephone number advertised as or widely understood to be toll-free, if that number violates the prohibition concerning toll-free numbers set forth in § 308.5(i).

§ 308.4 Special rule for infrequent publications.

(a) The provider of any pay-per-call service that advertises a pay-per-call service in a publication that meets the requirements set forth in § 308.4(c) may include in such advertisement, in lieu of the cost disclosures required by § 308.3(b), a clear and conspicuous disclosure that a call to the advertised pay-per-call service may result in a substantial charge.

(b) The provider of any pay-per-call service that places an alphabetical listing in a publication that meets the requirements set forth in § 308.4(c) is not required to make any of the disclosures required by §§ 308.3 (b), (c), (d) and (f) in the alphabetical listing, provided that such listing does not contain any information except the name, address and telephone number of the pay-per-call provider.

(c) The publication referred to in § 308.4 (a) and (b) must be:

(1) Widely distributed;

(2) Printed annually or less frequently; and

(3) One that has an established policy of not publishing specific prices in advertisements.

§ 308.5 Pay-per-call service standards.

(a) *Preamble message*. The provider of pay-per-call services shall include, in each pay-per-call message, an introductory disclosure message (''preamble'') in the same language as that principally used in the pay-per-call message, that clearly, in a slow and deliberate manner and in a reasonably understandable volume:

(1) Identifies the name of the provider of the pay-per-call service and describes the service being provided;

(2) Specifies the cost of the service as follows:

(i) If there is a flat fee for the call, the preamble shall state the total cost of the call;

(ii) If the call is billed on a time-sensitive basis, the preamble shall state the cost per minute and any minimum charges; if the length of the program can be determined in advance, the preamble shall also state the maximum charge that could be incurred if the caller listens to the complete program;

(iii) If the call is billed on a variable rate basis, the preamble shall state, in accordance with §§ 308.5(a)(2) (i) and (ii), the cost of the initial portion of the call, any minimum charges, and the range of rates that may be charged depending on the options chosen by the caller;

(iv) Any other fees that will be charged for the service shall be disclosed, as well as fees for any other pay-per-call service to which the caller may be transferred;

(3) Informs the caller that charges for the call begin, and that to avoid charges the call must be terminated, three seconds after a clearly discernible signal or tone indicating the end of the preamble;

(4) Informs the caller that anyone under the age of 18 must have the permission of parent or legal guardian in order to complete the call; and

(5) Informs the caller, in the case of a pay-per-call service that is not operated or expressly authorized by a Federal agency but that provides information on a Federal program, or that uses a trade or brand name or any other term that reasonably could be interpreted or construed as implying any Federal government connection, approval or endorsement, that the pay-per-call service is not authorized, endorsed, or approved by any Federal agency.

(b) *No charge to caller for preamble message*. The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from charging a caller any amount whatsoever for such a service if the caller hangs up at any time prior to three seconds after the signal or tone indicating the end of the preamble described in § 308.5(a). However, the three-second delay, and the

message concerning such delay described in § 308.5(a)(3), is not required if the provider of pay-per-call services offers the caller an affirmative means (such as pressing a key on a telephone keypad) of indicating a decision to incur the charges.

(c) *Nominal cost calls.* The preamble described in § 308.5(a) is not required when the entire cost of the pay-per-call service, whether billed as a flat rate or on a time sensitive basis, is $2.00 or less.

(d) *Data service calls.* The preamble described in § 308.5(a) is not required when the entire call consists of the non-verbal transmission of information.

(e) *Bypass mechanism.* The provider of pay-per-call services that offers to frequent callers or regular subscribers to such services the option of activating a bypass mechanism to avoid listening to the preamble during subsequent calls shall not be deemed to be in violation of § 308.5(a), *provided that* any such bypass mechanism shall be disabled for a period of no less than 30 days immediately after the institution of an increase in the price for the service or a change in the nature of the service offered.

(f) *Billing limitations.* The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from billing consumers in excess of the amount described in the preamble for those services and from billing for any services provided in violation of any section of this rule.

(g) *Stopping the assessment of time-based charges.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall stop the assessment of time-based charges immediately upon disconnection by the caller.

(h) *Prohibition on services to children.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall not direct such services to children under the age of 12, unless such service is a bona fide educational service. The Commission shall consider the following criteria in determining whether a pay-per-call service is directed to children under 12:

(1) Whether the pay-per-call service is advertised in the manner set forth in §§ 308.3(e) (2) and (3); and

(2) Whether the pay-per-call service, regardless of when or where it is advertised, is directed to children under 12, in light of its subject matter, content, language, featured personality, characters, tone, message, or the like.

(i) *Prohibition concerning toll-free numbers.* Any person is prohibited from using an 800 number or other telephone number advertised as or widely understood to be toll-free in a manner that would result in:

(1) The calling party being assessed, by virtue of completing the call, a charge for the call;

(2) The calling party being connected to an access number for, or otherwise transferred to, a pay-per-call service;

(3) The calling party being charged for information conveyed during the call unless the calling party has a presubscription or comparable arrangement to be charged for the information; or

(4) The calling party being called back collect for the provision of audio or data information services, simultaneous voice conversation services, or products.

(j) *Disclosure requirements for billing statements.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall ensure that any billing statement for such provider's charges shall:

(1) Display any charges for pay-per-call services in a portion of the consumer's bill that is identified as not being related to local and long distance telephone charges;

(2) For each charge so displayed, specify the type of service, the amount of the charge, and the date, time, and, for calls billed on a time-sensitive basis, the duration of the call; and

(3) Display the local or toll-free telephone number where consumers can obtain answers to their questions and information on their rights and obligations with regard to their use of pay-per-call services, and can obtain the name and mailing address of the provider of pay-per-call services.

(k) *Refunds to consumers.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall be liable for refunds or credits to consumers who have been billed for pay-per-call services, and who have paid the charges for such services, pursuant to pay-per-call programs that have been found to have violated any provision of this rule or any other Federal rule or law.

(l) *Service bureau liability*. A service bureau shall be liable for violations of the rule by pay-per-call services using its call processing facilities where it knew or should have known of the violation.

§ 308.6 Access to information.

Any common carrier that provides telecommunication services to any provider of pay-per-call services shall make available to the Commission, upon written request, any records and financial information maintained by such carrier relating to the arrangements (other than for the provision of local exchange service) between such carrier and any provider of pay-per-call services.

§ 308.7 Billing and collection for pay-per-call services.

(a) *Definitions*. For the purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) *Billing entity* means any person who transmits a billing statement to a customer for a telephone-billed purchase, or any person who assumes responsibility for receiving and responding to billing error complaints or inquiries.

(2) *Billing error* means any of the following:

(i) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase that was not made by the customer nor made from the telephone of the customer who was billed for the purchase or, if made, was not in the amount reflected on such statement.

(ii) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase for which the customer requests additional clarification, including documentary evidence thereof.

(iii) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase that was not accepted by the customer or not provided to the customer in accordance with the stated terms of the transaction.

(iv) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase for a call made to an 800 or other toll free telephone number.

(v) The failure to reflect properly on a billing statement a payment made by the customer or a credit issued to the customer with respect to a telephone-billed purchase.

(vi) A computation error or similar error of an accounting nature on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase.

(vii) Failure to transmit a billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase to a customer's last known address if that address was furnished by the customer at least twenty days before the end of the billing cycle for which the statement was required.

(viii) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase that is not identified in accordance with the requirements of § 308.5(j).

(3) *Customer* means any person who acquires or attempts to acquire goods or services in a telephone-billed purchase, or who receives a billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase charged to a telephone number assigned to that person by a providing carrier.

(4) *Preexisting agreement* means a ''presubscription or comparable arrangement,'' as that term is defined in § 308.2(e).

(5) *Providing carrier* means a local exchange or interexchange common carrier providing telephone services (other than local exchange services) to a vendor for a telephone-billed purchase that is the subject of a billing error complaint or inquiry.

(6) *Telephone-billed purchase* means any purchase that is completed solely as a consequence of the completion of the call or a subsequent dialing, touch tone entry, or comparable action of the caller. Such term does not include:

(i) A purchase by a caller pursuant to a preexisting agreement with a vendor;

(ii) Local exchange telephone services or interexchange telephone services or any service that the Federal Communications Commission determines by rule—

(A) Is closely related to the provision of local exchange telephone services or interexchange telephone services; and

(B) Is subject to billing dispute resolution procedures required by Federal or state statute or regulation; or

(iii) The purchase of goods or services that is otherwise subject to billing dispute resolution procedures required by Federal statute or regulation.

(7) *Vendor* means any person who, through the use of the telephone, offers goods or services for a telephone-billed purchase.

(b) *Initiation of billing review*. A customer may initiate a billing review with respect to a telephone-billed purchase by providing the billing entity with notice of a billing error no later than 60 days after the billing entity transmitted the first billing statement that contains a charge for such telephone-billed purchase. If the billing error is the reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase not provided to the customer in accordance with the stated terms of the transaction, the 60-day period shall begin to run from the date the goods or services are delivered or, if not delivered, should have been delivered, if such date is later than the date the billing statement was transmitted. A billing error notice shall:

(1) Set forth or otherwise enable the billing entity to identify the customer's name and the telephone number to which the charge was billed;

(2) Indicate the customer's belief that the statement contains a billing error and the type, date, and amount of such; and

(3) Set forth the reasons for the customer's belief, to the extent possible, that the statement contains a billing error.

(c) *Disclosure of method of providing notice; presumption if oral notice is permitted*. A billing entity shall clearly and conspicuously[2] disclose on each billing statement or on other material accompanying the billing statement the method (oral or written) by which the customer may provide notice to initiate review of a billing error in the manner set forth in § 308.7(b). If oral notice is permitted, any customer who orally communicates an allegation of a billing error to a billing entity shall be presumed to have properly initiated a billing review in accordance with the requirements of § 308.7(b).

(d) *Response to customer notice*. A billing entity that receives notice of a billing error as described in § 308.7(b) shall:

(1) Send a written acknowledgement to the customer including a statement that any disputed amount need not be paid pending investigation of the billing error. This shall be done no later than forty (40) days after receiving the notice, unless the action required by § 308.7(d)(2) is taken within such 40-day period; and

(2)(i) Correct the billing error and credit the customer's account for any disputed amount and any related charges, and notify the customer of the correction. The billing entity also shall disclose to the customer that collection efforts may occur despite the credit, and shall provide the names, mailing addresses, and business telephone numbers of the vendor and providing carrier, as applicable, that are the subject of the telephone-billed purchase, or provide the customer with a local or toll-free telephone number that the customer may call to obtain this information directly. However, the billing entity is not required to make the disclosure concerning collection efforts if the vendor, its agent, or the providing carrier, as applicable, will not collect or attempt to collect the disputed charge; or

(ii) Transmit an explanation to the customer, after conducting a reasonable investigation (including, where appropriate, contacting the vendor or providing carrier),[3] setting forth the reasons why it has determined that no

[2] The standard for ''clear and conspicuous'' as used in this section shall be the standard enunciated by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System in its Official Staff Commentary on Regulation Z, which requires simply that the disclosures be in a reasonably understandable form. See 12 CFR part 226, Supplement I, Comment 226.5(a)(1)–1.

[3] If a customer submits a billing error notice alleging either the nondelivery of goods or services or that information appearing on a billing statement has been reported incorrectly to the billing entity, the billing entity shall not deny the assertion unless it conducts a reasonable investigation and determines that the goods or services were actually delivered as agreed or that the information was correct. There shall be a rebuttable presumption that goods or services were actually delivered to the extent that a vendor or providing carrier produces documents prepared and maintained in the ordinary course of business showing the date on, and the place to, which the goods or services were transmitted or delivered.

billing error occurred or that a different billing error occurred from that asserted, make any appropriate adjustments to the customer's account, and, if the customer so requests, provide a written explanation and copies of documentary evidence of the customer's indebtedness.

(3) The action required by § 308.7(d)(2) shall be taken no later than two complete billing cycles of the billing entity (in no event later than ninety (90) days) after receiving the notice of the billing error and before taking any action to collect the disputed amount, or any part thereof. After complying with § 308.7(d)(2), the billing entity shall:

(i) If it is determined that any disputed amount is in error, promptly notify the appropriate providing carrier or vendor, as applicable, of its disposition of the customer's billing error and the reasons therefor; and

(ii) Promptly notify the customer in writing of the time when payment is due of any portion of the disputed amount determined not to be in error, which time shall be the longer of ten (10) days or the number of days the customer is ordinarily allowed (whether by custom, contract or state law) to pay undisputed amounts, and that failure to pay such amount may be reported to a credit reporting agency or subject the customer to a collection action, if that in fact may happen.

(e) *Withdrawal of billing error notice.* A billing entity need not comply with the requirements of § 308.7(d) if the customer has, after giving notice of a billing error and before the expiration of the time limits specified therein, agreed that the billing statement was correct or agreed to withdraw voluntarily the billing error notice.

(f) *Limitation on responsibility for billing error.* After complying with the provisions of § 308.7(d), a billing entity has no further responsibility under that section if the customer continues to make substantially the same allegation with respect to a billing error.

(g) *Customer's right to withhold disputed amount; limitation on collection action.* Once the customer has submitted notice of a billing error to a billing entity, the customer need not pay, and the billing entity, providing carrier, or vendor may not try to collect, any portion of any required payment that the customer reasonably believes is related to the disputed amount until the billing entity receiving the notice has complied with the requirements of § 308.7(d). The billing entity, providing carrier, or vendor are not prohibited from taking any action to collect any undisputed portion of the bill, or from reflecting a disputed amount and related charges on a billing statement, provided that the billing statement clearly states that payment of any disputed amount or related charges is not required pending the billing entity's compliance with § 308.7(d).

(h) *Prohibition on charges for initiating billing review.* A billing entity, providing carrier, or vendor may not impose on the customer any charge related to the billing review, including charges for documentation or investigation.

(i) *Restrictions on credit reporting*—(1) *Adverse credit reports prohibited.* Once the customer has submitted notice of a billing error to a billing entity, a billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent may not report or threaten directly or indirectly to report adverse information to any person because of the customer's withholding payment of the disputed amount or related charges, until the billing entity has met the requirements of § 308.7(d) and allowed the customer as many days thereafter to make payment as prescribed by § 308.7(d)(3)(ii).

(2) *Reports on continuing disputes.* If a billing entity receives further notice from a customer within the time allowed for payment under § 308.7(i)(1) that any portion of the billing error is still in dispute, a billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent may not report to any person that the customer's account is delinquent because of the customer's failure to pay that disputed amount unless the billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent also reports that the amount is in dispute and notifies the customer in writing of the name and address of each person to whom the vendor, billing entity, providing carrier, or other agent has reported the account as delinquent.

(3) *Reporting of dispute resolutions required.* A billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent shall report in writing any subsequent resolution of any matter reported pursuant to § 308.7(i)(2) to all persons to whom such matter was initially reported.

(j) *Forfeiture of right to collect disputed amount.* Any billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent who fails to comply with the requirements of §§ 308.7(c), (d), (g), (h), or (i) forfeits any right to collect from the customer the amount indicated by the customer, under § 308.7(b)(2), to be in error, and any late charges or other related charges thereon, up to $50 per transaction.

(k) *Prompt notification of returns and crediting of refunds.* When a vendor other than the billing entity accepts the return of property or forgives a debt for services in connection with a telephone-billed purchase, the vendor shall, within seven (7) business days from accepting the return or forgiving the debt, either:

(1) Mail or deliver a cash refund directly to the customer's address, and notify the appropriate billing entity that the customer has been given a refund, or

(2) Transmit a credit statement to the billing entity through the vendor's normal channels for billing telephone-billed purchases. The billing entity shall, within seven (7) business days after receiving a credit statement, credit the customer's account with the amount of the refund.

(l) *Right of customer to assert claims or defenses.* Any billing entity or providing carrier who seeks to collect charges from a customer for a telephone-billed purchase that is the subject of a dispute between the customer and the vendor shall be subject to all claims (other than tort claims) and defenses arising out of the transaction and relating to the failure to resolve the dispute that the customer could assert against the vendor, if the customer has made a good faith attempt to resolve the dispute with the vendor or providing carrier (other than the billing entity). The billing entity or providing carrier shall not be liable under this paragraph for any amount greater than the amount billed to the customer for the purchase (including any related charges).

(m) *Retaliatory actions prohibited.* A billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent may not accelerate any part of the customer's indebtedness or restrict or terminate the customer's access to pay-per-call services solely because the customer has exercised in good faith rights provided by this section.

(n) *Notice of billing error rights*—(1) *Annual statement.* (i) A billing entity shall mail or deliver to each customer, with the first billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase mailed or delivered after the effective date of these regulations, a statement of the customer's billing rights with respect to telephone-billed purchases. Thereafter the billing entity shall mail or deliver the billing rights statement at least once per calendar year to each customer to whom it has mailed or delivered a billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase during the previous twelve months. The billing rights statement shall disclose that the rights and obligations of the customer and the billing entity, set forth therein, are provided under the federal Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act. The statement shall describe the procedure that the customer must follow to notify the billing entity of a billing error and the steps that the billing entity must take in response to the customer's notice. If the customer is permitted to provide oral notice of a billing error, the statement shall disclose that a customer who orally communicates an allegation of a billing error is presumed to have provided sufficient notice to initiate a billing review. The statement shall also disclose the customer's right to withhold payment of any disputed amount, and that any action to collect any disputed amount will be suspended, pending completion of the billing review. The statement shall further disclose the customer's rights and obligations if the billing entity determines that no billing error occurred, including what action the billing entity may take if the customer continues to withhold payment of the disputed amount. Additionally, the statement shall inform the customer of the billing entity's obligation to forfeit

any disputed amount (up to $50 per transaction) if the billing entity fails to follow the billing and collection procedures prescribed by § 308.7 of this rule.

(ii) A billing entity that is a common carrier may comply with § 308.7(n)(1)(i) by, within 60 days after the effective date of these regulations, mailing or delivering the billing rights statement to all of its customers and, thereafter, mailing or delivering the billing rights statement at least once per calendar year, at intervals of not less than 6 months nor more than 18 months, to all of its customers.

(2) *Alternative summary statement.* As an alternative to § 308.7(n)(1), a billing entity may mail or deliver, on or with each billing statement, a statement that sets forth the procedure that a customer must follow to notify the billing entity of a billing error. The statement shall also disclose the customer's right to withhold payment of any disputed amount, and that any action to collect any disputed amount will be suspended, pending completion of the billing review.

(3) *General disclosure requirements.* (i) The disclosures required by § 308.7(n)(1) shall be made clearly and conspicuously on a separate statement that the customer may keep.

(ii) The disclosures required by § 308.7(n)(2) shall be made clearly and conspicuously and may be made on a separate statement or on the customer's billing statement. If any of the disclosures are provided on the back of the billing statement, the billing entity shall include a reference to those disclosures on the front of the statement.

(iii) At the billing entity's option, additional information or explanations may be supplied with the disclosures required by § 308.7(n), but none shall be stated, utilized, or placed so as to mislead or confuse the customer or contradict, obscure, or detract attention from the information required to be disclosed. The disclosures required by § 308.7(n) shall appear separately and above any other disclosures.

(o) *Multiple billing entities.* If a telephone-billed purchase involves more than one billing entity, only one set of disclosures need by given, and the billing entities shall agree among themselves which billing entity must comply with the requirements that this regulation imposes on any or all of them. The billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors shall remain the only billing entity responsible for complying with the terms of § 308.7(d). If a billing entity other than the one designated to receive and respond to billing errors receives notice of a billing error as described in § 308.7(b), that billing entity shall either: (1) Promptly transmit to the customer the name, mailing address, and business telephone number of the billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors; or (2) transmit the billing error notice within fifteen (15) days to the billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors. The time requirements in § 308.7(d) shall not begin to run until the billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors receives notice of the billing error, either from the customer or from the billing entity to whom the customer transmitted the notice.

(p) *Multiple customers.* If there is more than one customer involved in a telephone-billed purchase, the disclosures may be made to any customer who is primarily liable on the account.

§ 308.8 Severability.

The provisions of this rule are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

§ 308.9 Rulemaking review.

No later than four years after the effective date of this Rule, the Commission shall initiate a rulemaking review proceeding to evaluate the operation of the rule.

PART 309—LABELING REQUIREMENTS FOR ALTERNATIVE FUELS AND ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLES

Subpart A—General

Sec.

309.1 Definitions.

309.2 What this part does.
309.3 Stayed or invalid portions.
309.4 Preemption.

Subpart B—Requirements for Alternative Fuels

DUTIES OF IMPORTERS, PRODUCERS, AND REFINERS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF MANUFACTURERS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

309.10 Alternative vehicle fuel rating.
309.11 Certification.
309.12 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

309.13 Certification.
309.14 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

309.15 Posting of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel rating.
309.16 Recordkeeping.

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

309.17 Labels.

Subpart C—Requirements for Alternative Fueled Vehicles

309.20 Labeling requirements for new covered vehicles.
309.21 Labeling requirements for used covered vehicles.
309.22 Determining estimated cruising range.
309.23 Recordkeeping.

APPENDIX A TO PART 309—FIGURES FOR PART 309

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 13232(a).

SOURCE: 60 FR 26955, May 19, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 309.1 Definitions.

As used in subparts B and C of this part:

(a) *Acquisition* includes either of the following:

(1) Acquiring the beneficial title to a covered vehicle; or

(2) Acquiring a covered vehicle for transportation purposes pursuant to a contract or similar arrangement for a period of 120 days or more.

(b) *Aftermarket conversion system* means any combination of hardware which allows a vehicle or engine to operate on a fuel other than the fuel which the vehicle or engine was originally certified to use.

(c) *Alternative fuel* means

(1) Methanol, denatured ethanol, and other alcohols;

(2) Mixtures containing 85 percent or more by volume of methanol, denatured ethanol, and/or other alcohols (or such other percentage, but not less than 70 percent, as determined by the Secretary, by rule, to provide for requirements relating to cold start, safety, or vehicle functions), with gasoline or other fuels;

(3) Natural gas;

(4) Liquefied petroleum gas;

(5) Hydrogen;

(6) Coal-derived liquid fuels;

(7) Fuels (other than alcohol) derived from biological materials;

(8) Electricity (including electricity from solar energy); and

(9) Any other fuel the Secretary determines, by rule, is substantially not petroleum and would yield substantial energy security benefits and substantial environmental benefits.

(d)(1) *Consumer* in subpart C means an individual, corporation, partnership, association, State, municipality, political subdivision of a State, and any agency, department, or instrumentality of the United States.

(2) *Consumer or ultimate purchaser* in subpart B means, with respect to any non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (including electricity), the first person who purchases such fuel for purposes other than resale.

(e) *Conventional fuel* means gasoline or diesel fuel.

(f) *Covered vehicle* means either of the following:

(1) A dedicated or dual fueled passenger car (or passenger car derivative) capable of seating 12 passengers or less; or

(2) A dedicated or dual fueled motor vehicle (other than a passenger car or passenger car derivative) with a gross vehicle weight rating less than 8,500 pounds which has a vehicle curb weight of less than 6,000 pounds and which has a basic vehicle frontal area of less than 45 square feet, which is:

(i) Designed primarily for purposes of transportation of property or is a derivation of such a vehicle; or

(ii) Designed primarily for transportation of persons and has a capacity of more than 12 persons.

(g) *Dedicated* means designed to operate solely on alternative fuel.

(h) *Distributor* means any person, except a common carrier, who receives non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) and distributes such fuel to another person other than the consumer. It also means any person, except a common carrier, who receives an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system and distributes such system to a retailer.

(i) *Dual fueled* means capable of operating on alternative fuel and capable of operating on conventional fuel.

(j) *Electric charging system equipment* means equipment that includes an electric battery charger and is used for dispensing electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle.

(k) *Electric vehicle* (''EV'') means a vehicle designed to operate exclusively on electricity stored in a rechargeable battery, multiple batteries, or battery pack.

(l) *Electric vehicle fuel dispensing system* means electric charging system equipment or an electrical energy dispensing system.

(m) *Electrical energy dispensing system* means equipment that does not include an electric charger and is used for dispensing electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle that contains an onboard electric battery charger.

(n) *Emission certification standard* means the emission standard to which a covered vehicle has been certified pursuant to 40 CFR parts 86 and 88.

(o) *Estimated cruising range* for non-EVs means a manufacturer's reasonable estimate of the number of miles a new covered vehicle will travel between refueling, expressed as a lower estimate (i.e., minimum estimated cruising range) and an upper estimate (i.e., maximum estimated cruising range), as determined by § 309.22. Estimated cruising range for EVs means a manufacturer's reasonable estimate of the number of miles a new covered EV will travel between recharging, expressed as a single estimate, as determined by § 309.22.

(p) *Fuel dispenser* means:

(1) For non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), the dispenser through which a retailer sells the fuel to consumers.

(2) For electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, the dispenser through which a retailer dispenses electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle.

(q) *Fuel rating* means:

(1) For non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), including, but not limited to, compressed natural gas and hydrogen gas, the commonly used name of the fuel with a disclosure of the amount, expressed as a minimum molecular percentage, of the principal component of the fuel. A disclosure of other components, expressed as a minimum molecular percentage, may be included, if desired.

(2) For electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, a common identifier (such as, but not limited to, ''electricity,'' ''electric charging system,'' ''electric charging station'') with a disclosure of the system's kilowatt (''kW'') capacity, voltage, whether the voltage is alternating current (''ac'') or direct current (''dc''), amperage, and whether the system is conductive or inductive.

(r) *Manufacturer* means the person who obtains a certificate of conformity that the vehicle complies with the standards and requirements of 40 CFR parts 86 and 88.

(s) *Manufacturer of an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system* means any person who manufactures or assembles an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system that is distributed specifically for use by retailers in dispensing electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle.

(t) *New covered vehicle* means a covered vehicle which has not been acquired by a consumer.

(u) *New vehicle dealer* means a person who is engaged in the sale or leasing of new covered vehicles.

(v) *New vehicle label* means a window sticker containing the information required by § 309.20(e).

(w) *Non-liquid alternative fueled vehicle* means a vehicle capable of operating on a non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel.

(x) *Non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel* means alternative fuel used for the purpose of powering a non-liquid alternative fueled vehicle, including, but not limited to, compressed natural gas (''CNG''), hydrogen gas (''hydrogen''), electricity, and any other non-liquid vehicle fuel the Secretary determines, by rule, is substantially not petroleum and would yield substantial energy benefits and substantial environmental benefits.

(y) *Person* means an individual, partnership, corporation, or any other business organization.

(z) *Producer* means any person who purchases component elements and combines them to produce and market non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity).

(aa) *Refiner* means any person engaged in the production or importation of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity).

(bb) *Retailer* means any person who offers for sale, sells, or distributes non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (including electricity) to consumers.

(cc) *Secretary* means the Secretary of the United States Department of Energy.

(dd) *Used covered vehicle* means a covered vehicle which has been acquired by a consumer, but does not include any vehicle sold only for scrap or parts (title documents surrendered to the State and a salvage certificate issued).

(ee) *Used vehicle dealer* means a person engaged in the sale or leasing of used covered vehicles who has sold or leased five or more used covered vehicles in the previous twelve months, but does not include a bank or financial institution, a business selling or leasing used covered vehicles to an employee of that business, or a lessor selling or leasing a leased vehicle by or to that vehicle's lessee or to an employee of the lessee.

(ff) *Used vehicle label* means a window sticker containing the information required by § 309.21(e).

(gg) *Vehicle fuel tank capacity* means the tank's usable capacity (i.e., the volume of fuel that can be pumped into the tank through the filler pipe with the vehicle on a level surface and with the unusable capacity already in the tank). The term does not include unusable capacity (i.e., the volume of fuel left at the bottom of the tank when the vehicle's fuel pump can no longer draw fuel from the tank), the vapor volume of the tank (i.e., the space above the fuel tank filler neck), or the volume of the fuel tank filler neck.

§ 309.2 What this part does.

This part establishes labeling requirements for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels, and for certain vehicles powered in whole or in part by alternative fuels.

§ 309.3 Stayed or invalid portions.

If any portion of this part is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

§ 309.4 Preemption.

Inconsistent state and local regulations are preempted to the extent they would frustrate the purposes of this part.

Subpart B—Requirements for Alternative Fuels

DUTIES OF IMPORTERS, PRODUCERS, AND REFINERS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF MANUFACTURERS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

§ 309.10 Alternative vehicle fuel rating.

(a) If you are an importer, producer, or refiner of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must determine the fuel rating of all non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) before you transfer it. You can do that yourself or through a testing lab. To determine fuel ratings, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the minimum percentage of the principal component of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) that you must disclose, and for the minimum

percentages of other components that you choose to disclose. For the purposes of this section, fuel ratings for the minimum percentage of the principal component of compressed natural gas are to be determined in accordance with test methods set forth in American Society for Testing and Materials (''ASTM'') D 1945–91, ''Standard Test Method for Analysis of Natural Gas by Gas Chromatography.'' For the purposes of this section, fuel ratings for the minimum percentage of the principal component of hydrogen gas are to be determined in accordance with test methods set forth in ASTM D 1946–90, ''Standard Practice for Analysis of Reformed Gas by Gas Chromatography.'' This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of D 1945–91 and D 1946–90 may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html*.

(b) If you are a manufacturer of electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, you must determine the fuel rating of the electric charge delivered by the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system before you transfer such systems. To determine the fuel rating of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the following output information you must disclose: kilowatt (''kW'') capacity, voltage, whether the voltage is alternating current (''ac'') or direct current (''dc''), amperage, and whether the system is conductive or inductive.

[60 FR 26955, May 19, 1995, as amended at 69 FR 18803, Apr. 9, 2004]

§ 309.11 Certification.

(a) For non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer, you must certify the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) consistent with your determination. You can do this in either of two ways:

(1) Include a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity). It may be an invoice, bill of lading, bill of sale, terminal ticket, delivery ticket, or any other written proof of transfer. It must contain at least these four items:

(i) Your name;

(ii) The name of the person to whom the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) is transferred;

(iii) The date of the transfer; and

(iv) The fuel rating.

(2) Give the person a letter or written statement. This letter must include the date, your name, the other person's name, and the fuel rating of any non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) you will transfer to that person from the date of the letter onwards. This letter of certification will be good until you transfer non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) with a lower percentage of the principal component, or of any other component disclosed in the certification. When this happens, you must certify the fuel rating of the new non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) either with a delivery ticket or by sending a new letter of certification.

(b) For electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer, you must certify the fuel rating of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system consistent with your determination. You can do this in either of two ways:

(1) Include a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system. It may be an invoice, bill of lading, bill of sale, delivery ticket, or any other written proof of transfer. It must contain at least these five items:

(i) Your name;

(ii) The name of the person to whom the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system is transferred;

(iii) The date of the transfer;

(iv) The model number, serial number, or other identifier of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system; and

(v) The fuel rating.

(2) Make the required certification by placing clearly and conspicuously on the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system a permanent legible marking or permanently attached label that discloses the manufacturer's name, the model number, serial number, or other identifier of the system, and the fuel rating. Such marking or label must be located where it can be seen after installation of the system. The marking or label will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking. This marking or label must be in addition to, and not a substitute for, the label required to be posted on the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the retailer.

(c) When you transfer non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, to a common carrier, you must certify the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer.

§ 309.12 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year records of how you determined fuel ratings. The records must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members, or by people authorized by FTC.

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

§ 309.13 Certification.

(a) If you are a distributor of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must certify the fuel rating of the fuel in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer. You may certify either by using a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of fuel, as outlined in § 309.11(a)(1), or by using a letter of certification, as outlined in § 309.11(a)(2).

(b) If you are a distributor of electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, you must certify the fuel rating of the system in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer. You may certify by using a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer, as outlined in § 309.11(b)(1), or by using the permanent marking or permanent label attached to the system by the manufacturer, as outlined in § 309.11(b)(2).

(c) If you do not blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), you must certify consistent with the fuel rating certified to you. If you blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, as required by § 309.10(a), for the fuel rating that you certify for the blend.

(d) When you transfer non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, to a common carrier, you must certify the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer. When you receive non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer.

§ 309.14 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets, letters of certification,

or other paper on which you based your fuel rating certifications for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity) and for electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems. You also must keep for one year records of any fuel rating determinations you made according to § 309.10. If you rely for your certification on a permanent marking or permanent label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer, you must not remove or deface the permanent marking or label. The records must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members, or by persons authorized by FTC.

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

§ 309.15 Posting of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel rating.

(a) If you are a retailer who offers for sale or sells non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) to consumers, you must post the fuel rating of each non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel. If you are a retailer who offers for sale or sells electricity to consumers through an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, you must post the fuel rating of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system you use. You must do this by putting at least one label on the face of each fuel dispenser through which you sell non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel. If you are selling two or more kinds of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels with different fuel ratings from a single fuel dispenser, you must put separate labels for each kind of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel on the face of the fuel dispenser.

(b)(1) The label, or labels, must be placed conspicuously on the fuel dispenser so as to be in full view of consumers and as near as reasonably practical to the price per unit of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel.

(2) You may petition for an exemption from the placement requirements by writing the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the reasons that you want the exemption.

(c) If you do not blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), you must post consistent with the fuel rating certified to you. If you blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, as required by § 309.10(a), for the fuel rating that you post for the blend.

(d)(1) You must maintain and replace labels as needed to make sure consumers can easily see and read them.

(2) If the labels you have are destroyed or are unusable or unreadable for some unexpected reason, you may satisfy this part by posting a temporary label as much like the required label as possible. You must still get and post the required label without delay.

(e) The following examples of fuel rating disclosures for CNG and hydrogen are meant to serve as illustrations of compliance with this part, but do not limit the rule's coverage to only the mentioned non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity):

(1) ''CNG''

''Minimum''
''XXX%''
''Methane''

(2) ''Hydrogen''

''Minimum''
''XXX%''
''Hydrogen''

(f) The following example of fuel rating disclosures for electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems is meant to serve as an illustration of compliance with this part:

''Electricity''
''XX kW''
''XXX vac/XX amps''
''Inductive''

(g) When you receive non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer.

§ 309.16 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets, letters of certification, or other paper on which you based your posting of fuel ratings for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels. You also must keep for one year records of any fuel rating determinations you made according to § 309.10. If you rely for your posting on a permanent marking or permanent label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer, you must not remove or deface the permanent marking or label. The required records, other than the permanent marking or label on the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, may be kept at the retail outlet or at a reasonably close location. The records, including the permanent marking or label on each electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members or by persons authorized by FTC.

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

§ 309.17 Labels.

All labels must meet the following specifications:

(a) *Layout:*

(1) *Non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) labels with disclosure of principal component only*. The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is ⅛″ (.32 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between lines. The bottom line of type is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the format of this single component label, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(2) *Non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) labels with disclosure of two components*. The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between lines. The bottom line of type is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the format of this two component label, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(3) *Electric vehicle fuel dispensing system labels*. The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the common identifier of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the common identifier is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between lines. The bottom line of type is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label.

(b) *Type size and setting:*

(1) *Labels for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity) with*

disclosure of principal component only. All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototypesetting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ (1.27 cm) cap height) knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. The type for the words ''MINIMUM'' and the principal component is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height). The type for percentage is 36 pt. (⅜″ (.96 cm) cap height).

(2) *Labels for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity) with disclosure of two components.* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototypesetting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ 1.27 cm) cap height) knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. All other type is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height).

(3) *Labels for electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems.* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and photo-typesetting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the common identifier is 50 point (½″ 1.27 cm) cap height) knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. All other type is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height).

(c) *Colors:* The background color on the labels for all non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (including electricity), and the color of the knock-out type within the black band, is Orange: PMS 1495. All other type is process black. All borders are process black. All colors must be non-fade.

(d) *Contents.* Examples of the contents are shown in Figures 1 through 3. The proper fuel rating for each non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (including electricity) must be shown. No marks or information other than that called for by this part may appear on the labels.

(e) *Special label protection.* All labels must be capable of withstanding extremes of weather conditions for a period of at least one year. They must be resistant to vehicle fuel, oil, grease, solvents, detergents, and water.

(f) *Illustrations of labels.* Labels must meet the specifications in this section and look like Figures 1 through 3 of appendix A, except the black print should be on the appropriately colored background.

Subpart C—Requirements for Alternative Fueled Vehicles

§ 309.20 Labeling requirements for new covered vehicles.

(a) *Affixing and maintaining labels.* (1) Before offering a new covered vehicle for acquisition to consumers, manufacturers shall affix or cause to be affixed, and new vehicle dealers shall maintain or cause to be maintained, a new vehicle label on a visible surface of each such vehicle.

(2) If an aftermarket conversion system is installed on a vehicle by a person other than the manufacturer prior to such vehicle's being acquired by a consumer, the manufacturer shall provide that person with the vehicle's estimated cruising range (as determined by § 309.22(a) for dedicated vehicles and § 309.22(b) for dual fueled vehicles) and ensure that new vehicle labels are affixed to such vehicles as required by paragraph (a) of this section.

(b) *Layout.* Figures 4, 5, and 5.1 are prototype labels that demonstrate the proper layout. All positioning, spacing, type size, and line widths shall be similar to and consistent with the prototype labels. Labels required by this section are one-sided and rectangular in shape measuring 7 inches (17.78 cm) wide and 7½ inches (19.05 cm) long. Figure 4 of appendix A represents the prototype for the labels for dedicated vehicles. Figures 5 and 5.1 of appendix A represent the prototype of the labels for dual-fueled vehicles; Figure 5 of appendix A represents the prototype for vehicles with one fuel tank and Figure

5.1 of appendix A represents the prototype for vehicles with two fuel tanks. No marks or information other than that specified in this subpart shall appear on this label except that the label may include part numbers, bar codes, and vehicle identification numbers consistent with Figures 4, 5, and 5.1.

(c) *Type size and setting.* The Helvetica Condensed and Helvetica family typefaces or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific type sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels (Figures 4, 5, and 5.1 of appendix A). No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or text copy. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely.

(d) *Colors and paper stock.* All labels shall be printed in process black ink on Hammermill Offset Opaque Vellum/S.70 Sky Blue (or equivalent) paper.

(e) *Content.* (1) Headlines and text, as illustrated in Figures 4, 5, and 5.1 of appendix A, are standard for all labels.

(2) *Estimated cruising range.* (i) For dedicated vehicles, determined in accordance with § 309.22(a).

(ii) For dual fueled vehicles, determined in accordance with § 309.22(b).

[69 FR 55338, Sept. 14, 2004]

§ 309.21 Labeling requirements for used covered vehicles.

(a) *Affixing and maintaining labels.* Before offering a used covered vehicle for acquisition to consumers, used vehicle dealers shall affix and maintain, or cause to be affixed and maintained, a used vehicle label on a visible surface of each such vehicle.

(b) *Layout.* Figure 6 of appendix A is the prototype label that demonstrates the proper layout. All positioning, spacing, type size, and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype label. The label required by this section is one-sided and rectangular in shape measuring 7 inches (17.78 cm) in width and 7½ inches (19.05 cm) in height. No marks or information other than that specified in this subpart shall appear on this label, except that the label may include part numbers, bar codes, and vehicle identification numbers consistent with Figure 6.

(c) *Type size and setting.* The Helvetica Condensed and Helvetica family typefaces or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific type sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype label (Figure 6 of appendix A). No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or text copy. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototype closely.

(d) *Colors and paper stock.* All labels shall be printed in process black ink on Hammermill Offset Opaque Vellum/S.70 Sky Blue (or equivalent) paper.

(e) *Contents.* Headlines and text, as illustrated in Figure 6 of appendix A, are standard for all labels.

[69 FR 55338, Sept. 14, 2004]

§ 309.22 Determining estimated cruising range.

(a) *Dedicated vehicles.* (1) Estimated cruising range values for dedicated vehicles required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 are to be calculated in accordance with the following:

(i) The lower range value shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated city fuel-economy by its fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next lower integer value.

(ii) The upper range value shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated highway fuel-economy by its fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next higher integer value.

(2) Estimated cruising range for an EV is the actual vehicle range determined in accordance with test methods set forth in Society of Automotive Engineers (''SAE'') Surface Vehicle Recommended Practice SAE J1634–1993–05–20, ''Electric Vehicle Energy Consumption and Range Test Procedure.'' This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of SAE J1634–1993–05–20 may be obtained from the Society of Automotive Engineers, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA, 15096–0001, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, or at the National Archives and Records

Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html.*

(3) To determine the estimated cruising range values for dedicated vehicles not required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 (other than electric vehicles), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence that substantiates the minimum and maximum number of miles the vehicle will travel between refuelings or rechargings that is claimed.

(b) *Dual-fueled vehicles.* (1) Estimated cruising range values for dual-fueled vehicles required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 are to be calculated in accordance with the following:

(i) The lower range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on alternative fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated city fuel-economy by its alternative-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next lower integer value.

(ii) The upper range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on alternative fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated highway fuel-economy by its alternative-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next higher integer value.

(iii) The lower range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on conventional fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated city fuel-economy by its conventional-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next lower integer value.

(iv) The upper range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on conventional fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated highway fuel-economy by its conventional-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next higher integer value.

(2) [Reserved]

(3) To determine the estimated cruising range values for dual-fueled vehicles not required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 (other than electric vehicles), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, of:

(i) The minimum and maximum number of miles the vehicle will travel between refuelings or rechargings when operated exclusively on alternative fuel, and

(ii) The minimum and maximum number of miles the vehicle will travel between refuelings or rechargings when operated exclusively on conventional fuel.

[60 FR 26955, May 19, 1995, as amended at 69 FR 18803, Apr. 9, 2004]

§ 309.23 Recordkeeping.

Manufacturers required to comply this subpart shall establish, maintain, and retain copies of all data, reports, records, and procedures used to meet the requirements of this subpart for three years after the end of the model year to which they relate. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members, or by people authorized by the Federal Trade Commission.

APPENDIX A TO PART 309—FIGURES FOR PART 309

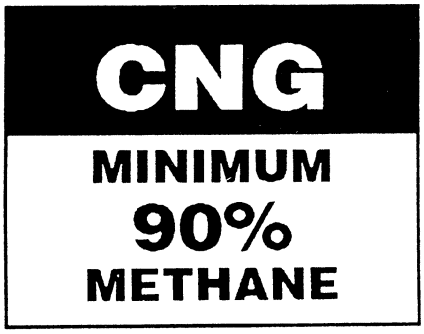


Figure 1

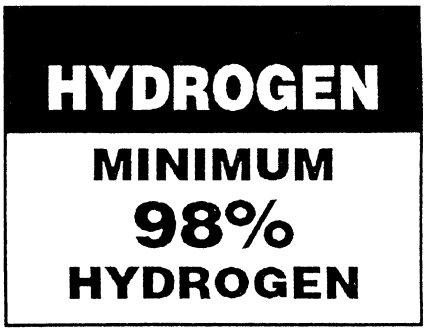


Figure 2

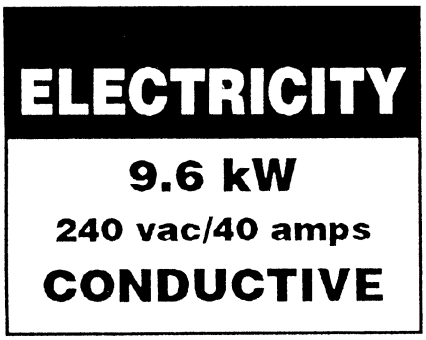


Figure 3

ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLE BUYERS GUIDE

Compare the Cruising Range of this Vehicle with Other Alternative Fueled Vehicles (AFVs) Before You Buy

Manufacturer's Estimated Cruising Range

440-520

Miles on one tank or charge.

Actual cruising range will vary with options, driving conditions, driving habits, and vehicle condition.

Before Selecting An Alternative Fueled Vehicle Consider:

☑ **FUEL TYPE AND AVAILABILITY:** Know which fuel(s) power this vehicle. Determine whether refueling and/or recharging facilities that meet your driving needs are readily available.

☑ **OPERATING COSTS:** Fuel and maintenance costs for AFVs differ from gasoline or diesel-fueled vehicles and can vary considerably. Visit www.fueleconomy.gov.

☑ **PERFORMANCE/CONVENIENCE:** Vehicles powered by different fuels differ in their ability to start a cold engine, how long it takes to refill the vehicle's tank to full capacity, acceleration rates, and refueling methods.

☑ **ENERGY SECURITY/RENEWABILITY:** Consider where and how the fuel powering this vehicle is typically produced.

☑ **EMISSIONS:** Emissions are an important factor. For more information about how the vehicle you are considering compares to others, visit www.epa.gov/greenvehicle.

Additional Information

DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)
For more information about AFVs, contact DOE's National Alternative Fuels Hotline, 1-800-423-1DOE, or visit DOE's Alternative Fuels Data Center website, www.afdc.doe.gov.

NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (NHTSA)
For more information about vehicle safety, contact NHTSA's Auto Safety Hotline, 1-800-424-9393.

The information on this label is required by the Federal Trade Commission, 16 CFR Part 309.
For more information call toll-free (877) FTC-HELP or visit www.ftc.gov.

Space Reserved for Part Numbers, Bar Codes, and Vehicle Identification Numbers

← 7.5 inches →

← 7 inches →

Figure 4

ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLE BUYERS GUIDE

Compare the Cruising Range of this Vehicle with Other Alternative Fueled Vehicles (AFVs) Before You Buy

Manufacturer's Estimated Cruising Range	
400-480	**440-520**
Miles on one tank or charge exclusively on alternative fuel	**Miles on one tank exclusively on gasoline/diesel**

Actual cruising range will vary with options, driving conditions, driving habits and vehicle condition.

Before Selecting An Alternative Fueled Vehicle Consider:

☑ **FUEL TYPE AND AVAILABILITY:** Know which fuel(s) power this vehicle. Determine whether refueling and/or recharging facilities that meet your driving needs are readily available.

☑ **OPERATING COSTS:** Fuel and maintenance costs for AFVs differ from gasoline or diesel-fueled vehicles and can vary considerably. Visit www.fueleconomy.gov.

☑ **PERFORMANCE/CONVENIENCE:** Vehicles powered by different fuels differ in their ability to start a cold engine, how long it takes to refill the vehicle's tank to full capacity, acceleration rates, and refueling methods.

☑ **ENERGY SECURITY/RENEWABILITY:** Consider where and how the fuel powering this vehicle is typically produced.

☑ **EMISSIONS:** Emissions are an important factor. For more information about how the vehicle you are considering compares to others, visit www.epa.gov/greenvehicle.

Additional Information

DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)
For more information about AFVs, contact DOE's National Alternative Fuels Hotline, 1-800-423-1DOE, or visit DOE's Alternative Fuels Data Center website, www.afdc.doe.gov.

NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (NHTSA)
For more information about vehicle safety, contact NHTSA's Auto Safety Hotline, 1-800-424-9393.

The information on this label is required by the Federal Trade Commission, 16 CFR Part 309.
For more information call toll-free (877) FTC-HELP or visit www.ftc.gov.

← 7.5 inches →

← 7 inches →

Figure 5

ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLE BUYERS GUIDE

Compare the Cruising Range of this Vehicle with Other Alternative Fueled Vehicles (AFVs) Before You Buy

Manufacturer's Estimated Cruising Range	
400-480	**440-520**
Miles on one tank or charge exclusively on alternative fuel	**Miles on one tank exclusively on gasoline/diesel**

The total possible cruising range of this vehicle is the sum of the alternative fuel range and the conventional fuel range. Actual cruising range will vary with options, driving conditions, driving habits, and vehicle condition.

Before Selecting An Alternative Fueled Vehicle Consider:

☑ **FUEL TYPE AND AVAILABILITY:** Know which fuel(s) power this vehicle. Determine whether refueling and/or recharging facilities that meet your driving needs are readily available.

☑ **OPERATING COSTS:** Fuel and maintenance costs for AFVs differ from gasoline or diesel-fueled vehicles and can vary considerably. Visit www.fueleconomy.gov.

☑ **PERFORMANCE/CONVENIENCE:** Vehicles powered by different fuels differ in their ability to start a cold engine, how long it takes to refill the vehicle's tank to full capacity, acceleration rates, and refueling methods.

☑ **ENERGY SECURITY/RENEWABILITY:** Consider where and how the fuel powering this vehicle is typically produced.

☑ **EMISSIONS:** Emissions are an important factor. For more information about how the vehicle you are considering compares to others, visit www.epa.gov/greenvehicle.

Additional Information

DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)
For more information about AFVs, contact DOE's National Alternative Fuels Hotline, 1-800-423-1DOE, or visit DOE's Alternative Fuels Data Center website, www.afdc.doe.gov.

NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (NHTSA)
For more information about vehicle safety, contact NHTSA's Auto Safety Hotline, 1-800-424-9393.

The information on this label is required by the Federal Trade Commission, 16 CFR Part 309.
For more information call toll-free (877) FTC-HELP or visit www.ftc.gov.

← 7.5 inches →

← 7 inches →

Figure 5.1

ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLE BUYERS GUIDE

Before Selecting An Alternative Fueled Vehicle Consider:

☑ **FUEL TYPE AND AVAILABILITY:** Know which fuel(s) power this vehicle. Determine whether refueling and/or recharging facilities that meet your driving needs are readily available.

☑ **OPERATING COSTS:** Fuel and maintenance costs for AFVs differ from gasoline or diesel-fueled vehicles and can vary considerably. Visit www.fueleconomy.gov.

☑ **PERFORMANCE/CONVENIENCE:** Vehicles powered by different fuels differ in their ability to start a cold engine, how long it takes to refill the vehicle's tank to full capacity, acceleration rates, and refueling methods.

☑ **ENERGY SECURITY/RENEWABILITY:** Consider where and how the fuel powering this vehicle is typically produced.

☑ **EMISSIONS:** Emissions are an important factor. For more information about how the vehicle you are considering compares to others, visit www.epa.gov/greenvehicle.

Additional Information

DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)
For more information about AFVs, contact DOE's National Alternative Fuels Hotline, 1-800-423-1DOE, or visit DOE's Alternative Fuels Data Center website, www.afdc.doe.gov.

NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (NHTSA)
For more information about vehicle safety, contact NHTSA's Auto Safety Hotline, 1-800-424-9393.

The information on this label is required by the Federal Trade Commission, 16 CFR Part 309.
For more information call toll-free (877) FTC-HELP or visit www.ftc.gov.

← 7.5 inches →

← 7 inches →

Figure 6

[60 FR 26955, May 19, 1995, as amended at 69 FR 55339, Sept. 14, 2004]

PART 310—TELEMARKETING SALES RULE

Sec.
310.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
310.2 Definitions.
310.3 Deceptive telemarketing acts or practices.
310.4 Abusive telemarketing acts or practices.
310.5 Recordkeeping requirements.
310.6 Exemptions.
310.7 Actions by states and private persons.
310.8 Fee for access to the National Do Not Call Registry.
310.9 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 6101–6108.

SOURCE: 68 FR 4669, Jan. 29, 2003, unless otherwise noted.

§310.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

This part implements the Telemarketing and Consumer Fraud and Abuse Prevention Act, 15 U.S.C. 6101-6108, as amended.

§ 310.2 Definitions.

(a) *Acquirer* means a business organization, financial institution, or an agent of a business organization or financial institution that has authority from an organization that operates or licenses a credit card system to authorize merchants to accept, transmit, or process payment by credit card through the credit card system for money, goods or services, or anything else of value.

(b) *Attorney General* means the chief legal officer of a state.

(c) *Billing information* means any data that enables any person to access a customer's or donor's account, such as a credit card, checking, savings, share or similar account, utility bill, mortgage loan account, or debit card.

(d) *Caller identification service* means a service that allows a telephone subscriber to have the telephone number, and, where available, name of the calling party transmitted contemporaneously with the telephone call, and displayed on a device in or connected to the subscriber's telephone.

(e) *Cardholder* means a person to whom a credit card is issued or who is authorized to use a credit card on behalf of or in addition to the person to whom the credit card is issued.

(f) *Charitable contribution* means any donation or gift of money or any other thing of value.

(g) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(h) *Credit* means the right granted by a creditor to a debtor to defer payment of debt or to incur debt and defer its payment.

(i) *Credit card* means any card, plate, coupon book, or other credit device existing for the purpose of obtaining money, property, labor, or services on credit.

(j) *Credit card sales draft* means any record or evidence of a credit card transaction.

(k) *Credit card system* means any method or procedure used to process credit card transactions involving credit cards issued or licensed by the operator of that system.

(l) *Customer* means any person who is or may be required to pay for goods or services offered through telemarketing.

(m) *Donor* means any person solicited to make a charitable contribution.

(n) *Established business relationship* means a relationship between a seller and a consumer based on:

(1) the consumer's purchase, rental, or lease of the seller's goods or services or a financial transaction between the consumer and seller, within the eighteen (18) months immediately preceding the date of a telemarketing call; or

(2) the consumer's inquiry or application regarding a product or service offered by the seller, within the three (3) months immediately preceding the date of a telemarketing call.

(o) *Free-to-pay conversion* means, in an offer or agreement to sell or provide any goods or services, a provision under which a customer receives a product or service for free for an initial period and will incur an obligation to pay for the product or service if he or she does not take affirmative action to cancel before the end of that period.

(p) *Investment opportunity* means anything, tangible or intangible, that is offered, offered for sale, sold, or traded based wholly or in part on representations, either express or implied, about past, present, or future income, profit, or appreciation.

(q) *Material* means likely to affect a person's choice of, or conduct regarding, goods or services or a charitable contribution.

(r) *Merchant* means a person who is authorized under a written contract with an acquirer to honor or accept credit cards, or to transmit or process for payment credit card payments, for the purchase of goods or services or a charitable contribution.

(s) *Merchant agreement* means a written contract between a merchant and an acquirer to honor or accept credit cards, or to transmit or process for payment credit card payments, for the purchase of goods or services or a charitable contribution.

(t) *Negative option feature* means, in an offer or agreement to sell or provide any goods or services, a provision under which the customer's silence or failure to take an affirmative action to reject goods or services or to cancel the agreement is interpreted by the seller as acceptance of the offer.

(u) *Outbound telephone call* means a telephone call initiated by a telemarketer to induce the purchase of goods or services or to solicit a charitable contribution.

(v) *Person* means any individual, group, unincorporated association, limited or general partnership, corporation, or other business entity.

(w) *Preacquired account information* means any information that enables a seller or telemarketer to cause a charge to be placed against a customer's or donor's account without obtaining the account number directly from the customer or donor during the telemarketing transaction pursuant to which the account will be charged.

(x) *Prize* means anything offered, or purportedly offered, and given, or purportedly given, to a person by chance. For purposes of this definition, chance exists if a person is guaranteed to receive an item and, at the time of the offer or purported offer, the telemarketer does not identify the specific item that the person will receive.

(y) *Prize promotion* means:

(1) A sweepstakes or other game of chance; or

(2) An oral or written express or implied representation that a person has won, has been selected to receive, or may be eligible to receive a prize or purported prize.

(z) *Seller* means any person who, in connection with a telemarketing transaction, provides, offers to provide, or arranges for others to provide goods or services to the customer in exchange for consideration.

(aa) *State* means any state of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, and any territory or possession of the United States.

(bb) *Telemarketer* means any person who, in connection with telemarketing, initiates or receives telephone calls to or from a customer or donor.

(cc) *Telemarketing* means a plan, program, or campaign which is conducted to induce the purchase of goods or services or a charitable contribution, by use of one or more telephones and which involves more than one interstate telephone call. The term does not include the solicitation of sales through the mailing of a catalog which: contains a written description or illustration of the goods or services offered for sale; includes the business address of the seller; includes multiple pages of written material or illustrations; and has been issued not less frequently than once a year, when the person making the solicitation does not solicit customers by telephone but only receives calls initiated by customers in response to the catalog and during those calls takes orders only without further solicitation. For purposes of the previous sentence, the term ''further solicitation'' does not include providing the customer with information about, or attempting to sell, any other item included in the same catalog which prompted the customer's call or in a substantially similar catalog.

(dd) *Upselling* means soliciting the purchase of goods or services following an initial transaction during a single telephone call. The upsell is a separate telemarketing transaction, not a continuation of the initial transaction. An ''external upsell'' is a solicitation made by or on behalf of a seller different from the seller in the initial transaction, regardless of whether the initial transaction and the subsequent solicitation are made by the same telemarketer. An ''internal upsell'' is a solicitation made by or on behalf of the same seller as in the initial transaction, regardless of whether the initial transaction and subsequent solicitation are made by the same telemarketer.

§310.3 Deceptive telemarketing acts or practices.

(a) *Prohibited deceptive telemarketing acts or practices*. It is a deceptive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for any seller or telemarketer to engage in the following conduct:

(1) Before a customer pays[1] for goods or services offered, failing to disclose

[1] When a seller or telemarketer uses, or directs a customer to use, a courier to transport payment, the seller or telemarketer must make the disclosures required by §310.3(a)(1) before sending a courier to pick up payment or authorization for payment, or

Continued

truthfully, in a clear and conspicuous manner, the following material information:

(i) The total costs to purchase, receive, or use, and the quantity of, any goods or services that are the subject of the sales offer;[2]

(ii) All material restrictions, limitations, or conditions to purchase, receive, or use the goods or services that are the subject of the sales offer;

(iii) If the seller has a policy of not making refunds, cancellations, exchanges, or repurchases, a statement informing the customer that this is the seller's policy; or, if the seller or telemarketer makes a representation about a refund, cancellation, exchange, or repurchase policy, a statement of all material terms and conditions of such policy;

(iv) In any prize promotion, the odds of being able to receive the prize, and, if the odds are not calculable in advance, the factors used in calculating the odds; that no purchase or payment is required to win a prize or to participate in a prize promotion and that any purchase or payment will not increase the person's chances of winning; and the no-purchase/no-payment method of participating in the prize promotion with either instructions on how to participate or an address or local or toll-free telephone number to which customers may write or call for information on how to participate;

(v) All material costs or conditions to receive or redeem a prize that is the subject of the prize promotion;

(vi) In the sale of any goods or services represented to protect, insure, or otherwise limit a customer's liability in the event of unauthorized use of the customer's credit card, the limits on a cardholder's liability for unauthorized use of a credit card pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 1643; and

(vii) If the offer includes a negative option feature, all material terms and conditions of the negative option feature, including, but not limited to, the fact that the customer's account will be charged unless the customer takes an affirmative action to avoid the charge(s), the date(s) the charge(s) will be submitted for payment, and the specific steps the customer must take to avoid the charge(s).

(2) Misrepresenting, directly or by implication, in the sale of goods or services any of the following material information:

(i) The total costs to purchase, receive, or use, and the quantity of, any goods or services that are the subject of a sales offer;

(ii) Any material restriction, limitation, or condition to purchase, receive, or use goods or services that are the subject of a sales offer;

(iii) Any material aspect of the performance, efficacy, nature, or central characteristics of goods or services that are the subject of a sales offer;

(iv) Any material aspect of the nature or terms of the seller's refund, cancellation, exchange, or repurchase policies;

(v) Any material aspect of a prize promotion including, but not limited to, the odds of being able to receive a prize, the nature or value of a prize, or that a purchase or payment is required to win a prize or to participate in a prize promotion;

(vi) Any material aspect of an investment opportunity including, but not limited to, risk, liquidity, earnings potential, or profitability;

(vii) A seller's or telemarketer's affiliation with, or endorsement or sponsorship by, any person or government entity;

(viii) That any customer needs offered goods or services to provide protections a customer already has pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 1643; or

(ix) Any material aspect of a negative option feature including, but not limited to, the fact that the customer's account will be charged unless the customer takes an affirmative action to avoid the charge(s), the date(s) the charge(s) will be submitted for payment, and the specific steps the customer must take to avoid the charge(s).

directing a customer to have a courier pick up payment or authorization for payment.

[2] For offers of consumer credit products subject to the Truth in Lending Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*, and Regulation Z, 12 CFR 226, compliance with the disclosure requirements under the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z shall constitute compliance with § 310.3(a)(1)(i) of this Rule.

(3) Causing billing information to be submitted for payment, or collecting or attempting to collect payment for goods or services or a charitable contribution, directly or indirectly, without the customer's or donor's express verifiable authorization, except when the method of payment used is a credit card subject to protections of the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z,[3] or a debit card subject to the protections of the Electronic Fund Transfer Act and Regulation E.[4] Such authorization shall be deemed verifiable if any of the following means is employed:

(i) Express written authorization by the customer or donor, which includes the customer's or donor's signature;[5]

(ii) Express oral authorization which is audio-recorded and made available upon request to the customer or donor, and the customer's or donor's bank or other billing entity, and which evidences clearly both the customer's or donor's authorization of payment for the goods or services or charitable contribution that are the subject of the telemarketing transaction and the customer's or donor's receipt of all of the following information:

(A) The number of debits, charges, or payments (if more than one);

(B) The date(s) the debit(s), charge(s), or payment(s) will be submitted for payment;

(C) The amount(s) of the debit(s), charge(s), or payment(s);

(D) The customer's or donor's name;

(E) The customer's or donor's billing information, identified with sufficient specificity such that the customer or donor understands what account will be used to collect payment for the goods or services or charitable contribution that are the subject of the telemarketing transaction;

(F) A telephone number for customer or donor inquiry that is answered during normal business hours; and

(G) The date of the customer's or donor's oral authorization; or

(iii) Written confirmation of the transaction, identified in a clear and conspicuous manner as such on the outside of the envelope, sent to the customer or donor via first class mail prior to the submission for payment of the customer's or donor's billing information, and that includes all of the information contained in §§310.3(a)(3)(ii)(A)-(G) and a clear and conspicuous statement of the procedures by which the customer or donor can obtain a refund from the seller or telemarketer or charitable organization in the event the confirmation is inaccurate; *provided*, however, that this means of authorization shall not be deemed verifiable in instances in which goods or services are offered in a transaction involving a free-to-pay conversion and preacquired account information.

(4) Making a false or misleading statement to induce any person to pay for goods or services or to induce a charitable contribution.

(b) *Assisting and facilitating*. It is a deceptive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a person to provide substantial assistance or support to any seller or telemarketer when that person knows or consciously avoids knowing that the seller or telemarketer is engaged in any act or practice that violates §§310.3(a), (c) or (d), or §310.4 of this Rule.

(c) *Credit card laundering*. Except as expressly permitted by the applicable credit card system, it is a deceptive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for:

(1) A merchant to present to or deposit into, or cause another to present to or deposit into, the credit card system for payment, a credit card sales draft generated by a telemarketing transaction that is not the result of a telemarketing credit card transaction between the cardholder and the merchant;

(2) Any person to employ, solicit, or otherwise cause a merchant, or an employee, representative, or agent of the merchant, to present to or deposit into

[3] Truth in Lending Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*, and Regulation Z, 12 CFR part 226.

[4] Electronic Fund Transfer Act, 15 U.S.C. 1693 *et seq.*, and Regulation E, 12 CFR part 205.

[5] For purposes of this Rule, the term ''signature'' shall include an electronic or digital form of signature, to the extent that such form of signature is recognized as a valid signature under applicable federal law or state contract law.

the credit card system for payment, a credit card sales draft generated by a telemarketing transaction that is not the result of a telemarketing credit card transaction between the cardholder and the merchant; or

(3) Any person to obtain access to the credit card system through the use of a business relationship or an affiliation with a merchant, when such access is not authorized by the merchant agreement or the applicable credit card system.

(d) *Prohibited deceptive acts or practices in the solicitation of charitable contributions.* It is a fraudulent charitable solicitation, a deceptive telemarketing act or practice, and a violation of this Rule for any telemarketer soliciting charitable contributions to misrepresent, directly or by implication, any of the following material information:

(1) The nature, purpose, or mission of any entity on behalf of which a charitable contribution is being requested;

(2) That any charitable contribution is tax deductible in whole or in part;

(3) The purpose for which any charitable contribution will be used;

(4) The percentage or amount of any charitable contribution that will go to a charitable organization or to any particular charitable program;

(5) Any material aspect of a prize promotion including, but not limited to: the odds of being able to receive a prize; the nature or value of a prize; or that a charitable contribution is required to win a prize or to participate in a prize promotion; or

(6) A charitable organization's or telemarketer's affiliation with, or endorsement or sponsorship by, any person or government entity.

§ 310.4 Abusive telemarketing acts or practices.

(a) *Abusive conduct generally.* It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for any seller or telemarketer to engage in the following conduct:

(1) Threats, intimidation, or the use of profane or obscene language;

(2) Requesting or receiving payment of any fee or consideration for goods or services represented to remove derogatory information from, or improve, a person's credit history, credit record, or credit rating until:

(i) The time frame in which the seller has represented all of the goods or services will be provided to that person has expired; and

(ii) The seller has provided the person with documentation in the form of a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency demonstrating that the promised results have been achieved, such report having been issued more than six months after the results were achieved. Nothing in this Rule should be construed to affect the requirement in the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681, that a consumer report may only be obtained for a specified permissible purpose;

(3) Requesting or receiving payment of any fee or consideration from a person for goods or services represented to recover or otherwise assist in the return of money or any other item of value paid for by, or promised to, that person in a previous telemarketing transaction, until seven (7) business days after such money or other item is delivered to that person. This provision shall not apply to goods or services provided to a person by a licensed attorney;

(4) Requesting or receiving payment of any fee or consideration in advance of obtaining a loan or other extension of credit when the seller or telemarketer has guaranteed or represented a high likelihood of success in obtaining or arranging a loan or other extension of credit for a person;

(5) Disclosing or receiving, for consideration, unencrypted consumer account numbers for use in telemarketing; *provided,* however, that this paragraph shall not apply to the disclosure or receipt of a customer's or donor's billing information to process a payment for goods or services or a charitable contribution pursuant to a transaction;

(6) Causing billing information to be submitted for payment, directly or indirectly, without the express informed consent of the customer or donor. In any telemarketing transaction, the seller or telemarketer must obtain the express informed consent of the customer or donor to be charged for the

goods or services or charitable contribution and to be charged using the identified account. In any telemarketing transaction involving preacquired account information, the requirements in paragraphs (a)(6)(i) through (ii) of this section must be met to evidence express informed consent.

(i) In any telemarketing transaction involving preacquired account information and a free-to-pay conversion feature, the seller or telemarketer must:

(A) obtain from the customer, at a minimum, the last four (4) digits of the account number to be charged;

(B) obtain from the customer his or her express agreement to be charged for the goods or services and to be charged using the account number pursuant to paragraph (a)(6)(i)(A) of this section; and,

(C) make and maintain an audio recording of the entire telemarketing transaction.

(ii) In any other telemarketing transaction involving preacquired account information not described in paragraph (a)(6)(i) of this section, the seller or telemarketer must:

(A) at a minimum, identify the account to be charged with sufficient specificity for the customer or donor to understand what account will be charged; and

(B) obtain from the customer or donor his or her express agreement to be charged for the goods or services and to be charged using the account number identified pursuant to paragraph (a)(6)(ii)(A) of this section; or

(7) Failing to transmit or cause to be transmitted the telephone number, and, when made available by the telemarketer's carrier, the name of the telemarketer, to any caller identification service in use by a recipient of a telemarketing call; *provided* that it shall not be a violation to substitute (for the name and phone number used in, or billed for, making the call) the name of the seller or charitable organization on behalf of which a telemarketing call is placed, and the seller's or charitable organization's customer or donor service telephone number, which is answered during regular business hours.

(b) *Pattern of calls.* (1) It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer to engage in, or for a seller to cause a telemarketer to engage in, the following conduct:

(i) Causing any telephone to ring, or engaging any person in telephone conversation, repeatedly or continuously with intent to annoy, abuse, or harass any person at the called number;

(ii) Denying or interfering in any way, directly or indirectly, with a person's right to be placed on any registry of names and/or telephone numbers of persons who do not wish to receive outbound telephone calls established to comply with §310.4(b)(1)(iii);

(iii) Initiating any outbound telephone call to a person when:

(A) that person previously has stated that he or she does not wish to receive an outbound telephone call made by or on behalf of the seller whose goods or services are being offered or made on behalf of the charitable organization for which a charitable contribution is being solicited; or

(B) that person's telephone number is on the ''do-not-call'' registry, maintained by the Commission, of persons who do not wish to receive outbound telephone calls to induce the purchase of goods or services unless the seller

(*i*) has obtained the express agreement, in writing, of such person to place calls to that person. Such written agreement shall clearly evidence such person's authorization that calls made by or on behalf of a specific party may be placed to that person, and shall include the telephone number to which the calls may be placed and the signature[6] of that person; or

(*ii*) has an established business relationship with such person, and that person has not stated that he or she does not wish to receive outbound telephone calls under paragraph (b)(1)(iii)(A) of this section; or

(iv) Abandoning any outbound telephone call. An outbound telephone call is ''abandoned'' under this section if a person answers it and the telemarketer

[6] For purposes of this Rule, the term ''signature'' shall include an electronic or digital form of signature, to the extent that such form of signature is recognized as a valid signature under applicable federal law or state contract law.

does not connect the call to a sales representative within two (2) seconds of the person's completed greeting.

(2) It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for any person to sell, rent, lease, purchase, or use any list established to comply with § 310.4(b)(1)(iii)(A), or maintained by the Commission pursuant to § 310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B), for any purpose except compliance with the provisions of this Rule or otherwise to prevent telephone calls to telephone numbers on such lists.

(3) A seller or telemarketer will not be liable for violating § 310.4(b)(1)(ii) and (iii) if it can demonstrate that, as part of the seller's or telemarketer's routine business practice:

(i) It has established and implemented written procedures to comply with § 310.4(b)(1)(ii) and (iii);

(ii) It has trained its personnel, and any entity assisting in its compliance, in the procedures established pursuant to § 310.4(b)(3)(i);

(iii) The seller, or a telemarketer or another person acting on behalf of the seller or charitable organization, has maintained and recorded a list of telephone numbers the seller or charitable organization may not contact, in compliance with § 310.4(b)(1)(iii)(A);

(iv) The seller or a telemarketer uses a process to prevent telemarketing to any telephone number on any list established pursuant to § 310.4(b)(3)(iii) or 310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B), employing a version of the ''do-not-call'' registry obtained from the Commission no more than thirty-one (31) days prior to the date any call is made, and maintains records documenting this process;

(v) The seller or a telemarketer or another person acting on behalf of the seller or charitable organization, monitors and enforces compliance with the procedures established pursuant to § 310.4(b)(3)(i); and

(vi) Any subsequent call otherwise violating § 310.4(b)(1)(ii) or (iii) is the result of error.

(4) A seller or telemarketer will not be liable for violating 310.4(b)(1)(iv) if:

(i) the seller or telemarketer employs technology that ensures abandonment of no more than three (3) percent of all calls answered by a person, measured per day per calling campaign;

(ii) the seller or telemarketer, for each telemarketing call placed, allows the telephone to ring for at least fifteen (15) seconds or four (4) rings before disconnecting an unanswered call;

(iii) whenever a sales representative is not available to speak with the person answering the call within two (2) seconds after the person's completed greeting, the seller or telemarketer promptly plays a recorded message that states the name and telephone number of the seller on whose behalf the call was placed[7]; and

(iv) the seller or telemarketer, in accordance with § 310.5(b)-(d), retains records establishing compliance with § 310.4(b)(4)(i)-(iii).

(c) *Calling time restrictions.* Without the prior consent of a person, it is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer to engage in outbound telephone calls to a person's residence at any time other than between 8:00 a.m. and 9:00 p.m. local time at the called person's location.

(d) *Required oral disclosures in the sale of goods or services.* It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer in an outbound telephone call or internal or external upsell to induce the purchase of goods or services to fail to disclose truthfully, promptly, and in a clear and conspicuous manner to the person receiving the call, the following information:

(1) The identity of the seller;

(2) That the purpose of the call is to sell goods or services;

(3) The nature of the goods or services; and

(4) That no purchase or payment is necessary to be able to win a prize or participate in a prize promotion if a prize promotion is offered and that any purchase or payment will not increase the person's chances of winning. This disclosure must be made before or in conjunction with the description of the prize to the person called. If requested by that person, the telemarketer must disclose the no-purchase/no-payment

[7] This provision does not affect any seller's or telemarketer's obligation to comply with relevant state and federal laws, including but not limited to the TCPA, 47 U.S.C. 227, and 47 CFR part 64.1200.

entry method for the prize promotion; *provided*, however, that, in any internal upsell for the sale of goods or services, the seller or telemarketer must provide the disclosures listed in this section only to the extent that the information in the upsell differs from the disclosures provided in the initial telemarketing transaction.

(e) *Required oral disclosures in charitable solicitations.* It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer, in an outbound telephone call to induce a charitable contribution, to fail to disclose truthfully, promptly, and in a clear and conspicuous manner to the person receiving the call, the following information:

(1) The identity of the charitable organization on behalf of which the request is being made; and

(2) That the purpose of the call is to solicit a charitable contribution.

[68 FR 4669, Jan. 29, 2003, as amended at 69 FR 16373, Mar. 29, 2004]

§310.5 Recordkeeping requirements.

(a) Any seller or telemarketer shall keep, for a period of 24 months from the date the record is produced, the following records relating to its telemarketing activities:

(1) All substantially different advertising, brochures, telemarketing scripts, and promotional materials;

(2) The name and last known address of each prize recipient and the prize awarded for prizes that are represented, directly or by implication, to have a value of $25.00 or more;

(3) The name and last known address of each customer, the goods or services purchased, the date such goods or services were shipped or provided, and the amount paid by the customer for the goods or services;[8]

(4) The name, any fictitious name used, the last known home address and telephone number, and the job title(s) for all current and former employees directly involved in telephone sales or solicitations; *provided*, however, that if the seller or telemarketer permits fictitious names to be used by employees, each fictitious name must be traceable to only one specific employee; and

(5) All verifiable authorizations or records of express informed consent or express agreement required to be provided or received under this Rule.

(b) A seller or telemarketer may keep the records required by §310.5(a) in any form, and in the same manner, format, or place as they keep such records in the ordinary course of business. Failure to keep all records required by §310.5(a) shall be a violation of this Rule.

(c) The seller and the telemarketer calling on behalf of the seller may, by written agreement, allocate responsibility between themselves for the recordkeeping required by this Section. When a seller and telemarketer have entered into such an agreement, the terms of that agreement shall govern, and the seller or telemarketer, as the case may be, need not keep records that duplicate those of the other. If the agreement is unclear as to who must maintain any required record(s), or if no such agreement exists, the seller shall be responsible for complying with §§310.5(a)(1)-(3) and (5); the telemarketer shall be responsible for complying with §310.5(a)(4).

(d) In the event of any dissolution or termination of the seller's or telemarketer's business, the principal of that seller or telemarketer shall maintain all records as required under this Section. In the event of any sale, assignment, or other change in ownership of the seller's or telemarketer's business, the successor business shall maintain all records required under this Section.

§310.6 Exemptions.

(a) Solicitations to induce charitable contributions via outbound telephone calls are not covered by §310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B) of this Rule.

(b) The following acts or practices are exempt from this Rule:

(1) The sale of pay-per-call services subject to the Commission's Rule entitled ''Trade Regulation Rule Pursuant

[8] For offers of consumer credit products subject to the Truth in Lending Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*, and Regulation Z, 12 CFR 226, compliance with the recordkeeping requirements under the Truth in Lending Act, and Regulation Z, shall constitute compliance with §310.5(a)(3) of this Rule.

to the Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act of 1992,'' 16 CFR Part 308, *provided,* however, that this exemption does not apply to the requirements of §§310.4(a)(1), (a)(7), (b), and (c);

(2) The sale of franchises subject to the Commission's Rule entitled ''Disclosure Requirements and Prohibitions Concerning Franchising and Business Opportunity Ventures,'' (''Franchise Rule'') 16 CFR Part 436, *provided,* however, that this exemption does not apply to the requirements of §§310.4(a)(1), (a)(7), (b), and (c);

(3) Telephone calls in which the sale of goods or services or charitable solicitation is not completed, and payment or authorization of payment is not required, until after a face-to-face sales or donation presentation by the seller or charitable organization, *provided,* however, that this exemption does not apply to the requirements of §§310.4(a)(1), (a)(7), (b), and (c);

(4) Telephone calls initiated by a customer or donor that are not the result of any solicitation by a seller, charitable organization, or telemarketer, *provided,* however, that this exemption does not apply to any instances of upselling included in such telephone calls;

(5) Telephone calls initiated by a customer or donor in response to an advertisement through any medium, other than direct mail solicitation, *provided,* however, that this exemption does not apply to calls initiated by a customer or donor in response to an advertisement relating to investment opportunities, business opportunities other than business arrangements covered by the Franchise Rule, or advertisements involving goods or services described in §§310.3(a)(1)(vi) or 310.4(a)(2)-(4); or to any instances of upselling included in such telephone calls;

(6) Telephone calls initiated by a customer or donor in response to a direct mail solicitation, including solicitations via the U.S. Postal Service, facsimile transmission, electronic mail, and other similar methods of delivery in which a solicitation is directed to specific address(es) or person(s), that clearly, conspicuously, and truthfully discloses all material information listed in §310.3(a)(1) of this Rule, for any goods or services offered in the direct mail solicitation, and that contains no material misrepresentation regarding any item contained in §310.3(d) of this Rule for any requested charitable contribution; *provided,* however, that this exemption does not apply to calls initiated by a customer in response to a direct mail solicitation relating to prize promotions, investment opportunities, business opportunities other than business arrangements covered by the Franchise Rule, or goods or services described in §§310.3(a)(1)(vi) or 310.4(a)(2)-(4); or to any instances of upselling included in such telephone calls; and

(7) Telephone calls between a telemarketer and any business, except calls to induce the retail sale of nondurable office or cleaning supplies; *provided,* however, that §310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B) and §310.5 of this Rule shall not apply to sellers or telemarketers of nondurable office or cleaning supplies.

§ 310.7 Actions by states and private persons.

(a) Any attorney general or other officer of a state authorized by the state to bring an action under the Telemarketing and Consumer Fraud and Abuse Prevention Act, and any private person who brings an action under that Act, shall serve written notice of its action on the Commission, if feasible, prior to its initiating an action under this Rule. The notice shall be sent to the Office of the Director, Bureau of Consumer Protection, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and shall include a copy of the state's or private person's complaint and any other pleadings to be filed with the court. If prior notice is not feasible, the state or private person shall serve the Commission with the required notice immediately upon instituting its action.

(b) Nothing contained in this Section shall prohibit any attorney general or other authorized state official from proceeding in state court on the basis of an alleged violation of any civil or criminal statute of such state.

§ 310.8 Fee for access to the National Do Not Call Registry.

(a) It is a violation of this Rule for any seller to initiate, or cause any

telemarketer to initiate, an outbound telephone call to any person whose telephone number is within a given area code unless such seller, either directly or through another person, first has paid the annual fee, required by §310.8(c), for access to telephone numbers within that area code that are included in the National Do Not Call Registry maintained by the Commission under §310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B); *provided,* however, that such payment is not necessary if the seller initiates, or causes a telemarketer to initiate, calls solely to persons pursuant to §§310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B)(*i*) or (*ii*), and the seller does not access the National Do Not Call Registry for any other purpose.

(b) It is a violation of this Rule for any telemarketer, on behalf of any seller, to initiate an outbound telephone call to any person whose telephone number is within a given area code unless that seller, either directly or through another person, first has paid the annual fee, required by §310.8(c), for access to the telephone numbers within that area code that are included in the National Do Not Call Registry; *provided,* however, that such payment is not necessary if the seller initiates, or causes a telemarketer to initiate, calls solely to persons pursuant to §§310.4(b)(1)(iii)(B)(*i*) or (*ii*), and the seller does not access the National Do Not Call Registry for any other purpose.

(c) The annual fee, which must be paid by any person prior to obtaining access to the National Do Not Call Registry, is $62 per area code of data accessed, up to a maximum of $17,050; *provided,* however, that there shall be no charge for the first five area codes of data accessed by any person, and *provided further,* that there shall be no charge to any person engaging in or causing others to engage in outbound telephone calls to consumers and who is accessing the National Do Not Call Registry without being required under this Rule, 47 CFR 64.1200, or any other Federal law. Any person accessing the National Do Not Call Registry may not participate in any arrangement to share the cost of accessing the registry, including any arrangement with any telemarketer or service provider to divide the costs to access the registry among various clients of that telemarketer or service provider.

(d) After a person, either directly or through another person, pays the fees set forth in §310.8(c), the person will be provided a unique account number which will allow that person to access the registry data for the selected area codes at any time for twelve months following the first day of the month in which the person paid the fee (''the annual period''). To obtain access to additional area codes of data during the first six months of the annual period, the person must first pay $62 for each additional area code of data not initially selected. To obtain access to additional area codes of data during the second six months of the annual period, the person must first pay $31 for each additional area code of data not initially selected. The payment of the additional fee will permit the person to access the additional area codes of data for the remainder of the annual period.

(e) Access to the National Do Not Call Registry is limited to telemarketers, sellers, others engaged in or causing others to engage in telephone calls to consumers, service providers acting on behalf of such persons, and any government agency that has law enforcement authority. Prior to accessing the National Do Not Call Registry, a person must provide the identifying information required by the operator of the registry to collect the fee, and must certify, under penalty of law, that the person is accessing the registry solely to comply with the provisions of this Rule or to otherwise prevent telephone calls to telephone numbers on the registry. If the person is accessing the registry on behalf of sellers, that person also must identify each of the sellers on whose behalf it is accessing the registry, must provide each seller's unique account number for access to the national registry, and must certify, under penalty of law, that the sellers will be using the information gathered from the registry solely to comply with the provisions of

this Rule or otherwise to prevent telephone calls to telephone numbers on the registry.

[68 FR 45144, July 31, 2003, as amended at 69 FR 45585, July 30, 2004; 70 FR 43280, July 27, 2005; 71 FR 43054, July 31, 2006]

§ 310.9 Severability.

The provisions of this Rule are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

PART 311—TEST PROCEDURES AND LABELING STANDARDS FOR RECYCLED OIL

Sec.
311.1 Definitions.
311.2 Stayed or invalid parts.
311.3 Preemption.
311.4 Testing.
311.5 Labeling.
311.6 Prohibited acts.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 6363(d).

SOURCE: 60 FR 55421, Oct. 31, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

§ 311.1 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Manufacturer* means any person who re-refines or otherwise processes used oil to remove physical or chemical impurities acquired through use or who blends such re-refined or otherwise processed used oil with new oil or additives.

(b) *New oil* means any synthetic oil or oil that has been refined from crude oil and which has not been used and may or may not contain additives. Such term does not include used oil or recycled oil.

(c) *Processed used* oil means re-refined or otherwise processed used oil or blend of oil, consisting of such re-refined or otherwise processed used oil and new oil or additives.

(d) *Recycled oil* means processed used oil that the manufacturer has determined, pursuant to section 311.4 of this part, is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil.

(e) *Used oil* means any synthetic oil or oil that has been refined from crude oil, which has been used and, as a result of such use, has been contaminated by physical or chemical impurities.

(f) *Re-refined oil* means used oil from which physical and chemical contaminants acquired through use have been removed.

§ 311.2 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this rule is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will remain in force.

§ 311.3 Preemption.

No law, regulation, or order of any State or political subdivision thereof may apply, or remain applicable, to any container of recycled oil, if such law, regulation, or order requires any container of recycled oil, which container bears a label in accordance with the terms of § 311.5 of this part, to bear any label with respect to the comparative characteristics of such recycled oil with new oil that is not identical to that permitted by § 311.5 of this part.

§ 311.4 Testing.

To determine the substantial equivalency of processed used oil with new oil for use as engine oil, manufacturers or their designees must use the test procedures that were reported to the Commission by the National Institutes of Standards and Technology (''NIST'') on July 27, 1995, entitled ''Engine Oil Licensing and Certification System,'' American Petroleum Institute (''API''), Publication 1509, Thirteenth Edition, January 1995. API Publication 1509, Thirteenth Edition has been updated to API Publication 1509, Fifteenth Edition, April 2002. API Publication 1509, Fifteenth Edition, April 2002, is incorporated by reference. This incorporation by reference is approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the materials incorporated by reference may be obtained from: API, 1220 L Street, NW., Washington, DC 20005. Copies may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Consumer Response Center, Room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (''NARA''). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call (202) 741–6030, or go to:

http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html.

[72 FR 14413, Mar. 28, 2007]

§311.5 Labeling.

A manufacturer or other seller may represent, on a label on a container of processed used oil, that such oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil only if the manufacturer has determined that the oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil in accordance with the NIST test procedures prescribed under §311.4 of this part, and has based the representation on that determination.

§311.6 Prohibited acts.

It is unlawful for any manufacturer or other seller to represent, on a label on a container of processed used oil, that such oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil unless the manufacturer or other seller has based such representation on the manufacturer's determination that the processed used oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil in accordance with the NIST test procedures prescribed under §311.4 of this part. Violations will be subject to enforcement through civil penalties (as adjusted for inflation pursuant to §1.98 of this chapter), imprisonment, and/or injunctive relief in accordance with the enforcement provisions of Section 525 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6395).

[60 FR 55421, Oct. 31, 1995, as amended at 65 FR 69666, Nov. 20, 2000]

PART 312—CHILDREN'S ONLINE PRIVACY PROTECTION RULE

Sec.

312.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
312.2 Definitions.
312.3 Regulation of unfair or deceptive acts or practices in connection with the collection, use, and/or disclosure of personal information from and about children on the Internet.
312.4 Notice.
312.5 Parental consent.
312.6 Right of parent to review personal information provided by a child.
312.7 Prohibition against conditioning a child's participation on collection of personal information.
312.8 Confidentiality, security, and integrity of personal information collected from children.
312.9 Enforcement.
312.10 Safe harbors.
312.11 Rulemaking review.
312.12 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 6501–6508.

SOURCE: 64 FR 59911, Nov. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§312.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

This part implements the Children's Online Privacy Protection Act of 1998, (15 U.S.C. 6501, *et seq.*,) which prohibits unfair or deceptive acts or practices in connection with the collection, use, and/or disclosure of personal information from and about children on the Internet. The effective date of this part is April 21, 2000.

§312.2 Definitions.

Child means an individual under the age of 13.

Collects or collection means the gathering of any personal information from a child by any means, including but not limited to:

(a) Requesting that children submit personal information online;

(b) Enabling children to make personal information publicly available through a chat room, message board, or other means, *except where* the operator deletes all individually identifiable information from postings by children before they are made public, and also deletes such information from the operator's records; or

(c) The passive tracking or use of any identifying code linked to an individual, such as a cookie.

Commission means the Federal Trade Commission.

Delete means to remove personal information such that it is not maintained in retrievable form and cannot be retrieved in the normal course of business.

Disclosure means, with respect to personal information:

(a) The release of personal information collected from a child in identifiable form by an operator for any purpose, except where an operator provides such information to a person who

provides support for the internal operations of the website or online service and who does not disclose or use that information for any other purpose. For purposes of this definition:

(1) *Release of personal information* means the sharing, selling, renting, or any other means of providing personal information to any third party, and

(2) *Support for the internal operations of the website or online service* means those activities necessary to maintain the technical functioning of the website or online service, or to fulfill a request of a child as permitted by § 312.5(c)(2) and (3); or

(b) Making personal information collected from a child by an operator publicly available in identifiable form, by any means, including by a public posting through the Internet, or through a personal home page posted on a website or online service; a pen pal service; an electronic mail service; a message board; or a chat room.

Federal agency means an agency, as that term is defined in Section 551(1) of title 5, United States Code.

Internet means collectively the myriad of computer and telecommunications facilities, including equipment and operating software, which comprise the interconnected world-wide network of networks that employ the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol, or any predecessor or successor protocols to such protocol, to communicate information of all kinds by wire, radio, or other methods of transmission.

Online contact information means an e-mail address or any other substantially similar identifier that permits direct contact with a person online.

Operator means any person who operates a website located on the Internet or an online service and who collects or maintains personal information from or about the users of or visitors to such website or online service, or on whose behalf such information is collected or maintained, where such website or online service is operated for commercial purposes, including any person offering products or services for sale through that website or online service, involving commerce:

(a) Among the several States or with 1 or more foreign nations;

(b) In any territory of the United States or in the District of Columbia, or between any such territory and

(1) Another such territory, or

(2) Any State or foreign nation; or

(c) Between the District of Columbia and any State, territory, or foreign nation. This definition does not include any nonprofit entity that would otherwise be exempt from coverage under Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45).

Parent includes a legal guardian.

Person means any individual, partnership, corporation, trust, estate, cooperative, association, or other entity.

Personal information means individually identifiable information about an individual collected online, including:

(a) A first and last name;

(b) A home or other physical address including street name and name of a city or town;

(c) An e-mail address or other online contact information, including but not limited to an instant messaging user identifier, or a screen name that reveals an individual's e-mail address;

(d) A telephone number;

(e) A Social Security number;

(f) A persistent identifier, such as a customer number held in a cookie or a processor serial number, where such identifier is associated with individually identifiable information; or a combination of a last name or photograph of the individual with other information such that the combination permits physical or online contacting; or

(g) Information concerning the child or the parents of that child that the operator collects online from the child and combines with an identifier described in this definition.

Third party means any person who is not:

(a) An operator with respect to the collection or maintenance of personal information on the website or online service; or

(b) A person who provides support for the internal operations of the website or online service and who does not use or disclose information protected under this part for any other purpose.

Obtaining *verifiable consent* means making any reasonable effort (taking

into consideration available technology) to ensure that before personal information is collected from a child, a parent of the child:

(a) Receives notice of the operator's personal information collection, use, and disclosure practices; and

(b) Authorizes any collection, use, and/or disclosure of the personal information.

Website or online service directed to children means a commercial website or online service, or portion thereof, that is targeted to children. *Provided, however*, that a commercial website or online service, or a portion thereof, shall not be deemed directed to children solely because it refers or links to a commercial website or online service directed to children by using information location tools, including a directory, index, reference, pointer, or hypertext link. In determining whether a commercial website or online service, or a portion thereof, is targeted to children, the Commission will consider its subject matter, visual or audio content, age of models, language or other characteristics of the website or online service, as well as whether advertising promoting or appearing on the website or online service is directed to children. The Commission will also consider competent and reliable empirical evidence regarding audience composition; evidence regarding the intended audience; and whether a site uses animated characters and/or child-oriented activities and incentives.

§312.3 Regulation of unfair or deceptive acts or practices in connection with the collection, use, and/or disclosure of personal information from and about children on the Internet.

General requirements. It shall be unlawful for any operator of a website or online service directed to children, or any operator that has actual knowledge that it is collecting or maintaining personal information from a child, to collect personal information from a child in a manner that violates the regulations prescribed under this part. Generally, under this part, an operator must:

(a) Provide notice on the website or online service of what information it collects from children, how it uses such information, and its disclosure practices for such information (§312.4(b));

(b) Obtain verifiable parental consent prior to any collection, use, and/or disclosure of personal information from children (§312.5);

(c) Provide a reasonable means for a parent to review the personal information collected from a child and to refuse to permit its further use or maintenance (§312.6);

(d) Not condition a child's participation in a game, the offering of a prize, or another activity on the child disclosing more personal information than is reasonably necessary to participate in such activity (§312.7); and

(e) Establish and maintain reasonable procedures to protect the confidentiality, security, and integrity of personal information collected from children (§312.8).

§312.4 Notice.

(a) *General principles of notice*. All notices under §§312.3(a) and 312.5 must be clearly and understandably written, be complete, and must contain no unrelated, confusing, or contradictory materials.

(b) *Notice on the website or online service*. Under §312.3(a), an operator of a website or online service directed to children must post a link to a notice of its information practices with regard to children on the home page of its website or online service and at each area on the website or online service where personal information is collected from children. An operator of a general audience website or online service that has a separate children's area or site must post a link to a notice of its information practices with regard to children on the home page of the children's area.

(1) *Placement of the notice*. (i) The link to the notice must be clearly labeled as a notice of the website or online service's information practices with regard to children;

(ii) The link to the notice must be placed in a clear and prominent place and manner on the home page of the website or online service; and

(iii) The link to the notice must be placed in a clear and prominent place and manner at each area on the

website or online service where children directly provide, or are asked to provide, personal information, and in close proximity to the requests for information in each such area.

(2) *Content of the notice.* To be complete, the notice of the website or online service's information practices must state the following:

(i) The name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of all operators collecting or maintaining personal information from children through the website or online service. *Provided that:* the operators of a website or online service may list the name, address, phone number, and e-mail address of one operator who will respond to all inquiries from parents concerning the operators' privacy policies and use of children's information, as long as the names of all the operators collecting or maintaining personal information from children through the website or online service are also listed in the notice;

(ii) The types of personal information collected from children and whether the personal information is collected directly or passively;

(iii) How such personal information is or may be used by the operator(s), including but not limited to fulfillment of a requested transaction, recordkeeping, marketing back to the child, or making it publicly available through a chat room or by other means;

(iv) Whether personal information is disclosed to third parties, and if so, the types of business in which such third parties are engaged, and the general purposes for which such information is used; whether those third parties have agreed to maintain the confidentiality, security, and integrity of the personal information they obtain from the operator; and that the parent has the option to consent to the collection and use of their child's personal information without consenting to the disclosure of that information to third parties;

(v) That the operator is prohibited from conditioning a child's participation in an activity on the child's disclosing more personal information than is reasonably necessary to participate in such activity; and

(vi) That the parent can review and have deleted the child's personal information, and refuse to permit further collection or use of the child's information, and state the procedures for doing so.

(c) *Notice to a parent.* Under § 312.5, an operator must make reasonable efforts, taking into account available technology, to ensure that a parent of a child receives notice of the operator's practices with regard to the collection, use, and/or disclosure of the child's personal information, including notice of any material change in the collection, use, and/or disclosure practices to which the parent has previously consented.

(1) *Content of the notice to the parent.* (i) All notices must state the following:

(A) That the operator wishes to collect personal information from the child;

(B) The information set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) In the case of a notice to obtain verifiable parental consent under § 312.5(a), the notice must also state that the parent's consent is required for the collection, use, and/or disclosure of such information, and state the means by which the parent can provide verifiable consent to the collection of information.

(iii) In the case of a notice under the exception in § 312.5(c)(3), the notice must also state the following:

(A) That the operator has collected the child's e-mail address or other online contact information to respond to the child's request for information and that the requested information will require more than one contact with the child;

(B) That the parent may refuse to permit further contact with the child and require the deletion of the information, and how the parent can do so; and

(C) That if the parent fails to respond to the notice, the operator may use the information for the purpose(s) stated in the notice.

(iv) In the case of a notice under the exception in § 312.5(c)(4), the notice must also state the following:

(A) That the operator has collected the child's name and e-mail address or other online contact information to

protect the safety of the child participating on the website or online service;

(B) That the parent may refuse to permit the use of the information and require the deletion of the information, and how the parent can do so; and

(C) That if the parent fails to respond to the notice, the operator may use the information for the purpose stated in the notice.

§312.5 Parental consent.

(a) *General requirements.* (1) An operator is required to obtain verifiable parental consent before any collection, use, and/or disclosure of personal information from children, including consent to any material change in the collection, use, and/or disclosure practices to which the parent has previously consented.

(2) An operator must give the parent the option to consent to the collection and use of the child's personal information without consenting to disclosure of his or her personal information to third parties.

(b) *Mechanisms for verifiable parental consent.* (1) An operator must make reasonable efforts to obtain verifiable parental consent, taking into consideration available technology. Any method to obtain verifiable parental consent must be reasonably calculated, in light of available technology, to ensure that the person providing consent is the child's parent.

(2) Methods to obtain verifiable parental consent that satisfy the requirements of this paragraph include: providing a consent form to be signed by the parent and returned to the operator by postal mail or facsimile; requiring a parent to use a credit card in connection with a transaction; having a parent call a toll-free telephone number staffed by trained personnel; using a digital certificate that uses public key technology; and using e-mail accompanied by a PIN or password obtained through one of the verification methods listed in this paragraph. *Provided that:* Until the Commission otherwise determines, methods to obtain verifiable parental consent for uses of information other than the ''disclosures'' defined by §312.2 may also include use of e-mail coupled with additional steps to provide assurances that the person providing the consent is the parent. Such additional steps include: sending a confirmatory e-mail to the parent following receipt of consent; or obtaining a postal address or telephone number from the parent and confirming the parent's consent by letter or telephone call. Operators who use such methods must provide notice that the parent can revoke any consent given in response to the earlier e-mail.

(c) *Exceptions to prior parental consent.* Verifiable parental consent is required prior to any collection, use and/or disclosure of personal information from a child except as set forth in this paragraph. The exceptions to prior parental consent are as follows:

(1) Where the operator collects the name or online contact information of a parent or child to be used for the sole purpose of obtaining parental consent or providing notice under §312.4. If the operator has not obtained parental consent after a reasonable time from the date of the information collection, the operator must delete such information from its records;

(2) Where the operator collects online contact information from a child for the sole purpose of responding directly on a one-time basis to a specific request from the child, and where such information is not used to recontact the child and is deleted by the operator from its records;

(3) Where the operator collects online contact information from a child to be used to respond directly more than once to a specific request from the child, and where such information is not used for any other purpose. In such cases, the operator must make reasonable efforts, taking into consideration available technology, to ensure that a parent receives notice and has the opportunity to request that the operator make no further use of the information, as described in §312.4(c), immediately after the initial response and before making any additional response to the child. Mechanisms to provide such notice include, but are not limited to, sending the notice by postal mail or sending the notice to the parent's e-mail address, but do not include asking a child to print a notice form or sending an e-mail to the child;

(4) Where the operator collects a child's name and online contact information to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the safety of a child participant on the website or online service, and the operator uses reasonable efforts to provide a parent notice as described in § 312.4(c), where such information is:

(i) Used for the sole purpose of protecting the child's safety;

(ii) Not used to recontact the child or for any other purpose;

(iii) Not disclosed on the website or online service; and

(5) Where the operator collects a child's name and online contact information and such information is not used for any other purpose, to the extent reasonably necessary:

(i) To protect the security or integrity of its website or online service;

(ii) To take precautions against liability;

(iii) To respond to judicial process; or

(iv) To the extent permitted under other provisions of law, to provide information to law enforcement agencies or for an investigation on a matter related to public safety.

[64 FR 59911, Nov. 3, 1999, as amended at 67 FR 18821, Apr. 17, 2002; 70 FR 21106, Apr. 22, 2005]

§ 312.6 Right of parent to review personal information provided by a child.

(a) Upon request of a parent whose child has provided personal information to a website or online service, the operator of that website or online service is required to provide to that parent the following:

(1) A description of the specific types or categories of personal information collected from children by the operator, such as name, address, telephone number, e-mail address, hobbies, and extracurricular activities;

(2) The opportunity at any time to refuse to permit the operator's further use or future online collection of personal information from that child, and to direct the operator to delete the child's personal information; and

(3) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, a means of reviewing any personal information collected from the child. The means employed by the operator to carry out this provision must:

(i) Ensure that the requestor is a parent of that child, taking into account available technology; and

(ii) Not be unduly burdensome to the parent.

(b) Neither an operator nor the operator's agent shall be held liable under any Federal or State law for any disclosure made in good faith and following reasonable procedures in responding to a request for disclosure of personal information under this section.

(c) Subject to the limitations set forth in § 312.7, an operator may terminate any service provided to a child whose parent has refused, under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, to permit the operator's further use or collection of personal information from his or her child or has directed the operator to delete the child's personal information.

§ 312.7 Prohibition against conditioning a child's participation on collection of personal information.

An operator is prohibited from conditioning a child's participation in a game, the offering of a prize, or another activity on the child's disclosing more personal information than is reasonably necessary to participate in such activity.

§ 312.8 Confidentiality, security, and integrity of personal information collected from children.

The operator must establish and maintain reasonable procedures to protect the confidentiality, security, and integrity of personal information collected from children.

§ 312.9 Enforcement.

Subject to sections 6503 and 6505 of the Children's Online Privacy Protection Act of 1998, a violation of a regulation prescribed under section 6502 (a) of this Act shall be treated as a violation of a rule defining an unfair or deceptive act or practice prescribed under section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 57a(a)(1)(B)).

§ 312.10 Safe harbors.

(a) *In general.* An operator will be deemed to be in compliance with the

requirements of this part if that operator complies with self-regulatory guidelines, issued by representatives of the marketing or online industries, or by other persons, that, after notice and comment, are approved by the Commission.

(b) *Criteria for approval of self-regulatory guidelines.* To be approved by the Commission, guidelines must include the following:

(1) A requirement that operators subject to the guidelines (''subject operators'') implement substantially similar requirements that provide the same or greater protections for children as those contained in §§ 312.2 through 312.9;

(2) An effective, mandatory mechanism for the independent assessment of subject operators' compliance with the guidelines. This performance standard may be satisfied by:

(i) Periodic reviews of subject operators' information practices conducted on a random basis either by the industry group promulgating the guidelines or by an independent entity;

(ii) Periodic reviews of all subject operators' information practices, conducted either by the industry group promulgating the guidelines or by an independent entity;

(iii) Seeding of subject operators' databases, if accompanied by either paragraphs (b)(2)(i) or (b)(2)(ii) of this section; or

(iv) Any other equally effective independent assessment mechanism; and

(3) Effective incentives for subject operators' compliance with the guidelines. This performance standard may be satisfied by:

(i) Mandatory, public reporting of disciplinary action taken against subject operators by the industry group promulgating the guidelines;

(ii) Consumer redress;

(iii) Voluntary payments to the United States Treasury in connection with an industry-directed program for violators of the guidelines;

(iv) Referral to the Commission of operators who engage in a pattern or practice of violating the guidelines; or

(v) Any other equally effective incentive.

(4) The assessment mechanism required under paragraph (b)(2) of this section can be provided by an independent enforcement program, such as a seal program. In considering whether to initiate an investigation or to bring an enforcement action for violations of this part, and in considering appropriate remedies for such violations, the Commission will take into account whether an operator has been subject to self-regulatory guidelines approved under this section and whether the operator has taken remedial action pursuant to such guidelines, including but not limited to actions set forth in paragraphs (b)(3)(i) through (iii) of this section.

(c) *Request for Commission approval of self-regulatory guidelines.* (1) To obtain Commission approval of self-regulatory guidelines, industry groups or other persons must file a request for such approval. A request shall be accompanied by the following:

(i) A copy of the full text of the guidelines for which approval is sought and any accompanying commentary;

(ii) A comparison of each provision of §§ 312.3 through 312.8 with the corresponding provisions of the guidelines; and

(iii) A statement explaining:

(A) How the guidelines, including the applicable assessment mechanism, meet the requirements of this part; and

(B) How the assessment mechanism and compliance incentives required under paragraphs (b)(2) and (3) of this section provide effective enforcement of the requirements of this part.

(2) The Commission shall act upon a request under this section within 180 days of the filing of such request and shall set forth its conclusions in writing.

(3) Industry groups or other persons whose guidelines have been approved by the Commission must submit proposed changes in those guidelines for review and approval by the Commission in the manner required for initial approval of guidelines under paragraph (c)(1). The statement required under paragraph (c)(1)(iii) must describe how the proposed changes affect existing provisions of the guidelines.

(d) *Records.* Industry groups or other persons who seek safe harbor treatment by compliance with guidelines that have been approved under this

part shall maintain for a period not less than three years and upon request make available to the Commission for inspection and copying:

(1) Consumer complaints alleging violations of the guidelines by subject operators;

(2) Records of disciplinary actions taken against subject operators; and

(3) Results of the independent assessments of subject operators' compliance required under paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(e) *Revocation of approval.* The Commission reserves the right to revoke any approval granted under this section if at any time it determines that the approved self-regulatory guidelines and their implementation do not, in fact, meet the requirements of this part.

§ 312.11 Rulemaking review.

No later than April 21, 2005, the Commission shall initiate a rulemaking review proceeding to evaluate the implementation of this part, including the effect of the implementation of this part on practices relating to the collection and disclosure of information relating to children, children's ability to obtain access to information of their choice online, and on the availability of websites directed to children; and report to Congress on the results of this review.

§ 312.12 Severability.

The provisions of this part are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

PART 313—PRIVACY OF CONSUMER FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Sec.

313.1 Purpose and scope.
313.2 Rule of construction.
313.3 Definitions.

Subpart A—Privacy and Opt Out Notices

313.4 Initial privacy notice to consumers required.
313.5 Annual privacy notice to customers required.
313.6 Information to be included in privacy notices.
313.7 Form of opt out notice to consumers; opt out methods.
313.8 Revised privacy notices.
313.9 Delivering privacy and opt out notices.

Subpart B—Limits on Disclosures

313.10 Limitation on disclosure of nonpublic personal information to nonaffiliated third parties.
313.11 Limits on redisclosure and reuse of information.
313.12 Limits on sharing account number information for marketing purposes.

Subpart C—Exceptions

313.13 Exception to opt out requirements for service providers and joint marketing.
313.14 Exceptions to notice and opt out requirements for processing and servicing transactions.
313.15 Other exceptions to notice and opt out requirements.

Subpart D—Relation to Other Laws; Effective Date

313.16 Protection of Fair Credit Reporting Act.
313.17 Relation to State laws.
313.18 Effective date; transition rule.

APPENDIX A TO PART 313—SAMPLE CLAUSES

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 6801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 65 FR 33677, May 24, 2000, unless otherwise noted.

§ 313.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) *Purpose.* This part governs the treatment of nonpublic personal information about consumers by the financial institutions listed in paragraph (b) of this section. This part:

(1) Requires a financial institution in specified circumstances to provide notice to customers about its privacy policies and practices;

(2) Describes the conditions under which a financial institution may disclose nonpublic personal information about consumers to nonaffiliated third parties; and

(3) Provides a method for consumers to prevent a financial institution from disclosing that information to most nonaffiliated third parties by ''opting out'' of that disclosure, subject to the exceptions in §§ 313.13, 313.14, and 313.15.

(b) *Scope.* This part applies only to nonpublic personal information about

individuals who obtain financial products or services primarily for personal, family or household purposes from the institutions listed below. This part does not apply to information about companies or about individuals who obtain financial products or services for business, commercial, or agricultural purposes. This part applies to those ''financial institutions'' and ''other persons'' over which the Federal Trade Commission (''Commission'') has enforcement authority pursuant to Section 505(a)(7) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act. An entity is a ''financial institution'' if its business is engaging in a financial activity as described in Section 4(k) of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, 12 U.S.C. 1843(k), which incorporates by reference activities enumerated by the Federal Reserve Board in 12 CFR 211.5(d) and 12 CFR 225.28. The ''financial institutions'' subject to the Commission's enforcement authority are those that are not otherwise subject to the enforcement authority of another regulator under Section 505 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act. More specifically, those entities include, but are not limited to, mortgage lenders, ''pay day'' lenders, finance companies, mortgage brokers, account servicers, check cashers, wire transferors, travel agencies operated in connection with financial services, collection agencies, credit counselors and other financial advisors, tax preparation firms, nonfederally insured credit unions, and investment advisors that are not required to register with the Securities and Exchange Commission. They are referred to in this part as ''You.'' The ''other persons'' to whom this part applies are third parties that are not financial institutions, but that receive nonpublic personal information from financial institutions with whom they are not affiliated. Nothing in this part modifies, limits, or supersedes the standards governing individually identifiable health information promulgated by the Secretary of Health and Human Services under the authority of sections 262 and 264 of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, 42 U.S.C. 1320d–1320d–8. Any institution of higher education that complies with the Federal Educational Rights and Privacy Act (''FERPA''), 20 U.S.C. 1232g, and its implementing regulations, 34 CFR part 99, and that is also a financial institution subject to the requirements of this part, shall be deemed to be in compliance with this part if it is in compliance with FERPA.

§313.2 Rule of construction.

The examples in this part and the sample clauses in Appendix A of this part are not exclusive. Compliance with an example or use of a sample clause, to the extent applicable, constitutes compliance with this part. For non-federally insured credit unions, compliance with an example or use of a sample clause contained in 12 CFR part 716, to the extent applicable, constitutes compliance with this part. For intrastate securities broker-dealers and investment advisors not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission, compliance with an example or use of a sample clause contained in 17 CFR part 248, to the extent applicable, constitutes compliance with this part.

§313.3 Definitions.

As used in this part, unless the context requires otherwise:

(a) *Affiliate* means any company that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with another company.

(b)(1) *Clear and conspicuous* means that a notice is reasonably understandable and designed to call attention to the nature and significance of the information in the notice.

(2) *Examples*—(i) *Reasonably understandable.* You make your notice reasonably understandable if you:

(A) Present the information in the notice in clear, concise sentences, paragraphs, and sections;

(B) Use short explanatory sentences or bullet lists whenever possible;

(C) Use definite, concrete, everyday words and active voice whenever possible;

(D) Avoid multiple negatives;

(E) Avoid legal and highly technical business terminology whenever possible; and

(F) Avoid explanations that are imprecise and readily subject to different interpretations.

(ii) *Designed to call attention*. You design your notice to call attention to the nature and significance of the information in it if you:

(A) Use a plain-language heading to call attention to the notice;

(B) Use a typeface and type size that are easy to read;

(C) Provide wide margins and ample line spacing;

(D) Use boldface or italics for key words; and

(E) In a form that combines your notice with other information, use distinctive type size, style, and graphic devices, such as shading or sidebars, when you combine your notice with other information.

(iii) *Notices on web sites*. If you provide a notice on a web page, you design your notice to call attention to the nature and significance of the information in it if you use text or visual cues to encourage scrolling down the page if necessary to view the entire notice and ensure that other elements on the web site (such as text, graphics, hyperlinks, or sound) do not distract attention from the notice, and you either:

(A) Place the notice on a screen that consumers frequently access, such as a page on which transactions are conducted; or

(B) Place a link on a screen that consumers frequently access, such as a page on which transactions are conducted, that connects directly to the notice and is labeled appropriately to convey the importance, nature and relevance of the notice.

(c) *Collect* means to obtain information that you organize or can retrieve by the name of an individual or by identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, irrespective of the source of the underlying information.

(d) *Company* means any corporation, limited liability company, business trust, general or limited partnership, association, or similar organization.

(e)(1) *Consumer* means an individual who obtains or has obtained a financial product or service from you that is to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, or that individual's legal representative.

(2) *Examples*—(i) An individual who applies to you for credit for personal, family, or household purposes is a consumer of a financial service, regardless of whether the credit is extended.

(ii) An individual who provides nonpublic personal information to you in order to obtain a determination about whether he or she may qualify for a loan to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes is a consumer of a financial service, regardless of whether the loan is extended.

(iii) An individual who provides nonpublic personal information to you in connection with obtaining or seeking to obtain financial, investment, or economic advisory services is a consumer, regardless of whether you establish a continuing advisory relationship.

(iv) If you hold ownership or servicing rights to an individual's loan that is used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, the individual is your consumer, even if you hold those rights in conjunction with one or more other institutions. (The individual is also a consumer with respect to the other financial institutions involved.) An individual who has a loan in which you have ownership or servicing rights is your consumer, even if you, or another institution with those rights, hire an agent to collect on the loan.

(v) An individual who is a consumer of another financial institution is not your consumer solely because you act as agent for, or provide processing or other services to, that financial institution.

(vi) An individual is not your consumer solely because he or she has designated you as trustee for a trust.

(vii) An individual is not your consumer solely because he or she is a beneficiary of a trust for which you are a trustee.

(viii) An individual is not your consumer solely because he or she is a participant or a beneficiary of an employee benefit plan that you sponsor or for which you act as a trustee or fiduciary.

(f) *Consumer reporting agency* has the same meaning as in section 603(f) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681a(f)).

(g) *Control* of a company means:

(1) Ownership, control, or power to vote 25 percent or more of the outstanding shares of any class of voting

security of the company, directly or indirectly, or acting through one or more other persons;

(2) Control in any manner over the election of a majority of the directors, trustees, or general partners (or individuals exercising similar functions) of the company; or

(3) The power to exercise, directly or indirectly, a controlling influence over the management or policies of the company.

(h) *Customer* means a consumer who has a customer relationship with you.

(i)(1) *Customer relationship* means a continuing relationship between a consumer and you under which you provide one or more financial products or services to the consumer that are to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes.

(2) *Examples*—(i) *Continuing relationship*. A consumer has a continuing relationship with you if the consumer:

(A) Has a credit or investment account with you;

(B) Obtains a loan from you;

(C) Purchases an insurance product from you;

(D) Holds an investment product through you, such as when you act as a custodian for securities or for assets in an Individual Retirement Arrangement;

(E) Enters into an agreement or understanding with you whereby you undertake to arrange or broker a home mortgage loan, or credit to purchase a vehicle, for the consumer;

(F) Enters into a lease of personal property on a non-operating basis with you;

(G) Obtains financial, investment, or economic advisory services from you for a fee;

(H) Becomes your client for the purpose of obtaining tax preparation or credit counseling services from you;

(I) Obtains career counseling while seeking employment with a financial institution or the finance, accounting, or audit department of any company (or while employed by such a financial institution or department of any company);

(J) Is obligated on an account that you purchase from another financial institution, regardless of whether the account is in default when purchased, unless you do not locate the consumer or attempt to collect any amount from the consumer on the account;

(K) Obtains real estate settlement services from you; or

(L) Has a loan for which you own the servicing rights.

(ii) *No continuing relationship*. A consumer does not, however, have a continuing relationship with you if:

(A) The consumer obtains a financial product or service from you only in isolated transactions, such as using your ATM to withdraw cash from an account at another financial institution; purchasing a money order from you; cashing a check with you; or making a wire transfer through you;

(B) You sell the consumer's loan and do not retain the rights to service that loan;

(C) You sell the consumer airline tickets, travel insurance, or traveler's checks in isolated transactions;

(D) The consumer obtains one-time personal or real property appraisal services from you; or

(E) The consumer purchases checks for a personal checking account from you.

(j) *Federal functional regulator* means:

(1) The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System;

(2) The Office of the Comptroller of the Currency;

(3) The Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(4) The Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision;

(5) The National Credit Union Administration Board; and

(6) The Securities and Exchange Commission.

(k)(1) *Financial institution* means any institution the business of which is engaging in financial activities as described in section 4(k) of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1843(k)). An institution that is significantly engaged in financial activities is a financial institution.

(2) *Examples of financial institution*. (i) A retailer that extends credit by issuing its own credit card directly to consumers is a financial institution because extending credit is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(1) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act and

issuing that extension of credit through a proprietary credit card demonstrates that a retailer is significantly engaged in extending credit.

(ii) A personal property or real estate appraiser is a financial institution because real and personal property appraisal is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(2)(i) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(iii) An automobile dealership that, as a usual part of its business, leases automobiles on a nonoperating basis for longer than 90 days is a financial institution with respect to its leasing business because leasing personal property on a nonoperating basis where the initial term of the lease is at least 90 days is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(3) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(iv) A career counselor that specializes in providing career counseling services to individuals currently employed by or recently displaced from a financial organization, individuals who are seeking employment with a financial organization, or individuals who are currently employed by or seeking placement with the finance, accounting or audit departments of any company is a financial institution because such career counseling activities are financial activities listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(9)(iii) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(v) A business that prints and sells checks for consumers, either as its sole business or as one of its product lines, is a financial institution because printing and selling checks is a financial activity that is listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(10)(ii) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(vi) A business that regularly wires money to and from consumers is a financial institution because transferring money is a financial activity referenced in section 4(k)(4)(A) of the Bank Holding Company Act and regularly providing that service demonstrates that the business is significantly engaged in that activity.

(vii) A check cashing business is a financial institution because cashing a check is exchanging money, which is a financial activity listed in section 4(k)(4)(A) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(viii) An accountant or other tax preparation service that is in the business of completing income tax returns is a financial institution because tax preparation services is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(6)(vi) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(G) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(ix) A business that operates a travel agency in connection with financial services is a financial institution because operating a travel agency in connection with financial services is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 211.5(d)(15) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(G) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(x) An entity that provides real estate settlement services is a financial institution because providing real estate settlement services is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(2)(viii) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(xi) A mortgage broker is a financial institution because brokering loans is a financial activity listed in 12 CFR 225.28(b)(1) and referenced in section 4(k)(4)(F) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(xii) An investment advisory company and a credit counseling service are each financial institutions because providing financial and investment advisory services are financial activities referenced in section 4(k)(4)(C) of the Bank Holding Company Act.

(3) *Financial institution* does not include:

(i) Any person or entity with respect to any financial activity that is subject to the jurisdiction of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 *et seq.*);

(ii) The Federal Agricultural Mortgage Corporation or any entity chartered and operating under the Farm Credit Act of 1971 (12 U.S.C. 2001 *et seq.*); or

(iii) Institutions chartered by Congress specifically to engage in securitizations, secondary market sales (including sales of servicing rights) or

similar transactions related to a transaction of a consumer, as long as such institutions do not sell or transfer nonpublic personal information to a nonaffiliated third party other than as permitted by §§313.14 and 313.15 of this part.

(iv) Entities that engage in financial activities but that are not significantly engaged in those financial activities.

(4) *Examples of entities that are not significantly engaged in financial activities.* (i) A retailer is not a financial institution if its only means of extending credit are occasional ''lay away'' and deferred payment plans or accepting payment by means of credit cards issued by others.

(ii) A retailer is not a financial institution merely because it accepts payment in the form of cash, checks, or credit cards that it did not issue.

(iii) A merchant is not a financial institution merely because it allows an individual to ''run a tab.''

(iv) A grocery store is not a financial institution merely because it allows individuals to whom it sells groceries to cash a check, or write a check for a higher amount than the grocery purchase and obtain cash in return.

(l)(1) *Financial product or service* means any product or service that a financial holding company could offer by engaging in a financial activity under section 4(k) of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1843(k)).

(2) *Financial service* includes your evaluation or brokerage of information that you collect in connection with a request or an application from a consumer for a financial product or service.

(m)(1) *Nonaffiliated third party* means any person except:

(i) Your affiliate; or

(ii) A person employed jointly by you and any company that is not your affiliate (but *nonaffiliated third party* includes the other company that jointly employs the person).

(2) *Nonaffiliated third party* includes any company that is an affiliate by virtue of your or your affiliate's direct or indirect ownership or control of the company in conducting merchant banking or investment banking activities of the type described in section 4(k)(4)(H) or insurance company investment activities of the type described in section 4(k)(4)(I) of the Bank Holding Company Act (12 U.S.C. 1843(k)(4)(H) and (I)).

(n)(1) *Nonpublic personal information* means:

(i) Personally identifiable financial information; and

(ii) Any list, description, or other grouping of consumers (and publicly available information pertaining to them) that is derived using any personally identifiable financial information that is not publicly available.

(2) *Nonpublic personal information* does not include:

(i) Publicly available information, except as included on a list described in paragraph (n)(1)(ii) of this section; or

(ii) Any list, description, or other grouping of consumers (and publicly available information pertaining to them) that is derived without using any personally identifiable financial information that is not publicly available.

(3) *Examples of lists*—(i) Nonpublic personal information includes any list of individuals' names and street addresses that is derived in whole or in part using personally identifiable financial information (that is not publicly available), such as account numbers.

(ii) Nonpublic personal information does not include any list of individuals' names and addresses that contains only publicly available information, is not derived, in whole or in part, using personally identifiable financial information that is not publicly available, and is not disclosed in a manner that indicates that any of the individuals on the list is a consumer of a financial institution.

(o)(1) *Personally identifiable financial information* means any information:

(i) A consumer provides to you to obtain a financial product or service from you;

(ii) About a consumer resulting from any transaction involving a financial product or service between you and a consumer; or

(iii) You otherwise obtain about a consumer in connection with providing a financial product or service to that consumer.

(2) *Examples*—(i) *Information included.* Personally identifiable financial information includes:

(A) Information a consumer provides to you on an application to obtain a loan, credit card, or other financial product or service;

(B) Account balance information, payment history, overdraft history, and credit or debit card purchase information;

(C) The fact that an individual is or has been one of your customers or has obtained a financial product or service from you;

(D) Any information about your consumer if it is disclosed in a manner that indicates that the individual is or has been your consumer;

(E) Any information that a consumer provides to you or that you or your agent otherwise obtain in connection with collecting on, or servicing, a credit account;

(F) Any information you collect through an Internet ''cookie'' (an information collecting device from a web server); and

(G) Information from a consumer report.

(ii) *Information not included.* Personally identifiable financial information does not include:

(A) A list of names and addresses of customers of an entity that is not a financial institution; and

(B) Information that does not identify a consumer, such as aggregate information or blind data that does not contain personal identifiers such as account numbers, names, or addresses.

(p)(1) *Publicly available information* means any information that you have a reasonable basis to believe is lawfully made available to the general public from:

(i) Federal, State, or local government records;

(ii) Widely distributed media; or

(iii) Disclosures to the general public that are required to be made by Federal, State, or local law.

(2) *Reasonable basis.* You have a reasonable basis to believe that information is lawfully made available to the general public if you have taken steps to determine:

(i) That the information is of the type that is available to the general public; and

(ii) Whether an individual can direct that the information not be made available to the general public and, if so, that your consumer has not done so.

(3) *Examples*—(i) *Government records.* Publicly available information in government records includes information in government real estate records and security interest filings.

(ii) *Widely distributed media.* Publicly available information from widely distributed media includes information from a telephone book, a television or radio program, a newspaper, or a web site that is available to the general public on an unrestricted basis. A web site is not restricted merely because an Internet service provider or a site operator requires a fee or a password, so long as access is available to the general public.

(iii) *Reasonable basis*—(A) You have a reasonable basis to believe that mortgage information is lawfully made available to the general public if you have determined that the information is of the type included on the public record in the jurisdiction where the mortgage would be recorded.

(B) You have a reasonable basis to believe that an individual's telephone number is lawfully made available to the general public if you have located the telephone number in the telephone book or the consumer has informed you that the telephone number is not unlisted.

(q) *You* includes each ''financial institution'' (but excludes any ''other person'') over which the Commission has enforcement jurisdiction pursuant to section 505(a)(7) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act.

Subpart A—Privacy and Opt Out Notices

§ 313.4 Initial privacy notice to consumers required.

(a) *Initial notice requirement.* You must provide a clear and conspicuous notice that accurately reflects your privacy policies and practices to:

(1) *Customer.* An individual who becomes your customer, not later than

when you establish a customer relationship, except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section; and

(2) *Consumer*. A consumer, before you disclose any nonpublic personal information about the consumer to any nonaffiliated third party, if you make such a disclosure other than as authorized by §§313.14 and 313.15.

(b) *When initial notice to a consumer is not required*. You are not required to provide an initial notice to a consumer under paragraph (a) of this section if:

(1) You do not disclose any nonpublic personal information about the consumer to any nonaffiliated third party, other than as authorized by §§313.14 and 313.15; and

(2) You do not have a customer relationship with the consumer.

(c) *When you establish a customer relationship*—(1) *General rule*. You establish a customer relationship when you and the consumer enter into a continuing relationship.

(2) *Special rule for loans*. You establish a customer relationship with a consumer when you originate a loan to the consumer for personal, family, or household purposes. If you subsequently transfer the servicing rights to that loan to another financial institution, the customer relationship transfers with the servicing rights.

(3)(i) *Examples of establishing customer relationship*. You establish a customer relationship when the consumer:

(A) Opens a credit card account with you;

(B) Executes the contract to obtain credit from you or purchase insurance from you;

(C) Agrees to obtain financial, economic, or investment advisory services from you for a fee; or

(D) Becomes your client for the purpose of your providing credit counseling or tax preparation services, or to obtain career counseling while seeking employment with a financial institution or the finance, accounting, or audit department of any company (or while employed by such a company or financial institution);

(E) Provides any personally identifiable financial information to you in an effort to obtain a mortgage loan through you;

(F) Executes the lease for personal property with you;

(G) Is an obligor on an account that you purchased from another financial institution and whom you have located and begun attempting to collect amounts owed on the account; or

(H) Provides you with the information necessary for you to compile and provide access to all of the consumer's on-line financial accounts at your Web site.

(ii) *Examples of loan rule*. You establish a customer relationship with a consumer who obtains a loan for personal, family, or household purposes when you:

(A) Originate the loan to the consumer and retain the servicing rights; or

(B) Purchase the servicing rights to the consumer's loan.

(d) *Existing customers*. When an existing customer obtains a new financial product or service from you that is to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, you satisfy the initial notice requirements of paragraph (a) of this section as follows:

(1) You may provide a revised privacy notice, under §313.8, that covers the customer's new financial product or service; or

(2) If the initial, revised, or annual notice that you most recently provided to that customer was accurate with respect to the new financial product or service, you do not need to provide a new privacy notice under paragraph (a) of this section.

(e) *Exceptions to allow subsequent delivery of notice*. (1) You may provide the initial notice required by paragraph (a)(1) of this section within a reasonable time after you establish a customer relationship if:

(i) Establishing the customer relationship is not at the customer's election; or

(ii) Providing notice not later than when you establish a customer relationship would substantially delay the customer's transaction and the customer agrees to receive the notice at a later time.

(2) *Examples of exceptions*—(i) *Not at customer's election*. Establishing a customer relationship is not at the customer's election if you acquire a customer's loan, or the servicing rights, from another financial institution and the customer does not have a choice about your acquisition.

(ii) *Substantial delay of customer's transaction*. Providing notice not later than when you establish a customer relationship would substantially delay the customer's transaction when:

(A) You and the individual agree over the telephone to enter into a customer relationship involving prompt delivery of the financial product or service; or

(B) You establish a customer relationship with an individual under a program authorized by Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1070 *et seq.*) or similar student loan programs where loan proceeds are disbursed promptly without prior communication between you and the customer.

(iii) *No substantial delay of customer's transaction*. Providing notice not later than when you establish a customer relationship would not substantially delay the customer's transaction when the relationship is initiated in person at your office or through other means by which the customer may view the notice, such as through a web site.

(f) *Delivery*. When you are required to deliver an initial privacy notice by this section, you must deliver it according to § 313.9. If you use a short-form initial notice for non-customers according to § 313.6(d), you may deliver your privacy notice according to § 313.6(d)(3).

§ 313.5 Annual privacy notice to customers required.

(a)(1) *General rule*. You must provide a clear and conspicuous notice to customers that accurately reflects your privacy policies and practices not less than annually during the continuation of the customer relationship. *Annually* means at least once in any period of 12 consecutive months during which that relationship exists. You may define the 12-consecutive-month period, but you must apply it to the customer on a consistent basis.

(2) *Example*. You provide a notice annually if you define the 12-consecutive-month period as a calendar year and provide the annual notice to the customer once in each calendar year following the calendar year in which you provided the initial notice. For example, if a customer opens an account on any day of year 1, you must provide an annual notice to that customer by December 31 of year 2.

(b)(1) *Termination of customer relationship*. You are not required to provide an annual notice to a former customer.

(2) *Examples*. Your customer becomes a former customer when:

(i) In the case of a closed-end loan, the customer pays the loan in full, you charge off the loan, or you sell the loan without retaining servicing rights;

(ii) In the case of a credit card relationship or other open-end credit relationship, you sell the receivables without retaining servicing rights;

(iii) In the case of credit counseling services, the customer has failed to make required payments under a debt management plan, has been notified that the plan is terminated, and you no longer provide any statements or notices to the customer concerning that relationship;

(iv) In the case of mortgage or vehicle loan brokering services, your customer has obtained a loan through you (and you no longer provide any statements or notices to the customer concerning that relationship), or has ceased using your services for such purposes;

(v) In the case of tax preparation services, you have provided and received payment for the service and no longer provide any statements or notices to the customer concerning that relationship;

(vi) In the case of providing real estate settlement services, at the time the customer completes execution of all documents related to the real estate closing, you have received payment, or you have completed all of your responsibilities with respect to the settlement, including filing documents on the public record, whichever is later.

(vii) In cases where there is no definitive time at which the customer relationship has terminated, you have not communicated with the customer about the relationship for a period of 12

consecutive months, other than to provide annual privacy notices or promotional material.

(c) *Special rule for loans.* If you do not have a customer relationship with a consumer under the special rule for loans in §313.4(c)(2), then you need not provide an annual notice to that consumer under this section.

(d) *Delivery.* When you are required to deliver an annual privacy notice by this section, you must deliver it according to §313.9.

§313.6 Information to be included in privacy notices.

(a) *General rule.* The initial, annual, and revised privacy notices that you provide under §§313.4, 313.5, and 313.8 must include each of the following items of information that applies to you or to the consumers to whom you send your privacy notice, in addition to any other information you wish to provide:

(1) The categories of nonpublic personal information that you collect;

(2) The categories of nonpublic personal information that you disclose;

(3) The categories of affiliates and nonaffiliated third parties to whom you disclose nonpublic personal information, other than those parties to whom you disclose information under §§313.14 and 313.15;

(4) The categories of nonpublic personal information about your former customers that you disclose and the categories of affiliates and nonaffiliated third parties to whom you disclose nonpublic personal information about your former customers, other than those parties to whom you disclose information under §§313.14 and 313.15;

(5) If you disclose nonpublic personal information to a nonaffiliated third party under §313.13 (and no exception under §§313.14 or 313.15 applies to that disclosure), a separate statement of the categories of information you disclose and the categories of third parties with whom you have contracted;

(6) An explanation of the consumer's right under §313.10(a) to opt out of the disclosure of nonpublic personal information to nonaffiliated third parties, including the method(s) by which the consumer may exercise that right at that time;

(7) Any disclosures that you make under section 603(d)(2)(A)(iii) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681a(d)(2)(A)(iii)) (that is, notices regarding the ability to opt out of disclosures of information among affiliates);

(8) Your policies and practices with respect to protecting the confidentiality and security of nonpublic personal information; and

(9) Any disclosure that you make under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) *Description of nonaffiliated third parties subject to exceptions.* If you disclose nonpublic personal information to third parties as authorized under §§313.14 and 313.15, you are not required to list those exceptions in the initial or annual privacy notices required by §§313.4 and 313.5. When describing the categories with respect to those parties, you are required to state only that you make disclosures to other nonaffiliated third parties as permitted by law.

(c) *Examples*—(1) *Categories of nonpublic personal information that you collect.* You satisfy the requirement to categorize the nonpublic personal information that you collect if you list the following categories, as applicable:

(i) Information from the consumer;

(ii) Information about the consumer's transactions with you or your affiliates;

(iii) Information about the consumer's transactions with nonaffiliated third parties; and

(iv) Information from a consumer reporting agency.

(2) *Categories of nonpublic personal information you disclose*—(i) You satisfy the requirement to categorize the nonpublic personal information that you disclose if you list the categories described in paragraph (e)(1) of this section, as applicable, and a few examples to illustrate the types of information in each category.

(ii) If you reserve the right to disclose all of the nonpublic personal information about consumers that you collect, you may simply state that fact without describing the categories or examples of the nonpublic personal information you disclose.

(3) *Categories of affiliates and nonaffiliated third parties to whom you disclose.* You satisfy the requirement to categorize the affiliates and nonaffiliated third parties to whom you disclose nonpublic personal information if you list them using the following categories, as applicable, and a few applicable examples to illustrate the significant types of third parties covered in each category.

(i) Financial service providers, followed by illustrative examples such as mortgage bankers, securities broker-dealers, and insurance agents.

(ii) Non-financial companies, followed by illustrative examples such as retailers, magazine publishers, airlines, and direct marketers; and

(iii) Others, followed by examples such as nonprofit organizations.

(4) *Disclosures under exception for service providers and joint marketers.* If you disclose nonpublic personal information under the exception in § 313.13 to a nonaffiliated third party to market products or services that you offer alone or jointly with another financial institution, you satisfy the disclosure requirement of paragraph (a)(5) of this section if you:

(i) List the categories of nonpublic personal information you disclose, using the same categories and examples you used to meet the requirements of paragraph (a)(2) of this section, as applicable; and

(ii) State whether the third party is:

(A) A service provider that performs marketing services on your behalf or on behalf of you and another financial institution; or

(B) A financial institution with whom you have a joint marketing agreement.

(5) *Simplified notices.* If you do not disclose, and do not wish to reserve the right to disclose, nonpublic personal information about customers or former customers to affiliates or nonaffiliated third parties except as authorized under §§ 313.14 and 313.15, you may simply state that fact, in addition to the information you must provide under paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(8), (a)(9), and (b) of this section.

(6) *Confidentiality and security.* You describe your policies and practices with respect to protecting the confidentiality and security of nonpublic personal information if you do both of the following:

(i) Describe in general terms who is authorized to have access to the information; and

(ii) State whether you have security practices and procedures in place to ensure the confidentiality of the information in accordance with your policy. You are not required to describe technical information about the safeguards you use.

(d) *Short-form initial notice with opt out notice for non-customers*—(1) You may satisfy the initial notice requirements in §§ 313.4(a)(2), 313.7(b), and 313.7(c) for a consumer who is not a customer by providing a short-form initial notice at the same time as you deliver an opt out notice as required in § 313.7.

(2) A short-form initial notice must:

(i) Be clear and conspicuous;

(ii) State that your privacy notice is available upon request; and

(iii) Explain a reasonable means by which the consumer may obtain that notice.

(3) You must deliver your short-form initial notice according to § 313.9. You are not required to deliver your privacy notice with your short-form initial notice. You instead may simply provide the consumer a reasonable means to obtain your privacy notice. If a consumer who receives your short-form notice requests your privacy notice, you must deliver your privacy notice according to § 313.9.

(4) *Examples of obtaining privacy notice.* You provide a reasonable means by which a consumer may obtain a copy of your privacy notice if you:

(i) Provide a toll-free telephone number that the consumer may call to request the notice; or

(ii) For a consumer who conducts business in person at your office, maintain copies of the notice on hand that you provide to the consumer immediately upon request.

(e) *Future disclosures.* Your notice may include:

(1) Categories of nonpublic personal information that you reserve the right to disclose in the future, but do not currently disclose; and

(2) Categories of affiliates or nonaffiliated third parties to whom you reserve the right in the future to disclose, but to whom you do not currently disclose, nonpublic personal information.

(f) *Sample clauses.* Sample clauses illustrating some of the notice content required by this section are included in Appendix A of this part.

§313.7 Form of opt out notice to consumers; opt out methods.

(a)(1) *Form of opt out notice.* If you are required to provide an opt out notice under §313.10(a), you must provide a clear and conspicuous notice to each of your consumers that accurately explains the right to opt out under that section. The notice must state:

(i) That you disclose or reserve the right to disclose nonpublic personal information about your consumer to a nonaffiliated third party;

(ii) That the consumer has the right to opt out of that disclosure; and

(iii) A reasonable means by which the consumer may exercise the opt out right.

(2) *Examples*—(i) *Adequate opt out notice.* You provide adequate notice that the consumer can opt out of the disclosure of nonpublic personal information to a nonaffiliated third party if you:

(A) Identify all of the categories of nonpublic personal information that you disclose or reserve the right to disclose, and all of the categories of nonaffiliated third parties to which you disclose the information, as described in §313.6(a) (2) and (3) and state that the consumer can opt out of the disclosure of that information; and

(B) Identify the financial products or services that the consumer obtains from you, either singly or jointly, to which the opt out direction would apply.

(ii) *Reasonable opt out means.* You provide a reasonable means to exercise an opt out right if you:

(A) Designate check-off boxes in a prominent position on the relevant forms with the opt out notice;

(B) Include a reply form that includes the address to which the form should be mailed; or

(C) Provide an electronic means to opt out, such as a form that can be sent via electronic mail or a process at your web site, if the consumer agrees to the electronic delivery of information; or

(D) Provide a toll-free telephone number that consumers may call to opt out.

(iii) *Unreasonable opt out means.* You *do not* provide a reasonable means of opting out if:

(A) The only means of opting out is for the consumer to write his or her own letter to exercise that opt out right; or

(B) The only means of opting out as described in any notice subsequent to the initial notice is to use a check-off box that you provided with the initial notice but did not include with the subsequent notice.

(iv) *Specific opt out means.* You may require each consumer to opt out through a specific means, as long as that means is reasonable for that consumer.

(b) *Same form as initial notice permitted.* You may provide the opt out notice together with or on the same written or electronic form as the initial notice you provide in accordance with §313.4.

(c) *Initial notice required when opt out notice delivered subsequent to initial notice.* If you provide the opt out notice later than required for the initial notice in accordance with §313.4, you must also include a copy of the initial notice with the opt out notice in writing or, if the consumer agrees, electronically.

(d) *Joint relationships*—(1) If two or more consumers jointly obtain a financial product or service from you, you may provide a single opt out notice, unless one or more of those consumers requests a separate opt out notice. Your opt out notice must explain how you will treat an opt out direction by a joint consumer (as explained in paragraph (d)(5)(ii)of this section).

(2) Any of the joint consumers may exercise the right to opt out. You may either:

(i) Treat an opt out direction by a joint consumer as applying to all of the associated joint consumers; or

(ii) Permit each joint consumer to opt out separately.

(3) If you permit each joint consumer to opt out separately, you must permit

one of the joint consumers to opt out on behalf of all of the joint consumers.

(4) You may not require *all* joint consumers to opt out before you implement *any* opt out direction.

(5) *Example*. If John and Mary have a joint credit card account with you and arrange for you to send statements to John's address, you may do any of the following, but you must explain in your opt out notice which opt out policy you will follow:

(i) Send a single opt out notice to John's address, but you must accept an opt out direction from either John or Mary.

(ii) Treat an opt out direction by either John or Mary as applying to the entire account. If you do so, and John opts out, you may not require Mary to opt out as well before implementing John's opt out direction.

(iii) Permit John and Mary to make different opt out directions. If you do so,

(A) You must permit John and Mary to opt out for each other;

(B) If both opt out, you must permit both to notify you in a single response (such as on a form or through a telephone call); and

(C) If John opts out and Mary does not, you may only disclose nonpublic personal information about Mary, but not about John and not about John and Mary jointly.

(e) *Time to comply with opt out*. You must comply with a consumer's opt out direction as soon as reasonably practicable after you receive it.

(f) *Continuing right to opt out*. A consumer may exercise the right to opt out at any time.

(g) *Duration of consumer's opt out direction*—(1) A consumer's direction to opt out under this section is effective until the consumer revokes it in writing or, if the consumer agrees, electronically.

(2) When a customer relationship terminates, the customer's opt out direction continues to apply to the nonpublic personal information that you collected during or related to that relationship. If the individual subsequently establishes a new customer relationship with you, the opt out direction that applied to the former relationship does not apply to the new relationship.

(h) *Delivery*. When you are required to deliver an opt out notice by this section, you must deliver it according to § 313.9.

§ 313.8 Revised privacy notices.

(a) *General rule*. Except as otherwise authorized in this part, you must not, directly or through any affiliate, disclose any nonpublic personal information about a consumer to a nonaffiliated third party other than as described in the initial notice that you provided to that consumer under § 313.4, unless:

(1) You have provided to the consumer a clear and conspicuous revised notice that accurately describes your policies and practices;

(2) You have provided to the consumer a new opt out notice;

(3) You have given the consumer a reasonable opportunity, before you disclose the information to the nonaffiliated third party, to opt out of the disclosure; and

(4) the consumer does not opt out.

(b) *Examples*—(1) Except as otherwise permitted by §§ 313.13, 313.14, and 313.15, you must provide a revised notice before you:

(i) Disclose a new category of nonpublic personal information to any nonaffiliated third party;

(ii) Disclose nonpublic personal information to a new category of nonaffiliated third party; or

(iii) Disclose nonpublic personal information about a former customer to a nonaffiliated third party if that former customer has not had the opportunity to exercise an opt out right regarding that disclosure.

(2) A revised notice is not required if you disclose nonpublic personal information to a new nonaffiliated third party that you adequately described in your prior notice.

(c) *Delivery*. When you are required to deliver a revised privacy notice by this section, you must deliver it according to § 313.9.

§ 313.9 Delivering privacy and opt out notices.

(a) *How to provide notices*. You must provide any privacy notices and opt out notices, including short-form initial notices, that this part requires so

that each consumer can reasonably be expected to receive actual notice in writing or, if the consumer agrees, electronically.

(b)(1) *Examples of reasonable expectation of actual notice.* You may reasonably expect that a consumer will receive actual notice if you:

(i) Hand-deliver a printed copy of the notice to the consumer;

(ii) Mail a printed copy of the notice to the last known address of the consumer;

(iii) For the consumer who conducts transactions electronically, clearly and conspicuously post the notice on the electronic site and require the consumer to acknowledge receipt of the notice as a necessary step to obtaining a particular financial product or service;

(iv) For an isolated transaction with the consumer, such as an ATM transaction, post the notice on the ATM screen and require the consumer to acknowledge receipt of the notice as a necessary step to obtaining the particular financial product or service.

(2) *Examples of unreasonable expectation of actual notice.* You may *not*, however, reasonably expect that a consumer will receive actual notice of your privacy policies and practices if you:

(i) Only post a sign in your branch or office or generally publish advertisements of your privacy policies and practices;

(ii) Send the notice via electronic mail to a consumer who does not obtain a financial product or service from you electronically.

(c) *Annual notices only.* You may reasonably expect that a customer will receive actual notice of your annual privacy notice if:

(1) The customer uses your web site to access financial products and services electronically and agrees to receive notices at the web site and you post your current privacy notice continuously in a clear and conspicuous manner on the web site; or

(2) The customer has requested that you refrain from sending any information regarding the customer relationship, and your current privacy notice remains available to the customer upon request.

(d) *Oral description of notice insufficient.* You may not provide any notice required by this part solely by orally explaining the notice, either in person or over the telephone.

(e) *Retention or accessibility of notices for customers*—(1) For customers only, you must provide the initial notice required by §313.4(a)(1), the annual notice required by §313.5(a), and the revised notice required by §313.8 so that the customer can retain them or obtain them later in writing or, if the customer agrees, electronically.

(2) *Examples of retention or accessibility.* You provide a privacy notice to the customer so that the customer can retain it or obtain it later if you:

(i) Hand-deliver a printed copy of the notice to the customer;

(ii) Mail a printed copy of the notice to the last known address of the customer; or

(iii) Make your current privacy notice available on a web site (or a link to another web site) for the customer who obtains a financial product or service electronically and agrees to receive the notice at the web site.

(f) *Joint notice with other financial institutions.* You may provide a joint notice from you and one or more of your affiliates or other financial institutions, as identified in the notice, as long as the notice is accurate with respect to you and the other institutions.

(g) *Joint relationships.* If two or more consumers jointly obtain a financial product or service from you, you may satisfy the initial, annual, and revised notice requirements of §§313.4(a), 313.5(a), and 313.8(a) by providing one notice to those consumers jointly, unless one or more of those consumers requests separate notices.

Subpart B—Limits on Disclosures

§313.10 Limits on disclosure of nonpublic personal information to nonaffiliated third parties.

(a)(1) *Conditions for disclosure.* Except as otherwise authorized in this part, you may not, directly or through any affiliate, disclose any nonpublic personal information about a consumer to a nonaffiliated third party unless:

(i) You have provided to the consumer an initial notice as required under § 313.4;

(ii) You have provided to the consumer an opt out notice as required in § 313.7;

(iii) You have given the consumer a reasonable opportunity, before you disclose the information to the nonaffiliated third party, to opt out of the disclosure; and

(iv) The consumer does not opt out.

(2) *Opt out definition*. Opt out means a direction by the consumer that you not disclose nonpublic personal information about that consumer to a nonaffiliated third party, other than as permitted by §§ 313.13, 313.14, and 313.15.

(3) *Examples of reasonable opportunity to opt out*. You provide a consumer with a reasonable opportunity to opt out if:

(i) *By mail*. You mail the notices required in paragraph (a)(1) of this section to the consumer and allow the consumer to opt out by mailing a form, calling a toll-free telephone number, or any other reasonable means within 30 days from the date you mailed the notices.

(ii) *By electronic means*. A customer opens an on-line account with you and agrees to receive the notices required in paragraph (a)(1) of this section electronically, and you allow the customer to opt out by any reasonable means within 30 days after the date that the customer acknowledges receipt of the notices in conjunction with opening the account.

(iii) *Isolated transaction with consumer*. For an isolated transaction, such as the purchase of a money order by a consumer, you provide the consumer with a reasonable opportunity to opt out if you provide the notices required in paragraph (a)(1) of this section at the time of the transaction and request that the consumer decide, as a necessary part of the transaction, whether to opt out before completing the transaction.

(b) *Application of opt out to all consumers and all nonpublic personal information*—(1) You must comply with this section, regardless of whether you and the consumer have established a customer relationship

(2) Unless you comply with this section, you may not, directly or through any affiliate, disclose any nonpublic personal information about a consumer that you have collected, regardless of whether you collected it before or after receiving the direction to opt out from the consumer.

(c) *Partial opt out*. You may allow a consumer to select certain nonpublic personal information or certain nonaffiliated third parties with respect to which the consumer wishes to opt out.

§ 313.11 Limits on redisclosure and reuse of information.

(a)(1) *Information you receive under an exception*. If you receive nonpublic personal information from a nonaffiliated financial institution under an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 of this part, your disclosure and use of that information is limited as follows:

(i) You may disclose the information to the affiliates of the financial institution from which you received the information;

(ii) You may disclose the information to your affiliates, but your affiliates may, in turn, disclose and use the information only to the extent that you may disclose and use the information; and

(iii) You may disclose and use the information pursuant to an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 in the ordinary course of business to carry out the activity covered by the exception under which you received the information.

(2) *Example*. If you receive a customer list from a nonaffiliated financial institution in order to provide account processing services under the exception in § 313.14(a), you may disclose that information under any exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 in the ordinary course of business in order to provide those services. You could also disclose that information in response to a properly authorized subpoena. You could not disclose that information to a third party for marketing purposes or use that information for your own marketing purposes.

(b)(1) *Information you receive outside of an exception*. If you receive nonpublic personal information from a nonaffiliated financial institution other than under an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 of this part, you may disclose the information only:

(i) To the affiliates of the financial institution from which you received the information;

(ii) To your affiliates, but your affiliates may, in turn, disclose the information only to the extent that you can disclose the information; and

(iii) To any other person, if the disclosure would be lawful if made directly to that person by the financial institution from which you received the information.

(2) *Example.* If you obtain a customer list from a nonaffiliated financial institution outside of the exceptions in § 313.14 and 313.15:

(i) You may use that list for your own purposes; and

(ii) You may disclose that list to another nonaffiliated third party only if the financial institution from which you purchased the list could have lawfully disclosed the list to that third party. That is, you may disclose the list in accordance with the privacy policy of the financial institution from which you received the list, as limited by the opt out direction of each consumer whose nonpublic personal information you intend to disclose, and you may disclose the list in accordance with an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15, such as to your attorneys or accountants.

(c) *Information you disclose under an exception.* If you disclose nonpublic personal information to a nonaffiliated third party under an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 of this part, the third party may disclose and use that information only as follows:

(1) The third party may disclose the information to your affiliates;

(2) The third party may disclose the information to its affiliates, but its affiliates may, in turn, disclose and use the information only to the extent that the third party may disclose and use the information; and

(3) The third party may disclose and use the information pursuant to an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 in the ordinary course of business to carry out the activity covered by the exception under which it received the information.

(d) *Information you disclose outside of an exception.* If you disclose nonpublic personal information to a nonaffiliated third party other than under an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 of this part, the third party may disclose the information only:

(1) To your affiliates;

(2) To its affiliates, but its affiliates, in turn, may disclose the information only to the extent the third party can disclose the information; and

(3) To any other person, if the disclosure would be lawful if you made it directly to that person.

§ 313.12 Limits on sharing account number information for marketing purposes.

(a) *General prohibition on disclosure of account numbers.* You must not, directly or through an affiliate, disclose, other than to a consumer reporting agency, an account number or similar form of access number or access code for a consumer's credit card account, deposit account, or transaction account to any nonaffiliated third party for use in telemarketing, direct mail marketing, or other marketing through electronic mail to the consumer.

(b) *Exceptions.* Paragraph (a) of this section does not apply if you disclose an account number or similar form of access number or access code:

(1) To your agent or service provider solely in order to perform marketing for your own products or services, as long as the agent or service provider is not authorized to directly initiate charges to the account; or

(2) To a participant in a private label credit card program or an affinity or similar program where the participants in the program are identified to the customer when the customer enters into the program.

(c) *Examples*—(1) *Account number.* An account number, or similar form of access number or access code, does not include a number or code in an encrypted form, as long as you do not provide the recipient with a means to decode the number or code.

(2) *Transaction account.* A transaction account is an account other than a deposit account or a credit card account. A transaction account does not include an account to which third parties cannot initiate charges.

Subpart C—Exceptions

§ 313.13 Exception to opt out requirements for service providers and joint marketing.

(a) *General rule.* (1) The opt out requirements in §§ 313.7 and 313.10 do not apply when you provide nonpublic personal information to a nonaffiliated third party to perform services for you or functions on your behalf, if you:

(i) Provide the initial notice in accordance with § 313.4; and

(ii) Enter into a contractual agreement with the third party that prohibits the third party from disclosing or using the information other than to carry out the purposes for which you disclosed the information, including use under an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 in the ordinary course of business to carry out those purposes.

(2) *Example.* If you disclose nonpublic personal information under this section to a financial institution with which you perform joint marketing, your contractual agreement with that institution meets the requirements of paragraph (a)(1)(ii) of this section if it prohibits the institution from disclosing or using the nonpublic personal information except as necessary to carry out the joint marketing or under an exception in § 313.14 or 313.15 in the ordinary course of business to carry out that joint marketing.

(b) *Service may include joint marketing.* The services a nonaffiliated third party performs for you under paragraph (a) of this section may include marketing of your own products or services or marketing of financial products or services offered pursuant to joint agreements between you and one or more financial institutions.

(c) *Definition of joint agreement.* For purposes of this section, joint agreement means a written contract pursuant to which you and one or more financial institutions jointly offer, endorse, or sponsor a financial product or service.

§ 313.14 Exceptions to notice and opt out requirements for processing and servicing transactions.

(a) *Exceptions for processing transactions at consumer's request.* The requirements for initial notice in § 313.4(a)(2), for the opt out in §§ 313.7 and 313.10, and for service providers and joint marketing in § 313.13 do not apply if you disclose nonpublic personal information as necessary to effect, administer, or enforce a transaction that a consumer requests or authorizes, or in connection with:

(1) Servicing or processing a financial product or service that a consumer requests or authorizes;

(2) Maintaining or servicing the consumer's account with you, or with another entity as part of a private label credit card program or other extension of credit on behalf of such entity; or

(3) A proposed or actual securitization, secondary market sale (including sales of servicing rights), or similar transaction related to a transaction of the consumer.

(b) *Necessary to effect, administer, or enforce a transaction* means that the disclosure is:

(1) Required, or is one of the lawful or appropriate methods, to enforce your rights or the rights of other persons engaged in carrying out the financial transaction or providing the product or service; or

(2) Required, or is a usual, appropriate or acceptable method:

(i) To carry out the transaction or the product or service business of which the transaction is a part, and record, service, or maintain the consumer's account in the ordinary course of providing the financial service or financial product;

(ii) To administer or service benefits or claims relating to the transaction or the product or service business of which it is a part;

(iii) To provide a confirmation, statement, or other record of the transaction, or information on the status or value of the financial service or financial product to the consumer or the consumer's agent or broker;

(iv) To accrue or recognize incentives or bonuses associated with the transaction that are provided by you or any other party;

(v) To underwrite insurance at the consumer's request or for reinsurance purposes, or for any of the following purposes as they relate to a consumer's insurance: account administration, reporting, investigating, or preventing

fraud or material misrepresentation, processing premium payments, processing insurance claims, administering insurance benefits (including utilization review activities), participating in research projects, or as otherwise required or specifically permitted by Federal or State law;

(vi) In connection with:

(A) The authorization, settlement, billing, processing, clearing, transferring, reconciling or collection of amounts charged, debited, or otherwise paid using a debit, credit, or other payment card, check, or account number, or by other payment means;

(B) The transfer of receivables, accounts, or interests therein; or

(C) The audit of debit, credit, or other payment information.

§ 313.15 Other exceptions to notice and opt out requirements.

(a) *Exceptions to opt out requirements.* The requirements for initial notice in § 313.4(a)(2), for the opt out in §§ 313.7 and 313.10, and for service providers and joint marketing in § 313.13 do not apply when you disclose nonpublic personal information:

(1) With the consent or at the direction of the consumer, provided that the consumer has not revoked the consent or direction;

(2)(i) To protect the confidentiality or security of your records pertaining to the consumer, service, product, or transaction;

(ii) To protect against or prevent actual or potential fraud, unauthorized transactions, claims, or other liability;

(iii) For required institutional risk control or for resolving consumer disputes or inquiries;

(iv) To persons holding a legal or beneficial interest relating to the consumer; or

(v) To persons acting in a fiduciary or representative capacity on behalf of the consumer;

(3) To provide information to insurance rate advisory organizations, guaranty funds or agencies, agencies that are rating you, persons that are assessing your compliance with industry standards, and your attorneys, accountants, and auditors;

(4) To the extent specifically permitted or required under other provisions of law and in accordance with the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3401 *et seq.*), to law enforcement agencies (including a federal functional regulator, the Secretary of the Treasury, with respect to 31 U.S.C. Chapter 53, Subchapter II (Records and Reports on Monetary Instruments and Transactions) and 12 U.S.C. Chapter 21 (Financial Recordkeeping), a State insurance authority, with respect to any person domiciled in that insurance authority's State that is engaged in providing insurance, and the Federal Trade Commission), self-regulatory organizations, or for an investigation on a matter related to public safety;

(5)(i) To a consumer reporting agency in accordance with the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq.*), or

(ii) From a consumer report reported by a consumer reporting agency;

(6) In connection with a proposed or actual sale, merger, transfer, or exchange of all or a portion of a business or operating unit if the disclosure of nonpublic personal information concerns solely consumers of such business or unit; or

(7)(i) To comply with Federal, State, or local laws, rules and other applicable legal requirements;

(ii) To comply with a properly authorized civil, criminal, or regulatory investigation, or subpoena or summons by Federal, State, or local authorities; or

(iii) To respond to judicial process or government regulatory authorities having jurisdiction over you for examination, compliance, or other purposes as authorized by law.

(b) *Examples of consent and revocation of consent.* (1) A consumer may specifically consent to your disclosure to a nonaffiliated insurance company of the fact that the consumer has applied to you for a mortgage so that the insurance company can offer homeowner's insurance to the consumer.

(2) A consumer may revoke consent by subsequently exercising the right to opt out of future disclosures of nonpublic personal information as permitted under § 313.7(f).

Subpart D—Relation to Other Laws; Effective Date

§ 313.16 Protection of Fair Credit Reporting Act.

Nothing in this part shall be construed to modify, limit, or supersede the operation of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq.*), and no inference shall be drawn on the basis of the provisions of this part regarding whether information is transaction or experience information under section 603 of that Act.

§ 313.17 Relation to State laws.

(a) *In general.* This part shall not be construed as superseding, altering, or affecting any statute, regulation, order, or interpretation in effect in any State, except to the extent that such State statute, regulation, order, or interpretation is inconsistent with the provisions of this part, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.

(b) *Greater protection under State law.* For purposes of this section, a State statute, regulation, order, or interpretation is not inconsistent with the provisions of this part if the protection such statute, regulation, order, or interpretation affords any consumer is greater than the protection provided under this part, as determined by the Commission on its own motion or upon the petition of any interested party, after consultation with the applicable federal functional regulator or other authority.

§ 313.18 Effective date; transition rule.

(a) *Effective date*—(1) *General rule.* This part is effective November 13, 2000. In order to provide sufficient time for you to establish policies and systems to comply with the requirements of this part, the Commission has extended the time for compliance with this part until July 1, 2001.

(2) *Exception.* This part is not effective as to any institution that is significantly engaged in activities that the Federal Reserve Board determines, after November 12, 1999, (pursuant to its authority in Section 4(k)(1–3) of the Bank Holding Company Act), are activities that a financial holding company may engage in, until the Commission so determines.

(b)(1) *Notice requirement for consumers who are your customers on the compliance date.* By July 1, 2001, you must have provided an initial notice, as required by § 313.4, to consumers who are your customers on July 1, 2001.

(2) *Example.* You provide an initial notice to consumers who are your customers on July 1, 2001, if, by that date, you have established a system for providing an initial notice to all new customers and have mailed the initial notice to all your existing customers.

(c) *Two-year grandfathering of service agreements.* Until July 1, 2002, a contract that you have entered into with a nonaffiliated third party to perform services for you or functions on your behalf satisfies the provisions of § 313.13(a)(1) of this part, even if the contract does not include a requirement that the third party maintain the confidentiality of nonpublic personal information, as long as you entered into the contract on or before July 1, 2000.

APPENDIX A TO PART 313—SAMPLE CLAUSES

Financial institutions, including a group of financial holding company affiliates that use a common privacy notice, may use the following sample clauses, if the clause is accurate for each institution that uses the notice. (Note that disclosure of certain information, such as assets and income, and information from a consumer reporting agency, may give rise to obligations under the Fair Credit Reporting Act, such as a requirement to permit a consumer to opt out of disclosures to affiliates or designation as a consumer reporting agency if disclosures are made to nonaffiliated third parties.)

A–1—Categories of Information You Collect (All Institutions)

You may use this clause, as applicable, to meet the requirement of § 313.6(a)(1) to describe the categories of nonpublic personal information you collect.

Sample Clause A–1

We collect nonpublic personal information about you from the following sources:

- Information we receive from you on applications or other forms;
- Information about your transactions with us, our affiliates, or others; and
- Information we receive from a consumer reporting agency.

A–2—Categories of Information You Disclose (Institutions That Disclose Outside of the Exceptions)

You may use one of these clauses, as applicable, to meet the requirement of §313.6(a)(2) to describe the categories of nonpublic personal information you disclose. You may use these clauses if you disclose nonpublic personal information other than as permitted by the exceptions in §§313.13, 313.14, and 313.15.

Sample Clause A–2, Alternative 1

We may disclose the following kinds of nonpublic personal information about you:

• Information we receive from you on applications or other forms, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''your name, address, social security number, assets, and income''*];

• Information about your transactions with us, our affiliates, or others, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''your account balance, payment history, parties to transactions, and credit card usage''*]; and

• Information we receive from a consumer reporting agency, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''your creditworthiness and credit history''*].

Sample Clause A–2, Alternative 2

We may disclose all of the information that we collect, as described [*describe location in the notice, such as ''above'' or ''below''*].

A–3—Categories of Information You Disclose and Parties to Whom You Disclose (Institutions That Do Not Disclose Outside of the Exceptions)

You may use this clause, as applicable, to meet the requirements of §§313.6(a)(2), (3), and (4) to describe the categories of nonpublic personal information about customers and former customers that you disclose and the categories of affiliates and nonaffiliated third parties to whom you disclose. You may use this clause if you do not disclose nonpublic personal information to any party, other than as permitted by the exceptions in §§313.14, and 313.15.

Sample Clause A–3

We do not disclose any nonpublic personal information about our customers or former customers to anyone, except as permitted by law.

A–4—Categories of Parties to Whom You Disclose (Institutions That Disclose Outside of the Exceptions)

You may use this clause, as applicable, to meet the requirement of §313.6(a)(3) to describe the categories of affiliates and nonaffiliated third parties to whom you disclose nonpublic personal information. You may use this clause if you disclose nonpublic personal information other than as permitted by the exceptions in §§313.13, 313.14, and 313.15, as well as when permitted by the exceptions in §§313.14, and 313.15.

Sample Clause A–4

We may disclose nonpublic personal information about you to the following types of third parties:

• Financial service providers, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''mortgage bankers, securities broker-dealers, and insurance agents''*];

• Non-financial companies, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''retailers, direct marketers, airlines, and publishers''*]; and

• Others, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''non-profit organizations''*].

We may also disclose nonpublic personal information about you to nonaffiliated third parties as permitted by law.

A–5—Service Provider/Joint Marketing Exception

You may use one of these clauses, as applicable, to meet the requirements of §313.6(a)(5) related to the exception for service providers and joint marketers in §313.13. If you disclose nonpublic personal information under this exception, you must describe the categories of nonpublic personal information you disclose and the categories of third parties with whom you have contracted.

Sample Clause A–5, Alternative 1

We may disclose the following information to companies that perform marketing services on our behalf or to other financial institutions with whom we have joint marketing agreements:

• Information we receive from you on applications or other forms, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''your name, address, social security number, assets, and income''*];

• Information about your transactions with us, our affiliates, or others, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''your account balance, payment history, parties to transactions, and credit card usage''*]; and

• Information we receive from a consumer reporting agency, such as [*provide illustrative examples, such as ''your creditworthiness and credit history''*].

Sample Clause A–5, Alternative 2

We may disclose all of the information we collect, as described [*describe location in the notice, such as ''above'' or ''below''*] to companies that perform marketing services on our behalf or to other financial institutions with whom we have joint marketing agreements.

A–6—Explanation of Opt Out Right (Institutions that Disclose Outside of the Exceptions)

You may use this clause, as applicable, to meet the requirement of §313.6(a)(6) to provide an explanation of the consumer's right to opt out of the disclosure of nonpublic personal information to nonaffiliated third parties, including the method(s) by which the consumer may exercise that right. You may use this clause if you disclose nonpublic personal information other than as permitted by the exceptions in §§313.13, 313.14, and 313.15.

Sample Clause A–6

If you prefer that we not disclose nonpublic personal information about you to nonaffiliated third parties, you may opt out of those disclosures, that is, you may direct us not to make those disclosures (other than disclosures permitted by law). If you wish to opt out of disclosures to nonaffiliated third parties, you may [*describe a reasonable means of opting out, such as ''call the following toll-free number: (insert number)''*].

A–7—Confidentiality and Security (All Institutions)

You may use this clause, as applicable, to meet the requirement of §313.6(a)(8) to describe your policies and practices with respect to protecting the confidentiality and security of nonpublic personal information.

Sample Clause A–7

We restrict access to nonpublic personal information about you to [*provide an appropriate description, such as ''those employees who need to know that information to provide products or services to you''*]. We maintain physical, electronic, and procedural safeguards that comply with federal regulations to guard your nonpublic personal information.

PART 314—STANDARDS FOR SAFEGUARDING CUSTOMER INFORMATION

Sec.
314.1 Purpose and scope.
314.2 Definitions.
314.3 Standards for safeguarding customer information.
314.4 Elements.
314.5 Effective date.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 6801(b), 6805(b)(2).

SOURCE: 67 FR 36493, May 23, 2002, unless otherwise noted.

§314.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) *Purpose*. This part, which implements sections 501 and 505(b)(2) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, sets forth standards for developing, implementing, and maintaining reasonable administrative, technical, and physical safeguards to protect the security, confidentiality, and integrity of customer information.

(b) *Scope*. This part applies to the handling of customer information by all financial institutions over which the Federal Trade Commission (''FTC'' or ''Commission'') has jurisdiction. This part refers to such entities as ''you.'' This part applies to all customer information in your possession, regardless of whether such information pertains to individuals with whom you have a customer relationship, or pertains to the customers of other financial institutions that have provided such information to you.

§314.2 Definitions.

(a) *In general*. Except as modified by this part or unless the context otherwise requires, the terms used in this part have the same meaning as set forth in the Commission's rule governing the Privacy of Consumer Financial Information, 16 CFR part 313.

(b) *Customer information* means any record containing nonpublic personal information as defined in 16 CFR 313.3(n), about a customer of a financial institution, whether in paper, electronic, or other form, that is handled or maintained by or on behalf of you or your affiliates.

(c) *Information security program* means the administrative, technical, or physical safeguards you use to access, collect, distribute, process, protect, store, use, transmit, dispose of, or otherwise handle customer information.

(d) *Service provider* means any person or entity that receives, maintains, processes, or otherwise is permitted access to customer information through its provision of services directly to a financial institution that is subject to this part.

§ 314.3 Standards for safeguarding customer information.

(a) *Information security program.* You shall develop, implement, and maintain a comprehensive information security program that is written in one or more readily accessible parts and contains administrative, technical, and physical safeguards that are appropriate to your size and complexity, the nature and scope of your activities, and the sensitivity of any customer information at issue. Such safeguards shall include the elements set forth in § 314.4 and shall be reasonably designed to achieve the objectives of this part, as set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) *Objectives.* The objectives of section 501(b) of the Act, and of this part, are to:

(1) Insure the security and confidentiality of customer information;

(2) Protect against any anticipated threats or hazards to the security or integrity of such information; and

(3) Protect against unauthorized access to or use of such information that could result in substantial harm or inconvenience to any customer.

§ 314.4 Elements.

In order to develop, implement, and maintain your information security program, you shall:

(a) Designate an employee or employees to coordinate your information security program.

(b) Identify reasonably foreseeable internal and external risks to the security, confidentiality, and integrity of customer information that could result in the unauthorized disclosure, misuse, alteration, destruction or other compromise of such information, and assess the sufficiency of any safeguards in place to control these risks. At a minimum, such a risk assessment should include consideration of risks in each relevant area of your operations, including:

(1) Employee training and management;

(2) Information systems, including network and software design, as well as information processing, storage, transmission and disposal; and

(3) Detecting, preventing and responding to attacks, intrusions, or other systems failures.

(c) Design and implement information safeguards to control the risks you identify through risk assessment, and regularly test or otherwise monitor the effectiveness of the safeguards' key controls, systems, and procedures.

(d) Oversee service providers, by:

(1) Taking reasonable steps to select and retain service providers that are capable of maintaining appropriate safeguards for the customer information at issue; and

(2) Requiring your service providers by contract to implement and maintain such safeguards.

(e) Evaluate and adjust your information security program in light of the results of the testing and monitoring required by paragraph (c) of this section; any material changes to your operations or business arrangements; or any other circumstances that you know or have reason to know may have a material impact on your information security program.

§ 314.5 Effective date.

(a) Each financial institution subject to the Commission's jurisdiction must implement an information security program pursuant to this part no later than May 23, 2003.

(b) Two-year grandfathering of service contracts. Until May 24, 2004, a contract you have entered into with a nonaffiliated third party to perform services for you or functions on your behalf satisfies the provisions of § 314.4(d), even if the contract does not include a requirement that the service provider maintain appropriate safeguards, as long as you entered into the contract not later than June 24, 2002.

PART 315—CONTACT LENS RULE

Sec.

315.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
315.2 Definitions.
315.3 Availability of contact lens prescriptions to patients.
315.4 Limits on requiring immediate payment.
315.5 Prescriber verification.
315.6 Expiration of contact lens prescriptions.

315.7 Content of advertisements and other representations.
315.8 Prohibition of certain waivers.
315.9 Enforcement.
315.10 Severability.
315.11 Effect on state and local laws.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–164, secs. 1–12; 117 Stat. 2024 (15 U.S.C. 7601–7610).

SOURCE: 69 FR 40508, July 2, 2004, unless otherwise noted.

§ 315.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

This part, which shall be called the ''Contact Lens Rule,'' implements the Fairness to Contact Lens Consumers Act, codified at 15 U.S.C. 7601–7610, which requires that rules be issued to address the release, verification, and sale of contact lens prescriptions. This part specifically governs contact lens prescriptions and related issues. Part 456 of Title 16 governs the availability of eyeglass prescriptions and related issues (the Ophthalmic Practice Rules (Eyeglass Rule)).

§ 315.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

Business hour means an hour between 9 a.m. and 5 p.m., during a weekday (Monday through Friday), excluding Federal holidays. ''Business hour'' also may include, at the seller's option, a prescriber's regular business hours on Saturdays, provided that the seller has actual knowledge of these hours. ''Business hour'' shall be determined based on the time zone of the prescriber.

''Eight (8) business hours'' shall be calculated from the time the prescriber receives the prescription verification information from the seller, and shall conclude when eight (8) business hours have elapsed. For verification requests received by a prescriber during non-business hours, the calculation of ''eight (8) business hours'' shall begin at 9 a.m. on the next weekday that is not a Federal holiday or, if applicable, on Saturday at the beginning of the prescriber's actual business hours.

Commission means the Federal Trade Commission.

Contact lens means any contact lens for which State or Federal law requires a prescription.

Contact lens fitting means the process that begins after an initial eye examination for contact lenses and ends when a successful fit has been achieved or, in the case of a renewal prescription, ends when the prescriber determines that no change in the existing prescription is required, and such term may include:

(1) An examination to determine lens specifications;

(2) Except in the case of a renewal of a contact lens prescription, an initial evaluation of the fit of the contact lens on the eye; and

(3) Medically necessary follow-up examinations.

Contact lens prescription means a prescription, issued in accordance with State and Federal law, that contains sufficient information for the complete and accurate filling of a prescription for contact lenses, including the following:

(1) The name of the patient;

(2) The date of examination;

(3) The issue date and expiration date of prescription;

(4) The name, postal address, telephone number, and facsimile telephone number of prescriber;

(5) The power, material or manufacturer or both of the prescribed contact lens;

(6) The base curve or appropriate designation of the prescribed contact lens;

(7) The diameter, when appropriate, of the prescribed contact lens; and

(8) In the case of a private label contact lens, the name of the manufacturer, trade name of the private label brand, and, if applicable, trade name of equivalent brand name.

Direct communication means completed communication by telephone, facsimile, or electronic mail.

Issue date means the date on which the patient receives a copy of the prescription at the completion of a contact lens fitting.

Ophthalmic goods are contact lenses, eyeglasses, or any component of eyeglasses.

Ophthalmic services are the measuring, fitting, and adjusting of ophthalmic goods subsequent to an eye examination.

Prescriber means, with respect to contact lens prescriptions, an ophthalmologist, optometrist, or other person permitted under State law to issue prescriptions for contact lenses in compliance with any applicable requirements established by the Food and Drug Administration. ''Other person,'' for purposes of this definition, includes a dispensing optician who is permitted under State law to issue prescriptions and who is authorized or permitted under State law to perform contact lens fitting services.

Private label contact lenses mean contact lenses that are sold under the label of a seller where the contact lenses are identical to lenses made by the same manufacturer but sold under the labels of other sellers.

§315.3 Availability of contact lens prescriptions to patients.

(a) *In general.* When a prescriber completes a contact lens fitting, the prescriber:

(1) Whether or not requested by the patient, shall provide to the patient a copy of the contact lens prescription; and

(2) Shall, as directed by any person designated to act on behalf of the patient, provide or verify the contact lens prescription by electronic or other means.

(b) *Limitations.* A prescriber may not:

(1) Require the purchase of contact lenses from the prescriber or from another person as a condition of providing a copy of a prescription under paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section or as a condition of verification of a prescription under paragraph (a)(2) of this section;

(2) Require payment in addition to, or as part of, the fee for an eye examination, fitting, and evaluation as a condition of providing a copy of a prescription under paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section or as a condition of verification of a prescription under paragraph (a)(2) of this section; or

(3) Require the patient to sign a waiver or release as a condition of releasing or verifying a prescription under paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section.

§315.4 Limits on requiring immediate payment.

A prescriber may require payment of fees for an eye examination, fitting, and evaluation before the release of a contact lens prescription, but only if the prescriber requires immediate payment in the case of an examination that reveals no requirement for ophthalmic goods. For purposes of the preceding sentence, presentation of proof of insurance coverage for that service shall be deemed to be a payment.

§315.5 Prescriber verification.

(a) *Prescription requirement.* A seller may sell contact lenses only in accordance with a contact lens prescription for the patient that is:

(1) Presented to the seller by the patient or prescriber directly or by facsimile; or

(2) Verified by direct communication.

(b) *Information for verification.* When seeking verification of a contact lens prescription, a seller shall provide the prescriber with the following information through direct communication:

(1) The patient's full name and address;

(2) The contact lens power, manufacturer, base curve or appropriate designation, and diameter when appropriate;

(3) The quantity of lenses ordered;

(4) The date of patient request;

(5) The date and time of verification request;

(6) The name of a contact person at the seller's company, including facsimile and telephone numbers; and

(7) If the seller opts to include the prescriber's regular business hours on Saturdays as ''business hours'' for purposes of paragraph (c)(3) of this section, a clear statement of the prescriber's regular Saturday business hours.

(c) *Verification events.* A prescription is verified under paragraph (a)(2) of this section only if one of the following occurs:

(1) The prescriber confirms the prescription is accurate by direct communication with the seller;

(2) The prescriber informs the seller through direct communication that the prescription is inaccurate and provides the accurate prescription; or

(3) The prescriber fails to communicate with the seller within eight (8) business hours after receiving from the seller the information described in paragraph (b) of this section. During these eight (8) business hours, the seller shall provide a reasonable opportunity for the prescriber to communicate with the seller concerning the verification request.

(d) *Invalid prescription.* If a prescriber informs a seller before the deadline under paragraph (c)(3) of this section that the contact lens prescription is inaccurate, expired, or otherwise invalid, the seller shall not fill the prescription. The prescriber shall specify the basis for the inaccuracy or invalidity of the prescription. If the prescription communicated by the seller to the prescriber is inaccurate, the prescriber shall correct it, and the prescription shall then be deemed verified under paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(e) *No alteration of prescription.* A seller may not alter a contact lens prescription. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, a seller may substitute for private label contact lenses specified on a prescription identical contact lenses that the same company manufactures and sells under different labels.

(f) *Recordkeeping requirement—verification requests.* A seller shall maintain a record of all direct communications referred to in paragraph (a) of this section. Such record shall consist of the following:

(1) For prescriptions presented to the seller: the prescription itself, or the facsimile version thereof (including an email containing a digital image of the prescription), that was presented to the seller by the patient or prescriber.

(2) For verification requests by the seller:

(i) If the communication occurs via facsimile or e-mail, a copy of the verification request, including the information provided to the prescriber pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, and confirmation of the completed transmission thereof, including a record of the date and time the request was made;

(ii) If the communication occurs via telephone, a log:

(A) Describing the information provided pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section,

(B) Setting forth the date and time the request was made,

(C) Indicating how the call was completed, and

(D) Listing the names of the individuals who participated in the call.

(3) For communications from the prescriber, including prescription verifications:

(i) If the communication occurs via facsimile or e-mail, a copy of the communication and a record of the time and date it was received;

(ii) If the communication occurs via telephone, a log describing the information communicated, the date and time that the information was received, and the names of the individuals who participated in the call.

(4) The records required to be maintained under this section shall be maintained for a period of not less than three years, and these records must be available for inspection by the Federal Trade Commission, its employees, and its representatives.

(g) *Recordkeeping requirement—Saturday business hours.* A seller that exercises its option to include a prescriber's regular Saturday business hours in the time period for verification specified in § 315.5(c)(3) shall maintain a record of the prescriber's regular Saturday business hours and the basis for the seller's actual knowledge thereof. Such records shall be maintained for a period of not less than three years, and these records must be available for inspection by the Federal Trade Commission, its employees, and its representatives.

§ 315.6 Expiration of contact lens prescriptions.

(a) *In general.* A contact lens prescription shall expire:

(1) On the date specified by the law of the State in which the prescription was written, if that date is one year or more after the issue date of the prescription;

(2) Not less than one year after the issue date of the prescription if such State law specifies no date or specifies a date that is less than one year after the issue date of the prescription; or

(3) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, on the date specified by the prescriber, if that date is based on the medical judgment of the prescriber with respect to the ocular health of the patient.

(b) *Special rules for prescriptions of less than one year*. (1) If a prescription expires in less than one year, the specific reasons for the medical judgment referred to in paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be documented in the patient's medical record with sufficient detail to allow for review by a qualified professional in the field.

(2) The documentation described in the paragraph above shall be maintained for a period of not less than three years, and it must be available for inspection by the Federal Trade Commission, its employees, and its representatives.

(3) No prescriber shall include an expiration date on a prescription that is less than the period of time that he or she recommends for a reexamination of the patient that is medically necessary.

§315.7 Content of advertisements and other representations.

Any person who engages in the manufacture, processing, assembly, sale, offering for sale, or distribution of contact lenses may not represent, by advertisement, sales presentation, or otherwise, that contact lenses may be obtained without a prescription.

§315.8 Prohibition of certain waivers.

A prescriber may not place on a prescription, or require the patient to sign, or deliver to the patient, a form or notice waiving or disclaiming the liability or responsibility of the prescriber for the accuracy of the eye examination. The preceding sentence does not impose liability on a prescriber for the ophthalmic goods and services dispensed by another seller pursuant to the prescriber's correctly verified prescription.

§315.9 Enforcement.

Any violation of this Rule shall be treated as a violation of a rule under section 18 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57a, regarding unfair or deceptive acts or practices, and the Commission will enforce this Rule in the same manner, by the same means, and with the same jurisdiction, powers, and duties as are available to it pursuant to the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq*.

§315.10 Severability.

The provisions of this part are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

§315.11 Effect on state and local laws.

(a) State and local laws and regulations that establish a prescription expiration date of less than one year or that restrict prescription release or require active verification are preempted.

(b) Any other State or local laws or regulations that are inconsistent with the Act or this part are preempted to the extent of the inconsistency.

PART 316—RULES IMPLEMENTING THE CAN-SPAM ACT OF 2003

Sec.
316.1 Scope.
316.2 Definitions.
316.3 Primary purpose.
316.4 Requirement to place warning labels on commercial electronic mail that contains sexually oriented material.
316.5 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 7701–7713.

SOURCE: At 70 FR 3127, Jan. 19, 2005, unless otherwise noted.

§316.1 Scope.

This part implements the Controlling the Assault of Non-Solicited Pornography and Marketing Act of 2003 (''CAN-SPAM Act''), 15 U.S.C. 7701–7713.

§316.2 Definitions.

(a) The definition of the term ''affirmative consent'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(1).

(b) ''Character'' means an element of the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (''ASCII'') character set.

(c) The definition of the term ''commercial electronic mail message'' is

the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(2).

(d) The definition of the term ''electronic mail address'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(5).

(e) The definition of the term ''electronic mail message'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(6).

(f) The definition of the term ''initiate'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(9).

(g) The definition of the term ''Internet'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(10).

(h) The definition of the term ''procure'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(12).

(i) The definition of the term ''protected computer'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(13).

(j) The definition of the term ''recipient'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(14).

(k) The definition of the term ''routine conveyance'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(15).

(l) The definition of the term ''sender'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(16).

(m) The definition of the term ''sexually oriented material'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7704(d)(4).

(n) The definition of the term ''transactional or relationship message'' is the same as the definition of that term in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(17).

§ 316.3 Primary purpose.

(a) In applying the term ''commercial electronic mail message'' defined in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(2), the ''primary purpose'' of an electronic mail message shall be deemed to be commercial based on the criteria in paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) and (b) of this section:[1]

(1) If an electronic mail message consists exclusively of the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service, then the ''primary purpose'' of the message shall be deemed to be commercial.

(2) If an electronic mail message contains both the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service as well as transactional or relationship content as set forth in paragraph (c) of this section, then the ''primary purpose'' of the message shall be deemed to be commercial if:

(i) A recipient reasonably interpreting the subject line of the electronic mail message would likely conclude that the message contains the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service; or

(ii) The electronic mail message's transactional or relationship content as set forth in paragraph (c) of this section does *not* appear, in whole or in substantial part, at the beginning of the body of the message.

(3) If an electronic mail message contains both the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service as well as other content that is not transactional or relationship content as set forth in paragraph (c) of this section, then the ''primary purpose'' of the message shall be deemed to be commercial if:

(i) A recipient reasonably interpreting the subject line of the electronic mail message would likely conclude that the message contains the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service; or

(ii) A recipient reasonably interpreting the body of the message would likely conclude that the primary purpose of the message is the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service. Factors illustrative of those relevant to this interpretation include the placement of

[1] The Commission does not intend for these criteria to treat as a ''commercial electronic mail message'' anything that is not commercial speech.

content that is the commercial advertisement or promotion of a commercial product or service, in whole or in substantial part, at the beginning of the body of the message; the proportion of the message dedicated to such content; and how color, graphics, type size, and style are used to highlight commercial content.

(b) In applying the term ''transactional or relationship message'' defined in the CAN-SPAM Act, 15 U.S.C. 7702(17), the ''primary purpose'' of an electronic mail message shall be deemed to be transactional or relationship if the electronic mail message consists exclusively of transactional or relationship content as set forth in paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Transactional or relationship content of e-mail messages under the CAN-SPAM Act is content:

(1) To facilitate, complete, or confirm a commercial transaction that the recipient has previously agreed to enter into with the sender;

(2) To provide warranty information, product recall information, or safety or security information with respect to a commercial product or service used or purchased by the recipient;

(3) With respect to a subscription, membership, account, loan, or comparable ongoing commercial relationship involving the ongoing purchase or use by the recipient of products or services offered by the sender, to provide—

(i) Notification concerning a change in the terms or features;

(ii) Notification of a change in the recipient's standing or status; or

(iii) At regular periodic intervals, account balance information or other type of account statement;

(4) To provide information directly related to an employment relationship or related benefit plan in which the recipient is currently involved, participating, or enrolled; or

(5) To deliver goods or services, including product updates or upgrades, that the recipient is entitled to receive under the terms of a transaction that the recipient has previously agreed to enter into with the sender.

§316.4 Requirement to place warning labels on commercial electronic mail that contains sexually oriented material.

(a) Any person who initiates, to a protected computer, the transmission of a commercial electronic mail message that includes sexually oriented material must:

(1) Exclude sexually oriented materials from the subject heading for the electronic mail message and include in the subject heading the phrase ''SEXUALLY-EXPLICIT:'' in capital letters as the first nineteen (19) characters at the beginning of the subject line;[2]

(2) Provide that the content of the message that is initially viewable by the recipient, when the message is opened by any recipient and absent any further actions by the recipient, include only the following information:

(i) The phrase ''SEXUALLY-EXPLICIT:'' in a clear and conspicuous manner;[3]

(ii) Clear and conspicuous identification that the message is an advertisement or solicitation;

(iii) Clear and conspicuous notice of the opportunity of a recipient to decline to receive further commercial electronic mail messages from the sender;

(iv) A functioning return electronic mail address or other Internet-based mechanism, clearly and conspicuously displayed, that—

(A) A recipient may use to submit, in a manner specified in the message, a reply electronic mail message or other form of Internet-based communication requesting not to receive future commercial electronic mail messages from that sender at the electronic mail address where the message was received; and

(B) Remains capable of receiving such messages or communications for no less than 30 days after the transmission of the original message;

[2]The phrase ''SEXUALLY-EXPLICIT'' comprises 17 characters, including the dash between the two words. The colon (:) and the space following the phrase are the 18th and 19th characters.

[3]This phrase consists of nineteen (19) characters and is identical to the phrase required in section 316.4(a)(1).

(v) Clear and conspicuous display of a valid physical postal address of the sender; and

(vi) Any needed instructions on how to access, or activate a mechanism to access, the sexually oriented material, preceded by a clear and conspicuous statement that to avoid viewing the sexually oriented material, a recipient should delete the e-mail message without following such instructions.

(b) *Prior affirmative consent.* Paragraph (a) of this section does not apply to the transmission of an electronic mail message if the recipient has given prior affirmative consent to receipt of the message.

§ 316.5 Severability.

The provisions of this part are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

SUBCHAPTER D—TRADE REGULATION RULES

PART 408—UNFAIR OR DECEPTIVE ADVERTISING AND LABELING OF CIGARETTES IN RELATION TO THE HEALTH HAZARDS OF SMOKING

CROSS REFERENCE: For a statement of basis and purpose of Trade Regulation Rule, see 29 FR 8325 of July 2, 1964.

[30 FR 9485, July 29, 1965]

PART 410—DECEPTIVE ADVERTISING AS TO SIZES OF VIEWABLE PICTURES SHOWN BY TELEVISION RECEIVING SETS

§ 410.1 The Rule.

In connection with the sale of television receiving sets, in commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair method of competition and an unfair and deceptive act or practice to use any figure or size designation to refer to the size of the picture shown by a television receiving set or the picture tube contained therein unless such indicated size is the actual size of the viewable picture area measured on a single plane basis. If the indicated size is other than the horizontal dimension of the actual viewable picture area such size designation shall be accompanied by a statement, in close connection and conjunction therewith, clearly and conspicuously showing the manner of measurement.

NOTE 1: For the purposes of this part, measurement of the picture area on a single plane basis refers to a measurement of the distance between the outer extremities (sides) of the picture area which does not take into account the curvature of the tube.

NOTE 2: Any referenced or footnote disclosure of the manner of measurement by means of the asterisk or some similar symbol does not satisfy the ''close connection and conjunction'' requirement of this part.

Examples of proper size descriptions when a television receiving set shows a 20-inch picture measured diagonally, a 19-inch picture measured horizontally, a 15-inch picture measured vertically, and a picture area of 262 square inches include:

''20 inch (50.80 cm) picture measured diagonally'' or
''20 inch (50.80 cm) diagonal''
''19 inch × 15 inch (48.26 cm × 38.10 cm) picture'' or
''19 inch (48.26 cm) picture'' or
''19 inch (48.26 cm)'' or
''262 square inch (1,690.32 cm. sq.) picture.''

Examples of improper size descriptions of a television set showing a picture of the size described above include:

''21 inch (53.34 cm) set'' or
''21 inch (53.34 cm) diagonal set'' or
''21 inch (53.34 cm) over-all diagonal'' or
''Brand Name 21.''

NOTE 3: The numbers in parentheses reflect the metric equivalent of the English measurements. They are provided for information purposes only, and are not required to be included in the disclosures.

(38 Stat. 717, as amended, 15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[36 FR 21518, Nov. 10, 1971; 36 FR 22286, Nov. 24, 1971; as amended at 59 FR 54812, Nov. 2, 1994]

PART 423—CARE LABELING OF TEXTILE WEARING APPAREL AND CERTAIN PIECE GOODS AS AMENDED

Sec.
423.1 Definitions.
423.2 Terminology.
423.3 What this regulation does.
423.4 Who is covered.
423.5 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.
423.6 Textile wearing apparel.
423.7 Certain piece goods.
423.8 Exemptions.
423.9 Conflict with flammability standards.
423.10 Stayed or invalid parts.
APPENDIX A TO PART 423—GLOSSARY OF STANDARD TERMS

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41, et seq.)

SOURCE: 48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983, unless otherwise noted.

§ 423.1 Definitions.

(a) *Care label* means a permanent label or tag, containing regular care information and instructions, that is attached or affixed in such a manner that it will not become separated from the product and will remain legible during the useful life of the product.

(b) *Certain Piece Goods* means textile products sold by the piece from bolts or rolls for the purpose of making home sewn textile wearing apparel. This includes remnants, the fiber content of which is known, that are cut by or for a retailer but does not include manufacturers' remnants, up to ten yards long, that are clearly and conspicuously marked *pound goods* or *fabrics of undetermined origin* (i.e., fiber content is not known and cannot be easily ascertained) and trim, up to five inches wide.

(c) *Dryclean* means a commercial process by which soil is removed from products or specimens in a machine which uses any common organic solvent (e.g. petroleum, perchlorethylene, fluorocarbon). The process may also include adding moisture to the solvent, up to 75% relative humidity, hot tumble drying up to 160 degrees F (71 degrees C) and restoration by steam press or steam-air finishing.

(d) *Machine Wash* means a process by which soil is removed from products in a specially designed machine using water, detergent or soap and agitation. When no temperature is given, e.g., *warm* or *cold*, hot water up to 145 degrees F (63 degrees C) can be regularly used.

(e) *Regular Care* means customary and routine care, not spot care.

(f) *Textile Product* means any commodity, woven, knit or otherwise made primarily of fiber, yarn or fabric and intended for sale or resale, requiring care and maintenance to effectuate ordinary use and enjoyment.

(g) *Textile Wearing Apparel* means any finished garment or article of clothing made from a textile product that is customarily used to cover or protect any part of the body, including hosiery, excluding footwear, gloves, hats or other articles used exclusively to cover or protect the head or hands.

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983, as amended at 65 FR 47275, Aug. 2, 2000]

§ 423.2 Terminology.

(a) Any appropriate terms may be used on care labels or care instructions so long as they clearly and accurately describe regular care procedures and otherwise fulfill the requirements of this regulation.

(b) Any appropriate symbols may be used on care labels or care instructions, in addition to the required appropriate terms so long as the terms fulfill the requirements of this part. See § 423.8(g) for conditional exemption allowing the use of symbols without terms.

(c) The terminology set forth in appendix A may be used to fulfill the requirements of this regulation.

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983; 62 FR 29008, May 29, 1997]

§ 423.3 What this regulation does.

This regulation requires manufacturers and importers of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods, in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, to provide regular care instructions at the time such products are sold to purchasers through the use of care labels or other methods described in this rule.

§ 423.4 Who is covered.

Manufacturers and importers of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods are covered by this regulation. This includes any person or organization that directs or controls the manufacture or importation of covered products.

§ 423.5 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

(a) *Textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods*. In connection with the sale, in or affecting commerce, of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a manufacturer or importer:

(1) To fail to disclose to a purchaser, prior to sale, instructions which prescribe a regular care procedure necessary for the ordinary use and enjoyment of the product;

(2) To fail to warn a purchaser, prior to sale, when the product cannot be cleaned by any cleaning procedure, without being harmed;

(3) To fail to warn a purchaser, prior to sale, when any part of the prescribed regular care procedure, which a consumer or professional cleaner could

reasonably be expected to use, would harm the product or others being cleaned with it;

(4) To fail to provide regular care instructions and warnings, except as to piece goods, in a form that can be referred to by the consumer throughout the useful life of the product;

(5) To fail to possess, prior to sale, a reasonable basis for all regular care information disclosed to the purchaser.

(b) *Violations of this regulation.* The Commission has adopted this regulation to prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices, defined in paragraph (a) of this section. Each manufacturer or importer covered by this regulation must comply with the requirements in §§ 423.2 and 423.6 through 423.8 of this regulation. Any manufacturer or importer who complies with the requirements of §§ 423.2 and 423.6 through 423.8 does not violate this regulation.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 3084–0046)

§ 423.6 Textile wearing apparel.

This section applies to textile wearing apparel.

(a) Manufacturers and importers must attach care labels so that they can be seen or easily found when the product is offered for sale to consumers. If the product is packaged, displayed, or folded so that customers cannot see or easily find the label, the care information must also appear on the outside of the package or on a hang tag fastened to the product.

(b) Care labels must state what regular care is needed for the ordinary use of the product. In general, labels for textile wearing apparel must have either a washing instruction or a drycleaning instruction. If a washing instruction is included, it must comply with the requirements set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section. If a drycleaning instruction is included, it must comply with the requirements set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section. If either washing or drycleaning can be used on the product, the label need have only one of these instructions. If the product cannot be cleaned by any available cleaning method without being harmed, the label must so state. [For example, if a product would be harmed both by washing and by drycleaning, the label might say ''Do not wash—do not dryclean,'' or ''Cannot be successfully cleaned.''] The instructions for washing and drycleaning are as follows:

(1) Washing, drying, ironing, bleaching and warning instructions must follow these requirements:

(i) *Washing.* The label must state whether the product should be washed by hand or machine. The label must also state a water temperature—in terms such as *cold*, *warm*, or *hot*—that may be used. However, if the regular use of hot water up to 145 degrees F (63 degrees C) will not harm the product, the label need not mention any water temperature. [For example, *Machine wash* means hot, warm or cold water can be used.]

(ii) *Drying.* The label must state whether the product should be dried by machine or by some other method. If machine drying is called for, the label must also state a drying temperature that may be used. However, if the regular use of a high temperature will not harm the product, the label need not mention any drying temperature. [For example, *Tumble dry* means that a high, medium, or low temperature setting can be used.]

(iii) *Ironing.* Ironing must be mentioned on a label only if it will be needed on a regular basis to preserve the appearance of the product, or if it is required under paragraph (b)(1)(v) of this section, *Warnings.* If ironing is mentioned, the label must also state an ironing temperature that may be used. However, if the regular use of a hot iron will not harm the product, the label need not mention any ironing temperature.

(iv) *Bleaching.* (A) If all commercially available bleaches can safely be used on a regular basis, the label need not mention bleaching.

(B) If all commercially available bleaches would harm the product when used on a regular basis, the label must say ''No bleach'' or ''Do not bleach.''

(C) If regular use of chlorine bleach would harm the product, but regular use of a non-chlorine bleach would not, the label must say ''Only non-chlorine bleach, when needed.''

(v) *Warnings.* (A) If there is any part of the prescribed washing procedure

which consumers can reasonably be expected to use that would harm the product or others being washed with it in one or more washings, the label must contain a warning to this effect. The warning must use words ''Do not,'' ''No,'' ''Only,'' or some other clear wording. [For example, if a shirt is not colorfast, its label should state ''Wash with like colors'' or ''Wash separately.'' If a pair of pants will be harmed by ironing, its label should state ''Do not iron.'']

(B) Warnings are not necessary for any procedure that is an alternative to the procedure prescribed on the label. [For example, if an instruction states ''Dry flat,'' it is not necessary to give the warning ''Do not tumble dry.'']

(2) *Drycleaning*—(i) *General.* If a drycleaning instruction is included on the label, it must also state at least one type of solvent that may be used. However, if all commercially available types of solvent can be used, the label need not mention any types of solvent. The terms ''Drycleanable'' or ''Commercially Dryclean'' may not be used in an instruction. [For example, if drycleaning in perchlorethylene would harm a coat, the label might say ''Professionally dryclean: fluorocarbon or petroleum.'']

(ii) *Warnings.* (A) If there is any part of the drycleaning procedure which consumers or drycleaners can reasonably be expected to use that would harm the product or others being cleaned with it, the label must contain a warning to this effect. The warning must use the words ''Do not,'' ''No,'' ''Only,'' or some other clear wording. [For example, the drycleaning process normally includes moisture addition to solvent up to 75% relative humidity, hot tumble drying up to 160 degrees F and restoration by steam press or steam-air finish. If a product can be drycleaned in all solvents but steam should not be used, its label should state ''Professionally dryclean. No steam.'']

(B) Warnings are not necessary to any procedure which is an alternative to the procedure prescribed on the label. [For example, if an instruction states ''Professionally dryclean, fluorocarbon,'' it is not necessary to give the warning ''Do not use perchlorethylene.'']

(c) A manufacturer or importer must establish a reasonable basis for care information by processing prior to sale:

(1) Reliable evidence that the product was not harmed when cleaned reasonably often according to the instructions on the label, including instructions when silence has a meaning. [For example, if a shirt is labeled ''Machine wash. Tumble dry. Cool iron.,'' the manufacturer or importer must have reliable proof that the shirt is not harmed when cleaned by machine washing (in hot water), with any type of bleach, tumble dried (at a high setting), and ironed with a cool iron]; or

(2) Reliable evidence that the product or a fair sample of the product was harmed when cleaned by methods warned against on the label. However, the manufacturer or importer need not have proof of harm when silence does not constitute a warning. [For example, if a shirt is labeled ''Machine wash warm. Tumble dry medium'', the manufacturer need not have proof that the shirt would be harmed if washed in hot water or dried on high setting]; or

(3) Reliable evidence, like that described in paragraph (c)(1) or (2) of this section, for each component part of the product in conjunction with reliable evidence for the garment as a whole; or

(4) Reliable evidence that the product or a fair sample of the product was successfully tested. The tests may simulate the care suggested or warned against on the label; or

(5) Reliable evidence of current technical literature, past experience, or the industry expertise supporting the care information on the label; or

(6) Other reliable evidence.

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983, as amended at 65 FR 47275, Aug. 2, 2000]

§ 423.7 Certain piece goods.

This section applies to certain piece goods.

(a) Manufacturers and importers of certain piece goods must provide care information clearly and conspicuously on the end of each bolt or roll.

(b) Care information must say what regular care is needed for the ordinary

use of the product, pursuant to the instructions set forth in §423.6. Care information on the end of the bolt need only address information applicable to the fabric.

§423.8 Exemptions.

(a) Any item of textile wearing apparel, without pockets, that is totally reversible (i.e., the product is designed to be used with either side as the outer part or face) is exempt from the care label requirement.

(b) Manufacturers or importers can ask for an exemption from the care label requirement for any other textile wearing apparel product or product line, if the label would harm the appearance or usefulness of the product. The request must be made in writing to the Secretary of the Commission. The request must be accompanied by a labeled sample of the product and a full statement explaining why the request should be granted.

(c) If an item is exempt from care labeling under paragraph (a) or (b), of this section the consumers still must be given the required care information for the product. However, the care information can be put on a hang tag, on the package, or in some other conspicuous place, so that consumers will be able to see the care information before buying the product.

(d) Manufacturers and importers of products covered by §423.5 are exempt from the requirement for a permanent care label if the product can be cleaned safely under the harshest procedures. This exemption is available only if there is reliable proof that all of the following washing and drycleaning procedures can safely be used on a product:

(1) Machine washing in hot water;

(2) Machine drying at a high setting;

(3) Ironing at a hot setting;

(4) Bleaching with all commercially available bleaches;

(5) Drycleaning with all commercially available solvents. In such case, the statement ''wash or dry clean, any normal method'' must appear on a hang tag, on the package, or in some other conspicuous place, so that consumers will be able to see the statement before buying the product.

If a product meets the requirements outlined above, it is automatically exempt from the care label requirement. It is not necessary to file a request for this exemption.

(e) Manufacturers and importers need not provide care information with products sold to institutional buyers for commercial use.

(f) All exemption granted under §423.1(c) (1) or (2) or the Care Labeling Rule issued on December 9, 1971, will continue to be in effect if the product still meets the standards on which the original exemption was based. Otherwise, the exemption is automatically revoked.

(g) The symbol system developed by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and designated as ASTM Standard D5489–96c Guide to Care Symbols for Care Instructions on Consumer Textile Products may be used on care labels or care instructions in lieu of terms so long as the symbols fulfill the requirements of this part. In addition, symbols from the symbol system designated as ASTM Standard D5489–96c may be combined with terms so long as the symbols and terms used fulfill the requirements of this part. Provided, however, that for the 18-month period beginning on July 1, 1997, such symbols may be used on care labels in lieu of terms only if an explanation of the meaning of the symbols used on the care label in terms is attached to, or provided with, the item of textile wearing apparel. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASTM Standard D5489–96c Guide to Care Symbols for Care Instructions on Textile Products may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202–741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/*

code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html.

(15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983; 62 FR 29008, May 29, 1997; 69 FR 18803, Apr. 9, 2004]

§ 423.9 Conflict with flammability standards.

If there is a conflict between this regulation and any regulations issued under the Flammable Fabrics Act, the Flammable Fabics regulation govern over this one.

§ 423.10 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this regulation is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

APPENDIX A TO PART 423—GLOSSARY OF STANDARD TERMS

1. *Washing, Machine Methods:*

a. ''Machine wash''—a process by which soil may be removed from products or specimens through the use of water, detergent or soap, agitation, and a machine designed for this purpose. When no temperature is given, e.g., ''warm'' or ''cold,'' hot water up to 145 degrees F (63 degrees C) can be regularly used.

b. ''Hot''—initial water temperature ranging from 112 to 145 degrees F [45 to 63 degrees C].

c. ''Warm''—initial water temperature ranging from 87 to 111 degrees F [31 to 44 degrees C].

d. ''Cold''—initial water temperature up to 86 degrees F [30 degrees C].

e. ''Do not have commercially laundered''—do not employ a laundry which uses special formulations, sour rinses, extermely large loads or extermely high temperatures or which otherwise is employed for commercial, industrial or institutional use. Employ laundering methods designed for residential use or use in a self-service establishment.

f. ''Small load''—smaller than normal washing load.

g. ''Delicate cycle'' or ''gentle cycle''—slow agitation and reduced time.

h. ''Durable press cycle'' or ''permanent press cycle''—cool down rinse or cold rinse before reduced spinning.

i. ''Separately''—alone.

j. ''With like colors''—with colors of similar hue and intensity.

k. ''Wash inside out''—turn product inside out to protect face of fabric.

l. ''Warm rinse''—initial water temperature setting 90° to 110 °F (32° to 43 °C).

m. ''Cold rinse''—initial water temperature setting same as cold water tap up to 85 °F (29 °C).

n. ''Rinse thoroughly''—rinse several times to remove detergent, soap, and bleach.

o. ''No spin'' or ''Do not spin''—remove material start of final spin cycle.

p. ''No wring'' or ''Do not wring''—do not use roller wringer, nor wring by hand.

2. *Washing, Hand Methods:*

a. ''Hand wash''—a process by which soil may be manually removed from products or specimens through the use of water, detergent or soap, and gentle squeezing action. When no temperature is given, e.g., ''warm'' or ''cold'', hot water up to 150 °F (66 °C) can be regularly used.

b. ''Warm''—initial water temperature 90° to 110 °F (32° to 43 °C) (hand comfortable).

c. ''Cold''—initial water temperature same as cold water tap up to 85 °F (29 °C).

d. ''Separately''—alone.

e. ''With like colors''—with colors of similar hue and intensity.

f. ''No wring or twist''—handle to avoid wrinkles and distortion.

g. ''Rinse thoroughly''—rinse several times to remove detergent, soap, and bleach.

h. ''Damp wipe only''—surface clean with damp cloth or sponge.

3. *Drying, All Methods:*

a. ''Tumble dry''—use machine dryer. When no temperature setting is given, machine drying at a hot setting may be regularly used.

b. ''Medium''—set dryer at medium heat.

c. ''Low''—set dryer at low heat.

d. ''Durable press'' or ''Permanent press''—set dryer at permanent press setting.

e. ''No heat''—set dryer to operate without heat.

f. ''Remove promptly''—when items are dry, remove immediately to prevent wrinkling.

g. ''Drip dry''—hang dripping wet with or without hand shaping and smoothing.

h. ''Line dry''—hang damp from line or bar in or out of doors.

i. ''Line dry in shade''—dry away from sun.

j. ''Line dry away from heat''—dry away from heat.

k. ''Dry flat''—lay out horizontally for drying.

l. ''Block to dry''—reshape to original dimensions while drying.

m. ''Smooth by hand''—by hand, while wet, remove wrinkles, straighten seams and facings.

4. *Ironing and Pressing:*

a. ''Iron''—Ironing is needed. When no temperature is given iron at the highest temperature setting may be regularly used.

b. ''Warm iron''—medium temperature setting.

c. ''Cool iron''—lowest temperature setting.

d. ''Do not iron''—item not to be smoothed or finished with an iron.

e. ''Iron wrong side only''—article turned inside out for ironing or pressing.

f. ''No steam'' or ''Do not steam''—steam in any form not to be used.

g. ''Steam only''—steaming without contact pressure.

h. ''Steam press'' or ''Steam iron''—use iron at steam setting.

i. ''Iron damp''—articles to be ironed should feel moist.

j. ''Use press cloth''—use a dry or a damp cloth between iron and fabric.

5. *Bleaching:*

a. ''Bleach when needed''—all bleaches may be used when necessary.

b. ''No bleach'' or ''Do not bleach''—no bleaches may be used.

c. ''Only non-chlorine bleach, when needed''—only the bleach specified may be used when necessary. Chlorine bleach may not be used.

6. *Washing or Drycleaning:*

a. ''Wash or dryclean, any normal method''—can be machine washed in hot water, can be machine dried at a high setting, can be ironed at a hot setting, can be bleached with all commercially available bleaches and can be drycleaned with all commercially available solvents.

7. *Drycleaning, All Procedures:*

a. ''Dryclean''—a process by which soil may be removed from products or specimens in a machine which uses any common organic solvent (for example, petroleum, perchlorethylene, fluorocarbon) located in any commercial establishment. The process may include moisture addition to solvent up to 75% relative humidity, hot tumble drying up to 160 °F (71 °C) and restoration by steam press or steam-air finishing.

b. ''Professionally dryclean''—use the drycleaning process but modified to ensure optimum results either by a drycleaning attendant or through the use of a drycleaning machine which permits such modifications or both. Such modifications or special warnings must be included in the care instruction.

c. ''Petroleum'', ''Fluorocarbon'', or ''Perchlorethylene''—employ solvent(s) specified to dryclean the item.

d. ''Short cycle''—reduced or minimum cleaning time, depending upon solvent used.

e. ''Minimum extraction''—least possible extraction time.

f. ''Reduced moisture'' or ''Low moisture''—decreased relative humidity.

g. ''No tumble'' or ''Do not tumble''—do not tumble dry.

h. ''Tumble warm''—tumble dry up to 120 °F (49 °C).

i. ''Tumble cool''—tumble dry at room temperature.

j. ''Cabinet dry warm''—cabinet dry up to 120 °F (49 °C).

k. ''Cabinet dry cool''—cabinet dry at room temperature.

l. ''Steam only''—employ no contact pressure when steaming.

m. ''No steam'' or ''Do not steam''—do not use steam in pressing, finishing, steam cabinets or wands.

8. *Leather and Suede Cleaning:*

a. ''Leather clean''—have cleaned only by a professional cleaner who uses special leather or suede care methods.

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24868, June 3, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983, as amended at 65 FR 47275, Aug. 2, 2000]

PART 424—RETAIL FOOD STORE ADVERTISING AND MARKETING PRACTICES

Sec.
424.1 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.
424.2 Defenses.

AUTHORITY: 88 Stat. 2193, as amended: 15 U.S.C. 57a(a)(1)(B).

§424.1 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

In connection with the sale of offering for sale by retail food stores of food, grocery products or other merchandise to consumers in or affecting commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in section 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1), to offer any such products for sale at a stated price, by means of an advertisement disseminated in an area served by any stores which are covered by the advertisement, if those stores do not have the advertised products in stock and readily available to customers during the effective period of the advertisement, unless the advertisement clearly and adequately discloses that supplies of the advertised products are limited or the advertised products are available only at some outlets.

[54 FR 35467, Aug. 28, 1989]

§424.2 Defenses.

No violation of §424.1 shall be found if:

(a) The advertised products were ordered in adequate time for delivery in

quantities sufficient to meet reasonably anticipated demand;

(b) The food retailer offers a ''raincheck'' for the advertised products;

(c) The food retailer offers at the advertised price or at a comparable price reduction a similar product that is at least comparable in value to the advertised product; or

(d) The food retailer offers other compensation at least equal to the advertised value.

DISSENTING STATEMENT OF COMMISSIONER CALVANI

I dissent from the Commission's decision today to amend the Retail Food Store Advertising and Marketing Practices Trade Regulation Rule (the Unavailability Rule). The Commission has acknowledged today that the original Unavailability Rule is not justified, and approved amendments designed to lower its costs to grocers. However, in my view, common sense tells us that in the highly competitive grocery store business, where consumers return week after week to the same store, any supermarket that frustrates its customers through unavailability of advertised items will not long keep those customers. In other words, it is clear to me that existing market forces adequately police unavailability, and that, therefore, no Federal Trade Commission rule is necessary, amended or otherwise. The Commission's action today to retain even an amended Unavailability Rule does not conform to common sense.

STATEMENT OF COMMISSIONER ANDREW J. STRENIO, JR., RETAIL FOOD STORE ADVERTISING AND MARKETING PRACTICES RULE

Although revising the ''Unavailability Rule'' has a certain intuitive appeal, there is insufficient evidence on the record to conclude that these changes will result in net consumer benefits. Accordingly, I could not support amending the Rule in this manner. However, now that the step has been taken, it is to be hoped that experience will bear out the optimistic expectations of the Commission majority.

[54 FR 35467, Aug. 28, 1989]

PART 425—USE OF PRENOTIFICATION NEGATIVE OPTION PLANS

§ 425.1 The rule.

(a) In connection with the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of goods and merchandise in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice, for a seller in connection with the use of any negative option plan to fail to comply with the following requirements:

(1) Promotional material shall clearly and conspicuously disclose the material terms of the plan, including:

(i) That aspect of the plan under which the subscriber must notify the seller, in the manner provided for by the seller, if he does not wish to purchase the selection;

(ii) Any obligation assumed by the subscriber to purchase a minimum quantity of merchandise;

(iii) The right of a contract-complete subscriber to cancel his membership at any time;

(iv) Whether billing charges will include an amount for postage and handling;

(v) A disclosure indicating that the subscriber will be provided with at least ten (10) days in which to mail any form, contained in or accompanying an announcement identifying the selection, to the seller;

(vi) A disclosure that the seller will credit the return of any selections sent to a subscriber, and guarantee to the Postal Service or the subscriber postage to return such selections to the seller when the announcement and form are not received by the subscriber in time to afford him at least ten (10) days in which to mail his form to the seller;

(vii) The frequency with which the announcements and forms will be sent to the subscriber and the maximum number of announcements and forms which will be sent to him during a 12-month period.

(2) Prior to sending any selection, the seller shall mail to its subscribers, within the time specified by paragraph (a)(3) of this section:

(i) An announcement identifying the selection;

(ii) A form, contained in or accompanying the announcement, clearly and conspicuously disclosing that the subscriber will receive the selection identified in the announcement unless he instructs the seller that he does not

want the selection, designating a procedure by which the form may be used for the purpose of enabling the subscriber so to instruct the seller, and specifying either the return date or the mailing date.

(3) The seller shall mail the announcement and form either at least twenty (20) days prior to the return date or at least fifteen (15) days prior to the mailing date, or provide a mailing date at least ten (10) days after receipt by the subscriber, provided, however, that whichever system the seller chooses for mailing the announcement and form, such system must provide the subscriber with at least ten (10) days in which to mail his form.

(b) In connection with the sale or distribution of goods and merchandise in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it shall constitute an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a seller in connection with the use of any negative option plan to:

(1) Refuse to credit, for the full invoiced amount thereof, the return of any selection sent to a subscriber, and to guarantee to the Postal Service or the subscriber postage adequate to return such selection to the seller, when:

(i) The selection is sent to a subscriber whose form indicating that he does not want to receive the selection was received by the seller by the return date or was mailed by the subscriber by the mailing date;

(ii) Such form is received by the seller after the return date, but has been mailed by the subscriber and postmarked at least 3 days prior to the return date;

(iii) Prior to the date of shipment of such selection, the seller has received from a contract-complete subscriber, a written notice of cancellation of membership adequately identifying the subscriber; however, this provision is applicable only to the first selection sent to a canceling contract-complete subscriber after the seller has received written notice of cancellation. After the first selection shipment, all selection shipments thereafter are deemed to be unordered merchandise pursuant to section 3009 of the Postal Reorganization Act of 1970, as adopted by the Federal Trade Commission in its public notice, dated September 11, 1970;

(iv) The announcement and form are not received by the subscriber in time to afford him at least ten (10) days in which to mail his form.

(2) Fail to notify a subscriber known by the seller to be within any of the circumstances set forth in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) through (iv) of this section, that if the subscriber elects, the subscriber may return the selection with return postage guaranteed and receive a credit to his account.

(3) Refuse to ship within 4 weeks after receipt of an order merchandise due subscribers as introductory and bonus merchandise, unless the seller is unable to deliver the merchandise originally offered due to unanticipated circumstances beyond the seller's control and promptly makes a reasonably equivalent alternative offer. However, where the subscriber refuses to accept alternatively offered introductory merchandise, but instead insists upon termination of his membership due to the seller's failure to provide the subscriber with his originally requested introductory merchandise, or any portion thereof, the seller must comply with the subscriber's request for cancellation of membership, provided the subscriber returns to the seller any introductory merchandise which already may have been sent him.

(4) Fail to terminate promptly the membership of a properly identified contract-complete subscriber upon his written request.

(5) Ship, without the express consent of the subscriber, substituted merchandise for that ordered by the subscriber.

(c) For the purposes of this part:

(1) *Negative option plan* refers to a contractual plan or arrangement under which a seller periodically sends to subscribers an announcement which identifies merchandise (other than annual supplements to previously acquired merchandise) it proposes to send to subscribers to such plan, and the subscribers thereafter receive and are billed for the merchandise identified in each such announcement, unless by a date or within a time specified by the seller with respect to each such announcement the subscribers, in conformity with the provisions of such

plan, instruct the seller not to send the identified merchandise.

(2) *Subscriber* means any person who has agreed to receive the benefits of, and assume the obligations entailed in, membership in any negative option plan and whose membership in such negative option plan has been approved and accepted by the seller.

(3) *Contract-complete subscriber* refers to a subscriber who has purchased the minimum quantity of merchandise required by the terms of membership in a negative option plan.

(4) *Promotional material* refers to an advertisement containing or accompanying any device or material which a prospective subscriber sends to the seller to request acceptance or enrollment in a negative option plan.

(5) *Selection* refers to the merchandise identified by a seller under any negative option plan as the merchandise which the subscriber will receive and be billed for, unless by the date, or within the period specified by the seller, the subscriber instructs the seller not to send such merchandise.

(6) *Announcement* refers to any material sent by a seller using a negative option plan in which the selection is identified and offered to subscribers.

(7) *Form* refers to any form which the subscriber returns to the seller to instruct the seller not to send the selection.

(8) *Return date* refers to a date specified by a seller using a negative option plan as the date by which a form must be received by the seller to prevent shipment of the selection.

(9) *Mailing date* refers to the time specified by a seller using a negative option plan as the time by or within which a form must be mailed by a subscriber to prevent shipment of the selection.

(38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[38 FR 4896; Feb. 22, 1973; 38 FR 6991, Mar. 15, 1973, as amended at 63 FR 44562, Aug. 20, 1998]

PART 429—RULE CONCERNING COOLING-OFF PERIOD FOR SALES MADE AT HOMES OR AT CERTAIN OTHER LOCATIONS

Sec.

429.0 Definitions.
429.1 The Rule.
429.2 Effect on State laws and municipal ordinances.
429.3 Exemptions.

AUTHORITY: Sections 1–23, FTC Act, 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

§ 429.0 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part the following definitions shall apply:

(a) *Door-to-Door Sale*—A sale, lease, or rental of consumer goods or services with a purchase price of $25 or more, whether under single or multiple contracts, in which the seller or his representative personally solicits the sale, including those in response to or following an invitation by the buyer, and the buyer's agreement or offer to purchase is made at a place other than the place of business of the seller (e.g., sales at the buyer's residence or at facilities rented on a temporary or short-term basis, such as hotel or motel rooms, convention centers, fairgrounds and restaurants, or sales at the buyer's workplace or in dormitory lounges). The term *door-to-door sale* does not include a transaction:

(1) Made pursuant to prior negotiations in the course of a visit by the buyer to a retail business establishment having a fixed permanent location where the goods are exhibited or the services are offered for sale on a continuing basis; or

(2) In which the consumer is accorded the right of rescission by the provisions of the Consumer Credit Protection Act (15 U.S.C. 1635) or regulations issued pursuant thereto; or

(3) In which the buyer has initiated the contact and the goods or services are needed to meet a bona fide immediate personal emergency of the buyer, and the buyer furnishes the seller with a separate dated and signed personal statement in the buyer's handwriting describing the situation requiring immediate remedy and expressly acknowledging and waiving the right to cancel the sale within 3 business days; or

(4) Conducted and consummated entirely by mail or telephone; and without any other contact between the buyer and the seller or its representative prior to delivery of the goods or performance of the services; or

(5) In which the buyer has initiated the contact and specifically requested the seller to visit the buyer's home for the purpose of repairing or performing maintenance upon the buyer's personal property. If, in the course of such a visit, the seller sells the buyer the right to receive additional services or goods other than replacement parts necessarily used in performing the maintenance or in making the repairs, the sale of those additional goods or services would not fall within this exclusion; or

(6) Pertaining to the sale or rental of real property, to the sale of insurance, or to the sale of securities or commodities by a broker-dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(b) *Consumer Goods or Services*—Goods or services purchased, leased, or rented primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, including courses of instruction or training regardless of the purpose for which they are taken.

(c) *Seller*—Any person, partnership, corporation, or association engaged in the door-to-door sale of consumer goods or services.

(d) *Place of Business*—The main or permanent branch office or local address of a seller.

(e) *Purchase Price*—The total price paid or to be paid for the consumer goods or services, including all interest and service charges.

(f) *Business Day*—Any calendar day except Sunday or any federal holiday (e.g., New Year's Day, Presidents' Day, Martin Luther King's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans' Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.)

[60 FR 54186, Oct. 20, 1995]

§429.1 The Rule.

In connection with any door-to-door sale, it constitutes an unfair and deceptive act or practice for any seller to:

(a) Fail to furnish the buyer with a fully completed receipt or copy of any contract pertaining to such sale at the time of its execution, which is in the same language, e.g., Spanish, as that principally used in the oral sales presentation and which shows the date of the transaction and contains the name and address of the seller, and in immediate proximity to the space reserved in the contract for the signature of the buyer or on the front page of the receipt if a contract is not used and in bold face type of a minimum size of 10 points, a statement in substantially the following form:

> ''You, the buyer, may cancel this transaction at any time prior to midnight of the third business day after the date of this transaction. See the attached notice of cancellation form for an explanation of this right.''

The seller may select the method of providing the buyer with the duplicate notice of cancellation form set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, *provided however*, that in the event of cancellation the buyer must be able to retain a complete copy of the contract or receipt. Furthermore, if both forms are not attached to the contract or receipt, the seller is required to alter the last sentence in the statement above to conform to the actual location of the forms.

(b) Fail to furnish each buyer, at the time the buyer signs the door-to-door sales contract or otherwise agrees to buy consumer goods or services from the seller, a completed form in duplicate, captioned either ''NOTICE OF RIGHT TO CANCEL'' or ''NOTICE OF CANCELLATION,'' which shall (where applicable) contain in ten point bold face type the following information and statements in the same language, e.g., Spanish, as that used in the contract.

NOTICE OF CANCELLATION

[enter date of transaction]

(Date)

You may CANCEL this transaction, without any Penalty or Obligation, within THREE BUSINESS DAYS from the above date.

If you cancel, any property traded in, any payments made by you under the contract or sale, and any negotiable instrument executed by you will be returned within TEN BUSINESS DAYS following receipt by the seller of your cancellation notice, and any security interest arising out of the transaction will be cancelled.

If you cancel, you must make available to the seller at your residence, in substantially as good condition as when received, any

goods delivered to you under this contract or sale, or you may, if you wish, comply with the instructions of the seller regarding the return shipment of the goods at the seller's expense and risk.

If you do make the goods available to the seller and the seller does not pick them up within 20 days of the date of your Notice of Cancellation, you may retain or dispose of the goods without any further obligation. If you fail to make the goods available to the seller, or if you agree to return the goods to the seller and fail to do so, then you remain liable for performance of all obligations under the contract.

To cancel this transaction, mail or deliver a signed and dated copy of this Cancellation Notice or any other written notice, or send a telegram, to [*Name of seller*], at [*address of seller's place of business*] NOT LATER THAN MIDNIGHT OF [*date*].

I HEREBY CANCEL THIS TRANSACTION.

(Date) _____

(Buyer's signature) _____

(c) Fail, before furnishing copies of the ''Notice of Cancellation'' to the buyer, to complete both copies by entering the name of the seller, the address of the seller's place of business, the date of the transaction, and the date, not earlier than the third business day following the date of the transaction, by which the buyer may give notice of cancellation.

(d) Include in any door-to-door contract or receipt any confession of judgment or any waiver of any of the rights to which the buyer is entitled under this section including specifically the buyer's right to cancel the sale in accordance with the provisions of this section.

(e) Fail to inform each buyer orally, at the time the buyer signs the contract or purchases the goods or services, of the buyer's right to cancel.

(f) Misrepresent in any manner the buyer's right to cancel.

(g) Fail or refuse to honor any valid notice of cancellation by a buyer and within 10 business days after the receipt of such notice, to: (i) Refund all payments made under the contract or sale; (ii) return any goods or property traded in, in substantially as good condition as when received by the seller; (iii) cancel and return any negotiable instrument executed by the buyer in connection with the contract or sale and take any action necessary or appropriate to terminate promptly any security interest created in the transaction.

(h) Negotiate, transfer, sell, or assign any note or other evidence of indebtedness to a finance company or other third party prior to midnight of the fifth business day following the day the contract was signed or the goods or services were purchased.

(i) Fail, within 10 business days of receipt of the buyer's notice of cancellation, to notify the buyer whether the seller intends to repossess or to abandon any shipped or delivered goods.

[37 FR 22934, Oct. 26, 1972, as amended at 38 FR 30105, Nov. 1, 1973; 38 FR 31828, Nov. 19, 1973; 53 FR 45459, Nov. 10, 1988; 60 FR 54186, Oct. 20, 1995]

§ 429.2 Effect on State laws and municipal ordinances.

(a) The Commission is cognizant of the significant burden imposed upon door-to-door sellers by the various and often inconsistent State laws that provide the buyer the right to cancel a door-to-door sales transaction. However, it does not believe that this constitutes sufficient justification for preempting all of the provisions of such laws and the ordinances of the political subdivisions of the various States. The rulemaking record in this proceeding supports the view that the joint and coordinated efforts of both the Commission and State and local officials are required to insure that consumers who have purchased from a door-to-door seller something they do not want, do not need, or cannot afford, be accorded a unilateral right to rescind, without penalty, their agreements to purchase those goods or services.

(b) This part will not be construed to annul, or exempt any seller from complying with, the laws of any State or the ordinances of a political subdivision thereof that regulate door-to-door sales, except to the extent that such laws or ordinances, if they permit door-to-door selling, are directly inconsistent with the provisions of this part. Such laws or ordinances which do not accord the buyer, with respect to the particular transaction, a right to cancel a door-to-door sale that is substantially the same or greater than that provided in this part, which permit the imposition of any fee or penalty on the

buyer for the exercise of such right, or which do not provide for giving the buyer a notice of the right to cancel the transaction in substantially the same form and manner provided for in this part, are among those which will be considered directly inconsistent.

[60 FR 54187, Oct. 20, 1995]

§ 429.3 Exemptions.

(a) The requirements of this part do not apply for sellers of automobiles, vans, trucks or other motor vehicles sold at auctions, tent sales or other temporary places of business, provided that the seller is a seller of vehicles with a permanent place of business.

(b) The requirements of this part do not apply for sellers of arts or crafts sold at fairs or similar places.

[60 FR 54187, Oct. 20, 1995]

PART 432—POWER OUTPUT CLAIMS FOR AMPLIFIERS UTILIZED IN HOME ENTERTAINMENT PRODUCTS

Sec.
432.1 Scope.
432.2 Required disclosures.
432.3 Standard test conditions.
432.4 Optional disclosures.
432.5 Prohibited disclosures.
432.6 Liability for violation.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41–58).

SOURCE: 39 FR 15387, May 3, 1974, unless otherwise noted.

§ 432.1 Scope.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, this part shall apply whenever any power output (in watts or otherwise), power band or power frequency response, or distortion capability or characteristic is represented, either expressly or by implication, in connection with the advertising, sale, or offering for sale, in commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, of sound power amplification equipment manufactured or sold for home entertainment purposes, such as for example, radios, record and tape players, radio-phonograph and/or tape combinations, component audio amplifiers, self-powered speakers for computers, multimedia systems and sound systems, and the like.

(b) Representations shall be exempt from this part if all representations of performance characteristics referred to in paragraph (a) of this section clearly and conspicuously disclose a manufacturer's rated power output and that rated output does not exceed two (2) watts (per channel or total).

(c) It is an unfair method of competition and an unfair or deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1)) to violate any applicable provision of this part.

[39 FR 15387, May 3, 1974, as amended at 63 FR 37235, July 9, 1998]

§ 432.2 Required disclosures.

(a) Whenever any direct or indirect representation is made of the power output, power band or power frequency response, or distortion characteristics of sound power amplification equipment, the following disclosure shall be made clearly, conspicuously, and more prominently than any other representations or disclosures permitted under this part: The manufacturer's rated minimum sine wave continuous average power output, in watts, per channel (if the equipment is designed to amplify two or more channels simultaneously) at an impedance of 8 ohms, or, if the amplifier is not designed for an 8-ohm impedance, at the impedance for which the amplifier is primarily designed, measured with all associated channels fully driven to rated per channel power. *Provided*, however, when measuring maximum per channel output of self-powered combination speaker systems that employ two or more amplifiers dedicated to different portions of the audio frequency spectrum, such as those incorporated into combination subwoofer-satellite speaker systems, only those channels dedicated to the same audio frequency spectrum should be considered associated channels that need be fully driven simultaneously to rated per channel power.

(b) In addition, whenever any direct or indirect representation is made of the power output, power band or power

frequency response, or distortion characteristics of sound power amplification equipment in any product brochure or manufacturer specification sheet, the following disclosures also shall be made clearly, conspicuously, and more prominently than any other representations or disclosures permitted under this part:

(1) The manufacturer's rated power band or power frequency response, in Hertz (Hz), for the rated power output required to be disclosed in paragraph (a) of this section; and

(2) The manufacturer's rated percentage of maximum total harmonic distortion at any power level from 250 mW to the rated power output, and its corresponding rated power band or power frequency response.

[65 FR 81239, Dec. 22, 2000]

§ 432.3 Standard test conditions.

For purposes of performing the tests necessary to make the disclosures required under § 432.2 of this part:

(a) The power line voltage shall be 120 volts AC (230 volts when the equipment is made for foreign sale or use, unless a different nameplate rating is permanently affixed to the product by the manufacturer in which event the latter figure would control), RMS, using a sinusoidal wave containing less than 2 percent total harmonic content. In the case of equipment designed for battery operation only, tests shall be made with the battery power supply for which the particular equipment is designed and such test voltage must be disclosed under the required disclosures of § 432.2 of this part. If capable of both AC and DC battery operation, testing shall be with AC line operation;

(b) The AC power line frequency for domestic equipment shall be 60 Hz and 50 Hz for equipment made for foreign sale or use;

(c) The amplifier shall be preconditioned by simultaneously operating all channels at one-eighth of rated power output for one hour using a sinusoidal wave at a frequency of 1,000 Hz; *provided, however,* that for amplifiers utilized as a component in a self-powered subwoofer system, the sinusoidal wave used as a preconditioning signal may be any frequency within the amplifier's intended operating bandwidth that will allow the amplifier to be driven to one-eighth of rated power for one hour;

(d) The preconditioning and testing shall be in still air and an ambient temperature of at least 77 °F (25 °C);

(e) Rated power shall be obtainable at all frequencies within the rated power band without exceeding the rated maximum percentage of total harmonic distortion after input signals at said frequencies have been continuously applied at full rated power for not less than five (5) minutes at the amplifier's auxiliary input, or if not provided, at the phono input.

(f) At all times during warm-up and testing, tone loudness-contour and other controls shall be preset for the flattest response.

[39 FR 15387, May 3, 1974, as amended at 65 FR 81240, Dec. 22, 2000]

§ 432.4 Optional disclosures.

Other operating characteristics and technical specifications not required in § 432.2 of this part may be disclosed: *Provided:*

(a) That any other power output is rated by the manufacturer, is expressed in minimum watts per channel, and such power output representation(s) complies with the provisions of § 432.2 of this part; except that if a peak or other instantaneous power rating, such as music power or peak power, is represented under this section, the maximum percentage of total harmonic distortion (see § 432.2(d) of this part) may be disclosed only at such rated output: *And provided further,*

(b) That all disclosures or representations made under this section are less conspicuously, and prominently made than the disclosures required in § 432.2 of this part; and

(c) The rating and testing methods or standards used in determining such representations are disclosed, and well known and generally recognized by the industry at the time the representations or disclosures are made, are neither intended nor likely to deceive or confuse the consumers and are not otherwise likely to frustrate the purpose of this part.

NOTE 1: For the purpose of paragraph (b) of this section, optional disclosures will not be considered less prominent if they are either

bold faced or are more than two-thirds the height of the disclosures required by §432.2.

NOTE 2: Use of the asterisk in effecting any of the disclosures required by §432.2 and permitted by §432.4 shall not be deemed conspicuous disclosure.

[39 FR 15387, May 3, 1974; 39 FR 17838, May 21, 1974]

§432.5 Prohibited disclosures.

No performance characteristics to which this part applies shall be represented or disclosed if they are not obtainable as represented or disclosed when the equipment is operated by the consumer in the usual and normal manner without the use of extraneous aids.

§432.6 Liability for violation.

If the manufacturer or, in the case of foreign made products, the importer or domestic sales representative of a foreign manufacturer, of any product covered by this part furnishes the information required or permitted under this part, then any other seller of the product shall not be deemed to be in violation of §432.5 of this part due to his reliance upon or transmittal of the written representations of the manufacturer or importer if such seller has been furnished by the manufacturer, importer, or sales representative a written certification attesting to the accuracy of the representations to which this part applies: *And provided further*, That such seller is without actual knowledge of the violation contained in said written certification.

PART 433—PRESERVATION OF CONSUMERS' CLAIMS AND DEFENSES

Sec.

433.1 Definitions.
433.2 Preservation of consumers' claims and defenses, unfair or deceptive acts or practices.
433.3 Exemption of sellers taking or receiving open end consumer credit contracts before November 1, 1977 from requirements of §433.2(a).

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41, *et seq.*)

§433.1 Definitions.

(a) *Person*. An individual, corporation, or any other business organization.

(b) *Consumer*. A natural person who seeks or acquires goods or services for personal, family, or household use.

(c) *Creditor*. A person who, in the ordinary course of business, lends purchase money or finances the sale of goods or services to consumers on a deferred payment basis; *Provided*, such person is not acting, for the purposes of a particular transaction, in the capacity of a credit card issuer.

(d) *Purchase money loan*. A cash advance which is received by a consumer in return for a ''Finance Charge'' within the meaning of the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z, which is applied, in whole or substantial part, to a purchase of goods or services from a seller who (1) refers consumers to the creditor or (2) is affiliated with the creditor by common control, contract, or business arrangement.

(e) *Financing a sale*. Extending credit to a consumer in connection with a ''Credit Sale'' within the meaning of the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z.

(f) *Contract*. Any oral or written agreement, formal or informal, between a creditor and a seller, which contemplates or provides for cooperative or concerted activity in connection with the sale of goods or services to consumers or the financing thereof.

(g) *Business arrangement*. Any understanding, procedure, course of dealing, or arrangement, formal or informal, between a creditor and a seller, in connection with the sale of goods or services to consumers or the financing thereof.

(h) *Credit card issuer*. A person who extends to cardholders the right to use a credit card in connection with purchases of goods or services.

(i) *Consumer credit contract*. Any instrument which evidences or embodies a debt arising from a ''Purchase Money Loan'' transaction or a ''financed sale'' as defined in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(j) *Seller*. A person who, in the ordinary course of business, sells or leases goods or services to consumers.

[40 FR 53506, Nov. 18, 1975]

§ 433.2 Preservation of consumers' claims and defenses, unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

In connection with any sale or lease of goods or services to consumers, in or affecting commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a seller, directly or indirectly, to:

(a) Take or receive a consumer credit contract which fails to contain the following provision in at least ten point, bold face, type:

NOTICE

ANY HOLDER OF THIS CONSUMER CREDIT CONTRACT IS SUBJECT TO ALL CLAIMS AND DEFENSES WHICH THE DEBTOR COULD ASSERT AGAINST THE SELLER OF GOODS OR SERVICES OBTAINED PURSUANT HERETO OR WITH THE PROCEEDS HEREOF. RECOVERY HEREUNDER BY THE DEBTOR SHALL NOT EXCEED AMOUNTS PAID BY THE DEBTOR HEREUNDER.

or,

(b) Accept, as full or partial payment for such sale or lease, the proceeds of any purchase money loan (as purchase money loan is defined herein), unless any consumer credit contract made in connection with such purchase money loan contains the following provision in at least ten point, bold face, type:

NOTICE

ANY HOLDER OF THIS CONSUMER CREDIT CONTRACT IS SUBJECT TO ALL CLAIMS AND DEFENSES WHICH THE DEBTOR COULD ASSERT AGAINST THE SELLER OF GOODS OR SERVICES OBTAINED WITH THE PROCEEDS HEREOF. RECOVERY HEREUNDER BY THE DEBTOR SHALL NOT EXCEED AMOUNTS PAID BY THE DEBTOR HEREUNDER.

[40 FR 53506, Nov. 18, 1975; 40 FR 58131, Dec. 15, 1975]

§ 433.3 Exemption of sellers taking or receiving open end consumer credit contracts before November 1, 1977 from requirements of § 433.2(a).

(a) Any seller who has taken or received an open end consumer credit contract before November 1, 1977, shall be exempt from the requirements of 16 CFR part 433 with respect to such contract provided the contract does not cut off consumers' claims and defenses.

(b) *Definitions*. The following definitions apply to this exemption:

(1) All pertinent definitions contained in 16 CFR 433.1.

(2) Open end consumer credit contract: a consumer credit contract pursuant to which ''open end credit'' is extended.

(3) ''Open end credit'': consumer credit extended on an account pursuant to a plan under which a creditor may permit an applicant to make purchases or make loans, from time to time, directly from the creditor or indirectly by use of a credit card, check, or other device, as the plan may provide. The term does not include negotiated advances under an open-end real estate mortgage or a letter of credit.

(4) Contract which does not cut off consumers' claims and defenses: A consumer credit contract which does not constitute or contain a negotiable instrument, or contain any waiver, limitation, term, or condition which has the effect of limiting a consumer's right to assert against any holder of the contract all legally sufficient claims and defenses which the consumer could assert against the seller of goods or services purchased pursuant to the contract.

[42 FR 19490, Apr. 14, 1977, as amended at 42 FR 46510, Sept. 16, 1977]

PART 435—MAIL OR TELEPHONE ORDER MERCHANDISE

Sec.
435.1 The rule.
435.2 Definitions.
435.3 Limited applicability.
435.4 Effective date of the rule.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 57a; 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 58 FR 49121, Sept. 21, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

§435.1 The rule.

In connection with mail or telephone order sales in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it constitutes an unfair method of competition, and an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a seller:

(a)(1) To solicit any order for the sale of merchandise to be ordered by the buyer through the mails or by telephone unless, at the time of the solicitation, the seller has a reasonable basis to expect that it will be able to ship any ordered merchandise to the buyer:

(i) Within that time clearly and conspicuously stated in any such solicitation, or

(ii) if no time is clearly and conspicuously stated, within thirty (30) days after receipt of a properly completed order from the buyer, Provided, however, where, at the time the merchandise is ordered the buyer applies to the seller for credit to pay for the merchandise in whole or in part, the seller shall have 50 days, rather than 30 days, to perform the actions required in §435.1(a)(1)(ii) of this part.

(2) To provide any buyer with any revised shipping date, as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, unless, at the time any such revised shipping date is provided, the seller has a reasonable basis for making such representation regarding a definite revised shipping date.

(3) To inform any buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of any delay unless

(i) the seller has a reasonable basis for so informing the buyer and

(ii) the seller informs the buyer of the reason or reasons for the delay.

(4) In any action brought by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging a violation of this part, the failure of a respondent-seller to have records or other documentary proof establishing its use of systems and procedures which assure the shipment of merchandise in the ordinary course of business within any applicable time set forth in this part will create a rebuttable presumption that the seller lacked a reasonable basis for any expectation of shipment within said applicable time.

(b)(1) Where a seller is unable to ship merchandise within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, to fail to offer to the buyer, clearly and conspicuously and without prior demand, an option either to consent to a delay in shipping or to cancel the buyer's order and receive a prompt refund. Said offer shall be made within a reasonable time after the seller first becomes aware of its inability to ship within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, but in no event later than said applicable time.

(i) Any offer to the buyer of such an option shall fully inform the buyer regarding the buyer's right to cancel the order and to obtain a prompt refund and shall provide a definite revised shipping date, but where the seller lacks a reasonable basis for providing a definite revised shipping date the notice shall inform the buyer that the seller is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay.

(ii) Where the seller has provided a definite revised shipping date which is thirty (30) days or less later than the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, the offer of said option shall expressly inform the buyer that, unless the seller receives, prior to shipment and prior to the expiration of the definite revised shipping date, a response from the buyer rejecting the delay and cancelling the order, the buyer will be deemed to have consented to a delayed shipment on or before the definite revised shipping date.

(iii) Where the seller has provided a definite revised shipping date which is more than thirty (30) days later than the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section or where the seller is unable to provide a definite revised shipping date and therefore informs the buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay, the offer of said option shall also expressly inform the buyer that the buyer's order will automatically be deemed to have been cancelled unless:

(A) The seller has shipped the merchandise within thirty (30) days of the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and has received no cancellation prior to shipment, or

(B) The seller has received from the buyer within thirty (30) days of said applicable time, a response specifically consenting to said shipping delay. Where the seller informs the buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay, the buyer shall be expressly informed that, should the buyer consent to an indefinite delay, the buyer will have a continuing right to cancel the buyer's order at any time after the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section by so notifying the seller prior to actual shipment.

(iv) Nothing in this paragraph shall prohibit a seller who furnishes a definite revised shipping date pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section, from requesting, simultaneously with or at any time subsequent to the offer of an option pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the buyer's express consent to a further unanticipated delay beyond the definite revised shipping date in the form of a response from the buyer specifically consenting to said further delay. Provided, however, That where the seller solicits consent to an unanticipated indefinite delay the solicitation shall expressly inform the buyer that, should the buyer so consent to an indefinite delay, the buyer shall have a continuing right to cancel the buyer's order at any time after the definite revised shipping date by so notifying the seller prior to actual shipment.

(2) Where a seller is unable to ship merchandise on or before the definite revised shipping date provided under paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section and consented to by the buyer pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) (ii) or (iii) of this section, to fail to offer to the buyer, clearly and conspicuously and without prior demand, a renewed option either to consent to a further delay or to cancel the order and to receive a prompt refund. Said offer shall be made within a reasonable time after the seller first becomes aware of its inability to ship before the said definite revised date, but in no event later than the expiration of the definite revised shipping date: Provided, however, That where the seller previously has obtained the buyer's express consent to an unanticipated delay until a specific date beyond the definite revised shipping date, pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(iv) of this section or to a further delay until a specific date beyond the definite revised shipping date pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section, that date to which the buyer has expressly consented shall supersede the definite revised shipping date for purposes of paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(i) Any offer to the buyer of said renewed option shall provide the buyer with a new definite revised shipping date, but where the seller lacks a reasonable basis for providing a new definite revised shipping date, the notice shall inform the buyer that the seller is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the further delay.

(ii) The offer of a renewed option shall expressly inform the buyer that, unless the seller receives, prior to the expiration of the old definite revised shipping date or any date superseding the old definite revised shipping date, notification from the buyer specifically consenting to the further delay, the buyer will be deemed to have rejected any further delay, and to have cancelled the order if the seller is in fact unable to ship prior to the expiration of the old definite revised shipping date or any date superseding the old definite revised shipping date: Provided, however, That where the seller offers the buyer the option to consent to an indefinite delay the offer shall expressly inform the buyer that, should the buyer so consent to an indefinite delay, the buyer shall have a continuing right to cancel the buyer's order at any time after the old definite revised shipping date or any date superseding the old definite revised shipping date.

(iii) Paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall not apply to any situation where a seller, pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (b)(1)(iv) of this section, has previously obtained consent from the buyer to an indefinite extension beyond the first revised shipping date.

(3) Wherever a buyer has the right to exercise any option under this part or to cancel an order by so notifying the seller prior to shipment, to fail to furnish the buyer with adequate means, at the seller's expense, to exercise such

option or to notify the seller regarding cancellation.

Nothing in paragraph (b) of this section shall prevent a seller, where it is unable to make shipment within the time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section or within a delay period consented to by the buyer, from deciding to consider the order cancelled and providing the buyer with notice of said decision within a reasonable time after it becomes aware of said inability to ship, together with a prompt refund.

(c) To fail to deem an order cancelled and to make a prompt refund to the buyer whenever:

(1) The seller receives, prior to the time of shipment, notification from the buyer cancelling the order pursuant to any option, renewed option or continuing option under this part;

(2) The seller has, pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section, provided the buyer with a definite revised shipping date which is more than thirty (30) days later than the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section or has notified the buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay and the seller

(i) Has not shipped the merchandise within thirty (30) days of the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and

(ii) Has not received the buyer's express consent to said shipping delay within said thirty (30) days;

(3) The seller is unable to ship within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and has not received, within the said applicable time, the buyer's consent to and further delay;

(4) The seller has notified the buyer of its inability to make shipment and has indicated its decision not to ship the merchandise;

(5) The seller fails to offer the option prescribed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and has not shipped the merchandise within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(d) In any action brought by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging a violation of this part, the failure of a respondent-seller to have records or other documentary proof establishing its use of systems and procedures which assure compliance, in the ordinary course of business, with any requirement of paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section will create a rebuttable presumption that the seller failed to comply with said requirement.

§ 435.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) *Mail or telephone order sales* shall mean sales in which the buyer has ordered merchandise from the seller by mail or telephone, regardless of the method of payment or the method used to solicit the order.

(b) *Telephone* refers to any direct or indirect use of the telephone to order merchandise, regardless of whether the telephone is activated by, or the language used is that of human beings, machines, or both.

(c) *Shipment* shall mean the act by which the merchandise is physically placed in the possession of the carrier.

(d) *Receipt of a properly completed order* shall mean, where the buyer tenders full or partial payment in the proper amount in the form of cash, check, money order, or authorization from the buyer to charge an existing charge account, the time at which the seller receives both said payment and an order from the buyer containing all of the information needed by the seller to process and ship the order. Provided, however, That where the seller receives notice that the check or money order tendered by the buyer has been dishonored or that the buyer does not qualify for a credit sale, *receipt of a properly completed order* shall mean the time at which:

(i) The seller receives notice that a check or money order for the proper amount tendered by the buyer has been honored,

(ii) The buyer tenders cash in the proper amount, or

(iii) The seller receives notice that the buyer qualifies for a credit sale.

(e) *Refund* shall mean:

(1) Where the buyer tendered full payment for the unshipped merchandise in the form of cash, check or money order, a return of the amount tendered in the form of cash, check or money order;

(2) Where there is a credit sale:

(i) And the seller is a creditor, a copy of a credit memorandum or the like or an account statement reflecting the removal or absence of any remaining charge incurred as a result of the sale from the buyer's account;

(ii) And a third party is the creditor, a copy of an appropriate credit memorandum or the like to the third party creditor which will remove the charge from the buyer's account or a statement from the seller acknowledging the cancellation of the order and representing that it has not taken any action regarding the order which will result in a charge to the buyer's account with the third party;

(iii) And the buyer tendered partial payment for the unshipped merchandise in the form of cash, check or money order, a return of the amount tendered in the form of cash, check or money order.

(f) *Prompt refund* shall mean:

(1) Where a refund is made pursuant to paragraph (e) (1) or (2)(iii) of this section, a refund sent to the buyer by first class mail within seven (7) working days of the date on which the buyer's right to refund vests under the provisions of this part;

(2) Where a refund is made pursuant to paragraph (e)(2) (i) or (ii) of this section, a refund sent to the buyer by first class mail within one (1) billing cycle from the date on which the buyer's right to refund vests under the provisions of this part.

(g) The *time of solicitation* of an order shall mean that time when the seller has:

(1) Mailed or otherwise disseminated the solicitation to a prospective purchaser,

(2) Made arrangements for an advertisement containing the solicitation to appear in a newspaper, magazine or the like or on radio or television which cannot be changed or cancelled without incurring substantial expense, or

(3) Made arrangements for the printing of a catalog, brochure or the like which cannot be changed without incurring substantial expense, in which the solicitation in question forms an insubstantial part.

[58 FR 49121, Sept. 21, 1993, as amended at 60 FR 56950, Nov. 13, 1995]

§ 435.3 Limited applicability.

(a) This part shall not apply to:

(1) Subscriptions, such as magazine sales, ordered for serial delivery, after the initial shipment is made in compliance with this part.

(2) Orders of seeds and growing plants.

(3) Orders made on a collect-on-delivery (C.O.D.) basis.

(4) Transactions governed by the Federal Trade Commission's Trade Regulation Rule entitled ''Use of Negative Option Plans by Sellers in Commerce,'' 16 CFR part 425.

(b) By taking action in this area:

(1) The Federal Trade Commission does not intend to preempt action in the same area, which is not inconsistent with this part, by any State, municipal, or other local government. This part does not annul or diminish any rights or remedies provided to consumers by any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation, insofar as those rights or remedies are equal to or greater than those provided by this part. In addition, this part does not supersede those provisions of any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation which impose obligations or liabilities upon sellers, when sellers subject to this part are not in compliance therewith.

(2) This part does supersede those provisions of any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation which are inconsistent with this part to the extent that those provisions do not provide a buyer with rights which are equal to or greater than those rights granted a buyer by this part. This part also supersedes those provisions of any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation requiring that a buyer be notified of a right which is the same as a right provided by this part but requiring that a buyer be given notice of this right in a language, form, or manner which is different in any way from that required by this part. In those instances where any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation contains provisions, some but not all of which are partially or completely superseded by this part, the provisions or portions of those provisions which have not been

superseded retain their full force and effect.

(c) If any provision of this part, or its application to any person, partnership, corporation, act or practice is held invalid, the remainder of this part or the application of the provision to any other person, partnership, corporation, act or practice shall not be affected thereby.

§435.4 Effective date of the rule.

The original rule, which became effective 100 days after its promulgation on October 22, 1975, remains in effect. The amended rule, as set forth in this part, becomes effective March 1, 1994.

PART 436—DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS AND PROHIBITIONS CONCERNING FRANCHISING

Subpart A—Definitions

Sec.
436.1 Definitions.

Subpart B—Franchisor's Obligations

436.2 Obligation to furnish documents.

Subpart C—Contents of a Disclosure Document

436.3 Cover page.
436.4 Table of contents.
436.5 Disclosure items.

Subpart D—Instructions

436.6 Instructions for preparing disclosure documents.
436.7 Instructions for updating disclosures.

Subpart E—Exemptions

436.8 Exemptions.

Subpart F—Prohibitions

436.9 Additional prohibitions.

Subpart G—Other Provisions

436.10 Other laws and rules.
436.11 Severability.

APPENDIX A TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 10 TABLE—SUMMARY OF FINANCING OFFERED
APPENDIX B TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(1) TABLE—SYSTEMWIDE OUTLET SUMMARY
APPENDIX C TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(2) TABLE—TRANSFERS OF FRANCHISED OUTLETS
APPENDIX D TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(3) TABLE—STATUS OF FRANCHISE OUTLETS
APPENDIX E TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(4) TABLE—STATUS OF COMPANY-OWNED OUTLETS
APPENDIX F TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(5) TABLE—PROJECTED NEW FRANCHISED OUTLETS

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41-58.

SOURCE: 72 FR 15544, Mar. 30, 2007, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Definitions

§436.1 Definitions.

Unless stated otherwise, the following definitions apply throughout part 436:

(a) *Action* includes complaints, cross claims, counterclaims, and third-party complaints in a judicial action or proceeding, and their equivalents in an administrative action or arbitration.

(b) *Affiliate* means an entity controlled by, controlling, or under common control with, another entity.

(c) *Confidentiality clause* means any contract, order, or settlement provision that directly or indirectly restricts a current or former franchisee from discussing his or her personal experience as a franchisee in the franchisor's system with any prospective franchisee. It does not include clauses that protect franchisor's trademarks or other proprietary information.

(d) *Disclose*, *state*, *describe*, and *list* each mean to present all material facts accurately, clearly, concisely, and legibly in plain English.

(e) *Financial performance representation* means any representation, including any oral, written, or visual representation, to a prospective franchisee, including a representation in the general media, that states, expressly or by implication, a specific level or range of actual or potential sales, income, gross profits, or net profits. The term includes a chart, table, or mathematical calculation that shows possible results based on a combination of variables.

(f) *Fiscal year* refers to the franchisor's fiscal year.

(g) *Fractional franchise* means a franchise relationship that satisfies the following criteria when the relationship is created:

(1) The franchisee, any of the franchisee's current directors or officers, or any current directors or officers of a parent or affiliate, has more than two years of experience in the same type of business; and

(2) The parties have a reasonable basis to anticipate that the sales arising from the relationship will not exceed 20% of the franchisee's total dollar volume in sales during the first year of operation.

(h) *Franchise* means any continuing commercial relationship or arrangement, whatever it may be called, in which the terms of the offer or contract specify, or the franchise seller promises or represents, orally or in writing, that:

(1) The franchisee will obtain the right to operate a business that is identified or associated with the franchisor's trademark, or to offer, sell, or distribute goods, services, or commodities that are identified or associated with the franchisor's trademark;

(2) The franchisor will exert or has authority to exert a significant degree of control over the franchisee's method of operation, or provide significant assistance in the franchisee's method of operation; and

(3) As a condition of obtaining or commencing operation of the franchise, the franchisee makes a required payment or commits to make a required payment to the franchisor or its affiliate.

(i) *Franchisee* means any person who is granted a franchise.

(j) *Franchise seller* means a person that offers for sale, sells, or arranges for the sale of a franchise. It includes the franchisor and the franchisor's employees, representatives, agents, subfranchisors, and third-party brokers who are involved in franchise sales activities. It does not include existing franchisees who sell only their own outlet and who are otherwise not engaged in franchise sales on behalf of the franchisor.

(k) *Franchisor* means any person who grants a franchise and participates in the franchise relationship. Unless otherwise stated, it includes subfranchisors. For purposes of this definition, a ''subfranchisor'' means a person who functions as a franchisor by engaging in both pre-sale activities and post-sale performance.

(l) *Leased department* means an arrangement whereby a retailer licenses or otherwise permits a seller to conduct ≤business from the retailer's location where the seller purchases no goods, services, or commodities directly or indirectly from the retailer, a person the retailer requires the seller to do business with, or a retailer-affiliate if the retailer advises the seller to do business with the affiliate.

(m) *Parent* means an entity that controls another entity directly, or indirectly through one or more subsidiaries.

(n) *Person* means any individual, group, association, limited or general partnership, corporation, or any other entity.

(o) *Plain English* means the organization of information and language usage understandable by a person unfamiliar with the franchise business. It incorporates short sentences; definite, concrete, everyday language; active voice; and tabular presentation of information, where possible. It avoids legal jargon, highly technical business terms, and multiple negatives.

(p) *Predecessor* means a person from whom the franchisor acquired, directly or indirectly, the major portion of the franchisor's assets.

(q) *Principal business address* means the street address of a person's home office in the United States. A principal business address cannot be a post office box or private mail drop.

(r) *Prospective franchisee* means any person (including any agent, representative, or employee) who approaches or is approached by a franchise seller to discuss the possible establishment of a franchise relationship.

(s) *Required payment* means all consideration that the franchisee must pay to the franchisor or an affiliate, either by contract or by practical necessity, as a condition of obtaining or commencing operation of the franchise. A required payment does not include payments for the purchase of reasonable amounts of inventory at bona fide wholesale prices for resale or lease.

(t) *Sale of a franchise* includes an agreement whereby a person obtains a

franchise from a franchise seller for value by purchase, license, or otherwise. It does not include extending or renewing an existing franchise agreement where there has been no interruption in the franchisee's operation of the business, unless the new agreement contains terms and conditions that differ materially from the original agreement. It also does not include the transfer of a franchise by an existing franchisee where the franchisor has had no significant involvement with the prospective transferee. A franchisor's approval or disapproval of a transfer alone is not deemed to be significant involvement.

(u) *Signature* means a person's affirmative step to authenticate his or her identity. It includes a person's handwritten signature, as well as a person's use of security codes, passwords, electronic signatures, and similar devices to authenticate his or her identity.

(v) *Trademark* includes trademarks, service marks, names, logos, and other commercial symbols.

(w) *Written* or *in writing* means any document or information in printed form or in any form capable of being preserved in tangible form and read. It includes: type-set, word processed, or handwritten document; information on computer disk or CD-ROM; information sent via email; or information posted on the Internet. It does not include mere oral statements.

Subpart B—Franchisors' Obligations

§436.2 Obligation to furnish documents.

In connection with the offer or sale of a franchise to be located in the United States of America or its territories, unless the transaction is exempted under subpart E of this part, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act:

(a) For any franchisor to fail to furnish a prospective franchisee with a copy of the franchisor's current disclosure document, as described in subparts C and D of this part, at least 14 calendar-days before the prospective franchisee signs a binding agreement with, or makes any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale.

(b) For any franchisor to alter unilaterally and materially the terms and conditions of the basic franchise agreement or any related agreements attached to the disclosure document without furnishing the prospective franchisee with a copy of each revised agreement at least seven calendar-days before the prospective franchisee signs the revised agreement. Changes to an agreement that arise out of negotiations initiated by the prospective franchisee do not trigger this seven calendar-day period.

(c) For purposes of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the franchisor has furnished the documents by the required date if:

(1) A copy of the document was hand-delivered, faxed, emailed, or otherwise delivered to the prospective franchisee by the required date;

(2) Directions for accessing the document on the Internet were provided to the prospective franchisee by the required date; or

(3) A paper or tangible electronic copy (for example, computer disk or CD-ROM) was sent to the address specified by the prospective franchisee by first-class United States mail at least three calendar days before the required date.

Subpart C—Contents of a Disclosure Document

§436.3 Cover page.

Begin the disclosure document with a cover page, in the order and form as follows:

(a) The title ''FRANCHISE DISCLOSURE DOCUMENT'' in capital letters and bold type.

(b) The franchisor's name, type of business organization, principal business address, telephone number, and, if applicable, email address and primary home page address.

(c) A sample of the primary business trademark that the franchisee will use in its business.

(d) A brief description of the franchised business.

(e) The following statements:

(1) The total investment necessary to begin operation of a [franchise system

name] franchise is [the total amount of Item 7 (§ 436.5(g))]. This includes [the total amount in Item 5 (§ 436.5(e))] that must be paid to the franchisor or affiliate.

(2) This disclosure document summarizes certain provisions of your franchise agreement and other information in plain English. Read this disclosure document and all accompanying agreements carefully. You must receive this disclosure document at least 14 calendar-days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make any payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale. [The following sentence in bold type] NOTE, HOWEVER, THAT NO GOVERNMENTAL AGENCY HAS VERIFIED THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENT.

(3) The terms of your contract will govern your franchise relationship. Don't rely on the disclosure document alone to understand your contract. Read all of your contract carefully. Show your contract and this disclosure document to an advisor, like a lawyer or an accountant.

(4) Buying a franchise is a complex investment. The information in this disclosure document can help you make up your mind. More information on franchising, such as ''*A Consumer's Guide to Buying a Franchise*,'' which can help you understand how to use this disclosure document, is available from the Federal Trade Commission. You can contact the FTC at 1-877-FTC-HELP or by writing to the FTC at 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, D.C. 20580. You can also visit the FTC's home page at www.ftc.gov for additional information. Call your state agency or visit your public library for other sources of information on franchising.

(5) There may also be laws on franchising in your state. Ask your state agencies about them.

(6) [The issuance date].

(f) A franchisor may include the following statement between the statements set out at paragraphs (e)(2) and (3) of this section: ''You may wish to receive your disclosure document in another format that is more convenient for you. To discuss the availability of disclosures in different formats, contact [name or office] at [address] and [telephone number].''

(g) Franchisors may include additional disclosures on the cover page, on a separate cover page, or addendum to comply with state pre-sale disclosure laws.

§ 436.4 Table of contents.

Include the following table of contents. State the page where each disclosure Item begins. List all exhibits by letter, as shown in the following example.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. The Franchisor and any Parents, Predecessors, and Affiliates
2. Business Experience
3. Litigation
4. Bankruptcy
5. Initial Fees
6. Other Fees
7. Estimated Initial Investment
8. Restrictions on Sources of Products and Services
9. Franchisee's Obligations
10. Financing
11. Franchisor's Assistance, Advertising, Computer Systems, and Training
12. Territory
13. Trademarks
14. Patents, Copyrights, and Proprietary Information
15. Obligation to Participate in the Actual Operation of the Franchise Business
16. Restrictions on What the Franchisee May Sell
17. Renewal, Termination, Transfer, and Dispute Resolution
18. Public Figures
19. Financial Performance Representations
20. Outlets and Franchisee Information
21. Financial Statements
22. Contracts
23. Receipts

EXHIBITS

A. Franchise Agreement

§ 436.5 Disclosure items.

(a) *Item 1*: *The Franchisor, and any Parents, Predecessors, and Affiliates*. Disclose:

(1) The name and principal business address of the franchisor; any parents; and any affiliates that offer franchises in any line of business or provide products or services to the franchisees of the franchisor.

(2) The name and principal business address of any predecessors during the 10-year period immediately before the

close of the franchisor's most recent fiscal year.

(3) The name that the franchisor uses and any names it intends to use to conduct business.

(4) The identity and principal business address of the franchisor's agent for service of process.

(5) The type of business organization used by the franchisor (for example, corporation, partnership) and the state in which it was organized.

(6) The following information about the franchisor's business and the franchises offered:

(i) Whether the franchisor operates businesses of the type being franchised.

(ii) The franchisor's other business activities.

(iii) The business the franchisee will conduct.

(iv) The general market for the product or service the franchisee will offer. In describing the general market, consider factors such as whether the market is developed or developing, whether the goods will be sold primarily to a certain group, and whether sales are seasonal.

(v) In general terms, any laws or regulations specific to the industry in which the franchise business operates.

(vi) A general description of the competition.

(7) The prior business experience of the franchisor; any predecessors listed in §436.5(a)(2) of this part; and any affiliates that offer franchises in any line of business or provide products or services to the franchisees of the franchisor, including:

(i) The length of time each has conducted the type of business the franchisee will operate.

(ii) The length of time each has offered franchises providing the type of business the franchisee will operate.

(iii) Whether each has offered franchises in other lines of business. If so, include:

(A) A description of each other line of business.

(B) The number of franchises sold in each other line of business.

(C) The length of time each has offered franchises in each other line of business.

(b) *Item 2*: *Business Experience*. Disclose by name and position the franchisor's directors, trustees, general partners, principal officers, and any other individuals who will have management responsibility relating to the sale or operation of franchises offered by this document. For each person listed in this section, state his or her principal positions and employers during the past five years, including each position's starting date, ending date, and location.

(c) *Item 3*: *Litigation*. (1) Disclose whether the franchisor; a predecessor; a parent or affiliate who induces franchise sales by promising to back the franchisor financially or otherwise guarantees the franchisor's performance; an affiliate who offers franchises under the franchisor's principal trademark; and any person identified in §436.5(b) of this part:

(i) Has pending against that person:

(A) An administrative, criminal, or material civil action alleging a violation of a franchise, antitrust, or securities law, or alleging fraud, unfair or deceptive practices, or comparable allegations.

(B) Civil actions, other than ordinary routine litigation incidental to the business, which are material in the context of the number of franchisees and the size, nature, or financial condition of the franchise system or its business operations.

(ii) Was a party to any material civil action involving the franchise relationship in the last fiscal year. For purposes of this section, ''franchise relationship'' means contractual obligations between the franchisor and franchisee directly relating to the operation of the franchised business (such as royalty payment and training obligations). It does not include actions involving suppliers or other third parties, or indemnification for tort liability.

(iii) Has in the 10-year period immediately before the disclosure document's issuance date:

(A) Been convicted of or pleaded nolo contendere to a felony charge.

(B) Been held liable in a civil action involving an alleged violation of a franchise, antitrust, or securities law, or involving allegations of fraud, unfair or deceptive practices, or comparable allegations. ''Held liable'' means that, as a result of claims or counterclaims,

the person must pay money or other consideration, must reduce an indebtedness by the amount of an award, cannot enforce its rights, or must take action adverse to its interests.

(2) Disclose whether the franchisor; a predecessor; a parent or affiliate who guarantees the franchisor's performance; an affiliate who has offered or sold franchises in any line of business within the last 10 years; or any other person identified in § 436.5(b) of this part is subject to a currently effective injunctive or restrictive order or decree resulting from a pending or concluded action brought by a public agency and relating to the franchise or to a Federal, State, or Canadian franchise, securities, antitrust, trade regulation, or trade practice law.

(3) For each action identified in paragraphs (c)(1) and (2) of this section, state the title, case number or citation, the initial filing date, the names of the parties, the forum, and the relationship of the opposing party to the franchisor (for example, competitor, supplier, lessor, franchisee, former franchisee, or class of franchisees). Except as provided in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, summarize the legal and factual nature of each claim in the action, the relief sought or obtained, and any conclusions of law or fact.[1] In addition, state:

(i) For pending actions, the status of the action.

(ii) For prior actions, the date when the judgment was entered and any damages or settlement terms.[2]

(iii) For injunctive or restrictive orders, the nature, terms, and conditions of the order or decree.

(iv) For convictions or pleas, the crime or violation, the date of conviction, and the sentence or penalty imposed.

(4) For any other franchisor-initiated suit identified in paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section, the franchisor may comply with the requirements of paragraphs (c)(3)(i) through (iv) of this section by listing individual suits under one common heading that will serve as the case summary (for example, ''royalty collection suits'').

(d) *Item 4*: *Bankruptcy*. (1) Disclose whether the franchisor; any parent; predecessor; affiliate; officer, or general partner of the franchisor, or any other individual who will have management responsibility relating to the sale or operation of franchises offered by this document, has, during the 10-year period immediately before the date of this disclosure document:

(i) Filed as debtor (or had filed against it) a petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code (''Bankruptcy Code'').

(ii) Obtained a discharge of its debts under the Bankruptcy Code.

(iii) Been a principal officer of a company or a general partner in a partnership that either filed as a debtor (or had filed against it) a petition under the Bankruptcy Code, or that obtained a discharge of its debts under the Bankruptcy Code while, or within one year after, the officer or general partner held the position in the company.

(2) For each bankruptcy, state:

(i) The current name, address, and principal place of business of the debtor.

(ii) Whether the debtor is the franchisor. If not, state the relationship of the debtor to the franchisor (for example, affiliate, officer).

(iii) The date of the original filing and the material facts, including the bankruptcy court, and the case name and number. If applicable, state the debtor's discharge date, including discharges under Chapter 7 and confirmation of any plans of reorganization under Chapters 11 and 13 of the Bankruptcy Code.

(3) Disclose cases, actions, and other proceedings under the laws of foreign nations relating to bankruptcy.

[1] Franchisors may include a summary opinion of counsel concerning any action if counsel consent to use the summary opinion and the full opinion is attached to the disclosure document.

[2] If a settlement agreement must be disclosed in this Item, all material settlement terms must be disclosed, whether or not the agreement is confidential. However, franchisors need not disclose the terms of confidential settlements entered into before commencing franchise sales. Further, any franchisor who has historically used only the Franchise Rule format, or who is new to franchising, need not disclose confidential settlements entered prior to the effective date of this Rule.

(e) *Item 5*: *Initial Fees*. Disclose the initial fees and any conditions under which these fees are refundable. If the initial fees are not uniform, disclose the range or formula used to calculate the initial fees paid in the fiscal year before the issuance date and the factors that determined the amount. For this section, ''initial fees'' means all fees and payments, or commitments to pay, for services or goods received from the franchisor or any affiliate before the franchisee's business opens, whether payable in lump sum or installments. Disclose installment payment terms in this section or in §436.5(j) of this part.

(f) *Item 6*: *Other Fees*. Disclose, in the following tabular form, all other fees that the franchisee must pay to the franchisor or its affiliates, or that the franchisor or its affiliates impose or collect in whole or in part for a third party. State the title ''OTHER FEES'' in capital letters using bold type. Include any formula used to compute the fees.[3]

ITEM 6 TABLE

OTHER FEES

Column 1 Type of fee	Column 2 Amount	Column 3 Due Date	Column 4 Remarks

(1) In column 1, list the type of fee (for example, royalties, and fees for lease negotiations, construction, remodeling, additional training or assistance, advertising, advertising cooperatives, purchasing cooperatives, audits, accounting, inventory, transfers, and renewals).

(2) In column 2, state the amount of the fee.

(3) In column 3, state the due date for each fee.

(4) In column 4, include remarks, definitions, or caveats that elaborate on the information in the table. If remarks are long, franchisors may use footnotes instead of the remarks column. If applicable, include the following information in the remarks column or in a footnote:

(i) Whether the fees are payable only to the franchisor.

(ii) Whether the fees are imposed and collected by the franchisor.

(iii) Whether the fees are non-refundable or describe the circumstances when the fees are refundable.

(iv) Whether the fees are uniformly imposed.

(v) The voting power of franchisor-owned outlets on any fees imposed by cooperatives. If franchisor-owned outlets have controlling voting power, disclose the maximum and minimum fees that may be imposed.

(g) *Item 7*: *Estimated Initial Investment*. Disclose, in the following tabular form, the franchisee's estimated initial investment. State the title ''YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT'' in capital letters using bold type. Franchisors may include additional expenditure tables to show expenditure variations caused by differences such as in site location and premises size.

ITEM 7 TABLE:

YOUR ESTIMATED INITIAL INVESTMENT

Column 1 Type of expenditure	Column 2 Amount	Column 3 Method of payment	Column 4 When due	Column 4 To whom payment is to be made
Total.				

[3] If fees may increase, disclose the formula that determines the increase or the maximum amount of the increase. For example, a percentage of gross sales is acceptable if the franchisor defines the term ''gross sales.''

(1) In column 1:

(i) List each type of expense, beginning with pre-opening expenses. Include the following expenses, if applicable. Use footnotes to include remarks, definitions, or caveats that elaborate on the information in the Table.

(A) The initial franchise fee.

(B) Training expenses.

(C) Real property, whether purchased or leased.

(D) Equipment, fixtures, other fixed assets, construction, remodeling, leasehold improvements, and decorating costs, whether purchased or leased.

(E) Inventory to begin operating.

(F) Security deposits, utility deposits, business licenses, and other prepaid expenses.

(ii) List separately and by name any other specific required payments (for example, additional training, travel, or advertising expenses) that the franchisee must make to begin operations.

(iii) Include a category titled ''Additional funds— [initial period]'' for any other required expenses the franchisee will incur before operations begin and during the initial period of operations. State the initial period. A reasonable initial period is at least three months or a reasonable period for the industry. Describe in general terms the factors, basis, and experience that the franchisor considered or relied upon in formulating the amount required for additional funds.

(2) In column 2, state the amount of the payment. If the amount is unknown, use a low-high range based on the franchisor's current experience. If real property costs cannot be estimated in a low-high range, describe the approximate size of the property and building and the probable location of the building (for example, strip shopping center, mall, downtown, rural, or highway).

(3) In column 3, state the method of payment.

(4) In column 4, state the due date.

(5) In column 5, state to whom payment will be made.

(6) Total the initial investment, incorporating ranges of fees, if used.

(7) In a footnote, state:

(i) Whether each payment is non-refundable, or describe the circumstances when each payment is refundable.

(ii) If the franchisor or an affiliate finances part of the initial investment, the amount that it will finance, the required down payment, the annual interest rate, rate factors, and the estimated loan repayments. Franchisors may refer to § 436.5(j) of this part for additional details.

(h) *Item 8*: *Restrictions on Sources of Products and Services*. Disclose the franchisee's obligations to purchase or lease goods, services, supplies, fixtures, equipment, inventory, computer hardware and software, real estate, or comparable items related to establishing or operating the franchised business either from the franchisor, its designee, or suppliers approved by the franchisor, or under the franchisor's specifications. Include obligations to purchase imposed by the franchisor's written agreement or by the franchisor's practice.[4] For each applicable obligation, state:

(1) The good or service required to be purchased or leased.

(2) Whether the franchisor or its affiliates are approved suppliers or the only approved suppliers of that good or service.

(3) Any supplier in which an officer of the franchisor owns an interest.

(4) How the franchisor grants and revokes approval of alternative suppliers, including:

(i) Whether the franchisor's criteria for approving suppliers are available to franchisees.

(ii) Whether the franchisor permits franchisees to contract with alternative suppliers who meet the franchisor's criteria.

(iii) Any fees and procedures to secure approval to purchase from alternative suppliers.

[4] Franchisors may include the reason for the requirement. Franchisors need not disclose in this Item the purchase or lease of goods or services provided as part of the franchise without a separate charge (such as initial training, if the cost is included in the franchise fee). Describe such fees in Item 5 of this section. Do not disclose fees already described in § 436.5(f) of this part.

(iv) The time period in which the franchisee will be notified of approval or disapproval.

(v) How approvals are revoked.

(5) Whether the franchisor issues specifications and standards to franchisees, subfranchisees, or approved suppliers. If so, describe how the franchisor issues and modifies specifications.

(6) Whether the franchisor or its affiliates will or may derive revenue or other material consideration from required purchases or leases by franchisees. If so, describe the precise basis by which the franchisor or its affiliates will or may derive that consideration by stating:

(i) The franchisor's total revenue.[5]

(ii) The franchisor's revenues from all required purchases and leases of products and services.

(iii) The percentage of the franchisor's total revenues that are from required purchases or leases.

(iv) If the franchisor's affiliates also sell or lease products or services to franchisees, the affiliates' revenues from those sales or leases.

(7) The estimated proportion of these required purchases and leases by the franchisee to all purchases and leases by the franchisee of goods and services in establishing and operating the franchised businesses.

(8) If a designated supplier will make payments to the franchisor from franchisee purchases, disclose the basis for the payment (for example, specify a percentage or a flat amount). For purposes of this disclosure, a ''payment'' includes the sale of similar goods or services to the franchisor at a lower price than to franchisees.

(9) The existence of purchasing or distribution cooperatives.

(10) Whether the franchisor negotiates purchase arrangements with suppliers, including price terms, for the benefit of franchisees.

(11) Whether the franchisor provides material benefits (for example, renewal or granting additional franchises) to a franchisee based on a franchisee's purchase of particular products or services or use of particular suppliers.

(i) *Item 9*: *Franchisee's Obligations*. Disclose, in the following tabular form, a list of the franchisee's principal obligations. State the title ''FRANCHISEE'S OBLIGATIONS'' in capital letters using bold type. Cross-reference each listed obligation with any applicable section of the franchise or other agreement and with the relevant disclosure document provision. If a particular obligation is not applicable, state ''Not Applicable.'' Include additional obligations, as warranted.

ITEM 9 TABLE:

FRANCHISEE'S OBLIGATIONS

[In bold] **This table lists your principal obligations under the franchise and other agreements. It will help you find more detailed information about your obligations in these agreements and in other items of this disclosure document.**

Obligation	Section in agreement	Disclosure document item
a. Site selection and acquisition/lease		
b. Pre-opening purchase/leases		
c. Site development and other pre-opening requirements		
d. Initial and ongoing training		
e. Opening		
f. Fees		
g. Compliance with standards and policies/operating manual		
h. Trademarks and proprietary information		

[5] Take figures from the franchisor's most recent annual audited financial statement required in §436.5(u) of this part. If audited statements are not yet required, or if the entity deriving the income is an affiliate, disclose the sources of information used in computing revenues.

ITEM 9 TABLE:—Continued

FRANCHISEE'S OBLIGATIONS

[In bold] **This table lists your principal obligations under the franchise and other agreements. It will help you find more detailed information about your obligations in these agreements and in other items of this disclosure document.**

Obligation	Section in agreement	Disclosure document item
i. Restrictions on products/services offered		
j. Warranty and customer service requirements		
k. Territorial development and sales quotas		
l. Ongoing product/service purchases		
m. Maintenance, appearance, and remodeling requirements		
n. Insurance		
o. Advertising		
p. Indemnification		
q. Owner's participation/management/staffing		
r. Records and reports		
s. Inspections and audits		
t. Transfer		
u. Renewal		
v. Post-termination obligations		
w. Non-competition covenants		
x. Dispute resolution		
y. Other (describe)		

(j) *Item 10*: *Financing*. (1) Disclose the terms of each financing arrangement, including leases and installment contracts, that the franchisor, its agent, or affiliates offer directly or indirectly to the franchisee.[6] The franchisor may summarize the terms of each financing arrangement in tabular form, using footnotes to provide additional information. For a sample Item 10 table, see appendix A of this part. For each financing arrangement, state:

(i) What the financing covers (for example, the initial franchise fee, site acquisition, construction or remodeling, initial or replacement equipment or fixtures, opening or ongoing inventory or supplies, or other continuing expenses).[7]

(ii) The identity of each lender providing financing and their relationship to the franchisor (for example, affiliate).

(iii) The amount of financing offered or, if the amount depends on an actual cost that may vary, the percentage of the cost that will be financed.

(iv) The rate of interest, plus finance charges, expressed on an annual basis. If the rate of interest, plus finance charges, expressed on an annual basis, may differ depending on when the financing is issued, state what that rate was on a specified recent date.

[6] Indirect offers of financing include a written arrangement between a franchisor or its affiliate and a lender, for the lender to offer financing to a franchisee; an arrangement in which a franchisor or its affiliate receives a benefit from a lender in exchange for financing a franchise purchase; and a franchisor's guarantee of a note, lease, or other obligation of the franchisee.

[7] Include sample copies of the financing documents as an exhibit to § 436.5(v) of this part. Cite the section and name of the document containing the financing terms and conditions.

(v) The number of payments or the period of repayment.

(vi) The nature of any security interest required by the lender.

(vii) Whether a person other than the franchisee must personally guarantee the debt.

(viii) Whether the debt can be prepaid and the nature of any prepayment penalty.

(ix) The franchisee's potential liabilities upon default, including any:

(A) Accelerated obligation to pay the entire amount due;

(B) Obligations to pay court costs and attorney's fees incurred in collecting the debt;

(C) Termination of the franchise; and

(D) Liabilities from cross defaults such as those resulting directly from non-payment, or indirectly from the loss of business property.

(x) Other material financing terms.

(2) Disclose whether the loan agreement requires franchisees to waive defenses or other legal rights (for example, confession of judgment), or bars franchisees from asserting a defense against the lender, the lender's assignee or the franchisor. If so, describe the relevant provisions.

(3) Disclose whether the franchisor's practice or intent is to sell, assign, or discount to a third party all or part of the financing arrangement. If so, state:

(i) The assignment terms, including whether the franchisor will remain primarily obligated to provide the financed goods or services; and

(ii) That the franchisee may lose all its defenses against the lender as a result of the sale or assignment.

(4) Disclose whether the franchisor or an affiliate receives any consideration for placing financing with the lender. If such payments exist:

(i) Disclose the amount or the method of determining the payment; and

(ii) Identify the source of the payment and the relationship of the source to the franchisor or its affiliates.

(k) *Item 11: Franchisor's Assistance, Advertising, Computer Systems, and Training.* Disclose the franchisor's principal assistance and related obligations of both the franchisor and franchisee as follows. For each obligation, cite the section number of the franchise agreement imposing the obligation. Begin by stating the following sentence in bold type: ''EXCEPT AS LISTED BELOW, [THE FRANCHISOR] IS NOT REQUIRED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ASSISTANCE.''

(1) Disclose the franchisor's pre-opening obligations to the franchisee, including any assistance in:

(i) Locating a site and negotiating the purchase or lease of the site. If such assistance is provided, state:

(A) Whether the franchisor generally owns the premises and leases it to the franchisee.

(B) Whether the franchisor selects the site or approves an area in which the franchisee selects a site. If so, state further whether and how the franchisor must approve a franchisee-selected site.

(C) The factors that the franchisor considers in selecting or approving sites (for example, general location and neighborhood, traffic patterns, parking, size, physical characteristics of existing buildings, and lease terms).

(D) The time limit for the franchisor to locate or approve or disapprove the site and the consequences if the franchisor and franchisee cannot agree on a site.

(ii) Conforming the premises to local ordinances and building codes and obtaining any required permits.

(iii) Constructing, remodeling, or decorating the premises.

(iv) Hiring and training employees.

(v) Providing for necessary equipment, signs, fixtures, opening inventory, and supplies. If any such assistance is provided, state:

(A) Whether the franchisor provides these items directly or only provides the names of approved suppliers.

(B) Whether the franchisor provides written specifications for these items.

(C) Whether the franchisor delivers or installs these items.

(2) Disclose the typical length of time between the earlier of the signing of the franchise agreement or the first payment of consideration for the franchise and the opening of the franchisee's business. Describe the factors that may affect the time period, such as ability to obtain a lease, financing or building permits, zoning and local ordinances, weather conditions, shortages, or delayed installation of equipment, fixtures, and signs.

(3) Disclose the franchisor's obligations to the franchisee during the operation of the franchise, including any assistance in:

(i) Developing products or services the franchisee will offer to its customers.

(ii) Hiring and training employees.

(iii) Improving and developing the franchised business.

(iv) Establishing prices.

(v) Establishing and using administrative, bookkeeping, accounting, and inventory control procedures.

(vi) Resolving operating problems encountered by the franchisee.

(4) Describe the advertising program for the franchise system, including the following:

(i)The franchisor's obligation to conduct advertising, including:

(A) The media the franchisor may use.

(B) Whether media coverage is local, regional, or national.

(C) The source of the advertising (for example, an in-house advertising department or a national or regional advertising agency).

(D) Whether the franchisor must spend any amount on advertising in the area or territory where the franchisee is located.

(ii) The circumstances when the franchisor will permit franchisees to use their own advertising material.

(iii) Whether there is an advertising council composed of franchisees that advises the franchisor on advertising policies. If so, disclose:

(A) How members of the council are selected.

(B) Whether the council serves in an advisory capacity only or has operational or decision-making power.

(C) Whether the franchisor has the power to form, change, or dissolve the advertising council.

(iv) Whether the franchisee must participate in a local or regional advertising cooperative. If so, state:

(A) How the area or membership of the cooperative is defined.

(B) How much the franchisee must contribute to the fund and whether other franchisees must contribute a different amount or at a different rate.

(C) Whether the franchisor-owned outlets must contribute to the fund and, if so, whether those contributions are on the same basis as those for franchisees.

(D) Who is responsible for administering the cooperative (for example, franchisor, franchisees, or advertising agency).

(E) Whether cooperatives must operate from written governing documents and whether the documents are available for the franchisee to review.

(F) Whether cooperatives must prepare annual or periodic financial statements and whether the statements are available for review by the franchisee.

(G) Whether the franchisor has the power to require cooperatives to be formed, changed, dissolved, or merged.

(v) Whether the franchisee must participate in any other advertising fund. If so, state:

(A) Who contributes to the fund.

(B) How much the franchisee must contribute to the fund and whether other franchisees must contribute a different amount or at a different rate.

(C) Whether the franchisor-owned outlets must contribute to the fund and, if so, whether it is on the same basis as franchisees.

(D) Who administers the fund.

(E) Whether the fund is audited and when it is audited.

(F) Whether financial statements of the fund are available for review by the franchisee.

(G) How the funds were used in the most recently concluded fiscal year, including the percentages spent on production, media placement, administrative expenses, and a description of any other use.

(vi) If not all advertising funds are spent in the fiscal year in which they accrue, how the franchisor uses the remaining amount, including whether franchisees receive a periodic accounting of how advertising fees are spent.

(vii) The percentage of advertising funds, if any, that the franchisor uses principally to solicit new franchise sales.

(5) Disclose whether the franchisor requires the franchisee to buy or use electronic cash registers or computer systems. If so, describe the systems generally in non-technical language,

including the types of data to be generated or stored in these systems, and state the following:

(i) The cost of purchasing or leasing the systems.

(ii) Any obligation of the franchisor, any affiliate, or third party to provide ongoing maintenance, repairs, upgrades, or updates.

(iii) Any obligations of the franchisee to upgrade or update any system during the term of the franchise, and, if so, any contractual limitations on the frequency and cost of the obligation.

(iv) The annual cost of any optional or required maintenance, updating, upgrading, or support contracts.

(v) Whether the franchisor will have independent access to the information that will be generated or stored in any electronic cash register or computer system. If so, describe the information that the franchisor may access and whether there are any contractual limitations on the franchisor's right to access the information.

(6) Disclose the table of contents of the franchisor's operating manual provided to franchisees as of the franchisor's last fiscal year-end or a more recent date. State the number of pages devoted to each subject and the total number of pages in the manual as of this date. This disclosure may be omitted if the franchisor offers the prospective franchisee the opportunity to view the manual before buying the franchise.

(7) Disclose the franchisor's training program as of the franchisor's last fiscal year-end or a more recent date.

(i) Describe the training program in the following tabular form. Title the table ''TRAINING PROGRAM'' in capital letters and bold type.

ITEM 11 TABLE

TRAINING PROGRAM

Column 1 Subject	Column 2 Hours of Classroom Training	Column 3 Hours of On-The-Job Training	Column 4 Location

(A) In column 1, state the subjects taught.

(B) In column 2, state the hours of classroom training for each subject.

(C) In column 3, state the hours of on-the-job training for each subject.

(D) In column 4, state the location of the training for each subject.

(ii) State further:

(A) How often training classes are held and the nature of the location or facility where training is held (for example, company, home, office, franchisor-owned store).

(B) The nature of instructional materials and the instructor's experience, including the instructor's length of experience in the field and with the franchisor. State only experience relevant to the subject taught and the franchisor's operations.

(C) Any charges franchisees must pay for training and who must pay travel and living expenses of the training program enrollees.

(D) Who may and who must attend training. State whether the franchisee or other persons must complete the program to the franchisor's satisfaction. If successful completion is required, state how long after signing the agreement or before opening the business the training must be completed. If training is not mandatory, state the percentage of new franchisees that enrolled in the training program during the preceding 12 months.

(E) Whether additional training programs or refresher courses are required.

(l) *Item 12*: *Territory*. Disclose:

(1) Whether the franchise is for a specific location or a location to be approved by the franchisor.

(2) Any minimum territory granted to the franchisee (for example, a specific radius, a distance sufficient to encompass a specified population, or another specific designation).

(3) The conditions under which the franchisor will approve the relocation of the franchised business or the franchisee's establishment of additional franchised outlets.

(4) Franchisee options, rights of first refusal, or similar rights to acquire additional franchises.

(5) Whether the franchisor grants an exclusive territory.

(i) If the franchisor does not grant an exclusive territory, state: ''You will not receive an exclusive territory. You may face competition from other franchisees, from outlets that we own, or from other channels of distribution or competitive brands that we control.''

(ii) If the franchisor grants an exclusive territory, disclose:

(A) Whether continuation of territorial exclusivity depends on achieving a certain sales volume, market penetration, or other contingency, and the circumstances when the franchisee's territory may be altered. Describe any sales or other conditions. State the franchisor's rights if the franchisee fails to meet the requirements.

(B) Any other circumstances that permit the franchisor to modify the franchisee's territorial rights (for example, a population increase in the territory giving the franchisor the right to grant an additional franchise in the area) and the effect of such modifications on the franchisee's rights.

(6) For all territories (exclusive and non-exclusive):

(i) Any restrictions on the franchisor from soliciting or accepting orders from consumers inside the franchisee's territory, including:

(A) Whether the franchisor or an affiliate has used or reserves the right to use other channels of distribution, such as the Internet, catalog sales, telemarketing, or other direct marketing sales, to make sales within the franchisee's territory using the franchisor's principal trademarks.

(B) Whether the franchisor or an affiliate has used or reserves the right to use other channels of distribution, such as the Internet, catalog sales, telemarketing, or other direct marketing, to make sales within the franchisee's territory of products or services under trademarks different from the ones the franchisee will use under the franchise agreement.

(C) Any compensation that the franchisor must pay for soliciting or accepting orders from inside the franchisee's territory.

(ii) Any restrictions on the franchisee from soliciting or accepting orders from consumers outside of his or her territory, including whether the franchisee has the right to use other channels of distribution, such as the Internet, catalog sales, telemarketing, or other direct marketing, to make sales outside of his or her territory.

(iii) If the franchisor or an affiliate operates, franchises, or has plans to operate or franchise a business under a different trademark and that business sells or will sell goods or services similar to those the franchisee will offer, describe:

(A) The similar goods and services.

(B) The different trademark.

(C) Whether outlets will be franchisor owned or operated.

(D) Whether the franchisor or its franchisees who use the different trademark will solicit or accept orders within the franchisee's territory.

(E) The timetable for the plan.

(F) How the franchisor will resolve conflicts between the franchisor and franchisees and between the franchisees of each system regarding territory, customers, and franchisor support.

(G) The principal business address of the franchisor's similar operating business. If it is the same as the franchisor's principal business address stated in § 436.5(a) of this part, disclose whether the franchisor maintains (or plans to maintain) physically separate offices and training facilities for the similar competing business.

(m) *Item 13*: *Trademarks*. (1) Disclose each principal trademark to be licensed to the franchisee. For this Item, ''principal trademark'' means the primary trademarks, service marks, names, logos, and commercial symbols the franchisee will use to identify the franchised business. It may not include every trademark the franchisor owns.

(2) Disclose whether each principal trademark is registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. If so, state:

(i) The date and identification number of each trademark registration.

(ii) Whether the franchisor has filed all required affidavits.

(iii) Whether any registration has been renewed.

(iv) Whether the principal trademarks are registered on the Principal or Supplemental Register of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

(3) If the principal trademark is not registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office, state whether the franchisor has filed any trademark application, including any ''intent to use'' application or an application based on actual use. If so, state the date and identification number of the application.

(4) If the trademark is not registered on the Principal Register of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, state: ''We do not have a federal registration for our principal trademark. Therefore, our trademark does not have many legal benefits and rights as a federally registered trademark. If our right to use the trademark is challenged, you may have to change to an alternative trademark, which may increase your expenses.''

(5) Disclose any currently effective material determinations of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or any state trademark administrator or court; and any pending infringement, opposition, or cancellation proceeding. Include infringement, opposition, or cancellation proceedings in which the franchisor unsuccessfully sought to prevent registration of a trademark in order to protect a trademark licensed by the franchisor. Describe how the determination affects the ownership, use, or licensing of the trademark.

(6) Disclose any pending material federal or state court litigation regarding the franchisor's use or ownership rights in a trademark. For each pending action, disclose:[8]

(i) The forum and case number.

(ii) The nature of claims made opposing the franchisor's use of the trademark or by the franchisor opposing another person's use of the trademark.

(iii) Any effective court or administrative agency ruling in the matter.

(7) Disclose any currently effective agreements that significantly limit the franchisor's rights to use or license the use of trademarks listed in this section in a manner material to the franchise. For each agreement, disclose:

(i) The manner and extent of the limitation or grant.

(ii) The extent to which the agreement may affect the franchisee.

(iii) The agreement's duration.

(iv) The parties to the agreement.

(v) The circumstances when the agreement may be canceled or modified.

(vi) All other material terms.

(8) Disclose:

(i) Whether the franchisor must protect the franchisee's right to use the principal trademarks listed in this section, and must protect the franchisee against claims of infringement or unfair competition arising out of the franchisee's use of the trademarks.

(ii) The franchisee's obligation to notify the franchisor of the use of, or claims of rights to, a trademark identical to or confusingly similar to a trademark licensed to the franchisee.

(iii) Whether the franchise agreement requires the franchisor to take affirmative action when notified of these uses or claims.

(iv) Whether the franchisor or franchisee has the right to control any administrative proceedings or litigation involving a trademark licensed by the franchisor to the franchisee.

(v) Whether the franchise agreement requires the franchisor to participate in the franchisee's defense and/or indemnify the franchisee for expenses or damages if the franchisee is a party to an administrative or judicial proceeding involving a trademark licensed by the franchisor to the franchisee, or if the proceeding is resolved unfavorably to the franchisee.

(vi) The franchisee's rights under the franchise agreement if the franchisor requires the franchisee to modify or discontinue using a trademark.

(9) Disclose whether the franchisor knows of either superior prior rights or infringing uses that could materially

[8] The franchisor may include an attorney's opinion relative to the merits of litigation or of an action if the attorney issuing the opinion consents to its use. The text of the disclosure may include a summary of the opinion if the full opinion is attached and the attorney issuing the opinion consents to the use of the summary.

affect the franchisee's use of the principal trademarks in the state where the franchised business will be located. For each use of a principal trademark that the franchisor believes is an infringement that could materially affect the franchisee's use of a trademark, disclose:

(i) The nature of the infringement.

(ii) The locations where the infringement is occurring.

(iii) The length of time of the infringement (to the extent known).

(iv) Any action taken or anticipated by the franchisor.

(n) *Item 14*: *Patents, Copyrights, and Proprietary Information*. (1) Disclose whether the franchisor owns rights in, or licenses to, patents or copyrights that are material to the franchise. Also, disclose whether the franchisor has any pending patent applications that are material to the franchise. If so, state:

(i) The nature of the patent, patent application, or copyright and its relationship to the franchise.

(ii) For each patent:

(A) The duration of the patent.

(B) The type of patent (for example, mechanical, process, or design).

(C) The patent number, issuance date, and title.

(iii) For each patent application:

(A) The type of patent application (for example, mechanical, process, or design).

(B) The serial number, filing date, and title.

(iv) For each copyright:

(A) The duration of the copyright.

(B) The registration number and date.

(C) Whether the franchisor can and intends to renew the copyright.

(2) Describe any current material determination of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the United States Copyright Office, or a court regarding the patent or copyright. Include the forum and matter number. Describe how the determination affects the franchised business.

(3) State the forum, case number, claims asserted, issues involved, and effective determinations for any material proceeding pending in the United States Patent and Trademark Office or any court.[9]

(4) If an agreement limits the use of the patent, patent application, or copyright, state the parties to and duration of the agreement, the extent to which the agreement may affect the franchisee, and other material terms of the agreement.

(5) Disclose the franchisor's obligation to protect the patent, patent application, or copyright; and to defend the franchisee against claims arising from the franchisee's use of patented or copyrighted items, including:

(i) Whether the franchisor's obligation is contingent upon the franchisee notifying the franchisor of any infringement claims or whether the franchisee's notification is discretionary.

(ii) Whether the franchise agreement requires the franchisor to take affirmative action when notified of infringement.

(iii) Who has the right to control any litigation.

(iv) Whether the franchisor must participate in the defense of a franchisee or indemnify the franchisee for expenses or damages in a proceeding involving a patent, patent application, or copyright licensed to the franchisee.

(v) Whether the franchisor's obligation is contingent upon the franchisee modifying or discontinuing the use of the subject matter covered by the patent or copyright.

(vi) The franchisee's rights under the franchise agreement if the franchisor requires the franchisee to modify or discontinue using the subject matter covered by the patent or copyright.

(6) If the franchisor knows of any patent or copyright infringement that could materially affect the franchisee, disclose:

(i) The nature of the infringement.

(ii) The locations where the infringement is occurring.

(iii) The length of time of the infringement (to the extent known).

(iv) Any action taken or anticipated by the franchisor.

[9] If counsel consents, the franchisor may include a counsel's opinion or a summary of the opinion if the full opinion is attached.

(7) If the franchisor claims proprietary rights in other confidential information or trade secrets, describe in general terms the proprietary information communicated to the franchisee and the terms for use by the franchisee. The franchisor need only describe the general nature of the proprietary information, such as whether a formula or recipe is considered to be a trade secret.

(o) *Item 15*: *Obligation to Participate in the Actual Operation of the Franchise Business*. (1) Disclose the franchisee's obligation to participate personally in the direct operation of the franchisee's business and whether the franchisor recommends participation. Include obligations arising from any written agreement or from the franchisor's practice.

(2) If personal ''on-premises'' supervision is not required, disclose the following:

(i) If the franchisee is an individual, whether the franchisor recommends on-premises supervision by the franchisee.

(ii) Limits on whom the franchisee can hire as an on-premises supervisor.

(iii) Whether an on-premises supervisor must successfully complete the franchisor's training program.

(iv) If the franchisee is a business entity, the amount of equity interest, if any, that the on-premises supervisor must have in the franchisee's business.

(3) Disclose any restrictions that the franchisee must place on its manager (for example, maintain trade secrets, covenants not to compete).

(p) *Item 16*: *Restrictions on What the Franchisee May Sell*. Disclose any franchisor-imposed restrictions or conditions on the goods or services that the franchisee may sell or that limit access to customers, including:

(1) Any obligation on the franchisee to sell only goods or services approved by

the franchisor.

(2) Any obligation on the franchisee to sell all goods or services authorized by

the franchisor.

(3) Whether the franchisor has the right to change the types of authorized goods or services and whether there are limits on the franchisor's right to make changes.

(q) *Item 17*: *Renewal, Termination, Transfer, and Dispute Resolution*. Disclose, in the following tabular form, a table that cross-references each enumerated franchise relationship item with the applicable provision in the franchise or related agreement. Title the table ''THE FRANCHISE RELATIONSHIP'' in capital letters and bold type.

(1) Describe briefly each contractual provision. If a particular item is not applicable, state ''Not Applicable.''

(2) If the agreement is silent about one of the listed provisions, but the franchisor unilaterally offers to provide certain benefits or protections to franchisees as a matter of policy, use a footnote to describe the policy and state whether the policy is subject to change.

(3) In the summary column for Item 17(c), state what the term ''renewal'' means for your franchise system, including, if applicable, a statement that franchisees may be asked to sign a contract with materially different terms and conditions than their original contract.

ITEM 17 TABLE:

THE FRANCHISE RELATIONSHIP

[In bold] **This table lists certain important provisions of the franchise and related agreements. You should read these provisions in the agreements attached to this disclosure document.**

Provision	Section in franchise or other agreement	Summary
a. Length of the franchise term		
b. Renewal or extension of the term		
c. Requirements for franchisee to renew or extend		
d. Termination by franchisee		
e. Termination by franchisor without cause		

ITEM 17 TABLE:—Continued

THE FRANCHISE RELATIONSHIP

[In bold] **This table lists certain important provisions of the franchise and related agreements. You should read these provisions in the agreements attached to this disclosure document.**

Provision	Section in franchise or other agreement	Summary
f. Termination by franchisor with cause		
g. ''Cause'' defined—curable defaults		
h. ''Cause'' defined—non-curable defaults		
i. Franchisee's obligations on termination/non-renewal		
j. Assignment of contract by franchisor		
k. ''Transfer'' by franchisee—defined		
l. Franchisor approval of transfer by franchisee		
m. Conditions for franchisor approval of transfer		
n. Franchisor's right of first refusal to acquire franchisee's business		
o. Franchisor's option to purchase franchisee's business		
p. Death or disability of franchisee		
q. Non-competition covenants during the term of the franchise		
r. Non-competition covenants after the franchise is terminated or expires		
s. Modification of the agreement		
t. Integration/merger clause		
u. Dispute resolution by arbitration or mediation		
v. Choice of forum		
w. Choice of law		

(r) *Item 18*: *Public Figures*. Disclose:

(1) Any compensation or other benefit given or promised to a public figure arising from either the use of the public figure in the franchise name or symbol, or the public figure's endorsement or recommendation of the franchise to prospective franchisees.

(2) The extent to which the public figure is involved in the management or control of the franchisor. Describe the public figure's position and duties in the franchisor's business structure.

(3) The public figure's total investment in the franchisor, including the amount the public figure contributed in services performed or to be performed. State the type of investment (for example, common stock, promissory note).

(4) For purposes of this section, a public figure means a person whose name or physical appearance is generally known to the public in the geographic area where the franchise will be located.

(s) *Item 19*: *Financial Performance Representations*. (1) Begin by stating the following:

> The FTC's Franchise Rule permits a franchisor to provide information about the actual or potential financial performance of its franchised and/or franchisor-owned outlets, if there is a reasonable basis for the information, and if the information is included in the disclosure document. Financial performance information that differs from that included in Item 19 may be given only if: (1) a franchisor provides the actual records of an existing outlet you are considering buying; or (2) a franchisor supplements the information provided in this Item 19, for example, by providing information about possible performance

at a particular location or under particular circumstances.

(2) If a franchisor does not provide any financial performance representation in Item 19, also state:

> We do not make any representations about a franchisee's future financial performance or the past financial performance of company-owned or franchised outlets. We also do not authorize our employees or representatives to make any such representations either orally or in writing. If you are purchasing an existing outlet, however, we may provide you with the actual records of that outlet. If you receive any other financial performance information or projections of your future income, you should report it to the franchisor's management by contacting [name, address, and telephone number], the Federal Trade Commission, and the appropriate state regulatory agencies.

(3) If the franchisor makes any financial performance representation to prospective franchisees, the franchisor must have a reasonable basis and written substantiation for the representation at the time the representation is made and must state the representation in the Item 19 disclosure. The franchisor must also disclose the following:

(i) Whether the representation is an historic financial performance representation about the franchise system's existing outlets, or a subset of those outlets, or is a forecast of the prospective franchisee's future financial performance.

(ii) If the representation relates to past performance of the franchise system's existing outlets, the material bases for the representation, including:

(A) Whether the representation relates to the performance of all of the franchise system's existing outlets or only to a subset of outlets that share a particular set of characteristics (for example, geographic location, type of location (such as free standing vs. shopping center), degree of competition, length of time the outlets have operated, services or goods sold, services supplied by the franchisor, and whether the outlets are franchised or franchisor-owned or operated).

(B) The dates when the reported level of financial performance was achieved.

(C) The total number of outlets that existed in the relevant period and, if different, the number of outlets that had the described characteristics.

(D) The number of outlets with the described characteristics whose actual financial performance data were used in arriving at the representation.

(E) Of those outlets whose data were used in arriving at the representation, the number and percent that actually attained or surpassed the stated results.

(F) Characteristics of the included outlets, such as those characteristics noted in paragraph (3)(ii)(A) of this section, that may differ materially from those of the outlet that may be offered to a prospective franchisee.

(iii) If the representation is a forecast of future financial performance, state the material bases and assumptions on which the projection is based. The material assumptions underlying a forecast include significant factors upon which a franchisee's future results are expected to depend. These factors include, for example, economic or market conditions that are basic to a franchisee's operation, and encompass matters affecting, among other things, a franchisee's sales, the cost of goods or services sold, and operating expenses.

(iv) A clear and conspicuous admonition that a new franchisee's individual financial results may differ from the result stated in the financial performance representation.

(v) A statement that written substantiation for the financial performance representation will be made available to the prospective franchisee upon reasonable request.

(4) If a franchisor wishes to disclose only the actual operating results for a specific outlet being offered for sale, it need not comply with this section, provided the information is given only to potential purchasers of that outlet.

(5) If a franchisor furnishes financial performance information according to this section, the franchisor may deliver to a prospective franchisee a supplemental financial performance representation about a particular location or variation, apart from the disclosure document. The supplemental representation must:

(i) Be in writing.

(ii) Explain the departure from the financial performance representation in the disclosure document.

(iii) Be prepared in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (s)(3)(i)-(iv) of this section.

(iv) Be furnished to the prospective franchisee.

(t) *Item 20*: *Outlets and Franchisee Information*. (1) Disclose, in the following tabular form, the total number of franchised and company-owned outlets for each of the franchisor's last three fiscal years. For purposes of this section, ''outlet'' includes outlets of a type substantially similar to that offered to the prospective franchisee. A sample Item 20(1) Table is attached as appendix B to this part.

ITEM 20 TABLE NO. 1

Systemwide Outlet Summary

For years [ ] to [ ]

Column 1 Outlet Type	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at the Start of the Year	Column 4 Outlets at the End of the Year	Column 5 Net Change
Franchised	2004			
	2005			
	2006			
Company-Owned	2004			
	2005			
	2006			
Total Outlets	2004			
	2005			
	2006			

(i) In column 1, include three outlet categories titled ''franchised,'' ''company-owned, and ''total outlets.''

(ii) In column 2, state the last three fiscal years.

(iii) In column 3, state the total number of each type of outlet operating at the beginning of each fiscal year.

(iv) In column 4, state the total number of each type of outlet operating at the end of each fiscal year.

(v) In column 5, state the net change, and indicate whether the change is positive or negative, for each type of outlet during each fiscal year.

(2) Disclose, in the following tabular form, the number of franchised and company-owned outlets and changes in the number and ownership of outlets located in each state during each of the last three fiscal years. Except as noted, each change in ownership shall be reported only once in the following tables. If multiple events occurred in the process of transferring ownership of an outlet, report the event that occurred last in time. If a single outlet changed ownership two or more times during the same fiscal year, use footnotes to describe the types of changes involved and the order in which the changes occurred.

(i) Disclose, in the following tabular form, the total number of franchised outlets transferred in each state during each of the franchisor's last three fiscal years. For purposes of this section, ''transfer'' means the acquisition of a controlling interest in a franchised outlet, during its term, by a person other than the franchisor or an affiliate. A sample Item 20(2) Table is attached as appendix C to this part.

ITEM 20 TABLE NO. 2

Transfers of Outlets from Franchisees to New Owners (other than the Franchisor)

For years [ ] to [ ]

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Number of Transfers
	2004	
	2005	
	2006	
	2004	
	2005	
	2006	
Total	2004	
	2005	
	2006	

(A) In column 1, list each state with one or more franchised outlets.

(B) In column 2, state the last three fiscal years.

(C) In column 3, state the total number of completed transfers in each state during each fiscal year.

(ii) Disclose, in the following tabular form, the status of franchisee-owned outlets located in each state for each of the franchisor's last three fiscal years. A sample Item 20(3) Table is attached as appendix D to this part.

ITEM 20 TABLE NO. 3

Status of Franchised Outlets

For years [ ] to [ ]

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at Start of Year	Column 4 Outlets Opened	Column 5 Terminations	Column 6 Non-Renewals	Column 7 Reacquired by Franchisor	Column 8 Ceased Operations-Other Reasons	Column 9 Outlets at End of the Year
	2004							
	2005							
	2006							
	2004							
	2005							
	2006							
Totals	2004							
	2005							
	2006							

(A) In column 1, list each state with one or more franchised outlets.

(B) In column 2, state the last three fiscal years.

(C) In column 3, state the total number of franchised outlets in each state at the start of each fiscal year.

(D) In column 4, state the total number of franchised outlets opened in each state during each fiscal year. Include both new outlets and existing company-owned outlets that a franchisee purchased from the franchisor. (Also report the number of existing company-owned outlets that are sold to a franchisee in Column 7 of Table 4).

(E) In column 5, state the total number of franchised outlets that were terminated in each state during each fiscal year. For purposes of this section, ''termination'' means the franchisor's termination of a franchise agreement prior to the end of its term and without providing any consideration to the franchisee (whether by payment or forgiveness or assumption of debt).

(F) In column 6, state the total number of non-renewals in each state during each fiscal year. For purposes of

this section, ''non-renewal'' occurs when the franchise agreement for a franchised outlet is not renewed at the end of its term.

(G) In column 7, state the total number of franchised outlets reacquired by the franchisor in each state during each fiscal year. For purposes of this section, a ''reacquisition'' means the franchisor's acquisition for consideration (whether by payment or forgiveness or assumption of debt) of a franchised outlet during its term. (Also report franchised outlets reacquired by the franchisor in column 5 of Table 4).

(H) In column 8, state the total number of outlets in each state not operating as one of the franchisor's outlets at the end of each fiscal year for reasons other than termination, non-renewal, or reacquisition by the franchisor.

(I) In column 9, state the total number of franchised outlets in each state at the end of the fiscal year.

(iii) Disclose, in the following tabular form, the status of company-owned outlets located in each state for each of the franchisor's last three fiscal years. A sample Item 20(4) Table is attached as appendix E to this part.

ITEM 20 TABLE NO. 4

Status of Company-Owned Outlets

For years [ ] to [ ]

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at Start of Year	Column 4 Outlets Opened	Column 5 Outlets Reacquired From Franchisee	Column 6 Outlets Closed	Column 7 Outlets Sold to Franchisee	Column 8 Outlets at End of the Year
	2004						
	2005						
	2006						
	2004						
	2005						
	2006						
Totals	2004						
	2005						
	2006						

(A) In column 1, list each state with one or more company-owned outlets.

(B) In column 2, state the last three fiscal years.

(C) In column 3, state the total number of company-owned outlets in each state at the start of the fiscal year.

(D) In column 4, state the total number of company-owned outlets opened in each state during each fiscal year.

(E) In column 5, state the total number of franchised outlets reacquired from franchisees in each state during each fiscal year.

(F) In column 6, state the total number of company-owned outlets closed in each state during each fiscal year. Include both actual closures and instances when an outlet ceases to operate under the franchisor's trademark.

(G) In column 7, state the total number of company-owned outlets sold to franchisees in each state during each fiscal year.

(H) In column 8, state the total number of company-owned outlets operating in each state at the end of each fiscal year.

(3) Disclose, in the following tabular form, projected new franchised and company-owned outlets. A sample Item 20(5) Table is attached as appendix F to this part.

ITEM 20 TABLE NO. 5

Projected Openings As Of [Last Day of Last Fiscal Year]

Column 1 State	Column 2 Franchise Agreements Signed But Outlet Not Opened	Column 3 Projected New Franchised Outlet In The Next Fiscal Year	Column 4 Projected New Company-Owned Outlet In the Next Fiscal Year
Total			

(i) In column 1, list each state where one or more franchised or company-owned outlets are located or are projected to be located.

(ii) In column 2, state the total number of franchise agreements that had been signed for new outlets to be located in each state as of the end of the previous fiscal year where the outlet had not yet opened.

(iii) In column 3, state the total number of new franchised outlets in each state projected to be opened during the next fiscal year.

(iv) In column 4, state the total number of new company-owned outlets in each state that are projected to be opened during the next fiscal year.

(4) Disclose the names of all current franchisees and the address and telephone number of each of their outlets. Alternatively, disclose this information for all franchised outlets in the state, but if these franchised outlets total fewer than 100, disclose this information for franchised outlets from contiguous states and then the next closest states until at least 100 franchised outlets are listed.

(5) Disclose the name, city and state, and current business telephone number, or if unknown, the last known home telephone number of every franchisee who had an outlet terminated, canceled, not renewed, or otherwise voluntarily or involuntarily ceased to do business under the franchise agreement during the most recently completed fiscal year or who has not communicated with the franchisor within 10 weeks of the disclosure document issuance date.[10] State in immediate conjunction with this information: ''If you buy this franchise, your contact information may be disclosed to other buyers when you leave the franchise system.''

(6) If a franchisor is selling a previously-owned franchised outlet now under its control, disclose the following additional information for that outlet for the last five fiscal years. This information may be attached as an addendum to a disclosure document, or, if disclosure has already been made, then in a supplement to the previously furnished disclosure document.

(i) The name, city and state, current business telephone number, or if unknown, last known home telephone number of each previous owner of the outlet;

(ii) The time period when each previous owner controlled the outlet;

(iii) The reason for each previous change in ownership (for example, termination, non-renewal, voluntary transfer, ceased operations); and

(iv) The time period(s) when the franchisor retained control of the outlet (for example, after termination, non-renewal, or reacquisition).

(7) Disclose whether franchisees signed confidentiality clauses during the last three fiscal years. If so, state the following: ''In some instances, current and former franchisees sign provisions restricting their ability to speak openly about their experience with [name of franchise system]. You may wish to speak with current and former franchisees, but be aware that not all such franchisees will be able to communicate with you.'' Franchisors may also disclose the number and percentage of current and former franchisees

[10] Franchisors may substitute alternative contact information at the request of the former franchisee, such as a home address, post office address, or a personal or business email address.

who during each of the last three fiscal years signed agreements that include confidentiality clauses and may disclose the circumstances under which such clauses were signed.

(8) Disclose, to the extent known, the name, address, telephone number, email address, and Web address (to the extent known) of each trademark-specific franchisee organization associated with the franchise system being offered, if such organization:

(i) Has been created, sponsored, or endorsed by the franchisor. If so, state the relationship between the organization and the franchisor (for example, the organization was created by the franchisor, sponsored by the franchisor, or endorsed by the franchisor).

(ii) Is incorporated or otherwise organized under state law and asks the franchisor to be included in the franchisor's disclosure document during the next fiscal year. Such organizations must renew their request on an annual basis by submitting a request no later than 60 days after the close of the franchisor's fiscal year. The franchisor has no obligation to verify the organization's continued existence at the end of each fiscal year. Franchisors may also include the following statement: ''The following independent franchisee organizations have asked to be included in this disclosure document.''

(u) *Item 21*: *Financial Statements*. (1) Include the following financial statements prepared according to United States generally accepted accounting principles, as revised by any future United States government mandated accounting principles, or as permitted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. Except as provided in paragraph (u)(2) of this section, these financial statements must be audited by an independent certified public accountant using generally accepted United States auditing standards. Present the required financial statements in a tabular form that compares at least two fiscal years.

(i) The franchisor's balance sheet for the previous two fiscal year-ends before the disclosure document issuance date.

(ii) Statements of operations, stockholders equity, and cash flows for each of the franchisor's previous three fiscal years.

(iii) Instead of the financial disclosures required by paragraphs (u)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section, the franchisor may include financial statements of any of its affiliates if the affiliate's financial statements satisfy paragraphs (u)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section and the affiliate absolutely and unconditionally guarantees to assume the duties and obligations of the franchisor under the franchise agreement. The affiliate's guarantee must cover all of the franchisor's obligations to the franchisee, but need not extend to third parties. If this alternative is used, attach a copy of the guarantee to the disclosure document.

(iv) When a franchisor owns a direct or beneficial controlling financial interest in a subsidiary, its financial statements should reflect the financial condition of the franchisor and its subsidiary.

(v) Include separate financial statements for the franchisor and any subfranchisor, as well as for any parent that commits to perform post-sale obligations for the franchisor or guarantees the franchisor's obligations. Attach a copy of any guarantee to the disclosure document.

(2) A start-up franchise system that does not yet have audited financial statements may phase-in the use of audited financial statements by providing, at a minimum, the following statements at the indicated times:

(i) The franchisor' first partial or full fiscal year selling franchises.	An unaudited opening balance sheet.
(ii) The franchisor' second fiscal year selling franchises.	Audited balance sheet opinion as of the end of the first partial or full fiscal year selling franchises.
(iii) The franchisor' third and subsequent fiscal years selling franchises.	All required financial statements for the previous fiscal year, plus any previously disclosed audited statements that still must be disclosed according to paragraphs (u)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section.

(iv) Start-up franchisors may phase-in the disclosure of audited financial statements, provided the franchisor:

(A) Prepares audited financial statements as soon as practicable.

(B) Prepares unaudited statements in a format that conforms as closely as possible to audited statements.

(C) Includes one or more years of unaudited financial statements or clearly and conspicuously discloses in this section that the franchisor has not been in business for three years or more, and cannot include all financial statements required in paragraphs (u)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section.

(v) *Item 22*: *Contracts*. Attach a copy of all proposed agreements regarding the franchise offering, including the franchise agreement and any lease, options, and purchase agreements.

(w) *Item 23*: *Receipts*. Include two copies of the following detachable acknowledgment of receipt in the following form as the last pages of the disclosure document:

(1) State the following:

> RECEIPT
>
> This disclosure document summarizes certain provisions of the franchise agreement and other information in plain language. Read this disclosure document and all agreements carefully.
>
> If [name of franchisor] offers you a franchise, it must provide this disclosure document to you 14 calendar-days before you sign a binding agreement with, or make a payment to, the franchisor or an affiliate in connection with the proposed franchise sale.
>
> If [name of franchisor] does not deliver this disclosure document on time or if it contains a false or misleading statement, or a material omission, a violation of federal law and state law may have occurred and should be reported to the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580 and [state agency].

(2) Disclose the name, principal business address, and telephone number of each franchise seller offering the franchise.

(3) State the issuance date.

(4) If not disclosed in paragraph (a) of this section, state the name and address of the franchisor's registered agent authorized to receive service of process.

(5) State the following:

> I received a disclosure document dated _____ that included the following Exhibits:

(6) List the title(s) of all attached Exhibits.

(7) Provide space for the prospective franchisee's signature and date.

(8) Franchisors may include any specific instructions for returning the receipt (for example, street address, email address, facsimile telephone number).

Subpart D—Instructions

§436.6 Instructions for preparing disclosure documents.

(a) It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of Section 5 of the FTC Act for any franchisor to fail to include the information and follow the instructions for preparing disclosure documents set forth in subpart C (basic disclosure requirements) and subpart D (updating requirements) of part 436. The Commission will enforce this provision according to the standards of liability under Sections 5, 13(b), and 19 of the FTC Act.

(b) Disclose all required information clearly, legibly, and concisely in a single document using plain English. The disclosures must be in a form that permits each prospective franchisee to store, download, print, or otherwise maintain the document for future reference.

(c) Respond fully to each disclosure Item. If a disclosure Item is not applicable, respond negatively, including a reference to the type of information required to be disclosed by the Item. Precede each disclosure Item with the appropriate heading.

(d) Do not include any materials or information other than those required or permitted by part 436 or by state law not preempted by part 436. For the sole purpose of enhancing the prospective franchisee's ability to maneuver through an electronic version of a disclosure document, the franchisor may include scroll bars, internal links, and search features. All other features (*e.g.*, multimedia tools such as audio, video, animation, pop-up screens, or links to external information) are prohibited.

(e) Franchisors may prepare multistate disclosure documents by including non-preempted, state-specific information in the text of the disclosure document or in Exhibits attached to the disclosure document.

(f) Subfranchisors shall disclose the required information about the franchisor, and, to the extent applicable, the same information concerning the subfranchisor.

(g) Before furnishing a disclosure document, the franchisor shall advise the prospective franchisee of the formats in which the disclosure document is made available, any prerequisites for obtaining the disclosure document in a particular format, and any conditions necessary for reviewing the disclosure document in a particular format.

(h) Franchisors shall retain, and make available to the Commission upon request, a sample copy of each materially different version of their disclosure documents for three years after the close of the fiscal year when it was last used.

(i) For each completed franchise sale, franchisors shall retain a copy of the signed receipt for at least three years.

§ 436.7 Instructions for updating disclosures.

(a) All information in the disclosure document shall be current as of the close of the franchisor's most recent fiscal year. After the close of the fiscal year, the franchisor shall, within 120 days, prepare a revised disclosure document, after which a franchise seller may distribute only the revised document and no other disclosure document.

(b) The franchisor shall, within a reasonable time after the close of each quarter of the fiscal year, prepare revisions to be attached to the disclosure document to reflect any material change to the disclosures included, or required to be included, in the disclosure document. Each prospective franchisee shall receive the disclosure document and the quarterly revisions for the most recent period available at the time of disclosure.

(c) If applicable, the annual update shall include the franchisor's first quarterly update, either by incorporating the quarterly update information into the disclosure document itself, or through an addendum.

(d) When furnishing a disclosure document, the franchise seller shall notify the prospective franchisee of any material changes that the seller knows or should have known occurred in the information contained in any financial performance representation made in Item 19 (section 436.5(s)).

(e) Information that must be audited pursuant to § 436.5(u) of this part need not be audited for quarterly revisions; provided, however, that the franchisor states in immediate conjunction with the information that such information was not audited.

Subpart E—Exemptions

§ 436.8 Exemptions.

(a) The provisions of part 436 shall not apply if the franchisor can establish any of the following:

(1) The total of the required payments, or commitments to make a required payment, to the franchisor or an affiliate that are made any time from before to within six months after commencing operation of the franchisee's business is less than $500.

(2) The franchise relationship is a fractional franchise.

(3) The franchise relationship is a leased department.

(4) The franchise relationship is covered by the Petroleum Marketing Practices Act, 15 U.S.C. 2801.

(5)(i) The franchisee's initial investment, excluding any financing received from the franchisor or an affiliate and excluding the cost of unimproved land, totals at least $1 million and the prospective franchisee signs an acknowledgment verifying the grounds for the exemption. The acknowledgment shall state: ''The franchise sale is for more than $1 million—excluding the cost of unimproved land and any financing received from the franchisor or an affiliate— and thus is exempted from the Federal Trade Commission's Franchise Rule disclosure requirements, pursuant to 16 CFR 436.8(a)(5)(i)'';[11] or

[11] The large franchise exemption applies only if at least one individual prospective franchisee in an investor-group qualifies for

(ii) The franchisee (or its parent or any affiliates) is an entity that has been in business for at least five years and has a net worth of at least $5 million.

(6) One or more purchasers of at least a 50% ownership interest in the franchise: within 60 days of the sale, has been, for at least two years, an officer, director, general partner, individual with management responsibility for the offer and sale of the franchisor's franchises or the administrator of the franchised network; or within 60 days of the sale, has been, for at least two years, an owner of at least a 25% interest in the franchisor.

(7) There is no written document that describes any material term or aspect of the relationship or arrangement.

(b) For purposes of the exemptions set forth in this section, the Commission shall adjust the size of the monetary thresholds every fourth year based upon the Consumer Price Index. For purposes of this section, ''Consumer Price Index'' means the Consumer Price Index for all urban consumers published by the Department of Labor.

Subpart F—Prohibitions

§436.9 Additional prohibitions.

It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act for any franchise seller covered by part 436 to:

(a) Make any claim or representation, orally, visually, or in writing, that contradicts the information required to be disclosed by this part.

(b) Misrepresent that any person:

(1) Purchased a franchise from the franchisor or operated a franchise of the type offered by the franchisor.

(2) Can provide an independent and reliable report about the franchise or the experiences of any current or former franchisees.

(c) Disseminate any financial performance representations to prospective franchisees unless the franchisor has a reasonable basis and written substantiation for the representation at the time the representation is made, and the representation is included in Item 19 (§436.5(s)) of the franchisor's disclosure document. In conjunction with any such financial performance representation, the franchise seller shall also:

(1) Disclose the information required by §§436.5(s)(3)(ii)(B) and (E) of this part if the representation relates to the past performance of the franchisor's outlets.

(2) Include a clear and conspicuous admonition that a new franchisee's individual financial results may differ from the result stated in the financial performance representation.

(d) Fail to make available to prospective franchisees, and to the Commission upon reasonable request, written substantiation for any financial performance representations made in Item 19 (§436.5(s)).

(e) Fail to furnish a copy of the franchisor's disclosure document to a prospective franchisee earlier in the sales process than required under §436.2 of this part, upon reasonable request.

(f) Fail to furnish a copy of the franchisor's most recent disclosure document and any quarterly updates to a prospective franchisee, upon reasonable request, before the prospective franchisee signs a franchise agreement.

(g) Present for signing a franchise agreement in which the terms and conditions differ materially from those presented as an attachment to the disclosure document, unless the franchise seller informed the prospective franchisee of the differences at least seven days before execution of the franchise agreement.

(h) Disclaim or require a prospective franchisee to waive reliance on any representation made in the disclosure document or in its exhibits or amendments. Provided, however, that this provision is not intended to prevent a prospective franchisee from voluntarily waiving specific contract terms and conditions set forth in his or her disclosure document during the course of franchise sale negotiations.

(i) Fail to return any funds or deposits in accordance with any conditions disclosed in the franchisor's disclosure document, franchise agreement, or any related document.

---

the exemption by investing at the threshold level stated in this section.

Subpart G—Other Provisions

§ 436.10 Other laws and rules.

(a) The Commission does not approve or express any opinion on the legality of any matter a franchisor may be required to disclose by part 436. Further, franchisors may have additional obligations to impart material information to prospective franchisees outside of the disclosure document under Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act. The Commission intends to enforce all applicable statutes and rules.

(b) The FTC does not intend to preempt the franchise practices laws of any state or local government, except to the extent of any inconsistency with part 436. A law is not inconsistent with part 436 if it affords prospective franchisees equal or greater protection, such as registration of disclosure documents or more extensive disclosures.

§ 436.11 Severability.

If any provision of this part is stayed or held invalid, the remainder will stay in force.

APPENDIX A TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 10 TABLE—SUMMARY OF FINANCING OFFERED

SUMMARY OF FINANCING OFFERED

Item Financed	Source of Financing	Down Payment	Amount Financed	Term (Yrs)	Interest Rate	Monthly Payment	Prepay Penalty	Security Required	Liability Upon Default	Loss of Legal Right on Default
Initial Fee										
Land/ Constr										
Leased Space										
Equip. Lease										
Equip. Purchase										
Opening Inventory										
Other Financing										

APPENDIX B TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(1) TABLE—SYSTEMWIDE OUTLET SUMMARY

Systemwide Outlet Summary
For years 2004 to 2006

Column 1 Outlet Type	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at the Start of the Year	Column 4 Outlets at the End of the Year	Column 5 Net Change
Franchised	2004	859	1,062	+203
	2005	1,062	1,296	+234
	2006	1,296	2,720	+1,424
Company Owned	2004	125	145	+20
	2005	145	76	-69
	2006	76	141	+65

Systemwide Outlet Summary
For years 2004 to 2006

Column 1 Outlet Type	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at the Start of the Year	Column 4 Outlets at the End of the Year	Column 5 Net Change
Total Outlets	2004	984	1,207	+223
	2005	1,207	1,372	+165
	2006	1,372	2,861	+1,489

APPENDIX C TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(2) TABLE—TRANSFERS OF FRANCHISED OUTLETS

Transfers of Franchised Outlets from Franchisees to New Owners (other than the Franchisor)
For years 2004 to 2006

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Number of Transfers
NC	2004	1
	2005	0
	2006	2

Transfers of Franchised Outlets from Franchisees to New Owners (other than the Franchisor)
For years 2004 to 2006

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Number of Transfers
SC	2004	0
	2005	0
	2006	2
Total	2004	1
	2005	0
	2006	4

APPENDIX D TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(3) TABLE—STATUS OF FRANCHISE OUTLETS

Status of Franchise Outlets
For years 2004 to 2006

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at Start of Year	Column 4 Outlets Opened	Column 5 Terminations	Column 6 Non-Renewals	Column 7 Reacquired by Franchisor	Column 8 Ceased Operations-Other Reasons	Column 9 Outlets at End of the Year
AL	2004	10	2	1	0	0	1	10
	2005	11	5	0	1	0	0	15
	2006	15	4	1	0	1	2	15
AZ	2004	20	5	0	0	0	0	25
	2005	25	4	1	0	0	2	26
	2006	26	4	0	0	0	0	30
Totals	2004	30	7	1	0	0	1	35
	2005	36	9	1	1	0	2	41
	2006	41	8	1	0	1	2	45

APPENDIX E TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(4) TABLE—STATUS OF COMPANY-OWNED OUTLETS

Status of Company-Owned Outlets
For years 2004 to 2006

Column 1 State	Column 2 Year	Column 3 Outlets at Start of Year	Column 4 Outlets Opened	Column 5 Outlets Reacquired From Franchisees	Column 6 Outlets Closed	Column 7 Outlets Sold to Franchisees	Column 8 Outlets at End of the Year
NY	2004	1	0	1	0	0	2
	2005	2	2	0	1	0	3
	2006	3	0	0	3	0	0
OR	2004	4	0	1	0	0	5
	2005	5	0	0	2	0	3
	2006	3	0	0	0	1	2
Totals	2004	5	0	2	0	0	7
	2005	7	2	0	3	0	6
	2006	6	0	0	3	1	2

APPENDIX F TO PART 436—SAMPLE ITEM 20(5) TABLE—PROJECTED NEW FRANCHISED OUTLETS

Projected New Franchised Outlets
As of December 31, 2006

Column 1 State	Column 2 Franchise Agreements Signed But Outlet Not Opened	Column 3 Projected New Franchised Outlets in the Next Fiscal Year	Column 4 Projected New Company-Owned Outlets in the Current Fiscal Year
CO	2	3	1
NM	0	4	2
Total	2	7	3

PART 437—DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS AND PROHIBITIONS CONCERNING BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES

Sec.
437.1 The Rule.
437.2 Definitions.
437.3 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41-58.

SOURCE: 72 FR 15563, Mar. 30, 2007, unless otherwise note.

§ 437.1 The Rule.

In connection with the advertising, offering, licensing, contracting, sale, or other promotion in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, of any business opportunity, or any relationship which is represented either orally or in writing to be a business opportunity, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice within the meaning of Section 5 of that Act for any business opportunity seller or business opportunity broker:

(a) To fail to furnish any prospective business opportunity purchaser with the following information accurately, clearly, and concisely stated, in a legible, written document at the earlier of the ''time for making of disclosures'' or the first ''personal meeting'':

(1)(i) The official name and address and principal place of business of the business opportunity seller, and of the parent firm or holding company of the business opportunity seller, if any;

(ii) The name under which the business opportunity seller is doing or intends to do business; and

(iii) The trademarks, trade names, service marks, advertising or other commercial symbols (hereinafter collectively referred to as ''marks'') which identify the goods, commodities, or services to be offered, sold, or distributed by the prospective business opportunity purchaser, or under which the prospective business opportunity purchaser will be operating.

(2) The business experience during the past 5 years, stated individually, of each of the business opportunity seller's current directors and executive officers (including, and hereinafter to include, the chief executive and chief operating officer, financial, business opportunity marketing, training and service officers). With regard to each person listed, those persons' principal occupations and employers must be included.

(3) The business experience of the business opportunity seller and the business opportunity seller's parent firm (if any), including the length of time each:

(i) Has conducted a business of the type to be operated by the business opportunity purchaser;

(ii) Has offered or sold a business opportunity for such business;

(iii) Has conducted a business or offered or sold a business opportunity for a business

(A) Operating under a name using any mark set forth under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section, or

(B) Involving the sale, offering, or distribution of goods, commodities, or services which are identified by any mark set forth under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section; and

(iv) Has offered for sale or sold business opportunities in other lines of business, together with a description of such other lines of business.

(4) A statement disclosing who, if any, of the persons listed in paragraphs (a)(2) and (3) of this section:

(i) Has, at any time during the previous seven fiscal years, been convicted of a felony or pleaded nolo contendere to a felony charge if the felony involved fraud (including violation of any business opportunity law, or unfair or deceptive practices law), embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, or restraint of trade;

(ii) Has, at any time during the previous seven fiscal years, been held liable in a civil action resulting in a final judgment or has settled out of court any civil action or is a party to any civil action

(A) Involving allegations of fraud (including violation of any business opportunity law, or unfair or deceptive practices law), embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, or restraint of trade, or (B) Which was brought by a present or former business opportunity purchaser or business opportunity purchasers and which involves or involved the business opportunity relationship; *Provided, however*, That only material individual civil actions need be so listed pursuant to this paragraph (4)(ii) of this section, including any group of civil actions which, irrespective of the materiality of any single such action, in the aggregate is material;

(iii) Is subject to any currently effective State or Federal agency or court injunctive or restrictive order, or is a party to a proceeding currently pending in which such order is sought, relating to or affecting business opportunity activities or the business opportunity seller-purchaser relationship, or involving fraud (including violation of any business opportunity law, or unfair or deceptive practices law), embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, or restraint of trade.

Such statement shall set forth the identity and location of the court or agency; the date of conviction, judgment, or decision; the penalty imposed; the damages assessed; the terms of settlement or the terms of the order; and the date, nature, and issuer of each such order or ruling. A business opportunity seller may include a summary opinion of counsel as to any pending litigation, but only if counsel's consent to the use of such opinion is included in the disclosure statement.

(5) A statement disclosing who, if any, of the persons listed in paragraphs (a)(2) and (3) of this section at any time during the previous 7 fiscal years has:

(i) Filed in bankruptcy;

(ii) Been adjudged bankrupt;

(iii) Been reorganized due to insolvency; or

(iv) Been a principal, director, executive officer, or partner of any other person that has so filed or was so adjudged or reorganized, during or within 1 year after the period that such person held such position in such other person. If so, the name and location of the person having so filed, or having been so adjudged or reorganized, the date thereof, and any other material facts relating thereto, shall be set forth.

(6) A factual description of the business opportunity offered to be sold by the business opportunity seller.

(7) A statement of the total funds which must be paid by the business opportunity purchaser to the business opportunity seller or to a person affiliated with the business opportunity seller, or which the business opportunity seller or such affiliated person imposes or collects in whole or in part on behalf of a third party, in order to obtain or commence the business opportunity operation, such as initial business opportunity fees, deposits, down payments, prepaid rent, and equipment and inventory purchases. If all or part of these fees or deposits are returnable under certain conditions, these conditions shall be set forth; and if not returnable, such fact shall be disclosed.

(8) A statement describing any recurring funds required to be paid, in connection with carrying on the business opportunity business, by the business opportunity purchaser to the business opportunity seller or to a person affiliated with the business opportunity seller, or which the business opportunity seller or such affiliated person imposes or collects in whole or in part on behalf of a third party, including, but not limited to, royalty, lease, advertising, training, and sign rental fees, and equipment or inventory purchases.

(9) A statement setting forth the name of each person (including the business opportunity seller) the business opportunity purchaser is directly or indirectly required or advised to do business with by the business opportunity seller, where such persons are affiliated with the business opportunity seller.

(10) A statement describing any real estate, services, supplies, products, inventories, signs, fixtures, or equipment relating to the establishment or the operation of the business opportunity business which the business opportunity purchaser is directly or indirectly required by the business opportunity seller to purchase, lease or rent; and if such purchases, leases or rentals must be made from specific persons (including the business opportunity seller), a list of the names and addresses of each such person. Such list may be made in a separate document delivered to the prospective business opportunity purchaser with the prospectus if the existence of such separate document is disclosed in the prospectus.

(11) A description of the basis for calculating, and, if such information is readily available, the actual amount of, any revenue or other consideration to be received by the business opportunity seller or persons affiliated with the business opportunity seller from suppliers to the prospective business opportunity purchaser in consideration for goods or services which the business opportunity seller requires or advises the business opportunity purchaser to obtain from such suppliers.

(12)(i) A statement of all the material terms and conditions of any financing arrangement offered directly or indirectly by the business opportunity seller, or any person affiliated with the business opportunity seller, to the prospective business opportunity purchaser; and

(ii) A description of the terms by which any payment is to be received by the business opportunity seller from

(A) Any person offering financing to a prospective business opportunity purchaser; and

(B) Any person arranging for financing for a prospective business opportunity purchaser.

(13) A statement describing the material facts of whether, by the terms of the business opportunity agreement or other device or practice, the business opportunity purchaser is:

(i) Limited in the goods or services he or she may offer for sale;

(ii) Limited in the customers to whom he or she may sell such goods or services;

(iii) Limited in the geographic area in which he or she may offer for sale or sell goods or services; or

(iv) Granted territorial protection by the business opportunity seller, by which, with respect to a territory or area,

(A) The business opportunity seller will not establish another, or more than any fixed number of, business opportunities or company-owned outlets, either operating under, or selling, offering, or distributing goods, commodities or services, identified by any mark set forth under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section; or

(B) The business opportunity seller or its parent will not establish other business opportunities or company-owned outlets selling or leasing the same or similar products or services under a different trade name, trademark, service mark, advertising or other commercial symbol.

(14) A statement of the extent to which the business opportunity seller requires the business opportunity purchaser (or, if the business opportunity purchaser is a corporation, any person affiliated with the business opportunity purchaser) to participate personally in the direct operation of the business opportunity.

(15) A statement disclosing, with respect to the business opportunity agreement and any related agreements:

(i) The term (*i.e.*, duration of arrangement), if any, of such agreement, and whether such term is or may be affected by any agreement (including leases or subleases) other than the one from which such term arises;

(ii) The conditions under which the business opportunity purchaser may renew or extend;

(iii) The conditions under which the business opportunity seller may refuse to renew or extend;

(iv) The conditions under which the business opportunity purchaser may terminate;

(v) The conditions under which the business opportunity seller may terminate;

(vi) the obligations (including lease or sublease obligations) of the business opportunity purchaser after termination of the business opportunity by the business opportunity seller, and the obligations of the business opportunity purchaser (including lease or sublease obligations) after termination of the business opportunity by the business opportunity purchaser and after the expiration of the business opportunity;

(vii) The business opportunity purchaser's interest upon termination of the business opportunity, or upon refusal to renew or extend the business opportunity, whether by the business opportunity seller or by the business opportunity purchaser;

(viii) The conditions under which the business opportunity seller may repurchase, whether by right of first refusal or at the option of the business opportunity seller (and if the business opportunity seller has the option to repurchase the business opportunity, whether there will be an independent appraisal of the business opportunity, whether the repurchase price will be determined by a predetermined formula and whether there will be a recognition of goodwill or other intangibles associated therewith in the repurchase price to be given the business opportunity purchaser);

(ix) The conditions under which the business opportunity purchaser may sell or assign all or any interest in the ownership of the business opportunity, or of the assets of the business opportunity business;

(x) The conditions under which the business opportunity seller may sell or assign, in whole or in part, its interest under such agreements;

(xi) The conditions under which the business opportunity purchaser may modify;

(xii) The conditions under which the business opportunity seller may modify;

(xiii) The rights of the business opportunity purchaser's heirs or personal representative upon the death or incapacity of the business opportunity purchaser; and

(xiv) The provisions of any covenant not to compete.

(16) A statement disclosing, with respect to the business opportunity seller and as to the particular named business being offered:

(i) The total number of business opportunity purchasers operating at the end of the preceding fiscal year;

(ii) The total number of company-owned outlets operating at the end of the preceding fiscal year;

(iii) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of

(A) The 10 business opportunity outlets of the named business opportunity business nearest the prospective business opportunity purchaser's intended location; or

(B) All business opportunity purchasers of the business opportunity seller; or

(C) All business opportunity purchasers of the business opportunity seller in the State in which the prospective business opportunity purchaser lives or where the proposed business opportunity is to be located, *Provided*, *however*, That there are more than 10 such business opportunity purchasers. If the number of business opportunity purchasers to be disclosed pursuant to paragraph (a)(16)(iii)(B) or (C) of this section exceeds 50, such listing may be made in a separate document delivered to the prospective business opportunity purchaser with the prospectus if the existence of such separate document is disclosed in the prospectus;

(iv) The number of business opportunities voluntarily terminated or not renewed by business opportunity purchasers within, or at the conclusion of, the term of the business opportunity agreement, during the preceding fiscal year;

(v) The number of business opportunities reacquired by purchase by the business opportunity seller during the term of the business opportunity agreement, and upon the conclusion of the term of the business opportunity agreement, during the preceding fiscal year;

(vi) The number of business opportunities otherwise reacquired by the business opportunity seller during the term of the business opportunity agreement, and upon the conclusion of the term of the business opportunity agreement, during the preceding fiscal year;

(vii) The number of business opportunities for which the business opportunity seller refused renewal of the business opportunity agreement or other agreements relating to the business opportunity during the preceding fiscal year; and

(viii) The number of business opportunities that were canceled or terminated by the business opportunity seller during the term of the business opportunity agreement, and upon conclusion of the term of the business opportunity agreement, during the preceding fiscal year.

With respect to the disclosures required by paragraphs (a)(16) (v), (vi), (vii), and (viii) of this section, the disclosure statement shall also include a general categorization of the reasons for such reacquisitions, refusals to renew or terminations, and the number falling within each such category, including but not limited to the following: failure to comply with quality control standards, failure to make sufficient sales, and other breaches of contract.

(17)(i) If site selection or approval thereof by the business opportunity seller is involved in the business opportunity relationship, a statement disclosing the range of time that has elapsed between signing of business opportunity agreements or other agreements relating to the business opportunity and site selection, for agreements entered into during the preceding fiscal year; and

(ii) If operating business opportunity outlets are to be provided by the business opportunity seller, a statement disclosing the range of time that has elapsed between the signing of business opportunity agreements or other agreements relating to the business opportunity and the commencement of the business opportunity purchaser's business, for agreements entered into during the preceding fiscal year.

With respect to the disclosures required by paragraphs (a)(17) (i) and (ii) of this section, a business opportunity seller may at its option also provide a distribution chart using meaningful classifications with respect to such ranges of time.

(18) If the business opportunity seller offers an initial training program or informs the prospective business opportunity purchaser that it intends to provide such person with initial training, a statement disclosing:

(i) The type and nature of such training;

(ii) The minimum amount, if any, of training that will be provided to a business opportunity purchaser; and

(iii) The cost, if any, to be borne by the business opportunity purchaser for the training to be provided, or for obtaining such training.

(19) If the name of a public figure is used in connection with a recommendation to purchase a business opportunity, or as a part of the name of the business opportunity operation, or if the public figure is stated to be involved with the management of the business opportunity seller, a statement disclosing:

(i) The nature and extent of the public figure's involvement and obligations to the business opportunity seller, including but not limited to the promotional assistance the public figure will provide to the business opportunity seller and to the business opportunity purchaser;

(ii) The total investment of the public figure in the business opportunity operation; and

(iii) The amount of any fee or fees the business opportunity purchaser will be obligated to pay for such involvement or assistance provided by the public figure.

(20)(i) A balance sheet (statement of financial position) for the business opportunity seller for the most recent fiscal year, and an income statement (statement of results of operations) and statement of changes in financial position for the franchisor for the most recent three fiscal years. Such statements are required to have been examined in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by an independent certified or licensed public accountant.

Provided, however, That where a business opportunity seller is a subsidiary of another corporation which is permitted under generally accepted accounting principles to prepare financial statements on a consolidated or combined statement basis, the above information may be submitted for the parent if (A) the corresponding unaudited financial statements of the business opportunity seller are also provided, and (B) the parent absolutely and irrevocably has agreed to guarantee all obligations of the subsidiary;

(ii) Unaudited statements shall be used only to the extent that audited statements have not been made, and provided that such statements are accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure that they are unaudited. Statements shall be prepared on an audited basis as soon as practicable, but, at a minimum, financial statements for the first full fiscal year following the date on which the business opportunity seller must first comply with this part shall contain a balance sheet opinion prepared by an independent certified or licensed public accountant, and financial statements for the following fiscal year shall be fully audited.

(21) All of the foregoing information in paragraphs (a)(1) through (20) of this section shall be contained in a single disclosure statement or prospectus, which shall not contain any materials or information other than that required by this part or by State law not preempted by this part. This does not preclude business opportunity sellers or brokers from giving other nondeceptive information orally, visually, or in separate literature so long as such information is not contradictory to the information in the disclosure statement required by paragraph (a) of this section. This disclosure statement shall carry a cover sheet distinctively and conspicuously showing the name of the business opportunity seller, the date of issuance of the disclosure statement, and the following notice imprinted thereon in upper and lower case bold-face type of not less than 12 point size:

INFORMATION FOR PROSPECTIVE BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY PURCHASERS REQUIRED BY FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

* * * * *

To protect you, we've required your business opportunity seller to give you this information. We haven't checked it, and don't know if it's correct. It should help you make up your mind. Study it carefully. While it includes some information about your contract, don't rely on it alone to understand your contract. Read all of your contract carefully. Buying a business opportunity is a complicated investment. Take your time to

decide. If possible, show your contract and this information to an advisor, like a lawyer or an accountant. If you find anything you think may be wrong or anything important that's been left out, you should let us know about it. It may be against the law.

There may also be laws on business opportunities in your state. Ask your state agencies about them.

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION,
WASHINGTON, D.C.

Provided, That the obligations to furnish such disclosure statement shall be deemed to have been met for both the business opportunity seller and the business opportunity broker if either such party furnishes the prospective business opportunity purchaser with such disclosure statement.

(22) All information contained in the disclosure statement shall be current as of the close of the business opportunity seller's most recent fiscal year. After the close of each fiscal year, the business opportunity seller shall be given a period not exceeding 90 days to prepare a revised disclosure statement and, following such 90 days, may distribute only the revised prospectus and no other. The business opportunity seller shall, within a reasonable time after the close of each quarter of the fiscal year, prepare revisions to be attached to the disclosure statement to reflect any material change in the business opportunity seller or relating to the business opportunity business of the business opportunity seller, about which the business opportunity seller or broker, or any agent, representative, or employee thereof, knows or should know. Each prospective business opportunity purchaser shall have in his or her possession at the ''time for making of disclosures,'' the disclosure statement and quarterly revision for the period most recent to the ''time for making of disclosures'' and available at that time. Information which is required to be audited pursuant to paragraph (a)(20) of this section is not required to be audited for quarterly revisions. *Provided, however*, That the unaudited information is accompanied by a statement in immediate conjunction therewith that clearly and conspicuously discloses that such information has not been audited.

(23) A table of contents shall be included within the disclosure statement.

(24) The disclosure statement shall include a comment which either positively or negatively responds to each disclosure item required to be in the disclosure statement, by use of a statement which fully incorporates the information required by the item. Each disclosure item therein must be preceded by the appropriate heading, as set forth in Note 3 of this part.

(b) To make any oral, written, or visual representation to a prospective business opportunity purchaser which states a specific level of potential sales, income, gross or net profit for that prospective business opportunity purchaser, or which states other facts which suggest such a specific level, unless:

(1) At the time such representation is made, such representation is relevant to the geographic market in which the business opportunity is to be located;

(2) At the time such representation is made, a reasonable basis exists for such representation and the business opportunity seller has in its possession material which constitutes a reasonable basis for such representation, and such material is made available to any prospective business opportunity purchaser and to the Commission or its staff upon reasonable demand.

Provided, further, That in immediate conjunction with such representation, the business opportunity seller shall disclose in a clear and conspicuous manner that such material is available to the prospective business opportunity purchaser; and *Provided, however*, That no provision within paragraph (b) of this section shall be construed as requiring the disclosure to any prospective business opportunity purchaser of the identity of any specific business opportunity purchaser or of information reasonably likely to lead to the disclosure of such person's identity; and *Provided, further*, That no additional representation as to a prospective business opportunity purchaser's potential sales, income, or profits may be made later than the ''time for making of disclosures'';

(3) Such representation is set forth in detail along with the material bases and assumptions therefor in a single

legible written document whose text accurately, clearly and concisely discloses such information, and none other than that provided for by this part or by State law not preempted by this part. Each prospective business opportunity purchaser to whom the representation is made shall be furnished with such document no later than the ''time for making of disclosure''; *Provided, however*, That if the representation is made at or prior to a ''personal meeting'' and such meeting occurs before the ''time for making of disclosures'', the document shall be furnished to the prospective business opportunity purchaser to whom the representation is made at that ''personal meeting'';

(4) The following statement is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (b)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation and in not less than twelve point upper and lowercase boldface type:

CAUTION

These figures are only estimates of what we think you may earn. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(5) The following information is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (b)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation:

(i) The number and percentage of outlets of the named business opportunity business which are located in the geographic markets that form the basis for any such representation and which are known to the business opportunity seller or broker to have earned or made at least the same sales, income, or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those potential sales, income, or profits represented; and

(ii) The beginning and ending dates for the corresponding time period referred to by paragraph (b)(5)(i) of this section, *Provided, however*, That any business opportunity seller without prior business opportunity experience as to the named business opportunity business so indicate such lack of experience in the document described in paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

Except, That representations of the sales, income or profits of existing business opportunity outlets need not comply with paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) To make any oral, written, or visual representation to a prospective business opportunity purchaser which states a specific level of sales, income, gross or net profits of existing outlets (whether business opportunity purchaser-owned or company-owned) of the named business opportunity business, or which states other facts which suggest such a specific level, unless:

(1) At the time such representation is made, such representation is relevant to the geographic market in which the business opportunity is to be located;

(2) At the time such representation is made, a reasonable basis exists for such representation and the business opportunity seller has in its possession material which constitutes a reasonable basis for such representation, and such material is made available to any prospective business opportunity purchaser and to the Commission or its staff upon reasonable demand, *Provided, however*, That in immediate conjunction with such representation, the business opportunity purchaser discloses in a clear and conspicuous manner that such material is available to the prospective franchisee; and *Provided, further*, That no provision within paragraph (c) of this section shall be construed as requiring the disclosure to any prospective business opportunity purchaser of the identity of any specific business opportunity purchaser or of information reasonably likely to lead to the disclosure of such person's identity; and *Provided, further*, That no additional representation as to the sales, income, or gross or net profits of existing outlets (whether business opportunity purchaser-owned or company-owned) of the named business opportunity business may be made later than the ''time for making of disclosures'';

(3) Such representation is set forth in detail along with the material bases and assumptions therefor in a single legible written document which accurately, clearly and concisely discloses

such information, and none other than that provided for by this part or by State law not preempted by this part. Each prospective business opportunity purchaser to whom the representation is made shall be furnished with such document no later than the ''time for making of disclosures,'' *Provided, however*, That if the representation is made at or prior to a ''personal meeting'' and such meeting occurs before the ''time for making of disclosures,'' the document shall be furnished to the prospective business opportunity purchaser to whom the representation is made at that ''personal meeting'';

(4) The underlying data on which the representation is based have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(5) The following statement is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (c)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation, and in not less than twelve point upper and lower case boldface type:

CAUTION

Some outlets have [sold] [earned] this amount. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(6) The following information is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (c)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation:

(i) the number and percentage of outlets of the named business opportunity business which are located in the geographic markets that form the basis for any such representation and which are known to the business opportunity seller or broker to have earned or made at least the same sales, income, or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those potential sales, income, or profits represented; and

(ii) The beginning and ending dates for the corresponding time period referred to by paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section, *Provided, however*, That any business opportunity seller without prior business opportunity experience as to the named business opportunity business so indicate such lack of experience in the document described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(d) To fail to provide the following information within the document(s) required by paragraphs (b)(3) and (c)(3) of this section whenever any representation is made to a prospective business opportunity purchaser regarding its potential sales, income, or profits, or the sales, income, gross or net profits of existing outlets (whether business opportunity purchaser-owned or company-owned) of the named business opportunity business:

(1) A cover sheet distinctively and conspicuously showing the name of the business opportunity seller, the date of issuance of the document and the following notice imprinted thereon in upper and lower case boldface type of not less than twelve point size:

INFORMATION FOR PROSPECTIVE BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY PURCHASERS ABOUT BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY [SALES] [INCOME] [PROFIT] REQUIRED BY THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION.

To protect you, we're required the business opportunity seller to give you this information. We haven't checked it and don't know if it's correct. Study these facts and figures carefully. If possible, show them to someone who can advise you, like a lawyer or an accountant. Then take your time and think it over.

If you find anything you think may be wrong or anything important that's been left out, let us know about it. It may be against the law.

There may also be laws on business opportunities in your State. Ask your State agencies about them.

Federal Trade Commission,
Washington, D.C.

(2) A table of contents. *Provided, however*, That each prospective business opportunity purchaser to whom the representation is made shall be notified at the ''time for making of disclosures'' of any material change (about which the business opportunity seller, broker, or any of the agents, representations, or employees thereof,

knows or should know) in the information contained in the document(s) described by paragraphs (b)(3) and (c)(3) of this section.

(e) To make any oral, written, or visual representation for general dissemination (not otherwise covered by paragraph (b) or (c) of this section) which states a specific level of sales, income, gross or net profits, either actual or potential, of existing or prospective outlets (whether business opportunity purchaser-owned or company-owned) of the named business opportunity business or which states other facts which suggest such a specific level, unless:

(1) At the time such representation is made, a reasonable basis exists for such representation and the business opportunity seller has in its possession material which constitutes a reasonable basis for such representation and which is made available to the Commission or its staff upon reasonable demand;

(2) The underlying data on which each representation of sales, income or profit for existing outlets is based have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(3) In immediate conjunction with such representation, there shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed the number and percentage of outlets of the named business opportunity business which the business opportunity seller or broker knows to have earned or made at least the same sales, income, or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those sales, income, or profits represented, and the beginning and ending dates for said time period;

(4) In immediate conjunction with each such representation of potential sales, income or profits, the following statement shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed:

CAUTION

These figures are only estimates; there is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

Provided, however, That if such representation is not based on actual experience of existing outlets of the named business opportunity business, that fact also should be disclosed;

(5) No later than the earlier of the first ''personal meeting'' or the ''time for making of disclosures,'' each prospective business opportunity purchaser shall be given a single, legible written document which accurately, clearly and concisely sets forth the following information and materials (and none other than that provided for by this part or by State law not preempted by this part):

(i) The representation, set forth in detail along with the material bases and assumptions therefor;

(ii) the number and percentage of outlets of the named business opportunity business which the business opportunity seller or broker knows to have earned or made at least the same sales, income or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those sales, income, or profits represented, and the beginning and ending dates for said time period;

(iii) With respect to each such representation of sales, income, or profits of existing outlets, the following statement shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in immediate conjunction therewith, printed in not less than 12 point upper and lower case boldface type:

CAUTION

Some outlets have [sold] [earned] this amount. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(iv) With respect to each such representation of potential sales, income, or profits, the following statement shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in immediate conjunction therewith, printed in not less than 12 point upper and lower case boldface type:

CAUTION

These figures are only estimates. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(v) If applicable, a statement clearly and conspicuously disclosing that the business opportunity seller lacks prior business opportunity experience as to the named business opportunity business;

(vi) If applicable, a statement clearly and conspicuously disclosing that the business opportunity seller has not

been in business long enough to have actual business data;

(vii) A cover sheet, distinctively and conspicuously showing the name of the business opportunity seller, the date of issuance of the document, and the following notice printed thereon in not less than 12 point upper and lower case boldface type:

INFORMATION FOR PROSPECTIVE BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY PURCHASERS ABOUT BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY [SALES] [INCOME] [PROFIT] REQUIRED BY THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

To protect you, we've required the business opportunity seller to give you this information. We haven't checked it and don't know if it's correct. Study these facts and figures carefully. If possible, show them to someone who can advise you, like a lawyer or an accountant. If you find anything you think may be wrong or anything important that's been left out, let us know about it. It may be against the law. There may also be laws about business opportunities in your State. Ask your State agencies about them.

Federal Trade Commission,
Washington, D.C.

(viii) A table of contents;

(6) Each prospective business opportunity purchaser shall be notified at the ''time for making of disclosures'' of any material changes that have occurred in the information contained in this document.

(f) To make any claim or representation which is contradictory to the information required to be disclosed by this part.

(g) To fail to furnish the prospective business opportunity purchaser with a copy of the business opportunity seller's business opportunity agreement and related agreements with the document, and a copy of the completed business opportunity and related agreements intended to be executed by the parties at least 5 business days prior to the date the agreements are to be executed.

Provided, however, That the obligations defined in paragraphs (b) through (g) of this section shall be deemed to have been met for both the business opportunity seller and the broker if either such person furnishes the prospective business opportunity purchaser with the written disclosures required thereby.

(h) To fail to return any funds or deposits in accordance with any conditions disclosed pursuant to paragraph (a)(7) of this section.

§ 437.2 Definitions.

As used in this part, the following definitions shall apply:

(a) The term *business opportunity* means any continuing commercial relationship created by any arrangement or arrangements whereby:

(1) A person (hereinafter ''business opportunity purchaser'') offers, sells, or distributes to any person other than a ''business opportunity seller'' (as hereinafter defined), goods, commodities, or services which are:

(i)(A) Supplied by another person (hereinafter ''business opportunity seller''); or

(B) Supplied by a third person (e.g., a supplier) with whom the business opportunity purchaser is directly or indirectly required to do business by another person (hereinafter ''business opportunity seller''); or

(C) Supplied by a third person (e.g., a supplier) with whom the business opportunity purchaser is directly or indirectly advised to do business by another person (hereinafter ''business opportunity seller'') where such third person is affiliated with the business opportunity seller; and

(ii) The business opportunity seller:

(A) Secures for the business opportunity purchaser retail outlets or accounts for said goods, commodities, or services; or

(B) Secures for the business opportunity purchaser locations or sites for vending machines, rack displays, or any other product sales displays used by the business opportunity purchaser in the offering, sale, or distribution of said goods, commodities, or services; or

(C) Provides to the business opportunity purchaser the services of a person able to secure the retail outlets, accounts, sites or locations referred to in paragraphs (a)(ii)(A) and (B) of this section; and

(2) The business opportunity purchaser is required as a condition of obtaining or commencing the business opportunity operation to make a payment or a commitment to pay to the

business opportunity seller, or to a person affiliated with the business opportunity seller.

(3) Exemptions. The provisions of this part shall not apply to a business opportunity:

(i) Which is a ''fractional business opportunity''; or

(ii) Where pursuant to a lease, license, or similar agreement, a person offers, sells, or distributes goods, commodities, or services on or about premises occupied by a retailer-grantor primarily for the retailer-grantor's own merchandising activities, which goods, commodities, or services are not purchased from the retailer-grantor or persons whom the lessee is directly or indirectly

(A) Required to do business with by the retailer-grantor or

(B) Advised to do business with by the retailer-grantor where such person is affiliated with the retailer-grantor; or

(iii) Where the total of the payments referred to in paragraph (a)(2) of this section made during a period from any time before to within 6 months after commencing operation of the business opportunity purchaser's business, is less than $500; or

(iv) Where there is no writing which evidences any material term or aspect of the relationship or arrangement; or

(v) Which complies with the franchise disclosure requirements set forth at part 436 or falls under one or more of the exemptions set forth at §436.8 of part 436.

(4) Exclusions. The term ''business opportunity'' shall not be deemed to include any continuing commercial relationship created solely by:

(i) The relationship between an employer and an employee, or among general business partners; or

(ii) Membership in a bona fide ''cooperative association''; or

(iii) An agreement for the use of a trademark, service mark, trade name, seal, advertising, or other commercial symbol designating a person who offers on a general basis, for a fee or otherwise, a bona fide service for the evaluation, testing, or certification of goods, commodities, or services; or

(iv) An agreement between a licensor and a single licensee to license a trademark, trade name, service mark, advertising or other commercial symbol where such license is the only one of its general nature and type to be granted by the licensor with respect to that trademark, trade name, service mark, advertising, or other commercial symbol.

(4) Any relationship which is represented either orally or in writing to be a business opportunity (as defined in paragraph (a) of this section) is subject to the requirements of this part.

(b) The term *person* means any individual, group, association, limited or general partnership, corporation, or any other business entity.

(c) The term *business opportunity seller* means any person who participates in a business opportunity relationship as a business opportunity seller, as denoted in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) The term *business opportunity purchaser* means any person

(1) Who participates in a business opportunity relationship as a business opportunity purchaser, as denoted in paragraph (a) of this section, or

(2) To whom an interest in a business opportunity is sold.

(e) The term *prospective business opportunity purchaser* includes any person, including any representative, agent, or employee of that person, who approaches or is approached by a business opportunity seller or broker, or any representative, agent, or employee thereof, for the purpose of discussing the establishment, or possible establishment, of a business opportunity relationship involving such a person.

(f) The term *business day* means any day other than Saturday, Sunday, or the following national holidays: New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans' Day, Thanksgiving, and Christmas.

(g) The term *time for making of disclosures* means ten (10) business days prior to the earlier of

(1) The execution by a prospective business opportunity purchaser of any business opportunity agreement or any other agreement imposing a binding legal obligation on such prospective business opportunity purchaser, about which the business opportunity seller, broker, or any agent, representative, or

employee thereof, knows or should know, in connection with the sale or proposed sale of a business opportunity, or

(2) The payment by a prospective business opportunity purchaser, about which the business opportunity seller, broker, or any agent, representative, or employee thereof, knows or should know, of any consideration in connection with the sale or proposed sale of a business opportunity.

(h) The term *fractional business opportunity* means any relationship, as denoted by paragraph (a) of this section, in which the person described therein as a business opportunity purchaser, or any of the current directors or executive officers thereof, has been in the type of business represented by the business opportunity relationship for more than 2 years and the parties anticipated, or should have anticipated, at the time the agreement establishing the business opportunity relationship was reached, that the sales arising from the relationship would represent no more than 20 percent of the sales in dollar volume of the business opportunity purchaser.

(i) The term *affiliated person* means a person (as defined in paragraph (b) of this section):

(1) Which directly or indirectly controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, a business opportunity seller; or

(2) Which directly or indirectly owns, controls, or holds with power to vote, 10 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of a business opportunity seller; or

(3) Which has, in common with a business opportunity seller, one or more partners, officers, directors, trustees, branch managers, or other persons occupying similar status or performing similar functions.

(j) The term *business opportunity broker* means any person other than a business opportunity seller or a business opportunity purchaser who sells, offers for sale, or arranges for the sale of a business opportunity.

(k) The term *sale of a business opportunity* includes a contract or agreement whereby a person obtains a business opportunity or an interest in a business opportunity for value by purchase, license, or otherwise. This term shall not be deemed to include the renewal or extension of an existing business opportunity where there is no interruption in the operation of the business opportunity business by the business opportunity purchaser, unless the new contracts or agreements contain material changes from those in effect between the business opportunity seller and business opportunity purchaser prior thereto.

(l) A *cooperative association* is either

(1) An association of producers of agricultural products authorized by section 1 of the Capper-Volstead Act, 7 U.S.C. 291; or

(2) An organization operated on a cooperative basis by and for independent retailers which wholesales goods or furnishes services primarily to its member-retailers.

(m) The term *fiscal year* means the business opportunity seller's fiscal year.

(n) The term *material*, *material fact*, and *material change* shall include any fact, circumstance, or set of conditions that has a substantial likelihood of influencing a reasonable business opportunity purchaser in the making of a significant decision relating to a named business opportunity business or that has any significant financial impact on a business opportunity purchaser or prospective business opportunity purchaser.

(o) The term *personal meeting* means a face-to-face meeting between a business opportunity seller or broker (or any agent, representative, or employee thereof) and a prospective business opportunity purchaser which is held for the purposes of discussing the sale or possible sale of a business opportunity.

§ 437.3 Severability.

If any provision of this part or its application to any person, act, or practice is held invalid, the remainder of the part or the application of its provisions to any person, act, or practice shall not be affected thereby.

NOTE 1: The Commission expresses no opinion as to the legality of any practice mentioned in this part. A provision for disclosure should not be construed as condonation or approval with respect to the matter required to be disclosed, nor as an indication of the

Commission's intention not to enforce any applicable statute.

NOTE 2: By taking action in this area, the Federal Trade Commission does not intend to annul, alter, affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this part from complying with the laws or regulations of any State, municipality, or other local government with respect to business opportunity practices, except to the extent that those laws or regulations are inconsistent with any provision of this part, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. For the purposes of this part, a law or regulation of any State, municipality, or other local government is not inconsistent with this part if the protection such law or regulation affords any prospective business opportunity purchaser is equal to or greater than that provided by this part. Examples of provisions that provide protection equal to or greater than that provided by this part include laws or regulations which require more complete record keeping by the business opportunity seller or the disclosure of more complete information to the business opportunity purchaser.

NOTE 3: [As per § 437.1(a)(24) of this part]:

DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Pursuant to 16 CFR 437.1 et seq., a Trade Regulation Rule of the Federal Trade Commission regarding Disclosure Requirements and Prohibitions Concerning Business Opportunities, the following information is set forth on [name of business opportunity seller] for your examination:

1. Identifying information as to the business opportunity seller;
2. Business experience of the business opportunity seller's directors and executive officers.
3. Business experience of the business opportunity seller.
4. Litigation history.
5. Bankruptcy history.
6. Description of business opportunity.
7. Initial funds required to be paid by a business opportunity purchaser.
8. Recurring funds required to be paid by a business opportunity purchaser.
9. Affiliated persons the business opportunity purchaser is required or advised to do business with by the business opportunity seller.
10. Obligations to purchase.
11. Revenues received by the business opportunity seller in consideration of purchases by a business opportunity purchaser.
12. Financing arrangements.
13. Restriction on sales.
14. Person participation required of the business opportunity purchaser in the operation of the business opportunity.
15. Termination, cancellation, and renewal of the business opportunity.
16. Statistical information concerning the number of business opportunity purchasers (and company-owned outlets).
17. Site selection.
18. Training programs.
19. Public figure involvement in the business opportunity.
20. Financial information concerning the business opportunity seller.

PART 444—CREDIT PRACTICES

Sec.
444.1 Definitions.
444.2 Unfair credit practices.
444.3 Unfair or deceptive cosigner practices.
444.4 Late charges.
444.5 State exemptions.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 18(a), 88 Stat. 2193, as amended 93 Stat. 95 (15 U.S.C. 57a); 80 Stat. 383, as amended, 81 Stat. 54 (5 U.S.C. 552).

SOURCE: 49 FR 7789, Mar. 1, 1984, unless otherwise noted.

§ 444.1 Definitions.

(a) *Lender*. A person who engages in the business of lending money to consumers within the jurisdiction of the Federal Trade Commission.

(b) *Retail installment seller*. A person who sells goods or services to consumers on a deferred payment basis or pursuant to a lease-purchase arrangement within the jurisdiction of the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Person*. An individual, corporation, or other business organization.

(d) *Consumer*. A natural person who seeks or acquires goods, services, or money for personal, family, or household use.

(e) *Obligation*. An agreement between a consumer and a lender or retail installment seller.

(f) *Creditor*. A lender or a retail installment seller.

(g) *Debt*. Money that is due or alleged to be due from one to another.

(h) *Earnings*. Compensation paid or payable to an individual or for his or her account for personal services rendered or to be rendered by him or her, whether denominated as wages, salary, commission, bonus, or otherwise, including periodic payments pursuant to a pension, retirement, or disability program.

(i) *Household goods*. Clothing, furniture, appliances, one radio and one television, linens, china, crockery,

kitchenware, and personal effects (including wedding rings) of the consumer and his or her dependents, provided that the following are not included within the scope of the term *household goods:*

(1) Works of art;

(2) Electronic entertainment equipment (except one television and one radio);

(3) Items acquired as antiques; and

(4) Jewelry (except wedding rings).

(j) *Antique*. Any item over one hundred years of age, including such items that have been repaired or renovated without changing their original form or character.

(k) *Cosigner*. A natural person who renders himself or herself liable for the obligation of another person without compensation. The term shall include any person whose signature is requested as a condition to granting credit to another person, or as a condition for forbearance on collection of another person's obligation that is in default. The term shall not include a spouse whose signature is required on a credit obligation to perfect a security interest pursuant to State law. A person who does not receive goods, services, or money in return for a credit obligation does not receive compensation within the meaning of this definition. A person is a cosigner within the meaning of this definition whether or not he or she is designated as such on a credit obligation.

§ 444.2 Unfair credit practices.

(a) In connection with the extension of credit to consumers in or affecting commerce, as commerce is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair act or practice within the meaning of Section 5 of that Act for a lender or retail installment seller directly or indirectly to take or receive from a consumer an obligation that:

(1) Constitutes or contains a cognovit or confession of judgment (for purposes other than executory process in the State of Louisiana), warrant of attorney, or other waiver of the right to notice and the opportunity to be heard in the event of suit or process thereon.

(2) Constitutes or contains an executory waiver or a limitation of exemption from attachment, execution, or other process on real or personal property held, owned by, or due to the consumer, unless the waiver applies solely to property subject to a security interest executed in connection with the obligation.

(3) Constitutes or contains an assignment of wages or other earnings unless:

(i) The assignment by its terms is revocable at the will of the debtor, or

(ii) The assignment is a payroll deduction plan or preauthorized payment plan, commencing at the time of the transaction, in which the consumer authorizes a series of wage deductions as a method of making each payment, or

(iii) The assignment applies only to wages or other earnings already earned at the time of the assignment.

(4) Constitutes or contains a nonpossessory security interest in household goods other than a purchase money security interest.

(b) [Reserved]

§ 444.3 Unfair or deceptive cosigner practices.

(a) In connection with the extension of credit to consumers in or affecting commerce, as commerce is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is:

(1) A deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a lender or retail installment seller, directly or indirectly, to misrepresent the nature or extent of cosigner liability to any person.

(2) An unfair act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a lender or retail installment seller, directly or indirectly, to obligate a cosigner unless the cosigner is informed prior to becoming obligated, which in the case of open end credit shall mean prior to the time that the agreement creating the cosigner's liability for future charges is executed, of the nature of his or her liability as cosigner.

(b) Any lender or retail installment seller who complies with the preventive requirements in paragraph (c) of this section does not violate paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, a disclosure, consisting of a separate document that shall contain the following statement

and no other, shall be given to the cosigner prior to becoming obligated, which in the case of open end credit shall mean prior to the time that the agreement creating the cosigner's liability for future charges is executed:

NOTICE TO COSIGNER

You are being asked to guarantee this debt. Think carefully before you do. If the borrower doesn't pay the debt, you will have to. Be sure you can afford to pay if you have to, and that you want to accept this responsibility.

You may have to pay up to the full amount of the debt if the borrower does not pay. You may also have to pay late fees or collection costs, which increase this amount.

The creditor can collect this debt from you without first trying to collect from the borrower. The creditor can use the same collection methods against you that can be used against the borrower, such as suing you, garnishing your wages, etc. If this debt is ever in default, that fact may become a part of *your* credit record.

This notice is not the contract that makes you liable for the debt.

§444.4 Late charges.

(a) In connection with collecting a debt arising out of an extension of credit to a consumer in or affecting commerce, as commerce is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a creditor, directly or indirectly, to levy or collect any deliquency charge on a payment, which payment is otherwise a full payment for the applicable period and is paid on its due date or within an applicable grace period, when the only delinquency is attributable to late fee(s) or delinquency charge(s) assessed on earlier installment(s).

(b) For purposes of this section, *collecting a debt* means any activity other than the use of judicial process that is intended to bring about or does bring about repayment of all or part of a consumer debt.

§444.5 State exemptions.

(a) If, upon application to the Federal Trade Commission by an appropriate State agency, the Federal Trade Commission determines that:

(1) There is a State requirement or prohibition in effect that applies to any transaction to which a provision of this rule applies; and

(2) The State requirement or prohibition affords a level of protection to consumers that is substantially equivalent to, or greater than, the protection afforded by this rule;

Then that provision of the rule will not be in effect in that State to the extent specified by the Federal Trade Commission in its determination, for as long as the State administers and enforces the State requirement or prohibition effectively.

(b) [Reserved]

PART 453—FUNERAL INDUSTRY PRACTICES

Sec.
453.1 Definitions.
453.2 Price disclosures.
453.3 Misrepresentations.
453.4 Required purchase of funeral goods or funeral services.
453.5 Services provided without prior approval.
453.6 Retention of documents.
453.7 Comprehension of disclosures.
453.8 Declaration of intent.
453.9 State exemptions.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 57a(a); 15 U.S.C. 46(g); 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 59 FR 1611, Jan. 11, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

§453.1 Definitions.

(a) *Alternative container.* An ''alternative container'' is an unfinished wood box or other non-metal receptacle or enclosure, without ornamentation or a fixed interior lining, which is designed for the encasement of human remains and which is made of fiberboard, pressed-wood, composition materials (with or without an outside covering) or like materials.

(b) *Cash advance item.* A ''cash advance item'' is any item of service or merchandise described to a purchaser as a ''cash advance,'' ''accommodation,'' ''cash disbursement,'' or similar term. A cash advance item is also any item obtained from a third party and paid for by the funeral provider on the purchaser's behalf. Cash advance items may include, but are not limited to: cemetery or crematory services; pallbearers; public transportation; clergy

honoraria; flowers; musicians or singers; nurses; obituary notices; gratuities and death certificates.

(c) *Casket*. A ''casket'' is a rigid container which is designed for the encasement of human remains and which is usually constructed of wood, metal, fiberglass, plastic, or like material, and ornamented and lined with fabric.

(d) *Commission*. ''Commission'' refers to the Federal Trade Commission.

(e) *Cremation*. ''Cremation'' is a heating process which incinerates human remains.

(f) *Crematory*. A ''crematory'' is any person, partnership or corporation that performs cremation and sells funeral goods.

(g) *Direct cremation*. A ''direct cremation'' is a disposition of human remains by cremation, without formal viewing, visitation, or ceremony with the body present.

(h) *Funeral goods*. ''Funeral goods'' are the goods which are sold or offered for sale directly to the public for use in connection with funeral services.

(i) *Funeral provider*. A ''funeral provider'' is any person, partnership or corporation that sells or offers to sell funeral goods and funeral services to the public.

(j) *Funeral services*. ''Funeral services'' are any services which may be used to:

(1) Care for and prepare deceased human bodies for burial, cremation or other final disposition; and

(2) arrange, supervise or conduct the funeral ceremony or the final disposition of deceased human bodies.

(k) *Immediate burial*. An ''immediate burial'' is a disposition of human remains by burial, without formal viewing, visitation, or ceremony with the body present, except for a graveside service.

(l) *Memorial service*. A ''memorial service'' is a ceremony commemorating the deceased without the body present.

(m) *Funeral ceremony*. A ''funeral ceremony'' is a service commemorating the deceased with the body present.

(n) *Outer burial container*. An ''outer burial container'' is any container which is designed for placement in the grave around the casket including, but not limited to, containers commonly known as burial vaults, grave boxes, and grave liners.

(o) *Person*. A ''person'' is any individual, partnership, corporation, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency, or other entity.

(p) *Services of funeral director and staff*. The ''services of funeral director and staff'' are the basic services, not to be included in prices of other categories in § 453.2(b)(4), that are furnished by a funeral provider in arranging any funeral, such as conducting the arrangements conference, planning the funeral, obtaining necessary permits, and placing obituary notices.

§ 453.2 Price disclosures.

(a) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices*. In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to fail to furnish accurate price information disclosing the cost to the purchaser for each of the specific funeral goods and funeral services used in connection with the disposition of deceased human bodies, including at least the price of embalming, transportation of remains, use of facilities, caskets, outer burial containers, immediate burials, or direct cremations, to persons inquiring about the purchase of funerals. Any funeral provider who complies with the preventive requirements in paragraph (b) of this section is not engaged in the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined here.

(b) *Preventive requirements*. To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, as well as the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined in § 453.4(b)(1), funeral providers must:

(1) *Telephone price disclosure*. Tell persons who ask by telephone about the funeral provider's offerings or prices any accurate information from the price lists described in paragraphs (b)(2) through (4) of this section and any other readily available information that reasonably answers the question.

(2) *Casket price list*. (i) Give a printed or typewritten price list to people who inquire in person about the offerings or prices of caskets or alternative containers. The funeral provider must

offer the list upon beginning discussion of, but in any event before showing caskets. The list must contain at least the retail prices of all caskets and alternative containers offered which do not require special ordering, enough information to identify each, and the effective date for the price list. In lieu of a written list, other formats, such as notebooks, brochures, or charts may be used if they contain the same information as would the printed or typewritten list, and display it in a clear and conspicuous manner. Provided, however, that funeral providers do not have to make a casket price list available if the funeral providers place on the general price list, specified in paragraph (b)(4) of this section, the information required by this paragraph.

(ii) Place on the list, however produced, the name of the funeral provider's place of business and a caption describing the list as a ''casket price list.''

(3) *Outer burial container price list.* (i) Give a printed or typewritten price list to persons who inquire in person about outer burial container offerings or prices. The funeral provider must offer the list upon beginning discussion of, but in any event before showing the containers. The list must contain at least the retail prices of all outer burial containers offered which do not require special ordering, enough information to identify each container, and the effective date for the prices listed. In lieu of a written list, the funeral provider may use other formats, such as notebooks, brochures, or charts, if they contain the same information as the printed or typewritten list, and display it in a clear and conspicuous manner. Provided, however, that funeral providers do not have to make an outer burial container price list available if the funeral providers place on the general price list, specified in paragraph (b)(4) of this section, the information required by this paragraph.

(ii) Place on the list, however produced, the name of the funeral provider's place of business and a caption describing the list as an ''outer burial container price list.''

(4) *General price list.* (i)(A) Give a printed or typewritten price list for retention to persons who inquire in person about the funeral goods, funeral services or prices of funeral goods or services offered by the funeral provider. The funeral provider must give the list upon beginning discussion of any of the following:

(*1*) The prices of funeral goods or funeral services;

(*2*) The overall type of funeral service or disposition; or

(*3*) Specific funeral goods or funeral services offered by the funeral provider.

(B) The requirement in paragraph (b)(4)(i)(A) of this section applies whether the discussion takes place in the funeral home or elsewhere. Provided, however, that when the deceased is removed for transportation to the funeral home, an in-person request at that time for authorization to embalm, required by §453.5(a)(2), does not, by itself, trigger the requirement to offer the general price list if the provider in seeking prior embalming approval discloses that embalming is not required by law except in certain special cases, if any. Any other discussion during that time about prices or the selection of funeral goods or services triggers the requirement under paragraph (b)(4)(i)(A) of this section to give consumers a general price list.

(C) The list required in paragraph (b)(4)(i)(A) of this section must contain at least the following information:

(*1*) The name, address, and telephone number of the funeral provider's place of business;

(*2*) A caption describing the list as a ''general price list''; and

(*3*) The effective date for the price list;

(ii) Include on the price list, in any order, the retail prices (expressed either as the flat fee, or as the price per hour, mile or other unit of computation) and the other information specified below for at least each of the following items, if offered for sale:

(A) Forwarding of remains to another funeral home, together with a list of the services provided for any quoted price;

(B) Receiving remains from another funeral home, together with a list of the services provided for any quoted price;

(C) The price range for the direct cremations offered by the funeral provider, together with:

(*1*) A separate price for a direct cremation where the purchaser provides the container;

(*2*) Separate prices for each direct cremation offered including an alternative container; and

(*3*) A description of the services and container (where applicable), included in each price;

(D) The price range for the immediate burials offered by the funeral provider, together with:

(*1*) A separate price for an immediate burial where the purchaser provides the casket;

(*2*) Separate prices for each immediate burial offered including a casket or alternative container; and

(*3*) A description of the services and container (where applicable) included in that price;

(E) Transfer of remains to funeral home;

(F) Embalming;

(G) Other preparation of the body;

(H) Use of facilities and staff for viewing;

(I) Use of facilities and staff for funeral ceremony;

(J) Use of facilities and staff for memorial service;

(K) Use of equipment and staff for graveside service;

(L) Hearse; and

(M) Limousine.

(iii) Include on the price list, in any order, the following information:

(A) Either of the following:

(*1*) The price range for the caskets offered by the funeral provider, together with the statement: ''A complete price list will be provided at the funeral home.''; or

(*2*) The prices of individual caskets, disclosed in the manner specified by paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section; and

(B) Either of the following:

(*1*) The price range for the outer burial containers offered by the funeral provider, together with the statement: ''A complete price list will be provided at the funeral home.''; or

(*2*) The prices of individual outer burial containers, disclosed in the manner specified by paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section; and

(C) Either of the following:

(*1*) The price for the basic services of funeral director and staff, together with a list of the principal basic services provided for any quoted price and, if the charge cannot be declined by the purchaser, the statement: ''This fee for our basic services will be added to the total cost of the funeral arrangements you select. (This fee is already included in our charges for direct cremations, immediate burials, and forwarding or receiving remains.)''. If the charge cannot be declined by the purchaser, the quoted price shall include all charges for the recovery of unallocated funeral provider overhead, and funeral providers may include in the required disclosure the phrase ''and overhead'' after the word ''services''; or

(*2*) The following statement: ''Please note that a fee of (*specify dollar amount*) for the use of our basic services is included in the price of our caskets. This same fee shall be added to the total cost of your funeral arrangements if you provide the casket. Our services include (specify).'' The fee shall include all charges for the recovery of unallocated funeral provider overhead, and funeral providers may include in the required disclosure the phrase ''and overhead'' after the word ''services.'' The statement must be placed on the general price list together with the casket price range, required by paragraph (b)(4)(iii)(A)(*1*) of this section, or together with the prices of individual caskets, required by (b)(4)(iii)(A)(*2*) of this section.

(iv) The services fee permitted by § 453.2(b)(4)(iii)(C)(*1*) or (C)(*2*) is the only funeral provider fee for services, facilities or unallocated overhead permitted by this part to be non-declinable, unless otherwise required by law.

(5) *Statement of funeral goods and services selected.* (i) Give an itemized written statement for retention to each person who arranges a funeral or other disposition of human remains, at the conclusion of the discussion of arrangements. The statement must list at least the following information:

(A) The funeral goods and funeral services selected by that person and the prices to be paid for each of them;

(B) Specifically itemized cash advance items. (These prices must be

given to the extent then known or reasonably ascertainable. If the prices are not known or reasonably ascertainable, a good faith estimate shall be given and a written statement of the actual charges shall be provided before the final bill is paid.); and

(C) The total cost of the goods and services selected.

(ii) The information required by this paragraph (b)(5) may be included on any contract, statement, or other document which the funeral provider would otherwise provide at the conclusion of discussion of arrangements.

(6) *Other pricing methods*. Funeral providers may give persons any other price information, in any other format, in addition to that required by §453.2(b)(2), (3), and (4) so long as the statement required by §453.2(b)(5) is given when required by the rule.

§453.3 Misrepresentations.

(a) *Embalming provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices*. In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that state or local law requires that a deceased person be embalmed when such is not the case;

(ii) Fail to disclose that embalming is not required by law except in certain special cases, if any.

(2) *Preventive requirements*. To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, as well as the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined in §§453.4(b)(1) and 453.5(2), funeral providers must:

(i) Not represent that a deceased person is required to be embalmed for:

(A) Direct cremation;

(B) Immediate burial; or

(C) A closed casket funeral without viewing or visitation when refrigeration is available and when state or local law does not require embalming; and

(ii) Place the following disclosure on the general price list, required by §453.2(b)(4), in immediate conjunction with the price shown for embalming: ''Except in certain special cases, embalming is not required by law. Embalming may be necessary, however, if you select certain funeral arrangements, such as a funeral with viewing. If you do not want embalming, you usually have the right to choose an arrangement that does not require you to pay for it, such as direct cremation or immediate burial.'' The phrase ''except in certain special cases'' need not be included in this disclosure if state or local law in the area(s) where the provider does business does not require embalming under any circumstances.

(b) *Casket for cremation provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices*. In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that state or local law requires a casket for direct cremations;

(ii) Represent that a casket is required for direct cremations.

(2) *Preventive requirements*. To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, as well as the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined in §453.4(a)(1), funeral providers must place the following disclosure in immediate conjunction with the price range shown for direct cremations: ''If you want to arrange a direct cremation, you can use an alternative container. Alternative containers encase the body and can be made of materials like fiberboard or composition materials (with or without an outside covering). The containers we provide are (specify containers).'' This disclosure only has to be placed on the general price list if the funeral provider arranges direct cremations.

(c) *Outer burial container provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices*. In selling or offering to sell funeral goods and funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that state or local laws or regulations, or particular cemeteries, require outer burial containers when such is not the case;

(ii) Fail to disclose to persons arranging funerals that state law does not require the purchase of an outer burial container.

(2) *Preventive requirement*. To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must place the following disclosure on the outer burial container price list, required by §453.2(b)(3)(i), or, if the prices of outer burial containers are listed on the general price list, required by §453.2(b)(4),

in immediate conjunction with those prices: ''In most areas of the country, state or local law does not require that you buy a container to surround the casket in the grave. However, many cemeteries require that you have such a container so that the grave will not sink in. Either a grave liner or a burial vault will satisfy these requirements.'' The phrase ''in most areas of the country'' need not be included in this disclosure if state or local law in the area(s) where the provider does business does not require a container to surround the casket in the grave.

(d) *General provisions on legal and cemetery requirements*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for funeral providers to represent that federal, state, or local laws, or particular cemeteries or crematories, require the purchase of any funeral goods or funeral services when such is not the case.

(2) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, as well as the deceptive acts or practices identified in §§ 453.3(a)(1), 453.3(b)(1), and 453.3(c)(1), funeral providers must identify and briefly describe in writing on the statement of funeral goods and services selected (required by § 453.2(b)(5)) any legal, cemetery, or crematory requirement which the funeral provider represents to persons as compelling the purchase of funeral goods or funeral services for the funeral which that person is arranging.

(e) *Provisions on preservative and protective value claims.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(1) Represent that funeral goods or funeral services will delay the natural decomposition of human remains for a long-term or indefinite time;

(2) Represent that funeral goods have protective features or will protect the body from gravesite substances, when such is not the case.

(f) *Cash advance provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that the price charged for a cash advance item is the same as the cost to the funeral provider for the item when such is not the case;

(ii) Fail to disclose to persons arranging funerals that the price being charged for a cash advance item is not the same as the cost to the funeral provider for the item when such is the case.

(2) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must place the following sentence in the itemized statement of funeral goods and services selected, in immediate conjunction with the list of itemized cash advance items required by § 453.2(b)(5)(i)(B): ''We charge you for our services in obtaining: (specify cash advance items),'' if the funeral provider makes a charge upon, or receives and retains a rebate, commission or trade or volume discount upon a cash advance item.

§ 453.4 Required purchase of funeral goods or funeral services.

(a) *Casket for cremation provisions*—(1) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider, or a crematory, to require that a casket be purchased for direct cremation.

(2) *Preventive requirement.* To prevent this unfair or deceptive act or practice, funeral providers must make an alternative container available for direct cremations, if they arrange direct cremations.

(b) *Other required purchases of funeral goods or funeral services*—(1) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Condition the furnishing of any funeral good or funeral service to a person arranging a funeral upon the purchase of any other funeral good or funeral service, except as required by law or as otherwise permitted by this part;

(ii) Charge any fee as a condition to furnishing any funeral goods or funeral

services to a person arranging a funeral, other than the fees for: (1) Services of funeral director and staff, permitted by §453.2(b)(4)(iii)(C); (2) other funeral services and funeral goods selected by the purchaser; and (3) other funeral goods or services required to be purchased, as explained on the itemized statement in accordance with §453.3(d)(2).

(2) *Preventive requirements.* (i) To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must:

(A) Place the following disclosure in the general price list, immediately above the prices required by §453.2(b)(4)(ii) and (iii): ''The goods and services shown below are those we can provide to our customers. You may choose only the items you desire. If legal or other requirements mean you must buy any items you did not specifically ask for, we will explain the reason in writing on the statement we provide describing the funeral goods and services you selected.'' Provided, however, that if the charge for ''services of funeral director and staff'' cannot be declined by the purchaser, the statement shall include the sentence: ''However, any funeral arrangements you select will include a charge for our basic services'' between the second and third sentences of the statement specified above herein. The statement may include the phrase ''and overhead'' after the word ''services'' if the fee includes a charge for the recovery of unallocated funeral provider overhead;

(B) Place the following disclosure in the statement of funeral goods and services selected, required by §453.2(b)(5)(i): ''Charges are only for those items that you selected or that are required. If we are required by law or by a cemetery or crematory to use any items, we will explain the reasons in writing below.''

(ii) A funeral provider shall not violate this section by failing to comply with a request for a combination of goods or services which would be impossible, impractical, or excessively burdensome to provide.

§453.5 Services provided without prior approval.

(a) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any provider to embalm a deceased human body for a fee unless:

(1) State or local law or regulation requires embalming in the particular circumstances regardless of any funeral choice which the family might make; or

(2) Prior approval for embalming (expressly so described) has been obtained from a family member or other authorized person; or

(3) The funeral provider is unable to contact a family member or other authorized person after exercising due diligence, has no reason to believe the family does not want embalming performed, and obtains subsequent approval for embalming already performed (expressly so described). In seeking approval, the funeral provider must disclose that a fee will be charged if the family selects a funeral which requires embalming, such as a funeral with viewing, and that no fee will be charged if the family selects a service which does not require embalming, such as direct cremation or immediate burial.

(b) *Preventive requirement.* To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must include on the itemized statement of funeral goods and services selected, required by §453.2(b)(5), the statement: ''If you selected a funeral that may require embalming, such as a funeral with viewing, you may have to pay for embalming. You do not have to pay for embalming you did not approve if you selected arrangements such as a direct cremation or immediate burial. If we charged for embalming, we will explain why below.''

§453.6 Retention of documents.

To prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices specified in §§453.2 and 453.3 of this rule, funeral providers must retain and make available for inspection by Commission officials true and accurate copies of the price lists specified in §§453.2(b) (2) through (4), as applicable, for at least one year after the date of their last distribution to customers, and a copy of each statement of funeral goods and services selected, as required by §453.2(b)(5), for at

least one year from the date of the arrangements conference.

§ 453.7 Comprehension of disclosures.

To prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices specified in §§ 453.2 through 453.5, funeral providers must make all disclosures required by those sections in a clear and conspicuous manner. Providers shall not include in the casket, outer burial container, and general price lists, required by §§ 453.2(b)(2)–(4), any statement or information that alters or contradicts the information required by this part to be included in those lists.

§ 453.8 Declaration of intent.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in § 453.2(a), it is a violation of this rule to engage in any unfair or deceptive acts or practices specified in this rule, or to fail to comply with any of the preventive requirements specified in this rule;

(b) The provisions of this rule are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

(c) This rule shall not apply to the business of insurance or to acts in the conduct thereof.

§ 453.9 State exemptions.

If, upon application to the Commission by an appropriate state agency, the Commission determines that:

(a) There is a state requirement in effect which applies to any transaction to which this rule applies; and

(b) That state requirement affords an overall level of protection to consumers which is as great as, or greater than, the protection afforded by this rule; then the Commission's rule will not be in effect in that state to the extent specified by the Commission in its determination, for as long as the State administers and enforces effectively the state requirement.

PART 455—USED MOTOR VEHICLE TRADE REGULATION RULE

Sec.

455.1 General duties of a used vehicle dealer; definitions.
455.2 Consumer sales—window form.
455.3 Window form.
455.4 Contrary statements.
455.5 Spanish language sales.
455.6 State exemptions.
455.7 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 88 Stat. 2189, 15 U.S.C. 2309; 38 Stat. 717, as amended 15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.

SOURCE: 49 FR 45725, Nov. 19, 1984, unless otherwise noted.

§ 455.1 General duties of a used vehicle dealer; definitions.

(a) It is a deceptive act or practice for any used vehicle dealer, when that dealer sells or offers for sale a used vehicle in or affecting commerce as *commerce* is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act:

(1) To misrepresent the mechanical condition of a used vehicle;

(2) To misrepresent the terms of any warranty offered in connection with the sale of a used vehicle; and

(3) To represent that a used vehicle is sold with a warranty when the vehicle is sold without any warranty.

(b) It is an unfair act or practice for any used vehicle dealer, when that dealer sells or offers for sale a used vehicle in or affecting commerce as *commerce* is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act:

(1) To fail to disclose, prior to sale, that a used vehicle is sold without any warranty; and

(2) To fail to make available, prior to sale, the terms of any written warranty offered in connection with the sale of a used vehicle.

(c) The Commission has adopted this Rule in order to prevent the unfair and deceptive acts or practices defined in paragraphs (a) and (b). It is a violation of this Rule for any used vehicle dealer to fail to comply with the requirements set forth in §§ 455.2 through 455.5 of this part. If a used vehicle dealer complies with the requirements of §§ 455.2 through 455.5 of this part, the dealer does not violate this Rule.

(d) The following definitions shall apply for purposes of this part:

(1) *Vehicle* means any motorized vehicle, other than a motorcycle, with a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of less than 8500 lbs., a curb weight of less than 6,000 lbs., and a frontal area of less than 46 sq. ft.

(2) *Used vehicle* means any vehicle driven more than the limited use necessary in moving or road testing a new vehicle prior to delivery to a consumer, but does not include any vehicle sold only for scrap or parts (title documents surrendered to the State and a salvage certificate issued).

(3) *Dealer* means any person or business which sells or offers for sale a used vehicle after selling or offering for sale five (5) or more used vehicles in the previous twelve months, but does not include a bank or financial institution, a business selling a used vehicle to an employee of that business, or a lessor selling a leased vehicle by or to that vehicle's lessee or to an employee of the lessee.

(4) *Consumer* means any person who is not a used vehicle dealer.

(5) *Warranty* means any undertaking in writing, in connection with the sale by a dealer of a used vehicle, to refund, repair, replace, maintain or take other action with respect to such used vehicle and provided at no extra charge beyond the price of the used vehicle.

(6) *Implied warranty* means an implied warranty arising under State law (as modified by the Magnuson-Moss Act) in connection with the sale by a dealer of a used vehicle.

(7) *Service contract* means a contract in writing for any period of time or any specific mileage to refund, repair, replace, or maintain a used vehicle and provided at an extra charge beyond the price of the used vehicle, provided that such contract is not regulated in your State as the business of insurance.

(8) *You* means any dealer, or any agent or employee of a dealer, except where the term appears on the window form required by §455.2(a).

§455.2 Consumer sales—window form.

(a) *General duty*. Before you offer a used vehicle for sale to a consumer, you must prepare, fill in as applicable and display on that vehicle a ''Buyers Guide'' as required by this Rule.

(1) The Buyers Guide shall be displayed prominently and conspicuously in any location on a vehicle and in such a fashion that both sides are readily readable. You may remove the form temporarily from the vehicle during any test drive, but you must return it as soon as the test drive is over.

(2) The capitalization, punctuation and wording of all items, headings, and text on the form must be exactly as required by this Rule. The entire form must be printed in 100% black ink on a white stock no smaller than 11 inches high by 7¼ inches wide in the type styles, sizes and format indicated.

BUYERS GUIDE

28 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

IMPORTANT: Spoken promises are difficult to enforce. Ask the dealer to put all promises in writing. Keep this form.

10/12 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

VEHICLE MAKE MODEL YEAR VIN NUMBER

10 pt Baseline Rule
6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

DEALER STOCK NUMBER (Optional)

10 pt Baseline Rule
6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

WARRANTIES FOR THIS VEHICLE:

10 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

54 pt Box
42 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

☐ AS IS - NO WARRANTY

YOU WILL PAY ALL COSTS FOR ANY REPAIRS. The dealer assumes no responsibility for any repairs regardless of any oral statements about the vehicle.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

1 pt Rule

54 pt Box
42 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

☐ WARRANTY

☐ FULL ☐ **LIMITED WARRANTY. The dealer will pay _____% of the labor and _____% of the parts for the covered systems that fail during the warranty period. Ask the dealer for a copy of the warranty document for a full explanation of warranty coverage, exclusions, and the dealer's repair obligations. Under state law, "implied warranties" may give you even more rights.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc 4½ picas indent on 2nd line

SYSTEMS COVERED: **DURATION:**

10 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

10 pt Baseline Rule

☐ **SERVICE CONTRACT. A service contract is available at an extra charge on this vehicle. Ask for details as to coverage, deductable, price, and exclusions. If you buy a service contract within 90 days of the time of sale, state law "implied warranties" may give you additional rights.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 42 picas

PRE PURCHASE INSPECTION: ASK THE DEALER IF YOU MAY HAVE THIS VEHICLE INSPECTED BY YOUR MECHANIC EITHER ON OR OFF THE LOT.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold caps flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

SEE THE BACK OF THIS FORM for important additional information, including a list of some major defects that may occur in used motor vehicles.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

12 pt Triumvirate Bold lc
flush left ragged right
maximum line 42 picas

Below is a list of some major defects that may occur in used motor vehicles.

2 pt Rule

8/9 Triumvirate Bold c & lc
flush left ragged right
maximum line 20 picas
1 em indent on 2nd line

Frame & Body
Frame-cracks, corrective welds, or rusted through
Dogtracks—bent or twisted frame

Engine
Oil leakage, excluding normal seepage
Cracked block or head
Belts missing or inoperable
Knocks or misses related to camshaft lifters and push rods
Abnormal exhaust discharge

Transmission & Drive Shaft
Improper fluid level or leakage, excluding normal seepage
Cracked or damaged case which is visible
Abnormal noise or vibration caused by faulty transmission or drive shaft
Improper shifting or functioning in any gear
Manual clutch slips or chatters

Differential
Improper fluid level or leakage excluding normal seepage
Cracked or damaged housing which is visible
Abnormal noise or vibration caused by faulty differential

Cooling System
Leakage including radiator
Improperly functioning water pump

Electrical System
Battery leakage
Improperly functioning alternator, generator, battery, or starter

Fuel System
Visible leakage

Inoperable Accessories
Gauges or warning devices
Air conditioner
Heater & Defroster

Brake System
Failure warning light broken
Pedal not firm under pressure (DOT spec.)
Not enough pedal reserve (DOT spec.)
Does not stop vehicle in straight (DOT spec.)
Hoses damaged
Drum or rotor too thin (Mfgr. Specs)
Lining or pad thickness less than 1/32 inch
Power unit not operating or leaking
Structural or mechanical parts damaged

Steering System
Too much free play at steering wheel (DOT specs.)
Free play in linkage more than 1/4 inch
Steering gear binds or jams
Front wheels aligned improperly (DOT specs.)
Power unit belts cracked or slipping
Power unit fluid level improper

Suspension System
Ball joint seals damaged
Structural parts bent or damaged
Stabilizer bar disconnected
Spring broken
Shock absorber mounting loose
Rubber bushings damaged or missing
Radius rod damaged or missing
Shock absorber leaking or functioning improperly

Tires
Tread depth less than 2/32 inch
Sizes mismatched
Visible damage

Wheels
Visible cracks, damage or repairs
Mounting bolts loose or missing

Exhaust System
Leakage

2 pt Rule

10 pt Baseline Rule
6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

DEALER

ADDRESS

SEE FOR COMPLAINTS

2 pt Rule

10/12 Triumvirate Bold c & lc
maximum line 42 picas

IMPORTANT: The information on this form is part of any contract to buy this vehicle. Removal of this label before consumer purchase (except for purpose of test-driving) is a violation of federal law (16 C.F.R. 455).

When filling out the form, follow the directions in (b) through (e) of this section and §455.4 of this part.

(b) *Warranties*—(1) *No Implied Warranty—"As Is"/No Warranty.* (i) If you offer the vehicle without any implied warranty, i.e., "as is," mark the box provided. If you offer the vehicle with implied warranties only, substitute the disclosure specified below, and mark the box provided. If you first offer the vehicle "as is" or with implied warranties only but then sell it with a warranty, cross out the "As Is—No Warranty" or "Implied Warranties Only" disclosure, and fill in the warranty terms in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(ii) If your State law limits or prohibits "as is" sales of vehicles, that State law overrides this part and this rule does not give you the right to sell "as is." In such States, the heading "As Is—No Warranty" and the paragraph immediately accompanying that phrase must be deleted from the form, and the following heading and paragraph must be substituted. If you sell

vehicles in States that permit ''as is'' sales, but you choose to offer implied warranties only, you must also use the following disclosure instead of ''As Is—No Warranty'':[1]

IMPLIED WARRANTIES ONLY

This means that the dealer does not make any specific promises to fix things that need repair when you buy the vehicle or after the time of sale. But, State law ''implied warranties'' may give you some rights to have the dealer take care of serious problems that were not apparent when you bought the vehicle.

(2) *Full/Limited Warranty*. If you offer the vehicle with a warranty, briefly describe the warranty terms in the space provided. This description must include the following warranty information:

(i) Whether the warranty offered is ''Full'' or ''Limited.''[2] Mark the box next to the appropriate designation.

(ii) Which of the specific systems are covered (for example, ''engine, transmission, diffential''). You cannot use shorthand, such as ''drive train'' or ''power train'' for covered systems.

(iii) The duration (for example, ''30 days or 1,000 miles, whichever occurs first'').

(iv) The percentage of the repair cost paid by you (for example, ''The dealer will pay 100% of the labor and 100% of the parts.'')

(v) If the vehicle is still under the manufacturer's original warranty, you may add the following paragraph below the ''Full/Limited Warranty'' disclosure: MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY STILL APPLIES. The manufacturer's original warranty has not expired on the vehicle. Consult the manufacturer's warranty booklet for details as to warranty coverage, service location, etc.

If, following negotiations, you and the buyer agree to changes in the warranty coverage, mark the changes on the form, as appropriate. If you first offer the vehicle with a warranty, but then sell it without one, cross out the offered warranty and mark either the ''As Is—No Warranty'' box or the ''Implied Warranties Only'' box, as appropriate.

(3) *Service contracts*. If you make a service contract (other than a contract that is regulated in your State as the business of insurance) available on the vehicle, you must add the following heading and paragraph below the ''Full/Limited Warranty'' disclosure and mark the box provided.[3]

☐Service Contract

A service contract is available at an extra charge on this vehicle. If you buy a service contract within 90 days of the time of sale, State law ''implied warranties'' may give you additional rights.

(c) *Name and Address*. Put the name and address of your dealership in the space provided. If you do not have a dealership, use the name and address of your place of business (for example, your service station) or your own name and home address.

(d) *Make, Model, Model Year, VIN*. Put the vehicle's name (for example, ''Chevrolet''), model (for example, ''Vega''), model year, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) in the spaces provided. You may write the dealer stock number in the space provided or you may leave this space blank.

(e) *Complaints*. In the space provided, put the name and telephone number of the person who should be contacted if any complaints arise after sale.

(f) Optional Signature Line. In the space provided for the name of the individual to be contacted in the event of complaints after sale, you may include a signature line for a buyer's signature. If you opt to include a signature line, you must include a disclosure in immediate proximity to the signature line stating: ''I hereby acknowledge receipt of the Buyers Guide at the closing of this sale.'' You may pre-print this language on the form if you choose.

[49 FR 45725, Nov. 19, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 62205, Dec. 5, 1995]

[1] See § 455.5 n. 4 for the Spanish version of this disclosure.

[2] A ''Full'' warranty is defined by the Federal Minimum Standards for Warranty set forth in 104 of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. 2304 (1975). The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act does not apply to vehicles manufactured before July 4, 1975. Therefore, if you choose not to designate ''Full'' or ''Limited'' for such cars, cross out both designations, leaving only ''Warranty''.

[3] See § 455.5 n. 4 for the Spanish version of this disclosure.

§455.3 Window form.

(a) *Form given to buyer.* Give the buyer of a used vehicle sold by you the window form displayed under §455.2 containing all of the disclosures required by the Rule and reflecting the warranty coverage agreed upon. If you prefer, you may give the buyer a copy of the original, so long as that copy accurately reflects all of the disclosures required by the Rule and the warranty coverage agreed upon.

(b) *Incorporated into contract.* The information on the final version of the window form is incorporated into the contract of sale for each used vehicle you sell to a consumer. Information on the window form overrides any contrary provisions in the contract of sale. To inform the consumer of these facts, include the following language conspicuously in each consumer contract of sale:

The information you see on the window form for this vehicle is part of this contract. Information on the window form overrides any contrary provisions in the contract of sale.

§455.4 Contrary statements.

You may not make any statements, oral or written, or take other actions which alter or contradict the disclosures required by §§455.2 and 455.3. You may negotiate over warranty coverage, as provided in §455.2(b) of this part, as long as the final warranty terms are identified in the contract of sale and summarized on the copy of the window form you give to the buyer.

§455.5 Spanish language sales.

If you conduct a sale in Spanish, the window form required by §455.2 and the contract disclosures required by §455.3 must be in that language. You may display on a vehicle both an English language window form and a Spanish language translation of that form. Use the following translation and layout for Spanish language sales:[4]

[4] Use the following language for the ''Implied Warranties Only'' disclosure when required by §455.2(b)(1):

Garantías implícitas solamente

Este término significa que el vendedor no hace promesas específicas de arreglar lo que requiera reparación cuando usted compra el vehículo o después del momento de la venta. Pero, las ''garantías implícitas'' de la ley estatal pueden darle a usted algunos derechos y hacer que el vendedor resuelva problemas graves que no fueron evidentes cuando usted compró el vehículo.

Use the following language for the ''Service Contract'' disclosure required by §455.2(b)(3):

CONTRATO DE SERVICIO. Este vehículo tiene disponible un contrato de servicio a un precio adicional. Pida los detalles en cuanto a cobertura, deducible, precio y exclusiones. Si adquiere usted un contrato de servicio dentro de los 90 días del momento de la venta, las ''garantías implícitas'' de acuerdo a la ley del estado pueden concederle derechos adicionales.

GUÍA DEL COMPRADOR

28 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

IMPORTANTE: Las promesas verbales son difíciles de hacer cumplir. Solicite al vendedor que ponga todas las promesas por escrito. Conserve este formulario.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

Hairline Rule

MARCA DEL VEHÍCULO MODELO AÑO NÚMERO DE IDENTIFICACIÓN

6/8 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

Hairline Rule

NÚMERO DE ABASTO DEL DISTRIBUIDOR (Opcional)

6/8 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

GARANTÍAS PARA ESTE VEHÍCULO:

10 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

☐ COMO ESTÁ—SIN GARANTÍA

28 pt Box
24 pt Triumvirate Bold c & lc

USTED PAGARÁ TODOS LOS GASTOS DE CUALQUIER REPARACIÓN QUE SEA NECESARIA. El vendedor no asume ninguna responsabilidad por cualquier reparación, sean cuales sean las declaraciones verbales que haya hecho acerca del vehículo.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

1 pt Rule

☐ GARANTÍA

28 pt Box
24 pt Triumvirate Bold c & lc

☐ COMPLETA ☐ LIMITADA. El vendedor pagará el ____% de la mano de obra y el ____% de los repuestos de los sistemos cubiertos que dejen de funcionar durante el periodo de garantía. Pida al vendedor una copía del documento de garantía donde se explican detalladamente la cobertura de le garantía, exclusiones y las obligaciones que tiene el vendedor de realizar reparaciones. Conforme a la ley estatal, las "garantías implícitas" pueden darle a usted incluso más derechos.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc
7½ picas indent
on runovers

SISTEMAS CUBIERTOS POR LA GARANTÍA: DURACIÓN:

10/10 Triumvirate Bold caps

10/12 Hairline Rule

CONTRATO DE SERVICIO. Este vehículo tiene disponible un contrato de servicio a un precio adicional. Pida los detalles en cuanto a cobertura, deducible, precio y exclusiones. Si adquiere usted un contrato de servicio dentro de los 90 días del momento de la venta, las 'garantías implícitas' de acuerdo a la ley del estado pueden concederle derechos adicionales.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

INSPECCIÓN PREVIA A LA COMPRA: PREGUNTE AL VENDEDOR SI PUEDE USTED TRAER UN MECÁNICO PARA QUE INSPECCIONE EL AUTOMÓVIL O LLEVAR EL AUTOMÓVIL PARA QUE ÉSTE LO INSPECCIONE EN SU TALLER.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold caps maximum line 38 picas

VÉASE EL DORSO DE ESTE FORMULARIO donde se proporciona información adicional importante, incluyendo una lista de algunos de los principales defectos que pueden ocurrir en vehículos usados.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

A continuación presentamos una lista de algunos de los principales defectos que pueden ocurrir en vehiculos usados.

12 pt Triumvirate Bold lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

2 pt Rule

8/9 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 20 picas 1 em indent on 2nd line

Chasis y carroceria
Chasis-grietas, soldaduras correctivas u oxidado
Chasis dobiado o torcido

Motor
Fuga de aceite, excluyendo el escape normal
Bloque o tapa de recamara agrietados
Correas que faltan o no funcionan
Fallo o pistoneo
Emision excesiva de humo por el sistema de escape

Transmisión y eje de cardan
Nivel di liquido inadecuado o fuga, excluyendo filtracion normal
Cubierta agrietada o dañada visible
Vibración o ruido anormal ocasion do por una transmisión o eje de cardan defectuoso
Cambio de marchas o funcionmiento inadecuado en cualquier marcha
Embrague manual patina o vibra

Diferencial
Nivel de liquido inadecuado o fuga excluyendo filtracion normal
Cubierta agrietada o dañada visible
Ruido o vibración anormal ocasionado por diferencial defectuoso

Sistema de refrigeración
Fuga, incluido el radiador
Bomba de agua defectuosa

Sistema electrico
Fuga en las baterías
Alternador, generador, batería, o motor de arranque defectuosos

Sistema de combustible
Escape visible de combustible

Accesorios averiados
Indicadores o medidores del cuadro de instrumentos
Acondicionador de aire
Calefactor y descarchador

Sistema de frenos
Luz de advertencia de falla dañada
Pedal no firma bajo presión (Especif. del Dpto de Transp.)
Juego insuficiente en el pedal (Especif. del Dpto de Transp.)
No detiene el vehiculo en linea recta (Especif. del Dpto de Transp.)
Conductos dañados
Tambor o disco muy delgados (Especif. del fabricante)
Grosor de las bandas de los frenos menor de 1/32 de pulgada
Sistema de servofreno dañado o con escape
Partes estructurales o mecánicas dañadas

Sistema de dirección
Juego excesivo en el volante (Especif. Dpto. de Transp.)
Juego en el varillaje en exceso de 1/4 pulgada
Engranaje del volante de dirección se agarrota
Ruedas delanteras mal alineadas (Especif. del Dpto. de Transp.)
Correas del sistema de servodireccion agrietadas o flojas
Nival del liquido del sistema de servodirección inadecuado

Sistema de suspensión
Sellos de conexión de rodamientos defectuosos
Piezas estructurales dobladas o dañadas
Barra de estabilizacion desconectada
Resorte roto
Montura del amortiguador floja
Bujes de goma dañadas o ausentes
Estabilizador para curvas dañadas o ausente
Amortiguador tiene fuga o funciona defectuosamente

Llantas
Profundidad de la banda de rodamiento menor de 2/32 de pulgada
Diferentes tamanos de llanta
Danos visibles

Ruedas
Grietas visibles, danos o reparaciones
Pernos de montaje sueltos o ausentes

Sistema de Escape
Fuga

2 pt Rule

VENDEDOR

DIRECCION

VEASE PARA RECLAMACIONES

10 pt Baseline Rule

6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

IMPORTANTE: La informacion contenida en este formulario forma parte de todo contrato de compra de este vehiculo. Constituye una contravencion de la ley federal (16 C.F.R. 455) quitar este rotulo antes de la compra del vehiculo por el consumidor (salvo para conducir el automovil en calidad de prueba).

2 pt Rule

10/12 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 42 picas

[49 FR 45725, Nov. 19, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 62205, Dec. 5, 1995]

§455.6 State exemptions.

(a) If, upon application to the Commission by an appropriate State agency, the Commission determines, that—

(1) There is a State requirement in effect which applies to any transaction to which this rule applies; and

(2) That State requirement affords an overall level of protection to consumers which is as great as, or greater than, the protection afforded by this Rule; then the Commission's Rule will not be in effect in that State to the extent specified by the Commission in its determination, for as long as the State administers and enforces effectively the State requirement.

(b) Applications for exemption under subsection (a) should be directed to the Secretary of the Commission. When appropriate, proceedings will be commenced in order to make a determination described in paragraph (a) of this section, and will be conducted in accordance with subpart C of part 1 of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

§455.7 Severability.

The provisions of this part are separate and severable from one another. If

any provision is determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

PART 456—OPHTHALMIC PRACTICE RULES (EYEGLASS RULE)

Sec.
456.1 Definitions.
456.2 Separation of examination and dispensing.
456.3 Federal or State employees.
456.4 Declaration of Commission Intent.
456.5 Rules applicable to prescriptions for contact lenses and related issues.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 57a; 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 57 FR 18822, May 1, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

§ 456.1 Definitions.

(a) A *patient* is any person who has had an eye examination.

(b) An *eye examination* is the process of determining the refractive condition of a person's eyes or the presence of any visual anomaly by the use of objective or subjective tests.

(c) *Ophthalmic goods* are eyeglasses, or any component of eyeglasses, and contact lenses.

(d) *Ophthalmic services* are the measuring, fitting, and adjusting of ophthalmic goods subsequent to an eye examination.

(e) An *ophthalmologist* is any Doctor of Medicine or Osteopathy who performs eye examinations.

(f) An *optometrist* is any Doctor of Optometry.

(g) A *prescription* is the written specifications for lenses for eyeglasses which are derived from an eye examination, including all of the information specified by state law, if any, necessary to obtain lenses for eyeglasses.

§ 456.2 Separation of examination and dispensing.

It is an unfair act or practice for an ophthalmologist or optometrist to:

(a) Fail to provide to the patient one copy of the patient's prescription immediately after the eye examination is completed. Provided: An ophthalmologist or optometrist may refuse to give the patient a copy of the patient's prescription until the patient has paid for the eye examination, but only if that ophthalmologist or optometrist would have required immediate payment from that patient had the examination revealed that no ophthalmic goods were required;

(b) Condition the availability of an eye examination to any person on a requirement that the patient agree to purchase any ophthalmic goods from the ophthalmologist or optometrist;

(c) Charge the patient any fee in addition to the ophthalmologist's or optometrist's examination fee as a condition to releasing the prescription to the patient. Provided: An ophthalmologist or optometrist may charge an additional fee for verifying ophthalmic goods dispensed by another seller when the additional fee is imposed at the time the verification is performed; or

(d) Place on the prescription, or require the patient to sign, or deliver to the patient a form or notice waiving or disclaiming the liability or responsibility of the ophthalmologist or optometrist for the accuracy of the eye examination or the accuracy of the ophthalmic goods and services dispensed by another seller.

§ 456.3 Federal or State employees.

This rule does not apply to ophthalmologists or optometrists employed by any Federal, State or local government entity.

§ 456.4 Declaration of Commission Intent.

In prohibiting the use of waivers and disclaimers of liability in § 456.2(d), it is not the Commission's intent to impose liability on an ophthalmologist or optometrist for the ophthalmic goods and services dispensed by another seller pursuant to the ophthalmologist's or optometrist's prescription.

§ 456.5 Rules applicable to prescriptions for contact lenses and related issues.

Rules applicable to prescriptions for contact lenses and related issues may be found at 16 CFR part 315 (Contact Lens Rule).

[69 FR 40511, July 2, 2004]

PART 460—LABELING AND ADVERTISING OF HOME INSULATION

Sec.

460.1 What this regulation does.
460.2 What is home insulation.
460.3 Who is covered.
460.4 When the rules apply.
460.5 R-value tests.
460.6 ''Representative thickness'' testing.
460.7 Which test version to use.
460.8 R-value tolerances.
460.9 What test records you must keep.
460.10 How statements must be made.
460.11 Rounding off R-values.
460.12 Labels.
460.13 Fact sheets.
460.14 How retailers must handle fact sheets.
460.15 How installers must handle fact sheets.
460.16 What new home sellers must tell new home buyers.
460.17 What installers must tell their customers.
460.18 Insulation ads.
460.19 Savings claims.
460.20 R-value per inch claims.
460.21 Government claims.
460.22 Tax claims.
460.23 Other laws, rules, and orders.
460.24 Stayed or invalid parts.

APPENDIX TO PART 460—EXEMPTIONS

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended (15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*).

SOURCE: 44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

§ 460.1 What this regulation does.

This regulation deals with home insulation labels, fact sheets, ads, and other promotional materials in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act. If you are covered by this regulation, breaking any of its rules is an unfair and deceptive act or practice or an unfair method of competition under section 5 of that Act. You can be fined heavily (up to $11,000 plus an adjustment for inflation, under § 1.98 of this chapter) each time you break a rule.

[70 FR 31274, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.2 What is home insulation.

Insulation is any material mainly used to slow down heat flow. It may be mineral or organic, fibrous, cellular, or reflective (aluminum foil). It may be in rigid, semirigid, flexible, or loose-fill form. Home insulation is for use in old or new homes, condominiums, cooperatives, apartments, modular homes, or mobile homes. It does not include pipe insulation. It does not include any kind of duct insulation except for duct wrap.

§ 460.3 Who is covered.

You are covered by this regulation if you are a member of the home insulation industry. This includes individuals, firms, partnerships, and corporations. It includes manufacturers, distributors, franchisors, installers, retailers, utility companies, and trade associations. Advertisers and advertising agencies are also covered. So are labs doing tests for industry members. If you sell new homes to consumers, you are covered.

§ 460.4 When the rules apply.

You must follow these rules each time you import, manufacture, distribute, sell, install, promote, or label home insulation. You must follow them each time you prepare, approve, place, or pay for home insulation labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials for consumer use. You must also follow them each time you supply anyone covered by this regulation with written information that is to be used in labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials for consumer use. Testing labs must follow the rules unless the industry members tells them, in writing, that labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials for home insulation will not be based on the test results.

460.5 R-value tests.

R-value measures resistance to heat flow. R-values given in labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials must be based on tests done under the methods listed below. They were designed by the American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM). The test methods are:

(a) All types of insulation except aluminum foil must be tested with ASTM C 177–04, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus;'' ASTM C 518–04, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of

the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus;'' ASTM C 1363–97, ''Standard Test Method for the Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus'' or ASTM C 1114–00, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Thin-Heater Apparatus.'' The tests must be done at a mean temperature of 75 [degrees] Fahrenheit and with a temperature differential of 50 [degrees] Fahrenheit plus or minus 10 degrees Fahrenheit. The tests must be done on the insulation material alone (excluding any airspace). R-values (''thermal resistance'') based upon heat flux measurements according to ASTM C 177–04 or ASTM C 518–04 must be reported only in accordance with the requirements and restrictions of ASTM C 1045–01, ''Standard Practice for Calculating Thermal Transmission Properties from Steady-State Conditions.''

(1) For polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, and extruded polystyrene, the tests must be done on samples that fully reflect the effect of aging on the product's R-value. To age the sample, follow the procedure in paragraph 4.6.4 of GSA Specification HH–I–530A, or another reliable procedure.

(2) For loose-fill cellulose, the tests must be done at the settled density determined under paragraph 8 of ASTM C 739–03, ''Standard Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Loose-Fill Thermal Insulation.''

(3) For loose-fill mineral wool, self-supported, spray-applied cellulose, and stabilized cellulose, the tests must be done on samples that fully reflect the effect of settling on the product's R-value.

(4) For self-supported spray-applied cellulose, the tests must be done at the density determined pursuant to ASTM C 1149–02, ''Standard Specification for Self-Supported Spray Applied Cellulosic Thermal Insulation.''

(5) For loose-fill insulations, the initial installed thickness for the product must be determined pursuant to ASTM C 1374–03, ''Standard Test Method for Determination of Installed Thickness of Pneumatically Applied Loose-Fill Building Insulation,'' for R-values of 13, 19, 22, 30, 38, 49 and any other R-values provided on the product's label pursuant to § 460.12.

(b) Single sheet systems of aluminum foil must be tested with ASTM E 408–71 (Reapproved 2002), ''Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques,'' or ASTM C 1371–04a, ''Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers.'' This tests the emissivity of the foil—its power to radiate heat. To get the R-value for a specific emissivity level, air space, and direction of heat flow, use the tables in the most recent edition of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers' (ASHRAE) Fundamentals Handbook, if the product is intended for applications that meet the conditions specified in the tables. You must use the R-value shown for 50[degrees] Fahrenheit, with a temperature differential of 30[degrees] Fahrenheit.

(c) Aluminum foil systems with more than one sheet, and single sheet systems of aluminum foil that are intended for applications that do not meet the conditions specified in the tables in the most recent edition of the ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook, must be tested with ASTM C 1363–97, ''Standard Test Method for the Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus,'' in a test panel constructed according to ASTM C 1224–03, ''Standard Specification for Reflective Insulation for Building Applications,'' and under the test conditions specified in ASTM C 1224–03. To get the R-value from the results of those tests, use the formula specified in ASTM C 1224–03.

(d) For insulation materials with foil facings, you must test the R-value of the material alone (excluding any air spaces) under the methods listed in paragraph (a) of this section. You can also determine the R-value of the material in conjunction with an air space. You can use one of two methods to do this:

(1) You can test the system, with its air space, under ASTM C 1363–97,

''Standard Test Method for the Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus,'' which is incorporated by reference in paragraph (a) of this section. If you do this, you must follow the rules in paragraph (a) of this section on temperature, aging and settled density.

(2) You can add up the tested R-value of the material and the R-value of the air space. To get the R-value for the air space, you must follow the rules in paragraph (b) of this section.

(e) The standards listed above are incorporated by reference into this section. These incorporations by reference were approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Consumer Response Center, Room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580, or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call (202) 741–6030, or go to: *http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html*. Copies of materials and standards incorporated by reference may be obtained from the issuing organizations listed in this section.

(1) The American Society of Testing and Materials, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshocken, PA 19428–2959.

(i) ASTM C 177–04, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus.''

(ii) ASTM C 518–04, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.''

(iii) ASTM C 739–03, ''Standard Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Loose-Fill Thermal Insulation.''

(iv) ASTM C 1045–01, ''Standard Practice for Calculating Thermal Transmission Properties from Steady-State Conditions.''

(v) ASTM C 1114–00, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Thin-Heater Apparatus.''

(vi) ASTM C 1149–02, ''Standard Specification for Self-Supported Spray Applied Cellulosic Thermal Insulation.''

(vii) ASTM C 1224–03, ''Standard Specification for Reflective Insulation for Building Applications.''

(viii) ASTM C 1363–97, ''Standard Test Method for the Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus.''

(ix) ASTM C 1371–04a, ''Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers.''

(x) ASTM C 1374–03, ''Standard Test Method for Determination of Installed Thickness of Pneumatically Applied Loose-Fill Building Insulation.''

(xi) ASTM E 408–71 (Reapproved 2002), ''Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques.''

(2) U.S. General Services Administration (GSA), 1800 F Street, NW., Washington, DC 20405.

(i) GSA Specification HH–I–530A, Federal Specification, Insulation Board, Thermal (Urethane), November 22, 1971.

(ii) [Reserved]

[70 FR 31274, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.6 "Representative thickness" testing.

All tests except aluminum foil tests must be done at a representative thickness for every thickness shown in a label, fact sheet, ad, or other promotional material. ''Representative thickness'' means a thickness at which the R-value per unit will vary no more than plus or minus 2% with increases in thickness. However, if the thickness shown in your label, fact sheet, ad, or promotional material is less than the representative thickness, then you can test the insulation at the thickness shown.

§ 460.7 Which test version to use.

Use the version of the ASTM test method that was in effect when this regulation was promulgated. If ASTM changes a test method, the new version will automatically replace the old one in these rules 90 days after ASTM first publishes the change. However, the Commission's staff or a person affected

by the change can petition the Commission during the 90-day period not to adopt the change or to reopen the proceeding to consider it further.

§ 460.8 R-value tolerances.

If you are a manufacturer of home insulation, no individual specimen of the insulation you sell can have an R-value more than 10% below the R-value shown in a label, fact sheet, ad, or other promotional material for that insulation. If you are not a manufacturer, you can rely on the R-value data given to you by the manufacturer, unless you know or should know that the data is false or not based on the proper tests.

[70 FR 31275, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.9 What test records you must keep.

Manufacturers and testing labs must keep records of each item of information in the ''Report'' section of the ASTM test method that is used for a test. They must also keep the following records:

(a) The name and address of the testing lab that did each test.

(b) The date of each test.

(c) For manufacturers, the date each test report was received from a lab. For labs, the date each test report was sent to a manufacturer.

(d) For extruded polystyrene, polyurethane, and polyisocyanurate, the age (in days) of the specimen that was tested.

(e) For aluminum foil, the emissivity level that was found in the test.

Manufacturers who own their own testing labs need not keep records of the information in paragraph (c) of this section.

Keep these records for at least three years. If the documents show proof for your claims, the three years will begin again each time you make the claim. Federal Trade Commission staff members can check these records at any time, but they must give you reasonable notice first.

§ 460.10 How statements must be made.

All statements called for by this regulation must be made clearly and conspicuously. Among other things, you must follow the Commission's enforcement policy statement for clear and conspicuous disclosures in foreign language advertising and sales materials, 16 CFR 14.9.

[61 FR 13666, Mar. 28, 1996]

§ 460.11 Rounding off R-values.

R-values shown in labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials must be rounded to the nearest tenth. However, R-values of 10 or more may be rounded to the nearest whole number.

§ 460.12 Labels.

If you are a manufacturer, you must label all packages of your insulation. The labels must contain:

(a) The type of insulation.

(b) A chart showing these items:

(1) For batts and blankets of any type: the R-value, length, width, thickness, and square feet of insulation in the package.

(2) For all loose-fill insulation: the minimum settled thickness, initial installed thickness, maximum net coverage area, number of bags per 1,000 square feet, and minimum weight per square foot at R-values of 13, 19, 22, 30, 38, and 49. You must also give this information for any additional R-values you list on the chart. Labels for these products must state the minimum net weight of the insulation in the package. You must also provide information about the blowing machine and machine settings used to derive the initial installed thickness information.

(3) For boardstock: the R-value, length, width, and thickness of the boards in the package, and the square feet of insulation in the package.

(4) For aluminum foil: the number of foil sheets; the number and thickness of the air spaces; and the R-value provided by that system when the direction of heat flow is up, down, and horizontal. You can show the R-value for only one direction of heat flow if you clearly and conspicuously state that the foil can only be used in that application.

(5) For insulation materials with foil facings, you must follow the rule that applies to the material itself. For example, if you manufacture boardstock

with a foil facing, follow paragraph (b)(3) of this section. You can also show the R-value of the insulation when it is installed in conjunction with an air space. This is its ''system R-value.'' If you do this, you must clearly and conspicuously state the conditions under which the system R-value can be attained.

(6) For air duct insulation: the R-value, length, width, thickness, and square feet of insulation in the package.

(c) The following statement: ''R means resistance to heat flow. The higher the R-value, the greater the insulating power.''

(d) If installation instructions are included on the label or with the package, add this statement: ''To get the marked R-value, it is essential that this insulation be installed properly. If you do it yourself, follow the instructions carefully.''

(e) If no instructions are included, add this statement: ''To get the marked R-value, it is essential that this insulation be installed properly. If you do it yourself, get instructions and follow them carefully. Instructions do not come with this package.''

[70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.13 Fact sheets.

If you are a manufacturer, you must give retailers and installers fact sheets for the insulation products you sell to them. Each sheet must contain what is listed here. You can add any disclosures that are required by federal laws, regulations, rules, or orders. You can add any disclosures that are required by State or local laws, rules, and orders, unless they are inconsistent with the provisions of this regulation. Do not add anything else.

Each fact sheet must contain these items:

(a) The name and address of the manufacturer. It can also include a logo or other symbol that the manufacturer uses.

(b) A heading: ''This is _____ insulation.'' Fill in the blank with the type and form of your insulation.

(c) The heading must be followed by a chart:

(1) If § 460.12(b) requires a chart for your product's label, you must use that chart. For foamed-in-place insulations, you must show the R-value of your product at 3½ inches. You can also show R-values at other thicknesses.

(2) You can put the charts for similar products on the same fact sheet. For example, if you sell insulation boards or batts in three different thicknesses, you can put the label charts for all three products on one fact sheet. If you sell loose-fill insulation in two different bag sizes, you can put both coverage charts on one fact sheet, as long as you state which coverage chart applies to each bag size.

(d) For air duct insulation, the chart must be followed by this statement:

''The R-value of this insulation varies depending on how much it is compressed during installation.''

(e) After the chart and any statement dealing with the specific type of insulation, ALL fact sheets must carry this statement, boxed, in 12-point type:

READ THIS BEFORE YOU BUY

What You Should Know About R-values

The chart shows the R-value of this insulation. R means resistance to heat flow. The higher the R-value, the greater the insulating power. Compare insulation R-values before you buy.

There are other factors to consider. The amount of insulation you need depends mainly on the climate you live in. Also, your fuel savings from insulation will depend upon the climate, the type and size of your house, the amount of insulation already in your house, and your fuel use patterns and family size. If you buy too much insulation, it will cost you more than what you'll save on fuel.

To get the marked R-value, it is essential that this insulation be installed properly.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 45 FR 68928, Oct. 17, 1980; 70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.14 How retailers must handle fact sheets.

If you sell insulation to do-it-yourself customers, you must have fact sheets for the insulation products you sell. You must make the fact sheets available to your customers. You can decide how to do this, as long as your insulation customers are likely to notice them. For example, you can put

them in a display, and let customers take copies of them. You can keep them in a binder at a counter or service desk, and have a sign telling customers where the fact sheets are. You need not make the fact sheets available to customers if you display insulation packages on the sales floor where your insulation customers are likely to notice them and each individual insulation package offered for sale contains all package label and fact sheet disclosures required by §§ 460.12 and 460.13.

[70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.15 How installers must handle fact sheets.

If you are an installer, you must have fact sheets for the insulation products you sell. Before customers agree to buy insulation from you, you must show them the fact sheet(s) for the type(s) of insulation they want. You can decide how to do this. For example, you can give each customer a copy of the fact sheet(s). You can keep the fact sheets in a binder, and show customers the binder before they agree to buy.

§ 460.16 What new home sellers must tell new home buyers.

If you are a new home seller, you must put the following information in every sales contract: The type, thickness, and R-value of the insulation that will be installed in each part of the house. There is an exception to this rule. If the buyer signs a sales contract before you know what type of insulation will be put in the house, or if there is a change in the contract, you can give the buyer a receipt stating this information as soon as you find out.

§ 460.17 What installers must tell their customers.

If you are an installer, you must give your customers a contract or receipt for the insulation you install. For all insulation except loose-fill and aluminum foil, the receipt must show the coverage area, thickness, and R-value of the insulation you installed. The receipt must be dated and signed by the installer. To figure out the R-value of the insulation, use the data that the manufacturer gives you. If you put insulation in more than one part of the house, put the data for each part on the receipt. You can do this on one receipt, as long as you do not add up the coverage areas or R-values for different parts of the house. Do not multiply the R-value for one inch by the number of inches you installed. For loose-fill, the receipt must show the coverage area, initial installed thickness, minimum settled thickness, R-value, and the number of bags used. For aluminum foil, the receipt must show the number and thickness of the air spaces, the direction of heat flow, and the R-value.

[70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.18 Insulation ads.

(a) If your ad gives an R-value, you must give the type of insulation and the thickness needed to get that R-value. Also, add this statement explaining R-values: ''The higher the R-value, the greater the insulating power. Ask your seller for the fact sheet on R-values.''

(b) If your ad gives a price, you must give the type of insulation, the R-value at a specific thickness, the statement explaining R-values in paragraph (a) of this section, and the coverage area for that thickness. If you give the price per square foot, you do not have to give the coverage area.

(c) If your ad gives the thickness of your insulation, you must give its R-value at that thickness and the statement explaining R-values in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) If your ad compares one type of insulation to another, the comparison must be based on the same coverage areas. You must give the R-value at a specific thickness for each insulation, and the statement explaining R-values in paragraph (a) of this section. If you give the price of each insulation, you must also give the coverage area for the price and thickness shown. However, if you give the price per square foot, you do not have to give the coverage area.

(e) The affirmative disclosure requirements in § 460.18 do not apply to ads on television or radio.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 51 FR 39651, Oct. 30, 1986; 70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.19 Savings claims.

(a) If you say or imply in your ads, labels, or other promotional materials that insulation can cut fuel bills or fuel use, you must have a reasonable basis for the claim. For example, if you say that insulation can ''slash'' or ''lower'' fuel bills, or that insulation ''saves money,'' you must have a reasonable basis for the claim. Also, if you say that insulation can ''cut fuel use in half,'' or ''lower fuel bills by 30%,'' you must have a reasonable basis for the claim.

(b) If you say or imply in your ads, labels, or other promotional materials that insulation can cut fuel bills or fuel use, you must make this statement about savings: ''Savings vary. Find out why in the seller's fact sheet on R-values. Higher R-values mean greater insulating power.''

(c) If you say or imply that a combination of products can cut fuel bills or use, you must have a reasonable basis for the claim. You must make the statement about savings in paragraph (b) of this section. Also, you must list the combination of products used. They may be two or more types of insulation; one or more types of insulation and one or more other insulating products, like storm windows or siding; or insulation for two or more parts of the house, like the attic and walls. You must say how much of the savings came from each product or location. If you cannot give exact or approximate figures, you must give a ranking. For instance, if your ad says that insulation and storm doors combined to cut fuel use by 50%, you must say which one saved more.

(d) If your ad or other promotional material is covered by § 460.18 (a), (b), (c), or (d), and also makes a savings claim, you must follow the rules in §§ 460.18 and 460.19. However, you need not make the statement explaining R-value in § 460.18(a).

(e) Manufacturers are liable if they do not have a reasonable basis for their savings claims before the claim is made. If you are not a manufacturer, you are liable only if you know or should know that the manufacturer does not have a reasonable basis for the claim.

(f) Keep records of all data on savings claims for at least three years. For the records showing proof for claims, the three years will begin again each time you make the claim. Federal Trade Commission staff members can check these records at any time, but they must give you reasonable notice first.

(g) The affirmative disclosure requirements in § 460.19 do not apply to ads on television or radio.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 51 FR 39651, Oct. 30, 1986; 70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.20 R-value per inch claims.

In labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials, do not give the R-value for one inch or the ''R-value per inch'' of your product. There are two exceptions:

(a) If an outstanding FTC Cease and Desist Order applies to you but differs from the rules given here, you can petition to amend the order.

(b) You can do this if actual test results prove that the R-values per inch of your product does not drop as it gets thicker.

You can list a range of R-value per inch. If you do, you must say exactly how much the R-value drops with greater thickness. You must also add this statement: ''The R-value per inch of this insulation varies with thickness. The thicker the insulation, the lower the R-value per inch.''

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.21 Government claims.

Do not say or imply that a government agency uses, certifies, recommends, or otherwise favors your product unless it is true. Do not say or imply that your insulation complies with a governmental standard or specification unless it is true.

§ 460.22 Tax claims.

Do not say or imply that your product qualifies for a tax benefit unless it is true.

§ 460.23 Other laws, rules, and orders.

(a) If an outstanding FTC Cease and Desist Order applies to you but differs

from the rules given here, you can petition to amend to order.

(b) State and local laws and regulations that are inconsistent with, or frustrate the purposes of, the provisions of this regulation are preempted. However, a State or local government may petition the Commission, for good cause, to permit the enforcement of any part of a State or local law or regulation that would be preempted by this section.

(c) The Commission's three-day cooling-off rule stays in force.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 70 FR 31276, May 31, 2005]

§ 460.24 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this regulation is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

APPENDIX TO PART 460—EXEMPTIONS

Section 18(g)(2) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57a(g)(2), authorizes the Commission to exempt a person or class of persons from all or part of a trade regulation rule if the Commission finds that application of the rule is not necessary to prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices to which the rule relates. In response to petitions from industry representatives, the Commission has granted exemptions from specific requirements of 16 CFR part 460 to certain classes of sellers. Some of these exemptions are conditioned upon the performance of alternative actions. The exemptions are limited to specific sections of part 460. All other requirements of part 460 apply to these sellers. The exemptions are summarized below. For an explanation of the scope and application of the exemptions, see the formal Commission decisions in the FEDERAL REGISTER cited at the end of each exemption.

(a) Manufacturers of perlite insulation products that have an inverse relationship between R-value and density or weight per square foot are exempted from the requirements in §§ 460.12(b)(2) and 460.13(c)(1) that they disclose minimum weight per square foot for R-values listed on labels and fact sheets. This exemption is conditioned upon the alternative disclosure in labels and fact sheets of the maximum weight per square foot for each R-value required to be listed. 46 FR 22179 (1981).

(b) Manufacturers of rigid, flat-roof insulation products used in flat, built-up roofs are exempted from the requirements in § 460.12 that they label these home insulation products. 46 FR 22180 (1981).

(c) New home sellers are exempted from:

(1) the requirement in § 460.18(a) that they disclose the type and thickness of the insulation when they make a representation in an advertisement or other promotional material about the R-value of the insulation in a new home;

(2) the requirement that they disclose in an advertisement or other promotional material the R-value explanatory statement specified in § 460.18(a) or the savings explanatory statement specified in § 460.19(b), conditioned upon the new home sellers alternatively disclosing the appropriate explanatory statement in the sales contract along with the disclosures required by § 460.16;

(3) the requirement that they make the disclosures specified in § 460.19(c) if they claim that insulation, along with other products in a new home, will cut fuel bills or fuel use; and

(4) the requirement that they include the reference to fact sheets when they must disclose the R-value explanatory statement or the savings claim explanatory statement under § 460.18(a) or § 460.19(b), respectively.

The exemptions for new home sellers also apply to home insulation sellers other than new home sellers when they participate with a new home seller to advertise and promote the sale of new homes, provided that the primary thrust of the advertisement or other promotional material is the promotion of new homes, and not the promotion of the insulation product. 48 FR 31192 (1983).

[61 FR 13666, Mar. 28, 1996]

SUBCHAPTER E—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENT OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATION AND EXEMPTIONS UNDER THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT

PART 500—REGULATIONS UNDER SECTION 4 OF THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT

Sec.

500.1 Scope of the regulations of this part.
500.2 Terms defined.
500.3 Prohibited acts, coverage, general labeling requirements, exemption procedures.
500.4 Statement of identity.
500.5 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer or distributor.
500.6 Net quantity of contents declaration, location.
500.7 Net quantity of contents, method of expression.
500.8 Units of weight or mass and measure.
500.9 Units of weight or mass, how expressed.
500.10 Units of fluid measure, how expressed.
500.11 Measurement of commodity length, how expressed.
500.12 Measurement of commodities by length and width, how expressed.
500.13 Measurement of commodities by area measure only, how expressed.
500.14 Statements of cubic measure and dry measure.
500.15 Units of count, more than one ply.
500.16 Measurement of container type commodities, how expressed.
500.17 Fractions.
500.18 SI metric prefixes.
500.19 Conversion of SI metric quantities to inch/pound quantities and inch/pound quantities to SI metric quantities.
500.20 Conspicuousness.
500.21 Type size in relationship to the area of the principal display panel.
500.22 Abbreviations.
500.23 Expression of net quantity of contents in SI Metric units.
500.24 Supplemental statements.
500.25 Net quantity, average quantity, permitted variations.
500.26 Representations of servings, uses, applications.
500.27 Multiunit packages.
500.28 Variety packages.
500.29 Combination packages.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1453, 1454, 1455.

SOURCE: 59 FR 1872, Jan. 12, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

§ 500.1 Scope of the regulations of this part.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for labeling of consumer commodities as hereinafter defined with respect to identity of the commodity; the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor; the net quantity of contents; and net quantity of servings, uses, or applications represented to be present.

§ 500.2 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) The term *Act* means the ''Fair Packaging and Labeling Act'' (Pub. L. 89–755, approved Nov. 3, 1966; 80 Stat. 1296 *et seq.*; 15 U.S.C. 1451 *et seq.*, as amended by Public Law 102–329, August 3, 1992).

(b) The term *regulation* or *regulations* means regulations promulgated by the Commission pursuant to sections 4, 5, and 6 of the Act (15 U.S.C. 1453, 1454, 1455).

(c) The term *consumer commodity* or *commodity* means any article, product, or commodity of any kind or class which is customarily produced or distributed for sale through retail sales agencies or instrumentalities for consumption by individuals, or use by individuals for purposes of personal care or in the performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household, and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such consumption or use. For purposes of the regulations in this part the term *consumer commodity* does not include any food, drug, device or cosmetic as defined by section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 321); any meat or meat product, poultry or poultry product, or tobacco or tobacco product; any commodity subject to packaging or labeling requirements imposed by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency pursuant to the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (7 U.S.C. 136 *et seq.*); any commodity subject to

the provisions of the eighth paragraph under the heading ''Bureau of Animal Industry'' of the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act (21 U.S.C. 151–157); any beverage subject to or complying with packaging or labeling requirements imposed under the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 201 *et seq.*); any commodity subject to the provisions of the Federal Seed Act (7 U.S.C. 1551–1610).

(d) The term *package* means any container or wrapping in which any consumer commodity is enclosed for use in the delivery or display of that commodity to retail purchasers. For purposes of the regulations in this part the term *package* does not include shipping containers or wrappings used solely for the transportation of any consumer commodity in bulk or in quantity to manufacturers, packers, or processors, or to wholesale or retail distributors thereof unless used in retail display; shipping containers or outer wrappings used by retailers to ship or deliver any commodity to retail customers if such containers and wrappings bear no printed matter pertaining to any particular commodity; or containers subject to the provisions of the Act of August 3, 1912 (37 Stat. 250, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 231–233), the Act of March 4, 1915 (38 Stat. 1186, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 234–236); or transparent wrappers or containers which do not bear written, printed, or graphic matter obscuring any part of the label information required by this part.

(e) The term *label* means any written, printed, or graphic matter affixed to or appearing upon any consumer commodity or affixed to or appearing upon a package containing any consumer commodity; except that:

(1) An inspector's tag or other nonpromotional matter affixed to or appearing upon a consumer commodity shall not be deemed to be a label requiring the repetition of label information required by this part, and

(2) For the purposes of the regulations in this part the term *label* does not include written, printed, or graphic matter affixed to or appearing upon commodities, or affixed to or appearing upon containers or wrappers for commodities sold or distributed to industrial or institutional users.

(f) The term *person* includes any firm, corporation or associations.

(g) The term *commerce* means:

(1) Commerce between any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, or any territory or possession of the United States, and any place outside thereof, and

(2) Commerce within the District of Columbia or within any territory or possession of the United States, not organized with a legislature, but shall not include exports to foreign countries.

(h) The term *principal display panel* means that part of a label that is most likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under normal and customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel must be large enough to accommodate all the mandatory label information required to be placed thereon by this part without obscuring designs, vignettes, or crowding. This definition does not preclude utilization of alternate principal display panels on a label of a package, but alternate principal display panels must duplicate the information required to be placed on the principal display panel by this part. This definition does not preclude utilization of the container closure as the surface bearing the principal display panel if that label location is the one most likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under normal and customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel of a label appearing on a cylindrical surface is that 40 percent of the circumference which is more likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under normal and customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel of a consumer commodity marketed in a decorative type container, or a container having a capacity of ¼ ounce (7.4 mL) or less, may be considered to be a tear-away tag or tape affixed to the container and bearing the mandatory label information as required by this part, but the type size of the net quantity of contents statement shall be governed by the dimensions of the container itself.

The principal display panel of a consumer commodity marketed on a display card to which the immediate container of the commodity is affixed may be considered to be the display panel of the card, and the type size of the net quantity of contents statement is governed by the dimensions of the display card.

(i) The term *random package* means a package which is one of a lot, shipment, or delivery of packages of the same consumer commodity with varying weights, that is, packages with no fixed weight pattern.

(j) The term *SI metric* refers to units belonging to the International System of Units (abbreviated ''SI'' from the French, *Le Systeme International d'Unites*), as interpreted or modified for use in the United States by the Secretary of Commerce. They include the SI units (together with their multiples and submultiples) as well as other metric units (e.g., the liter) that are accepted for use with the SI units because of their practical importance.

(k) The term *customary inch/pound* refers to units belonging to the system of units used in the United States based on or derived from the ounce, pound, and ton for weight; the inch, foot, yard, and mile for length; the fluid ounce, pint, quart, and gallon for volume; and dry pint, dry quart, peck, and bushel for dry measure.

(l) The term *''e'' mark* refers to the symbol ''e'' used in connection with the quantity declarations on labels of some consumer commodities marketed primarily in the European Community (EC). The ''e'' mark constitutes a representation by the packer or importer that the package to which it is applied has been filled in accordance with the average system of quantity specified by the EC. The average system is a method of declaring package fill in the EC and other countries of the world, including the United States.

§ 500.3 Prohibited acts, coverage, general labeling requirements, exemption procedures.

(a) No person engaged in the packaging or labeling of any consumer commodity for distribution in commerce, and no person (other than a common carrier for hire, or a freight forwarder for hire) engaged in the distribution in commerce of any packaged or labeled consumer commodity, shall distribute or cause to be distributed in commerce any such commodity if such commodity is contained in a package, or if there is affixed to that commodity a label, which does not conform to the provisions of the Act and of the regulations in this part.

(b) Persons engaged in business as wholesale or retail distributors of consumer commodities shall be subject to the Act and the regulations in this part to the extent that such persons are engaged in the packaging or labeling of consumer commodities, or prescribe or specify by any means the manner in which such consumer commodities are packaged or labeled.

(c) Each packaged or labeled consumer commodity, unless it has been exempted through proceedings under section 5(b) of the Act (15 U.S.C. 1454(b)), shall, upon being prepared for distribution in commerce or for sale at retail, and before being distributed in commerce or offered for sale at retail, be labeled in accordance with the requirements of the Act and the regulations in this part.

(d) Each packaged or labeled consumer commodity, unless it has been exempted through proceedings under section 5(b) of the Act, shall bear a label specifying the identity of the commodity; the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor; the net quantity of contents; and the net quantity per serving, use or application, where there is a label representation as to the number of servings, uses, or applications obtainable from the commodity.

(e) Regulations will be promulgated by the Commission exempting particular consumer commodities from one or more of the requirements of section 4 of the Act and the regulations thereunder to the extent and under such conditions as are consistent with the declared policy of the Act whenever the Commission finds that, because of the nature, form, or quantity of the particular consumer commodity, or for other good and sufficient reasons, full compliance with all the requirements otherwise applicable is impracticable or is not necessary for the adequate

protection of consumers. Proceedings for the promulgation of such exempting regulations may be commenced by the Commission upon its own initiative or pursuant to petition filed with the Secretary by any interested person or group stating reasonable grounds for the proposed exemption, pursuant to §1.15 of this chapter of the Commission's general procedures.

§ 500.4 Statement of identity.

(a) The principal display panel of a consumer commodity shall bear a specification of the identity of the commodity.

(b) Such specification of identity shall comprise a principal feature of the principal display panel, shall be in such type size and so positioned as to render it easily read and understood by the consumer, and shall be in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package or commodity rests as it is designed to be displayed.

(c) Such specification of identity shall be in terms of:

(1) The name now or hereafter specified in or required by any applicable Federal law or regulation; or in the absence thereof,

(2) The common or usual name of the commodity; or in the absence thereof,

(3) The generic name or in other appropriately descriptive terms such as a specification which includes a statement of function.

(d) The specification of identity shall not be false, misleading, or deceptive in any respect. Ingredients or components which are not present in the commodity in a substantial or significantly effective amount may not be mentioned in the specification of identity; except that a component present in a formulation in substantial and effective amounts, but not present in the final product due to conversion or transformation into a different entity (which different entity is present in the final product), may be mentioned in the specification of identity.

§ 500.5 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer or distributor.

(a) The label of a consumer commodity shall specify conspicuously the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor. Where the consumer commodity is not manufactured by the person whose name appears on the label, the name shall be qualified by a phrase that reveals the connection such person has with such commodity; such as ''Manufactured for _____,'' ''Distributed by _____,'' or any other wording that expresses the facts.

(b) The requirement for declaration of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor shall in the case of a corporation be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used.

(c) The statement of the place of business shall include the street address, city, State, and Zip Code; however, the street address may be omitted if it is shown in a current city directory or telephone directory.

(d) If a person manufactures, packs, or distributes a consumer commodity at a place other than his principal place of business, the label may state the principal place of business in lieu of the actual place where such consumer commodity was manufactured or packed or is to be distributed, unless such statement would be misleading.

(e) Standard abbreviations may be used in complying with the requirements of this section.

§ 500.6 Net quantity of contents declaration, location.

(a) The label of a consumer commodity shall bear a declaration of the net quantity of contents separately and accurately stated on the principal display panel.

(b) The declaration of net quantity shall appear as a distinct item on the principal display panel, shall be separated (by at least a space equal to the height of the lettering used in the declaration) from other printed label information appearing above or below the declaration and, shall not include any term qualifying a unit of weight or mass, measure, or count such as ''jumbo quart,'' ''giant liter,'' ''full gallon,'' ''when packed,'' ''minimum,'' or

words of similar import. The declaration of net quantity shall be separated (by at least a space equal to twice the width of the letter ''N'' of the style of type used in the net quantity statement) from other printed label information appearing to the left or right of the declaration. However, the ''e'' mark shall not be considered to be a qualifying word or phrase and may be used as part of the statement of the net quantity of contents where warranted. When used, the ''e'' mark shall be at least 3 millimeters (approximately 1/8 in) in height. The declaration of net quantity of contents shall be placed on the principal display panel within the bottom 30 percent of the area of the label panel in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package or commodity rests as it is designed to be displayed: *Provided*, that:

(1) On consumer commodities having a principal display panel of 5 square inches (32.2 cm^2) or less, the requirement for placement within the bottom 30 percent of the area of the label panel shall not apply when the declaration of net quantity of contents meets the other requirements of this part, and

(2) The requirements as to separation, location, and type size, specified in this part are waived with respect to variety and combination packages as defined in this part.

§ 500.7 Net quantity of contents, method of expression.

The net quantity of contents shall be expressed in terms of weight or mass, measure, numerical count, or a combination of numerical count and weight or mass, size, or measure so as to give accurate information regarding the net quantity of contents thereof, and thereby facilitate value comparisons by consumers. The net quantity of contents statement shall be in terms of fluid measure if the commodity is liquid, or in terms of weight or mass if the commodity is solid, semi-solid, or viscous, or a mixture of solid and liquid. If there is a firmly established general consumer usage and trade custom of declaring the contents of a liquid by weight or mass, or a solid, semi-solid, or viscous product by fluid measure, numerical count, and/or size, or (as in the case of lawn and plant care products) by cubic measure, it may be used, when such declaration provides sufficient information to facilitate value comparisons by consumers. The declaration may appear in more than one line of print or type.

§ 500.8 Units of weight or mass and measure.

(a) Statements of weight or mass shall be in terms of both avoirdupois pound and ounce and SI metric kilograms, grams, or milligrams. (Examples of avoirdupois/metric declarations: ''Net Wt 15 oz (425 g)'' or ''Net Wt 1½ lbs (680 g)'' or '' 2.5 oz (70.8 g)''; examples of metric/avoirdupois declarations: ''Net Mass 425 g (15 oz)'' or ''Net Mass 680 g (1½ lbs)'' or ''100 g e (3.5 oz).'')

(b) Statements of fluid measure shall be in terms of both the U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches and quart, pint, and fluid ounce subdivisions thereof and SI metric liters or milliliters and shall (except in the case of petroleum products, for which the declaration shall express the volume at 60 °Fahrenheit (15.6 °Celsius)) express the volume at 68 °Fahrenheit (20 °Celsius). (Examples of gallon/metric declarations: ''Net 12 fl oz (354 mL)'' or ''Net Contents 1 gal (3.78 L)'' or ''8 fl oz (236 mL)''; examples of metric/gallon declarations: ''Net 500 mL (1.05 pt)'' or ''Net Contents 1 L (1.05 qt).'')

(c) Statements of linear measure shall be in terms of both yards, feet, and inches and SI metric meters, centimeters, or millimeters.

(d) Statements of measure of area shall be in terms of both square yards, square feet, and square inches and SI metric square meters, square decimeters, square centimeters, or square millimeters.

(e) Statements of dry measure shall be in terms of both the U.S. bushel of 2,150.42 cubic inches and peck, dry quart, and dry pint subdivisions thereof and SI metric liters or milliliters.

(f) Statements of cubic measure shall be in terms of both cubic yard, cubic foot, and cubic inch and SI metric cubic meters, cubic decimeters, or cubic centimeters.

§ 500.9 Units of weight or mass, how expressed.

(a) The term *net weight* or *net mass* may be used in stating the net quantity of contents in terms of weight or mass. However, where the term ''net weight'' or ''net mass'' is not used, the quantity of contents shall always disclose the net quantity of contents. For example: ''453 g (1 lb)'' or ''Net Wt 1 lb (453 g)'' or ''Net Mass 453 g (1 lb)''.

(b) With the exception of random packages, the statement of net quantity of contents in terms of avoirdupois weight shall be expressed as follows:

(1) If less than 1 pound, in terms of ounces. (Examples: ''Net Weight 12 oz. (340 g)'' or ''Net Mass 340 g (12 oz)''.)

(2) If at least 1 pound but less than 4 pounds, in whole pounds, with any remainder in ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pound, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of ounces.

(*Examples:* ''Net Wt. 1 lb. 8 oz. (680 g)'' or ''Net Wt. 1.5 lb./24 oz. (680 g)'' or ''24 oz. (1½ lb.) 680 g''.)

(3) If 4 pounds or more, in terms of whole pounds, with any remainder in terms of ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pound, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of ounces. (Examples: ''Net Weight 5 pounds 4 ounces (2.38 kg)'' or ''Net Mass 2.38 kg (5 lbs 4 oz)'' or ''Net Wt. 5¼ lbs. (2.38 kg)'' or ''Net Mass 2.38 kg (5¼ lbs.)'' or ''Net Wt. 5.25 lbs. (2.38 kg) or ''Net Mass 2.38 kg (5.25 lbs)''.)

(c) If the net quantity of contents declaration appears on a random package it may, when the net weight exceeds 1 pound, be expressed in terms of pounds and decimal fractions of the pound carried out to not more than three decimal places. When the net weight does not exceed 1 pound, the declaration on the random package may be in terms of decimal fractions of the pound in lieu of ounces. (Examples: ''Net Wt. 0.75 lb.'' and ''Net Weight 1.05 pounds.'') Such decimal declaration shall be exempt from the type size and placement requirements of section 4(a) of the Act if the accurate statement of net weight is presented prominently and conspicuously on the principal display panel of the package. The net quantity of contents declaration on a random package is not required to, but may include a statement in terms of the SI metric system carried out to not more than 3 decimal places.

(d) It is sufficient to distinguish avoirdupois ounce from fluid ounce through association of terms. (Examples: ''Net Wt. 6 oz.'' vs. ''6 fl. oz.'' or ''Net Contents 6 fl. oz.'')

§ 500.10 Units of fluid measure, how expressed.

(a) Use of the terms ''net'' or ''net contents'' is optional.

(b) Declaration of net quantity of contents in terms of fluid measure shall be identified as such in each instance and the statement of U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches and quart, pint, and fluid ounce subdivisions thereof shall be expressed as follows:

(1) If less than 1 pint, in terms of fluid ounces. (Example: ''Net Contents 8 fl. oz. (236 mL)'' or ''Net Contents 236 mL (8 fl. oz.)''.)

(2) If at least 1 pint but less than 1 gallon, in terms of the largest whole unit (quarts, quarts and pints or pints, as appropriate), with any remainder in terms of fluid ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pint or quart, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of fluid ounces. (Examples: ''1 qt. (946 mL)'' or ''Net contents 1 qt. 1 pt. 8 oz./56 fl. oz. (1.65 L)'', but not in terms of quart and ounce such as ''1 quart 24 ounces (1.65 L)''.)

(3) If 1 gallon or more, in terms of the largest whole unit (gallons followed by common or decimal fractions of a gallon or by the next smaller whole unit or units viz, quarts and pints) with any remainder in terms of fluid ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pint or quart, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of fluid ounces.

(*Examples:* ''Net contents 2½ gal. (9.46 L)'', ''Contents 2.5 gal. (9.46 L)'', or ''Net contents 2 gallons 2 quarts (9.46 L)'' but not as ''2 gallons 4 pints (9.46 L)''.)

§ 500.11 Measurement of commodity length, how expressed.

Declaration of net quantity in terms of yards, feet, and inches shall be expressed as follows:

(a) If less than 1 foot, in terms of inches and fractions thereof.

(b) If 1 foot or more, in terms of the largest whole unit (a yard or foot) with any remainder in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot or yard, except that it shall be optional to express the length in the preceding manner followed by a statement of the length in terms of inches.

§ 500.12 Measurement of commodities by length and width, how expressed.

For bidimensional commodities (including roll-type commodities) measured in terms of commodity length and width, the declaration of net quantity of contents shall be expressed in the following manner:

(a) The declaration of net quantity for bidimensional commodities having a width of more than 4 inches (10.1 cm) shall:

(1) When the commodity has an area of less than 1 square foot (929 cm^2) be expressed in terms of length and width in linear measure. The customary inch/pound statement is to be expressed in inches and fractions thereof.

(2) When the commodity has an area of 1 square foot (929 cm^2) or more, but less than 4 square feet (37.1 dm^2), be expressed in terms of area, followed by the length and width. The customary inch/pound statement of area is to be expressed in square inches with length and width expressed in the largest whole unit (yard or foot) with any remainder in inches or common or decimal fractions of the yard or foot except that a dimension of less than 2 feet (60.9 cm) may be stated in inches. Commodities consisting of usable individual units (e.g., paper napkins) while requiring a declaration of unit area need not declare the total area of all such individual units.

(3) When the commodity has an area of 4 square feet (37.1 dm^2) or more, be expressed in terms of area, followed by the length and width. The customary inch/pound statement of area is to be expressed in square feet with the length and width expressed in the largest whole units (yards or feet) with any remainder in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot or yard except that a dimension of less than 2 feet (60.96 cm) may be stated in inches.

(4) For any commodity for which the quantity of contents is required by paragraph (a) (2) or (3) of this section to include a declaration of the linear dimensions, the quantity of contents, in addition to being declared in the manner prescribed by the appropriate provisions of this regulation, may also include, after the customary inch/pound statement of the linear dimensions of the largest unit of measurement, a parenthetical declaration of the linear dimensions of said commodity in terms of inches.

(Example: ''25 sq. ft. (12 in. × 8.33 yd.) (12 in. × 300 in.) 42.32 m^2 (30.4 cm × 7.62 m)''.)

(b) For bidimensional commodities having a width of 4 inches (10.16 cm) or less, the declaration of net quantity shall be expressed in terms of width and length in linear measure. The customary inch/pound statement of width shall be expressed in terms of linear inches and fractions thereof, and length shall be expressed in the largest whole unit (yard or foot) with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fractions of the yard or foot, except that it shall be optional to express the length in the largest whole unit followed by a statement of length in inches or to express the length in inches followed by a statement of length in the largest whole unit.

(Example: ''2 inches × 10 yards (5.08 cm × 9.14 m)'', ''2 inches × 10 yards (360 inches) 5.08 cm × 9.14 m'', or ''2 inches × 360 inches (10 yards) 5.08 cm × 9.14 m''.)

§ 500.13 Measurement of commodities by area measure only, how expressed.

For commodities measured in terms of area measure only declaration of net quantity in terms of square yards, square feet, and square inches shall be expressed in the following manner:

(a) If less than 1 square foot (929 cm^2), in terms of square inches and fractions thereof.

(b) If at least 1 square foot (929 cm^2) but less than 4 square feet (37.1 dm^2), in terms of square feet with any remainder in terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot.

(c) If 4 square feet (37.1 dm^2) or more, in terms of the largest appropriate whole unit (square yards, square yards and square feet, or square feet) with any remainder in terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot or square yard.

§ 500.14 Statements of cubic measure and dry measure.

Statements of cubic measure and dry measure shall be expressed in terms most appropriate to the providing of accurate information as to the net quantity of contents, and to the facilitating of value comparisons by consumers. When the content declaration on a commodity sold in compressed form is stated in terms of cubic measure there may also be a statement indicating the amount of material from which the final product was compressed. Such statement shall not exceed the actual amount of material that can be recovered.

§ 500.15 Units of count, more than one ply.

If the commodity is in distinct usable units made up of one or more components or ply, the statement of net quantity of contents shall (in addition to complying with the requirements of linear and area measurement declaration for each unit as specified in § 500.12) include the number of ply and the total number of usable units.

(Example: ''100 2-ply facial tissues, 8½ inches × 10 inches'' (21.5 × 25.4 cm).)

For the purposes of this section, roll type commodities (e.g. paper towels), irrespective of perforations, shall not be considered to be usable units, and shall be labeled in terms of total area measurement and the number of ply. Such area measurement, however, shall be supplemented by a count statement and the dimensions of a single unit.

§ 500.16 Measurement of container type commodities, how expressed.

Notwithstanding other provisions of this part 500 of the regulations pertaining to the expression of net quantity of contents by measurement, commodities designed and sold at retail to be used as containers for other materials or objects, such as bags, cups, boxes, and pans, shall be labeled in accordance with the following paragraphs:

(a) The declaration of net quantity for container commodities shall be expressed as follows:

(1) For bag type commodities, in terms of count followed by linear dimensions of the bag (whether packaged in a perforated roll or otherwise) Net quantity of contents in terms of feet and inches shall be expressed as follows:

(i) When the unit bag is characterized by two dimensions because of the absence of a gusset, the width and length will be expressed in inches, except that a dimension of 2 feet or more will be expressed in feet with any remainder in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot.

(Example: ''25 bags, 17 in. × 20 in. (43.1 × 50.8 cm)'' or ''200 bags, 20 in. × 2 ft. 6 in. (50.8 × 76.2 cm)'', or ''50 bags, 20 in. × 2½ ft. (50.8 × 76.2 cm)''.)

(ii) When the unit bag is gussetted, the dimensions will be expressed as width, depth and length in terms of inches except that any dimensions of 2 feet or more will be expressed in feet with any remainder in terms of inches or the common or decimal fractions of the foot.

(Examples: ''25 bags, 17 in. × 4 in. × 20 in. (43 × 10 × 50 cm)'', or ''200 bags, 20 in. × 12 in. × 2½ ft. (50.8 × 30.4 × 76.2 cm)''.)

(2) For other square, oblong, rectangular or similarly shaped containers, in terms of count followed by length, width, and depth except depth need not be listed when less than 2 inches (5.08 cm).

(Example: ''2 cake pans, 8 in. × 8 in. (20.3 × 20.3 cm)'', or ''roasting pan, 12 in. × 8 in. × 3 in. (30.4 × 20.3 × 7.62 cm)''.)

(3) For circular or other generally round shaped containers, except cups, and the like, in terms of count followed

by diameter and depth except depth need not be listed when less than 2 inches (5.08 cm).

(Example: ''4 pie pans, 8 in. diameter (20.3 cm)'' or ''2 cake pans, 8 in. diameter × 4 in. (20.3 × 10.1 cm)''.)

(b) When the functional use of the container is related by label reference in standard terms of measure to the capability of holding a specific quantity of substance or class of substances such references shall be a part of the net quantity statement and shall specify capacity as follows:

(1) Liquid measure for containers which are intended to be used for liquids, semi-solids, viscous materials or mixtures of solids and liquids. The customary inch/pound statement of capacity shall be stated in terms of the largest whole U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches, quart, pint, or ounce with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fraction of that unit.

(Example: Freezer Boxes: ''4 boxes, 1 qt. capacity, 6 in. × 6 in. × 4 in. (946 mL capacity, 15.2 × 15.2 × 10.1 cm)''.)

(2) Dry measure for containers which are intended to be used for solids. The customary inch/pound statement of capacity shall be stated in terms of the largest whole U.S. bushel of 2,150.42 cubic inches, peck, dry quart, or dry pint with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fraction of that unit.

(Example: Leaf Bags: ''8 bags, 6 bushel capacity, 4 feet × 5 feet (211 L capacity—1.21 m × 1.52 m)''.)

(3) Where containers are used as liners for other more permanent containers, in the same terms as are normally used to express the capacity of the more permanent container.

(Example: Garbage Can Liners: ''10 liners, 2 ft. 6 in. × 3 ft. 1 in., fits up to 30 gallon cans (76.2 × 93.9 cm, fits up to 113 L cans''.)

(c) Notwithstanding the above requirements, the net quantity statement for containers such as cups will be listed in terms of count and liquid capacity per unit.

(Example: ''24 cups, 6 fl. oz. capacity (177 mL)''.)

(d) For purposes of this section, the use of the terms ''capacity,'' ''diameter,'' and ''fluid'' is optional.

§ 500.17 Fractions.

(a) SI metric declarations of net quantity of contents of any consumer commodity may contain only decimal fractions. Other declarations of net quantity of contents may contain common or decimal fractions. A common fraction shall be in terms of halves, quarters, eighths, sixteenths, or thirty-seconds; except that:

(1) If there exists a firmly established general consumer usage and trade custom of employing different common fractions in the net quantity declaration of a particular commodity, they may be employed, and

(2) If linear measurements are required in terms of yards or feet, common fractions may be in terms of thirds. A common fraction shall be reduced to its lowest terms; a decimal fraction shall not be carried out to more than three places.

(b) If a statement includes small fractions, smaller variations in the actual size or weight of the commodity will be permitted as provided in § 500.25, than in cases where the larger fractions or whole numbers are used.

§ 500.18 SI metric prefixes.

The following chart indicates SI prefixes that may be used on a broad range of consumer commodity labels:

Prefix	Symbol	Multiplying factor [1]
Kilo-	k	x 10^3
Deca-	da	x 10
Deci-	d	x 10^{-1}
Centi-	c	x 10^{-2}
Milli-	m	x 10^{-3}
Micro-	µ	x 10^{-6}

[1] 10^2=100; 10^3=1000; 10^{-1}=0.1; 10^{-2}=0.01.
Thus, 2 kg=2×1000 g=2000 g, and 3 cm=3×0.01 m=0.03 m.

§ 500.19 Conversion of SI metric quantities to inch/pound quantities and inch/pound quantities to SI metric quantities.

(a) For calculating the conversion of SI metric quantities to inch/pound quantities and inch/pound quantities to metric quantities, the factors in the following chart and none others shall be employed:

SI METRIC INCH/POUND CONVERSION FACTORS

Inch/pound	Metric
Length	
1 mil=25.4 micrometers (μm)*	1 micrometer= 0.039370 mil.
1 inch=2.54 cm*	1 millimeter=0.039 370 in.
1 foot=30.48 cm*	1 centimeter=0.393 701 in.
1 yard=0.9144m*	1 meter=3.280 84 ft.
Area	
1 square inch=6.4516 cm^2*	1 square centimeter=0.155 000 in^2.
1 square foot=929.0304 cm^2*	1 square decimeter=0.107 639 ft^2.
=9.290 304 dm^2	1 square meter=10.763 9 ft^2.
1 square yard=0.836 127 m^2.	
Volume or Capacity	
1 cubic inch=16.3871 cm^3	1 cubic centimeter=0.061 023 7 in^3.
1 cubic foot=0.028 316 8 m^3	1 cubic decimeter=0.035 314 7 ft^3.
=2.83 168 dm^3	1 cubic meter=35.314 7 ft^3.
1 cubic yard=0.764 555 m^3	=1.307 95 yd^3.
1 fluid ounce=29.573 5 mL	1 milliliter=0.033 814 0 fluid oz.
1 liquid pint=473.177 mL	1 liter=1.05669 liquid quart.
=0.473 177 L	1 liter=0.264 172 gallon.
1 liquid quart=946.353 mL	1 dry pint=550.610 5 mL.
=0.946 353 L	1 dry quart=1.101 221 L.
1 gallon=3.785 41 L	1 dry peck=8.809 768 L.
1 bushel=35.2391 L.	
Weight or Mass	
1 ounce=28.349 5 g	1 milligram=0.000 035 274 0 oz.
1 pound=453.592 g	=0.015 432 4 grain.
=0.453 592 kg	1 gram=0.035 274 0 oz.
	1 kilogram=2.204 62 lb.

*Exactly.
NOTE: These conversion factors are given to six significant digits to provide such accuracy when necessary.

(b) The SI metric quantity declaration should be shown in three digits except where the quantity is below 100 grams, milliliters, centimeters, square centimeters or cubic centimeters, where it can be shown in two figures. In either case, any final zero appearing to the right of a decimal point need not be shown.

(*Examples:* ''1 lb (453 g)'' not ''1 lb (453.592 g)''; ''Net Wt. 2 oz (56 g)'' or ''Net Wt 2 oz (56.6 g)'' not ''Net Wt. 2 oz (56.69 g)''.)

§ 500.20 Conspicuousness.

The statement of net quantity of contents shall appear in conspicuous and easily legible boldface type or print in distinct contrast (by typography, layout, color, embossing, or molding) to other matter on the package; except that a statement of net quantity blown, embossed, or molded on a glass or plastic surface is permissible when all label information is so formed on the surface.

§ 500.21 Type size in relationship to the area of the principal display panel.

(a) The statement of net quantity of contents shall be in letters and numerals in a type size established in relationship to the area of the principal display panel of the package or commodity and shall be uniform for all packages or commodities of substantially the same size. For this purpose, ''area of the principal display panel'' means the area of the side or surface that bears the principal display panel, exclusive of tops, bottoms, flanges at tops and bottoms of cans, and shoulders and necks of bottles and jars. This area shall be:

(1) In the case of a rectangular package or commodity where one entire side properly can be considered to be a principal display panel side, the product of the height times the width of that side;

(2) In the case of a cylindrical or nearly cylindrical container or commodity, 40 percent of the product of the height of the container or commodity times the circumference; and

(3) In the case of any otherwise shaped container or commodity, 40 percent of the total surface of the container or commodity: *Provided,* however, that where such container or commodity presents an obvious ''principal display panel'' such as the top of a triangular or oval shaped container, the area shall consist of the entire top surface.

(b) With area of principal display panel defined as above, the type size in relationship to area of that panel shall comply with the following specifications:

(1) Not less than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of 5 square inches or (32.2 cm^2) less.

(2) Not less than 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 5 (32.2 cm^2) but not more than 25 square inches (161 cm^2).

(3) Not less than 3/16 inch (4.7 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 25 (161 cm^2) but not more than 100 square inches (6.45 dm^2).

(4) Not less than ¼ inch (6.35 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 100 square inches (6.45 dm^2), except not less than ½ (12.7 mm) inch in height if the area is more than 400 square inches (25.8 dm^2).

(c) Where the statement of net quantity of contents is blown, embossed, or molded on a glass or plastic surface rather than by printing, typing, or coloring, the lettering sizes specified in paragraph (b) of this section shall be increased by 1/16 of an inch (1.5 mm).

(d) Letter heights pertain to upper case or capital letters. When upper and lower case or all lower case letters are used, it is the lower case letter ''o'' or its equivalent that shall meet the minimum standards.

(e) The ratio of height to width of a letter shall not exceed a differential of 3 units to 1 unit (no more than 3 times as high as it is wide).

(f) When fractions are used, each component shall meet one-half the minimum height standards.

(g) The type size requirements specified in this section do not apply to the ''e'' mark. (See § 500.6(b).)

(h) When upper and lower case or all lowercase letters are used in SI metric symbols, it is the uppercase ''L,'' lowercase ''d,'' or their equivalent in the print or type used that shall meet the minimum height requirement. Other letters and exponents must be presented in the same type style and in proportion to the type size used. However, no letter shall be less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) in height.

§ 500.22 Abbreviations.

The following abbreviations and none other may be employed in the required net quantity declaration:

Inch—in.
Feet or foot—ft.
Fluid—fl.
Liquid—liq.
Ounce—oz.
Gallon—gal.
Pint—pt.
Pound—lb.
Quart—qt.
Square—sq.
Weight—wt.
Yard—yd.
Avoirdupois—avdp.
Cubic—cu.

NOTE: Periods and plural forms shall be optional.

§ 500.23 Expression of net quantity of contents in SI Metric units.

(a) The selected multiple or submultiple prefixes for SI metric units shall result in numerical values between 1 and 1000, except that centimeters or millimeters may be used where a length declaration is less than 100 centimeters. For example, ''1.96 kg'' instead of ''1960 g'' and ''750 mL'' instead of ''0.75 L''.

(b) The following symbols for SI metric units and none others may be employed in the required net quantity declaration:

centimeter—cm
cubic centimeter—cm^3
cubic decimeter—dm^3
meter—m
milligram—mg
liter—L or l
milliliter—mL or ml
square decimeter—dm^2
cubic meter—m^3
kilogram—kg
micrometer—µm
gram—g
millimeter—mm
square meter—m^2
square centimeter—cm^2

NOTE: Symbols, except for liter, are not capitalized. Periods should not be used after the symbol. Symbols are always written in the singular form.

§ 500.24 Supplemental statements.

Nothing contained in the regulations in this part shall prohibit supplemental statements, at locations other than the principal display panel, describing in non-deceptive terms the net quantity of contents: *Provided* that such supplemental statements of net quantity of contents shall not include any term qualifying a unit of weight or mass, measure, or count that tends to exaggerate the amount of commodity contained in the package. (Examples of prohibited language are: ''Giant Quart,'' ''Jumbo Liter,'' ''Full Gallon,'' ''When Packed,'' ''Minimum,'' or words of similar import.) Required combination declarations of net quantity of

contents (for example, a combination of net weight or mass plus numerical count, numerical count plus dimensions of the commodity, etc.) are not regarded as supplemental net quantity statements and shall be located on the principal display panel. Dilution directions or other similar directions for use are not regarded as supplemental net quantity statements and may be located on the principal display panel. Size characterizations in compliance with standards promulgated under section 5(c)(1) of the Act may appear on the principal display panel.

§ 500.25 Net quantity, average quantity, permitted variations.

(a) The statement of net quantity of contents shall accurately reveal the quantity of the commodity in the container exclusive of wrappers and other material packed therewith: *Provided,* that in the case of a commodity packed in a container designed to deliver the commodity under pressure, the statement shall declare the net quantity of the contents that will be expelled when the instructions for use are followed. The propellant is included in the net quantity statement.

(b) Variations from the stated weight or mass or measure shall be permitted when caused by ordinary and customary exposure, after the commodity is introduced into interstate commerce, to conditions which normally occur in good distribution practice and which unavoidably result in change of weight or mass or measure.

(c) Variations from the stated weight or mass, measure, or numerical count shall be permitted when caused by unavoidable deviations in weighing, measuring, or counting the contents of individual packages which occur in good packaging practice: *Provided,* that such variations shall not be permitted to such extent that the average of the quantities in the packages comprising a shipment or other delivery of the commodity is below the quantity stated, and no unreasonable shortage in any package will be permitted even though overages in other packages in the same shipment or delivery compensate for such shortage. Variations from stated quantity of contents shall not be unreasonably large.

§ 500.26 Representations of servings, uses, applications.

(a) The label of any packaged consumer commodity which bears a representation as to the number of servings, uses, or applications of such commodity contained in such package shall bear in immediate conjunction therewith, and in letters the same size as those used for such representations, a statement of the net quantity (in terms of weight or mass, measure, or numerical count) of each such serving, use, or application: *Provided,* that such statement may be expressed in terms that differ from terms used in the required statement of net contents (e.g., cupsful, tablespoonful, etc.), when such differing terms describe a constant quantity. Such statement may not be misleading in any particular.

(b) Representations as to the total amount of object or objects to which the commodity may be applied or upon which or in which the commodity may be used, will not be considered to be representations as to servings, uses, or applications, if such amount is expressed in terms of standard units of weight or mass, measure, size, or count.

(c) If there exists a voluntary product standard promulgated pursuant to the procedures found in 15 CFR part 10, by the Department of Commerce, quantitatively defining the meaning of the terms *serving, use,* or *application* with respect to a particular consumer commodity, then any label representation as to the number of servings, uses, or applications in such packaged consumer commodity shall correspond with such quantitative definition. (Copies of published standards will be available upon request from the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20899.)

§ 500.27 Multiunit packages.

(a) A multiunit package is a package intended for retail sale, containing two or more individual packaged or labeled units of an identical commodity in the same quantity. The declaration of net quantity of contents of a multiunit package shall be expressed as follows:

(1) The number of individual packaged or labeled units;

(2) The quantity of each individual packaged or labeled unit; and

(3) The total quantity of the multiunit package.

Examples: Soap bars: ''6 Bars, Net Wt. 3.4 ozs. (96.3 g) each, Total Net Wt. 1 lb. 4.4 oz. (578 g)'' Facial Tissues: ''10 Packs, each 25 two-ply tissues, 9.7 in. × 8.2 in. (24.6 × 20.8 cm), Total 250 Tissues.''

(b) The individual packages or labeled units of a multiunit package, when intended for individual sale separate from the multiunit package, shall be labeled in compliance with the regulations under this part 500 applicable to that package.

(c) A multiunit package containing unlabeled individual packages which are not intended for retail sale separate from the multiunit package may contain, in lieu of the requirements of Paragraph (a) of this section, a declaration of quantity of contents expressing the total quantity of the multiunit package without regard for inner packaging. For such multiunit packages it shall be optional to include a statement of the number of individual packages when such a statement is not otherwise required by the regulations.

Examples: Deodorant Cakes: ''5 Cakes, Net Wt. 4 ozs. (113 g) each, Total Net Wt. 1.25 lb. (566 g)'' or ''5 Cakes, Total Net Wt. 1 lb. 4 ozs. (566 g)'';

Soap Packets: ''10 Packets, Net Wt. 2 ozs. (56.6 g) each, total Net Wt 1.25 lb. (566 g)'' or ''Net Wt 1 lb. 4 ozs. (566 g)'' or ''10 Packets, Total Net Wt. 1 lb. 4 ozs. (566 g).''

§ 500.28 Variety packages.

(a) A variety package is a package intended for retail sale, containing two or more individual packages or units of similar but not identical commodities. Commodities which are generically the same but which differ in weight or mass, measure, volume, appearance or quality are considered similar but not identical. The declaration of net quantity for a variety package will be expressed as follows:

(1) The number of units for each identical commodity followed by the weight or mass, volume, or measure of that commodity: and

(2) The total quantity by weight or mass, volume, measure, and count, as appropriate, of the variety package. The statement of total quantity shall appear as the last item in the declaration of net quantity and shall not be of greater prominence than other terms used.

Examples:

(i) ''2 sponges 4½ ins. × 4 ins. ×¾ in. (11.4 cm × 10.1 cm × 1.9 cm); 1 sponge 4½ ins. × 8 ins. ×¾ in. (11.4 cm × 20.3 cm × 1.9 cm); 4 sponges 2½ ins. × 4 ins. ×½ in. (6.3 cm × 10.1 cm × 1.2 cm)

Total: 7 sponges''.

(ii) ''2 soap bars Net Wt. 3.2 ozs. (90 g) each; 1 soap bar Net Wt. 5.0 ozs. (141 g).

Total: 3 bars Net Wt. 11.4 ozs. (323 g).''

(iii) Liquid Shoe Polish: ''1 Brown 3 fl. ozs. (88 mL); 1 Black 3 fl. ozs. (88 mL); 1 White 5 fl. ozs. (147 mL).

Total: 11 fl. ozs. (325 mL).''

(iv) Picnic Ware: ''34 spoons; 33 forks; 33 knives.

Total: 100 pieces.''

(b) When the individual units in a variety package are either packaged or labeled and are intended for retail sale as individual units, each unit shall be labeled in compliance with the applicable regulations under this part 500.

§ 500.29 Combination packages.

(a) A combination package is a package intended for retail sale, containing two or more individual packages or units of dissimilar commodities. The declaration of net quantity for a combination package will contain an expression of weight or mass, volume, measure or count or a combination, thereof, as appropriate for each individual package or unit: *Provided*, that the quantity statements for identical packages or units shall be combined.

Examples

(1) Lighter fluid and flints: ''2 cans—each 8 fl. ozs. (236 mL); 1 package—8 flints.''

(2) Sponges & Cleaner: ''2 sponges each 4 in. × 6 in. × 1 in. (10.1 × 15.2 × 2.5 cm); 1 box cleaner—Net Wt. 6 ozs. (170 g)''

(3) Picnic Pack: ''20 spoons, 10 knives and 10 forks, 10 2-ply napkins 10 ins. × 10 ins. (25.4 × 25.4 cm) 10 cups—6 fl. ozs. (177 mL)''.

(b) When the individual units in a combination package are either packaged or labeled and are intended for retail sale as individual units, each unit shall be in compliance with the applicable regulations under this part 500.

PART 501—EXEMPTIONS FROM REQUIREMENTS AND PROHIBITIONS UNDER PART 500

Sec.

501.1 Camera film.
501.2 Christmas tree ornaments.
501.3 Replacement bags for vacuum cleaners.
501.4 Chamois.
501.5 Paper table covers, bedsheets, pillowcases.
501.6 Cellulose sponges, irregular dimensions.
501.7 Candles.
501.8 Solder.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 80 Stat. 1298, 1299, 1300; 15 U.S.C. 1454, 1455.

§ 501.1 Camera film.

Camera film packaged and labeled for retail sale is exempt from the net quantity statement requirements of part 500 of this chapter which specify how measurement of commodities should be expressed, provided:

(a) The net quantity of contents on packages of movie film and bulk still film is expressed in terms of the number of lineal feet of usable film contained therein.

(b) The net quantity of contents on packages of still film is expressed in terms of the number of exposures the contents will provide. The length and width measurements of the individual exposures, expressed in millimeters or inches, are authorized as an optional statement. (Example: ''36 exposures, 36 × 24 mm. or 12 exposures, 2¼ × 2¼ inches''.)

[35 FR 75, Jan. 3, 1970]

§ 501.2 Christmas tree ornaments.

Christmas tree ornaments packaged and labeled for retail sale are exempt from the net quantity statement requirements of part 500 of this chapter which specify how the net quantity statement should be expressed, provided:

(a) The quantity of contents is expressed in terms of numerical count of the ornaments, and

(b) The ornaments are so packaged that the ornaments are clearly visible to the retail purchaser at the time of purchase.

[35 FR 9108, June 12, 1970]

§ 501.3 Replacement bags for vacuum cleaners.

Replacement bags for vacuum cleaners, packaged and labeled for retail sale are exempt from the requirements of § 500.15a of this chapter which specifies how measurement of container type commodities should be expressed, provided:

(a) The quantity of contents is expressed in terms of numerical count of the bags;

(b) A statement appears on the principal display panel of the package accurately identifying the make and model of the vacuum cleaner or cleaners in which the replacement bag is intended to effectively function;

(c) The name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor of the replacement bags, in addition to the requirements of § 500.5 of this chapter, appears on the principal display panel of the package.

[35 FR 10510, June 27, 1970]

§ 501.4 Chamois.

Chamois packaged or labeled for retail sale is exempt from the requirements of § 500.13 of this chapter which specifies how measurement of commodities by area measure should be expressed: *Provided:*

(a) The quantity of contents for full skins is expressed in terms of square feet with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fraction of the square foot.

(b) The quantity of contents for cut skins of any configuration is expressed in terms of square inches and fractions thereof. Where the area of a cut skin is at least one square foot or more, the statement of square inches shall be followed in parentheses by a declaration in square feet with any remainder in terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot.

[35 FR 19572, Dec. 24, 1970]

§ 501.5 Paper table covers, bedsheets, pillowcases.

Table covers, bedsheets, and pillowcases, fabricated from paper, are exempt from the requirements of § 500.12 of this chapter which specifies the expression of measurement of bidimensional commodities: *Provided*, That such commodities shall clearly present their actual length and width in terms of inches.

[35 FR 19077, Dec. 17, 1970]

§ 501.6 Cellulose sponges, irregular dimensions.

Variety packages of cellulose sponges of irregular dimensions, are exempted from the requirements of § 500.25 of this chapter, provided:

(a) Such sponges are packaged in transparent packages which afford visual inspection of the varied sizes, shapes, and irregular dimensions; and

(b) The quantity of contents declaration is expressed as a combination of count accompanied by the term *irregular dimensions*.

Example: ''10 Assorted Sponges—Irregular dimensions.''

[35 FR 18510, Dec. 5, 1970]

§ 501.7 Candles.

Tapered candles and irregularly shaped decorative candles which are either hand dipped or molded are exempt from the requirements of § 500.7 of this chapter which specifies that the net quantity of contents shall be expressed in terms of count and measure (e.g., length and diameter), to the extent that diameter of such candles need not be expressed. The requirements of § 500.7 of this chapter for these candles will be met by an expression of count and length or height in inches.

[36 FR 5690, Mar. 26, 1971]

§ 501.8 Solder.

Solder and brazing alloys containing precious metals when packaged and labeled for retail sale are exempt from the net quantity statement requirements of part 500 of this chapter which specify that all statements of weight shall be in terms of avoirdupois pound and ounce provided the net quantity declaration is stated in terms of the troy pound and ounce and the term *troy* is used in each declaration.

[37 FR 4429, Mar. 3, 1972]

PART 502—REGULATIONS UNDER SECTION 5(C) OF THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT

SCOPE

Sec.
502.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

DEFINITIONS

502.2 Terms defined.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

502.3 Prohibited acts.

CHARACTERIZATION OF PACKAGE SIZE

502.4–502.99 [Reserved]

RETAIL SALE PRICE REPRESENTATIONS

502.100 ''Cents-off'' representations.
502.101 Introductory offers.
502.102 ''Economy size''.

COMMON NAME AND INGREDIENT LISTING

502.200–502.299 [Reserved]

NONFUNCTIONAL-SLACK-FILL

502.300–502.399 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 80 Stat. 1299, 1300; 15 U.S.C. 1454, 1455.

SOURCE: 36 FR 12286, June 30, 1971, unless otherwise noted.

SCOPE

§ 502.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for labeling of consumer commodities with respect to use of package size characterizations, retail sale price representations, and common name and ingredient listing. Additionally, the regulations in this part establish criteria to prevent nonfunctional-slack-fill of packages containing consumer commodities.

DEFINITIONS

§ 502.2 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) The terms *Act*, *regulation* or *regulations*, *consumer commodity*, *package*,

label, *person*, *commerce*, *principal display panel*, and *random package* have the same meaning as those terms are defined under part 500 of this chapter.

(b) The term *packager* and *labeler* means any person engaged in the packaging or labeling of any consumer commodity for distribution in commerce or any person, other than a common carrier for hire, a contract carrier for hire, or a freight forwarder for hire, engaged in the distribution in commerce of any packaged or labeled consumer commodity; except persons engaged in business as wholesale or retail distributors of consumer commodities are not included unless such persons (1) are engaged in the packaging or labeling of such commodities, or (2) prescribe or specify by any means the manner in which such commodities are packaged or labeled.

(c) The terms *ordinary and customary* and *regular* when used with the term *price* means the price at which a consumer commodity has been openly and actively sold in the most recent and regular course of business in a particular market or trade area for a reasonably substantial period of time, i.e., a 30-day period. For consumer commodities which fluctuate in price, the ordinary and customary price shall be the lowest price at which any substantial sales were made during the aforesaid 30-day period.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

§ 502.3 Prohibited acts.

(a) No person engaged in the packaging or labeling of any consumer commodity for distribution in commerce, and no person (other than a common carrier for hire, a contract carrier for hire, or a freight forwarder for hire) engaged in the distribution in commerce of any packaged or labeled consumer commodity, shall distribute or cause to be distributed in commerce any such commodity if such commodity is contained in a package, or if there is affixed to that commodity a label, which does not conform to the provisions of the Act and of the regulations in this part.

(b) Persons engaged in business as wholesale or retail distributors of consumer commodities shall be subject to the Act and the regulations in this part to the extent that such persons are engaged in the packaging or labeling of consumer commodities, or prescribe or specify by any means the manner in which such consumer commodities are packaged or labeled.

CHARACTERIZATION OF PACKAGE SIZE

§§ 502.4–502.99 [Reserved]

RETAIL SALE PRICE REPRESENTATIONS

§ 502.100 "Cents-off" representations.

(a) The term *cents-off representation* means any printed matter consisting of the words ''cents-off'' or words of similar import, placed upon any packaging containing a consumer commodity or placed upon any label affixed to such commodity, stating or representing by implication that the commodity is being offered for sale at a price lower than the ordinary and customary retail sale price.

(b) Except as set forth in § 502.101 of this part, the package or label of a consumer commodity shall not have imprinted thereon by a packager or labeler a ''cents-off'' representation unless:

(1) The commodity has been sold by the packager or labeler at an ordinary and customary price in the most recent and regular course of business in the trade area in which the ''cents-off'' promotion is made, either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler.

(2) The packager or labeler sells the commodity so labeled (either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler) at a reduction from his ordinary and customary price, which reduction is at least equal to the amount of the ''cents-off'' representation imprinted on the commodity package or label.

(3) Each ''cents-off'' representation imprinted on the package or label is limited to a phrase which reflects that the price marked by the retailer represents the savings in the amount of the ''cents-off'' the retailer's regular

price, e.g., ''Price Marked is ____¢ Off the Regular Price''. ''Price Marked is ____ Cents-off the Regular Price of This Package''; provided, the package or label may in addition bear in the usual pricing spot a form reflecting a space for the regular price, the represented ''cents-off'' and a space for the price to be paid by the consumer.

(4) The packager or labeler who sells the commodity at retail displays the regular price, designated as the ''regular price'', clearly and conspicuously on the package or label of the commodity or on a sign, placard, or shelf-marker placed in a position contiguous to the retail display of the ''cents-off'' marked commodity, and the packager or labeler who does not sell at retail provides the retailer with a sign, placard, shelf-marker, or other device for the purpose of clearly and conspicuously displaying the retailers regular price, designated as ''regular price'', in a position contiguous to the ''cents-off'' marked commodity.

(5) The packager or labeler:

(i) Does not initiate more than three ''cents-off'' promotions of any single size commodity in the same trade area within a 12-month period;

(ii) Allows at least 30 days to lapse between ''cents-off'' promotions of any particular size packaged or labeled commodity in a specific trade area; and

(iii) Does not sell any single size commodity so labeled in a trade area for a duration in excess of 6 months within any 12-month period.

(6) Sales by the packager or labeler of any single size commodity so labeled in a trade area do not exceed in volume fifty percent (50%) of the total volume of sales of such size commodity in the same trade area during any 12-month period. The 12-month period used by the packager or labeler may be the calendar, fiscal, or market year provided the identical period is applied in this paragraph (b)(6) and paragraph (b)(5) of this section. Volume limits may be calculated on the basis of projections for the current year but shall not exceed 50 percent of the sales for the preceding year in the event actual sales are less than the projection for the current year.

(c) A packager or labeler will not make a ''cents-off'' promotion available in any circumstances where he knows or should have reason to know that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception or for frustration of value comparison, e.g., where the retailer charges a price which does not fully pass on to the consumers the represented price reduction or where the retailer fails to display the regular price in the display area of the ''cents-off'' marked product. Nothing in this rule, however, should be construed to authorize or condone the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a packager or labeler in situations where he does not sell to the public.

(d) A packager or labeler who sponsors a ''cents-off'' promotion shall prepare and maintain invoices or other records showing compliance with this section. The invoices or other records required by this section shall be open to inspection by duly authorized representatives of this Commission and shall be retained for a period of 1 year subsequent to the end of the year (calendar, fiscal, or market) in which the ''cents-off'' promotion occurs.

[36 FR 23057, Dec. 3, 1971]

§ 502.101 Introductory offers.

(a) The term *introductory offer* means any printed matter consisting of the words ''introductory offer'' or words of similar import, placed upon a package containing any new commodity or upon any label affixed to such new commodity, stating or representing by implication that such new commodity is offered for retail sale at a price lower than the anticipated ordinary and customary retail sale price.

(b) The package or label of a consumer commodity may not have imprinted thereon by a packager or labeler an introductory offer unless:

(1) The product contained in the package is new, has been changed in a functionally significant and substantial respect, or is being introduced into a trade area for the first time.

(2) The packager or labeler clearly and conspicuously qualifies each offer on a package or label with the phrase ''Introductory Offer.''

(3) The packager or labeler does not sell any commodity so labeled in a trade area for a duration in excess of 6 months.

(4) At the time of making the introductory offer promotion, the packagers or labeler intends in good faith to offer the commodity, alone, at the anticipated ordinary and customary price for a reasonably substantial period of time following the duration of the introductory offer promotion.

(c) The package or label of a consumer commodity shall not have imprinted thereon by a packager or labeler an introductory offer in the form of a ''cents-off'' representation unless, in addition to the requirements in paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) The packager or labeler clearly and conspicuously and in immediate conjunction with the phrase ''Introductory Offer'' imprints the phrase ''___ cents-off the after introductory offer price''.

(2) The packager or labeler sells the commodity so labeled (either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler) at a reduction from his anticipated ordinary customary price, which reduction is at least equal to the amount of the reduction from the after introductory offer price representation on the commodity package or label.

(d) A packager or labeler will not make an introductory offer with a ''cents-off'' representation available in any circumstance where he knows or should have reason to know that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception or for frustration of value comparison, e.g., where the retailer charges a price which does not fully pass on to consumers the represented price reduction. Nothing in this rule, however, should be construed to authorize or condone the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a packager or labeler.

(e) A packager or labeler who sponsors an introductory offer shall prepare and maintain invoices or other records showing compliance with this section. The invoices or other records required by this section shall be open to inspection by duly authorized representatives of this Commission and shall be retained for a period of 1 year subsequent to the period of the introductory offer.

§ 502.102 "Economy size."

(a) The term *economy size* means any printed matter consisting of the words ''economy size,'' ''economy pack,'' ''budget pack,'' ''bargain size,'' ''value size,'' or words of similar import placed upon any package containing any consumer commodity or placed upon any label affixed to such commodity, stating or representing directly or by implication that a retail sale price advantage is accorded the purchaser thereof by reason of the size of that package or the quantity of its contents.

(b) The package or label of a consumer commodity may not have imprinted thereon an ''economy size'' representation unless:

(1) The packager or labeler at the same time offers the same brand of that commodity in at least one other packaged size or labeled form.

(2) The packager or labeler offers only one packaged or labeled form of that brand of commodity labeled with an ''economy size'' representation.

(3) The packager or labeler sells the commodity labeled with an ''economy size'' representation (either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler), at a price per unit of weight, volume, measure, or count which is substantially reduced (i.e., at least 5 percent) from the actual price of all other packaged or labeled units of the same brand of that commodity offered simultaneously.

(c) A packager or labeler will not make an ''economy size'' package available in any circumstances where he knows that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception, e.g., where the retailer charges a price which does not pass on to the consumer the substantial reduction in cost per unit initially granted by the packager or labeler. Nothing in this rule, however, should be construed to authorize or condone the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a packager or labeler.

(d) A packager or labeler who sponsors an ''economy size'' package shall prepare and maintain invoices or other records showing compliance with paragraph (b) of this section. The invoices

or other records required by this section shall be open to inspection by duly authorized representatives of this Commission and shall be retained for one year.

COMMON NAME AND INGREDIENT LISTING

§§ 502.200–502.299 [Reserved]

NONFUNCTIONAL-SLACK-FILL

§§ 502.300–502.399 [Reserved]

PART 503—STATEMENTS OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATION

Sec.
503.1 Interpretations.
503.2 Status of specific items under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
503.3 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.
503.4 Net quantity of contents, numerical count.
503.5 Interpretation of the definition of ''consumer commodity'' as contained in section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
503.6 Packagers' duty to withhold availability of packages imprinted with retail sale price representations.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 4, 6, 10, 80 Stat. 1297, 1999, 1300, 1301; 15 U.S.C. 1453, 1455, 1456.

§ 503.1 Interpretations.

The regulations in parts 500, 501, and 502 of this chapter are necessarily general in application and requests for formal rulings, statements of policy or interpretations shall be addressed to the Secretary of the Commission for consideration. Statements of policy or interpretations binding on the Commission will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. However, technical questions not involving policy consideration may be answered by the staff.

[36 FR 23058, Dec. 3, 1971]

§ 503.2 Status of specific items under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

Recent questions submitted to the Commission concerning whether certain articles, products or commodities are included under the definition of the term *consumer commodity*, as contained in section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, have been considered in the light of the Commission's interpretation of that term as set forth in § 503.5 of this part as follows:

(a) The Commission is of the opinion that the following commodities or classes of commodities are not ''consumer commodities'' within the meaning of the Act.

Antifreeze.
Artificial flowers and parts.
Automotive accessories.
Automotive chemical products.
Automotive replacement parts.
Bicycle tires and tubes.
Books.
Brushes (bristle, nylon, etc.).
Brooms and mops.
Cameras.
Chinaware.
Christmas light sets.
Cigarette lighters.
Clothespins (wooden, plastic).
Compacts and mirrors.
Diaries and calendars.
Flower seeds.
Footwear.
Garden tools.
Gift ties and tapes.
Glasses and glassware.
Gloves (work type).
Greeting cards.
Hand tools.
Handicraft and sewing thread.
Hardware.
Household cooking utensils.
Inks.
Jewelry.
Luggage.
Magnetic recording tape.
Metal pails.
Motor oil (automobile).
Mouse and rat traps.
Musical instruments.
Paintings and wall plaques.
Photo albums.
Pictures.
Plastic table cloths, plastic placement and plastic shelf paper.
Rubber gloves (household).
Safety flares.
Safety pins.
School supplies.
Sewing accessories.
Silverware, stainless steelware and pewterware.
Small arms ammunition.
Smoking pipes.
Souvenirs.
Sporting goods.
Toys.
Typewriter ribbons.
Woodenware.

(b) The Commission is of the opinion that the following commodities or

classes of commodities are ''consumer commodities'' within the meaning of the Act:

Adhesives and sealants.
Aluminum foil cooking utensils.
Aluminum wrap.
Camera supplies.
Candles.
Christmas decorations.
Cordage.
Disposable diapers.
Dry cell batteries.
Light bulbs.
Liquified petroleum gas for other than heating and cooking.
Lubricants for home use.
Photographic chemicals.
Pressure sensitive tapes, excluding gift tapes.
Solder.
Solvents and cleaning fluids for home use.
Sponges and chamois.
Waxes for home use.

[35 FR 6185, Apr. 16, 1970]

§ 503.3 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

To clarify the identity of a manufacturer, packer, or distributor for the purpose of § 500.5 of this chapter, the following represents the opinions of the Commission.

(a) A manufacturer of a bulk product who supplies the product to a contract packager and permits his bulk product to be packaged by the contract packager remains the manufacturer of the commodity, if the contract packager does not perform any act other than package filling and labeling.

(b)(1) A manufacturer of a bulk product who supplies the bulk to a contract packager but permits the packager to modify the bulk commodity by the addition of any substance which changes the identity of the bulk, ceases to be the manufacturer of the consumer commodity. At that point, if the manufacturer of the bulk elects to use his name on the label of the consumer commodity, his name should be qualified to show ''Distributed by _____'', or ''Manufactured for _____''.

(2) The identity of a bulk substance received by a contract packager is changed if the packager, for example, adds a propellant as in the case of an aerosol, or adds a solvent as in the case of a paint, or blends two or more components, or changes the physical state as in the case of a liquid being changed to a gel or a semisolid being changed to a solid.

(c) A person or firm who supplies a formula and/or specifications to a contract packager but who takes no part in the actual production of the consumer commodity is not the manufacturer of the consumer commodity for the purpose of § 500.5(a) of this chapter. This is true whether the person or firm who supplies the formula or specifications, or both, also supplies the raw materials which are to be reacted, mixed, or otherwise modified to produce the consumer commodity.

(d) A corporation which wholly owns a manufacturing subsidiary which retains its separate corporate identity, is not the manufacturer of the consumer commodities manufactured by the wholly owned subsidiary, but must qualify its name if it elects to use its name on the label. Such qualification may be ''Manufactured for _____'', ''Distributed by _____'', or ''Manufactured by _____ (XYZ, Inc., City, State, Zip Code, a subsidiary of ABC, Inc.)''.

[34 FR 4956, Mar. 7, 1969, as amended at 34 FR 11199, July 3, 1969]

§ 503.4 Net quantity of contents, numerical count.

To clarify the requirement for declaration of net quantity in terms of count for the purpose of §§ 500.6 and 500.7 of this chapter, the following interpretation is rendered.

(a) When a consumer commodity is properly measured in terms of count only, or in terms of count and weight, volume, area, or dimension, the regulations are interpreted not to require the declaration of the net content as ''one'', provided the statement of identity clearly expresses the fact that only one unit is contained in the package. Thus the unit synthetic sponge, the unit light bulb, and the unit dry cell battery do not require a net quantity statement of ''one sponge,'' ''one light bulb,'' or ''one dry cell battery.'' However, there still exists the necessity to provide a net quantity statement to specify weight, volume, area, or dimensions when such are required. For example, the synthetic sponge

which is packaged, requires dimensions such as ''5 in. × 3 in. × 1 in.'' A multicomponent package or a package containing two or more units of the same commodity shall bear the net quantity statement in terms of count, and weight, volume, area, or dimensions as required. This interpretation does not preclude the option to enumerate a unit count on a single packaged commodity if so desired.

(b) [Reserved]

[34 FR 18087, Nov. 8, 1969]

§ 503.5 Interpretation of the definition of "consumer commodity" as contained in section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

(a) Section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act defines the term *consumer commodity* in four classifications. These are:

(1) Any food, drug, device, or cosmetic;

(2) And any other article, product, or commodity of any kind or class which is customarily produced or distributed for sale through retail sales agencies or instrumentalities.

(i) For consumption by individuals and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such consumption.

(ii) For use by individuals for purposes of personal care and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such use.

(iii) For use by individuals in the performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such use.

(b) Section 10(a) then expressly excludes (1) meats, poultry, and tobacco, (2) economic poisons and biologics for animals, (3) prescription drugs, (4) alcoholic beverages, and (5) agricultural and vegetable seeds.

(c) Pursuant to sections 5 and 7 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, the authority to promulgate regulations and to enforce the Act as to any food, drug, device, or cosmetic has been delegated to the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare and as to any other ''consumer commodity'' to the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) As to these articles, products, or commodities subject to regulation by the Federal Trade Commission, the legislative history of the Act demonstrates the intent of Congress, for the reasons stated therein, to place the following categories outside the scope of the definition of ''consumer commodity'':

(1) Durable articles or commodities;

(2) Textiles or items of apparel;

(3) Any household appliance, equipment, or furnishing, including feather and down-filled products, synthetic-filled bed pillows, mattress pads and patchwork quilts, comforters and decorative curtains;

(4) Bottled gas for heating or cooking purposes;

(5) Paints and kindred products;

(6) Flowers, fertilizer, and fertilizer materials, plants or shrubs, garden and lawn supplies;

(7) Pet care supplies;

(8) Stationery and writing supplies, gift wraps, fountain pens, mechanical pencils, and kindred products.

(e) The articles, products, or commodities that are within the terms of section 10(a) of the Act and subject to regulation by the Federal Trade Commission are either expendable commodities for consumption by individuals, expendable commodities used for personal care, or expendable commodities used for household services. The primary terms in section 10(a) for defining these categories are:

(1) Consumption by individuals;

(2) Use by individuals;

(3) Personal care by individuals;

(4) Performances of services ordinarily rendered within the household by individuals;

(5) Consumed or expended.

(f) These terms are defined as follows:

(1) *Consumption by individuals.* This term as it is used in section 10(a) means the using up of an article, product, or commodity by an individual.

(2) *Use by individuals.* This term as it is used in section 10(a) means the employment or application of an article, product, or commodity by an individual.

(3) *Personal care by individuals.* This term as it is used in section 10(a) means that activity of an individual which is concerned with protecting, enhancing, and providing for the general

cleanliness, health, or appearance of the individual.

(4) *Performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household by individuals.* These terms as they are used in section 10(a) mean: The term *household* refers to the interior and exterior of dwellings or residences occupied by individuals, including the surrounding premises. The term *performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household* means the doing of any activity by an individual within the above-described area which is normally done in connection with the maintenance and occupation of the above-described area as a habitation for individuals.

(5) *Consumed or expended.* These terms as they are used in section 10(a) mean (i) the immediate destruction or extinction of an article, product, or commodity, or of the part used; or (ii) the substantial diminution in the quantity, quality or utility of an article, product, or commodity which results from usage upon one or several occasions over a comparatively short period of time.

(g) The foregoing definition serves to amplify the definition of ''consumer commodity'' supplied by Congress in section 10(a) of the Act. As questions arise as to whether specific articles, products, or commodities are included in the above definition, the Commission will consider, among other things, the Congressional policy declared in section 2 of the Act, namely, that packages and labels should enable consumers to obtain accurate information as to the quantity of contents and should facilitate value comparisons. That is, in making its determinations of inclusions and exclusions under this definition, the Commission will consider the requirements of both the Act and the pertinent regulations and in that connection will regard as one criterion the extent to which the disclosures required on ''consumer commodities'' are material to a consumer's selection of a particular article, product, or commodity. Interpretative rulings in such instances will be made public, and can be expected to further contribute to the development of clearer delineation of the scope of the term ''consumer commodity''.

(h) With respect to articles, products, or commodities included within the definition of ''consumer commodities'', the Commission will consider requests for exemptions in accordance with section 5(b) of the Act and § 500.3(e) of this chapter, and will make public its rulings on all such requests.

[34 FR 12945, Aug. 9, 1969]

§ 503.6 Packagers' duty to withhold availability of packages imprinted with retail sale price representations.

To clarify the requirements, under part 502 of this chapter, that a packager or labeler will not make packages marked with retail sale price representations available in any circumstance where he knows or should have reason to know that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception or for frustration of value comparison, the following represents the opinions of the Commission:

(a) Details of a plan to provide special packaging or special package sizes bearing retail sale price representations should contain the condition that customers will not be provided with such packages unless they resell the package at a price which fully passes on to the purchasers the represented savings or sale price advantage.

(b) A packager or labeler who, in good faith, takes reasonable and prudent measures to verify the performance of his customers will be deemed to have satisfied his obligation under the regulations. If the packager has taken such steps, the fact that a particular customer has failed to resell the packages at a price which fully passes on to the purchaser the represented savings or sale price advantage shall not alone place a seller in violation of the regulations.

(c) Any packager or labeler who determines that a customer does not intend to fulfill or has not fulfilled the conditions of an offer should immediately refrain from further sale under that offer to the customer. In situations where proper fulfillment of the conditions of an offer are in question, the Commission will resolve the issue after appropriate investigation of the facts submitted.

[36 FR 23058, Dec. 3, 1971]

SUBCHAPTER F—THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

PART 600—STATEMENTS OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATIONS

Sec.
600.1 Authority and purpose.
600.2 Legal effect.
APPENDIX TO PART 600—COMMENTARY ON THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1681s and 16 CFR 1.73.

SOURCE: 55 FR 18808, May 4, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

§ 600.1 Authority and purpose.

(a) *Authority*. This part is issued by the Commission pursuant to the provisions of the Fair Credit Reporting Act. Pub. L. 91–508, approved October 26, 1970. 84 Stat. 1127–36 (15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq*).

(b) *Purpose*. The purpose of this part is to clarify and consolidate statements of general policy or interpretations in a commentary in the appendix to this part. The Commentary will serve as guidance to consumer reporting agencies, their customers, and consumer representatives. The Fair Credit Reporting Act requires that the manner in which consumer reporting agencies provide information be fair and equitable to the consumer with regard to the confidentiality, accuracy, and proper use of such information. The Commentary will enable interested parties to resolve their questions more easily, present a more comprehensive treatment of interpretations and facilitate compliance with the Fair Credit Reporting Act in accordance with Congressional intent.

§ 600.2 Legal effect.

(a) The interpretations in the Commentary are not trade regulation rules or regulations, and, as provided in § 1.73 of the Commission's rules, they do not have the force or effect of statutory provisions.

(b) The regulations of the Commission relating to the administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act are found in subpart H of 16 CFR part 1 (§§ 1.71–1.73).

APPENDIX TO PART 600—COMMENTARY ON THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

INTRODUCTION

1. *Official status*. This Commentary contains interpretations of the Federal Trade Commission (Commission) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA). It is a guideline intended to clarify how the Commission will construe the FCRA in light of Congressional intent as reflected in the statute and its legislative history. The Commentary does not have the force or effect of regulations or statutory provisions, and its contents may be revised and updated as the Commission considers necessary or appropriate.

2. *Status of previous interpretations*. The Commentary primarily addresses issues discussed in the Commission's earlier formal interpretations of the FCRA (16 CFR 600.1–600.8), which are hereby superseded, in the staff's manual entitled ''Compliance With the Fair Credit Reporting Act'' (the current edition of which was published in May 1973, and revised in January 1977 and March 1979), and in informal staff opinion letters responding to public requests for interpretations, and it also reflects the results of the Commission's FCRA enforcement program. It is intended to synthesize the Commission's views and give clear advice on important issues. The Commentary sets forth some interpretations that differ from those previously expressed by the Commission or its staff, and is intended to supersede all prior formal Commission interpretations, informal staff opinion letters, and the staff manual cited above.

3. *Statutory references*. Reference to several different provisions of the FCRA is frequently required in order to make a complete analysis of an issue. For various sections and subsections of the FCRA, the Commentary discusses the most important and common overlapping references under the heading ''Relation to other (sub)sections.''

4. *Issuance of staff interpretations*. The Commission will revise and update the Commentary as it deems necessary, based on the staff's experience in responding to public inquiries about, and enforcing, the FCRA. The Commission welcomes input from interested industry and consumer groups and other public parties on the Commentary and on issues discussed in it. Staff will continue to respond to requests for informal staff interpretations. In proposing revisions of the Commentary, staff will consider and, where appropriate, recommend that the Commentary incorporate issues raised in correspondence and other public contacts, as well as in connection with the Commission's enforcement

efforts. Therefore, a party may raise an issue for inclusion in future editions of the Commentary without making any formal submission or request to that effect. However, requests for formal Commission interpretations of the FCRA may also still be made pursuant to the procedures set forth in the Commission's Rules (16 CFR 1.73).

5. *Commentary citations to FCRA*. The Commentary should be used in conjunction with the text of the statute. In some cases, the Commentary includes an abbreviated description of the statute, rather than the full text, as a preamble to discussion of issues pertaining to various sections and subsections. These summary statements of the law should not be used as a substitute for the statutory text.

Section 601—Short Title

''This title may be cited as the Fair Credit Reporting Act.''

The Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) is title VI of the Consumer Credit Protection Act, which also includes other Federal statutes relating to consumer credit, such as the Truth in Lending Act (title I), the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (Title VII), and the Fair Debt Collection Practices Act (title VIII).

Section 602—Findings and Purpose

Section 602 recites the Congressional findings regarding the significant role of consumer reporting agencies in the nation's financial system, and states that the basic purpose of the FCRA is to require consumer reporting agencies to adopt reasonable procedures for providing information to credit grantors, insurers, employers and others in a manner that is fair and equitable to the consumer with regard to confidentiality, accuracy, and the proper use of such information.

Section 603—Definitions and Rules of Construction

Section 603(a) states that ''definitions and rules of construction set forth in this section are applicable for the purposes of this title.''

Section 603(b) defines *person* to mean ''any individual, partnership, corporation, trust, estate, cooperative, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency or other entity.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

Certain ''persons'' must comply with the Act. The term *consumer reporting agency* is defined in section 603(f) to include certain ''persons.'' Section 619 subjects any ''person'' who knowingly and willfully obtains information from a consumer reporting agency on a consumer under false pretenses to criminal sanctions. Requirements relating to report users apply to ''persons.'' Section 606 imposes disclosure obligations on ''persons'' who obtain investigative reports or cause them to be prepared. Section 615(c) uses the term *person* to denote those subject to disclosure obligations under sections 615(a) and 615(b).

2. Examples

The term ''person'' includes universities, creditors, collection agencies, insurance companies, private investigators, and employers.

Section 603(c) defines the term *consumer* to mean ''an individual.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term ''consumer'' denotes an individual entitled to the Act's protections. Consumer reports, as defined in section 603(d), are reports about consumers. A ''consumer'' is entitled to obtain disclosures under section 609 from consumer reporting agencies and to take certain steps that require such agencies to follow procedures in section 611, concerning disputes about the completeness or accuracy of items of information in the consumer's file. Disclosures required under section 606 by one procuring an investigative report must be made to the ''consumer'' on whom the report is sought. Notifications required by section 615 must be provided to ''consumers.'' A ''consumer'' is the party entitled to sue for willful noncompliance (section 616) or negligent noncompliance (section 617) with the Act's requirements.

2. General

The definition includes only a natural person. It does not include artificial entities (e.g., partnerships, corporations, trusts, estates, cooperatives, associations) or entities created by statute (e.g., governments, governmental subdivisions or agencies).

Section 603(d) defines *consumer report* to mean ''any written, oral, or other communication of any information by a consumer reporting agency bearing on a consumer's credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living which is used or expected to be used or collected in whole or in part for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumer's eligibility for (1) credit or insurance to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) employment purposes, or (3) other purposes authorized under Section 604'' (with three specific exclusions).

1. Relation to ''Consumer Reporting Agency''

To be a ''consumer report,'' the information must be furnished by a ''consumer reporting agency'' as that term is defined in section 603(f). Conversely, the term ''consumer reporting agency'' is restricted to persons that regularly engage in assembling or evaluating consumer credit information or

other information on consumers for the purpose of furnishing ''consumer reports'' to third parties. In other words, the terms ''consumer reporting agency'' in section 603(f) and ''consumer report'' in section 603 (d)) are mutually dependent and must therefore be construed together. For example, information is not a ''consumer report'' if the person furnishing the information is clearly not a ''consumer reporting agency'' (e.g., if the person furnishing the information does not regularly furnish such information for monetary fees or on a cooperative nonprofit basis).

2. Relation to the Applicability of the Act

If a report is not a ''consumer report,'' then the Act does not usually apply to it.[1] For example, because a commercial credit report is not a report on a consumer, it is not a ''consumer report''. Therefore, the user need not notify the subject of the name and address of the credit bureau when taking adverse action, and the provider need not omit ''obsolete'' information, as would be required if the FCRA applied.

3. Report Concerning a ''Consumer's'' Attributes and History

A. *General*. A ''consumer report'' is a report on a ''consumer'' to be used for certain purposes involving that ''consumer.''

B. *Artificial entities*. Reports about corporations, associations, and other collective entities are not consumer reports, and the Act does not apply to them.

C. *Reports on businesses for business purposes*. Reports used to determine the eligibility of a business, rather than a consumer, for certain purposes, are not consumer reports and the FCRA does not apply to them, even if they contain information on individuals, because Congress did not intend for the FCRA to apply to reports used for commercial purposes (see 116 Cong. Rec. 36572 (1970) (Conf. Report on H.R. 15073)).

4. ''(C)redit Worthiness, Credit Standing, Credit Capacity, Character, General Reputation, Personal Characteristics, or Mode of Living * * *''

A. *General*. To be a ''consumer report,'' the information must bear on at least one of the seven characteristics listed in this definition.

B. *Credit guides*. Credit guides are listings, furnished by credit bureaus to credit grantors, that rate how well consumers pay their bills. Such guides are a series of ''consumer reports,'' because they contain information which is used for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumers' eligibility for credit. However, if they are coded (by identification such as social security number, driver's license number, or bank account number) so that the consumer's identity is not disclosed, they are not ''consumer reports'' until decoded. (See discussion of uncoded credit guides under section 604(3)(A), item 8 *infra*.)

C. *Motor vehicle reports*. Motor vehicle reports are distributed by state motor vehicle departments, generally to insurance companies upon request, and usually reveal a consumer's entire driving record, including arrests for driving offenses. Such reports are consumer reports when they are sold by a Department of Motor Vehicles for insurance underwriting purposes and contain information bearing on the consumer's ''personal characteristics,'' such as arrest information. The Act's legislative history indicates Congress intended the Act to cover mutually beneficial exchanges of information between commercial enterprises rather than between governmental entities. Accordingly, these reports are not consumer reports when provided to other governmental authorities involved in licensing or law enforcement activities. (See discussion titled ''State Departments of Motor Vehicles,'' under section 603(f), item 10 *infra*.)

D. *Consumer lists*. A list of the names of creditworthy individuals, or of individuals on whom credit bureaus have derogatory information, is a series of ''consumer reports'' because the information bears on credit worthiness.

E. *Public record information*. A report solely of public record information is not a ''consumer report'' unless that information is provided by a consumer reporting agency, is collected or used for the purposes identified in section 603(d), and bears on at least one of the seven characteristics listed in the definition. Public record information relating to records of arrest, or the institution or disposition of civil or criminal proceedings, bears on one or more of these characteristics.

F. *Name and address*. A report limited solely to the consumer's name and address alone, with no connotations as to credit worthiness or other characteristics, does not constitute a ''consumer report,'' if it does not bear on any of the seven factors.

G. *Rental characteristics*. Reports about rental characteristics (e.g., consumers' evictions, rental payment histories, treatment of premises) are consumer reports, because they relate to character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living.

[1] However, a creditor denying a consumer's application based on a report from a ''third party'' must give the disclosure required by section 615(b).

5. ''(U)sed or Expected To Be Used or Collected in Whole or in Part for the Purpose of Serving as a Factor in Establishing the Consumer's Eligibility * * *''

A. *Law enforcement bulletins.* Bulletins that are limited to a series of descriptions, sometimes accompanied by photographs, of individuals who are being sought by law enforcement authorities for alleged crimes are not a series of ''consumer reports'' because they have not been collected for use in evaluating consumers for credit, insurance, employment or other consumer purposes, and it cannot reasonably be anticipated they will be used for such purposes.

B. *Directories.* Telephone directories and city directories, to the extent they only provide information regarding name, address and phone number, marital status, home ownership, and number of children, are not ''consumer reports,'' because the information is not used or expected to be used in evaluating consumers for credit, insurance, employment or other purposes and does not reflect on credit standing, credit worthiness, or any of the other factors. A list of names of individuals with checking accounts is not a series of consumer reports because the information does not bear on credit worthiness or any of the other factors. A trade directory, such as a list of all insurance agents licensed to do business in a state, is not a series of consumer reports because it is commercial information that would be used for commercial purposes.

C. *Use of prior consumer report in preparation.* A report that would not otherwise be a consumer report may be a consumer report, notwithstanding the purpose for which it is furnished, if it includes a prior consumer report or information from consumer report files, because it would contain some information ''collected in whole or in part'' for consumer reporting purposes. For example, an insurance claims report would be a consumer report if a consumer report (or information from a consumer report) were used to prepare it. (See discussion, *infra,* in item 6–C under this subsection.)

D. *Use of reports for purposes not anticipated by the reporting party.* The question arises whether a report that is not otherwise a consumer report is subject to the FCRA because the recipient subsequently uses the report for a permissible purpose. If the reporting party's procedures are such that it neither knows of nor should reasonably anticipate such use, the report is not a consumer report. If a reporting party has taken reasonable steps to insure that the report is not used for such a purpose, and if it neither knows of, nor can reasonably anticipate such use, the report should not be deemed a consumer report by virtue of uses beyond the reporting party's control. A reporting party might establish that it does not reasonably anticipate such use of the report by requiring the recipient to certify that the report will not be used for one of the purposes listed in section 604. (Such procedure may be compared to the requirement in section 607(a), discussed *infra,* that consumer reporting agencies furnishing consumer reports require that prospective users certify the purposes for which the information is sought and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose.) For example, a claims reporting service could use such a certification to avoid having its insurance claims reports deemed ''consumer reports'' if the report recipient/insurer were to use the report later for ''underwriting purposes'' under section 604(3)(C), such as terminating insurance coverage or raising the premium.

6. ''(E)stablishing the Consumer's Eligibility for (1) Credit or Insurance To Be Used Primarily for Personal, Family or Household Purposes, or (2) Employment Purposes, or (3) Other Purposes Authorized Under Section 604''

A. *Relation to section 604.* Because section 603(d)(3) refers to ''purposes authorized under section 604'' (often described as ''permissible purposes'' of consumer reports), some of which overlap purposes enumerated in section 603 (e.g., 603(d)(1) and 603(d)(2)), sections 603 and 604 must be construed together, to determine what are ''consumer reports'' and ''permissible purposes'' under the two sections. See discussion *infra,* under section 604.

B. *Commercial credit or insurance.* A report on a consumer for credit or insurance in connection with a business operated by the consumer is not a ''consumer report,'' and the Act does not apply to it.

C. *Insurance claims reports.* (It is assumed that information in prior consumer reports is not used in claims reports. See discussion, *supra,* in item 5–C under this subsection.) Reports provided to insurers by claims investigation services solely to determine the validity of insurance claims are not consumer reports, because section 604(3)(C) specifically sets forth only underwriting (not claims) as an insurance-related purpose, and section 603(d)(1) deals specifically with eligibility for insurance and no other insurance-related purposes. To construe section 604(3)(E) as including reports furnished in connection with insurance claims would be to disregard the specific language of sections 604(3)(C) and 603(d)(1).

D. *Scope of employment purpose.* A report that is used or is expected to be used or collected in whole or in part in connection with establishing an employee's eligibility for ''promotion, reassignment or retention,'' as well as to evaluate a job applicant, is a consumer report because sections 603(d)(2) and 604(3)(B) use the term ''employment purposes,'' which section 603(h) defines to include these situations.

E. *Bad check lists*. A report indicating that an individual has issued bad checks, provided by printed list or otherwise, to a business for use in determining whether to accept consumers' checks tendered in transactions primarily for personal, family or household purposes, is a consumer report. The information furnished bears on consumers' character, general reputation and personal characteristics, and it is used or expected to be used in connection with business transactions involving consumers.

F. *Tenant screening reports*. A report used to determine whether to rent a residence to a consumer is a consumer report, because it is used for a business transaction that the consumer wishes to enter into for personal, family or household purposes.

7. Exclusions From the Definition of ''Consumer Report''

A. *''(Any) reports containing information solely as to transactions or experiences between the consumer and the person making the report;''*—(1) *Examples of Sources*. The exemption applies to reports limited to transactions or experiences between the consumer and the entity making the report (e.g., retail stores, hospitals, present or former employers, banks, mortgage servicing companies, credit unions, or universities).

(2) *Information beyond the reporting entity's own transactions or experiences with the consumer*. The exemption does not apply to reports by these entities of information beyond their own transactions or experiences with the consumer. An example is a creditor's or an insurance company's report of the reasons it cancelled credit or insurance, based on information from an outside source.

(3) Opinions Concerning Transactions or Experiences

The exemption applies to reports that are not limited to the facts, but also include opinions (e.g., use of the term ''slow pay'' to describe a consumer's transactions with a creditor), as long as the facts underlying the opinions involve only transactions or experiences between the consumer and the reporting entity.

B. *''(A)ny authorization or approval of a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly by the issuer of a credit card or similar device;''*—(1) *General*. The exemption applies to a credit or debit card issuer's written, oral, or electronic communication of its decision whether or not to authorize a charge, in response to a request from a merchant or other party that the consumer has asked to honor the card.

C. *''(A)ny report in which a person who has been requested by a third party to make a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly to the consumer conveys his decision with respect to such request, if the third party advises the consumer of the name and address of the person to whom the request was made and such person makes the disclosures to the consumer required under section 615.''*—(1) *General*. The exemption covers retailers' attempts to obtain credit for their individual customers from an outside source (such as a bank or a finance company). The communication by the financial institution of its decision whether to extend credit is not a ''consumer report'' *if* the retailer informs the customer of the name and address of the financial institution to which the application or contract is offered *and* the financial institution makes the disclosures required by section 615 of the Act. Such disclosures must be made only when there is a denial of, or increase in the charge for, credit or insurance. (See discussion of section 615, item 10, *infra*.)

(2) *Information included in the exemption*. The exemption is not limited to a simple ''yes'' or ''no'' response, but includes the information constituting the basis for the credit denial, because it applies to ''any report.''

(3) *How third party creditors can insure that the exemption applies*. Creditors, who are requested by dealers or merchants to make such specific extensions of credit, can assure that communication of their decision to the dealer or merchant will be exempt under this section from the term ''consumer report,'' by having written agreements that require such parties to inform the consumer of the creditor's name and address and by complying with any applicable provisions of section 615.

Section 603(e) defines ''investigative consumer report'' as ''a consumer report or portion thereof in which information on a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living is obtained through personal interviews with neighbors, friends, or associates of the consumer reported on or with others with whom he is acquainted or who may have knowledge concerning any such items of information. However, such information shall not include specific factual information on a consumer's credit record obtained directly from a creditor of the consumer or from a consumer reporting agency when such information was obtained directly from a creditor of the consumer or from the consumer.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term *investigative consumer report* denotes a subset of ''consumer report'' for which the Act imposes additional requirements on recipients and consumer reporting agencies. Persons procuring ''investigative consumer reports'' must make certain disclosures to the consumers who are the subjects of the reports, as required by section 606. Consumer reporting agencies must comply with section 614, when furnishing ''investigative consumer reports'' containing adverse information that is not a matter of

public record. Consumer reporting agencies making disclosure to consumers pursuant to section 609 are not required to disclose ''sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose.''

2. General

An ''investigative consumer report'' is a type of ''consumer report'' that contains information that is both related to a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living and obtained by personal interviews with the consumer's neighbors, friends, associates or others.

3. Types of Sources Interviewed

A report consisting of information from any third party concerning the subject's character (reputation, etc.) may be an investigative consumer report because the phrase ''obtained through personal interviews * * * with others'' includes any source that is a third party interviewee. A report containing interview information obtained solely from the subject is not an ''investigative consumer report.''

4. Telephone Interviews

A consumer report that contains information on a consumer's ''character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living'' obtained through telephone interviews with third parties is an ''investigative consumer report,'' because ''personal interviews'' includes interviews conducted by telephone as well as in person.

5. Identity of Interviewer

A consumer report is an ''investigative consumer report'' if personal interviews are used to obtain information reported on a consumer's ''character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living,'' regardless of who conducted the interview.

6. Noninvestigative Information in ''Investigative Consumer Reports''

An ''investigative consumer report'' may also contain noninvestigative information, because the definition includes reports, a ''portion'' of which are investigative reports.

7. Exclusions From ''Investigative Consumer Reports''

A report that consists solely of information gathered from observation by one who drives by the consumer's residence is not an ''investigative consumer report,'' because it contains no information from ''personal interviews.''

Section 603(f) defines ''consumer reporting agency'' as ''any person which, for monetary fees, dues, or on a cooperative nonprofit basis, regularly engages in whole or in part in the practice of assembling or evaluating consumer credit information or other information on consumers for the purpose of furnishing consumer reports to third parties, and which uses any means or facility of interstate commerce for the purpose of preparing or furnishing consumer reports.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

A. *Duties imposed on ''consumer reporting agencies.''* The Act imposes a number of duties on ''consumer reporting agencies.'' They must have permissible purposes to furnish consumer reports (section 604), avoid furnishing obsolete adverse information in certain consumer reports (sections 605, 607(a)), adopt reasonable procedures to assure privacy (section 604, 607(a)), and accuracy (section 607(b)) of consumer reports, provide only limited disclosures to governmental agencies (section 608), provide consumers certain disclosures upon request (sections 609 and 610) at no cost or for a reasonable charge (section 612), follow certain procedures if a consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his file (section 611), and follow certain procedures in reporting public record information for employment purposes or when reporting adverse information other than public record information in investigative consumer reports (sections 613, 614).

B. *Relation to ''consumer reports.''* The term *consumer reporting agency,* as defined in section 603(f), includes certain persons who assemble or evaluate information on individuals for the purpose of furnishing ''consumer reports'' to third parties. Conversely, section 603(d) defines the term *consumer report* to mean the communication of certain information by a ''consumer reporting agency.'' In other words, the terms ''consumer report'' in section 603(d) and ''consumer reporting agency'' as defined in section 603(f) are defined in a mutually dependent manner and must therefore be construed together. For example, a party is not a ''consumer reporting agency'' if it provides only information that is excepted from the definition of ''consumer report'' under section 603(d), such as reports limited to the party's own transactions or experiences with a consumer, or credit information on organizations.

2. Isolated Reports

Parties that do not ''regularly'' engage in assembling or evaluating information for the purpose of furnishing consumer reports to third parties are not consumer reporting agencies. For example, a creditor that furnished information on a consumer to a governmental entity in connection with one of its investigations, would not ''regularly'' be

making such disclosure for a fee or on a cooperative nonprofit basis, and therefore would not become a consumer reporting agency, even if the information exceeded the creditor's transactions or experiences with the consumer.

3. Provision of Credit Report to Report Subject

A consumer report user does not become a consumer reporting agency by regularly giving a copy of the report, or otherwise disclosing it, to the consumer who is the subject of the report, because it is not disclosing the information to a ''third party.''

4. Employment Agency

An employment agency that routinely obtains information on job applicants from their former employers and furnishes the information to prospective employers is a consumer reporting agency.

5. Information Compiled for Insurance Underwriting

A business that compiles claim payment histories on individuals from insurers and furnishes them to insurance companies for use in underwriting decisions concerning those individuals is a consumer reporting agency.

6. Private Investigators and Detective Agencies

Private investigators and detective agencies that regularly obtain consumer reports and furnish them to clients may thereby become consumer reporting agencies.

7. Collection Agencies and Creditors

Collection agencies and creditors become consumer reporting agencies if they regularly furnish information beyond their transactions or experiences with consumers to third parties for use in connection with consumers' transactions.

8. Joint Users of Consumer Reports

Entities that share consumer reports with others that are jointly involved in decisions for which there are permissible purposes to obtain the reports may be ''joint users'' rather than consumer reporting agencies. For example, if a lender forwards consumer reports to governmental agencies administering loan guarantee programs (or to other prospective loan insurers or guarantors), or to other parties whose approval is needed before it grants credit, or to another creditor for use in considering a consumer's loan application at the consumer's request, the lender does not become a consumer reporting agency by virtue of such action. An agent or employee that obtains consumer reports does not become a consumer reporting agency by sharing such reports with its principal or employer in connection with the purposes for which the reports were initially obtained.

9. Loan Exchanges

Loan exchanges, which are generally owned and operated on a cooperative basis by consumer finance companies, constitute a mechanism whereby each member furnishes the exchange information concerning the full identity and loan amount of each of its borrowers, and receives information from the exchange concerning the number and types of outstanding loans for each of its applicants. A loan exchange or any other exchange that regularly collects information bearing on decisions to grant consumers credit or insurance for personal, family or household purposes, or employment, is a ''consumer reporting agency.''

10. State Departments of Motor Vehicles

State motor vehicle departments are ''consumer reporting agencies'' if they regularly furnish motor vehicle reports containing information bearing on the consumer's ''personal characteristics,'' such as arrest information, to insurance companies for insurance underwriting purposes. (See discussion of motor vehicle reports under section 603(d), item 4c *supra*.)

11. Federal Agencies

The Office of Personnel Management collects and files data concerning current and potential employees of the Federal Government and transmits that information to other government agencies for employment purposes. Because Congress did not intend that the FCRA apply to the Office of Personnel Management and similar federal agencies (see 116 Cong. Rec. 36576 (1970) (remarks of Rep. Brown)), no such agency is a ''consumer reporting agency.''

12. Credit Application Information

A creditor that provides information from a consumer's application to a credit bureau, for verification as part of the creditor's evaluation process that includes obtaining a report on the consumer from that credit bureau, does not thereby become a ''consumer reporting agency,'' because the creditor does not provide the information for ''fees, dues, or on a cooperative nonprofit basis,'' but rather pays the bureau to verify the information when it provides a consumer report on the applicant.

Section 603(g) defines *file*, when used in connection with information on any consumer, to mean ''all of the information on that consumer recorded and retained by a consumer reporting agency regardless of how the information is stored.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

Consumer reporting agencies are required to make disclosures of all information in their ''files'' to consumers upon request (section 609) and to follow reinvestigation procedures if the consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his ''file'' (section 611).

2. General

The term *file* denotes all information on the consumer that is recorded and retained by a consumer reporting agency that might be furnished, or has been furnished, in a consumer report on that consumer.

3. Audit Trail

The term ''file'' does not include an ''audit trail'' (a list of changes made by a consumer reporting agency to a consumer's credit history record, maintained to detect fraudulent changes to that record), because such information is not furnished in consumer reports or used as a basis for preparing them.

4. Other Information

The term ''file'' does not include information in billing records or in the consumer relations folder that a consumer reporting agency opens on a consumer who obtains disclosures or files a dispute, if the information has not been used in a consumer report and would not be used in preparing one.

Section 603(h) defines *employment purposes* to mean ''a report used for the purpose of evaluating a consumer for employment, promotion, reassignment or retention as an employee.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term *employment purposes* is used as part of the definition of ''consumer reports'' (section 603(d)(2)) and as a permissible purpose for the furnishing of consumer reports (section 604(3)(B)). Where an investigative consumer report is to be used for ''employment purposes'' for which a consumer has not specifically applied, section 606(a)(2) provides that the notice otherwise required by section 606(a)(1) need not be sent. When a consumer reporting agency furnishes public record information in reports ''for employment purposes,'' it must follow the procedure set out in section 613.

2. Security Clearances

A report in connection with security clearances of a government contractor's employees would be for ''employment purposes'' under this section.

Section 603(i) defines *medical information* to mean ''information or records obtained, with the consent of the individual to whom it relates, from licensed physicians or medical practitioners, hospitals, clinics, or other medical or medically related facilities.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

Under section 609(a)(1), a consumer reporting agency must, upon the consumer's request and proper identification, disclose the nature and substance of all information in its files on the consumer, except ''medical information.''

2. Information From Non-medical Sources

Information from non-medical sources such as employers, is not ''medical information.''

Section 604—Permissible Purposes of Reports

''*A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report under the following circumstances and no other:* * * *''

1. Relation to Section 603

Sections 603(d)(3) and 604 must be construed together to determine what are ''permissible purposes,'' because section 603(d)(3) refers to ''purposes authorized under section 604'' (often described as ''permissible purposes'' of consumer reports), and some purposes are enumerated in section 603 (e.g., sections 603(d)(1) and 603(d)(2)). Subsections of sections 603 and 604 that specifically set forth ''permissible purposes'' relating to credit, insurance and employment, are the only subsections that cover ''permissible purposes'' relating to those three areas. Section 604(3)(E), a general subsection, is limited to purposes not otherwise addressed in section 604(3) (A)–(D).

A. *Credit.* Sections 603(d)(1)—which defines ''consumer report'' to include certain reports for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumer's eligibility for credit or insurance primarily for personal, family, or household purposes—and 604(3)(A) must be read together as fully describing permissible purposes involving credit for obtaining consumer reports. Accordingly, section 604(3)(A) permits the furnishing of a consumer report for use in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer, primarily for personal, family or household purposes, and involving the extension of credit to, or review or collection of an account of, the consumer.

B. *Insurance.* Sections 603(d)(1) and 604(3)(C) must be read together as describing the only permissible insurance purposes for obtaining consumer reports. Accordingly, section 604(3)(C) permits the furnishing of a consumer report, provided it is for use in connection with the underwriting of insurance involving the consumer, primarily for personal, family, or household purposes.

C. *Employment.* Employment is covered exclusively by sections 603(d)(2) and 604(3)(B),

and by section 603(h) (which defines ''employment purposes''). Therefore, ''permissible purposes'' relating to employment include reports used for evaluating a consumer ''for employment, promotion, reassignment or retention as an employee.''

D. *Other purposes.* ''Other purposes'' are referred to in section 603(d)(3) and covered by section 604(3)(E), as well as sections 604(1), 604(2) and 604(3)(D) (which contain specific purposes not involving credit, insurance, employment). Permissible purposes relating to section 604(3)(E) are limited to transactions that consumers enter into primarily for personal, family or household purposes (excluding credit, insurance or employment, which are specifically covered by other subsections discussed above). The FCRA does not cover reports furnished for transactions that consumers enter into primarily in connection with businesses they operate (e.g., a consumer's rental of equipment for use in his retail store).

2. Relation to Other Sections

A. *Section 607(a).* Section 607(a) requires consumer reporting agencies to keep information confidential by furnishing consumer reports only for purposes listed under section 604, and to follow specified, reasonable procedures to achieve this end. Section 619 provides criminal sanctions against any person who knowingly and willfully obtains information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses.

B. *Section 608.* Section 608 allows ''consumer reporting agencies'' to furnish governmental agencies specified identifying information concerning consumers, notwithstanding the limitations of section 604.

Section 604(1)—A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report ''in response to the order of a court having jurisdiction to issue such an order.''

1. Subpoena

A subpoena, including a grand jury subpoena, is not an ''order of a court'' unless signed by a judge.

2. Internal Revenue Service Summons

An I.R.S. summons is an exception to the requirement that an order be signed by a judge before it constitutes an ''order of a court'' under this section, because a 1976 revision to Federal statutes (26 U.S.C. 7609) specifically requires a consumer reporting agency to furnish a consumer report in response to an I.R.S. summons upon receipt of the designated I.R.S. certificate that the consumer has not filed a timely motion to quash the summons.

Section 604(2)—A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report ''in accordance with the written instructions of the consumer to whom it relates.''

1. No Other Permissible Purpose Needed

If the report subject furnishes written authorization for a report, that creates a permissible purpose for furnishing the report.

2. Refusal to Furnish Report

The consumer reporting agency may refuse to furnish the report because the statute is permissive, not mandatory. (Requirements that consumer reporting agencies make disclosure to consumers (as contrasted with furnishing reports to users) are discussed under sections 609 and 610, *infra.*)

Section 604(3)(A)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer on whom the information is to be furnished and involving the extension of credit to, or review or collection of an account of, the consumer;''

1. Reports Sought in Connection with the ''Review or Collection of an Account''

A. *Reports for collection.* A collection agency has a permissible purpose under this section to receive a consumer report on a consumer for use in attempting to collect that consumer's debt, regardless of whether that debt is assigned or referred for collection. Similarly, a detective agency or private investigator, attempting to collect a debt owed by a consumer, would have a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on that individual for use in collecting that debt. An attorney may obtain a consumer report under this section on a consumer for use in connection with a decision whether to sue that individual to collect a credit account.

B. *Unsolicited reports.* A consumer reporting agency may not send an unsolicited consumer report to the recipient of a previous report on the same consumer, because the recipient will not necessarily have a permissible purpose to receive the unsolicited report.[2] For example, the recipient may have rejected the consumer's application or ceased to do business with the consumer. (See also discussion in section 607, item 2G, *infra.*)

2. Judgment Creditors

A judgment creditor has a permissible purpose to receive a consumer report on the judgment debtor for use in connection with collection of the judgment debt, because it is

[2] Of course a consumer reporting agency must furnish notifications required by section 611(d), upon the consumer's requests, to prior recipients of reports containing disputed information that is deleted or that is the subject of a dispute statement under section 611(b).

in the same position as any creditor attempting to collect a debt from a consumer who is the subject of a consumer report.

3. Child Support Debts

A district attorney's office or other child support agency may obtain a consumer report in connection with enforcement of the report subject's child support obligation, established by court (or quasi-judicial administrative) orders, since the agency is acting as or on behalf of the judgment creditor, and is, in effect, collecting a debt. However, a consumer reporting agency may not furnish consumer reports to child support agencies seeking to *establish* paternity or the duty to pay child support.

4. Tax Obligations

A tax collection agency has no general permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report to collect delinquent tax accounts, because this subsection applies only to collection of ''credit'' accounts. However, if a tax collection agency acquired a tax lien having the same effect as a judgment or obtained a judgment, it would be a judgment creditor and would have a permissible purpose for obtaining a consumer report on the consumer who owed the tax. Similarly, if a consumer taxpayer entered an agreement with a tax collection agency to pay taxes according to some timetable, that agreement would create a debtor-creditor relationship, thereby giving the agency a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on that consumer.

5. Information on an Applicant's Spouse

A. *Permissible purpose.* A creditor may request any information concerning an applicant's spouse if that spouse will be permitted to use the account or will be contractually liable upon the account, or the applicant is relying on the spouse's income as a basis for repayment of the credit requested. A creditor may request any information concerning an applicant's spouse if (1) the state law doctrine of necessaries applies to the transaction, or (2) the applicant resides in a community property state, or (3) the property upon which the applicant is relying as a basis for repayment of the credit requested is located in such a state, or (4) the applicant is acting as the agent of the nonapplicant spouse.

B. *Lack of permissible purpose.* If the creditor receives information clearly indicating that the applicant is not acting as the agent of the nonapplicant spouse, and that the applicant is relying only on separate property to repay the credit extended, and that the state law doctrine of necessaries does not apply to the transaction and that the applicant does not reside in a community property state, the creditor does not have a permissible purpose for obtaining a report on a nonapplicant spouse. A permissible purpose for making a consumer report on a nonapplicant spouse can never exist under the FCRA, where Regulation B, issued under the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (12 CFR 202), prohibits the creditor from requesting information on such spouse. There is no permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on a nonapplicant former spouse or on a nonapplicant spouse who has legally separated or otherwise indicated an intent to legally disassociate with the marriage. (This does not preclude reporting a prior joint credit account of former spouses for which the spouse that is the subject of the report is still contractually liable. See discussion in section 607, item 3–D *infra*.)

6. Prescreening

Prescreening means the process whereby a consumer reporting agency compiles or edits a list of consumers who meet specific criteria and provides this list to the client or a third party (such as a mailing service) on behalf of the client for use in soliciting these consumers for the client's products or services. The process may also include demographic or other analysis of the consumers on the list (e.g., use of census tract data reflecting real estate values) by the consumer reporting agency or by a third party employed for that purpose (by either the agency or its client) before the list is provided to the consumer reporting agency's client. In such situations, the client's creditworthiness criteria may be provided only to the consumer reporting agency and not to the third party performing the demographic analysis. The consumer reporting agency that performs a ''prescreening'' service may furnish a client with several different lists of consumers who meet different sets of creditworthiness criteria supplied by the client, who intends to make different credit offers (e.g., various credit limits) to consumers who meet the different criteria.

A prescreened list constitutes a series of consumer reports, because the list conveys the information that each consumer named meets certain criteria for creditworthiness. Prescreening is permissible under the FCRA if the client agrees in advance that each consumer whose name is on the list after prescreening will receive an offer of credit. In these circumstances, a permissible purpose for the prescreening service exists under this section, because of the client's present intent to grant credit to all consumers on the final list, with the result that the information is used ''in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer on whom the information is to be furnished and involving the extension of credit to * * * the consumer.''

7. Seller of Property Extending Credit

A seller of property has a permissible purpose under this subsection to obtain a consumer report on a prospective purchaser to whom he is planning to extend credit.

8. Uncoded Credit Guides

A consumer reporting agency may not furnish an uncoded credit guide, because the recipient does not have a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on each consumer listed. (As discussed under section 603(d), item 4 *supra,* credit guides are listings that credit bureaus furnish to credit grantors, rating how consumers pay their bills. Such guides are a series of ''consumer reports'' on the ''consumers'' listed therein, unless coded so that the consumer's identity is not disclosed.)

9. Liability for Bad Checks

A party attempting to recover the amount due on a bad check is attempting to collect a debt and, therefore, has a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on the consumer who wrote it, and on any other consumer who is liable for the amount of that check under applicable state law.

Section 604(3)(B)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information for employment purposes;''

1. Current Employees

An employer may obtain a consumer report on a current employee in connection with an investigation of the disappearance of money from employment premises, because ''retention as an employee'' is included in the definition of ''employment purposes'' (section 603(h)).

2. Consumer Reports on Applicants and Nonapplicants

An employer may obtain a consumer report for use in evaluating the subject's application for employment but may not obtain a consumer report to evaluate the application of a consumer who is not the subject of the report.

3. Grand Jurors

The fact that grand jurors are usually paid a stipend for their service does not provide a district attorney's office a permissible purpose for obtaining consumer reports on them, because such service is a duty, not ''employment.''

Section 604(3)(C)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information in connection with the underwriting of insurance involving the consumer;''

1. Underwriting

An insurer may obtain a consumer report to decide whether or not to issue a policy to the consumer, the amount and terms of coverage, the duration of the policy, the rates or fees charged, or whether or not to renew or cancel a policy, because these are all ''underwriting'' decisions.

2. Claims

An insurer may not obtain a consumer report for the purpose of evaluating a claim (to ascertain its validity or otherwise determine what action should be taken), because permissible purposes relating to insurance are limited by this section to ''underwriting'' purposes.

Section 604(3)(D)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information in connection with a determination of the consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit granted by a governmental instrumentality required by law to consider an applicant's financial responsibility or status * * *''

1. Appropriate recipient

Any party charged by law (including a rule or regulation having the force of law) with responsibility for assessing the consumer's eligibility for the benefit (not only the agency directly responsible for administering the benefit) has a permissible purpose to receive a consumer report. For example, a district attorney's office or social services bureau, required by law to consider a consumer's financial status in determining whether that consumer qualifies for welfare benefits, has a permissible purpose to obtain a report on the consumer for that purpose. Similarly, consumer reporting agencies may furnish consumer reports to townships on consumers whose financial status the townships are required by law to consider in determining the consumers' eligibility for assistance, or to professional boards (e.g., bar examiners) required by law to consider such information on applicants for admission to practice.

2. Inappropriate Recipient

Parties not charged with the responsibility of determining a consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit, for example, a party competing for an FCC radio station construction permit, would not have a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on that consumer.

3. Initial or Continuing Benefit

The permissible purpose includes the determination of a consumer's continuing eligibility for a benefit, as well as the evaluation of a consumer's initial application for a benefit. If the governmental body has reason

to believe a particular consumer's eligibility is in doubt, or wishes to conduct random checks to confirm eligibility, it has a permissible purpose to receive a consumer report.

Section 604(3)(E)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * otherwise has a legitimate business need for the information in connection with a business transaction involving the consumer.''

1. Relation to Other Subsections of Section 604(3)

The issue of whether credit, employment, or insurance provides a permissible purpose is determined exclusively by reference to subsection (A), (B), or (C), respectively.

2. Commercial Transactions

The term *business transaction* in this section means a business transaction with a consumer primarily for personal, family, or household purposes. Business transactions that involve purely commercial purposes are not covered by the FCRA.

3. ''Legitimate Business Need''

Under this subsection, a party has a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on a consumer for use in connection with some action the consumer takes from which he or she might expect to receive a benefit that is not more specifically covered by subsections (A), (B), or (C). For example, a consumer report may be obtained on a consumer who applies to rent an apartment, offers to pay for goods with a check, applies for a checking account or similar service, seeks to be included in a computer dating service, or who has sought and received over-payments of government benefits that he has refused to return.

4. Litigation

The possibility that a party may be involved in litigation involving a consumer does not provide a permissible purpose for that party to receive a consumer report on such consumer under this subsection, because litigation is not a ''business transaction'' involving the consumer. Therefore, potential plaintiffs may not always obtain reports on potential defendants to determine whether they are worth suing. The transaction that gives rise to the litigation may or may not provide a permissible purpose. A party seeking to sue on a *credit* account would have a permissible purpose under section 604(3)(A). (That section also permits judgment creditors and lien creditors to obtain consumer reports on judgment debtors or individuals whose property is subject to the lien creditor's lien.) If that transaction is a business transaction involving the consumer, there is a permissible purpose. If the litigation arises from a tort, there is no permissible purpose. Similarly, a consumer report may not be obtained solely for use in discrediting a witness at trial or for locating a witness. This section does not permit consumer reporting agencies to furnish consumer reports for the purpose of locating a person suspected of committing a crime. (As stated in the discussion of section 608 *infra* (item 2), section 608 permits the furnishing of specified, limited identifying information to governmental agencies, notwithstanding the provisions of section 604.)

5. Impermissible Purposes

A consumer reporting agency may not furnish a consumer report to satisfy a requester's curiosity, or for use by a news reporter in preparing a newspaper or magazine article.

6. Agents

A. *General*. An agent[3] of a party with a ''permissible purpose'' may obtain a consumer report on behalf of his principal, where he is involved in the decision that gives rise to the permissible purpose. Such involvement may include the agent's making a decision (or taking action) for the principal, or assisting the principal in making the decision (e.g., by evaluating information). In these circumstances, the agent is acting on behalf of the principal. In some cases, the agent and principal are referred to as ''joint users.'' See discussion in section 603(f), *supra* (item 8).

B. *Real estate agent*. A real estate agent may obtain a consumer report on behalf of a seller, to evaluate the eligibility as a prospective purchaser of a subject who has expressed an interest in purchasing property from the seller.

C. *Private detective agency*. A private detective agency may obtain a consumer report as agent for its client while investigating a report subject that is a client's prospective employee, or in connection with advising a client concerning a business transaction with the report subject or in attempting to collect a debt owed its client by the subject of the report. In these circumstances, the detective agency is acting on behalf of its client.

D. *Rental clearance agency*. A rental clearance agency that obtains consumer reports to assist owners of residential properties in screening consumers as tenants, has a permissible purpose to obtain the reports, if it uses them in applying the landlord's criteria to approve or disapprove the subjects as tenant applicants. Similarly, an apartment

[3] Of course agents and principals *are* bound by the Act.

manager investigating applicants for apartment rentals by a landlord may obtain consumer reports on these applicants.

E. *Attorney*. An attorney collecting a debt for a creditor client, including a party suing on a debt or collecting on behalf of a judgment creditor or lien creditor, has a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on the debtor to the same extent as the client.

Section 604—General

1. Furnishing of Consumer Reports to Other Consumer Reporting Agencies

A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report to another consumer reporting agency for it to furnish pursuant to a subscriber's request. In these circumstances, one consumer reporting agency is acting on behalf of another.

2. Consumer's Permission not Needed

When permissible purposes exist, parties may obtain, and consumer reporting agencies may furnish, consumer reports without the consumers' permission or over their objection. Similarly, parties may furnish information concerning their transactions with consumers to consumer reporting agencies and others, and consumer reporting agencies may gather information, without consumers' permission.

3. User's Disclosure of Report to Subject Consumer

The FCRA does not prohibit a consumer report user from giving a copy of the report, or otherwise disclosing it, to the consumer who is the subject of the report.

Section 605—Obsolete Information

''(a) *Except as authorized under subsection (b), no consumer reporting agency may make any consumer report containing any of the following items of information * * *:*

(b) *The provisions of subsection (a) are not applicable in the case of any consumer credit report to be used in connection with—*

(1) *a credit transaction involving, or which may reasonably be expected to involve, a principal amount of $50,000 or more;*

(2) *the underwriting of life insurance involving, or which may reasonably be expected to involve, a face amount of $50,000 or more; or*

(3) *the employment of any individual at an annual salary which equals, or which may reasonably be expected to egual $20,000, or more.*''

1. General

Section 605(a) provides that most adverse information more than seven years old may not be reported, except in certain circumstances set out in section 605(b). With respect to delinquent accounts, accounts placed for collection, and accounts charged to profit and loss, there are many dates that could be deemed to commence seven year reporting periods. The discussion in subsections (a)(2), (a)(4), and (a)(6) is intended to set forth a clear, workable rule that effectuates Congressional intent.

2. Favorable Information

The Act imposes no time restriction on reporting of information that is not adverse.

3. Retention of Information in Files

Consumer reporting agencies may retain obsolete adverse information and furnish it in reports for purposes that are exempt under subsection (b) (e.g., credit for a principal amount of $50,000 or more).

4. Use of Shorter Periods

The section does not require consumer reporting agencies to report adverse information for the time periods set forth, but only prohibits them from reporting adverse items beyond those time periods.

5. Inapplicability to Users

The section does not limit creditors or others from using adverse information that would be ''obsolete'' under its terms, because it applies only to reporting by consumer reporting agencies. Similarly, this section does not bar a creditor's reporting such adverse obsolete information concerning its transactions or experiences with a consumer, because the report would not constitute a consumer report.

6. Indicating the Existence of Nonspecified, Obsolete Information

A consumer reporting agency may not furnish a consumer report indicating the existence of obsolete adverse information, even if no specific item is reported. For example, a consumer reporting agency may not communicate the existence of a debt older than seven years by reporting that a credit grantor cannot locate a debtor whose debt was charged off ten years ago.

7. Operative Dates

The times or dates set forth in this section, which relate to the occurrence of events involving adverse information, determine whether the item is obsolete. The date that the consumer reporting agency acquired the adverse information is irrelevant to how long that information may be reported.

Section 605(a)(1)—''Cases under title 11 of the United States Code or under the Bankruptcy Act that, from the date of entry of the order for relief or the date of adjudication, as the case may be, antedate the report by more than 10 years.''

1. Relation to Other Subsections

The reporting of suits and judgments is governed by subsection (a)(2), the reporting of accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss is governed by subsection (a)(4), and the reporting of other delinquent accounts is governed by subsection (a)(6). Any such item, even if discharged in bankruptcy, may be reported separately for the applicable seven year period, while the existence of the bankruptcy filing may be reported for ten years.

2. Wage Earner Plans

Wage earner plans may be reported for ten years, because they are covered by Title 11 of the United States Code.

3. Date for Filing

A voluntary bankruptcy petition may be reported for ten years from the date that it is filed, because the filing of the petition constitutes the entry of an ''order for relief'' under this subsection, just like a filing under the Bankruptcy Act (11 U.S.C. 301).

Section 605(a)(2)—''Suits and judgments which, from date of entry, antedate the report by more than seven years or until the governing statute of limitations has expired, whichever is the longer period.''

1. Operative Date

For a suit, the term *date of entry* means the date the suit was initiated. A protracted suit may be reported for more than seven years from the date it was entered, if the governing statute of limitations has not expired. For a judgment, the term ''date of entry'' means the date the judgment was rendered.

2. Paid Judgments

Paid judgments cannot be reported for more than seven years after the judgment was entered, because payment of the judgment eliminates any ''governing statute of limitations'' under this subsection that might otherwise lengthen the period.

Section 605(a)(3)—''Paid tax liens which, from date of payment, antedate the report by more than seven years.''

1. Unpaid Liens

If a tax lien (or other lien) remains unsatisfied, it may be reported as long as it remains filed against the consumer, without limitation, because this subsection addresses only paid tax liens.

Section 605(a)(4)—''Accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss which antedate the report by more than seven years.''

1. Placement for Collection

The term *placed for collection* means internal collection activity by the creditor, as well as placement with an outside collector, whichever occurs first. Sending of the initial past due notices does not constitute placement for collection. Placement for collection occurs when dunning notices or other collection efforts are initiated. The reporting period is not extended by assignment to another entity for further collection, or by a partial or full payment of the account. However, where a borrower brings his delinquent account to date and returns to his regular payment schedule, and later defaults again, a consumer reporting agency may disregard any collection activity with respect to the first delinquency and measure the reporting period from the date the account was placed for collection as a result of the borrower's ultimate default. A consumer's repayment agreement with a collection agency can be treated as a new account that has its own seven year period.

2. Charge to Profit and Loss

The term *charged to profit and loss* means action taken by the creditor to write off the account, and the applicable time period is measured from that event. If an account that was charged off is later paid in part or paid in full by the consumer, the reporting period of seven years from the charge-off is not extended by this subsequent payment.

3. Reporting of a Delinquent Account That is Later Placed for Collection or Charged to Profit and Loss

The fact that an account has been placed for collection or charged to profit and loss may be reported for seven years from the date that either of those events occurs, regardless of the date the account became delinquent. The fact of delinquency may also be reported for seven years from the date the account became delinquent.

Section 605(a)(5)—''Records of arrest, indictment, or conviction of crime which, from date of disposition, release, or parole, antedate the report by more than seven years.''

1. Records

The term *records* means any information a consumer reporting agency has in its files relating to arrest, indictment or conviction of a crime.

2. Computation of Time Period

The seven year reporting period runs from the date of disposition, release or parole, as applicable. For example, if charges are dismissed at or before trial, or the consumer is acquitted, the date of such dismissal or acquittal is the date of disposition. If the consumer is convicted of a crime and sentenced to confinement, the date of release or placement on parole controls. (Confinement, whether continuing or resulting from revocation of parole, may be reported until seven

years after the confinement is terminated.) The sentencing date controls for a convicted consumer whose sentence does not include confinement. The fact that information concerning the arrest, indictment, or conviction of crime is obtained by the reporting agency at a later date from a more recent source (such as a newspaper or interview) does not serve to extend this reporting period.

Section 605(a)(6)—''Any other adverse item of information which antedates the report by more than seven years.''

1. Relation to Other Subsections

This section applies to all adverse information that is not covered by section 605(a) (1)–(5). For example, a delinquent account that has neither been placed for collection, nor charged to profit and loss, may be reported for seven years from the date of the last regularly scheduled payment. (Accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss may be reported for the time periods stated in section 605(a)(4).)

2. Non Tax Liens

Liens (other than paid tax liens) may be reported as long as they remain filed against the consumer or the consumer's property, and remain effective (under any applicable statute of limitations). (See discussion under section 605(a)(3), *supra*.)

Section 606—Disclosure of Investigative Consumer Reports

''(a) *A person may not procure or cause to be prepared an investigative consumer report on any consumer unless—*

(1) it is clearly and accurately disclosed to the consumer that an investigative consumer report including information as to his character, general reputation, personal characteristics, and mode of living, whichever are applicable, may be made, and such disclosure (A) is made in a writing mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer, not later than three days after the date on which the report was first requested, and (B) includes a statement informing the consumer of his right to request the additional disclosures provided for under subsection (b) of this section; or

(2) the report is to be used for employment purposes for which the consumer has not specifically applied.

(b) Any person who procures or causes to be prepared an investigative consumer report on any consumer shall, upon written request made by the consumer within a reasonable period of time after receipt by him of the disclosure required by subsection (a)(1), make a complete and accurate disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation requested. This disclosure shall be made in a writing mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer not later than five days after the date on which the request for such disclosure was received from the consumer or such report was first requested, whichever is the later.

(c) No person may be held liable for any violation of subsection (a) or (b) of this section if he shows by a preponderance of the evidence that at the time of the violation he maintained reasonable procedures to assure compliance with subsection (a) or (b).''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term *investigative consumer report* is defined at section 603(e) to mean a consumer report, all or a portion of which contains information obtained through personal interviews (in person or by telephone) with persons other than the subject, which information relates to the subject's character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living.

2. Inapplicability to Consumer Reporting Agencies

The section applies only to report users, not consumer reporting agencies. The FCRA does not require consumer reporting agencies to inform consumers that information will be gathered or that reports will be furnished concerning them.

3. Inapplicability to Noninvestigative Consumer Reports

The section does not apply to noninvestigative reports.

4. Exemptions

An employer who orders investigative consumer reports on a current employee who has not applied for a job change need not notify the employee, because the term ''employment purposes'' is defined to include ''promotion, reassignment or retention'' and subsection (b) provides that the disclosure requirements do not apply to ''employment purposes for which the consumer has not specifically applied.''

5. Form and Delivery of Notice

The notice must be in writing and delivered to the consumer. The user may include the disclosure in an application for employment, insurance, or credit, if it is clear and conspicuous and not obscured by other language. A user may send the required notice via first class mail. The notice must be mailed or otherwise delivered to the consumer not later than three days after the report was first requested.

6. Content of Notice of Right to Disclosure

The notice must clearly and accurately disclose that an ''investigative consumer report'' including information as to the consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics and mode of living (whichever are applicable), may be made. The disclosure must also state that an investigative consumer report involves personal interviews with sources such as neighbors, friends, or associates. The notice may include any additional, accurate information about the report, such as the types of interviews that will be conducted. The notice must include a statement informing the consumer of the right to request complete and accurate disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation.

7. Content of Disclosure of Report

When the consumer requests disclosure of the ''nature and scope'' of the investigation, such disclosure must include a complete and accurate description of the types of questions asked, the number and types of persons interviewed, and the name and address of the investigating agency. The user need not disclose the names of sources of information, nor must it provide the consumer with a copy of the report. A report user that provides the consumer with a blank copy of the standardized form used to transmit the report from the agency to the user complies with the requirement that it disclose the ''nature'' of the investigation.

Section 607—Compliance Procedures

''(a) Every consumer reporting agency shall maintain reasonable procedures designed to avoid violations of section 605 and to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to the purposes listed under section 604. These procedures shall require that prospective users of the information identify themselves, certify the purposes for which the information is sought, and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose. Every consumer reporting agency shall make a reasonable effort to verify the identity of a new prospective user and the uses certified by such prospective user prior to furnishing such user a consumer report. No consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report to any person if it has reasonable grounds for believing that the consumer report will not be used for a purpose listed in Section 604.

(b) Whenever a consumer reporting agency prepares a consumer report it shall follow reasonable procedures to assure maximum possible accuracy of the information concerning the individual about whom the report relates.''

1. Procedures To Avoid Reporting Obsolete Information

A. *General*. A consumer reporting agency should establish procedures with its sources of adverse information that will avoid the risk of reporting obsolete information. For example, the agency should either require a creditor to supply the date an account was placed for collection or charged off, or the agency should use a conservative date for such placement or charge off (such as the date of the last regularly scheduled payment), to be sure of complying with the statute.

B. *Retention of obsolete information for reporting in excepted circumstances*. If a consumer reporting agency retains adverse information in its files that is ''obsolete'' under section 605(a) (e.g., information about a satisfied judgment that is more than seven years old), so that it may be reported for use in transactions described by section 605(b) (*i.e.*, applications for credit or life insurance for $50,000 or more, or employment at an annual salary of $20,000 or more), it must have procedural safeguards to avoid reporting the information except in those situations. The procedure should require that such obsolete information be released only after an internal decision that its release will not violate section 605.

2. Procedures To Avoid Reporting for Impermissible Purposes

A. *Verification*. A consumer reporting agency should have a system to verify that it is dealing with a legitimate business having a ''permissible purpose'' for the information reported. What constitutes adequate verification will vary with the circumstances. If the consumer reporting agency is not familiar with the user, appropriate procedures might require an on-site visit to the user's place of business, or a check of the user's references.

B. *Required certification by user*. A consumer reporting agency should adopt procedures that require prospective report users to identify themselves, certify the purpose for which the information is sought, and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose. A consumer reporting agency should determine initially that users have permissible purposes and ascertain what those purposes are. It should obtain a specific, written certification that the recipient will obtain reports for those purposes and no others. The user's certification that the report will be used for no other purposes should expressly prohibit the user from sharing the report or providing it to anyone else, other than the subject of the report or to a joint user having the same purpose. A consumer reporting agency should refuse to provide reports to those refusing to provide such certification.

C. *Blanket or individual certification.* Once the consumer reporting agency obtains a certification from a user (e.g., a creditor) that typically has a permissible purpose for receiving a consumer report, stating that it will use those reports only for specified permissible purposes (e.g., for credit or employment purposes), a certification of purpose need not be furnished for each individual report obtained, provided there is no reason to believe the user may be violating its certification. However, in furnishing reports to users that typically could have both permissible and impermissible purposes for ordering consumer reports (e.g., attorneys and detective agencies), the consumer reporting agency must require the user to provide a separate certification each time it requests a consumer report.

D. *Procedures to avoid recipients' abuse of certification.* When doubt arises concerning any user's compliance with its contractual certification, a consumer reporting agency must take steps to insure compliance, such as requiring a separate, advance certification for each report it furnishes that user, or auditing that user to verify that it is obtaining reports only for permissible purposes. A consumer reporting agency must cease furnishing consumer reports to users who repeatedly request consumer reports for impermissible purposes.

E. *Unauthorized access.* A consumer reporting agency should take several other steps when doubt arises concerning whether a user is obtaining reports for a permissible purpose from a computerized system. If it appears that a third party, not a subscriber, has obtained unauthorized access to the system, the consumer reporting agency should take appropriate steps such as altering authorized users' means of access, such as codes and passwords, and making random checks to ensure that future reports are obtained only for permissible purposes. If a subscriber has inadvertently sought reports for impermissible purposes or its employee has obtained reports without a permissible purpose, it would be appropriate for the consumer reporting agency to alter the subscriber's means of access, and require an individual written certification of the permissible purpose for each report requested or randomly verify such purposes. A consumer reporting agency should refuse to furnish any further reports to a user that repeatedly violates certifications.

F. *Use of computerized systems.* A consumer reporting agency may furnish consumer reports to users via terminals, provided the consumer reporting agency has taken the necessary steps to ensure that the users have a permissible purpose to receive the reports. (The agency would have to record the identity of consumer report recipients for each consumer, to be able to make any disclosures required under section 609(a)(3) or section 611(d)).

G. *Activity reports.* If a consumer reporting agency provides ''activity reports'' on all customers who have open-end accounts with a credit grantor, it must make certain that the credit grantor always notifies the agency when accounts are closed and paid in full, to avoid furnishing reports on former customers or other customers for whom the credit grantor lacks a permissible purpose. (See also discussion in section 604(3)(A), item 1, *supra.*)

3. Reasonable Procedures To Assure Maximum Possible Accuracy

A. *General.* The section does not require error free consumer reports. If a consumer reporting agency accurately transcribes, stores and communicates consumer information received from a source that it reasonably believes to be reputable, and which is credible on its face, the agency does not violate this section simply by reporting an item of information that turns out to be inaccurate. However, when a consumer reporting agency learns or should reasonably be aware of errors in its reports that may indicate systematic problems (by virtue of information from consumers, report users, from periodic review of its reporting system, or otherwise) it must review its procedures for assuring accuracy. Examples of errors that would require such review are the issuance of a consumer report pertaining entirely to a consumer other than the one on whom a report was requested, and the issuance of a consumer report containing information on two or more consumers (e.g., information that was mixed in the file) in response to a request for a report on only one of those consumers.

B. *Required steps to improve accuracy.* If the agency's review of its procedures reveals, or the agency should reasonably be aware of, steps it can take to improve the accuracy of its reports at a reasonable cost, it must take any such steps. It should correct inaccuracies that come to its attention. A consumer reporting agency must also adopt reasonable procedures to eliminate systematic errors that it knows about, or should reasonably be aware of, resulting from procedures followed by its sources of information. For example, if a particular credit grantor has often furnished a significant amount of erroneous consumer account information, the agency must require the creditor to revise its procedures to correct whatever problems cause the errors or stop reporting information from that creditor.

C. *Use of automatic data processing equipment.* Consumer reporting agencies that use automatic data processing equipment (particularly for long distance transmission of information) should have reasonable procedures to assure that the data is accurately

converted into a machine-readable format and not distorted by machine malfunction or transmission failure. Reasonable security procedures must be adopted to minimize the possibility that computerized consumer information will be stolen or altered by either authorized or unauthorized users of the information system.

D. *Reliability of sources.* Whether a consumer reporting agency may rely on the accuracy of information from a source depends on the circumstances. This section does not hold a consumer reporting agency responsible where an item of information that it receives from a source that it reasonably believes to be reputable appears credible on its face, and is transcribed, stored and communicated as provided by that source. Requirements are more stringent where the information furnished appears implausible or inconsistent, or where procedures for furnishing it seem likely to result in inaccuracies, or where the consumer reporting agency has had numerous problems regarding information from a particular source.

E. *Undesignated information in credit transactions. Undesignated information* means all credit history information in a married (or formerly married) consumer's file, which was not reported to the consumer reporting agency with a designation indicating that the information relates to either the consumer's joint or individual credit experience. The question arises what is meant by reasonable procedures under this section for treatment of credit history in the file of only one (present or former) spouse (usually the husband) that has not been designated by the procedure in Regulation B, 12 CFR 202.10, which implements the Equal Credit Opportunity Act. (This situation exists only for certain credit history file information compiled before June 1, 1977, and certain accounts opened before that date.) A consumer reporting agency may report information solely in the file of spouse A, when spouse B applies for a separate extension of credit, only if such information relates to accounts for which spouse B was either a user or was contractually liable, or the report recipient has a permissible purpose for a report on spouse A. A consumer reporting agency may not supply all undesignated information from the file of a consumer's spouse in response to a request for a report on the consumer, because some or all of that information may not relate to both spouses. Consumer reporting agencies must honor without charge the request of a married or formerly married individual that undesignated information (that appears only in the files of the individual's present or former spouse) be segregated—*i.e.*, placed in a separate file that is accessible under that individual's name. This procedure insures greater accuracy and protection of the privacy of spouses than does the automatic reporting of undesignated information.

F. *Reporting of credit obligation*—(1) *Past due accounts.* A consumer reporting agency must employ reasonable procedures to keep its file current on past due accounts (e.g., by requiring its creditors to notify the credit bureau when a previously past due account has been paid or discharged in bankruptcy), but its failure to show such activity in particular instances, despite the maintenance of reasonable procedures to keep files current, does not violate this section. For example, a consumer reporting agency that reports accurately in 1985 that as of 1983 the consumer owed a retail store money, without mentioning that the consumer eventually paid the debt, does not violate this section if it was not informed by the store or the consumer of the later payment.

(2) *Significant, verified information.* A consumer reporting agency must report significant, verified information it possesses about an item. For instance, a consumer reporting agency may continue to report a paid account that was previously delinquent, but should also report that the account has been paid. Similarly, a consumer reporting agency may include delinquencies on debts discharged in bankruptcy in consumer reports, but must accurately note the status of the debt (e.g., discharged, voluntarily repaid). Finally, if a reported bankruptcy has been dismissed, that fact should be reported.

(3) *Guarantor obligations.* Personal guarantees for obligations incurred by others (including a corporation) may be included in a consumer report on the individual who is the guarantor. The report should accurately reflect the individual's involvement (e.g., as guarantor of the corporate debt).

4. Effect of Criminal Sanctions

Notwithstanding the fact that section 619 provides criminal sanctions against persons who knowingly and willfully obtain information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses, a consumer reporting agency must follow reasonable procedures to limit the furnishing of reports to those with permissible purposes.

5. Disclosure of Credit Denial

When reporting that a consumer was denied a benefit (such as credit), a consumer reporting agency need not report the reasons for the denial.

6. Content of Report

A consumer report need not be tailored to the user's needs. It may contain any information that is complete, accurate, and not obsolete on the consumer who is the subject of the report. A consumer report may include an account that was discharged in bankruptcy (as well as the bankruptcy

itself), as long as it reports a zero balance due to reflect the fact that the consumer is no longer liable for the discharged debt. A consumer report may include a list of recipients of reports on the consumer who is the subject of the report.

7. Completeness of Reports

Consumer reporting agencies are not required to include all existing derogatory or favorable information about a consumer in their reports. (See, however, discussion in section 611, item 14, *infra,* concerning conveying consumer dispute statements.) However, a consumer reporting agency may not mislead its subscribers as to the completeness of its reports by deleting nonderogatory information and not disclosing its policy of making such deletions.

8. User Notice of Adverse Action Based on a Consumer Report

A consumer reporting agency need not require users of its consumer reports to provide any notice to consumers against whom adverse action is taken based on a consumer report. The FCRA imposes such notice requirements directly on users, under the circumstances set out in section 615.

Section 608—Disclosures to Governmental Agencies

''Notwithstanding the provisions of section 604, a consumer reporting agency may furnish identifying information respecting any consumer limited to his name, address, former addresses, places of employment, or former places of employment, to a governmental agency.''

1. Permissible Purpose Necessary for Additional Information

A consumer reporting agency may furnish limited identifying information concerning a consumer to a governmental agency (e.g., an agency seeking a fugitive from justice) even if that agency does not have a ''permissible purpose'' under section 604 to receive a consumer report. However, a governmental agency must have a permissible purpose in order to obtain information beyond what is authorized by this section.

2. Entities Covered by Section

The term *governmental agency* includes federal, state, county and municipal agencies, and grand juries. Only governmental agencies may obtain disclosures of identifying information under this section.

Section 609—Disclosures to Consumers

''(a) Every consumer reporting agency shall, upon request and proper identification of any consumer, clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer:

(1) The nature and substance of all information (except medical information) in its files on the consumer at the time of the request.

(2) The sources of the information; except that the sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose need not be disclosed: Provided, That in the event an action is brought under this title, such sources shall be available to the plaintiff under appropriate discovery procedures in the court in which the action is brought.

(3) The recipients of any consumer report on the consumer which it has furnished

(A) for employment purposes within the two-year period preceding the request, and

(B) for any other purpose within the six-month period preceding the request.

(b) The requirements of subsection (a) respecting the disclosure of sources of information and the recipients of consumer reports do not apply to information received or consumer reports furnished prior to the effective date of this title except to the extent that the matter involved is contained in the files of the consumer reporting agency on that date.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

This section states what consumer reporting agencies must disclose to consumers, upon request and proper identification. Section 610 sets forth the conditions under which those disclosures must be made, and section 612 sets forth the circumstances under which consumer reporting agencies may charge for making such disclosures. The term ''file'' as used in section 609(a)(1) is defined in section 603(g). The term ''investigative consumer report,'' which is used in section 609(a)(2), is defined in section 603(e). The term *medical information,* which is used in section 609(a)(1), is defined in section 603(i).

2. Proper Identification

A consumer reporting agency must take reasonable steps to verify the identity of an individual seeking disclosure under this section.

3. Manner of ''Proper Identification''

If a consumer provides sufficient identifying information, the consumer reporting agency cannot insist that the consumer execute a ''request for interview'' form, or provide the items listed on it, as a prerequisite to disclosure. However, the agency may use a form to identify consumers requesting disclosure if it does not use the form to inhibit disclosure, or to obtain any waiver of the consumers' rights. A consumer reporting agency may provide disclosure by telephone without a written request, if the consumer is

properly identified, but may insist on a written request before providing such disclosure.

4. Power of Attorney

A consumer reporting agency may disclose a consumer's file to a third party authorized by the consumer's written power of attorney to obtain the disclosure, if the third party presents adequate identification and fulfills other applicable conditions of disclosure. However, the agency may also disclose the information directly to the consumer.

5. Nature of Disclosure Required

A consumer reporting agency must disclose the nature and substance of all items in the consumer's file, no matter how or where they are stored (e.g., in other offices of the consumer reporting agency). The consumer reporting agency must have personnel trained to explain to the consumer any information furnished in accordance with the Act. Particularly when the file includes coded information that would be meaningless to the consumer, the agency's personnel must assist the consumer to understand the disclosures. Any summary must not mischaracterize the nature of any item of information in the file. The consumer reporting agency is not required to provide a copy of the file, or any other written disclosure, or to read the file verbatim to the consumer or to permit the consumer to examine any information in its files. A consumer reporting agency may choose to usually comply with the FCRA in writing, by providing a copy of the file to the consumer or otherwise.

6. Medical Information

Medical information includes information obtained with the consumer's consent from physicians and medical facilities, but does not include comments on a consumer's health by non-medical personnel. A consumer reporting agency is not required to disclose medical information in its files to consumers, but may do so. Alternatively, a consumer reporting agency may inform consumers that there is medical information in the files concerning them and supply the name of the doctor or other source of the information. Consumer reporting agencies may also disclose such information to a physician of the consumer's choice, upon the consumer's written instructions pursuant to section 604(2).

7. Ancillary Information.

A consumer reporting agency is not required to disclose information consisting of an audit trail of changes it makes in the consumer's file, billing records, or the contents of a consumer relations folder, if the information is not from consumer reports and will not be used in preparing future consumer reports. Such data is not included in the term ''information in the files'' which must be disclosed to the consumer pursuant to this section. A consumer reporting agency must disclose claims report information only if it has appeared in consumer reports.

8. Information on Other Consumers

The consumer has no right to information in the consumer reporting agency's files on other individuals, because the disclosure must be limited to information ''on the consumer.'' However, all information in the files of the consumer making the request must be disclosed, including information about another individual that relates to the consumer (e.g., concerning that individual's dealings with the subject of the consumer report).

9. Disclosure of Sources of Information

Consumer reporting agencies must disclose the sources of information, except for sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose. When it has used information from another consumer reporting agency, the other agency should be reported as a source.

10. Disclosure of Recipients of Consumer Reports

Consumer reporting agencies must maintain records of recipients of prior consumer reports sufficient to enable them to meet the FCRA's requirements that they disclose the identity of recipients of prior consumer reports. A consumer reporting agency that furnishes a consumer report directly to a report user at the request of another consumer reporting agency must disclose the identity of the user that was the ultimate recipient of the report, not the other agency that acted as an intermediary in procuring the report.

11. Disclosure of Recipients of Prescreened Lists

A consumer reporting agency must furnish to a consumer requesting file disclosure the identity of recipients of any prescreened lists that contained the consumer's name when submitted to creditors (or other users) by the consumer reporting agency.

12. Risk Scores.

A consumer reporting agency is not required to disclose a risk score (or other numerical evaluation, however named) that is provided to the agency's client (based on an analysis of data on the consumer) but not retained by the agency. Such a score is not information ''in (the agency's) files at the time of the request'' by the consumer for file disclosure.

Section 610—Conditions of Disclosure

''(a) A consumer reporting agency shall make the disclosures required under section 609 during normal business hours and on reasonable notice.

(b) The disclosures required under section 609 shall be made to the consumer—

(1) in person if he appears in person and furnishes proper identification; or

(2) by telephone if he has made a written request, with proper identification, for telephone disclosure and the toll charge, if any, for the telephone call is prepaid by or charged directly to the consumer.

(c) Any consumer reporting agency shall provide trained personnel to explain to the consumer any information furnished to him pursuant to section 609.

(d) The consumer shall be permitted to be accompanied by one other person of his choosing, who shall furnish reasonable identification. A consumer reporting agency may require the consumer to furnish a written statement granting permission to the consumer reporting agency to discuss the consumer's file in such person's presence.

(e) Except as provided in section 616 and 617, no consumer may bring any action or proceeding in the nature of defamation, invasion of privacy, or negligence with respect to the reporting of information against any consumer reporting agency, any user of information or any person who furnishes information to a consumer reporting agency, based on information disclosed pursuant to section 609, 610, or 615, except as to false information furnished with malice or willful intent to injure such consumers.''

1. Time of Disclosure

A consumer reporting agency must make disclosures during normal business hours, upon reasonable notice. However, the consumer reporting agency may waive reasonable notice, and the consumer may agree to disclosure outside of normal business hours. A consumer reporting agency may make in-person disclosure to consumers who have made appointments ahead of other consumers, because the disclosures are only required to be made ''on reasonable notice.''

2. Extra Conditions Prohibited

A consumer reporting agency may not add conditions not set out in the FCRA as a prerequisite to the required disclosure.

3. Manner of Disclosure

A consumer reporting agency may, with the consumer's actual or implied consent, meet its disclosure obligations by mail, in lieu of the in-person or telephone disclosures specified in the statute.

4. Disclosure in the Presence of Third Parties

When the consumer requests disclosure in a third party's presence, the consumer reporting agency may require that a consumer sign an authorization before such disclosure is made. The consumer may choose the third party to accompany him or her for the disclosure.

5. Expense of Telephone Calls

A consumer reporting agency is not required to pay the telephone charge for a telephone interview with a consumer obtaining disclosure.

6. Qualified Defamation Privilege

The privilege extended by subsection 610(e) does not apply to an action brought by a consumer if the action is based on information not disclosed pursuant to sections 609, 610 or 615. A disclosure to a consumer's representative (e.g., based on the consumer's power of attorney) constitutes ''information disclosed pursuant to section 609'' and is thus covered by this privilege.

Section 611—Procedure in Case of Disputed Accuracy

''(a) If the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his file is disputed by a consumer, and such dispute is directly conveyed to the consumer reporting agency by the consumer, the consumer reporting agency shall within a reasonable period of time reinvestigate and record the current status of that information unless it has reasonable grounds to believe that the dispute by the consumer is frivolous or irrelevant. If after such reinvestigation such information is found to be inaccurate or can no longer be verified, the consumer reporting agency shall promptly delete such information. The presence of contradictory information in the consumer's file does not in and of itself constitute reasonable grounds for believing the dispute is frivolous or irrelevant.

(b) If the reinvestigation does not resolve the dispute, the consumer may file a brief statement setting forth the nature of the dispute. The consumer reporting agency may limit such statements to not more than one hundred words if it provides the consumer with assistance in writing a clear summary of the dispute.

(c) Whenever a statement of a dispute is filed, unless there is reasonable grounds to believe that it is frivolous or irrelevant, the consumer reporting agency shall, in any subsequent consumer report containing the information in question, clearly note that it is disputed by the consumer and provide either the consumer's statement or a clear and accurate codification or summary thereof.

(d) Following any deletion of information which is found to be inaccurate or whose accuracy can no longer be verified or any notation as to disputed information, the consumer reporting agency shall, at the request of the consumer, furnish notification that the item has been deleted or the statement, codification or summary pursuant to subsection (b) or (c) to any person specifically designated by the consumer who has within two years prior thereto received a consumer report for employment purposes, or within six months prior thereto received a consumer report for any other purpose, which contained the deleted or disputed information. The consumer reporting agency shall clearly and conspicuously disclose to the consumer his rights to make such a request. Such disclosure shall be made at or prior to the time the information is deleted or the consumer's statement regarding the disputed information is received.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

This section sets forth procedures consumer reporting agencies must follow if a consumer conveys a dispute of the completeness or accuracy of any item of information in the consumer's file to the consumer reporting agency. Section 609 provides for disclosures by consumer reporting agencies to consumers, and section 610 sets forth conditions of disclosure. Section 612 permits a consumer reporting agency to impose charges for certain disclosures, including the furnishing of certain information to recipients of prior reports, as provided by section 611(d).

2. Proper Reinvestigation

A consumer reporting agency conducting a reinvestigation must make a good faith effort to determine the accuracy of the disputed item or items. At a minimum, it must check with the original sources or other reliable sources of the disputed information and inform them of the nature of the consumer's dispute. In reinvestigating and attempting to verify a disputed credit transaction, a consumer reporting agency may rely on the accuracy of a creditor's ledger sheets and need not require the creditor to produce documentation such as the actual signed sales slips. Depending on the nature of the dispute, reinvestigation and verification may require more than asking the original source of the disputed information the same question and receiving the same answer. If the original source is contacted for reinvestigation, the consumer reporting agency should at least explain to the source that the original statement has been disputed, state the consumer's position, and then ask whether the source would confirm the information, qualify it, or accept the consumer's explanation.

3. Complaint of Insufficient File, or Lack of File

The FCRA does not require a consumer reporting agency to add new items of information to its file. A consumer reporting agency is not required to create new files on consumers for whom it has no file, nor is it required to add new lines of information about new accounts not reflected in an existing file, because the section permits the consumer to dispute only the completeness or accuracy of particular items of information in the file. If a consumer reporting agency chooses to add lines of information at the consumer's request, it may charge a fee for doing so.

4. Explanation of Extenuating Circumstances

A consumer reporting agency has no duty to reinvestigate, or take any other action under this section, if a consumer merely provides a reason for a failure to pay a debt (e.g., sudden illness or layoff), and does not challenge the accuracy or completeness of the item of information in the file relating to a debt. Most creditors are aware that a variety of circumstances may render consumers unable to repay credit obligations. Although a consumer reporting agency is not required to accept a consumer dispute statement that does not challenge the accuracy or completeness of an item in the consumer's file, it may accept such a statement and may charge a fee for doing so.

5. Reinvestigation of a Debt

A consumer reporting agency must reinvestigate if a consumer conveys to it a dispute concerning the validity or status of a debt, such as whether the debt was owed by the consumer, or whether the debt had subsequently been paid. For example, if a consumer alleges that a judgment reflected in the file as unpaid has been satisfied, or notifies a consumer reporting agency that a past due obligation reflected in the file as unpaid was subsequently paid, the consumer reporting agency must reinvestigate the matter. If a file reflects a debt discharged in bankruptcy without reflecting subsequent reaffirmation and payment of that debt, a consumer may require that the item be reinvestigated.

6. Status of a Debt

The consumer reporting agency must, upon reinvestigation, ''record the current status'' of the disputed item. This requires inclusion of any information relating to a change in status of an ongoing matter (e.g., that a credit account had been closed, that a debt shown as past due had subsequently been paid or discharged in bankruptcy, or that a debt shown as discharged in bankruptcy was later reaffirmed and/or paid).

7. Dispute Conveyed to Party Other Than the Consumer Reporting Agency

A consumer reporting agency is required to take action under this section only if the consumer directly communicates a dispute to it. It is not required to respond to a dispute of information that the consumer merely conveys to others (e.g., to a source of information). (But see, however, discussion in section 607, item 3A, of consumer reporting agencies' duties to correct errors that come to their attention.)

8. Dispute Conveyed to the Consumer Reporting Agency by a Party Other Than the Consumer

A consumer reporting agency need not reinvestigate a dispute about a consumer's file raised by any third party, because the obligation under the section arises only where an ''item of information in his file is disputed by the consumer.''

9. Consumer Disclosures and Adverse Action Not Prerequisites to Reinvestigation Duty

A consumer reporting agency's obligation to reinvestigate disputed items is not contingent upon the consumer's having been denied a benefit or having asserted any rights under the FCRA other than disputing items of information.

10. Reasonable Period of Time

A consumer reporting agency is required to reinvestigate and record the current status of disputed information within a reasonable period of time after the consumer conveys the dispute to it. Although consumer reporting agencies are able to reinvestigate most disputes within 30 days, a ''reasonable time'' for a particular reinvestigation may be shorter or longer depending on the circumstances of the dispute. For example, where the consumer provides documentary evidence (e.g., a certified copy of a court record to show that a judgment has been paid) when submitting the dispute, the creditor may require a shorter time to reinvestigate. On the other hand, where the dispute is more complicated than normal (e.g., the consumer alleges in good faith that a creditor has falsified its report of the consumer's account history because of a personal grudge), the ''reasonable time'' needed to conduct the reinvestigation may be longer.

11. Frivolous or Irrelevant

The mere presence of contradictory information in the file does not provide the consumer reporting agency ''reasonable grounds to believe that the dispute by the consumer is frivolous or irrelevant.'' A consumer reporting agency must assume a consumer's dispute is bona fide, unless there is evidence to the contrary. Such evidence may constitute receipt of letters from consumers disputing all information in their files without providing any allegations concerning the specific items in the files, or of several letters in similar format that indicate that a particular third party (e.g., a ''credit repair'' operator) is counselling consumers to dispute all items in their files, regardless of whether the information is known to be accurate. The agency is not required to repeat a reinvestigation that it has previously conducted simply because the consumer reiterates a dispute about the same item of information, unless the consumer provides additional evidence that the item is inaccurate or incomplete, or alleges changed circumstances.

12. Deletion of Accurate Information That has not Been Disputed

The consumer reporting agency is not required to delete accurate information that could not be verified upon reinvestigation, if it has not been ''disputed by a consumer.'' For example, if a creditor deletes adverse information from its files with the result that information could not be reverified if disputed, it is still permissible for a consumer reporting agency to report it (subject to the obsolescence provisions of section 605) until it is disputed.

13. Consumer Dispute Statements on Multiple Items

A consumer who disputes multiple items of information in his file may submit a one hundred word statement as to each disputed item.

14. Conveying Dispute Statements to Recipients of Subsequent Reports.

A consumer reporting agency may not merely tell the recipient of a subsequent report containing disputed information that the consumer's statement is on file but will be provided only if requested, because subsection (c) requires the agency to provide either the statement or ''a clear and accurate codification or summary thereof.''

Section 612—Charges for Certain Disclosures

''A consumer reporting agency shall make all disclosures pursuant to section 609 and furnish all consumer reports pursuant to section 611(d) without charge to the consumer if, within thirty days after receipt by such consumer of a notification pursuant to section 615 or notification from a debt collection agency affiliated with such consumer reporting agency stating that the consumer's credit rating may be or has been adversely affected, the consumer makes a request under section 609 or 611(d). Otherwise, the consumer reporting agency may impose a reasonable charge on the consumer for

making disclosure to such consumer pursuant to section 609, the charge for which shall be indicated to the consumer prior to making disclosure; and for furnishing notifications, statements, summaries, or codifications to persons designated by the consumer pursuant to section 611(d), the charge for which shall be indicated to the consumer prior to furnishing such information and shall not exceed the charge that the consumer reporting agency would impose on each designated recipient for a consumer report except that no charge may be made for notifying such persons of the deletion of information which is found to be inaccurate or which can no longer be verified.''

1. Irrelevance of Subsequent Grant of Credit or Reason for Denial

A consumer denied credit because of a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency has the right to a free disclosure from that agency within 30 days of receipt of the section 615(a) notice, even if credit was subsequently granted or the basis of the denial was that the references supplied by the consumer are too few or too new to appear in the credit file.

2. Charge for Reinvestigation Prohibited

This section does not permit consumer reporting agencies to charge for making the reinvestigation or following other procedures required by section 611 (a)–(c).

3. Permissible Charges for Services Requested by Consumers

A consumer reporting agency may charge fees for creating files on consumers at their request, or for other services not required by the FCRA that are requested by consumers.

Section 613—Public Record Information for Employment Purposes

''A consumer reporting agency which furnishes a consumer report for employment purposes and which for that purpose compiles and reports items of information on consumers which are matters of public record and are likely to have an adverse effect upon a consumer's ability to obtain employment shall—

(1) at the time such public record information is reported to the user of such consumer report, notify the consumer of the fact that public record information is being reported by the consumer reporting agency, together with the name and address of the person to whom such information is being reported; or

(2) maintain strict procedures designed to insure that whenever public record information which is likely to have an adverse effect on a consumer's ability to obtain employment is reported it is complete and up to date. For purposes of this paragraph, items of public record relating to arrests, indictments, convictions, suits, tax liens, and outstanding judgments shall be considered up to date if the current public record status of the item at the time of the report is reported.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

A consumer reporting agency that complies with section 613(1) must also follow reasonable procedures to assure maximum possible accuracy, as required by section 607(b).

2. Alternate Methods of Compliance

A consumer reporting agency that furnishes public record information for employment purposes must comply with either subsection (1) or (2), but need not comply with both.

3. Information From Another Consumer Reporting Agency

If a consumer reporting agency uses information or reports from other consumer reporting agencies in a report for employment purposes, it must comply with this section.

4. Method of Providing Notice

A consumer reporting agency may use first class mail to provide the notice required by subsection (1).

5. Waiver

The procedures required by this section cannot be waived by the consumer to whom the report relates.

Section 614—Restrictions on Investigative Consumer Reports

''Whenever a consumer reporting agency prepares an investigative consumer report, no adverse information in the consumer report (other than information which is a matter of public record) may be included in a subsequent consumer report unless such adverse information has been verified in the process of making such subsequent consumer report, or the adverse information was received within the three-month period preceding the date the subsequent report is furnished.''

Section 615—Requirements on Users of Consumer Reports

(a) Whenever credit or insurance for personal, family, or household purposes, or employment involving a consumer is denied or the charge for such credit or insurance is increased either wholly or partly because of information contained in a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency, the user of the consumer report shall so advise the consumer against whom such adverse action has been taken and supply the name and address of the consumer reporting agency making the report.

(b) Whenever credit for personal, family, or household purposes involving a consumer is denied or the charge for such credit is increased either wholly or partly because of information obtained from a person other than a consumer reporting agency bearing upon the consumer's credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living, the user of such information shall, within a reasonable period of time, upon the consumer's written request for the reasons for such adverse action received within 60 days after learning of such adverse action, disclose the nature of the information to the consumer. The user of such information shall clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his right to make such written request at the time such adverse action is communicated to the consumer.

(c) No person shall be held liable for any violation of this section if he shows by a preponderance of the evidence that at the time of the alleged violation he maintained reasonable procedures to assure compliance with the provisions of subsections (a) and (b).''

1. Relation to Other Sections and Regulation B

Sections 606 and 615 are the only two sections that require users of reports to make disclosures to consumers. Section 606 applies only to users of ''investigative consumer reports.'' Creditors should not confuse compliance with section 615(a), which only requires disclosure of the name and address of the consumer reporting agency, and compliance with the Equal Credit Opportunity Act, 15 U.S.C. 1691 *et seq.* and Regulation B, 12 C.F.R. 202, which require disclosure of the *reasons* for adverse action. Compliance with section 615(a), therefore, does not constitute compliance with Regulation B.

2. Limited Scope of Requirements

The section does not require that creditors disclose their credit criteria or standards or that employees furnish copies of personnel files to former employees. The section does not require that the user provide any kind of advance notification to consumers before a consumer report is obtained. (See section 606 regarding notice of investigative consumer reports.)

3. Method of Disclosure

The disclosures required by this section need not be made in writing. However, users will have evidence that they have taken reasonable steps to comply with this section if they provide written disclosures and retain copies for at least two years, the applicable statute of limitations for most civil liability actions under the FCRA.

4. Adverse Action Based on Direct Information

This section does not require that a user send any notice to a consumer concerning adverse action regarding that consumer that is based neither on information from a consumer reporting agency nor on information from a third party. For example, no disclosures are required concerning adverse action based on information provided by the consumer in an application or based on past experience in direct transactions with the consumer.

5. Creditors Using ''Prescreened'' Mailing Lists

A creditor is not required to provide notices regarding consumer reporting agencies that prepare mailing lists by ''prescreening'' because they do not involve consumer requests for credit and credit has not been denied to consumers whose names are deleted from a list furnished to the agency for use in this procedure. See discussion of ''prescreening,'' under section 604(3)(A), item 6, *supra*.

6. Applicability to Users of Motor Vehicle Reports

An insurer that refuses to issue a policy, or charges a higher than normal premium, based on a motor vehicle report is required to comply with subsection(a).

7. Securities and Insurance Transactions

A consumer report user that denies credit to a consumer in connection with a securities transaction must provide the required notice, because the denial is of ''credit * * * for personal purposes,'' unless the consumer engages in such transactions as a business.

8. Denial of Employment

An employer must provide the notice required by subsection (a) to an individual who has applied for employment and has been rejected based on a consumer report. However, an employer is not required to send a notice when it decides not to offer a position to an individual who has not applied for it, because in this case employment is not ''denied.'' (See discussion in section 606, item 4, *supra*.)

9. Adverse Action Involving Credit

A creditor must provide the required notice when it denies the consumer's request for credit (including a rejection based on a scoring system, where a credit report received less than the maximum number of points possible and caused the application to receive an insufficient score), denies the consumer's request for increased credit, grants credit in an amount less than the consumer requested, or raises the charge for credit.

10. Adverse Action Not Involving Credit, Insurance or Employment

The Act does not require that a report user provide any notice to consumers when taking adverse action not relating to credit, insurance or employment. For example, a landlord who refuses to rent an apartment to a consumer based on credit or other information in a consumer report need not provide the notice. Similarly, a party that uses credit or other information in a consumer report as a basis for refusing to accept payment by check need not comply with this section. Checks have historically been treated as cash items, and thus such refusal does not involve a denial of credit, insurance or employment.

11. Adverse Action Based on Non-derogatory Adverse Information

A party taking adverse action concerning credit or insurance or denying employment, ''wholly or partly because of information contained in a consumer report,'' must provide the required notice, even if the information is not derogatory. For example, the user must give the notice if the denial is based wholly or partly on the absence of a file or on the fact that the file contained insufficient references.

12. Name and Address of the Consumer Reporting Agency

The ''section 615(a)'' notice must include the consumer reporting agency's street address, not just a post office box address.

13. Agency To Be Identified

The consumer report user should provide the name and address of the consumer reporting agency from which it obtained the consumer report, even if that agency obtained all or part of the report from another agency.

14. Denial Based Partly on a Consumer Report

A ''section 615(a)'' notice must be sent even if the adverse action is based only partly on a consumer report.

15. Denial of Credit Based on Information From ''Third Parties''

Subsection (b) imposes requirements on a creditor when it denies (or increases the charge for) credit for personal, family or household purposes involving a consumer, based on information from a ''third party'' source, which means a source *other* than the consumer reporting agency, the creditor's own files, or the consumer's application (e.g., creditor, employer, landlord, or the public record). Where a creditor denies a consumer's application based on information obtained directly from another lender, even if the lender's name was furnished to the creditor by a consumer reporting agency, the creditor must give a ''third party'' disclosure.

16. Substance of Required ''Third Party'' Disclosures

When the adverse action is communicated to the consumer, the creditor must clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his or her right to make a written request for the disclosure of the nature of the third party information that led to the adverse action. Upon timely receipt of such a request, however, the creditor need disclose only the nature of the information that led to the adverse action (e.g., history of late rent payments or bad checks); it need not identify the source that provided the information or the criteria that led to the adverse action. A creditor may comply with subsection (b) by providing a statement of the nature of the third party information that led to the denial when it notifies the consumer of the denial. A statement of principal, specific reasons for adverse action based on third party information that is sufficient to comply with the requirements of the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (e.g., ''unable to verify employment'') is sufficient to constitute disclosure of the ''nature of the information'' under subsection (b).

Section 616—Civil Liability for Willful Noncompliance

Section 616 permits consumers who sue and prove willful noncompliance with the Act to recover actual damages, punitive damages, and the costs of the action, together with reasonable attorney's fees.

Section 617—Civil Liability for Negligent Noncompliance

Section 617 permits consumers who sue and prove negligent noncompliance with the Act to recover actual damages and the costs of the action, together with reasonable attorney's fees.

Section 618—Jurisdiction of Courts; Limitation of Actions

Section 618 provides that any action brought under section 616 or section 617 may be brought in any United States district court or other court of competent jurisdiction. Such suit must be brought within two years from the date on which liability arises, unless a defendant has materially and willfully misrepresented information the Act requires to be disclosed, and the information misrepresented is material to establishment of the defendant's liability. In that event, the action must be brought within two years after the individual discovers the misrepresentation.

Section 619—Obtaining Information Under False Pretense

Section 619 provides criminal sanctions against any person who knowingly and willfully obtains information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses.

1. Relation to Other Sections

The presence of this provision does not excuse a consumer reporting agency's failure to follow reasonable procedures, as required by section 607(a), to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to the purposes listed under section 604.

Section 620—Unauthorized Disclosures by Officers or Employees

Section 620 provides criminal sanctions against any officer or employee of a consumer reporting agency who knowingly and willfully provides information concerning an individual from the agency's file to a person not authorized to receive it.

Section 621—Administrative Enforcement

This section gives the Federal Trade Commission authority to enforce the Act with respect to consumer reporting agencies, users of reports, and all others, except to the extent that it gives enforcement jurisdiction specifically to some other agency. Those excepted from the Commission's enforcement jurisdiction include certain financial institutions regulated by Federal agencies or boards, Federal credit unions, common carriers subject to acts to regulate commerce, air carriers, and parties subject to the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921.

1. General

The Commission can use its cease-and-desist power and other procedural, investigative and enforcement powers which it has under the FTC Act to secure compliance, irrespective of commerce or any other jurisdictional tests in the FTC Act.

2. Geographic Coverage

The Commission's authority encompasses the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and all United States territories but does not extend to activities outside those areas.

3. Status of Commission Commentary and Staff Interpretations

The FCRA does not give any Federal agency authority to promulgate rules having the force and effect, of statutory provisions. The Commission has issued this Commentary, superseding the eight formal Interpretations of the Act (16 CFR 600.1–600.8), previously issued pursuant to §1.73 of the Commission's Rules, 16 CFR 1.73. The Commentary does not constitute substantive rules and does not have the force or effect of statutory provisions. It constitutes guidelines to clarify the Act that are advisory in nature and represent the Commission's views as to what particular provisions of the Act mean. Staff opinion letters constitute staff interpretations of the Act's provisions, but do not have the force or effect of statutory provisions and, as provided in §1.72 of the Commission's Rules, 16 CFR 1.72, do not bind the Commission.

Section 622—Relation to State Laws

''This title does not annul, alter, affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this title from complying with the laws of any State with respect to the collection, distribution, or use of any information on consumers, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this title, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.''

1. Basic Rule

State law is pre-empted by the FCRA only when compliance with inconsistent State law would result in violation of the FCRA.

2. Examples of Statutes that are not Pre-empted

A State law requirement that an employer provide notice to a consumer before ordering a consumer report, or that a consumer reporting agency must provide the consumer with a written copy of his file, would not be pre-empted, because a party that complies with such provisions would not violate the FCRA.

3. Examples of Statutes that are Pre-empted

A State law authorizing grand juries to compel consumer reporting agencies to provide consumer reports, by means of subpoenas signed by a court clerk, is pre-empted by the FCRA's requirement that such reports be furnished only pursuant to an ''order of the court'' signed by a judge (section 604(1)), or furnished for other purposes not applicable to grand jury subpoenas (section 604 (2)–(3)), and by section 607(a). A State statute requiring automatic disclosure of a deletion or dispute statement to every person who has previously received a consumer report containing the disputed information, regardless of whether the consumer designates such persons to receive this disclosure, is pre-empted by section 604 of the FCRA, which permits disclosure only for specified, permissible purposes and by section 607(a), which requires consumer reporting agencies to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to purposes listed under section 604. Absent a specific designation by the consumer, the consumer reporting agency has no reason to believe all past recipients would have a

present, permissible purpose to receive the reports.

4. Statute Providing Access for Enforcement Purposes

A State ''little FCRA'' that permits State officials access to a consumer reporting agency's files for the purpose of enforcing that statute just as Federal agencies are permitted access to such files under the FCRA, is not pre-empted by the FCRA.

(Information collection requirements in this appendix were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 3084–0091)

[55 FR 18808, May 4, 1990, as amended at 57 FR 4935, Feb. 11, 1992; 60 FR 45660, Sept. 1, 1995]

PART 602—FAIR AND ACCURATE CREDIT TRANSACTIONS ACT OF 2003

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1681s; sec. 3, Pub. L. 108–159; 117 Stat. 1953.

§ 602.1 Effective dates.

(a)–(b) [Reserved]

(c) The applicable provisions of the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003 (FACT Act), Pub. L. 108–159, 117 Stat. 1952, shall be effective in accordance with the following schedule:

(1) *Provisions effective December 31, 2003.*

(i) Sections 151(a)(2), 212(e), 214(c), 311(b), and 711, concerning the relation to state laws; and

(ii) Each of the provisions of the FACT Act that authorizes an agency to issue a regulation or to take other action to implement the applicable provision of the FACT Act or the applicable provision of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, as amended by the FACT Act, but only with respect to that agency's authority to propose and adopt the implementing regulation or to take such other action.

(2) *Provisions effective March 31, 2004.*

(i) Section 111, concerning the definitions;

(ii) Section 156, concerning the statute of limitations

(iii) Sections 312(d), (e), and (f), concerning the furnisher liability exception, liability and enforcement, and rule of construction, respectively;

(iv) Section 313(a), concerning action regarding complaints;

(v) Section 611, concerning communications for certain employee investigations; and

(vi) Section 811, concerning clerical amendments.

(3) *Provisions effective December 1, 2004.*

(i) Section 112, concerning fraud alerts and active duty alerts;

(ii) Section 114, concerning procedures for the identification of possible instances of identity theft;

(iii) Section 115, concerning truncation of the social security number in a consumer report;

(iv) Section 151(a)(1), concerning the summary of rights of identity theft victims;

(v) Section 152, concerning blocking of information resulting from identity theft;

(vi) Section 153, concerning the coordination of identity theft complaint investigations;

(vii) Section 154, concerning the prevention of repollution of consumer reports;

(viii) Section 155, concerning notice by debt collectors with respect to fraudulent information;

(ix) Section 211(c), concerning a summary of rights of consumers;

(x) Section 212(a)–(d), concerning the disclosure of credit scores;

(xi) Section 213(c), concerning duration of elections;

(xii) Section 217(a), concerning the duty to provide notice to a consumer;

(xiii) Section 311(a), concerning the risk-based pricing notice;

(xiv) Section 312(a)–(c), concerning procedures to enhance the accuracy and integrity of information furnished to consumer reporting agencies;

(xv) Section 314, concerning improved disclosure of the results of reinvestigation;

(xvi) Section 315, concerning reconciling addresses;

(xvii) Section 316, concerning notice of dispute through reseller; and

(xviii) Section 317, concerning the duty to conduct a reasonable reinvestigation.

[69 FR 29063, May 20, 2004]

PART 603—DEFINITIONS

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 111; 15 U.S.C. 1681a.

§ 603.1 Terms defined in the Fair Credit Reporting Act.

Any term used in any part in this subchapter, if defined in the Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) and not otherwise defined in that rule, has the same meaning provided by the FCRA.

[69 FR 29063, May 20, 2004]

EDITORIAL NOTE: At 69 FR 63933, November 3, 2004, part 603 was added to title 16. However, part 603 already existed, therefore this amendment could not be incorporated. For the convenience of the user, the added text is set forth as follows:

PART 603—DEFINITIONS

Sec.
603.1 [Reserved]
603.2 Identity theft.
603.3 Identity theft report.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec 111; 15 U.S.C. 1681a.

§ 603.1 [Reserved]

§ 603.2 Identity theft.

(a) The term ''identity theft'' means a fraud committed or attempted using the identifying information of another person without authority.

(b) The term ''identifying information'' means any name or number that may be used, alone or in conjunction with any other information, to identify a specific person, including any—

(1) Name, social security number, date of birth, official State or government issued driver's license or identification number, alien registration number, government passport number, employer or taxpayer identification number;

(2) Unique biometric data, such as fingerprint, voice print, retina or iris image, or other unique physical representation;

(3) Unique electronic identification number, address, or routing code; or

(4) Telecommunication identifying information or access device (as defined in 18 U.S.C. 1029(e)).

§ 603.3 Identity theft report.

(a) The term ''identity theft report'' means a report—

(1) That alleges identity theft with as much specificity as the consumer can provide;

(2) That is a copy of an official, valid report filed by the consumer with a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, including the United States Postal Inspection Service, the filing of which subjects the person filing the report to criminal penalties relating to the filing of false information, if, in fact, the information in the report is false; and

(3) That may include additional information or documentation that an information furnisher or consumer reporting agency reasonably requests for the purpose of determining the validity of the alleged identity theft, provided that the information furnisher or consumer reporting agency:

(i) Makes such request not later than fifteen days after the date of receipt of the copy of the report form identified in paragraph (a)(2) of this section or the request by the consumer for the particular service, whichever shall be the later;

(ii) Makes any supplemental requests for information or documentation and final determination on the acceptance of the identity theft report within another fifteen days after its initial request for information or documentation; and

(iii) Shall have five days to make a final determination on the acceptance of the identity theft report, in the event that the consumer reporting agency or information furnisher receives any such additional information or documentation on the eleventh day or later within the fifteen day period set forth in paragraph (a)(3)(ii) of this section.

(b) Examples of the specificity referenced in paragraph (a)(1) of this section are provided for illustrative purposes only, as follows:

(1) Specific dates relating to the identity theft such as when the loss or theft of personal information occurred or when the fraud(s) using the personal information occurred, and how the consumer discovered or otherwise learned of the theft.

(2) Identification information or any other information about the perpetrator, if known.

(3) Name(s) of information furnisher(s), account numbers, or other relevant account information related to the identity theft.

(4) Any other information known to the consumer about the identity theft.

(c) Examples of when it would or would not be reasonable to request additional information or documentation referenced in paragraph (a)(3) of this section are provided for illustrative purposes only, as follows:

(1) A law enforcement report containing detailed information about the identity theft and the signature, badge number or other identification information of the individual law enforcement official taking the report should be sufficient on its face to support a victim's request. In this case, without an identifiable concern, such as an indication that the report was fraudulent, it would not be reasonable for an information furnisher or

consumer reporting agency to request additional information or documentation.

(2) A consumer might provide a law enforcement report similar to the report in paragraph (c)(1) of this section but certain important information such as the consumer's date of birth or Social Security number may be missing because the consumer chose not to provide it. The information furnisher or consumer reporting agency could accept this report, but it would be reasonable to require that the consumer provide the missing information.

(3) A consumer might provide a law enforcement report generated by an automated system with a simple allegation that an identity theft occurred to support a request for a tradeline block or cessation of information furnishing. In such a case, it would be reasonable for an information furnisher or consumer reporting agency to ask that the consumer fill out and have notarized the Commission's ID Theft Affidavit or a similar form and provide some form of identification documentation.

(4) A consumer might provide a law enforcement report generated by an automated system with a simple allegation that an identity theft occurred to support a request for an extended fraud alert. In this case, it would not be reasonable for a consumer reporting agency to require additional documentation or information, such as a notarized affidavit.

PART 604—FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT RULES

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, secs. 3, 111, 112, 114, 151, 153, 211, 212, 213, 214, 216, 311, 315; 15 U.S.C. 1681s.

§ 604.1 Severability.

All parts and subparts of this subchapter are separate and severable from one another. If any part or subpart is stayed or determined to be invalid, the Commission intends that the remaining parts and subparts shall continue in effect.

[69 FR 29063, May 20, 2004]

PART 610–FREE ANNUAL FILE DISCLOSURES

Sec.

610.1 Definitions and rule of construction.
610.2 Centralized source for requesting annual file disclosures from nationwide consumer reporting agencies.
610.3 Streamlined process for requesting annual file disclosures from nationwide specialty consumer reporting agencies.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sections 211 (a) and (d).

SOURCE: 69 FR 35496, June 24, 2004, unless otherwise noted.

§ 610.1 Definitions and rule of construction.

(a) The definitions and rule of construction set forth in this section apply throughout this part.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) *Annual file disclosure* means a file disclosure that is provided to a consumer, upon consumer request and without charge, once in any 12-month period, in compliance with section 612(a) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681j(a).

(2) *Associated consumer reporting agency* means a consumer reporting agency that owns or maintains consumer files housed within systems operated by one or more nationwide consumer reporting agencies.

(3) *Consumer* means an individual.

(4) *Consumer report* has the meaning provided in section 603(d) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681a(d).

(5) *Consumer reporting agency* has the meaning provided in section 603(f) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681a(f).

(6) *Extraordinary request volume,* except as provided in sections 610.2(i) and 610.3(g) of this part, occurs when the number of consumers requesting or attempting to request file disclosures during any 24-hour period is more than 175% of the rolling 90-day daily average of consumers requesting or attempting to request file disclosures. For example, if over the previous 90 days an average of 100 consumers per day requested or attempted to request file disclosures, then extraordinary request volume would be any volume greater than 175% of 100, i.e., 176 or more requests in a single 24-hour period.

(7) *File disclosure* means a disclosure by a consumer reporting agency pursuant to section 609 of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681g.

(8) *High request volume,* except as provided in sections 610.2(i) and 610.3(g) of this part, occurs when the number of consumers requesting or attempting to

request file disclosures during any 24-hour period is more than 125% of the rolling 90-day daily average of consumers requesting or attempting to request file disclosures. For example, if over the previous 90 days an average of 100 consumers per day requested or attempted to request file disclosures, then high request volume would be any volume greater than 125% of 100, i.e., 126 or more requests in a single 24-hour period.

(9) *Nationwide consumer reporting agency* means a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis as defined in section 603(p) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681a(p).

(10) *Nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency* has the meaning provided in section 603(w) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681a(w).

(11) *Request method* means the method by which a consumer chooses to communicate a request for an annual file disclosure.

(c) *Rule of construction*. The examples in this part are illustrative and not exclusive. Compliance with an example, to the extent applicable, constitutes compliance with this part.

§610.2 Centralized source for requesting annual file disclosures from nationwide consumer reporting agencies.

(a) *Purpose*. The purpose of the centralized source is to enable consumers to make a single request to obtain annual file disclosures from all nationwide consumer reporting agencies, as required under section 612(a) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681j(a).

(b) *Establishment and operation*. All nationwide consumer reporting agencies shall jointly design, fund, implement, maintain, and operate a centralized source for the purpose described in paragraph (a) of this section. The centralized source required by this part shall:

(1) Enable consumers to request annual file disclosures by any of the following request methods, at the consumers option:

(i) A single, dedicated Internet website;

(ii) A single, dedicated toll-free telephone number; and

(iii) Mail directed to a single address;

(2) Be designed, funded, implemented, maintained, and operated in a manner that:

(i) Has adequate capacity to accept requests from the reasonably anticipated volume of consumers contacting the centralized source through each request method, as determined in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section;

(ii) Collects only as much personally identifiable information as is reasonably necessary to properly identify the consumer as required under the Fair Credit Reporting Act, section 610(a)(1), 15 U.S.C. 1681h(a)(1), and other applicable laws and regulations, and to process the transaction(s) requested by the consumer;

(iii) Provides information through the centralized source website and telephone number regarding how to make a request by all request methods required under section 610.2(b)(1) of this part; and

(iv) Provides clear and easily understandable information and instructions to consumers, including, but not necessarily limited to:

(A) Providing information on the progress of the consumers request while the consumer is engaged in the process of requesting a file disclosure;

(B) For a website request method, providing access to a ''help'' or ''frequently asked questions'' screen, which includes specific information that consumers might reasonably need to request file disclosures, the answers to questions that consumers might reasonably ask, and instructions whereby a consumer may file a complaint with the centralized source and with the Federal Trade Commission;

(C) In the event that a consumer requesting a file disclosure through the centralized source cannot be properly identified in accordance with the Fair Credit Reporting Act, section 610(a)(1), 15 U.S.C. 1681h(a)(1), and other applicable laws and regulations, providing a statement that the consumers identity cannot be verified; and directions on how to complete the request, including what additional information or documentation will be required to complete

the request, and how to submit such information; and

(D) A statement indicating that the consumer has reached the website or telephone number operated by the national credit reporting agencies for ordering free annual credit reports, as required by federal law; and

(3) Make available to consumers a standardized form established jointly by the nationwide consumer reporting agencies, which consumers may use to make a request for an annual file disclosure, either by mail or on the Internet website required under section 610.2(b)(1) of this part, from the centralized source required by this part. The form provided at 16 CFR Part 698, Appendix D, may be used to comply with this section.

(c) *Requirement to anticipate.* The nationwide consumer reporting agencies shall implement reasonable procedures to anticipate, and to respond to, the volume of consumers who will contact the centralized source through each request method, to request, or attempt to request, a file disclosure, including developing and implementing contingency plans to address circumstances that are reasonably likely to occur and that may materially and adversely impact the operation of the nationwide consumer reporting agency, a centralized source request method, or the centralized source.

(1) The contingency plans required by this section shall include reasonable measures to minimize the impact of such circumstances on the operation of the centralized source and on consumers contacting, or attempting to contact, the centralized source.

(i) Such reasonable measures to minimize impact shall include, but are not necessarily limited to:

(A) To the extent reasonably practicable under the circumstances, providing information to consumers on how to use another available request method;

(B) To the extent reasonably practicable under the circumstances, communicating, to a consumer who attempts but is unable to make a request, the fact that a condition exists that has precluded the centralized source from accepting all requests, and the period of time after which the centralized source is reasonably anticipated to be able to accept the consumers request for an annual file disclosure; and

(C) Taking all reasonable steps to restore the centralized source to normal operating status as quickly as reasonably practicable under the circumstances.

(ii) Reasonable measures to minimize impact may also include, as appropriate, collecting request information but declining to accept the request for processing until a reasonable later time, provided that the consumer is clearly and prominently informed, to the extent reasonably practicable under the circumstances, of when the request will be accepted for processing.

(2) A nationwide consumer reporting agency shall not be deemed in violation of section 610.2(b)(2)(i) of this part if a centralized source request method is unavailable to accept requests for a reasonable period of time for purposes of conducting maintenance on the request method, provided that the other required request methods remain available during such time.

(d) *Disclosures required.* If a nationwide consumer reporting agency has the ability to provide a consumer report to a third party relating to a consumer, regardless of whether the consumer report is owned by that nationwide consumer reporting agency or by an associated consumer reporting agency, that nationwide consumer reporting agency shall, upon proper identification in compliance with section 610(a)(1) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681h(a)(1), provide an annual file disclosure to such consumer if the consumer makes a request through the centralized source.

(e) *High Request volume and extraordinary request volume*—(1) *High request volume.* Provided that a nationwide consumer reporting agency has implemented reasonable procedures developed in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, entitled ''requirement to anticipate,'' the nationwide consumer reporting agency shall not be deemed in violation of paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section for any period of time in which a centralized source request method, the centralized source, or the nationwide consumer reporting

agency experiences high request volume, if the nationwide consumer reporting agency:

(i) Collects all consumer request information and delays accepting the request for processing until a reasonable later time; and

(ii) Clearly and prominently informs the consumer of when the request will be accepted for processing.

(2) *Extraordinary request volume.* Provided that the nationwide consumer reporting agency has implemented reasonable procedures developed in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section, entitled ''requirement to anticipate,'' the nationwide consumer reporting agency shall not be deemed in violation of paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section for any period of time during which a particular centralized source request method, the centralized source, or the nationwide consumer reporting agency experiences extraordinary request volume.

(f) *Information use and disclosure.* Any personally identifiable information collected from consumers as a result of a request for annual file disclosure, or other disclosure required by the Fair Credit Reporting Act, made through the centralized source, may be used or disclosed by the centralized source or a nationwide consumer reporting agency only:

(1) To provide the annual file disclosure or other disclosure required under the FCRA requested by the consumer;

(2) To process a transaction requested by the consumer at the same time as a request for annual file disclosure or other disclosure;

(3) To comply with applicable legal requirements, including those imposed by the Fair Credit Reporting Act and this part; and

(4) To update personally identifiable information already maintained by the nationwide consumer reporting agency for the purpose of providing consumer reports, provided that the nationwide consumer reporting agency uses and discloses the updated personally identifiable information subject to the same restrictions that would apply, under any applicable provision of law or regulation, to the information updated or replaced.

(g) *Communications provided by centralized source.* (1) Any communications or instructions, including any advertising or marketing, provided through the centralized source shall not interfere with, detract from, contradict, or otherwise undermine the purpose of the centralized source stated in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Examples of interfering, detracting, inconsistent, and/or undermining communications include:

(i) A website that contains pop-up advertisements or other offers or promotions that hinder the consumers ability to complete an online request for an annual file disclosure;

(ii) Centralized source materials that represent, expressly or by implication, that a consumer must purchase a paid product in order to receive or to understand the annual file disclosure;

(iii) Centralized source materials that represent, expressly or by implication, that annual file disclosures are not free, or that obtaining an annual file disclosure will have a negative impact on the consumers credit standing; and

(iv) Centralized source materials that falsely represent, expressly or by implication, that a product or service offered ancillary to receipt of a file disclosure, such as a credit score or credit monitoring service, is free, or fail to clearly and prominently disclose that consumers must cancel a service, advertised as free for an initial period of time, to avoid being charged, if such is the case.

(h) *Effective date.* Sections 610.1 and 610.2 shall become effective on December 1, 2004.

(i) *Transition*—(1) *Regional rollout.* The centralized source required by this part shall be made available to consumers in a cumulative manner, as follows:

(i) For consumers residing in Alaska, Arizona, California, Colorado, Hawaii, Idaho, Montana, New Mexico, Nevada, Oregon, Utah, Washington, and Wyoming, the centralized source shall become available on or before December 1, 2004;

(ii) For consumers residing in Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Michigan, Minnesota, Missouri, Nebraska, North

Dakota, Ohio, South Dakota, and Wisconsin, the centralized source shall become available on or before March 1, 2005;

(iii) For consumers residing in Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Louisiana, Mississippi, Oklahoma, South Carolina, Tennessee, and Texas, the centralized source shall become available on or before June 1, 2005; and

(iv) For all other consumers, including consumers residing in Connecticut, Delaware, District of Columbia, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, Virginia, West Virginia, and all United States territories and possessions, the centralized source shall become available on or before September 1, 2005.

(2) *High request volume during transition*—(i) *During the period of December 1, 2004 through December 7, 2004,* high request volume shall mean the following:

(A) For an individual request method: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source through the request method in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the daily total number of consumers that were reasonably anticipated to contact the centralized source, in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section, through that request method.

(B) For the centralized source as a whole: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the daily total number of consumers that were reasonably anticipated to contact the centralized source, in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section, through any request method.

(C) For a nationwide consumer reporting agency: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the daily total number of consumers that were reasonably anticipated to contact that nationwide consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures, in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(ii) *During the period of December 8, 2004 through August 31, 2005,* high request volume shall mean the following:

(A) For an individual request method: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source through the request method in any 24-hour period is more than 115 % of the rolling 7-day daily average number of consumers who contacted or attempted to contact the centralized source to request file disclosures through that request method.

(B) For the centralized source as a whole: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the rolling 7-day daily average number of consumers who contacted or attempted to contact the centralized source to request file disclosures through any request method.

(C) For a nationwide consumer reporting agency: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the rolling 7-day daily average of consumers who requested any type of file disclosure from that nationwide consumer reporting agency.

(3) *Extraordinary request volume during transition*—(i) *During the period of December 1, 2004 through December 7, 2004,* extraordinary request volume shall mean the following:

(A) For an individual request method: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source through the request method in any 24-hour period is more than 175% of the daily total number of consumers that were reasonably anticipated to contact the centralized source, in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section, through that request method.

(B) For the centralized source as a whole: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact

the centralized source in any 24-hour period is more than 175% of the daily total number of consumers that were reasonably anticipated to contact the centralized source, in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section, through any request method.

(C) For a nationwide consumer reporting agency: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures in any 24-hour period is more than 175% of the daily total number of consumers that were reasonably anticipated to contact that nationwide consumer reporting agency to request their file disclosures, in compliance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(ii) *During the period of December 8, 2004 through August 31, 2005*, extraordinary request volume shall mean the following:

(A) For an individual request method: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source through the request method in a 24-hour period is more than 175% of the rolling 7-day daily average number of consumers who contacted or attempted to contact the centralized source to request file disclosures through that request method.

(B) For the centralized source as a whole: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the centralized source in a 24-hour period is more than 175% of the rolling 7-day daily average number of consumers who contacted or attempted to contact the centralized source to request file disclosures through any request method.

(C) For a nationwide consumer reporting agency: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures in a 24-hour period is more than 175% of the rolling 7-day daily average of consumers who requested any type of file disclosure from that nationwide consumer reporting agency.

§610.3 Streamlined process for requesting annual file disclosures from nationwide specialty consumer reporting agencies.

(a) *Streamlined process requirements.* Any nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency shall have a streamlined process for accepting and processing consumer requests for annual file disclosures. The streamlined process required by this part shall:

(1) Enable consumers to request annual file disclosures by a toll-free telephone number that:

(i) Provides clear and prominent instructions for requesting disclosures by any additional available request methods, that do not interfere with, detract from, contradict, or otherwise undermine the ability of consumers to obtain annual file disclosures through the streamlined process required by this part;

(ii) Is published, in conjunction with all other published numbers for the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency, in any telephone directory in which any telephone number for the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency is published; and

(iii) Is clearly and prominently posted on any website owned or maintained by the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency that is related to consumer reporting, along with instructions for requesting disclosures by any additional available request methods; and

(2) Be designed, funded, implemented, maintained, and operated in a manner that:

(i) Has adequate capacity to accept requests from the reasonably anticipated volume of consumers contacting the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency through the streamlined process, as determined in compliance with paragraph (b) of this section;

(ii) Collects only as much personal information as is reasonably necessary to properly identify the consumer as required under the Fair Credit Reporting Act, section 610(a)(1), 15 U.S.C. 1681h(a)(1), and other applicable laws and regulations; and

(iii) Provides clear and easily understandable information and instructions to consumers, including but not necessarily limited to:

(A) Providing information on the status of the consumers request while the consumer is in the process of making a request;

(B) For a website request method, providing access to a ''help'' or ''frequently asked questions'' screen, which includes more specific information that consumers might reasonably need to order their file disclosure, the answers to questions that consumers might reasonably ask, and instructions whereby a consumer may file a complaint with the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency and with the Federal Trade Commission; and

(C) In the event that a consumer requesting a file disclosure cannot be properly identified in accordance with the Fair Credit Reporting Act, section 610(a)(1), 15 U.S.C. 1681h(a)(1), and other applicable laws and regulations, providing a statement that the consumers identity cannot be verified; and directions on how to complete the request, including what additional information or documentation will be required to complete the request, and how to submit such information.

(b) *Requirement to anticipate.* A nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency shall implement reasonable procedures to anticipate, and respond to, the volume of consumers who will contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency through the streamlined process to request, or attempt to request, file disclosures, including developing and implementing contingency plans to address circumstances that are reasonably likely to occur and that may materially and adversely impact the operation of the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency, a request method, or the streamlined process.

(1) The contingency plans required by this section shall include reasonable measures to minimize the impact of such circumstances on the operation of the streamlined process and on consumers contacting, or attempting to contact, the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency through the streamlined process.

(i) Such reasonable measures to minimize impact shall include, but are not necessarily limited to:

(A) To the extent reasonably practicable under the circumstances, providing information to consumers on how to use another available request method;

(B) To the extent reasonably practicable under the circumstances, communicating, to a consumer who attempts but is unable to make a request, the fact that a condition exists that has precluded the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency from accepting all requests, and the period of time after which the agency is reasonably anticipated to be able to accept the consumers request for an annual file disclosure; and

(C) Taking all reasonable steps to restore the streamlined process to normal operating status as quickly as reasonably practicable under the circumstances.

(ii) Measures to minimize impact may also include, as appropriate, collecting request information but declining to accept the request for processing until a reasonable later time, provided that the consumer is clearly and prominently informed, to the extent reasonably practicable under the circumstances, of when the request will be accepted for processing.

(2) A nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency shall not be deemed in violation of section 610.3(a)(2)(i) if the toll-free telephone number required by this part is unavailable to accept requests for a reasonable period of time for purposes of conducting maintenance on the request method, provided that the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency makes other request methods available to consumers during such time.

(c) *High request volume and extraordinary request volume*—(1) *High request volume.* Provided that the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency has implemented reasonable procedures developed in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, entitled ''requirement to anticipate,'' a nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency shall not be deemed in violation of paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section for any period of time during which a streamlined process request method or the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency experiences

high request volume, if the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency:

(i) Collects all consumer request information and delays accepting the request for processing until a reasonable later time; and

(ii) Clearly and prominently informs the consumer of when the request will be accepted for processing.

(2) *Extraordinary request volume.* Provided that the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency has implemented reasonable procedures developed in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, entitled ''requirement to anticipate,'' a nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency shall not be deemed in violation of paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section for any period of time during which a streamlined process request method or the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency experiences extraordinary request volume.

(d) *Information use and disclosure.* Any personally identifiable information collected from consumers as a result of a request for annual file disclosure, or other disclosure required by the Fair Credit Reporting Act, made through the streamlined process, may be used or disclosed by the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency only:

(1) To provide the annual file disclosure or other disclosure required under the FCRA requested by the consumer;

(2) To process a transaction requested by the consumer at the same time as a request for annual file disclosure or other disclosure;

(3) To comply with applicable legal requirements, including those imposed by the Fair Credit Reporting Act and this part; and

(4) To update personally identifiable information already maintained by the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency for the purpose of providing consumer reports, provided that the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency uses and discloses the updated personally identifiable information subject to the same restrictions that would apply, under any applicable provision of law or regulation, to the information updated or replaced.

(e) *Requirement to accept or redirect requests.* If a consumer requests an annual file disclosure through a method other than the streamlined process established by the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency in compliance with this part, a nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency shall:

(1) Accept the consumers request; or

(2) Instruct the consumer how to make the request using the streamlined process required by this part.

(f) *Effective date.* This section shall become effective on December 1, 2004.

(g) *High request volume and extraordinary request volume during initial transition.* (1) During the period of December 1, 2004 through February 28, 2005, high request volume shall mean the following:

(i) For an individual request method: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency through a streamlined process request method in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the daily total number of consumers who were reasonably anticipated to contact that request method, in compliance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) For a nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency: High request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures in any 24-hour period is more than 115% of the number of consumers who were reasonably anticipated to contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency to request their file disclosures, in compliance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(2) *Extraordinary request volume.* During the period of December 1, 2004 through February 28, 2005, extraordinary request volume shall mean the following:

(i) For an individual request method: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency through a streamlined process request method in any 24-hour period is more than 175% of the daily total number of consumers who were reasonably predicted to contact that

request method, in compliance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) For a nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency: Extraordinary request volume occurs when the number of consumers contacting or attempting to contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency to request file disclosures in any 24-hour period is more than 175% of the number of consumers who were reasonably anticipated to contact the nationwide specialty consumer reporting agency to request their file disclosures, in compliance with paragraph (b) of this section.

PART 611—PROHIBITION AGAINST CIRCUMVENTING TREATMENT AS A NATIONWIDE CONSUMER REPORTING AGENCY

Sec.
611.1 Rule of construction.
611.2 General prohibition.
611.3 Limitation on applicability.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 211(b); 15 U.S.C. 1681x.

SOURCE: 69 FR 29063, May 20, 2004, unless otherwise noted.

§ 611.1 Rule of construction.

The examples in this part are illustrative and not exclusive. Compliance with an example, to the extent applicable, constitutes compliance with this part.

§ 611.2 General prohibition.

(a) A consumer reporting agency shall not circumvent or evade treatment as a ''consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis' as defined under section 603(p) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681a(p), by any means, including, but not limited to:

(1) Corporate organization, reorganization, structure, or restructuring, including merger, acquisition, dissolution, divestiture, or asset sale of a consumer reporting agency; or

(2) Maintaining or merging public record and credit account information in a manner that is substantially equivalent to that described in paragraphs (1) and (2) of section 603(p) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681a(p).

(b) *Examples:*

(1) *Circumvention through reorganization by data type.* XYZ Inc. is a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis. It restructures its operations so that public record information is assembled and maintained only by its corporate affiliate, ABC Inc. XYZ continues operating as a consumer reporting agency but ceases to comply with the FCRA obligations of a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis, asserting that it no longer meets the definition found in FCRA section 603 (p), because it no longer maintains public record information. XYZ's conduct is a circumvention or evasion of treatment as a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis, and thus violates this section.

(2) *Circumvention through reorganization by regional operations.* PDQ Inc. is a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis. It restructures its operations so that corporate affiliates separately assemble and maintain all information on consumers residing in each state. PDQ continues to operate as a consumer reporting agency but ceases to comply with the FCRA obligations of a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis, asserting that it no longer meets the definition found in FCRA section 603(p), because it no longer operates on a nationwide basis. PDQ's conduct is a circumvention or evasion of treatment as a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis, and thus violates this section.

(3) *Circumvention by a newly formed entity.* Smith Co. is a new entrant in the marketplace for consumer reports that bear on a consumer's credit worthiness, standing and capacity. Smith Co. organizes itself into two affiliated companies: Smith Credit Co. and Smith Public Records Co. Smith Credit Co. assembles and maintains credit account information from persons who

furnish that information regularly and in the ordinary course of business on consumers residing nationwide. Smith Public Records Co. assembles and maintains public record information on consumers nationwide. Neither Smith Co. nor its affiliated organizations comply with FCRA obligations of consumer reporting agencies that compile and maintain files on consumers on a nationwide basis. Smith Co.''s conduct is a circumvention or evasion of treatment as a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis, and thus violates this section.

(4) Bona fide, arms-length transaction with unaffiliated party. Foster Ltd. is a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis. Foster Ltd. sells its public record information business to an unaffiliated company in a bona fide, arms-length transaction. Foster Ltd. ceases to assemble, evaluate and maintain public record information on consumers residing nationwide, and ceases to offer reports containing public record information. Foster Ltd.''s conduct is not a circumvention or evasion of treatment as a consumer reporting agency that compiles and maintains files on consumers on a nationwide basis. Foster Ltd.''s conduct does not violate this part.

§611.3 Limitation on applicability.

Any person who is otherwise in violation of §611.2 shall be deemed to be in compliance with this part if such person is in compliance with all obligations imposed upon consumer reporting agencies that compile and maintain files on consumers on a nationwide basis under the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq*.

PART 613—DURATION OF ACTIVE DUTY ALERTS

Sec.
613.1 Duration of active duty alerts.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 112(a); 15 U.S.C. 1681c–1.

§613.1 Duration of active duty alerts.

The duration of an active duty alert shall be twelve months.

[69 FR 63934, Nov. 3, 2004]

PART 614—APPROPRIATE PROOF OF IDENTITY

Sec.
614.1 Appropriate proof of identity.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 112(b).

§614.1 Appropriate proof of identity.

(a) Consumer reporting agencies shall develop and implement reasonable requirements for what information consumers shall provide to constitute proof of identity for purposes of sections 605A, 605B, and 609(a)(1) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act. In developing these requirements, the consumer reporting agencies must:

(1) Ensure that the information is sufficient to enable the consumer reporting agency to match consumers with their files; and

(2) Adjust the information to be commensurate with an identifiable risk of harm arising from misidentifying the consumer.

(b) Examples of information that might constitute reasonable information requirements for proof of identity are provided for illustrative purposes only, as follows:

(1) Consumer file match: The identification information of the consumer including his or her full name (first, middle initial, last, suffix), any other or previously used names, current and/or recent full address (street number and name, apt. no., city, state, and zip code), full 9 digits of Social Security number, and/or date of birth.

(2) Additional proof of identity: copies of government issued identification documents, utility bills, and/or other methods of authentication of a person's identity which may include, but would not be limited to, answering questions to which only the consumer might be expected to know the answer.

[69 FR 63934, Nov. 3, 2004]

PART 642—PRESCREEN OPT-OUT NOTICE

Sec.
642.1 Purpose and scope.
642.2 Definitions.
642.3 Prescreen opt-out notice.
642.4 Effective date.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 213(a); 15 U.S.C. 1681m(d).

SOURCE: 70 FR 5032, Jan. 31, 2005, unless otherwise noted.

§ 642.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) *Purpose*. This part implements section 213(a) of the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003, which requires the Federal Trade Commission to establish the format, type size, and manner of the notices to consumers, required by section 615(d) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (''FCRA''), regarding the right to prohibit (''opt out'' of) the use of information in a consumer report to send them solicitations of credit or insurance.

(b) *Scope*. This part applies to any person who uses a consumer report on any consumer in connection with any credit or insurance transaction that is not initiated by the consumer, and that is provided to that person under section 604(c)(1)(B) of the FCRA (15 U.S.C. 1681b(c)(1)(B)).

§ 642.2 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Simple and easy to understand* means:

(1) A layered format as described in § 642.3 of this part;

(2) Plain language designed to be understood by ordinary consumers; and

(3) Use of clear and concise sentences, paragraphs, and sections.

(i) *Examples*. For purposes of this part, examples of factors to be considered in determining whether a statement is in plain language and uses clear and concise sentences, paragraphs, and sections include:

(A) Use of short explanatory sentences;

(B) Use of definite, concrete, everyday words;

(C) Use of active voice;

(D) Avoidance of multiple negatives;

(E) Avoidance of legal and technical business terminology;

(F) Avoidance of explanations that are imprecise and reasonably subject to different interpretations; and

(G) Use of language that is not misleading.

(ii) [Reserved]

(b) *Principal promotional document* means the document designed to be seen first by the consumer, such as the cover letter.

§ 642.3 Prescreen opt-out notice.

Any person who uses a consumer report on any consumer in connection with any credit or insurance transaction that is not initiated by the consumer, and that is provided to that person under section 604(c)(1)(B) of the FCRA (15 U.S.C. 1681b(c)(1)(B)), shall, with each written solicitation made to the consumer about the transaction, provide the consumer with the following statement, consisting of a short portion and a long portion, which shall be in the same language as the offer of credit or insurance:

(a) *Short notice*. The short notice shall be a clear and conspicuous, and simple and easy to understand statement as follows:

(1) *Content*. The short notice shall state that the consumer has the right to opt out of receiving prescreened solicitations, and shall provide the toll-free number the consumer can call to exercise that right. The short notice also shall direct the consumer to the existence and location of the long notice, and shall state the heading for the long notice. The short notice shall not contain any other information.

(2) *Form*. The short notice shall be:

(i) In a type size that is larger than the type size of the principal text on the same page, but in no event smaller than 12-point type, or if provided by electronic means, then reasonable steps shall be taken to ensure that the type size is larger than the type size of the principal text on the same page;

(ii) On the front side of the first page of the principal promotional document in the solicitation, or, if provided electronically, on the same page and in close proximity to the principal marketing message;

(iii) Located on the page and in a format so that the statement is distinct

from other text, such as inside a border; and

(iv) In a type style that is distinct from the principal type style used on the same page, such as bolded, italicized, underlined, and/or in a color that contrasts with the color of the principal text on the page, if the solicitation is in more than one color.

(b) *Long notice*. The long notice shall be a clear and conspicuous, and simple and easy to understand statement as follows:

(1) *Content*. The long notice shall state the information required by section 615(d) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681m(d)). The long notice shall not include any other information that interferes with, detracts from, contradicts, or otherwise undermines the purpose of the notice.

(2) *Form*. The long notice shall:

(i) Appear in the solicitation;

(ii) Be in a type size that is no smaller than the type size of the principal text on the same page, and, for solicitations provided other than by electronic means, the type size shall in no event be smaller than 8-point type;

(iii) Begin with a heading in capital letters and underlined, and identifying the long notice as the ''PRESCREEN & OPT-OUT NOTICE'';

(iv) Be in a type style that is distinct from the principal type style used on the same page, such as bolded, italicized, underlined, and/or in a color that contrasts with the color of the principal text on the page, if the solicitation is in more than one color; and

(v) Be set apart from other text on the page, such as by including a blank line above and below the statement, and by indenting both the left and right margins from other text on the page.

§ 642.4 Effective date.

This part is effective on August 1, 2005.

PART 680—AFFILIATE MARKETING

Sec.
680.1 Purpose and scope.
680.2 Examples.
680.3 Definitions.
680.4–680.20 [Reserved]
680.21 Affiliate marketing opt-out and exceptions.
680.22 Scope and duration of opt-out.
680.23 Contents of opt-out notice; consolidated and equivalent notices.
680.24 Reasonable opportunity to opt out.
680.25 Reasonable and simple methods of opting out.
680.26 Delivery of opt-out notices.
680.27 Renewal of opt-out.
680.28 Effective date, compliance date, and prospective application.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 214(b), Pub. L. 108-159; 15 U.S.C. 1681s-3

SOURCE: 72 FR 61455, Oct. 30, 2007, unless otherwise noted.

§ 680.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) *Purpose*. The purpose of this part is to implement section 214 of the Fair and Accu-rate Credit Transactions Act of 2003, which (by adding section 624 to Fair Credit Reporting Act) regulates the use, for marketing solicitation purposes, of consumer information provided by persons affiliated with the person making the solicitation.

(b) *Scope*. This part applies to any person over which the Federal Trade Commission has jurisdiction that uses information from its affiliates for the purpose of marketing solicitations, or provides information to its affiliates for that purpose.

§ 680.2 Examples.

The examples in this part are not exclusive. Compliance with an example, to the extent applicable, constitutes compliance with this part. Examples in a paragraph illustrate only the issue described in the paragraph and do not illustrate any other issue that may arise in this part.

§ 680.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Act*. The term ''Act'' means the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq.*).

(b) *Affiliate*. The term ''affiliate'' means any company that is related by common ownership or common corporate control with another company.

(c) *Clear and conspicuous*. The term ''clear and conspicuous'' means reasonably under-standable and designed to call attention to the nature and significance of the information presented.

(d) *Common ownership or common corporate control*. The term ''common ownership or common corporate control''

means a relationship between two companies under which:

(1) One company has, with respect to the other company:

(i) Ownership, control, or the power to vote 25 percent or more of the outstanding shares of any class of voting security of a company, directly or indirectly, or acting through one or more other persons;

(ii) Control in any manner over the election of a majority of the directors, trustees, or general partners (or individuals exercising similar functions) of a company; or

(iii) The power to exercise, directly or indirectly, a controlling influence over the management or policies of a company, as the Commission determines; or

(2) Any person has, with respect to both companies, a relationship described in paragraphs (d)(1)(i) through (d)(1)(iii) of this section.

(e) *Company*. The term ''company'' means any corporation, limited liability company, business trust, general or limited partnership, association, or similar organization.

(f) *Concise*—(1) *In general*. The term ''concise'' means a reasonably brief expression or statement.

(2) *Combination with other required disclosures*. A notice required by this part may be concise even if it is combined with other disclosures required or authorized by federal or state law.

(g) *Consumer*. The term ''consumer'' means an individual.

(h) *Eligibility information*. The term ''eligibility information'' means any information the communication of which would be a consumer report if the exclusions from the definition of ''consumer report'' in section 603(d)(2)(A) of the Act did not apply. Eligibility information does not include aggregate or blind data that does not contain personal identifiers such as account numbers, names, or addresses.

(i) *Person*. The term ''person'' means any individual, partnership, corporation, trust, estate, cooperative, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency, or other entity.

(j) *Pre-existing business relationship*—(1) *In general*. The term ''pre-existing business relationship'' means a relationship between a person, or a person's licensed agent, and a consumer based on—

(i) A financial contract between the person and the consumer which is in force on the date on which the consumer is sent a solicitation covered by this part;

(ii) The purchase, rental, or lease by the consumer of the persons' goods or services, or a financial transaction (including holding an active account or a policy in force or having another continuing relationship) between the consumer and the person, during the 18-month period immediately preceding the date on which the consumer is sent a solicitation covered by this part; or

(iii) An inquiry or application by the consumer regarding a product or service offered by that person during the three-month period immediately preceding the date on which the consumer is sent a solicitation covered by this part.

(2) *Examples of pre-existing business relationships*. (i) If a consumer has an existing loan account with a creditor, the creditor has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can use eligibility information it receives from its affiliates to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services.

(ii) If a consumer obtained a mortgage from a mortgage lender, but refinanced the mortgage loan with a different lender when the mortgage loan came due, the first mortgage lender has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can use eligibility information it receives from its affiliates to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services for 18 months after the date the outstanding balance of the loan is paid and the loan is closed.

(iii) If a consumer obtains a mortgage, the mortgage lender has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer. If the mortgage lender sells the consumer's entire loan to an investor, the mortgage lender has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can use eligibility information it receives from its affiliates to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services for 18 months after the date it sells the loan, and the investor has a pre-existing

business relationship with the consumer upon purchasing the loan. If, however, the mortgage lender sells a fractional interest in the consumer's loan to an investor but also retains an ownership interest in the loan, the mortgage lender continues to have a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer, but the investor does not have a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer. If the mortgage lender retains ownership of the loan, but sells ownership of the servicing rights to the consumer's loan, the mortgage lender continues to have a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer. The purchaser of the servicing rights also has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer as of the date it purchases ownership of the servicing rights, but only if it collects payments from or otherwise deals directly with the consumer on a continuing basis.

(iv) If a consumer applies to a creditor for a product or service that it offers, but does not obtain a product or service from or enter into a financial contract or transaction with the creditor, the creditor has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can therefore use eligibility information it receives from an affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services for three months after the date of the application.

(v) If a consumer makes a telephone inquiry to a creditor about its products or services and provides contact information to the creditor, but does not obtain a product or service from or enter into a financial contract or transaction with the creditor, the creditor has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can therefore use eligibility information it receives from an affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services for three months after the date of the inquiry.

(vi) If a consumer makes an inquiry to a creditor by e-mail about its products or services, but does not obtain a product or service from or enter into a financial contract or transaction with the creditor, the creditor has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can therefore use eligibility information it receives from an affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services for three months after the date of the inquiry.

(vii) If a consumer has an existing relationship with a creditor that is part of a group of affiliated companies, makes a telephone call to the centralized call center for the group of affiliated companies to inquire about products or services offered by the insurance affiliate, and provides contact information to the call center, the call constitutes an inquiry to the insurance affiliate that offers those products or services. The insurance affiliate has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and can therefore use eligibility information it receives from its affiliated creditor to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services for three months after the date of the inquiry.

(3) *Examples where no pre-existing business relationship is created.* (i) If a consumer makes a telephone call to a centralized call center for a group of affiliated companies to inquire about the consumer's existing account with a creditor, the call does not constitute an inquiry to any affiliate other than the creditor that holds the consumer's account and does not establish a pre-existing business relationship between the consumer and any affiliate of the account-holding creditor.

(ii) If a consumer who has a loan account with a creditor makes a telephone call to an af-filiate of the creditor to ask about the affiliate's retail locations and hours, but does not make an inquiry about the affiliate's products or services, the call does not constitute an inquiry and does not establish a pre-existing business relationship between the consumer and the affiliate. Also, the affiliate's capture of the consumer's telephone number does not constitute an inquiry and does not establish a pre-existing business relationship between the consumer and the affiliate.

(iii) If a consumer makes a telephone call to a creditor in response to an advertisement that offers a free promotional item to consumers who call a toll-free number, but the advertisement does not indicate that creditor's

products or services will be marketed to consumers who call in response, the call does not create a pre-existing business relationship between the consumer and the creditor because the consumer has not made an inquiry about a product or service offered by the creditor, but has merely responded to an offer for a free promotional item.

(k) *Solicitation*—(1) *In general.* The term ''solicitation'' means the marketing of a product or service initiated by a person to a particular consumer that is—

(i) Based on eligibility information communicated to that person by its affiliate as described in this part; and

(ii) Intended to encourage the consumer to purchase or obtain such product or service.

(2) *Exclusion of marketing directed at the general public.* A solicitation does not include marketing communications that are directed at the general public. For example, television, general circulation magazine, and billboard advertisements do not constitute solicitations, even if those communications are intended to encourage consumers to purchase products and services from the person initiating the communications.

(3) *Examples of solicitations.* A solicitation would include, for example, a telemarketing call, direct mail, e-mail, or other form of marketing communication directed to a particular consumer that is based on eligibility information received from an affiliate.

(l) *You* means a person described in § 680.1(b).

§§ 680.4—680.20 [Reserved]

§ 680.21 Affiliate marketing opt-out and exceptions.

(a) *Initial notice and opt-out requirement*—(1) *In general.* You may not use eligibility information about a consumer that you receive from an affiliate to make a solicitation for marketing purposes to the consumer, unless—

(i) It is clearly and conspicuously disclosed to the consumer in writing or, if the consumer agrees, electronically, in a concise notice that you may use eligibility information about that consumer received from an affiliate to make solicitations for marketing purposes to the consumer;

(ii) The consumer is provided a reasonable opportunity and a reasonable and simple method to ''opt out,'' or prohibit you from using eligibility information to make solicitations for marketing purposes to the consumer; and

(iii) The consumer has not opted out.

(2) *Example.* A consumer has a homeowner's insurance policy with an insurance company. The insurance company furnishes eligibility information about the consumer to its affiliated creditor. Based on that eligibility information, the creditor wants to make a solicitation to the consumer about its home equity loan products. The creditor does not have a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and none of the other exceptions apply. The creditor is prohibited from using eligibility information received from its insurance affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about its home equity loan products unless the consumer is given a notice and opportunity to opt out and the consumer does not opt out.

(3) *Affiliates who may provide the notice.* The notice required by this paragraph (a) must be provided:

(i) By an affiliate that has or has previously had a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer; or

(ii) As part of a joint notice from two or more members of an affiliated group of companies, provided that at least one of the affiliates on the joint notice has or has previously had a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer.

(b) *Making solicitations*—(1) *In general.* For purposes of this part, you make a solicitation for marketing purposes if—

(i) You receive eligibility information from an affiliate;

(ii) You use that eligibility information to do one or more of the following:

(A) Identify the consumer or type of consumer to receive a solicitation;

(B) Establish criteria used to select the consumer to receive a solicitation; or

(C) Decide which of your products or services to market to the consumer or tailor your solicitation to that consumer; and

(iii) As a result of your use of the eligibility information, the consumer is provided a solicitation.

(2) *Receiving eligibility information from an affiliate, including through a common database.* You may receive eligibility information from an affiliate in various ways, including when the affiliate places that information into a common database that you may access.

(3) *Receipt or use of eligibility information by your service provider.* Except as provided in paragraph (b)(5) of this section, you receive or use an affiliate's eligibility information if a service provider acting on your behalf (whether an affiliate or a nonaffiliated third party) receives or uses that information in the manner described in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) or (b)(1)(ii) of this section. All relevant facts and circumstances will determine whether a person is acting as your service provider when it receives or uses an affiliate's eligibility information in connection with marketing your products and services.

(4) *Use by an affiliate of its own eligibility information.* Unless you have used eligibility information that you receive from an affiliate in the manner described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, you do not make a solicitation subject to this part if your affiliate:

(i) Uses its own eligibility information that it obtained in connection with a pre-existing business relationship it has or had with the consumer to market your products or services to the consumer; or

(ii) Directs its service provider to use the affiliate's own eligibility information that it obtained in connection with a pre-existing business relationship it has or had with the consumer to market your products or services to the consumer, and you do not communicate directly with the service provider regarding that use.

(5) *Use of eligibility information by a service provider*—(i) *In general.* You do not make a solicitation subject to this part if a service provider (including an affiliated or third-party service provider that maintains or accesses a common database that you may access) receives eligibility information from your affiliate that your affiliate obtained in connection with a pre-existing business relationship it has or had with the consumer and uses that eligibility information to market your products or services to the consumer, so long as—

(A) Your affiliate controls access to and use of its eligibility information by the service provider (including the right to establish the specific terms and conditions under which the service provider may use such information to market your products or services);

(B) Your affiliate establishes specific terms and conditions under which the service provider may access and use the affiliate's eligibility information to market your products and services (or those of affiliates generally) to the consumer, such as the identity of the affiliated companies whose products or services may be marketed to the consumer by the service provider, the types of products or services of affiliated companies that may be marketed, and the number of times the consumer may receive marketing materials, and periodically evaluates the service provider's compliance with those terms and conditions;

(C) Your affiliate requires the service provider to implement reasonable policies and procedures designed to ensure that the service provider uses the affiliate's eligibility information in accordance with the terms and conditions established by the affiliate relating to the marketing of your products or services;

(D) Your affiliate is identified on or with the marketing materials provided to the consumer; and

(E) You do not directly use your affiliate's eligibility information in the manner described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section.

(ii) *Writing requirements.* (A) The requirements of paragraphs (b)(5)(i)(A) and (C) of this section must be set forth in a written agreement between your affiliate and the service provider; and

(B) The specific terms and conditions established by your affiliate as provided in paragraph (b)(5)(i)(B) of this section must be set forth in writing.

(6) *Examples of making solicitations.* (i) A consumer has a loan account with a creditor, which is affiliated with an insurance company. The insurance company receives eligibility information

about the consumer from the creditor. The insurance company uses that eligibility information to identify the consumer to receive a solicitation about insurance products, and, as a result, the insurance company provides a solicitation to the consumer about its insurance products. Pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the insurance company has made a solicitation to the consumer.

(ii) The same facts as in the example in paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section, except that after using the eligibility information to identify the consumer to receive a solicitation about insurance products, the insurance company asks the creditor to send the solicitation to the consumer and the creditor does so. Pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the insurance company has made a solicitation to the consumer because it used eligibility information about the consumer that it received from an affiliate to identify the consumer to receive a solicitation about its products or services, and, as a result, a solicitation was provided to the consumer about the insurance company's products.

(iii) The same facts as in the example in paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section, except that eligibility information about consumers that have loan accounts with the creditor is placed into a common database that all members of the affiliated group of companies may independently access and use. Without using the creditor's eligibility information, the insurance company develops selection criteria and provides those criteria, marketing materials, and related instructions to the creditor. The creditor reviews eligibility information about its own consumers using the selection criteria provided by the insurance company to determine which consumers should receive the insurance company's marketing materials and sends marketing materials about the insurance company's products to those consumers. Even though the insurance company has received eligibility information through the common database as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, it did not use that information to identify consumers or establish selection criteria; instead, the creditor used its own eligibility information. Therefore, pursuant to paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this section, the insurance company has not made a solicitation to the consumer.

(iv) The same facts as in the example in paragraph (b)(6)(iii) of this section, except that the creditor provides the insurance company's criteria to the creditor's service provider and directs the service provider to use the creditor's eligibility information to identify creditor consumers who meet the criteria and to send the insurance company's marketing materials to those consumers. The insurance company does not communicate directly with the service provider regarding the use of the creditor's information to market its products to the creditor's consumers. Pursuant to paragraph (b)(4)(ii) of this section, the insurance company has not made a solicitation to the consumer.

(v) An affiliated group of companies includes a creditor, an insurance company, and a service provider. Each affiliate in the group places information about its consumers into a common database. The service provider has access to all information in the common database. The creditor controls access to and use of its eligibility information by the service provider. This control is set forth in a written agreement between the creditor and the service provider. The written agreement also requires the service provider to establish reasonable policies and procedures designed to ensure that the service provider uses the creditor's eligibility information in accordance with specific terms and conditions established by the creditor relating to the marketing of the products and services of all affiliates, including the insurance company. In a separate written communication, the creditor specifies the terms and conditions under which the service provider may use the creditor's eligibility information to market the insurance company's products and services to the creditor's consumers. The specific terms and conditions are: a list of affiliated companies (including the insurance company) whose products or services may be marketed to the creditor's consumers by the service provider; the specific products or types of products that may be marketed to

the creditor's consumers by the service provider; the categories of eligibility information that may be used by the service provider in marketing products or services to the creditor's consumers; the types or categories of the creditor's consumers to whom the service provider may market products or services of creditor affiliates; the number and/or types of marketing communications that the service provider may send to the creditor's consumers; and the length of time during which the service provider may market the prod-ucts or services of the creditor's affiliates to its consumers. The creditor periodically evaluates the service provider's compliance with these terms and conditions. The insurance company asks the service provider to market insurance products to certain consumers who have loan accounts with the creditor. Without using the creditor's eligibility information, the insurance company develops selection criteria and provides those criteria, marketing materials, and related instructions to the service provider. The service provider uses the creditor's eligibility information from the common database to identify the creditor's consumers to whom insurance products will be marketed. When the insurance company's marketing materials are provided to the identified consumers, the name of the creditor is displayed on the insurance marketing materials, an introductory letter that accompanies the marketing materials, an account statement that accompanies the marketing materials, or the envelope containing the marketing materials. The requirements of paragraph (b)(5) of this section have been satisfied, and the insurance company has not made a solicitation to the consumer.

(vi) The same facts as in the example in paragraph (b)(6)(v) of this section, except that the terms and conditions permit the service provider to use the creditor's eligibility information to market the products and services of other affiliates to the creditor's consumers whenever the service provider deems it appropriate to do so. The service provider uses the creditor's eligibility information in accordance with the discretion af-forded to it by the terms and conditions. Because the terms and conditions are not specific, the requirements of paragraph (b)(5) of this section have not been satisfied.

(c) *Exceptions.* The provisions of this part do not apply to you if you use eligibility information that you receive from an affiliate:

(1) To make a solicitation for marketing purposes to a consumer with whom you have a pre-existing business relationship;

(2) To facilitate communications to an individual for whose benefit you provide employee benefit or other services pursuant to a contract with an employer related to and arising out of the current employment relationship or status of the individual as a participant or beneficiary of an employee benefit plan;

(3) To perform services on behalf of an affiliate, except that this paragraph shall not be construed as permitting you to send solicitations on behalf of an affiliate if the affiliate would not be permitted to send the solicitation as a result of the election of the consumer to opt out under this part;

(4) In response to a communication about your products or services initiated by the consumer;

(5) In response to an authorization or request by the consumer to receive solicitations; or

(6) If your compliance with this part would prevent you from complying with any provision of State insurance laws pertaining to unfair discrimination in any State in which you are lawfully doing business.

(d) *Examples of exceptions*—(1) *Example of the pre-existing business relationship exception.* A consumer has a loan account with a creditor. The consumer also has a relationship with the creditor's securities affiliate for management of the consumer's securities portfolio. The creditor receives eligibility information about the consumer from its securities affiliate and uses that information to make a solicitation to the consumer about the creditor's wealth management services. The creditor may make this solicitation even if the consumer has not been given a notice and opportunity to opt out because the creditor has a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer.

(2) *Examples of service provider exception.* (i) A consumer has an insurance policy issued by an insurance company. The insurance company furnishes eligibility information about the consumer to an affiliated creditor. Based on that eligibility information, the creditor wants to make a solicitation to the consumer about its credit products. The creditor does not have a pre-existing business relationship with the consumer and none of the other exceptions in para-graph (c) of this section apply. The consumer has been given an opt-out notice and has elected to opt out of receiving such solicitations. The creditor asks a service provider to send the solicitation to the consumer on its behalf. The service provider may not send the solicitation on behalf of the creditor because, as a result of the consumer's opt-out election, the creditor is not permitted to make the solicitation.

(ii) The same facts as in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section, except the consumer has been given an opt-out notice, but has not elected to opt out. The creditor asks a service provider to send the solicitation to the consumer on its behalf. The service provider may send the solicitation on behalf of the creditor because, as a result of the consumer's not opting out, the creditor is permitted to make the solicitation.

(3) *Examples of consumer-initiated communications.* (i) A consumer who has a consumer loan account with a finance company initiates a communication with the creditor's mortgage lending affiliate to request information about a mortgage. The mortgage lender affiliate may use eligibility information about the consumer it obtains from the finance company or any other affiliate to make solicitations regarding mortgage products in response to the consumer-initiated communication.

(ii) A consumer who has a loan account with a creditor contacts the creditor to request information about how to save and invest for a child's college education without specifying the type of product in which the consumer may be interested. Information about a range of different products or services offered by the creditor and one or more affiliates of the creditor may be responsive to that communication. Such products or services may include the following: mutual funds offered by the creditor's mutual fund affil-iate; section 529 plans offered by the creditor, its mutual fund affiliate, or another securities affiliate; or trust services offered by a different creditor in the affiliated group. Any affiliate offering investment products or services that would be responsive to the consumer's request for information about saving and investing for a child's college education may use eligibility information to make solicitations to the consumer in response to this communication.

(iii) A credit card issuer makes a marketing call to the consumer without using eligibility information received from an affiliate. The issuer leaves a voice-mail message that invites the consumer to call a toll-free number to apply for the issuer's credit card. If the consumer calls the toll-free number to inquire about the credit card, the call is a consumer-initiated communication about a product or service and the credit card issuer may now use eligibility information it receives from its affiliates to make solicitations to the consumer.

(iv) A consumer calls a creditor to ask about retail locations and hours, but does not request information about products or services. The creditor may not use eligibility information it receives from an affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about its products or services because the consumer-initiated communication does not relate to the creditor's products or services. Thus, the use of eligibility information received from an affiliate would not be responsive to the communication and the exception does not apply.

(v) A consumer calls a creditor to ask about office locations and hours. The customer service representative asks the consumer if there is a particular product or service about which the consumer is seeking information. The consumer responds that the consumer wants to stop in and find out about second mortgage loans. The customer service representative offers to provide that information by telephone and mail additional information and application materials to the consumer. The

consumer agrees and provides or confirms contact information for receipt of the materials to be mailed. The creditor may use eligibility information it receives from an affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about mortgage loan products because such solicitations respond to the consumer-initiated communication about products or services.

(4) *Examples of consumer authorization or request for solicitations.* (i) A consumer who obtains a mortgage from a mortgage lender authorizes or requests information about homeowner's insurance offered by the mortgage lender's insurance affiliate. Such authorization or request, whether given to the mortgage lender or to the insurance affiliate, would permit the insurance affiliate to use eligibility information about the consumer it obtains from the mortgage lender or any other affiliate to make solicitations to the consumer about homeowner's insurance.

(ii) A consumer completes an online application to apply for a credit card from a department store. The store's online application contains a blank check box that the consumer may check to authorize or request information from the store's affiliates. The consumer checks the box. The consumer has authorized or requested solicitations from store's affiliates.

(iii) A consumer completes an online application to apply for a credit card from a department store. The store's online application contains a pre-selected check box indicating that the consumer authorizes or requests information from the store's affiliates. The consumer does not deselect the check box. The consumer has not authorized or requested solicitations from the store's affiliates.

(iv) The terms and conditions of a credit account agreement contain preprinted boilerplate language stating that by applying to open an account the consumer authorizes or requests to receive solicitations from the creditor's affiliates. The consumer has not authorized or requested solicitations from the creditor's affiliates.

(e) *Relation to affiliate-sharing notice and opt-out.* Nothing in this part limits the responsibility of a person to comply with the notice and opt-out provisions of section 603(d)(2)(A)(iii) of the Act where applicable.

§ 680.22 Scope and duration of opt-out.

(a) *Scope of opt-out*—(1) *In general.* Except as otherwise provided in this section, the consumer's election to opt out prohibits any affiliate covered by the opt-out notice from using eligibility information received from another affiliate as described in the notice to make solicitations to the consumer.

(2) *Continuing relationship*—(i) *In general.* If the consumer establishes a continuing relationship with you or your affiliate, an opt-out notice may apply to eligibility information obtained in connection with—

(A) A single continuing relationship or multiple continuing relationships that the consumer establishes with you or your affiliates, including continuing relationships established subsequent to delivery of the opt-out notice, so long as the notice adequately describes the continuing relationships covered by the opt-out; or

(B) Any other transaction between the consumer and you or your affiliates as described in the notice.

(ii) *Examples of continuing relationships.* A consumer has a continuing relationship with you or your affiliate if the consumer—

(A) Opens a credit account with you or your affiliate;

(B) Obtains a loan for which you or your affiliate owns the servicing rights;

(C) Purchases an insurance product from you or your affiliate;

(D) Holds an investment product through you or your affiliate, such as when you act or your affiliate acts as a custodian for securities or for assets in an individual retirement arrangement;

(E) Enters into an agreement or understanding with you or your affiliate whereby you or your affiliate undertakes to arrange or broker a home mortgage loan for the consumer;

(F) Enters into a lease of personal property with you or your affiliate; or

(G) Obtains financial, investment, or economic advisory services from you or your affiliate for a fee.

(3) *No continuing relationship*—(i) *In general*. If there is no continuing relationship between a consumer and you or your affiliate, and you or your affiliate obtain eligibility information about a consumer in connection with a transaction with the consumer, such as an isolated transaction or a credit application that is denied, an opt-out notice provided to the consumer only applies to eligibility information obtained in connection with that transaction.

(ii) *Examples of isolated transactions*. An isolated transaction occurs if—

(A) The consumer uses your or your affiliate's ATM to withdraw cash from an account at a financial institution; or

(B) You or your affiliate sells the consumer a money order, airline tickets, travel insurance, or traveler's checks in isolated transactions.

(4) *Menu of alternatives*. A consumer may be given the opportunity to choose from a menu of alternatives when electing to prohibit solicitations, such as by electing to prohibit solicitations from certain types of affiliates covered by the opt-out notice but not other types of affiliates covered by the notice, electing to prohibit solicitations based on certain types of eligibility information but not other types of eligibility information, or electing to prohibit solicitations by certain methods of delivery but not other methods of delivery. However, one of the alternatives must allow the consumer to prohibit all solicitations from all of the affiliates that are covered by the notice.

(5) *Special rule for a notice following termination of all continuing relationships*—(i) *In general*. A consumer must be given a new opt-out notice if, after all continuing relationships with you or your affiliate(s) are terminated, the consumer subsequently establishes another continuing relationship with you or your affiliate(s) and the consumer's eligibility information is to be used to make a solicitation. The new opt-out notice must apply, at a minimum, to eligibility information obtained in connection with the new continuing relationship. Consistent with paragraph (b) of this section, the consumer's decision not to opt out after receiving the new opt-out notice would not override a prior opt-out election by the consumer that applies to eligibility information obtained in connection with a terminated relationship, regardless of whether the new opt-out notice applies to eligibility information obtained in connection with the terminated relationship.

(ii) *Example*. A consumer has an automobile loan account with a creditor that is part of an affiliated group. The consumer pays off the loan. After paying off the loan, the consumer subsequently obtains a second mortgage loan from the creditor. The consumer must be given a new notice and opportunity to opt out before the creditor's affiliates may make solicitations to the consumer using eligibility information obtained by the creditor in connection with the new mortgage relationship, regardless of whether the consumer opted out in connection with the automobile loan account.

(b) *Duration of opt-out*. The election of a consumer to opt out must be effective for a period of at least five years (the ''opt-out period'') beginning when the consumer's opt-out election is received and implemented, unless the consumer subsequently revokes the opt-out in writing or, if the consumer agrees, electronically. An opt-out period of more than five years may be established, including an opt-out period that does not expire unless revoked by the consumer.

(c) *Time of opt-out*. A consumer may opt out at any time.

§ 680.23 Contents of opt-out notice; consolidated and equivalent notices.

(a) *Contents of opt-out notice*—(1) *In general*. A notice must be clear, conspicuous, and concise, and must accurately disclose:

(i) The name of the affiliate(s) providing the notice. If the notice is provided jointly by multiple affiliates and each affiliate shares a common name, such as ''ABC,'' then the notice may indicate that it is being provided by multiple companies with the ABC name or multiple companies in the ABC group or family of companies, for example, by stating that the notice is

provided by ''all of the ABC companies,'' ''the ABC banking, credit card, insurance, and securities companies,'' or by listing the name of each affiliate providing the notice. But if the affiliates providing the joint notice do not all share a common name, then the notice must either separately identify each affiliate by name or identify each of the common names used by those affiliates, for example, by stating that the notice is provided by ''all of the ABC and XYZ companies'' or by ''the ABC banking and credit card companies and the XYZ insurance companies;''

(ii) A list of the affiliates or types of affiliates whose use of eligibility information is covered by the notice, which may include companies that become affiliates after the notice is provided to the consumer. If each affiliate covered by the notice shares a common name, such as ''ABC,'' then the notice may indicate that it applies to multiple companies with the ABC name or multiple companies in the ABC group or family of companies, for example, by stating that the notice is provided by ''all of the ABC companies,'' ''the ABC banking, credit card, insurance, and securities companies,'' or by listing the name of each affiliate providing the notice. But if the affiliates covered by the notice do not all share a common name, then the notice must either separately identify each covered affiliate by name or identify each of the common names used by those affiliates, for example, by stating that the notice applies to ''all of the ABC and XYZ companies'' or to ''the ABC banking and credit card companies and the XYZ insurance companies;''

(iii) A general description of the types of eligibility information that may be used to make solicitations to the consumer;

(iv) That the consumer may elect to limit the use of eligibility information to make solicitations to the consumer;

(v) That the consumer's election will apply for the specified period of time stated in the notice and, if applicable, that the consumer will be allowed to renew the election once that period expires;

(vi) If the notice is provided to consumers who may have previously opted out, such as if a notice is provided to consumers annually, that the consumer who has chosen to limit solicitations does not need to act again until the consumer receives a renewal notice; and

(vii) A reasonable and simple method for the consumer to opt out.

(2) *Joint relationships.* (i) If two or more consumers jointly obtain a product or service, a single opt-out notice may be provided to the joint consumers. Any of the joint consumers may exercise the right to opt out.

(ii) The opt-out notice must explain how an opt-out direction by a joint consumer will be treated. An opt-out direction by a joint consumer may be treated as applying to all of the associated joint consumers, or each joint consumer may be permitted to opt out separately. If each joint consumer is permitted to opt out separately, one of the joint consumers must be permitted to opt out on behalf of all of the joint consumers and the joint consumers must be permitted to exercise their separate rights to opt out in a single response.

(iii) It is impermissible to require all joint consumers to opt out before implementing any opt-out direction.

(3) *Alternative contents.* If the consumer is afforded a broader right to opt out of receiving marketing than is required by this part, the requirements of this section may be satisfied by providing the consumer with a clear, conspicuous, and concise notice that accurately discloses the consumer's opt-out rights.

(4) *Model notices.* Model notices are provided in Appendix C of Part 698 of this chapter.

(b) *Coordinated and consolidated notices.* A notice required by this part may be coordinated and consolidated with any other notice or disclosure required to be issued under any other provision of law by the entity providing the notice, including but not limited to the notice de-scribed in section 603(d)(2)(A)(iii) of the Act and the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act privacy notice.

(c) *Equivalent notices.* A notice or other disclosure that is equivalent to the notice required by this part, and

that is provided to a consumer together with disclosures required by any other provision of law, satisfies the requirements of this section.

§ 680.24 Reasonable opportunity to opt out.

(a) *In general.* You must not use eligibility information about a consumer that you receive from an affiliate to make a solicitation to the consumer about your products or services, unless the consumer is provided a reasonable opportunity to opt out, as required by § 680.21(a)(1)(ii) of this part.

(b) *Examples of a reasonable opportunity to opt out.* The consumer is given a reasonable opportunity to opt out if:

(1) *By mail.* The opt-out notice is mailed to the consumer. The consumer is given 30 days from the date the notice is mailed to elect to opt out by any reasonable means.

(2) *By electronic means.* (i) The opt-out notice is provided electronically to the consumer, such as by posting the notice at an Internet Web site at which the consumer has obtained a product or service. The consumer acknowledges receipt of the electronic notice. The consumer is given 30 days after the date the consumer acknowledges receipt to elect to opt out by any reasonable means.

(ii) The opt-out notice is provided to the consumer by e-mail where the consumer has agreed to receive disclosures by e-mail from the person sending the notice. The consumer is given 30 days after the e-mail is sent to elect to opt out by any reasonable means.

(3) *At the time of an electronic transaction.* The opt-out notice is provided to the consumer at the time of an electronic transaction, such as a transaction conducted on an Internet Web site. The consumer is required to decide, as a necessary part of proceeding with the transaction, whether to opt out before completing the transaction. There is a simple process that the consumer may use to opt out at that time using the same mechanism through which the transaction is conducted.

(4) *At the time of an in-person transaction.* The opt-out notice is provided to the consumer in writing at the time of an in-person transaction. The consumer is required to decide, as a necessary part of proceeding with the transaction, whether to opt out before completing the transaction, and is not permitted to complete the transaction without making a choice. There is a simple process that the consumer may use during the course of the in-person transaction to opt out, such as completing a form that requires consumers to write a ''yes'' or ''no'' to indicate their opt-out preference or that requires the consumer to check one of two blank check boxes—one that allows consumers to indicate that they want to opt out and one that allows consumers to indicate that they do not want to opt out.

(5) *By including in a privacy notice.* The opt-out notice is included in a Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act privacy notice. The consumer is allowed to exercise the opt-out within a reasonable period of time and in the same manner as the opt-out under that privacy notice.

§ 680.25 Reasonable and simple methods of opting out.

(a) *In general.* You must not use eligibility information about a consumer that you receive from an affiliate to make a solicitation to the consumer about your products or services, unless the consumer is provided a reasonable and simple method to opt out, as required by § 680.21(a)(1)(ii) of this part.

(b) *Examples*—(1) *Reasonable and simple opt-out methods.* Reasonable and simple methods for exercising the opt-out right include—

(i) Designating a check-off box in a prominent position on the opt-out form;

(ii) Including a reply form and a self-addressed envelope together with the opt-out notice;

(iii) Providing an electronic means to opt out, such as a form that can be electronically mailed or processed at an Internet Web site, if the consumer agrees to the electronic delivery of information;

(iv) Providing a toll-free telephone number that consumers may call to opt out; or

(v) Allowing consumers to exercise all of their opt-out rights described in a consolidated opt-out notice that includes the privacy opt-out under the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, 15 U.S.C. 6801

et seq., the affiliate sharing opt-out under the Act, and the affiliate marketing opt-out under the Act, by a single method, such as by calling a single toll-free telephone number.

(2) *Opt-out methods that are not reasonable and simple.* Reasonable and simple methods for exercising an opt-out right *do not* include—

(i) Requiring the consumer to write his or her own letter;

(ii) Requiring the consumer to call or write to obtain a form for opting out, rather than including the form with the opt-out notice;

(iii) Requiring the consumer who receives the opt-out notice in electronic form only, such as through posting at an Internet Web site, to opt out solely by paper mail or by visiting a different Web site without providing a link to that site.

(c) *Specific opt-out means.* Each consumer may be required to opt out through a specific means, as long as that means is reasonable and simple for that consumer.

§ 680.26 Delivery of opt-out notices.

(a) *In general.* The opt-out notice must be provided so that each consumer can reasonably be expected to receive actual notice. For opt-out notices provided electronically, the notice may be provided in compliance with either the electronic disclosure provisions in this part or the provisions in section 101 of the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, 15 U.S.C. 7001 *et seq.*

(b) *Examples of reasonable expectation of actual notice.* A consumer may reasonably be expected to receive actual notice if the affiliate providing the notice:

(1) Hand-delivers a printed copy of the notice to the consumer;

(2) Mails a printed copy of the notice to the last known mailing address of the consumer;

(3) Provides a notice by e-mail to a consumer who has agreed to receive electronic disclosures by e-mail from the affiliate providing the notice; or

(4) Posts the notice on the Internet Web site at which the consumer obtained a product or service electronically and requires the consumer to acknowledge receipt of the notice.

(c) *Examples of no reasonable expectation of actual notice.* A consumer may *not* reasonably be expected to receive actual notice if the affiliate providing the notice:

(1) Only posts the notice on a sign in a branch or office or generally publishes the notice in a newspaper;

(2) Sends the notice via e-mail to a consumer who has not agreed to receive electronic disclosures by e-mail from the affiliate providing the notice; or

(3) Posts the notice on an Internet Web site without requiring the consumer to acknowledge receipt of the notice.

§ 680.27 Renewal of opt-out.

(a) *Renewal notice and opt-out requirement*—(1) *In general.* After the opt-out period expires, you may not make solicitations based on eligibility information you receive from an affiliate to a consumer who previously opted out, unless:

(i) The consumer has been given a renewal notice that complies with the requirements of this section and §§ 680.24 through 680.26 of this part, and a reasonable opportunity and a reasonable and simple method to renew the opt-out, and the consumer does not renew the opt-out; or

(ii) An exception in § 680.21(c) of this part applies.

(2) *Renewal period.* Each opt-out renewal must be effective for a period of at least five years as provided in § 680.22(b) of this part.

(3) *Affiliates who may provide the notice.* The notice required by this paragraph must be provided:

(i) By the affiliate that provided the previous opt-out notice, or its successor; or

(ii) As part of a joint renewal notice from two or more members of an affiliated group of companies, or their successors, that jointly provided the previous opt-out notice.

(b) *Contents of renewal notice.* The renewal notice must be clear, conspicuous, and concise, and must accurately disclose:

(1) The name of the affiliate(s) providing the notice. If the notice is provided jointly by multiple affiliates and each affiliate shares a common name,

such as ''ABC,'' then the notice may indicate that it is being provided by multiple companies with the ABC name or multiple companies in the ABC group or family of companies, for example, by stating that the notice is provided by ''all of the ABC companies,'' ''the ABC banking, credit card, insurance, and securities companies,'' or by listing the name of each affiliate providing the notice. But if the affiliates providing the joint notice do not all share a common name, then the notice must either separately identify each affiliate by name or identify each of the common names used by those affiliates, for example, by stating that the notice is provided by ''all of the ABC and XYZ companies'' or by ''the ABC banking and credit card companies and the XYZ insurance companies;''

(2) A list of the affiliates or types of affiliates whose use of eligibility information is covered by the notice, which may include companies that become affiliates after the notice is provided to the consumer. If each affiliate covered by the notice shares a common name, such as ''ABC,'' then the notice may indicate that it applies to multiple companies with the ABC name or multiple companies in the ABC group or family of companies, for example, by stating that the notice is provided by ''all of the ABC companies,'' ''the ABC banking, credit card, insurance, and securities companies,'' or by listing the name of each affiliate providing the notice. But if the affiliates covered by the notice do not all share a common name, then the notice must either separately identify each covered affiliate by name or identify each of the common names used by those affiliates, for example, by stating that the notice applies to ''all of the ABC and XYZ companies'' or to ''the ABC banking and credit card companies and the XYZ insurance companies;''

(3) A general description of the types of eligibility information that may be used to make solicitations to the consumer;

(4) That the consumer previously elected to limit the use of certain information to make solicitations to the consumer;

(5) That the consumer's election has expired or is about to expire;

(6) That the consumer may elect to renew the consumer's previous election;

(7) If applicable, that the consumer's election to renew will apply for the specified period of time stated in the notice and that the consumer will be allowed to renew the election once that period expires; and

(8) A reasonable and simple method for the consumer to opt out.

(c) *Timing of the renewal notice*—(1) *In general*. A renewal notice may be provided to the consumer either—

(i) A reasonable period of time before the expiration of the opt-out period; or

(ii) Any time after the expiration of the opt-out period but before solicitations that would have been prohibited by the expired opt-out are made to the consumer.

(2) *Combination with annual privacy notice*. If you provide an annual privacy notice under the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, 15 U.S.C. 6801 *et seq.*, providing a renewal notice with the last annual privacy notice provided to the consumer before expiration of the opt-out period is a reasonable period of time before expiration of the opt-out in all cases.

(d) *No effect on opt-out period*. An opt-out period may not be shortened by sending a renewal notice to the consumer before expiration of the opt-out period, even if the consumer does not renew the opt out.

§ 680.28 Effective date, compliance date, and prospective application.

(a) *Effective date*. This part is effective January 1, 2008.

(b) *Mandatory compliance date*. Compliance with this part is required not later than October 1, 2008.

(c) *Prospective application*. The provisions of this part shall not prohibit you from using eligibility information that you receive from an affiliate to make solicitations to a consumer if you receive such information prior to October 1, 2008. For purposes of this section, you are deemed to receive eligibility information when such information is placed into a common database and is accessible by you.

PART 681—IDENTITY THEFT RULES

Sec.
681.1 Duties of users of consumer reports regarding address discrepancies.
681.2 Duties regarding the detection, prevention, and mitigation of identity theft.
681.3 Duties of card issuers regarding changes of address.
APPENDIX A TO PART 681—INTERAGENCY GUIDELINES ON IDENTITY THEFT DETECTION, PREVENTION, AND MITIGATION

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 114 and sec. 315; 15 U.S.C. 1681m(e) and 15 U.S.C. 1681c(h).

SOURCE: 72 FR 63771, Nov. 9, 2007, unless otherwise noted.

§681.1 Duties of users of consumer reports regarding address discrepancies.

(a) *Scope*. This section applies to users of consumer reports that are subject to administrative enforcement of the FCRA by the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 1681s(a)(1) (users).

(b) *Definition*. For purposes of this section, a *notice of address discrepancy* means a notice sent to a user by a consumer reporting agency pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 1681c(h)(1), that informs the user of a substantial difference between the address for the consumer that the user provided to request the consumer report and the address(es) in the agency's file for the consumer.

(c) *Reasonable belief*—(1) *Requirement to form a reasonable belief*. A user must develop and implement reasonable policies and procedures designed to enable the user to form a reasonable belief that a consumer report relates to the consumer about whom it has requested the report, when the user receives a notice of address discrepancy.

(2) *Examples of reasonable policies and procedures*. (i) Comparing the information in the consumer report provided by the consumer reporting agency with information the user:

(A) Obtains and uses to verify the consumer's identity in accordance with the requirements of the Customer Information Program (CIP) rules implementing 31 U.S.C. 5318(l) (31 CFR 103.121);

(B) Maintains in its own records, such as applications, change of address notifications, other customer account records, or retained CIP documentation; or

(C) Obtains from third-party sources; or

(ii) Verifying the information in the consumer report provided by the consumer reporting agency with the consumer.

(d) *Consumer's address*—(1) *Requirement to furnish consumer's address to a consumer reporting agency*. A user must develop and implement reasonable policies and procedures for furnishing an address for the consumer that the user has reasonably confirmed is accurate to the consumer reporting agency from whom it received the notice of address discrepancy when the user:

(i) Can form a reasonable belief that the consumer report relates to the consumer about whom the user requested the report;

(ii) Establishes a continuing relationship with the consumer; and

(iii) Regularly and in the ordinary course of business furnishes information to the consumer reporting agency from which the notice of address discrepancy relating to the consumer was obtained.

(2) *Examples of confirmation methods*. The user may reasonably confirm an address is accurate by:

(i) Verifying the address with the consumer about whom it has requested the report;

(ii) Reviewing its own records to verify the address of the consumer;

(iii) Verifying the address through third-party sources; or

(iv) Using other reasonable means.

(3) *Timing*. The policies and procedures developed in accordance with paragraph (d)(1) of this section must provide that the user will furnish the consumer's address that the user has reasonably confirmed is accurate to the consumer reporting agency as part of the information it regularly furnishes for the reporting period in which it establishes a relationship with the consumer.

§681.2 Duties regarding the detection, prevention, and mitigation of identity theft.

(a) *Scope*. This section applies to financial institutions and creditors that

are subject to administrative enforcement of the FCRA by the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 1681s(a)(1).

(b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section, and appendix A, the following definitions apply:

(1) *Account* means a continuing relationship established by a person with a financial institution or creditor to obtain a product or service for personal, family, household or business purposes. Account includes:

(i) An extension of credit, such as the purchase of property or services involving a deferred payment; and

(ii) A deposit account.

(2) The term *board of directors* includes:

(i) In the case of a branch or agency of a foreign bank, the managing official in charge of the branch or agency; and

(ii) In the case of any other creditor that does not have a board of directors, a designated employee at the level of senior management.

(3) *Covered account* means:

(i) An account that a financial institution or creditor offers or maintains, primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, that involves or is designed to permit multiple payments or transactions, such as a credit card account, mortgage loan, automobile loan, margin account, cell phone account, utility account, checking account, or savings account; and

(ii) Any other account that the financial institution or creditor offers or maintains for which there is a reasonably foreseeable risk to customers or to the safety and soundness of the financial institution or creditor from identity theft, including financial, operational, compliance, reputation, or litigation risks.

(4) *Credit* has the same meaning as in 15 U.S.C. 1681a(r)(5).

(5) *Creditor* has the same meaning as in 15 U.S.C. 1681a(r)(5), and includes lenders such as banks, finance companies, automobile dealers, mortgage brokers, utility companies, and telecommunications companies.

(6) *Customer* means a person that has a covered account with a financial institution or creditor.

(7) *Financial institution* has the same meaning as in 15 U.S.C. 1681a(t).

(8) *Identity theft* has the same meaning as in 16 CFR 603.2(a).

(9) *Red Flag* means a pattern, practice, or specific activity that indicates the possible existence of identity theft.

(10) *Service provider* means a person that provides a service directly to the financial institution or creditor.

(c) *Periodic Identification of Covered Accounts.* Each financial institution or creditor must periodically determine whether it offers or maintains covered accounts. As a part of this determination, a financial institution or creditor must conduct a risk assessment to determine whether it offers or maintains covered accounts described in paragraph (b)(3)(ii) of this section, taking into consideration:

(1) The methods it provides to open its accounts;

(2) The methods it provides to access its accounts; and

(3) Its previous experiences with identity theft.

(d) *Establishment of an Identity Theft Prevention Program*—(1) *Program requirement.* Each financial institution or creditor that offers or maintains one or more covered accounts must develop and implement a written Identity Theft Prevention Program (Program) that is designed to detect, prevent, and mitigate identity theft in connection with the opening of a covered account or any existing covered account. The Program must be appropriate to the size and complexity of the financial institution or creditor and the nature and scope of its activities.

(2) *Elements of the Program.* The Program must include reasonable policies and procedures to:

(i) Identify relevant Red Flags for the covered accounts that the financial institution or creditor offers or maintains, and incorporate those Red Flags into its Program;

(ii) Detect Red Flags that have been incorporated into the Program of the financial institution or creditor;

(iii) Respond appropriately to any Red Flags that are detected pursuant to paragraph (d)(2)(ii) of this section to prevent and mitigate identity theft; and

(iv) Ensure the Program (including the Red Flags determined to be relevant) is updated periodically, to reflect changes in risks to customers and to the safety and soundness of the financial institution or creditor from identity theft.

(e) *Administration of the Program.* Each financial institution or creditor that is required to implement a Program must provide for the continued administration of the Program and must:

(1) Obtain approval of the initial written Program from either its board of directors or an appropriate committee of the board of directors;

(2) Involve the board of directors, an appropriate committee thereof, or a designated employee at the level of senior management in the oversight, development, implementation and administration of the Program;

(3) Train staff, as necessary, to effectively implement the Program; and

(4) Exercise appropriate and effective oversight of service provider arrangements.

(f) *Guidelines.* Each financial institution or creditor that is required to implement a Program must consider the guidelines in appendix A of this part and include in its Program those guidelines that are appropriate.

§ 681.3 Duties of card issuers regarding changes of address.

(a) *Scope.* This section applies to a person described in § 681.2(a) that issues a debit or credit card (card issuer).

(b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section:

(1) *Cardholder* means a consumer who has been issued a credit or debit card.

(2) *Clear and conspicuous* means reasonably understandable and designed to call attention to the nature and significance of the information presented.

(c) *Address validation requirements.* A card issuer must establish and implement reasonable policies and procedures to assess the validity of a change of address if it receives notification of a change of address for a consumer's debit or credit card account and, within a short period of time afterwards (during at least the first 30 days after it receives such notification), the card issuer receives a request for an additional or replacement card for the same account. Under these circumstances, the card issuer may not issue an additional or replacement card, until, in accordance with its reasonable policies and procedures and for the purpose of assessing the validity of the change of address, the card issuer:

(1)(i) Notifies the cardholder of the request:

(A) At the cardholder's former address; or

(B) By any other means of communication that the card issuer and the cardholder have previously agreed to use; and

(ii) Provides to the cardholder a reasonable means of promptly reporting incorrect address changes; or

(2) Otherwise assesses the validity of the change of address in accordance with the policies and procedures the card issuer has established pursuant to § 681.2 of this part.

(d) *Alternative timing of address validation.* A card issuer may satisfy the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section if it validates an address pursuant to the methods in paragraph (c)(1) or (c)(2) of this section when it receives an address change notification, before it receives a request for an additional or replacement card.

(e) *Form of notice.* Any written or electronic notice that the card issuer provides under this paragraph must be clear and conspicuous and provided separately from its regular correspondence with the cardholder.

APPENDIX A TO PART 681—INTERAGENCY GUIDELINES ON IDENTITY THEFT DETECTION, PREVENTION, AND MITIGATION

Section 681.2 of this part requires each financial institution and creditor that offers or maintains one or more covered accounts, as defined in § 681.2(b)(3) of this part, to develop and provide for the continued administration of a written Program to detect, prevent, and mitigate identity theft in connection with the opening of a covered account or any existing covered account. These guidelines are intended to assist financial institutions and creditors in the formulation and maintenance of a Program that satisfies the requirements of § 681.2 of this part.

I. The Program

In designing its Program, a financial institution or creditor may incorporate, as appropriate, its existing policies, procedures, and other arrangements that control reasonably foreseeable risks to customers or to the safety and soundness of the financial institution or creditor from identity theft.

II. Identifying Relevant Red Flags

(a) *Risk Factors.* A financial institution or creditor should consider the following factors in identifying relevant Red Flags for covered accounts, as appropriate:

(1) The types of covered accounts it offers or maintains;

(2) The methods it provides to open its covered accounts;

(3) The methods it provides to access its covered accounts; and

(4) Its previous experiences with identity theft.

(b) *Sources of Red Flags.* Financial institutions and creditors should incorporate relevant Red Flags from sources such as:

(1) Incidents of identity theft that the financial institution or creditor has experienced;

(2) Methods of identity theft that the financial institution or creditor has identified that reflect changes in identity theft risks; and

(3) Applicable supervisory guidance.

(c) *Categories of Red Flags.* The Program should include relevant Red Flags from the following categories, as appropriate. Examples of Red Flags from each of these categories are appended as supplement A to this appendix A.

(1) Alerts, notifications, or other warnings received from consumer reporting agencies or service providers, such as fraud detection services;

(2) The presentation of suspicious documents;

(3) The presentation of suspicious personal identifying information, such as a suspicious address change;

(4) The unusual use of, or other suspicious activity related to, a covered account; and

(5) Notice from customers, victims of identity theft, law enforcement authorities, or other persons regarding possible identity theft in connection with covered accounts held by the financial institution or creditor.

III. Detecting Red Flags

The Program's policies and procedures should address the detection of Red Flags in connection with the opening of covered accounts and existing covered accounts, such as by:

(a) Obtaining identifying information about, and verifying the identity of, a person opening a covered account, for example, using the policies and procedures regarding identification and verification set forth in the Customer Identification Program rules implementing 31 U.S.C. 5318(l) (31 CFR 103.121); and

(b) Authenticating customers, monitoring transactions, and verifying the validity of change of address requests, in the case of existing covered accounts.

IV. Preventing and Mitigating Identity Theft

The Program's policies and procedures should provide for appropriate responses to the Red Flags the financial institution or creditor has detected that are commensurate with the degree of risk posed. In determining an appropriate response, a financial institution or creditor should consider aggravating factors that may heighten the risk of identity theft, such as a data security incident that results in unauthorized access to a customer's account records held by the financial institution, creditor, or third party, or notice that a customer has provided information related to a covered account held by the financial institution or creditor to someone fraudulently claiming to represent the financial institution or creditor or to a fraudulent website. Appropriate responses may include the following:

(a) Monitoring a covered account for evidence of identity theft;

(b) Contacting the customer;

(c) Changing any passwords, security codes, or other security devices that permit access to a covered account;

(d) Reopening a covered account with a new account number;

(e) Not opening a new covered account;

(f) Closing an existing covered account;

(g) Not attempting to collect on a covered account or not selling a covered account to a debt collector;

(h) Notifying law enforcement; or

(i) Determining that no response is warranted under the particular circumstances.

V. Updating the Program

Financial institutions and creditors should update the Program (including the Red Flags determined to be relevant) periodically, to reflect changes in risks to customers or to the safety and soundness of the financial institution or creditor from identity theft, based on factors such as:

(a) The experiences of the financial institution or creditor with identity theft;

(b) Changes in methods of identity theft;

(c) Changes in methods to detect, prevent, and mitigate identity theft;

(d) Changes in the types of accounts that the financial institution or creditor offers or maintains; and

(e) Changes in the business arrangements of the financial institution or creditor, including mergers, acquisitions, alliances,

joint ventures, and service provider arrangements.

VI. Methods for Administering the Program

(a) *Oversight of Program.* Oversight by the board of directors, an appropriate committee of the board, or a designated employee at the level of senior management should include:

(1) Assigning specific responsibility for the Program's implementation;

(2) Reviewing reports prepared by staff regarding compliance by the financial institution or creditor with §681.2 of this part; and

(3) Approving material changes to the Program as necessary to address changing identity theft risks.

(b) *Reports.* (1) *In general.* Staff of the financial institution or creditor responsible for development, implementation, and administration of its Program should report to the board of directors, an appropriate committee of the board, or a designated employee at the level of senior management, at least annually, on compliance by the financial institution or creditor with §681.2 of this part.

(2) *Contents of report.* The report should address material matters related to the Program and evaluate issues such as: The effectiveness of the policies and procedures of the financial institution or creditor in addressing the risk of identity theft in connection with the opening of covered accounts and with respect to existing covered accounts; service provider arrangements; significant incidents involving identity theft and management's response; and recommendations for material changes to the Program.

(c) *Oversight of service provider arrangements.* Whenever a financial institution or creditor engages a service provider to perform an activity in connection with one or more covered accounts the financial institution or creditor should take steps to ensure that the activity of the service provider is conducted in accordance with reasonable policies and procedures designed to detect, prevent, and mitigate the risk of identity theft. For example, a financial institution or creditor could require the service provider by contract to have policies and procedures to detect relevant Red Flags that may arise in the performance of the service provider's activities, and either report the Red Flags to the financial institution or creditor, or to take appropriate steps to prevent or mitigate identity theft.

VII. Other Applicable Legal Requirements

Financial institutions and creditors should be mindful of other related legal requirements that may be applicable, such as:

(a) For financial institutions and creditors that are subject to 31 U.S.C. 5318(g), filing a Suspicious Activity Report in accordance with applicable law and regulation;

(b) Implementing any requirements under 15 U.S.C. 1681c–1(h) regarding the circumstances under which credit may be extended when the financial institution or creditor detects a fraud or active duty alert;

(c) Implementing any requirements for furnishers of information to consumer reporting agencies under 15 U.S.C. 1681s–2, for example, to correct or update inaccurate or incomplete information, and to not report information that the furnisher has reasonable cause to believe is inaccurate; and

(d) Complying with the prohibitions in 15 U.S.C. 1681m on the sale, transfer, and placement for collection of certain debts resulting from identity theft.

Supplement A to Appendix A

In addition to incorporating Red Flags from the sources recommended in section II.b. of the Guidelines in Appendix A of this part, each financial institution or creditor may consider incorporating into its Program, whether singly or in combination, Red Flags from the following illustrative examples in connection with covered accounts:

Alerts, Notifications or Warnings from a Consumer Reporting Agency

1. A fraud or active duty alert is included with a consumer report.

2. A consumer reporting agency provides a notice of credit freeze in response to a request for a consumer report.

3. A consumer reporting agency provides a notice of address discrepancy, as defined in §681.1(b) of this part.

4. A consumer report indicates a pattern of activity that is inconsistent with the history and usual pattern of activity of an applicant or customer, such as:

a. A recent and significant increase in the volume of inquiries;

b. An unusual number of recently established credit relationships;

c. A material change in the use of credit, especially with respect to recently established credit relationships; or

d. An account that was closed for cause or identified for abuse of account privileges by a financial institution or creditor.

Suspicious Documents

5. Documents provided for identification appear to have been altered or forged.

6. The photograph or physical description on the identification is not consistent with the appearance of the applicant or customer presenting the identification.

7. Other information on the identification is not consistent with information provided by the person opening a new covered account or customer presenting the identification.

8. Other information on the identification is not consistent with readily accessible information that is on file with the financial

institution or creditor, such as a signature card or a recent check.

9. An application appears to have been altered or forged, or gives the appearance of having been destroyed and reassembled.

Suspicious Personal Identifying Information

10. Personal identifying information provided is inconsistent when compared against external information sources used by the financial institution or creditor. For example:

a. The address does not match any address in the consumer report; or

b. The Social Security Number (SSN) has not been issued, or is listed on the Social Security Administration's Death Master File.

11. Personal identifying information provided by the customer is not consistent with other personal identifying information provided by the customer. For example, there is a lack of correlation between the SSN range and date of birth.

12. Personal identifying information provided is associated with known fraudulent activity as indicated by internal or third-party sources used by the financial institution or creditor. For example:

a. The address on an application is the same as the address provided on a fraudulent application; or

b. The phone number on an application is the same as the number provided on a fraudulent application.

13. Personal identifying information provided is of a type commonly associated with fraudulent activity as indicated by internal or third-party sources used by the financial institution or creditor. For example:

a. The address on an application is fictitious, a mail drop, or a prison; or

b. The phone number is invalid, or is associated with a pager or answering service.

14. The SSN provided is the same as that submitted by other persons opening an account or other customers.

15. The address or telephone number provided is the same as or similar to the account number or telephone number submitted by an unusually large number of other persons opening accounts or other customers.

16. The person opening the covered account or the customer fails to provide all required personal identifying information on an application or in response to notification that the application is incomplete.

17. Personal identifying information provided is not consistent with personal identifying information that is on file with the financial institution or creditor.

18. For financial institutions and creditors that use challenge questions, the person opening the covered account or the customer cannot provide authenticating information beyond that which generally would be available from a wallet or consumer report.

Unusual Use of, or Suspicious Activity Related to, the Covered Account

19. Shortly following the notice of a change of address for a covered account, the institution or creditor receives a request for a new, additional, or replacement card or a cell phone, or for the addition of authorized users on the account.

20. A new revolving credit account is used in a manner commonly associated with known patterns of fraud patterns. For example:

a. The majority of available credit is used for cash advances or merchandise that is easily convertible to cash (e.g., electronics equipment or jewelry); or

b. The customer fails to make the first payment or makes an initial payment but no subsequent payments.

21. A covered account is used in a manner that is not consistent with established patterns of activity on the account. There is, for example:

a. Nonpayment when there is no history of late or missed payments;

b. A material increase in the use of available credit;

c. A material change in purchasing or spending patterns;

d. A material change in electronic fund transfer patterns in connection with a deposit account; or

e. A material change in telephone call patterns in connection with a cellular phone account.

22. A covered account that has been inactive for a reasonably lengthy period of time is used (taking into consideration the type of account, the expected pattern of usage and other relevant factors).

23. Mail sent to the customer is returned repeatedly as undeliverable although transactions continue to be conducted in connection with the customer's covered account.

24. The financial institution or creditor is notified that the customer is not receiving paper account statements.

25. The financial institution or creditor is notified of unauthorized charges or transactions in connection with a customer's covered account.

Notice from Customers, Victims of Identity Theft, Law Enforcement Authorities, or Other Persons Regarding Possible Identity Theft in Connection With Covered Accounts Held by the Financial Institution or Creditor

26. The financial institution or creditor is notified by a customer, a victim of identity theft, a law enforcement authority, or any other person that it has opened a fraudulent account for a person engaged in identity theft.

PART 682—DISPOSAL OF CONSUMER REPORT INFORMATION AND RECORDS

Sec.
682.1 Definitions.
682.2 Purpose and scope.
682.3 Proper disposal of consumer information.
682.4 Relation to other laws.
682.5 Effective date.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 108–159, sec. 216.

SOURCE: 69 FR 68697, Nov. 24, 2004, unless otherwise noted

§ 682.1 Definitions.

(a) *In general*. Except as modified by this part or unless the context otherwise requires, the terms used in this part have the same meaning as set forth in the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq*.

(b) ''*Consumer information*'' means any record about an individual, whether in paper, electronic, or other form, that is a consumer report or is derived from a consumer report. Consumer information also means a compilation of such records. Consumer information does not include information that does not identify individuals, such as aggregate information or blind data.

(c) ''*Dispose*,'' ''*disposing*,'' or ''*disposal*'' means:

(1) The discarding or abandonment of consumer information, or

(2) The sale, donation, or transfer of any medium, including computer equipment, upon which consumer information is stored.

§ 682.2 Purpose and scope.

(a) *Purpose*. This part (''rule'') implements section 216 of the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003, which is designed to reduce the risk of consumer fraud and related harms, including identity theft, created by improper disposal of consumer information.

(b) *Scope*. This rule applies to any person over which the Federal Trade Commission has jurisdiction, that, for a business purpose, maintains or otherwise possesses consumer information.

§ 682.3 Proper disposal of consumer information.

(a) *Standard*. Any person who maintains or otherwise possesses consumer information for a business purpose must properly dispose of such information by taking reasonable measures to protect against unauthorized access to or use of the information in connection with its disposal.

(b) *Examples*. Reasonable measures to protect against unauthorized access to or use of consumer information in connection with its disposal include the following examples. These examples are illustrative only and are not exclusive or exhaustive methods for complying with the rule in this part.

(1) Implementing and monitoring compliance with policies and procedures that require the burning, pulverizing, or shredding of papers containing consumer information so that the information cannot practicably be read or reconstructed.

(2) Implementing and monitoring compliance with policies and procedures that require the destruction or erasure of electronic media containing consumer information so that the information cannot practicably be read or reconstructed.

(3) After due diligence, entering into and monitoring compliance with a contract with another party engaged in the business of record destruction to dispose of material, specifically identified as consumer information, in a manner consistent with this rule. In this context, due diligence could include reviewing an independent audit of the disposal company's operations and/or its compliance with this rule, obtaining information about the disposal company from several references or other reliable sources, requiring that the disposal company be certified by a recognized trade association or similar third party, reviewing and evaluating the disposal company's information security policies or procedures, or taking other appropriate measures to determine the competency and integrity of the potential disposal company.

(4) For persons or entities who maintain or otherwise possess consumer information through their provision of services directly to a person subject to

this part, implementing and monitoring compliance with policies and procedures that protect against unauthorized or unintentional disposal of consumer information, and disposing of such information in accordance with examples (b)(1) and (2) of this section.

(5) For persons subject to the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, 15 U.S.C. 6081 *et seq.*, and the Federal Trade Commission's Standards for Safeguarding Customer Information, 16 CFR part 314 (''Safeguards Rule''), incorporating the proper disposal of consumer information as required by this rule into the information security program required by the Safeguards Rule.

§ 682.4 Relation to other laws.

Nothing in the rule in this part shall be construed:

(a) To require a person to maintain or destroy any record pertaining to a consumer that is not imposed under other law; or

(b) To alter or affect any requirement imposed under any other provision of law to maintain or destroy such a record.

§ 682.5 Effective date.

The rule in this part is effective on June 1, 2005.

PART 698—MODEL FORMS AND DISCLOSURES

Sec.
698.1 Authority and purpose.
698.2 Legal effect.
698.3 Definitions.
APPENDIX A TO PART 698—MODEL PRESCREEN OPT-OUT NOTICES.
APPENDIX B TO PART 698 [RESERVED]
APPENDIX C TO PART 698—MODEL FORMS FOR AFFILIATE MARKETING OPT-OUT NOTICES
APPENDIX D TO PART 698—STANDARDIZED FORM FOR REQUESTING FREE FILE DISCLOSURE.
APPENDIX E TO PART 698—SUMMARY OF CONSUMER IDENTITY THEFT RIGHTS.
APPENDIX F TO PART 698—GENERAL SUMMARY OF CONSUMER RIGHTS.
APPENDIX G TO PART 698—NOTICE OF FURNISHER RESPONSIBILITIES.
APPENDIX H TO PART 698—NOTICE OF USER RESPONSIBILITIES.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1681e, 1681g, 1681j, 1681m, 1681s, and 1681s-3; sections 211(d) and 214(b), Pub. L. 108-159, 117 Stat. 1952.

SOURCE: 69 FR 35500, June 24, 2004 unless otherwise noted.

§ 698.1 Authority and purpose.

(a) *Authority*. This part is issued by the Commission pursuant to the provisions of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq.*), as amended by the Consumer Credit Reporting Reform Act of 1996 (Title II, Subtitle D, Chapter 1, of the Omnibus Consolidated Appropriations Act for Fiscal Year 1997), Public Law 104–208, 110 Stat. 3009–426 (Sept. 30, 1996), and the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003, Public Law 108–159, 117 Stat. 1952 (Dec. 4, 2003).

(b) *Purpose*. The purpose of this part is to comply with sections 607(d), 609(c), 609(d), 612(a), 615(d), and 624 of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, as amended by the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003, and sections 211(d) and 214(b) of the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act of 2003.

[69 FR 69784, Nov. 30, 2004, as amended at 70 FR 5032, Jan. 31, 2005; 72 FR 61463, Oct. 30, 2007]

§ 698.2 Legal effect.

These model forms and disclosures prescribed by the FTC do not constitute a trade regulation rule. The issuance of the model forms and disclosures set forth below carries out the directive in the statute that the FTC prescribe these forms and disclosures. Use or distribution of these model forms and disclosures will constitute compliance with any section or subsection of the FCRA requiring that such forms and disclosures be used by or supplied to any person.

[69 FR 69784, Nov. 30, 2004]

§ 698.3 Definitions.

As used in this part, unless otherwise provided:

(a) *Substantially similar* means that all information in the Commission's prescribed model is included in the document that is distributed, and that the document distributed is formatted in a way consistent with the format prescribed by the Commission. The document that is distributed shall not include anything that interferes with, detracts from, or otherwise undermines

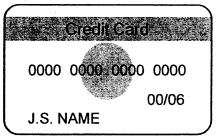
the information contained in the Commission's prescribed model.

[69 FR 69784, Nov. 30, 2004]

APPENDIX A TO PART 698—MODEL PRESCREEN OPT-OUT NOTICES

In order to comply with part 642 of this title, the following model notices may be used:

(a) *English language model notice*—(1) *Short notice.*



Here's a Line About Credit

J.S. Name
12345 Friendly Street
City, ST 12345

Dear Ms. Name,

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things.

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things.

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way peop. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit a smart kind of credit card.

So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card.

We saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology.

Sincerely,

John W. Doe
President, Credit Card Company

PFOR 00 MON
FIXED ABC

■

BALANCE TR
FOR 00 MONTHS

■

NO MONTHS FEE

■

INTERNET SECURITY
SECURITY

■

ONLINE FRAUD PRO
GUARANTEE

■

YOUR BALANCE
PAY YOUR BILL

■

FEE-FREE REWARDS
PROGRAM

You can choose to stop receiving "prescreened" offers of [credit or insurance] from this and other companies by calling toll-free [toll-free number]. See PRESCREEN & OPT-OUT NOTICE on other side [or other location] for more information about prescreened offers.

(2) *Long notice.*

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things.

HEADER

Percent Rate for	Other ABCs	Variable info material	Grace or repases Are placed here	Computing the balast	Annual Fee	Usual Place Finance Charge
Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card.	Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way.	Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card.	Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing.	Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card.	Back long ago.	Back in the last century, we saw how technology.

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way.

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way.

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way.

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw y, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things.

Act Notice: the a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw.

PRESCREEN & OPT-OUT NOTICE: This "prescreened" offer of [credit or insurance] is based on information in your credit report indicating that you meet certain criteria. This offer is not guaranteed if you do not meet our criteria [including providing acceptable property as collateral]. If you do not want to receive prescreened offers of [credit or insurance] from this and other companies, call the consumer reporting agencies [or name of consumer reporting agency] toll-free, [toll-free number]; or write: [consumer reporting agency name and mailing address].

Notice to Some Residents: te a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way people do things. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way. Back in the last century. So we set out to create a smart kind of credit card. Back in the last century, we saw how technology was changing the way.

(b) *Spanish language model notice*—(1) *Short notice.*

Aquí están líneas crédito

J.S. Nombre
1234 Calle Amistosa
Ciudad, ST 12345

PFOR 00 MON FIJO ABC

■

TRANSFERENCIA DE BALANCE POR MESES

■

SIN CUOTA MENSUAL

■

PAGO ELECTRÓNICO SEGURO

■

PROTECCIÓN CONTRA FRAUDE EN LÍNEA GARANTIZADO

■

SU BALANCE PAGA SU CUENTA

■

PROGRAMA DE RECOMPENSAS SIN CUENTA

Estimada Señora Nombre:

En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Sinceramente,

John W. Doe
Presidente, Compañía

Usted puede elegir no recibir más "ofertas de [crédito o seguro] pre-investigadas" de esta y otras compañías llamando sin cargos al [número sin cargo]. Ver la NOTIFICACIÓN DE PRE-INVESTIGACIÓN Y EXCLUSIÓN VOLUNTARIA al otro lado de esta página [o en otro lugar] para más información sobre ofertas pre-investigadas.

(2) *Long notice.*

En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente.

AQUÍ ESTÁN

Protección Contra Fraude	Programa de Recompensas	Su Balance Paga	Sin Cuota Mensual	Protección Contra Fraude	Recompensas Sin Cuenta	Sin Cuota Mensual
En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.	Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.	En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la gente hace las cosas. Así que cremos.	Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente.	En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.	Así que cremos.	Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

TERMINOS Y CONDICIONA

En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente, vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. En el siglo pasado vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

<u>NOTIFICACIÓN DE PRE-INVESTIGACIÓN Y EXCLUSIÓN VOLUNTARIA</u>: Esta oferta de [crédito o seguro] está basada en información contenida en su informe de crédito que indica que usted cumple con ciertos criterios [incluyendo la condición de tener propiedades aceptables como colateral]. Si usted no cumple con nuestros criterios, esta oferta no está garantizada. Si usted no desea recibir ofertas de [crédito o seguro] pre-investigadas de ésta y otras compañías, llame a las agencias de información del consumidor [o nombre de la agencia de información del consumidor] sin cargos, [número sin cargo]; o escriba a: [nombre de la agencia de información del consumidor y dirección de correo].

En el siglo pasado vimos como: la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Así que creamos una tarjeta de crédito inteligente. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas. Vimos como la tecnología estaba cambiando la manera en que la gente hace las cosas.

[70 FR 5033, Jan. 31, 2005]

APPENDIX B TO PART 698 [RESERVED]

APPENDIX C TO PART 698—MODEL FORMS FOR AFFILIATE MARKETING OPT-OUT NOTICES

A. Although use of the model forms is not required, use of the model forms in this Appendix (as applicable) complies with the requirement in section 624 of the Act for clear, conspicuous, and concise notices.

B. Certain changes may be made to the language or format of the model forms without losing the protection from liability afforded by use of the model forms. These changes may not be so extensive as to affect the substance, clarity, or meaningful sequence of the language in the model forms. Persons making such extensive revisions will lose the safe harbor that this Appendix provides. Acceptable changes include, for example:

1. Rearranging the order of the references to ''your income,'' ''your account history,'' and ''your credit score.''
2. Substituting other types of information for ''income,'' ''account history,'' or ''credit score'' for accuracy, such as ''payment history,'' ''credit history,'' ''payoff status,'' or ''claims history.''
3. Substituting a clearer and more accurate description of the affiliates providing or covered by the notice for phrases such as ''the [ABC] group of companies,'' including without limitation a statement that the entity providing the notice recently purchased the consumer's account.
4. Substituting other types of affiliates covered by the notice for ''credit card,'' ''insurance,'' or ''securities'' affiliates.
5. Omitting items that are not accurate or applicable. For example, if a person does not limit the duration of the opt-out period, the notice may omit information about the renewal notice.
6. Adding a statement informing consumers how much time they have to opt out before shared eligibility information may be used to make solicitations to them.
7. Adding a statement that the consumer may exercise the right to opt out at any time.
8. Adding the following statement, if accurate: ''If you previously opted out, you do not need to do so again.''
9. Providing a place on the form for the consumer to fill in identifying information, such as his or her name and address.

C-1 Model Form for Initial Opt-out notice (Single-Affiliate Notice)
C-2 Model Form for Initial Opt-out notice (Joint Notice)
C-3 Model Form for Renewal Notice (Single-Affiliate Notice)
C-4 Model Form for Renewal Notice (Joint Notice)
C-5 Model Form for Voluntary ''No Marketing'' Notice

C-1 MODEL FORM FOR INITIAL OPT-OUT NOTICE (SINGLE-AFFILIATE NOTICE)

[YOUR CHOICE TO LIMIT MARKETING]/[MARKETING OPT-OUT]

— [Name of Affiliate] is providing this notice.
— [Optional: Federal law gives you the right to limit some but not all marketing from our affiliates. Federal law also requires us to give you this notice to tell you about your choice to limit marketing from our affiliates.]
— You may limit our affiliates in the [ABC] group of companies, such as our [credit card, insurance, and securities] affiliates, from marketing their products or services to you based on your personal information that we collect and share with them. This information includes your [income], your [account history with us], and your [credit score].
— Your choice to limit marketing offers from our affiliates will apply [until you tell us to change your choice]/[for x years from when you tell us your choice]/[for at least 5 years from when you tell us your choice]. [Include if the opt-out period expires.] Once that period expires, you will receive a renewal notice that will allow you to continue to limit marketing offers from our affiliates for [another x years]/[at least another 5 years].
— [Include, if applicable, in a subsequent notice, including an annual notice, for consumers who may have previously opted out.] If you have already made a choice to limit marketing offers from our affiliates, you do not need to act again until you receive the renewal notice.

TO LIMIT MARKETING OFFERS, CONTACT US [include all that apply]:

— BY TELEPHONE: 1-877-###–####
— ON THE WEB: *www.—.com*
— BY MAIL: check the box and complete the form below, and send the form to:

[Company name]
[Company address]

____ Do not allow your affiliates to use my personal information to market to me.

C-2 MODEL FORM FOR INITIAL OPT-OUT NOTICE (JOINT NOTICE)

[YOUR CHOICE TO LIMIT MARKETING]/[MARKETING OPT-OUT]

— The [ABC group of companies] is providing this notice.
— [Optional: Federal law gives you the right to limit some but not all marketing from

the [ABC] companies. Federal law also requires us to give you this notice to tell you about your choice to limit marketing from the [ABC] companies.]

— You may limit the [ABC companies], such as the [ABC credit card, insurance, and securities] affiliates, from marketing their products or services to you based on your personal information that they receive from other [ABC] companies. This information includes your [income], your [account history], and your [credit score].

— Your choice to limit marketing offers from the [ABC] companies will apply [until you tell us to change your choice]/[for x years from when you tell us your choice]/[for at least 5 years from when you tell us your choice]. [Include if the opt-out period expires.] Once that period expires, you will receive a renewal notice that will allow you to continue to limit marketing offers from the [ABC] companies for [another x years]/[at least another 5 years].

— [Include, if applicable, in a subsequent notice, including an annual notice, for consumers who may have previously opted out.] If you have already made a choice to limit marketing offers from the [ABC] companies, you do not need to act again until you receive the renewal notice.

TO LIMIT MARKETING OFFERS, CONTACT US [include all that apply]:

— BY TELEPHONE: 1-877-###–####

— ON THE WEB: *www.—.com*

— BY MAIL: check the box and complete the form below, and send the form to:

[Company name]
[Company address]

____ Do not allow any company [in the ABC group of companies] to use my personal information to market to me.

C-3 MODEL FORM FOR RENEWAL NOTICE (SINGLE-AFFILIATE NOTICE)

[RENEWING YOUR CHOICE TO LIMIT MARKETING]/[RENEWING YOUR MARKETING OPT-OUT]

— [Name of Affiliate] is providing this notice.

— [Optional: Federal law gives you the right to limit some but not all marketing from our affiliates. Federal law also requires us to give you this notice to tell you about your choice to limit marketing from our affiliates.]

— You previously chose to limit our affiliates in the [ABC] group of companies, such as our [credit card, insurance, and securities] affiliates, from marketing their products or services to you based on your personal information that we share with them. This information includes your [income], your [account history with us], and your [credit score].

— Your choice has expired or is about to expire.

TO RENEW YOUR CHOICE TO LIMIT MARKETING FOR [X] MORE YEARS, CONTACT US [include all that apply]:

— BY TELEPHONE: 1-877-###–####

— ON THE WEB: *www.—.com*

— BY MAIL: check the box and complete the form below, and send the form to:

[Company name]
[Company address]

____ Renew my choice to limit marketing for [x] more years.

C-4 MODEL FORM FOR RENEWAL NOTICE (JOINT NOTICE)

[RENEWING YOUR CHOICE TO LIMIT MARKETING]/[RENEWING YOUR MARKETING OPT-OUT]

— The [ABC group of companies] is providing this notice.

— [Optional: Federal law gives you the right to limit some but not all marketing from the [ABC] companies. Federal law also requires us to give you this notice to tell you about your choice to limit marketing from the [ABC] companies.]

— You previously chose to limit the [ABC companies], such as the [ABC credit card, insurance, and securities] affiliates, from marketing their products or services to you based on your personal information that they receive from other [ABC] companies. This information includes your [income], your [account history], and your [credit score].

— Your choice has expired or is about to expire.

TO RENEW YOUR CHOICE TO LIMIT MARKETING FOR [X] MORE YEARS, CONTACT US [include all that apply]:

— BY TELEPHONE: 1-877-###–####

— ON THE WEB: *www.—.com*

— BY MAIL: check the box and complete the form below, and send the form to:

[Company name]
[Company address]

____ Renew my choice to limit marketing for [x] more years.

C-5 MODEL FORM FOR VOLUNTARY ''NO MARKETING'' NOTICE

YOUR CHOICE TO STOP MARKETING

— [Name of Affiliate] is providing this notice.

— You may choose to stop all marketing from us and our affiliates.

TO STOP ALL MARKETING OFFERS, CONTACT US [include all that apply]:

— BY TELEPHONE: 1-877-###–####

— ON THE WEB: *www.—.com*

— BY MAIL: check the box and complete the form below, and send the form to:

[Company name]

[Company address]
____ Do not market to me.

[72 FR 61463, Oct. 30, 2007]

APPENDIX D TO PART 698—STANDARDIZED FORM FOR REQUESTING ANNUAL FILE DISCLOSURES.

REQUEST FOR FREE CREDIT REPORT

Note to Consumers: **You have the right to obtain a free copy of your credit report once every 12 months (also known as an "annual file disclosure"), from each of the nationwide consumer reporting agencies. Your report may contain information on where you work and live, the credit accounts that have been opened in your name, if you've paid your bills on time, and whether you have been sued, arrested, or have filed for bankruptcy. Businesses use this information in making decisions about whether to offer you credit, insurance, or employment, and on what terms.**

Use this form to request your credit report from any, or all, of the nationwide consumer reporting agencies.

The following information is required to process your request:

Your Full Name: _____

Your Street Address: _____

Your City, State & Zip Code: _____

Your Telephone Numbers (with area code): Day: _____
Evening: _____

Your Social Security number: _____ Your Date of Birth_____

Place a check next to each credit report you want.

_____ I want a credit report from each of the nationwide consumer reporting agencies

OR

_____ I want a credit report from:

_____ [name of nationwide consumer reporting agency]
_____ [name of nationwide consumer reporting agency]
_____ [name of nationwide consumer reporting agency]

Please check how you would like to receive your report. (Note: because of the need to accurately identify you before we send you your credit report, we may not be able to offer every delivery method to every consumer. We will try to honor your preference.)

_____ [available delivery method]
_____ [available delivery method]
_____ [available delivery method]

_____ Check here if, for security purposes, you want your copy of your credit report to include only the last four digits of your Social Security number (SSN), rather than your entire SSN.

For more information on obtaining your free credit report, visit [insert appropriate website address], call [insert appropriate telephone number], or write to [insert appropriate address].

Mail this form to:
[insert appropriate address]

Your report(s) will be sent within 15 days after we receive your request.

APPENDIX E TO PART 698—SUMMARY OF CONSUMER IDENTITY THEFT RIGHTS

The prescribed form for this summary is a disclosure that is substantially similar to the Commission's model summary with all information clearly and prominently displayed. A summary should accurately reflect changes to those items that may change over time (such as telephone numbers) to remain in compliance. Translations of this summary will be in compliance with the Commission's prescribed model, provided that the translation is accurate and that it is provided in a language used by the recipient consumer.

Para informacion en espanol, visite www.consumer.gov/idtheft o escribe a la FTC, Consumer Response Center, Room 130-B, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W. Washington, D.C., 20580.

Remedying the Effects of Identity Theft

You are receiving this information because you have notified a consumer reporting agency that you believe that you are a victim of identity theft. Identity theft occurs when someone uses your name, Social Security number, date of birth, or other identifying information, without authority, to commit fraud. For example, someone may have committed identity theft by using your personal information to open a credit card account or get a loan in your name. For more information, visit www.consumer.gov/idtheft or write to: FTC, Consumer Response Center, Room 130-B, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W. Washington, D.C., 20580.

The Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) gives you specific rights when you are, or believe that you are, the victim of identity theft. Here is a brief summary of the rights designed to help you recover from identity theft.

1. **You have the right to ask that nationwide consumer reporting agencies place "fraud alerts" in your file** to let potential creditors and others know that you may be a victim of identity theft. A fraud alert can make it more difficult for someone to get credit in your name because it tells creditors to follow certain procedures to protect you. It also may delay your ability to obtain credit. You may place a fraud alert in your file by calling just one of the three nationwide consumer reporting agencies. As soon as that agency processes your fraud alert, it will notify the other two, which then also must place fraud alerts in your file.

   - Equifax: 1-800-XXX-XXXX; www.equifax.com
   - Experian: 1-800-XXX-XXXX; www.experian.com
   - TransUnion: 1-800-XXX-XXXX; www.transunion.com

   An initial fraud alert stays in your file for at least 90 days. An extended alert stays in your file for seven years. To place either of these alerts, a consumer reporting agency will require you to provide appropriate proof of your identity, which may include your Social Security number. If you ask for an extended alert, you will have to provide an *identity theft report.* An *identity theft report* includes a copy of a report you have filed with a federal, state, or local law enforcement agency, and additional information a consumer reporting agency may require you to submit. For more detailed information about the *identity theft report*, visit www.consumer.gov/idtheft.

2. **You have the right to free copies of the information in your file (your "file disclosure").** An initial fraud alert entitles you to a copy of all the information in your file at each of the three nationwide agencies, and an extended alert entitles you to two free file disclosures in a 12-month period following the placing of the alert. These additional disclosures may help you detect signs of fraud, for example, whether fraudulent accounts have been opened in your name or whether someone has reported a change in your address. Once a year, you also have the right to a free copy of the information in your file

at any consumer reporting agency, if you believe it has inaccurate information due to fraud, such as identity theft. You also have the ability to obtain additional free file disclosures under other provisions of the FCRA. See www.ftc.gov/credit.

3. **You have the right to obtain documents relating to fraudulent transactions made or accounts opened using your personal information.** A creditor or other business must give you copies of applications and other business records relating to transactions and accounts that resulted from the theft of your identity, if you ask for them in writing. A business may ask you for proof of your identity, a police report, and an affidavit before giving you the documents. It also may specify an address for you to send your request. Under certain circumstances, a business can refuse to provide you with these documents. See www.consumer.gov/idtheft.

4. **You have the right to obtain information from a debt collector.** If you ask, a debt collector must provide you with certain information about the debt you believe was incurred in your name by an identity thief – like the name of the creditor and the amount of the debt.

5. **If you believe information in your file results from identity theft, you have the right to ask that a consumer reporting agency block that information from your file.** An identity thief may run up bills in your name and not pay them. Information about the unpaid bills may appear on your consumer report. Should you decide to ask a consumer reporting agency to block the reporting of this information, you must identify the information to block, and provide the consumer reporting agency with proof of your identity and a copy of your *identity theft report*. The consumer reporting agency can refuse or cancel your request for a block if, for example, you don't provide the necessary documentation, or where the block results from an error or a material misrepresentation of fact made by you. If the agency declines or rescinds the block, it must notify you. Once a debt resulting from identity theft has been blocked, a person or business with notice of the block may not sell, transfer, or place the debt for collection.

6. **You also may prevent businesses from reporting information about you to consumer reporting agencies if you believe the information is a result of identity theft.** To do so, you must send your request to the address specified by the business that reports the information to the consumer reporting agency. The business will expect you to identify what information you do not want reported and to provide an *identity theft report*.

To learn more about identity theft and how to deal with its consequences, visit www.consumer.gov/idtheft, or write to the FTC. You may have additional rights under state law. For more information, contact your local consumer protection agency or your state attorney general.

In addition to the new rights and procedures to help consumers deal with the effects of identity theft, the FCRA has many other important consumer protections. They are described in more detail at www.ftc.gov/credit.

[69 FR 69784, Nov. 30, 2004]

APPENDIX F TO PART 698—GENERAL SUMMARY OF CONSUMER RIGHTS

The prescribed form for this summary is a disclosure that is substantially similar to the Commission's model summary with all information clearly and prominently displayed. The list of federal regulators that is included in the Commission's prescribed summary may be provided separately so long as this is done in a clear and conspicuous way. A summary should accurately reflect changes to those items that may change over time (*e.g.*, dollar amounts, or telephone numbers and addresses of federal agencies) to remain in compliance. Translations of this summary will be in compliance with the Commission's prescribed model, provided

that the translation is accurate and that it is provided in a language used by the recipient consumer.

Para informacion en espanol, visite www.ftc.gov/credit o escribe a la FTC Consumer Response Center, Room 130-A 600 Pennsylvania Ave. N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580.

A Summary of Your Rights Under the Fair Credit Reporting Act

The federal Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) promotes the accuracy, fairness, and privacy of information in the files of consumer reporting agencies. There are many types of consumer reporting agencies, including credit bureaus and specialty agencies (such as agencies that sell information about check writing histories, medical records, and rental history records). Here is a summary of your major rights under the FCRA. **For more information, including information about additional rights, go to www.ftc.gov/credit or write to: Consumer Response Center, Room 130-A, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Ave. N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580.**

- **You must be told if information in your file has been used against you.** Anyone who uses a credit report or another type of consumer report to deny your application for credit, insurance, or employment – or to take another adverse action against you – must tell you, and must give you the name, address, and phone number of the agency that provided the information.
- **You have the right to know what is in your file.** You may request and obtain all the information about you in the files of a consumer reporting agency (your "file disclosure"). You will be required to provide proper identification, which may include your Social Security number. In many cases, the disclosure will be free. You are entitled to a free file disclosure if:
  - a person has taken adverse action against you because of information in your credit report;
  - you are the victim of identify theft and place a fraud alert in your file;
  - your file contains inaccurate information as a result of fraud;
  - you are on public assistance;
  - you are unemployed but expect to apply for employment within 60 days.

  In addition, by September 2005 all consumers will be entitled to one free disclosure every 12 months upon request from each nationwide credit bureau and from nationwide specialty consumer reporting agencies. See www.ftc.gov/credit for additional information.
- **You have the right to ask for a credit score.** Credit scores are numerical summaries of your credit-worthiness based on information from credit bureaus. You may request a credit score from consumer reporting agencies that create scores or distribute scores used in residential real property loans, but you will have to pay for it. In some mortgage transactions, you will receive credit score information for free from the mortgage lender.
- **You have the right to dispute incomplete or inaccurate information.** If you identify information in your file that is incomplete or inaccurate, and report it to the consumer reporting agency, the agency must investigate unless your dispute is frivolous. See www.ftc.gov/credit for an explanation of dispute procedures.
- **Consumer reporting agencies must correct or delete inaccurate, incomplete, or unverifiable information.** Inaccurate, incomplete or unverifiable information must be removed or corrected, usually within 30 days. However, a consumer reporting agency may continue to report information it has verified as accurate.

- **Consumer reporting agencies may not report outdated negative information.** In most cases, a consumer reporting agency may not report negative information that is more than seven years old, or bankruptcies that are more than 10 years old.
- **Access to your file is limited.** A consumer reporting agency may provide information about you only to people with a valid need -- usually to consider an application with a creditor, insurer, employer, landlord, or other business. The FCRA specifies those with a valid need for access.
- **You must give your consent for reports to be provided to employers.** A consumer reporting agency may not give out information about you to your employer, or a potential employer, without your written consent given to the employer. Written consent generally is not required in the trucking industry. For more information, go to www.ftc.gov/credit.
- **You may limit "prescreened" offers of credit and insurance you get based on information in your credit report.** Unsolicited "prescreened" offers for credit and insurance must include a toll-free phone number you can call if you choose to remove your name and address from the lists these offers are based on. You may opt-out with the nationwide credit bureaus at 1-800-XXX-XXXX.
- **You may seek damages from violators.** If a consumer reporting agency, or, in some cases, a user of consumer reports or a furnisher of information to a consumer reporting agency violates the FCRA, you may be able to sue in state or federal court.
- **Identity theft victims and active duty military personnel have additional rights.** For more information, visit www.ftc.gov/credit.

States may enforce the FCRA, and many states have their own consumer reporting laws. In some cases, you may have more rights under state law. For more information, contact your state or local consumer protection agency or your state Attorney General. Federal enforcers are:

TYPE OF BUSINESS:	CONTACT:
Consumer reporting agencies, creditors and others not listed below	Federal Trade Commission: Consumer Response Center - FCRA Washington, DC 20580 1-877-382-4357
National banks, federal branches/agencies of foreign banks (word "National" or initials "N.A." appear in or after bank's name)	Office of the Comptroller of the Currency Compliance Management, Mail Stop 6-6 Washington, DC 20219 800-613-6743
Federal Reserve System member banks (except national banks, and federal branches/agencies of foreign banks)	Federal Reserve Board Division of Consumer & Community Affairs Washington, DC 20551 202-452-3693
Savings associations and federally chartered savings banks (word "Federal" or initials "F.S.B." appear in federal institution's name)	Office of Thrift Supervision Consumer Complaints Washington, DC 20552 800-842-6929
Federal credit unions (words "Federal Credit Union" appear in institution's name)	National Credit Union Administration 1775 Duke Street Alexandria, VA 22314 703-519-4600
State-chartered banks that are not members of the Federal Reserve System	Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Consumer Response Center, 2345 Grand Avenue, Suite 100 Kansas City, Missouri 64108-2638 1-877-275-3342
Air, surface, or rail common carriers regulated by former Civil Aeronautics Board or Interstate Commerce Commission	Department of Transportation , Office of Financial Management Washington, DC 20590 202-366-1306
Activities subject to the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921	Department of Agriculture Office of Deputy Administrator - GIPSA Washington, DC 20250 202-720-7051

[69 FR 69787, Nov. 30, 2004]

APPENDIX G TO PART 698—NOTICE OF FURNISHER RESPONSIBILITIES

The prescribed form for this disclosure is a separate document that is substantially similar to the Commission's model notice with all information clearly and prominently displayed. Consumer reporting agencies may limit the disclosure to only those items that they know are relevant to the furnisher that will receive the notice.

All furnishers subject to the Federal Trade Commission's jurisdiction must comply with all applicable regulations, including regulations promulgated after this notice was prescribed in 2004. Information about applicable regulations currently in effect can be found at the Commission's Web site, www.ftc.gov/credit. Furnishers who are not subject to the Commission's jurisdiction should consult with their regulators to find any relevant regulations.

NOTICE TO FURNISHERS OF INFORMATION:
OBLIGATIONS OF FURNISHERS UNDER THE FCRA

The federal Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA), 15 U.S.C. 1681-1681y, imposes responsibilities on all persons who furnish information to consumer reporting agencies (CRAs). These responsibilities are found in Section 623 of the FCRA, 15 U.S.C. 1681s-2. State law may impose additional requirements on furnishers. All furnishers of information to CRAs should become familiar with the applicable laws and may want to consult with their counsel to ensure that they are in compliance. The text of the FCRA is set forth in full at the Website of the Federal Trade Commission (FTC): www.ftc.gov/credit. A list of the sections of the FCRA cross-referenced to the U.S. Code is at the end of this document.

Section 623 imposes the following duties upon furnishers:

Accuracy Guidelines

The banking and credit union regulators and the FTC will promulgate guidelines and regulations dealing with the accuracy of information provided to CRAs by furnishers. The regulations and guidelines issued by the FTC will be available at www.ftc.gov/credit when they are issued. Section 623(e).

General Prohibition on Reporting Inaccurate Information

The FCRA prohibits information furnishers from providing information to a CRA that they know or have reasonable cause to believe is inaccurate. However, the furnisher is not subject to this general prohibition if it clearly and conspicuously specifies an address to which consumers may write to notify the furnisher that certain information is inaccurate. Sections 623(a)(1)(A) and (a)(1)(C).

Duty to Correct and Update Information

If at any time a person who regularly and in the ordinary course of business furnishes information to one or more CRAs determines that the information provided is not complete or accurate, the furnisher must promptly provide complete and accurate information to the CRA. In addition, the furnisher must notify all CRAs that received the information of any corrections, and must thereafter report only the complete and accurate information. Section 623(a)(2).

Duties After Notice of Dispute from Consumer

If a consumer notifies a furnisher, at an address specified for the furnisher for such notices, that specific information is inaccurate, and the information is, in fact, inaccurate, the furnisher must thereafter report the correct information to CRAs. Section 623(a)(1)(B).

If a consumer notifies a furnisher that the consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of any information reported by the furnisher, the furnisher may not subsequently report that information to a CRA without providing notice of the dispute. Section 623(a)(3).

The federal banking and credit union regulators and the FTC will issue regulations that will identify when an information furnisher must investigate a dispute made directly to the furnisher by a consumer. Once these regulations are issued, furnishers must comply with them and complete an investigation within 30 days (or 45 days, if the consumer later provides relevant additional information) unless the dispute is frivolous or irrelevant or comes from a "credit repair organization." The FTC regulations will be available at www.ftc.gov/credit. Section 623(a)(8).

Duties After Notice of Dispute from Consumer Reporting Agency

If a CRA notifies a furnisher that a consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of information provided by the furnisher, the furnisher has a duty to follow certain procedures. The furnisher must:

- Conduct an investigation and review all relevant information provided by the CRA, including information given to the CRA by the consumer. Sections 623(b)(1)(A) and (b)(1)(B).
- Report the results to the CRA that referred the dispute, and, if the investigation establishes that the information was, in fact, incomplete or inaccurate, report the results to all CRAs to which the furnisher provided the information that compile and maintain files on a nationwide basis. Section 623(b)(1)(C) and (b)(1)(D).
- Complete the above steps within 30 days from the date the CRA receives the dispute (or 45 days, if the consumer later provides relevant additional information to the CRA). Section 623(b)(2).
- Promptly modify or delete the information, or block its reporting. Section 623(b)(1)(E).

Duty to Report Voluntary Closing of Credit Accounts

If a consumer voluntarily closes a credit account, any person who regularly and in the ordinary course of business furnishes information to one or more CRAs must report this fact when it provides information to CRAs for the time period in which the account was closed. Section 623(a)(4).

Duty to Report Dates of Delinquencies

If a furnisher reports information concerning a delinquent account placed for collection, charged to profit or loss, or subject to any similar action, the furnisher must, within 90 days after reporting the information, provide the CRA with the month and the year of the commencement

of the delinquency that immediately preceded the action, so that the agency will know how long to keep the information in the consumer's file. Section 623(a)(5).

Any person, such as a debt collector, that has acquired or is responsible for collecting delinquent accounts and that reports information to CRAs may comply with the requirements of Section 623(a)(5) (until there is a consumer dispute) by reporting the same delinquency date previously reported by the creditor. If the creditor did not report this date, they may comply with the FCRA by establishing reasonable procedures to obtain and report delinquency dates, or, if a delinquency date cannot be reasonably obtained, by following reasonable procedures to ensure that the date reported precedes the date when the account was placed for collection, charged to profit or loss, or subjected to any similar action. Section 623(a)(5).

Duties of Financial Institutions When Reporting Negative Information

Financial institutions that furnish information to "nationwide" consumer reporting agencies, as defined in Section 603(p), must notify consumers in writing if they may furnish or have furnished negative information to a CRA. Section 623(a)(7). The Federal Reserve Board has prescribed model disclosures, 12 CFR Part 222, App. B.

Duties When Furnishing Medical Information

A furnisher whose primary business is providing medical services, products, or devices (and such furnisher's agents or assignees) is a medical information furnisher for the purposes of the FCRA and must notify all CRAs to which it reports of this fact. Section 623(a)(9). This notice will enable CRAs to comply with their duties under Section 604(g) when reporting medical information.

Duties When ID Theft Occurs

All furnishers must have in place reasonable procedures to respond to notifications from CRAs that information furnished is the result of identity theft, and to prevent refurnishing the information in the future. A furnisher may not furnish information that a consumer has identified as resulting from identity theft unless the furnisher subsequently knows or is informed by the consumer that the information is correct. Section 623(a)(6). If a furnisher learns that it has furnished inaccurate information due to identity theft, it must notify each consumer reporting agency of the correct information and must thereafter report only complete and accurate information. Section 623(a)(2). When any furnisher of information is notified pursuant to the procedures set forth in Section 605B that a debt has resulted from identity theft, the furnisher may not sell, transfer, or place for collection the debt except in certain limited circumstances. Section 615(f).

The FTC's Web site, www.ftc.gov/credit, has more information about the FCRA, including publications for businesses and the full text of the FCRA.

Citations for FCRA sections in the U.S. Code, 15 U.S.C. § 1681 et seq.:

Section 602	15 U.S.C. 1681	Section 615	15 U.S.C. 1681m
Section 603	15 U.S.C. 1681a	Section 616	15 U.S.C. 1681n
Section 604	15 U.S.C. 1681b	Section 617	15 U.S.C. 1681o
Section 605	15 U.S.C. 1681c	Section 618	15 U.S.C. 1681p
Section 605A	15 U.S.C. 1681cA	Section 619	15 U.S.C. 1681q
Section 605B	15 U.S.C. 1681cB	Section 620	15 U.S.C. 1681r
Section 606	15 U.S.C. 1681d	Section 621	15 U.S.C. 1681s
Section 607	15 U.S.C. 1681e	Section 622	15 U.S.C. 1681s-1
Section 608	15 U.S.C. 1681f	Section 623	15 U.S.C. 1681s-2
Section 609	15 U.S.C. 1681g	Section 624	15 U.S.C. 1681t
Section 610	15 U.S.C. 1681h	Section 625	15 U.S.C. 1681u
Section 611	15 U.S.C. 1681i	Section 626	15 U.S.C. 1681v
Section 612	15 U.S.C. 1681j	Section 627	15 U.S.C. 1681w
Section 613	15 U.S.C. 1681k	Section 628	15 U.S.C. 1681x
Section 614	15 U.S.C. 1681l	Section 629	15 U.S.C. 1681y

[69 FR 69790, Nov. 30, 2004]

APPENDIX H TO PART 698—NOTICE OF USER RESPONSIBILITIES

The prescribed form for this disclosure is a separate document that is substantially similar to the Commission's notice with all information clearly and prominently displayed. Consumer reporting agencies may limit the disclosure to only those items that they know are relevant to the user that will receive the notice.

All users subject to the Federal Trade Commission's jurisdiction must comply with all applicable regulations, including regulations promulgated after this notice was prescribed in 2004. Information about applicable regulations currently in effect can be found at the Commission's Web site, www.ftc.gov/credit. Persons not subject to the Commission's jurisdiction should consult with their regulators to find any relevant regulations.

NOTICE TO USERS OF CONSUMER REPORTS: OBLIGATIONS OF USERS UNDER THE FCRA

The Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA),15 U.S.C. 1681-1681y, requires that this notice be provided to inform users of consumer reports of their legal obligations. State law may impose additional requirements. The text of the FCRA is set forth in full at the Federal Trade Commission's Website at www.ftc.gov/credit. At the end of this document is a list of United States Code citations for the FCRA. Other information about user duties is also available at the Commission's Web site. **Users must consult the relevant provisions of the FCRA for details about their obligations under the FCRA.**

The first section of this summary sets forth the responsibilities imposed by the FCRA on all users of consumer reports. The subsequent sections discuss the duties of users of reports that contain specific types of information, or that are used for certain purposes, and the legal consequences of violations. If you are a furnisher of information to a consumer reporting agency (CRA), you have additional obligations and will receive a separate notice from the CRA describing your duties as a furnisher.

I. OBLIGATIONS OF ALL USERS OF CONSUMER REPORTS

A. Users Must Have a Permissible Purpose

Congress has limited the use of consumer reports to protect consumers' privacy. All users must have a permissible purpose under the FCRA to obtain a consumer report. Section 604 contains a list of the permissible purposes under the law. These are:

- As ordered by a court or a federal grand jury subpoena. Section 604(a)(1)
- As instructed by the consumer in writing. Section 604(a)(2)
- For the extension of credit as a result of an application from a consumer, or the review or collection of a consumer's account. Section 604(a)(3)(A)
- For employment purposes, including hiring and promotion decisions, where the consumer has given written permission. Sections 604(a)(3)(B) and 604(b)

- For the underwriting of insurance as a result of an application from a consumer. Section 604(a)(3)(C)

- When there is a legitimate business need, in connection with a business transaction that is initiated by the consumer. Section 604(a)(3)(F)(i)

- To review a consumer's account to determine whether the consumer continues to meet the terms of the account. Section 604(a)(3)(F)(ii)

- To determine a consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit granted by a governmental instrumentality required by law to consider an applicant's financial responsibility or status. Section 604(a)(3)(D)

- For use by a potential investor or servicer, or current insurer, in a valuation or assessment of the credit or prepayment risks associated with an existing credit obligation. Section 604(a)(3)(E)

- For use by state and local officials in connection with the determination of child support payments, or modifications and enforcement thereof. Sections 604(a)(4) and 604(a)(5)

In addition, creditors and insurers may obtain certain consumer report information for the purpose of making "prescreened" unsolicited offers of credit or insurance. Section 604(c). The particular obligations of users of "prescreened" information are described in Section VII below.

B. Users Must Provide Certifications

Section 604(f) prohibits any person from obtaining a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency (CRA) unless the person has certified to the CRA the permissible purpose(s) for which the report is being obtained and certifies that the report will not be used for any other purpose.

C. Users Must Notify Consumers When Adverse Actions Are Taken

The term "adverse action" is defined very broadly by Section 603. "Adverse actions" include all business, credit, and employment actions affecting consumers that can be considered to have a negative impact as defined by Section 603(k) of the FCRA – such as denying or canceling credit or insurance, or denying employment or promotion. No adverse action occurs in a credit transaction where the creditor makes a counteroffer that is accepted by the consumer.

1. Adverse Actions Based on Information Obtained From a CRA

If a user takes any type of adverse action as defined by the FCRA that is based at least in part on information contained in a consumer report, Section 615(a) requires the user to notify the consumer. The notification may be done in writing, orally, or by electronic means. It must include the following:

- The name, address, and telephone number of the CRA (including a toll-free telephone number, if it is a nationwide CRA) that provided the report.
- A statement that the CRA did not make the adverse decision and is not able to explain why the decision was made.
- A statement setting forth the consumer's right to obtain a free disclosure of the consumer's file from the CRA if the consumer makes a request within 60 days.
- A statement setting forth the consumer's right to dispute directly with the CRA the accuracy or completeness of any information provided by the CRA.

2. Adverse Actions Based on Information Obtained From Third Parties Who Are Not Consumer Reporting Agencies

If a person denies (or increases the charge for) credit for personal, family, or household purposes based either wholly or partly upon information from a person other than a CRA, and the information is the type of consumer information covered by the FCRA, Section 615(b)(1) requires that the user clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his or her right to be told the nature of the information that was relied upon if the consumer makes a written request within 60 days of notification. The user must provide the disclosure within a reasonable period of time following the consumer's written request.

3. Adverse Actions Based on Information Obtained From Affiliates

If a person takes an adverse action involving insurance, employment, or a credit transaction initiated by the consumer, based on information of the type covered by the FCRA, and this information was obtained from an entity affiliated with the user of the information by common ownership or control, Section 615(b)(2) requires the user to notify the consumer of the adverse action. The notice must inform the consumer that he or she may obtain a disclosure of the nature of the information relied upon by making a written request within 60 days of receiving the adverse action notice. If the consumer makes such a request, the user must disclose the nature of the information not later than 30 days after receiving the request. If consumer report information is shared among affiliates and then used for an adverse action, the user must make an adverse action disclosure as set forth in I.C.1 above.

D. Users Have Obligations When Fraud and Active Duty Military Alerts are in Files

When a consumer has placed a fraud alert, including one relating to identity theft, or an active duty military alert with a nationwide consumer reporting agency as defined in Section 603(p) and resellers, Section 605A(h) imposes limitations on users of reports obtained from the consumer reporting agency in certain circumstances, including the establishment of a new credit plan and the issuance of additional credit cards. For initial fraud alerts and active duty alerts, the user must have reasonable policies and procedures in place to form a belief that the user knows the identity of the applicant or contact the consumer at a telephone number specified by the consumer; in the case of extended fraud alerts, the user must contact the consumer in accordance with the contact information provided in the consumer's alert.

E. Users Have Obligations When Notified of an Address Discrepancy

Section 605(h) requires nationwide CRAs, as defined in Section 603(p), to notify users that request reports when the address for a consumer provided by the user in requesting the report is substantially different from the addresses in the consumer's file. When this occurs, users must comply with regulations specifying the procedures to be followed, which will be issued by the Federal Trade Commission and the banking and credit union regulators. The Federal Trade Commission's regulations will be available at www.ftc.gov/credit.

F. Users Have Obligations When Disposing of Records

Section 628 requires that all users of consumer report information have in place procedures to properly dispose of records containing this information. The Federal Trade Commission, the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the banking and credit union regulators have issued regulations covering disposal. The Federal Trade Commission's regulations may be found at www.ftc.gov/credit.

II. CREDITORS MUST MAKE ADDITIONAL DISCLOSURES

If a person uses a consumer report in connection with an application for, or a grant, extension, or provision of, credit to a consumer on material terms that are materially less favorable than the most favorable terms available to a substantial proportion of consumers from or through that person, based in whole or in part on a consumer report, the person must provide a risk-based pricing notice to the consumer in accordance with regulations to be jointly prescribed by the Federal Trade Commission and the Federal Reserve Board.

Section 609(g) requires a disclosure by all persons that make or arrange loans secured by residential real property (one to four units) and that use credit scores. These persons must

provide credit scores and other information about credit scores to applicants, including the disclosure set forth in Section 609(g)(1)(D) ("Notice to the Home Loan Applicant").

III. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS WHEN CONSUMER REPORTS ARE OBTAINED FOR EMPLOYMENT PURPOSES

A. Employment Other Than in the Trucking Industry

If information from a CRA is used for employment purposes, the user has specific duties, which are set forth in Section 604(b) of the FCRA. The user must:

- Make a clear and conspicuous written disclosure to the consumer before the report is obtained, in a document that consists solely of the disclosure, that a consumer report may be obtained.
- Obtain from the consumer prior written authorization. Authorization to access reports during the term of employment may be obtained at the time of employment.
- Certify to the CRA that the above steps have been followed, that the information being obtained will not be used in violation of any federal or state equal opportunity law or regulation, and that, if any adverse action is to be taken based on the consumer report, a copy of the report and a summary of the consumer's rights will be provided to the consumer.
- **Before** taking an adverse action, the user must provide a copy of the report to the consumer as well as the summary of consumer's rights. (The user should receive this summary from the CRA.) A Section 615(a) adverse action notice should be sent after the adverse action is taken.

An adverse action notice also is required in employment situations if credit information (other than transactions and experience data) obtained from an affiliate is used to deny employment. Section 615(b)(2)

The procedures for investigative consumer reports and employee misconduct investigations are set forth below.

B. Employment in the Trucking Industry

Special rules apply for truck drivers where the only interaction between the consumer and the potential employer is by mail, telephone, or computer. In this case, the consumer may provide consent orally or electronically, and an adverse action may be made orally, in writing, or electronically. The consumer may obtain a copy of any report relied upon by the trucking

company by contacting the company.

IV. OBLIGATIONS WHEN INVESTIGATIVE CONSUMER REPORTS ARE USED

Investigative consumer reports are a special type of consumer report in which information about a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics, and mode of living is obtained through personal interviews by an entity or person that is a consumer reporting agency. Consumers who are the subjects of such reports are given special rights under the FCRA. If a user intends to obtain an investigative consumer report, Section 606 requires the following:

- The user must disclose to the consumer that an investigative consumer report may be obtained. This must be done in a written disclosure that is mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer at some time before or not later than three days after the date on which the report was first requested. The disclosure must include a statement informing the consumer of his or her right to request additional disclosures of the nature and scope of the investigation as described below, and the summary of consumer rights required by Section 609 of the FCRA. (The summary of consumer rights will be provided by the CRA that conducts the investigation.)

- The user must certify to the CRA that the disclosures set forth above have been made and that the user will make the disclosure described below.

- Upon the written request of a consumer made within a reasonable period of time after the disclosures required above, the user must make a complete disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation. This must be made in a written statement that is mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer no later than five days after the date on which the request was received from the consumer or the report was first requested, whichever is later in time.

V. SPECIAL PROCEDURES FOR EMPLOYEE INVESTIGATIONS

Section 603(x) provides special procedures for investigations of suspected misconduct by an employee or for compliance with Federal, state or local laws and regulations or the rules of a self-regulatory organization, and compliance with written policies of the employer. These investigations are not treated as consumer reports so long as the employer or its agent complies with the procedures set forth in Section 603(x), and a summary describing the nature and scope of the inquiry is made to the employee if an adverse action is taken based on the investigation.

VI. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS OF MEDICAL INFORMATION

Section 604(g) limits the use of medical information obtained from consumer reporting agencies (other than payment information that appears in a coded form that does not identify the

medical provider). If the information is to be used for an insurance transaction, the consumer must give consent to the user of the report or the information must be coded. If the report is to be used for employment purposes – or in connection with a credit transaction (except as provided in regulations issued by the banking and credit union regulators) – the consumer must provide specific written consent and the medical information must be relevant. Any user who receives medical information shall not disclose the information to any other person (except where necessary to carry out the purpose for which the information was disclosed, or as permitted by statute, regulation, or order).

VII. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS OF "PRESCREENED" LISTS

The FCRA permits creditors and insurers to obtain limited consumer report information for use in connection with unsolicited offers of credit or insurance under certain circumstances. Sections 603(l), 604(c), 604(e), and 615(d). This practice is known as "prescreening" and typically involves obtaining from a CRA a list of consumers who meet certain preestablished criteria. If any person intends to use prescreened lists, that person must (1) before the offer is made, establish the criteria that will be relied upon to make the offer and to grant credit or insurance, and (2) maintain such criteria on file for a three-year period beginning on the date on which the offer is made to each consumer. In addition, any user must provide with each written solicitation a clear and conspicuous statement that:

- Information contained in a consumer's CRA file was used in connection with the transaction.
- The consumer received the offer because he or she satisfied the criteria for credit worthiness or insurability used to screen for the offer.
- Credit or insurance may not be extended if, after the consumer responds, it is determined that the consumer does not meet the criteria used for screening or any applicable criteria bearing on credit worthiness or insurability, or the consumer does not furnish required collateral.
- The consumer may prohibit the use of information in his or her file in connection with future prescreened offers of credit or insurance by contacting the notification system established by the CRA that provided the report. The statement must include the address and toll-free telephone number of the appropriate notification system.

In addition, once the Federal Trade Commission by rule has established the format, type size, and manner of the disclosure required by Section 615(d), users must be in compliance with the rule. The FTC's regulations will be at www.ftc.gov/credit.

VIII. OBLIGATIONS OF RESELLERS

A. Disclosure and Certification Requirements

Section 607(e) requires any person who obtains a consumer report for resale to take the following steps:

- Disclose the identity of the end-user to the source CRA.
- Identify to the source CRA each permissible purpose for which the report will be furnished to the end-user.
- Establish and follow reasonable procedures to ensure that reports are resold only for permissible purposes, including procedures to obtain:
  (1) the identity of all end-users;
  (2) certifications from all users of each purpose for which reports will be used; and
  (3) certifications that reports will not be used for any purpose other than the purpose(s) specified to the reseller. Resellers must make reasonable efforts to verify this information before selling the report.

B. Reinvestigations by Resellers

Under Section 611(f), if a consumer disputes the accuracy or completeness of information in a report prepared by a reseller, the reseller must determine whether this is a result of an action or omission on its part and, if so, correct or delete the information. If not, the reseller must send the dispute to the source CRA for reinvestigation. When any CRA notifies the reseller of the results of an investigation, the reseller must immediately convey the information to the consumer.

C. Fraud Alerts and Resellers

Section 605A(f) requires resellers who receive fraud alerts or active duty alerts from another consumer reporting agency to include these in their reports.

IX. LIABILITY FOR VIOLATIONS OF THE FCRA

Failure to comply with the FCRA can result in state government or federal government enforcement actions, as well as private lawsuits. Sections 616, 617, and 621. In addition, any person who knowingly and willfully obtains a consumer report under false pretenses may face criminal prosecution. Section 619.

The FTC's Web site, www.ftc.gov/credit, has more information about the FCRA including publications for businesses and the full text of the FCRA.

Citations for FCRA sections in the U.S. Code, 15 U.S.C. § 1681 et seq.:

Section 602	15 U.S.C. 1681
Section 603	15 U.S.C. 1681a
Section 604	15 U.S.C. 1681b
Section 605	15 U.S.C. 1681c
Section 605A	15 U.S.C. 1681cA
Section 605B	15 U.S.C. 1681cB
Section 606	15 U.S.C. 1681d
Section 607	15 U.S.C. 1681e
Section 608	15 U.S.C. 1681f
Section 609	15 U.S.C. 1681g
Section 610	15 U.S.C. 1681h
Section 611	15 U.S.C. 1681i
Section 612	15 U.S.C. 1681j
Section 613	15 U.S.C. 1681k
Section 614	15 U.S.C. 1681*l*
Section 615	15 U.S.C. 1681m
Section 616	15 U.S.C. 1681n
Section 617	15 U.S.C. 1681o
Section 618	15 U.S.C. 1681p
Section 619	15 U.S.C. 1681q
Section 620	15 U.S.C. 1681r
Section 621	15 U.S.C. 1681s
Section 622	15 U.S.C. 1681s-1
Section 623	15 U.S.C. 1681s-2
Section 624	15 U.S.C. 1681t
Section 625	15 U.S.C. 1681u
Section 626	15 U.S.C. 1681v
Section 627	15 U.S.C. 1681w
Section 628	15 U.S.C. 1681x
Section 629	15 U.S.C. 1681y

[69 FR 69795, Nov. 30, 2004]

SUBCHAPTER G—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE MAGNUSON-MOSS WARRANTY ACT

PART 700—INTERPRETATIONS OF MAGNUSON-MOSS WARRANTY ACT

Sec.
700.1 Products covered.
700.2 Date of manufacture.
700.3 Written warranty.
700.4 Parties ''actually making'' a written warranty.
700.5 Expressions of general policy.
700.6 Designation of warranties.
700.7 Use of warranty registration cards.
700.8 Warrantor's decision as final.
700.9 Duty to install under a full warranty.
700.10 Section 102(c).
700.11 Written warranty, service contract, and insurance distinguished for purposes of compliance under the Act.
700.12 Effective date of 16 CFR parts 701 and 702.

AUTHORITY: Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, Pub. L. 93–637, 15 U.S.C. 2301.

SOURCE: 42 FR 36114, July 13, 1977, unless otherwise noted.

§ 700.1 Products covered.

(a) The Act applies to written warranties on tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes. This definition includes property which is intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or installed. This means that a product is a ''consumer product'' if the use of that type of product is not uncommon. The percentage of sales or the use to which a product is put by any individual buyer is not determinative. For example, products such as automobiles and typewriters which are used for both personal and commercial purposes come within the definition of consumer product. Where it is unclear whether a particular product is covered under the definition of consumer product, any ambiguity will be resolved in favor of coverage.

(b) Agricultural products such as farm machinery, structures and implements used in the business or occupation of farming are not covered by the Act where their personal, family, or household use is uncommon. However, those agricultural products normally used for personal or household gardening (for example, to produce goods for personal consumption, and not for resale) are consumer products under the Act.

(c) The definition of ''Consumer product'' limits the applicability of the Act to personal property, ''including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or installed.'' This provision brings under the Act separate items of equipment attached to real property, such as air conditioners, furnaces, and water heaters.

(d) The coverage of separate items of equipment attached to real property includes, but is not limited to, appliances and other thermal, mechanical, and electrical equipment. (It does not extend to the wiring, plumbing, ducts, and other items which are integral component parts of the structure.) State law would classify many such products as fixtures to, and therefore a part of, realty. The statutory definition is designed to bring such products under the Act regardless of whether they may be considered fixtures under state law.

(e) The coverage of building materials which are not separate items of equipment is based on the nature of the purchase transaction. An analysis of the transaction will determine whether the goods are real or personal property. The numerous products which go into the construction of a consumer dwelling are all consumer products when sold ''over the counter,'' as by hardware and building supply retailers. This is also true where a consumer contracts for the purchase of such materials in connection with the improvement, repair, or modification of a home (for example, paneling, dropped ceilings, siding, roofing, storm windows, remodeling). However, where such

products are at the time of sale integrated into the structure of a dwelling they are not consumer products as they cannot be practically distinguished from realty. Thus, for example, the beams, wallboard, wiring, plumbing, windows, roofing, and other structural components of a dwelling are not consumer products when they are sold as part of real estate covered by a written warranty.

(f) In the case where a consumer contracts with a builder to construct a home, a substantial addition to a home, or other realty (such as a garage or an in-ground swimming pool) the building materials to be used are not consumer products. Although the materials are separately identifiable at the time the contract is made, it is the intention of the parties to contract for the construction of realty which will integrate the component materials. Of course, as noted above, any separate items of equipment to be attached to such realty are consumer products under the Act.

(g) Certain provisions of the Act apply only to products actually costing the consumer more than a specified amount. Section 103 applies to consumer products actually costing the consumer more than $10, excluding tax. The $10 minimum will be interpreted to include multiple-packaged items which may individually sell for less than $10, but which have been packaged in a manner that does not permit breaking the package to purchase an item or items at a price less than $10. Thus, a written warranty on a dozen items packaged and priced for sale at $12 must be designated, even though identical items may be offered in smaller quantities at under $10. This interpretation applies in the same manner to the minimum dollar limits in section 102 and rules promulgated under that section.

(h) Warranties on replacement parts and components used to repair consumer products are covered; warranties on services are not covered. Therefore, warranties which apply solely to a repairer's workmanship in performing repairs are not subject to the Act. Where a written agreement warrants both the parts provided to effect a repair and the workmanship in making that repair, the warranty must comply with the Act and the rules thereunder.

(i) The Act covers written warranties on consumer products ''distributed in commerce'' as that term is defined in section 101(3). Thus, by its terms the Act arguably applies to products exported to foreign jurisdictions. However, the public interest would not be served by the use of Commission resources to enforce the Act with respect to such products. Moreover, the legislative intent to apply the requirements of the Act to such products is not sufficiently clear to justify such an extraordinary result. The Commission does not contemplate the enforcement of the Act with respect to consumer products exported to foreign jurisdictions. Products exported for sale at military post exchanges remain subject to the same enforcement standards as products sold within the United States, its territories and possessions.

§ 700.2 Date of manufacture.

Section 112 of the Act provides that the Act shall apply only to those consumer products manufactured after July 4, 1975. When a consumer purchases repair of a consumer product the date of manufacture of any replacement parts used is the measuring date for determining coverage under the Act. The date of manufacture of the consumer product being repaired is in this instance not relevant. Where a consumer purchases or obtains on an exchange basis a rebuilt consumer product, the date that the rebuilding process is completed determines the Act's applicability.

[42 FR 36114, July 13, 1977; 42 FR 38341, July 28, 1977]

§ 700.3 Written warranty.

(a) The Act imposes specific duties and liabilities on suppliers who offer written warranties on consumer products. Certain representations, such as energy efficiency ratings for electrical appliances, care labeling of wearing apparel, and other product information disclosures may be express warranties under the Uniform Commercial Code. However, these disclosures alone are not written warranties under this Act. Section 101(6) provides that a written

affirmation of fact or a written promise of a specified level of performance must relate to a specified period of time in order to be considered a ''written warranty.'',[1] A product information disclosure without a specified time period to which the disclosure relates is therefore not a written warranty. In addition, section 111(d) exempts from the Act (except section 102(c)) any written warranty the making or content of which is required by federal law. The Commission encourages the disclosure of product information which is not deceptive and which may benefit consumers, and will not construe the Act to impede information disclosure in product advertising or labeling.

(b) Certain terms, or conditions, of sale of a consumer product may not be ''written warranties'' as that term is defined in section 101(6), and should not be offered or described in a manner that may deceive consumers as to their enforceability under the Act. For example, a seller of consumer products may give consumers an unconditional right to revoke acceptance of goods within a certain number of days after delivery without regard to defects or failure to meet a specified level of performance. Or a seller may permit consumers to return products for any reason for credit toward purchase of another item. Such terms of sale taken alone are not written warranties under the Act. Therefore, suppliers should avoid any characterization of such terms of sale as warranties. The use of such terms as ''free trial period'' and ''trade-in credit policy'' in this regard would be appropriate. Furthermore, such terms of sale should be stated separately from any written warranty. Of course, the offering and performance of such terms of sale remain subject to section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45.

(c) The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act generally applies to written warranties covering consumer products. Many consumer products are covered by warranties which are neither intended for, nor enforceable by, consumers. A common example is a warranty given by a component supplier to a manufacturer of consumer products. (The manufacturer may, in turn, warrant these components to consumers.) The component supplier's warranty is generally given solely to the product manufacturer, and is neither intended to be conveyed to the consumer nor brought to the consumer's attention in connection with the sale. Such warranties are not subject to the Act, since a written warranty under section 101(6) of the Act must become ''part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale.'' However, the Act applies to a component supplier's warranty in writing which is given to the consumer. An example is a supplier's written warranty to the consumer covering a refrigerator that is sold installed in a boat or recreational vehicle. The supplier of the refrigerator relies on the boat or vehicle assembler to convey the written agreement to the consumer. In this case, the supplier's written warranty is to a consumer, and is covered by the Act.

§ 700.4 Parties "actually making" a written warranty.

Section 110(f) of the Act provides that only the supplier ''actually making'' a written warranty is liable for purposes of FTC and private enforcement of the Act. A supplier who does no more than distribute or sell a consumer product covered by a written warranty offered by another person or business and which identifies that person or business as the warrantor is not liable for failure of the written warranty to comply with the Act or rules thereunder. However, other actions and written and oral representations of such a supplier in connection with the offer or sale of a warranted product may obligate that supplier under the Act. If under State law the supplier is deemed to have ''adopted'' the written affirmation of fact, promise, or undertaking, the supplier is also obligated under the Act. Suppliers are advised to consult State law to determine those actions and representations which may

[1] A ''written warranty'' is also created by a written affirmation of fact or a written promise that the product is defect free, or by a written undertaking of remedial action within the meaning of section 101(6)(B).

make them co-warrantors, and therefore obligated under the warranty of the other person or business.

§ 700.5 Expressions of general policy.

(a) Under section 103(b), statements or representations of general policy concerning customer satisfaction which are not subject to any specific limitation need not be designated as full or limited warranties, and are exempt from the requirements of sections 102, 103, and 104 of the Act and rules thereunder. However, such statements remain subject to the enforcement provisions of section 110 of the Act, and to section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45.

(b) The section 103(b) exemption applies only to general policies, not to those which are limited to specific consumer products manufactured or sold by the supplier offering such a policy. In addition, to qualify for an exemption under section 103(b) such policies may not be subject to any specific limitations. For example, policies which have an express limitation of duration or a limitation of the amount to be refunded are not exempted. This does not preclude the imposition of reasonable limitations based on the circumstances in each instance a consumer seeks to invoke such an agreement. For instance, a warrantor may refuse to honor such an expression of policy where a consumer has used a product for 10 years without previously expressing any dissatisfaction with the product. Such a refusal would not be a specific limitation under this provision.

§ 700.6 Designation of warranties.

(a) Section 103 of the Act provides that written warranties on consumer products manufactured after July 4, 1975, and actually costing the consumer more than $10, excluding tax, must be designated either ''Full (statement of duration) Warranty'' or ''Limited Warranty''. Warrantors may include a statement of duration in a limited warranty designation. The designation or designations should appear clearly and conspicuously as a caption, or prominent title, clearly separated from the text of the warranty. The full (statement of duration) warranty and limited warranty are the exclusive designations permitted under the Act, unless a specific exception is created by rule.

(b) Section 104(b)(4) states that ''the duties under subsection (a) (of section 104) extend from the warrantor to each person who is a consumer with respect to the consumer product.'' Section 101(3) defines a consumer as ''a buyer (other than for purposes of resale) of any consumer product, any person to whom such product is transferred during the duration of an implied or written warranty (or service contract) applicable to the product. * * *.'' Therefore, a full warranty may not expressly restrict the warranty rights of a transferee during its stated duration. However, where the duration of a full warranty is defined solely in terms of first purchaser ownership there can be no violation of section 104(b)(4), since the duration of the warranty expires, by definition, at the time of transfer. No rights of a subsequent transferee are cut off as there is no transfer of ownership ''during the duration of (any) warranty.'' Thus, these provisions do not preclude the offering of a full warranty with its duration determined exclusively by the period during which the first purchaser owns the product, or uses it in conjunction with another product. For example, an automotive battery or muffler warranty may be designated as ''full warranty for as long as you own your car.'' Because this type of warranty leads the consumer to believe that proof of purchase is not needed so long as he or she owns the product a duty to furnish documentary proof may not be reasonably imposed on the consumer under this type of warranty. The burden is on the warrantor to prove that a particular claimant under this type of warranty is not the original purchaser or owner of the product. Warrantors or their designated agents may, however, ask consumers to state or affirm that they are the first purchaser of the product.

§ 700.7 Use of warranty registration cards.

(a) Under section 104(b)(1) of the Act a warrantor offering a full warranty may not impose on consumers any duty other than notification of a defect as a condition of securing remedy of

the defect or malfunction, unless such additional duty can be demonstrated by the warrantor to be reasonable. Warrantors have in the past stipulated the return of a ''warranty registration'' or similar card. By ''warranty registration card'' the Commission means a card which must be returned by the consumer shortly after purchase of the product and which is stipulated or implied in the warranty to be a condition precedent to warranty coverage and performance.

(b) A requirement that the consumer return a warranty registration card or a similar notice as a condition of performance under a full warranty is an unreasonable duty. Thus, a provision such as, ''This warranty is void unless the warranty registration card is returned to the warrantor'' is not permissible in a full warranty, nor is it permissible to imply such a condition in a full warranty.

(c) This does not prohibit the use of such registration cards where a warrantor suggests use of the card as one possible means of proof of the date the product was purchased. For example, it is permissible to provide in a full warranty that a consumer may fill out and return a card to place on file proof of the date the product was purchased. Any such suggestion to the consumer must include notice that failure to return the card will not affect rights under the warranty, so long as the consumer can show in a reasonable manner the date the product was purchased. Nor does this interpretation prohibit a seller from obtaining from purchasers at the time of sale information requested by the warrantor.

§ 700.8 Warrantor's decision as final.

A warrantor shall not indicate in any written warranty or service contract either directly or indirectly that the decision of the warrantor, service contractor, or any designated third party is final or binding in any dispute concerning the warranty or service contract. Nor shall a warrantor or service contractor state that it alone shall determine what is a defect under the agreement. Such statements are deceptive since section 110(d) of the Act gives state and federal courts jurisdiction over suits for breach of warranty and service contract.

§ 700.9 Duty to install under a full warranty.

Under section 104(a)(1) of the Act, the remedy under a full warranty must be provided to the consumer without charge. If the warranted product has utility only when installed, a full warranty must provide such installation without charge regardless of whether or not the consumer originally paid for installation by the warrantor or his agent. However, this does not preclude the warrantor from imposing on the consumer a duty to remove, return, or reinstall where such duty can be demonstrated by the warrantor to meet the standard of reasonableness under section 104(b)(1).

§ 700.10 Section 102(c).

(a) Section 102(c) prohibits tying arrangements that condition coverage under a written warranty on the consumer's use of an article or service identified by brand, trade, or corporate name unless that article or service is provided without charge to the consumer.

(b) Under a limited warranty that provides only for replacement of defective parts and no portion of labor charges, section 102(c) prohibits a condition that the consumer use only service (labor) identified by the warrantor to install the replacement parts. A warrantor or his designated representative may not provide parts under the warranty in a manner which impedes or precludes the choice by the consumer of the person or business to perform necessary labor to install such parts.

(c) No warrantor may condition the continued validity of a warranty on the use of only authorized repair service and/or authorized replacement parts for non-warranty service and maintenance. For example, provisions such as, ''This warranty is void if service is performed by anyone other than an authorized 'ABC' dealer and all replacement parts must be genuine 'ABC' parts,'' and the like, are prohibited where the service or parts are not covered by the warranty. These provisions violate the Act in two ways. First, they

violate the section 102 (c) ban against tying arrangements. Second, such provisions are deceptive under section 110 of the Act, because a warrantor cannot, as a matter of law, avoid liability under a written warranty where a defect is unrelated to the use by a consumer of ''unauthorized'' articles or service. This does not preclude a warrantor from expressly excluding liability for defects or damage caused by such ''unauthorized'' articles or service; nor does it preclude the warrantor from denying liability where the warrantor can demonstrate that the defect or damage was so caused.

§ 700.11 Written warranty, service contract, and insurance distinguished for purposes of compliance under the Act.

(a) The Act recognizes two types of agreements which may provide similar coverage of consumer products, the written warranty, and the service contract. In addition, other agreements may meet the statutory definitions of either ''written warranty'' or ''service contract,'' but are sold and regulated under state law as contracts of insurance. One example is the automobile breakdown insurance policies sold in many jurisdictions and regulated by the state as a form of casualty insurance. The McCarran-Ferguson Act, 15 U.S.C. 1011 et seq., precludes jurisdiction under federal law over ''the business of insurance'' to the extent an agreement is regulated by state law as insurance. Thus, such agreements are subject to the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act only to the extent they are not regulated in a particular state as the business of insurance.

(b) ''Written warranty'' and ''service contract'' are defined in sections 101(6) and 101(8) of the Act, respectively. A written warranty must be ''part of the basis of the bargain.'' This means that it must be conveyed at the time of sale of the consumer product and the consumer must not give any consideration beyond the purchase price of the consumer product in order to benefit from the agreement. It is not a requirement of the Act that an agreement obligate a supplier of the consumer product to a written warranty, but merely that it be part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a consumer. This contemplates written warranties by third-party non-suppliers.

(c) A service contract under the Act must meet the definitions of section 101(8). An agreement which would meet the definition of written warranty in section 101(6) (A) or (B) but for its failure to satisfy the basis of the bargain test is a service contract. For example, an agreement which calls for some consideration in addition to the purchase price of the consumer product, or which is entered into at some date after the purchase of the consumer product to which it applies, is a service contract. An agreement which relates only to the performance of maintenance and/or inspection services and which is not an undertaking, promise, or affirmation with respect to a specified level of performance, or that the product is free of defects in materials or workmanship, is a service contract. An agreement to perform periodic cleaning and inspection of a product over a specified period of time, even when offered at the time of sale and without charge to the consumer, is an example of such a service contract.

§ 700.12 Effective date of 16 CFR parts 701 and 702.

The Statement of Basis and Purpose of the final rules promulgated on December 31, 1975, provides that parts 701 and 702 of this chapter will become effective one year after the date of promulgation, December 31, 1976. The Commission intends this to mean that these rules apply only to written warranties on products manufactured after December 31, 1976.

PART 701—DISCLOSURE OF WRITTEN CONSUMER PRODUCT WARRANTY TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Sec.

701.1 Definitions.
701.2 Scope.
701.3 Written warranty terms.
701.4 Owner registration cards.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2302 and 2309.

SOURCE: 40 FR 60188, Dec. 31, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

§ 701.1 Definitions.

(a) *The Act* means the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, et seq.

(b) *Consumer product* means any tangible personal property which is distributed in commerce and which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes (including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or installed. Products which are purchased solely for commercial or industrial use are excluded solely for purposes of this part.

(c) *Written warranty* means:

(1) Any written affirmation of fact or written promise made in connection with the sale of a consumer product by a supplier to a buyer which relates to the nature of the material or workmanship and affirms or promises that such material or workmanship is defect free or will meet a specified level of performance over a specified period of time, or

(2) Any undertaking in writing in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product to refund, repair, replace, or take other remedial action with respect to such product in the event that such product fails to meet the specifications set forth in the undertaking, which written affirmation, promise or undertaking becomes part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale of such product.

(d) *Implied warranty* means an implied warranty arising under State law (as modified by sections 104(a) and 108 of the Act) in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product.

(e) *Remedy* means whichever of the following actions the warrantor elects:

(1) Repair,

(2) Replacement, or

(3) Refund; except that the warrantor may not elect refund unless:

(i) The warrantor is unable to provide replacement and repair is not commercially practicable or cannot be timely made, or

(ii) The consumer is willing to accept such refund.

(f) *Supplier* means any person engaged in the business of making a consumer product directly or indirectly available to consumers.

(g) *Warrantor* means any supplier or other person who gives or offers to give a written warranty.

(h) *Consumer* means a buyer (other than for purposes of resale or use in the ordinary course of the buyer's business) of any consumer product, any person to whom such product is transferred during the duration of an implied or written warranty applicable to the product, and any other such person who is entitled by the terms of such warranty or under applicable State law to enforce against the warrantor the obligations of the warranty.

(i) *On the face of the warranty* means:

(1) Where the warranty is a single sheet with printing on both sides of the sheet or where the warranty is comprised of more than one sheet, the page on which the warranty text begins;

(2) Where the warranty is included as part of a larger document, such as a use and care manual, the page in such document on which the warranty text begins.

§ 701.2 Scope.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for warrantors for disclosing the terms and conditions of written warranties on consumer products actually costing the consumer more than $15.00.

§ 701.3 Written warranty terms.

(a) Any warrantor warranting to a consumer by means of a written warranty a consumer product actually costing the consumer more than $15.00 shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in a single document in simple and readily understood language, the following items of information:

(1) The identity of the party or parties to whom the written warranty is extended, if the enforceability of the written warranty is limited to the original consumer purchaser or is otherwise limited to persons other than every consumer owner during the term of the warranty;

(2) A clear description and identification of products, or parts, or characteristics, or components or properties covered by and where necessary for clarification, excluded from the warranty;

(3) A statement of what the warrantor will do in the event of a defect, malfunction or failure to conform with the written warranty, including the items or services the warrantor will pay for or provide, and, where necessary for clarification, those which the warrantor will not pay for or provide;

(4) The point in time or event on which the warranty term commences, if different from the purchase date, and the time period or other measurement of warranty duration;

(5) A step-by-step explanation of the procedure which the consumer should follow in order to obtain performance of any warranty obligation, including the persons or class of persons authorized to perform warranty obligations. This includes the name(s) of the warrantor(s), together with: The mailing address(es) of the warrantor(s), and/or the name or title and the address of any employee or department of the warrantor responsible for the performance of warranty obligations, and/or a telephone number which consumers may use without charge to obtain information on warranty performance;

(6) Information respecting the availability of any informal dispute settlement mechanism elected by the warrantor in compliance with part 703 of this subchapter;

(7) Any limitations on the duration of implied warranties, disclosed on the face of the warranty as provided in section 108 of the Act, accompanied by the following statement:

Some States do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

(8) Any exclusions of or limitations on relief such as incidental or consequential damages, accompanied by the following statement, which may be combined with the statement required in paragraph (a)(7) of this section:

Some States do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

(9) A statement in the following language:

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from State to State.

(b) Paragraphs (a) (1) through (9) of this section shall not be applicable with respect to statements of general policy on emblems, seals or insignias issued by third parties promising replacement or refund if a consumer product is defective, which statements contain no representation or assurance of the quality or performance characteristics of the product; *Provided* That: (1) The disclosures required by paragraphs (a) (1) through (9) of this section are published by such third parties in each issue of a publication with a general circulation, and (2) such disclosures are provided free of charge to any consumer upon written request.

§ 701.4 Owner registration cards.

When a warrantor employs any card such as an owner's registration card, a warranty registration card, or the like, and the return of such card is a condition precedent to warranty coverage and performance, the warrantor shall disclose this fact in the warranty. If the return of such card reasonably appears to be a condition precedent to warranty coverage and performance, but is not such a condition, that fact shall be disclosed in the warranty.

PART 702—PRE-SALE AVAILABILITY OF WRITTEN WARRANTY TERMS

Sec.
702.1 Definitions.
702.2 Scope.
702.3 Pre-sale availability of written warranty terms.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2302 and 2309.

SOURCE: 40 FR 60189, Dec. 31, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

§ 702.1 Definitions.

(a) *The Act* means the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, *et seq*.

(b) *Consumer product* means any tangible personal property which is distributed in commerce and which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes (including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or

installed). Products which are purchased solely for commercial or industrial use are excluded solely for purposes of this part.

(c) *Written warranty* means—

(1) Any written affirmation of fact or written promise made in connection with the sale of a consumer product by a supplier to a buyer which relates to the nature of the material or workmanship and affirms or promises that such material or workmanship is defect free or will meet a specified level of performance over a specified period of time, or

(2) Any undertaking in writing in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product to refund, repair, replace or take other remedial action with respect to such product in the event that such product fails to meet the specifications set forth in the undertaking,

which written affirmation, promise, or undertaking becomes part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale of such product.

(d) *Warrantor* means any supplier or other person who gives or offers to give a written warranty.

(e) *Seller* means any person who sells or offers for sale for purposes other than resale or use in the ordinary course of the buyer's business any consumer product.

(f) *Supplier* means any person engaged in the business of making a consumer product directly or indirectly available to consumers.

[40 FR 60189, Dec. 31, 1975, as amended at 52 FR 7574, Mar. 12, 1987]

§ 702.2 Scope.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for sellers and warrantors for making the terms of any written warranty on a consumer product available to the consumer prior to sale.

§ 702.3 Pre-sale availability of written warranty terms.

The following requirements apply to consumer products actually costing the consumer more than $15.00:

(a) *Duties of seller.* Except as provided in paragraphs (c) through (d) of this section, the seller of a consumer product with a written warranty shall make a text of the warranty readily available for examination by the prospective buyer by:

(1) Displaying it in close proximity to the warranted product, or

(2) Furnishing it upon request prior to sale and placing signs reasonably calculated to elicit the prospective buyer's attention in prominent locations in the store or department advising such prospective buyers of the availability of warranties upon request.

(b) *Duties of the warrantor.* (1) A warrantor who gives a written warranty warranting to a consumer a consumer product actually costing the consumer more than $15.00 shall:

(i) Provide sellers with warranty materials necessary for such sellers to comply with the requirements set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, by the use of one or more by the following means:

(A) Providing a copy of the written warranty with every warranted consumer product; and/or

(B) Providing a tag, sign, sticker, label, decal or other attachment to the product, which contains the full text of the written warranty; and/or

(C) Printing on or otherwise attaching the text of the written warranty to the package, carton, or other container if that package, carton or other container is normally used for display purposes. If the warrantor elects this option a copy of the written warranty must also accompany the warranted product; and/or

(D) Providing a notice, sign, or poster disclosing the text of a consumer product warranty. If the warrantor elects this option, a copy of the written warranty must also accompany each warranted product.

(ii) Provide catalog, mail order, and door-to-door sellers with copies of written warranties necessary for such sellers to comply with the requirements set forth in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

(2) Paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall not be applicable with respect to statements of general policy on emblems, seals or insignias issued by third parties promising replacement or

refund if a consumer product is defective, which statements contain no representation or assurance of the quality or performance characteristics of the product; provided that

(i) The disclosures required by § 701.3(a) (1) through (9) of this part are published by such third parties in each issue of a publication with a general circulation, and

(ii) Such disclosures are provided free of charge to any consumer upon written request.

(c) *Catalog and mail order sales*. (1) For purposes of this paragraph:

(i) *Catalog or mail order sales* means any offer for sale, or any solicitation for an order for a consumer product with a written warranty, which includes instructions for ordering the product which do not require a personal visit to the seller's establishment.

(ii) *Close conjunction* means on the page containing the description of the warranted product, or on the page facing that page.

(2) Any seller who offers for sale to consumers consumer products with written warranties by means of a catalog or mail order solicitation shall:

(i) Clearly and conspicuously disclose in such catalog or solicitation in close conjunction to the description of warranted product, or in an information section of the catalog or solicitation clearly referenced, including a page number, in close conjunction to the description of the warranted product, *either:*

(A) The full text of the written warranty; or

(B) That the written warranty can be obtained free upon specific written request, and the address where such warranty can be obtained. If this option is elected, such seller shall promptly provide a copy of any written warranty requested by the consumer.

(d) *Door-to-door sales*. (1) For purposes of this paragraph:

(i) *Door-to-door sale* means a sale of consumer products in which the seller or his representative personally solicits the sale, including those in response to or following an invitation by a buyer, and the buyer's agreement to offer to purchase is made at a place other than the place of business of the seller.

(ii) *Prospective buyer* means an individual solicited by a door-to-door seller to buy a consumer product who indicates sufficient interest in that consumer product or maintains sufficient contact with the seller for the seller reasonably to conclude that the person solicited is considering purchasing the product.

(2) Any seller who offers for sale to consumers consumer products with written warranties by means of door-to-door sales shall, prior to the consummation of the sale, disclose the fact that the sales representative has copies of the warranties for the warranted products being offered for sale, which may be inspected by the prospective buyer at any time during the sales presentation. Such disclosure shall be made orally and shall be included in any written materials shown to prospective buyers.

[40 FR 60189, Dec. 31, 1975, as amended at 52 FR 7574, Mar. 12, 1987]

PART 703—INFORMAL DISPUTE SETTLEMENT PROCEDURES

Sec.

703.1 Definitions.
703.2 Duties of warrantor.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS OF THE MECHANISM

703.3 Mechanism organization.
703.4 Qualification of members.
703.5 Operation of the Mechanism.
703.6 Recordkeeping.
703.7 Audits.
703.8 Openness of records and proceedings.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2309 and 2310.

SOURCE: 40 FR 60215, Dec. 31, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

§ 703.1 Definitions.

(a) *The Act* means the Magnuson-Moss Warranty—Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, *et seq*.

(b) *Consumer product* means any tangible personal property which is distributed in commerce and which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes (including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without

regard to whether it is so attached or installed).

(c) *Written warranty* means:

(1) Any written affirmation of fact or written promise made in connection with the sale of a consumer product by a supplier to a buyer which relates to the nature of the material or workmanship and affirms or promises that such material or workmanship is defect free or will meet a specified level of performance over a specified period of time, or

(2) Any undertaking in writing in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product to refund, repair, replace, or take other remedial action with respect to such product in the event that such product fails to meet the specifications set forth in the undertaking, which written affirmation, promise or undertaking becomes part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale of such product.

(d) *Warrantor* means any person who gives or offers to give a written warranty which incorporates an informal dispute settlement mechanism.

(e) *Mechanism* means an informal dispute settlement procedure which is incorporated into the terms of a written warranty to which any provision of Title I of the Act applies, as provided in section 110 of the Act.

(f) *Members* means the person or persons within a Mechanism actually deciding disputes.

(g) *Consumer* means a buyer (other than for purposes of resale) of any consumer product, any person to whom such product is transferred during the duration of a written warranty applicable to the product, and any other person who is entitled by the terms of such warranty or under applicable state law to enforce against the warrantor the obligations of the warranty.

(h) *On the face of the warranty* means:

(1) If the warranty is a single sheet with printing on both sides of the sheet, or if the warranty is comprised of more than one sheet, the page on which the warranty text begins;

(2) If the warranty is included as part of a longer document, such as a use and care manual, the page in such document on which the warranty text begins.

§ 703.2 Duties of warrantor.

(a) The warrantor shall not incorporate into the terms of a written warranty a Mechanism that fails to comply with the requirements contained in §§ 703.3 through 703.8 of this part. This paragraph shall not prohibit a warrantor from incorporating into the terms of a written warranty the step-by-step procedure which the consumer should take in order to obtain performance of any obligation under the warranty as described in section 102(a)(7) of the Act and required by part 701 of this subchapter.

(b) The warrantor shall disclose clearly and conspicuously at least the following information on the face of the written warranty:

(1) A statement of the availability of the informal dispute settlement mechanism;

(2) The name and address of the Mechanism, or the name and a telephone number of the Mechanism which consumers may use without charge;

(3) A statement of any requirement that the consumer resort to the Mechanism before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by Title I of the Act; together with the disclosure that if a consumer chooses to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by Title I of the Act, resort to the Mechanism would not be required by any provision of the Act; and

(4) A statement, if applicable, indicating where further information on the Mechanism can be found in materials accompanying the product, as provided in § 703.2(c) of this section.

(c) The warrantor shall include in the written warranty or in a separate section of materials accompanying the product, the following information:

(1) Either (i) a form addressed to the Mechanism containing spaces requesting the information which the Mechanism may require for prompt resolution of warranty disputes; or (ii) a telephone number of the Mechanism which consumers may use without charge;

(2) The name and address of the Mechanism;

(3) A brief description of Mechanism procedures;

(4) The time limits adhered to by the Mechanism; and

(5) The types of information which the Mechanism may require for prompt resolution of warranty disputes.

(d) The warrantor shall take steps reasonably calculated to make consumers aware of the Mechanism's existence at the time consumers experience warranty disputes. Nothing contained in paragraphs (b), (c), or (d) of this section shall limit the warrantor's option to encourage consumers to seek redress directly from the warrantor as long as the warrantor does not expressly require consumers to seek redress directly from the warrantor. The warrantor shall proceed fairly and expeditiously to attempt to resolve all disputes submitted directly to the warrantor.

(e) Whenever a dispute is submitted directly to the warrantor, the warrantor shall, within a reasonable time, decide whether, and to what extent, it will satisfy the consumer, and inform the consumer of its decision. In its notification to the consumer of its decision, the warrantor shall include the information required in § 703.2 (b) and (c) of this section.

(f) The warrantor shall:

(1) Respond fully and promptly to reasonable requests by the Mechanism for information relating to disputes;

(2) Upon notification of any decision of the Mechanism that would require action on the part of the warrantor, immediately notify the Mechanism whether, and to what extent, warrantor will abide by the decision; and

(3) Perform any obligations it has agreed to.

(g) The warrantor shall act in good faith in determining whether, and to what extent, it will abide by a Mechanism decision.

(h) The warrantor shall comply with any reasonable requirements imposed by the Mechanism to fairly and expeditiously resolve warranty disputes.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS OF THE MECHANISM

§ 703.3 Mechanism organization.

(a) The Mechanism shall be funded and competently staffed at a level sufficient to ensure fair and expeditious resolution of all disputes, and shall not charge consumers any fee for use of the Mechanism.

(b) The warrantor and the sponsor of the Mechanism (if other than the warrantor) shall take all steps necessary to ensure that the Mechanism, and its members and staff, are sufficiently insulated from the warrantor and the sponsor, so that the decisions of the members and the performance of the staff are not influenced by either the warrantor or the sponsor. Necessary steps shall include, at a minimum, committing funds in advance, basing personnel decisions solely on merit, and not assigning conflicting warrantor or sponsor duties to Mechanism staff persons.

(c) The Mechanism shall impose any other reasonable requirements necessary to ensure that the members and staff act fairly and expeditiously in each dispute.

§ 703.4 Qualification of members.

(a) No member deciding a dispute shall be:

(1) A party to the dispute, or an employee or agent of a party other than for purposes of deciding disputes; or

(2) A person who is or may become a party in any legal action, including but not limited to class actions, relating to the product or complaint in dispute, or an employee or agent of such person other than for purposes of deciding disputes. For purposes of this paragraph (a) a person shall not be considered a ''party'' solely because he or she acquires or owns an interest in a party solely for investment, and the acquisition or ownership of an interest which is offered to the general public shall be prima facie evidence of its acquisition or ownership solely for investment.

(b) When one or two members are deciding a dispute, all shall be persons having no direct involvement in the manufacture, distribution, sale or service of any product. When three or more members are deciding a dispute, at least two-thirds shall be persons having no direct involvement in the manufacture, distribution, sale or service of any product. ''Direct involvement'' shall not include acquiring or owning an interest solely for investment, and the acquisition or ownership of an interest which is offered to the general

public shall be prima facie evidence of its acquisition or ownership solely for investment. Nothing contained in this section shall prevent the members from consulting with any persons knowledgeable in the technical, commercial or other areas relating to the product which is the subject of the dispute.

(c) Members shall be persons interested in the fair and expeditious settlement of consumer disputes.

§ 703.5 Operation of the Mechanism.

(a) The Mechanism shall establish written operating procedures which shall include at least those items specified in paragraphs (b) through (j) of this section. Copies of the written procedures shall be made available to any person upon request.

(b) Upon notification of a dispute, the Mechanism shall immediately inform both the warrantor and the consumer of receipt of the dispute.

(c) The Mechanism shall investigate, gather and organize all information necessary for a fair and expeditious decision in each dispute. When any evidence gathered by or submitted to the Mechanism raises issues relating to the number of repair attempts, the length of repair periods, the possibility of unreasonable use of the product, or any other issues relevant in light of Title I of the Act (or rules thereunder), including issues relating to consequential damages, or any other remedy under the Act (or rules thereunder), the Mechanism shall investigate these issues. When information which will or may be used in the decision, submitted by one party, or a consultant under § 703.4(b) of this part, or any other source tends to contradict facts submitted by the other party, the Mechanism shall clearly, accurately, and completely disclose to both parties the contradictory information (and its source) and shall provide both parties an opportunity to explain or rebut the information and to submit additional materials. The Mechanism shall not require any information not reasonably necessary to decide the dispute.

(d) If the dispute has not been settled, the Mechanism shall, as expeditiously as possible but at least within 40 days of notification of the dispute, except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section:

(1) Render a fair decision based on the information gathered as described in paragraph (c) of this section, and on any information submitted at an oral presentation which conforms to the requirements of paragraph (f) of this section (A decision shall include any remedies appropriate under the circumstances, including repair, replacement, refund, reimbursement for expenses, compensation for damages, and any other remedies available under the written warranty or the Act (or rules thereunder); and a decision shall state a specified reasonable time for performance);

(2) Disclose to the warrantor its decision and the reasons therefor;

(3) If the decision would require action on the part of the warrantor, determine whether, and to what extent, warrantor will abide by its decision; and

(4) Disclose to the consumer its decision, the reasons therefor, warrantor's intended actions (if the decision would require action on the part of the warrantor), and the information described in paragraph (g) of this section. For purposes of paragraph (d) of this section a dispute shall be deemed settled when the Mechanism has ascertained from the consumer that:

(i) The dispute has been settled to the consumer's satisfaction; and

(ii) The settlement contains a specified reasonable time for performance.

(e) The Mechanism may delay the performance of its duties under paragraph (d) of this section beyond the 40 day time limit:

(1) Where the period of delay is due solely to failure of a consumer to provide promptly his or her name and address, brand name and model number of the product involved, and a statement as to the nature of the defect or other complaint; or

(2) For a 7 day period in those cases where the consumer has made no attempt to seek redress directly from the warrantor.

(f) The Mechanism may allow an oral presentation by a party to a dispute (or a party's representative) only if:

(1) Both warrantor and consumer expressly agree to the presentation;

(2) Prior to agreement the Mechanism fully discloses to the consumer the following information:

(i) That the presentation by either party will take place only if both parties so agree, but that if they agree, and one party fails to appear at the agreed upon time and place, the presentation by the other party may still be allowed;

(ii) That the members will decide the dispute whether or not an oral presentation is made;

(iii) The proposed date, time and place for the presentation; and

(iv) A brief description of what will occur at the presentation including, if applicable, parties' rights to bring witnesses and/or counsel; and

(3) Each party has the right to be present during the other party's oral presentation. Nothing contained in this paragraph (b) of this section shall preclude the Mechanism from allowing an oral presentation by one party, if the other party fails to appear at the agreed upon time and place, as long as all of the requirements of this paragraph have been satisfied.

(g) The Mechanism shall inform the consumer, at the time of disclosure required in paragraph (d) of this section that:

(1) If he or she is dissatisfied with its decision or warrantor's intended actions, or eventual performance, legal remedies, including use of small claims court, may be pursued;

(2) The Mechanism's decision is admissible in evidence as provided in section 110(a)(3) of the Act; and

(3) The consumer may obtain, at reasonable cost, copies of all Mechanism records relating to the consumer's dispute.

(h) If the warrantor has agreed to perform any obligations, either as part of a settlement agreed to after notification to the Mechanism of the dispute or as a result of a decision under paragraph (d) of this section, the Mechanism shall ascertain from the consumer within 10 working days of the date for performance whether performance has occurred.

(i) A requirement that a consumer resort to the Mechanism prior to commencement of an action under section 110(d) of the Act shall be satisfied 40 days after notification to the Mechanism of the dispute or when the Mechanism completes all of its duties under paragraph (d) of this section, whichever occurs sooner. Except that, if the Mechanism delays performance of its paragraph (d) of this section duties as allowed by paragraph (e) of this section, the requirement that the consumer initially resort to the Mechanism shall not be satisfied until the period of delay allowed by paragraph (e) of this section has ended.

(j) Decisions of the Mechanism shall not be legally binding on any person. However, the warrantor shall act in good faith, as provided in § 703.2(g) of this part. In any civil action arising out of a warranty obligation and relating to a matter considered by the Mechanism, any decision of the Mechanism shall be admissible in evidence, as provided in section 110(a)(3) of the Act.

§ 703.6 Recordkeeping.

(a) The Mechanism shall maintain records on each dispute referred to it which shall include:

(1) Name, address and telephone number of the consumer;

(2) Name, address, telephone number and contact person of the warrantor;

(3) Brand name and model number of the product involved;

(4) The date of receipt of the dispute and the date of disclosure to the consumer of the decision;

(5) All letters or other written documents submitted by either party;

(6) All other evidence collected by the Mechanism relating to the dispute, including summaries of relevant and material portions of telephone calls and meetings between the Mechanism and any other person (including consultants described in § 703.4(b) of this part);

(7) A summary of any relevant and material information presented by either party at an oral presentation;

(8) The decision of the members including information as to date, time and place of meeting, and the identity of members voting; or information on any other resolution;

(9) A copy of the disclosure to the parties of the decision;

(10) A statement of the warrantor's intended action(s);

(11) Copies of follow-up letters (or summaries of relevant and material portions of follow-up telephone calls) to the consumer, and responses thereto; and

(12) Any other documents and communications (or summaries of relevant and material portions of oral communications) relating to the dispute.

(b) The Mechanism shall maintain an index of each warrantor's disputes grouped under brand name and subgrouped under product model.

(c) The Mechanism shall maintain an index for each warrantor as will show:

(1) All disputes in which the warrantor has promised some performance (either by settlement or in response to a Mechanism decision) and has failed to comply; and

(2) All disputes in which the warrantor has refused to abide by a Mechanism decision.

(d) The Mechanism shall maintain an index as will show all disputes delayed beyond 40 days.

(e) The Mechanism shall compile semi-annually and maintain statistics which show the number and percent of disputes in each of the following categories:

(1) Resolved by staff of the Mechanism and warrantor has complied;

(2) Resolved by staff of the Mechanism, time for compliance has occurred, and warrantor has not complied;

(3) Resolved by staff of the Mechanism and time for compliance has not yet occurred;

(4) Decided by members and warrantor has complied;

(5) Decided by members, time for compliance has occurred, and warrantor has not complied;

(6) Decided by members and time for compliance has not yet occurred;

(7) Decided by members adverse to the consumer;

(8) No jurisdiction;

(9) Decision delayed beyond 40 days under § 703.5(e)(1) of this part;

(10) Decision delayed beyond 40 days under § 703.5(e)(2) of this part;

(11) Decision delayed beyond 40 days for any other reason; and

(12) Pending decision.

(f) The Mechanism shall retain all records specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section for at least 4 years after final disposition of the dispute.

§ 703.7 Audits.

(a) The Mechanism shall have an audit conducted at least annually, to determine whether the Mechanism and its implementation are in compliance with this part. All records of the Mechanism required to be kept under § 703.6 of this part shall be available for audit.

(b) Each audit provided for in paragraph (a) of this section shall include at a minimum the following:

(1) Evaluation of warrantors' efforts to make consumers aware of the Mechanism's existence as required in § 703.2(d) of this part;

(2) Review of the indexes maintained pursuant to § 703.6 (b), (c), and (d) of this part; and

(3) Analysis of a random sample of disputes handled by the Mechanism to determine the following:

(i) Adequacy of the Mechanism's complaint and other forms, investigation, mediation and follow-up efforts, and other aspects of complaint handling; and

(ii) Accuracy of the Mechanism's statistical compilations under § 703.6(e) of this part. (For purposes of this subparagraph ''analysis'' shall include oral or written contact with the consumers involved in each of the disputes in the random sample.)

(c) A report of each audit under this section shall be submitted to the Federal Trade Commission, and shall be made available to any person at reasonable cost. The Mechanism may direct its auditor to delete names of parties to disputes, and identity of products involved, from the audit report.

(d) Auditors shall be selected by the Mechanism. No auditor may be involved with the Mechanism as a warrantor, sponsor or member, or employee or agent thereof, other than for purposes of the audit.

§ 703.8 Openness of records and proceedings.

(a) The statistical summaries specified in § 703.6(e) of this part shall be available to any person for inspection and copying.

(b) Except as provided under paragraphs (a) and (e) of this section, and paragraph (c) of § 703.7 of this part, all records of the Mechanism may be kept confidential, or made available only on such terms and conditions, or in such form, as the Mechanism shall permit.

(c) The policy of the Mechanism with respect to records made available at the Mechanism's option shall be set out in the procedures under § 703.5(a) of this part; the policy shall be applied uniformly to all requests for access to or copies of such records.

(d) Meetings of the members to hear and decide disputes shall be open to observers on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms. The identity of the parties and products involved in disputes need not be disclosed at meetings.

(e) Upon request the Mechanism shall provide to either party to a dispute:

(1) Access to all records relating to the dispute; and

(2) Copies of any records relating to the dispute, at reasonable cost.

(f) The Mechanism shall make available to any person upon request, information relating to the qualifications of Mechanism staff and members.

SUBCHAPTER H—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

PART 801—COVERAGE RULES

Sec.
801.1 Definitions.
801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.
801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.
801.4 Secondary acquisitions.
801.10 Value of voting securities, non-corporate interests and assets to be acquired.
801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.
801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities.
801.13 Aggregation of voting securities, assets and non-corporate interests.
801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.
801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.
801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.
801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.
801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.
801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.
801.32 Conversion and acquisition.
801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.
801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.
801.50 Formation of unincorporated entities.
801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 18a(d).

SOURCE: 43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 801.1 Definitions.

When used in the act and these rules—

(a)(1) *Person*. Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the term *person* means an ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

Examples: 1. In the case of corporations, ''person'' encompasses the entire corporate structure, including all parent corporations, subsidiaries and divisions (whether consolidated or unconsolidated, and whether incorporated or unincorporated), and all related corporations under common control with any of the foregoing.

2. Corporations A and B are each directly controlled by the same foreign state. They are not included within the same ''person,'' although the corporations are under common control, because the foreign state which controls them is not an ''entity'' (see § 801.1(a)(2)). Corporations A and B* are the ultimate parent entities within persons ''A'', and ''B'' which include any entities each may control.

3. Since a natural person is an entity (see § 801.1(a)(2)), a natural person and a corporation which he or she controls are part of the same ''person.'' If that natural person controls two otherwise separate corporations, both corporations and the natural person are all part of the same ''person.''

4. See the example to § 801.2(a).

(2) *Entity*. The term *entity* means any natural person, corporation, company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, estate of a deceased natural person, foundation, fund, institution, society, union, or club, whether incorporated or not, wherever located and of whatever citizenship, or any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy or similar official or any liquidating agent for any of the foregoing, in his or her capacity as such; or any joint venture or other corporation which has not been formed but the acquisition of the voting securities or other interest in which, if already formed, would require notification under the act and these rules: *Provided, however*, That the term ''entity'' shall not include any foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof (other than a corporation engaged in commerce), nor the United States, any of the States thereof, or any political subdivision or agency of either (other than a corporation engaged in commerce).

(3) *Ultimate parent entity*. The term *ultimate parent entity* means an entity which is not controlled by any other entity.

*Throughout the examples to the rules, persons are designated (''A'', ''B,'' etc.) with quotation marks, and entities are designated (A, B, etc.) without quotation marks.

Examples: 1. If corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of subsidiary B, and B holds 75 percent of the stock of its subsidiary C, corporation A is the ultimate parent entity, since it controls subsidiary B directly and subsidiary C indirectly, and since it is the entity within the person which is not controlled by any other entity.

2. If corporation A is controlled by natural person D, natural person D is the ultimate parent entity.

3. P and Q are the ultimate parent entities within persons ''P'' and ''Q.'' If P and Q each own 50 percent of the voting securities of R, then P and Q are both ultimate parents of R, and R is part of both persons ''P'' and ''Q.''

(b) *Control*. The term *control* (as used in the terms *control(s), controlling, controlled by* and *under common control with*) means:

(1) *Either*. (i) Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer or

(ii) In the case of an unincorporated entity, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a for-profit or not-for-profit corporation, or in the case of trusts described in paragraphs (c)(3) through (5) of this section, the trustees of such a trust.

Examples: 1. Corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of corporation B, 75 percent of the stock of corporation C, 50 percent of the stock of corporation D, and 30 percent of the stock of corporation E. Corporation A controls corporations B, C and D, but not corporation E. Corporation A is the ultimate parent entity of a person comprised of corporations A, B, C and D, and each of these corporations (but not corporation E) is ''included within the person.''

2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner ''A'' is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, ''B'' is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and ''C'' is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, ''B'' is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and ''C'' is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business, and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate ''director'' or ''an individual exercising similar functions'' as required by §801.1(f)(1) below. Thus control of a partnership is not determined on the basis of either subparagraph (1)(i) or (2) of this paragraph. Consequently, ''A'' is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 50 percent of the partnership's profits. ''B'' is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. ''A'' is a nonprofit charitable foundation that has formed a partnership joint venture with ''B,'' a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter ''A'' and ''B'' are each entitled to appoint three of C's six directors. ''A'' and ''B'' would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to §801.1(b)(2) because each is deemed to have the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a not-for-profit corporation.

4. ''A'' is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with ''D'' in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, ''A'' must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to §801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by ''A,'' even though ''A'' ultimately will receive only one-third of the profits of E. Because B and C are considered as part of ''A,'' the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two-thirds of the profits of E in this example) to ''A.''

(c) *Hold*. (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraphs (c) (2) through (8) of this section, the term *hold* (as used in the terms *hold(s), holding, holder* and *held*) means beneficial ownership, whether direct, or indirect through fiduciaries, agents, controlled entities or other means.

Example: If a stockbroker has stock in ''street name'' for the account of a natural person, only the natural person (who has beneficial ownership) and not the stockbroker (which may have record title) ''holds'' that stock.

(2) The holdings of spouses and their minor children shall be holdings of each of them.

(3) Except for a common trust fund or collective investment fund within the meaning of 12 CFR 9.18(a) (both of which are hereafter referred to in this paragraph as ''collective investment funds''), and any revocable trust or an irrevocable trust in which the settlor retains a reversionary interest in the corpus, a trust, including a pension trust, shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of the trust.

Example: Under this paragraph the trust—and not the trustee—''holds'' the voting securities and assets constituting the corpus of any irrevocable trust (in which the settlor retains no reversionary interest, and which is not a collective investment fund). Therefore, the trustee need not aggregate its holdings of any other assets or voting securities with the holdings of the trust for purposes of determining whether the requirements of the act apply to an acquisition by the trust. Similarly, the trustee, if making an acquisition for its own account, need not aggregate its holdings with those of any trusts for which it serves as trustee. (However, the trustee must aggregate any collective investment funds which it administers; see paragraph (c)(6) of this section.)

(4) The assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of a revocable trust or the corpus of an irrevocable trust in which the settlor(s) retain(s) a reversionary interest in the corpus shall be holdings of the settlor(s) of such trust.

(5) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, beneficiaries of a trust, including a pension trust or a collective investment fund, shall not hold any assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of such trust.

(6) A bank or trust company which administers one or more collective investment funds shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of each such fund.

Example: Suppose A, a bank or trust company, administers collective investment funds W, X, Y and Z. Whenever person ''A'' is to make an acquisition, whether of not on behalf of one or more of the funds, it must aggregate the holdings of W, X, Y and Z in determining whether the requirements of the act apply to the acquisition.

(7) An insurance company shall hold all assets and voting securities held for the benefit of any general account of, or any separate account administered by, such company.

(8) A person holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities included within it; in addition to its own holding, an entity holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

(d) *Affiliate.* An entity is an affiliate of a person if it is controlled, directly or indirectly, by the ultimate parent entity of such person.

(e)(1)(i) *United States person.* The term *United States person* means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, either is a citizen of the United States or resides in the United States.

(ii) *United States issuer.* The term *United States issuer* means an issuer which is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States.

(2)(i) *Foreign person.* The term *foreign person* means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, neither is a citizen of the United States nor resides in the United States.

(ii) *Foreign issuer.* The term *foreign issuer* means an issuer which is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States.

(f)(1)(i) *Voting securities.* The term voting securities means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or of an entity included within the same person as the issuer.

(ii) *Non-corporate interest.* The term ''non-corporate interest'' means an interest in any unincorporated entity which gives the holder the right to any profits of the entity or in the event of dissolution of that entity the right to any of its assets after payment of its

debts. These unincorporated entities include, but are not limited to, general partnerships, limited partnerships, limited liability partnerships, limited liability companies, cooperatives and business trusts; but these unincorporated entities do not include trusts described in paragraphs (c)(3) through (5) of this section and any interest in such a trust is not a non-corporate interest as defined by this rule.

(2) *Convertible voting security*. The term *convertible voting security* means a voting security which presently does not entitle its owner or holder to vote for directors of any entity.

(3) *Conversion*. The term *conversion* means the exercise of a right inherent in the ownership or holding of particular voting securities to exchange such securities for securities which presently entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of the issuer or of any entity included within the same person as the issuer.

Examples: 1. The acquisition of convertible debentures which are convertible into common stock is an acquisition of ''voting securities.'' However, § 802.31 exempts the acquisition of such securities from the requirements of the act, provided that they have no present voting rights.

2. Options and warrants are also ''voting securities'' for purposes of the act, because they can be exchanged for securities with present voting rights. Section 802.31 exempts the acquisition of options and warrants as well, since they do not themselves have present voting rights and hence are convertible voting securities. Notification may be required prior to exercising options and warrants, however.

3. Assume that X has issued preferred shares which presently entitle the holder to vote for directors of X, and that these shares are convertible into common shares of X. Because the preferred shares confer a present right to vote for directors of X, they are ''voting securities.'' (See § 801.1(f)(1).) They are not ''convertible voting securities,'' however, because the definition of that term excludes securities which confer a present right to vote for directors of any entity. (See § 801.1(f)(2).) Thus, an acquisition of these preferred shares issued by X would not be exempt as an acquisition of ''convertible voting securities.'' (See § 802.31.) If the criteria in section 7A(a) are met, an acquisition of X's preferred shares would be subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the Act. Moreover, the conversion of these preferred shares into common shares of X would also be potentially reportable, since the holder would be exercising a right to exchange particular voting securities for different voting securities having a present right to vote for directors of the issuer. Because this exchange would be a ''conversion,'' § 801.30 would apply. (See § 801.30(a)(6).)

(g)(1) *Tender offer*. The term *tender offer* means any offer to purchase voting securities which is a tender offer within the meaning of section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78n.

(2) *Cash tender offer*. The term *cash tender offer* means a tender offer in which cash is the only consideration offered to the holders of the voting securities to be acquired.

(3) *Non-cash tender offer*. The term *non-cash tender offer* means any tender offer which is not a cash tender offer.

(h) *Notification threshold*. The term ''notification threshold'' means:

(1) An aggregate total amount of voting securities of the acquired person valued at greater than $50 million (as adjusted) but less than $100 million (as adjusted);

(2) An aggregate total amount of voting securities of the acquired person valued at $100 million (as adjusted) or greater but less than $500 million (as adjusted);

(3) An aggregate total amount of voting securities of the acquired person valued at $500 million (as adjusted) or greater;

(4) Twenty-five percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer if valued at greater than $1 billion (as adjusted); or

(5) Fifty percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer if valued at greater than $50 million (as adjusted).

(i)(1) *Solely for the purpose of investment*. Voting securities are held or acquired ''solely for the purpose of investment'' if the person holding or acquiring such voting securities has no intention of participating in the formulation, determination, or direction of the basic business decisions of the issuer.

Example: If a person holds stock ''solely for the purpose of investment'' and thereafter decides to influence or participate in management of the issuer of that stock, the stock is no longer held ''solely for the purpose of investment.''

(2) *Investment assets*. The term *investment assets* means cash, deposits in financial institutions, other money market instruments, and instruments evidencing government obligations.

(j) *Engaged in manufacturing*. A person is engaged in manufacturing if it produces and derives annual sales or revenues in excess of $1 million from products within industries in Sectors 31–33 as coded by the North American Industry Classification System (2002 Edition) published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

(k) *United States*. The term *United States* shall include the several States, the territories, possessions, and commonwealths of the United States, and the District of Columbia.

(l) *Commerce*. The term *commerce* shall have the meaning ascribed to that term in section 1 of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 12, or section 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44.

(m) *The act*. References to ''the act'' refer to Section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a, as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390, and as amended by Pub. L. 106–553, 114 Stat. 2762. References to ''Section 7A( )'' refer to subsections of Section 7A of the Clayton Act. References to ''this section'' refer to the section of these rules in which the term appears.

(n) (*as adjusted*). The parenthetical ''(as adjusted)'' refers to the adjusted values published in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice titled ''Revised Jurisdictional Threshold for Section 7A of the Clayton Act.'' This FEDERAL REGISTER notice will be published in January of each year and the values contained therein will be effective as of the effective date published in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice and will remain effective until superseded in the next calendar year. The notice will also be available at *http://www.ftc.gov*. Such adjusted values will be calculated in accordance with Section 7A(a)(2)(A) and will be rounded up to the next highest $100,000.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34429, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 20063, May 29, 1987; 66 FR 8687, Feb. 1, 2001; 66 FR 23565, May 9, 2001; 68 FR 2430, Jan. 17, 2003; 70 FR 4990, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11510, Mar. 8, 2005; 70 FR 73372, Dec. 12, 2005; 70 FR 77313, Dec. 30, 2005]

§ 801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.

(a) Any person which, as a result of an acquisition, will hold voting securities or assets, either directly or indirectly, or through fiduciaries, agents, or other entities acting on behalf of such person, is an acquiring person.

Example: Assume that corporations A and B, which are each ultimate parent entitles of their respective ''persons,'' created a joint venture, corporation V, and that each holds half of V's shares. Therefore, A and B each control V (see § 801.1(b)), and V is included within two persons, ''A'' and ''B.'' Under this section, if V is to acquire corporation X, both ''A'' and ''B'' are acquiring persons.

(b) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the person(s) within which the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired is included, is an acquired person.

Examples: 1. Assume that person ''Q'' will acquire voting securities of corporation X held by ''P'' and that X is not included within person ''P.'' Under this section, the acquired person is the person within which X is included, and is not ''P.''

2. In the example to paragraph (a) of this section, if V were to be acquired by X, then both ''A'' and ''B'' would be acquired persons.

(c) For purposes of the act and these rules, a person may be an acquiring person and an acquired person with respect to separate acquisitions which comprise a single transaction.

(d)(1)(i) Mergers and consolidations are transactions subject to the act and shall be treated as acquisitions of voting securities.

(ii) In a merger, the person which, after consummation, will include the corporation in existence prior to consummation which is designated as the surviving corporation in the plan, agreement, or certificate of merger required to be filed with State authorities to effectuate the transaction shall be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities.

(2)(i) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquiring person if, as a result of the transaction, such person will hold any assets or voting securities which it did not hold prior to the transaction.

(ii) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquired person if, as a result of the transaction, the assets or voting securities of any entity included within such person will be held by any other person.

(iii) All persons party to a transaction as a result of which all parties will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities or will become wholly owned subsidiaries of a newly formed entity shall be both acquiring and acquired persons. This includes any combination of corporations and unincorporated entities consolidating into any newly formed entity. In such transactions, each consolidating entity is deemed to be acquiring all of the voting securities (in the case of a corporation) or interests (in the case of an unincorporated entity) of each of the others.

Examples: 1. Corporation A (the ultimate parent entity included within person ''A'') proposes to acquire Y, a wholly-owned subsidiary of B (the ultimate parent entity included within person ''B''). The transaction is to be carried out by merging Y into X, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A, with X surviving, and by distributing the assets of X to B, the only shareholder of Y. The assets of X consist solely of cash and the voting securities of C, an entity unrelated to ''A'' or ''B''. Since X is designated the surviving corporation in the plan or agreement of merger or consolidation and since X will be included in ''A'' after consummation of the transaction, ''A'' will be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities. In this acquisition, ''A'' is an acquiring person because it will hold assets or voting securities it did not hold prior to the transaction, and ''B'' is an acquired person because the assets or the voting securities of an entity previously included within it will be held by A as a result of the acquisition. B will hold the cash and voting securities of C as a result of the transaction, but since § 801.21 applies, this acquisition is not reportable. ''A'' is therefore an acquiring person only, and ''B'' is an acquired person only. ''B'' may, however, have a separate reporting obligation as an acquiring person in a separate transaction involving the voting securities of C.

2. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y consists of $8 million worth of the voting securities of A. With regard to the transfer of this consideration, ''B'' is an acquiring person because it will hold voting securities it did not previously hold, and ''A'' is an acquired person because its voting securities will be held by B. Since these voting securities are worth less than $50 million (as adjusted), the acquisition of these securities is not reportable. ''A'' will therefore report as an acquiring person only and ''B'' as an acquired person only.

3. In the above example, suppose that, as consideration for Y, A transfers to B a manufacturing plant valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). ''B'' is thus an acquiring person and ''A'' an acquired person in a reportable acquisition of assets. ''A'' and ''B'' will each report as both an acquiring and an acquired person in this transaction because each occupies each role in a reportable acquisition.

4. Corporations A (the ultimate parent entity in person ''A'') and B (the ultimate parent entity in person ''B'') propose to consolidate into C, a newly formed corporation. All shareholders of A and B will receive shares of C, and both A and B will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities. ''A'' and ''B'' are both acquiring and acquired persons because they are parties to a transaction in which all parties lose their separate pre-acquisition identities

5. Partnership A and Corporation B form a new LLC in which they combine their businesses. A and B cease to exist and partners of A and shareholders of B receive membership interests in the new LLC. For purposes of determining reportability, A is deemed to be acquiring 100 percent of the voting securities of B and B is deemed to be acquiring 100 percent of the interests of A. Pursuant to § 803.9(b) of this chapter, even if such a transaction consists of two reportable acquisitions, only one filing fee is required.

(e) Whenever voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an acquiring person in connection with an acquisition, the acquisition of voting securities or assets shall be separately subject to the act.

(f)(1)(i) In an acquisition of non-corporate interests which results in an acquiring person controlling the entity, that person is deemed to hold all of the assets of the entity as a result of the acquisition. The acquiring person is the person acquiring control of the entity and the acquired person is the pre-acquisition ultimate parent entity of the entity.

(ii) The value of an acquisition described in paragraph (f)(1)(i) of this section is determined in accordance with § 801.10(d).

(2) Any contribution of assets or voting securities to an existing unincorporated entity or to any successor thereof is deemed an acquisition of such voting securities or assets by the ultimate parent entity of that entity and is not subject to § 801.50.

Examples: 1. A, B and C each hold 33⅓ percent of the interests in Partnership X. D contributes assets valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) to X and as a result D receives 40 percent of the interests in X and A, B and C are each reduced to 20 percent. Partnership X is deemed to be acquiring the assets from D, in a transaction which may be reportable. This is not treated as a formation of a new partnership. Because no person will control Partnership X, no additional filing is required by any of the four partners.

2. LLC X is its own ultimate parent entity. A contributes a manufacturing plant valued in excess of $200 million (as adjusted) to X which issues new interests to A resulting in A having a 50% interest in X. A is acquiring non-corporate interests which confer control of X and therefore will file as an acquiring person. Because A held the plant prior to the transaction and continues to hold it through its acquisition of control of LLC X after the transaction is completed no acquisition of the plant has occurred and LLC X is therefore not an acquiring person.

(3) Any person who acquires control of an existing not-for-profit corporation which has no outstanding voting securities is deemed to be acquiring all of the assets of that corporation.

Example: A becomes the sole corporate member of not-for-profit corporation B and accordingly has the right to designate all of the directors of B. A is deemed to be acquiring all of the assets of B as a result.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34431, July 29, 1983; 66 FR 8688, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4990, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11510, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.

Section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if any entity included within the acquiring person, or any entity included within the acquired person, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce.

Examples: 1. A foreign subsidiary of a U.S. corporation seeks to acquire a foreign business. The acquiring person includes the U.S. parent corporation. If the U.S. corporation, or the foreign subsidiary, or any entity controlled by either one of them, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied. Note, however, that §§ 802.50–802.52 may exempt certain acquisitions of foreign businesses or assets.

2. Even if none of the entities within the acquiring person is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, the acquisition nevertheless satisfies section 7A(a)(1) if any entity included within the acquired person is so engaged.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978]

§ 801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

(a) Whenever as the result of an acquisition (the ''primary acquisition'') an acquiring person controls an entity which holds voting securities of an issuer that entity does not control, then the acquiring person's acquisition of the issuer's voting securities is a secondary acquisition and is separately subject to the act and these rules.

(b) *Exemptions.* (1) No secondary acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act solely because the related primary acquisition is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(2) A secondary acquisition may itself be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c) or these rules.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire all the voting securities of corporation B. This section provides that the acquisition of voting securities of issuers held but not controlled by B or by any entity which B controls are secondary acquisitions by ''A.'' Thus, if B holds more than $50 million (as adjusted) of the voting securities of corporation X (but does not control X), and ''A'' and ''X'' satisfy Sections 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2), ''A'' must file notification separately with respect to its secondary acquisition of voting securities of X. ''X'' must file notification within fifteen days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after ''A'' files, pursuant to § 801.30.

2. If in the previous example ''A'' acquires only 50 percent of the voting securities of B, the result would remain the same. Since ''A'' would be acquiring control of B, all of B's holdings in X would be attributable to ''A.''

3. In the previous examples, if ''A's'' acquisition of the voting securities of B is exempt, ''A'' may still be required to file notification with respect to its secondary acquisition of the voting securities of X, unless that acquisition is itself exempt.

4. In the previous examples, assume A's acquisition of B is accomplished by merging B into A's subsidiary, S, and S is designated

the surviving corporation. B's voting securities are cancelled, and B's shareholders are to receive cash in return. Since S is designated the surviving corporation and A will control S and also hold assets or voting securities it did not hold previously, ''A'' is an acquiring person in an acquisition of voting securities by virtue of §§ 801.2 (d)(1)(ii) and (d)(2)(i). A will be deemed to have acquired control of B, and A's resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Since cash, the only consideration paid for the voting securities of B, is not considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired, by virtue of § 801.2(d)(2) ''A'' is an acquiring person only. The acquisition of the minority holding of B in X is therefore a secondary acquisition by ''A,'' but since ''B'' is an acquired person only, ''B'' is not deemed to make any secondary acquisition in this transaction.

5. In previous Example 4, suppose the consideration paid by A for the acquisition of B is in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) worth of the voting securities of A. By virtue of § 801.2(d)(2), ''A'' and ''B'' are each both acquiring and acquired persons. A will still be deemed to have acquired control of B, and therefore the resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Although ''B'' is now also an acquiring person, unless B gains control of A in the transaction, B still makes no secondary acquisitions of stock held by A. If the consideration paid by A is the voting securities of one of A's subsidiaries and B thereby gains control of that subsidiary, B will make secondary acquisitions of any minority holdings of that subsidiary.

6. Assume that A and B propose through consolidation to create a new corporation, C, and that both A and B will lose their corporate identities as a result. Since no participating corporation in existence prior to consummation is the designated surviving corporation, ''A'' and ''B'' are each both acquiring and acquired persons by virtue of § 801.2(d)(2)(iii). The acquisition of the minority holdings of entities within each are therefore potential secondary acquisitions by the other.

(c) Where the primary acquisition is—

(1) A cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for cash tender offers pursuant to sections 7A(a) and 7A(e) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition;

(2) A non-cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for tender offers pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34432, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7080, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8688, Feb. 1, 2001; 67 FR 11902, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 4990, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11511, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 801.10 Value of voting securities, non-corporate interests and assets to be acquired.

Except as provided in § 801.13, the value of voting securities and assets to be acquired shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission—

(i) And the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the market price or the acquisition price, whichever is greater; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the market price.

(2) If paragraph (a)(1) of this section is inapplicable—

(i) But the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the acquisition price; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the fair market value.

(b) *Assets.* The value of assets to be acquired shall be the fair market value of the assets, or, if determined and greater than the fair market value, the acquisition price.

(c) For purposes of this section and § 801.13(a)(2):

(1) *Market price.* (i) For acquisitions subject to § 801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 calendar days prior to the receipt of the notice required by § 803.5(a) or prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

(ii) For acquisitions not subject to § 801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 or fewer calendar days which are prior to

the consummation of the acquisition but not earlier than the day prior to the execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire.

(iii) When the security was not traded within the period specified by this paragraph, the last closing quotation or closing bid price preceding such period shall be used. If such closing quotations are available in more than one market, the person filing notification may select any such quotation.

(2) *Acquisition price.* The acquisition price shall include the value of all consideration for such voting securities or assets to be acquired.

(3) *Fair market value.* The fair market value shall be determinded in good faith by the board of directors of the ultimate parent entity included within the acquiring person, or, if unincorporated, by officials exercising similar functions; or by an entity delegated that function by such board or officials. Such determination must be made as of any day within 60 calendar days prior to the filing of the notification required by the act, or, if such notification has not been filed, within 60 calendar days prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

Example: Corporation A, the ultimate parent entity in person ''A,'' contracts to acquire assets of corporation B, and the contract provides that the acquisition price is not to be determined until after the acquisition is effected. Under paragraph (b) of this section, for purposes of the act, the value of the assets is to be the fair market value of the assets. Under paragraph (c)(3), the board of directors of corporation A must in good faith determine the fair market value. That determination will control for 60 days whether ''A'' and ''B'' must observe the requirements of the act; that is, ''A'' and ''B'' must either file notification or consummate the acquisition within that time. If ''A'' and ''B'' neither file nor consummate within 60 days, the parties would no longer be entitled to rely on the determination of fair market value, and, if in doubt about whether required to observe the requirements of the act, would have to make a second determination of fair market value.

(d) *Value of interests in an unincorporated entity.* In an acquisition of non-corporate interests that confers control of either an existing or a newly-formed unincorporated entity, the value of the non-corporate interests held as a result of the acquisition is the sum of the acquisition price of the interests to be acquired (provided the acquisition price has been determined), and the fair market value of any of the interests in the same unincorporated entity held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition; or, if the acquisition price has not been determined, the fair market value of interests held as a result of the acquisition.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8688, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 11511, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

(a) The annual net sales and total assets of a person shall include all net sales and all assets held, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(b) Except for the total assets of a corporation or unincorporated entity at the time of its formation which shall be determined pursuant to Sec. 801.40(d) or 801.50(c) the annual net sales and total assets of a person shall be as stated on the financial statements specified in paragraph (c) of this section: *Provided:*

(1) That the annual net sales and total assets of each entity included within such person are consolidated therein. If the annual net sales and total assets of any entity included within the person are not consolidated in such statements, the annual net sales and total assets of the person filing notification shall be recomputed to include the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of each such entity; and

(2) That such statements, and any restatements pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section (insofar as possible), have been prepared in accordance with the accounting principles normally used by such person, and are of a date not more than 15 months prior to the date of filing of the notification required by the act, or the date of consummation of the acquisition.

Example: Person ''A'' is composed of entity A, subsidiaries B1 and B2 which A controls, subsidiaries C1 and C2 which B1 controls, and subsidiary C3 which B2 controls. Suppose that A's most recent financial statement consolidates the annual net sales and total assets of B1, C1, and C2, but not B2 or C3. In

order to determine whether person ''A'' meets the criteria of Section 7A(a)(2)(B), as either an acquiring or an acquired person, A must recompute its annual net sales and total assets to reflect consolidation of the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of B2 and C3.

(c) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) The annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared annual statement of income and expense of that person; and

(2) The total assets of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared balance sheet of that person.

Example: Suppose ''A'' sells assets to ''B'' on January 1. ''A's'' next regularly prepared balance sheet, dated February 1, reflects that sale. On March 1, ''A'' proposes to sell more assets to ''B.'' ''A's'' total assets on March 1 are ''A's'' total assets as stated on its February 1 balance sheet.

(d) No assets of any natural person or of any estate of a deceased natural person, other than investment assets, voting securities and other income-producing property, shall be included in determining the total assets of a person.

(e) Subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section, the total assets of:

(1) An acquiring person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be, for acquisitions of each acquired person:

(i) All assets held by the acquiring person at the time of the acquisition,

(ii) Less all cash that will be used by the acquiring person as consideration in an acquisition of assets from, or in an acquisition of voting securities issued by, or in an acquisition of noncorporate interests of, that acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person) and less all cash that will be used for expenses incidental to the acquisition, and less all securities of the acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person); and

(2) An acquired person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be either

(i) All assets held by the acquired person at the time of the acquisition, or

(ii) Where applicable, its assets as determined in accordance with § 801.40(d).

Examples: For examples 1–4, assume that A is a newly-formed company which is not controlled by any other entity. Assume also that A has no sales and does not have the balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

1. A will borrow $105 million in cash and will purchase assets from B for $100 million. In order to establish whether A's acquisition of B's assets is reportable, A's total assets are determined by subtracting the $100 million that it will use to acquire B's assets from the $105 million that A will have at the time of the acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of less than $10 million (as adjusted) and does not meet any size-of-person test of Section 7A(a)(2).

2. Assume that A will acquire assets from B and that, at the time it acquires B's assets, A will have $85 million in cash and a factory valued at $60 million. A will exchange the factory and $80 million cash for B's assets. To determine A's total assets, A should subtract from the $85 million cash the $80 million that will be used to acquire assets from B and add the remainder to the value of the factory. Thus, A has total assets of $65 million. Even though A will use the factory as part of the consideration for the acquisition, the value of the factory must still be included in A's total assets. Note that A and B may also have to report the acquisition by B of A's non-cash assets (i.e., the factory). For that acquisition, the value of the cash A will use to buy B's assets is not excluded from A's total assets. Thus, in the acquisition by B, A's total assets are $145 million.

3. Assume that company A will make a $150 million acquisition and that it must pay a loan origination fee of $5 million. A borrows $161 million. A does not meet the size-of-person test in Section 7A(a)(2) because its total assets are less than $10 million (as adjusted). $150 million is excluded because it will be consideration for the acquisition and $5 million is excluded because it is an expense incidental to the acquisition. Therefore, A is only a $6 million person. Note that if A were making an acquisition valued at over $200 million (as adjusted), the acquisition would be reportable without regard to the sizes of the persons involved.

4. Assume that ''A'' borrows $195 million to acquire $100 million of assets from ''B'' and $60 million of voting securities of ''C.'' The balance of the loan will be used for working capital. To determine its size for purposes of its acquisition from ''B,'' ''A'' subtracts the $100 million that it will use for that acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $95 million for purposes of its acquisition from ''B.'' To determine its size with respect to its acquisition from ''C,'' ''A'' subtracts the $60

million that will be paid for ''C's'' voting securities. Thus, for purposes of its acquisition from ''C'', ''A'' has total assets of $135 million. In the first acquisition ''A'' meets the $10 million (as adjusted) size-of-person test and in the second acquisition ''A'' meets the $100 million (as adjusted) size-of-person test of Section 7A(a)(2).

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34429, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7080, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8688, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4990, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11511, Mar. 8, 2005; 70 FR 73372, Dec. 12, 2005]

§ 801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities.

(a) *Voting securities.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired, the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired shall be deemed the ''acquired persons.''

Example: Person ''A'' is composed of corporation A1 and subsidiary A2; person ''B'' is composed of corporation B1 and subsidiary B2. Assume that A2 proposes to sell assets to B1 in exchange for common stock of B2. Under this paragraph, for purposes of calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held, the ''acquired person'' is B2. For all other purposes, the acquired person is ''B.'' (For all purposes, the ''acquiring persons'' are ''A'' and ''B.'')

(b) *Percentage of voting securities.* (1) Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities of an issuer to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the sum of the separate ratios for each class of voting securities, expressed as a percentage. The ratio for each class of voting securities equals:

(i)(A) The number of votes for directors of the issuer which the holder of a class of voting securities is presently entitled to cast, and as a result of the acquisition, will become entitled to cast, divided by,

(B) The total number of votes for directors of the issuer which presently may be cast by that class, and which will be entitled to be cast by that class after the acquisition, multiplied by,

(ii)(A) The number of directors that class is entitled to elect, divided by (B) the total number of directors.

Examples: In each of the following examples company X has two classes of voting securities, class A, consisting of 1000 shares with each share having one vote, and class B, consisting of 100 shares with each share having one vote. The class A shares elect four of the ten directors and the class B shares elect six of the ten directors.

In this situation, § 801.12(b) requires calculations of the percentage of voting securities held to be made according to the following formula:

Number of votes of class A held divided by Total votes of class A times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B held divided by Total votes of class B times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

1. Assume that company Y holds all 100 shares of class B stock and no shares of class A stock. By virtue of its class B holdings, Y has all 100 of the votes which may be cast by class B stock and can elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula which results from the rule, Y calculates that it holds 100/100 × 6/10 or 60 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class A stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 60 percent of the voting securities of company X.

2. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and no shares of class B stock. By virtue of its class A holdings, Y has 500 of the 1000 votes which may be cast by class A to elect four of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 500/1000 × 4/10 or 20 percent of the voting securities of company X from its holdings of class A stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class B stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 20 percent of the voting securities of company X.

3. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and 60 shares of class B stock. Y calculates that it holds 20 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class A stock (see example 2). Additionally, as a result of its class B holdings Y has 60 of the 100 votes which may be cast by class B stock to elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 60/100 × 6/10 or 36 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock. Since the formula requires that a person that holds different classes of voting securities of the same issuer add together the separate percentages calculated for each class, Y holds a total of 56 percent (20 percent plus 36 percent) of the voting securities of company X.

(2) Authorized but unissued voting securities and treasury voting securities shall not be considered securities presently entitled to vote for directors of the issuer.

(3) For purposes of determining the number of outstanding voting securities of an issuer, a person may rely upon the most recent information set forth in filings with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, unless such person knows or has reason to believe that the information contained therein is inaccurate.

Examples: 1. In the example to paragraph (a), to determine the percentage of B2's voting securities which will be held by ''A'' after the transaction, all voting securities of B2 held by ''A,'' the ''acquiring person'' (including A2 and all other entities included in person ''A''), must be aggregated. If ''A'' holds convertible securities of B2 which meet the definition of voting securities in § 801.1(f), these securities are to be disregarded in calculating the percentage of voting securities held by ''A.''

2. Under this formula, any votes obtained by means of proxies from other persons are also disregarded in calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7081, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8689, Feb. 1, 2001]

§ 801.13 Aggregation of voting securities, assets and non-corporate interests.

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, and paragraph (a)(3) of this section, all voting securities of the issuer which will be held by the acquiring person after the consummation of an acquisition shall be deemed voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such voting securities shall be the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10(a), and the value of the voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) The value of voting securities of an issuer held prior to an acquisition shall be—

(i) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, the market price calculated in accordance with § 801.10(c)(1); or

(ii) If paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section is not applicable, the fair market value determined in accordance with § 801.10(c)(3).

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' holds in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of the voting securities of X, and is to acquire another $1 million of the same voting securities. Since under paragraph (a) of this section all voting securities ''A'' will hold after the acquisition are held ''as a result of'' the acquisition, ''A'' will hold in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of the voting securities of X as a result of the acquisition. ''A'' must therefore observe the requirements of the act before making the acquisition, unless the present acquisition is exempt under Section 7A(c), § 802.21 or any other rule.

2. See § 801.15 and the examples to that rule.

3. See § 801.20 and the examples to that rule.

4. On January 1, company A acquired in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of voting securities of company B. ''A'' and ''B'' filed notification and observed the waiting period for that acquisition. Company A plans to acquire $1 million of assets from company B on May 1 of the same year. Under § 801.13(a)(3), ''A'' and ''B'' do not aggregate the value of the earlier acquired voting securities to determine whether the acquisition is subject to the act. Therefore, the value of the acquisition is $1 million and it is not reportable.

(3) Voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to an acquisition shall not be deemed voting securities held as a result of that subsequent acquisition if:

(i) The acquiring person is, in the subsequent acquisition, acquiring only assets; and

(ii) The acquisition of the previously acquired voting securities was subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act (and such requirements were observed) or was exempt pursuant to § 802.21.

(b) *Assets.* (1) All assets to be acquired from the acquired person shall be assets held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such assets shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b).

(2) If the acquiring person signs a letter of intent or agreement in principle

to acquire assets from an acquired person, and within the previous 180 days the acquiring person has

(i) Signed a letter of intent or agreement in principle to acquire assets from the same acquired person, which is still in effect but has not been consummated, or has acquired assets from the same acquired person which it still holds; and

(ii) The previous acquisition (whether consummated or still contemplated) was not subject to the requirements of the Act; then for purposes of the size-of-transaction test of Section 7A(a)(2), both the acquiring and the acquired persons shall treat the assets that were the subject of the earlier letter of intent or agreement in principal as though they are being acquired as part of the present acquisition. The value of any assets which are subject to this paragraph is determined in accordance with § 801.10(b).

Examples: 1. On day 1, A enters into an agreement with B to acquire assets valued at $45 million. On day 90, A and B sign a letter of intent pursuant to which A will acquire additional assets from B, valued at $45 million. The original transaction has not closed, however, the agreement is still in effect. For purposes of the size-of-transaction test in Section 7A(a)(2), A must aggregate the value of both of its acquisitions and file prior to acquiring the assets if the aggregate value exceeds $50 million (as adjusted).

2. On March 30, A enters into a letter of intent to acquire assets of B valued at $45 million. On January 31, earlier the same year, A closed on an acquisition of assets of B valued at $45 million. For purposes of the size-of-transaction test in Section 7A(a)(2), A must aggregate the value of both of its acquisitions and file prior to acquiring the assets of B if the aggregate value exceeds $50 million (as adjusted).

3. On day 1, A enters into an agreement with B to acquire assets valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). A and B file notification and observe the waiting period. On day 60, A signs a letter of intent to acquire an additional $40 million of assets from B. Because the earlier acquisition was subject to the requirements of the Act, A does not aggregate the two acquisitions of assets and is free to acquire the additional assets of B without filing an additional notification.

4. On day 1, A consummates an acquisition of assets of B valued at $45 million. On day 60, A consummates a sale of the same assets to an unrelated third party. On day 120, A enters into an agreement to acquire additional assets of B valued at $45 million. Because A no longer holds the assets from the previous acquisition, no aggregation of the two asset acquisitions is required and A may acquire all of the additional assets without filing notification.

(c)(1) *Non-corporate interests.* In an acquisition of non-corporate interests, any previously acquired non-corporate interests in the same unincorporated entity is aggregated with the newly acquired interests. The value of such an acquisition is determined in accordance with § 801.10(d) of these rules.

(2) *Other assets or voting securities of the same acquired person.* An acquisition of non-corporate interests which does not confer control of the unincorporated entity is not aggregated with any other assets or voting securities which have been or are currently being acquired from the same acquired person.

Examples: 1. A currently has the right to 30 percent of the profits in LLC. B has the right to the remaining 70 percent. A acquires an additional 30 percent interest in LLC from B for $90 million in cash. As a result of the acquisition, A is deemed to now have a 60 percent interest in LLC. The current acquisition is valued at $90 million, the acquisition price. The value of the 30 percent interest that A already holds is the fair market value of that interest. The value for size-of-transaction purposes is the sum of the two.

2. A acquires the following from B: (1) All of the assets of a subsidiary of B; (2) all of the voting securities of another subsidiary of B; and (3) a 30 percent interest in an LLC which is currently wholly-owned by B. In determining the size-of-transaction, A aggregates the value of the voting securities and assets of the subsidiaries that it is acquiring from B, but does not include the value of the 30 percent interest in the LLC, pursuant to § 801.13(c)(2).

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7081, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8689, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4991, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11513, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.

For purposes of Section 7A(a)(2) and § 801.1(h), the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets shall be the sum of:

(a) The value of all voting securities of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(a); and

(b) The value of all assets of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(b).

Examples: 1. Acquiring person ''A'' previously acquired less than $50 million (as adjusted) of the voting securities (not convertible voting securities) of corporation X. ''A'' now intends to acquire additional assets of X. Under paragraph (a) of this section, ''A'' looks to § 801.13(a) and determines that the voting securities are to be held ''as a result of'' the acquisition. Section 801.13(a) also provides that ''A'' must determine the present value of the previously acquired securities. Under paragraph (b) of this section, ''A'' looks to § 801.13(b)(1) and determines that the assets to be acquired will be held ''as a result of'' the acquisition, and are valued under § 801.10(b). Therefore, if the voting securities have a present value which when combined with the value of the assets would exceed $50 million (as adjusted), the asset acquisition is subject to the requirements of the act since, as a result of it, ''A'' would hold an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of ''X'' in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) .

2. In the previous example, assume that the assets acquisition occurred first, and that the acquisition of the voting securities is to occur within 180 days of the first acquisition. ''A'' now looks to § 801.13(b)(2) and determines that because the second acquisition is of voting securities and not assets, the asset and voting securities acquisitions are not treated as one transaction. Therefore, the second acquisition would not be subject to the requirements of the act since the value of the securities to be acquired does not exceed the $50 million (as adjusted) size-of-transaction test.

(c) The value of all non-corporate interests of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with § 801.13(c).

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8689, Feb. 1, 2001; 67 FR 11902, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 4991, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 73372, Dec. 12, 2005]

§ 801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

Notwithstanding § 801.13, for purposes of determining the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person held by the acquiring person under Section 7A(a)(2) and § 801.1(h), none of the following will be held as a result of an acquisition:

(a) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under—

(1) Sections 7A(c) (1), (5), (6), (7), (8), and (11)(B);

(2) Sections 802.1, 802.2, 802.5, 802.6(b)(1), 802.8, 802.31, 802.35, 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70 of this chapter;

(b) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the Act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under Section 7A(c)(9) and §§ 802.3, 802.4, and 802.64 of this chapter unless the limitations contained in Section 7A(c)(9) or those sections do not apply or as a result of the acquisition would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held; and

(c) Voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the Act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(11)(A) unless additional voting securities of the same issuer have been or are being acquired; and

(d) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the Act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under §§ 802.50(a), 802.51(a), 802.51(b) of this chapter unless the limitations, in aggregate for §§ 802.50(a), 802.51(a), 802.51(b) , do not apply or as a result of the acquisition would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' is simultaneously to acquire in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of the convertible voting securities of X and less than $50 million (as adjusted) of the voting common stock of X. Although the acquisition of the convertible voting securities is exempt under § 802.31, since the overall value of the securities to be acquired is greater than $50 million (as adjusted), ''A'' must determine whether it is obliged to file notification and observe a waiting period before acquiring the securities. Because § 802.31 is one of the exemptions listed in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, ''A''

would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition. Therefore, since as a result of the acquisition ''A'' would hold only the common stock, the size-of-transaction tests of Section 7A(a)(2) would not be satisfied, and ''A'' need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock. (Note, however, that the value of the convertible voting securities would be reflected in ''A's'' next regularly prepared balance sheet, for purposes of § 801.11).

2. In the previous example, the rule was applied to voting securities the present acquisition of which is exempt. Assume instead that ''A'' had acquired the convertible voting securities prior to its acquisition of the common stock. ''A'' still would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition of the common stock, because the rule states that voting securities the previous acquisition of which was exempt also fall within the rule. Thus, the size-of-transaction tests of Section 7A(a)(2) would again not be satisfied, and ''A'' need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

3. In example 2, assume instead that ''A'' acquired the convertible voting securities in 1975, before the act and rules went into effect. Since the rule applies to voting securities the acquisition of which would have been exempt had the act and rules been in effect, the result again would be identical. If the rules had been in effect in 1975, the acquisition of the convertible voting securities would have been exempt under § 802.31.

4. Assume that acquiring person ''B,'' a United States person, acquired from corporation ''X'' two manufacturing plants located abroad, and assume that the acquisition price was in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). In the most recent year, sales into the United States attributable to the plants were less than $50 million (as adjusted), and thus the acquisition was exempt under § 802.50(a)(2). Within 180 days of that acquisition, ''B'' seeks to acquire a third plant from ''X,'' to which United States sales were attributable in the most recent year. Since under § 801.13(b)(2), as a result of the acquisition, ''B'' would hold all three plants of ''X,''if the $50 million (as adjusted) limitation in § 802.50(a)(2) would be exceeded, under paragraph (b) of this section, ''B'' would hold the previously acquired assets for purposes of the second acquisition. Therefore, as a result of the second acquisition, ''B'' would hold assets of ''X'' exceeding $50 million (as adjusted) in value, would not qualify for the exemption in § 802.50(a)(2), and must observe the requirements of the act and file notification for the acquisition of all three plants before acquiring the third plant

5. ''A'' acquires producing oil reserves valued at $400 million from ''B.'' Two months later, ''A'' agrees to acquire oil and gas rights valued at $75 million from ''B.'' Paragraph (b) of this section and § 801.13(b)(2) require aggregating the previously exempt acquisition of oil reserves with the second acquisition. If the two acquisitions, when aggregated, exceed the $500 million limitation on the exemption for oil and gas reserves in § 802.3(a), ''A'' and ''B'' will be required to file notification for the latter acquisition, including within the filings the earlier acquisition. Since, in this example, the total value of the assets in the two acquisitions, when aggregated, is less than $500 million, both acquisitions are exempt from the notification requirements. In determining whether the value of the assets in the two acquisitions exceeds $500 million, ''A'' need not determine the current fair market value of the oil reserves acquired in the first transaction, since these assets are now within the person of ''A.'' Instead, ''A'' is directed by § 801.13(b)(2)(ii) to use the value of the oil reserves at the time of their prior acquisition in accordance with § 801.10(b).

6. ''X'' acquired 55 percent of the voting securities of M, an entity controlled by ''Z,'' six months ago and now proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting stock of N, another entity controlled by ''Z.'' M's assets consist of $150 million worth of producing coal reserves plus less than $50 million (as adjusted) worth of non-exempt assets and N's assets consist of a producing coal mine worth $100 million together with non-exempt assets with a fair market value of less than $50 million (as adjusted). ''X's'' acquisition of the voting securities of M was exempt under § 802.4(a) because M held exempt assets pursuant to § 802.3(b) and less than $50 million (as adjusted) of non-exempt assets. Because ''X'' acquired control of M in the earlier transaction, M is now within the person of ''X,'' and the assets of M need not be aggregated with those of N to determine if the subsequent acquisition of N will exceed the limitation for coal reserves or for non-exempt assets. Since the assets of N alone do not exceed these limitations, ''X's'' acquisition of N also is not reportable.

7. In previous Example 6, assume that ''X'' acquired 30 percent of the voting securities of M and proposes to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of N, another entity controlled by ''Z.'' Assume also that M's assets at the time of ''X's'' acquisition of M's voting securities consisted of $90 million worth of producing coal reserves and non-exempt assets with a fair market value of less than $50 million (as adjusted), and that N's assets currently consist of $60 million worth of producing coal reserves and non-exempt assets with a fair market value which when aggregated with M's non-exempt assets would exceed $50 million (as adjusted). Since ''X'' acquired a minority interest in M and intends to acquire a minority interest in N, and since M and N are controlled by ''Z,'' the

assets of M and N must be aggregated, pursuant to Secs. 801.15(b) and 801.13, to determine whether the acquisition of N's voting securities is exempt. ''X'' is required to determine the current fair market value of M's assets. If the fair market value of M's coal reserves is unchanged, the aggregated exempt assets do not exceed the limitation for coal reserves. However, if the present fair market value of N's non-exempt assets also is unchanged, the present fair market value of the non-exempt assets of M and N when aggregated is greater than $50 million. Thus the acquisition of the voting securities of N is not exempt. If ''X'' proposed to acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of both M and N in the same acquisition, the assets of M and N must be aggregated to determine if the acquisition of the voting securities of both issuers is exempt. Since the fair market value of the aggregated non-exempt assets exceeds $50 million (as adjusted), the acquisition would not be exempt.

8. ''A'' acquired 49 percent of the voting securities of M and 45 percent of the voting securities of N. Both M and N are controlled by ''B.'' At the time of the acquisition, M held rights to producing coal reserves worth $90 million and N held a producing coal mine worth $90 million. This acquisition was exempt since the aggregated holdings fell below the $200 million limitation for coal in § 802.3(b) of this chapter. A year later, ''A'' proposes to acquire an additional 10 percent of the voting securities of both M and N. In the intervening year, M has acquired coal reserves so that its holdings are now valued at $140 million, and the value of N's assets remained unchanged. ''A's'' second acquisition would not be exempt. ''A'' is required to determine the value of the exempt assets and any non-exempt assets held by any issuer whose voting securities it intends to acquire before each proposed acquisition (unless ''A'' already owns 50 percent or more of the voting securities of the issuer) to determine if the value of those holdings of the issuer falls below the limitation of the applicable exemption. Here, the holdings of M and N now exceed the $200 million exemption for acquisitions of coal reserves in § 802.3 of this chapter, and thus do not qualify for the exemption of voting securities provided by § 802.4(a) of this chapter.

9. A acquires assets of B located outside of the U.S. with sales into the U.S. of $45 million. It also acquires voting securities of B's foreign subsidiary X which has sales into the U.S. of $45 million. Both the assets and the voting securities of X are exempt under §§ 802.50 and 802.51 respectively when analyzed separately. However, because § 801.15(d) requires that the sales into the U.S. for both the assets and the voting securities be aggregated to determine whether the $50 million (as adjusted) limitation has been exceeded, both are held as a result of the acquisition because the aggregate sales into the U.S. total in excess of $50 million (as adjusted).

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7081, Mar. 6, 1987; 61 FR 13684, Mar. 28, 1996; 66 FR 8689, Feb. 1, 2001; 67 FR 11902, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 11512, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.

Acquisitions meeting the criteria of section 7A(a), and not otherwise exempted by section 7A(c) or § 802.21 or any other of these rules, are subject to the requirements of the act even though:

(a) Earlier acquisitions of assets or voting securities may have been subject to the requirements of the act;

(b) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold before the effective date of these rules; or

(c) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold by reason of increases in market values or events other than acquisitions.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8690, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.

For purposes of determining the aggregate total amount of assets under Section 7A(a)(2)(A), Section 7A(a)(2)(B)(i), Sec. 801.13(b), and Sec. 802.4:

(a) Cash shall not be considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired; and

(b) Neither voting or nonvoting securities nor obligations referred to in section 7A(c)(2) shall be considered assets of another person from which they are acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' acquires voting securities of issuer X from ''B,'' a person unrelated to X. Under this paragraph, the acquisition is treated only as one of voting securities, requiring ''A'' and ''X'' to comply with the requirements of the act, rather than one in which ''A'' acquires the assets of ''B,'' requiring ''A'' and ''B'' to comply. See also example 2 to § 801.30. Note that for purposes of section 7A(a)(2)—that is, for the next regularly prepared balance sheet of ''A'' referred to in § 801.11—the voting securities of X must be reflected after their acquisition; see § 801.11(c)(2).

2. In the previous example, if ''A'' acquires nonvoting securities of X from ''B,'' then under this section the acquisition would be treated only as one of nonvoting securities of X (and would be exempt under section 7A(c)(2)), rather than one in which ''A'' acquires assets of ''B,'' requiring ''A'' and ''B'' to comply. Again, the nonvoting securities of X would have to be reflected in ''A's'' next regularly prepared balance sheet for purposes of section 7A(a)(2).

3. In example 1, assume that ''B'' receives only cash from ''A'' in exchange for the voting securities of X. Under this section, ''B's'' acquisition of cash is *not* an acquisition of the ''assets'' of ''A,'' and ''B'' is not required to file notification as an acquiring person.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8690, Feb. 1, 2001; 68 FR 2430, Jan. 17, 2003; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.

(a) This section applies to:

(1) Acquisitions on a national securities exchange or through an interdealer quotation system registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission;

(2) Acquisitions described by § 801.31;

(3) Tender offers;

(4) Secondary acquisitions;

(5) All acquisitions (other than mergers and consolidations) in which voting securities are to be acquired from a holder or holders other than the issuer or an entity included within the same person as the issuer;

(6) Conversions; and

(7) Acquisitions of voting securities resulting from the exercise of options or warrants which are—

(i) Issued by the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (or by any entity included within the same person as the issuer); and

(ii) The subject of a currently effective registration statement filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Act of 1933.

(b) For acquisitions described by paragraph (a) of this section:

(1) The waiting period required under the act shall commence upon the filing of notification by the acquiring person as provided in § 803.10(a); and

(2) The acquired person shall file the notification required by the act, in accordance with these rules, no later than 5 p.m. Eastern Time on the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day following the date of receipt, as defined by § 803.10(a), by the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General of the notification filed by the acquiring person. Should the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day fall on a weekend day or federal holiday, the notification shall be filed no later than 5 p.m. Eastern Time on the next following business day.

Examples: 1. Acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire from corporation B the voting securities of B's wholly owned subsidiary, corporation S. Since ''A'' is acquiring the shares of S from its parent, this section does not apply, and the waiting period does not begin until both ''A'' and ''B'' file notification.

2. Acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of the voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange. The waiting period begins when ''A'' files notification. ''X'' must file notification within 15 calendar days thereafter. The seller of the X shares is not subject to any obligations under the act.

3. Suppose that acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of corporation B which in turn owns 30 percent of the voting securities of corporation C. Thus ''A's'' acquisition of C's voting securities is a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) to which this section applies because ''A'' is acquiring C's voting securities from a third party (B). Therefore, the waiting period with respect to ''A's'' acquisition of C's voting securities begins when ''A'' files its separate Notification and Report Form with respect to C, and ''C'' must file within 15 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) thereafter. ''A's'' primary and secondary acquisitions of the voting securities of B and C are subject to separate waiting periods; see § 801.4.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8690, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.

Whenever an offeree in a noncash tender offer is required to, and does, file notification with respect to an acquisition described in § 801.2(e):

(a) The waiting period with respect to such acquisition shall begin upon filing of notification by the offeree, pursuant to §§ 801.30 and 803.10(a)(1);

(b) The person within which the issuer of the shares to be acquired by the offeree is included shall file notification as required by § 801.30(b);

(c) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall extend the waiting period in accordance with § 803.20(c); and

(d) The voting securities to be acquired by the offeree may be placed into escrow, for the benefit of the offeree, pending expiration or termination of the waiting period with respect to the acquisition of such securities; *Provided however*, That no person may vote any voting securities placed into escrow pursuant to this paragraph.

Example: Assume that ''A,'' which has annual net sales exceeding $100 million (as adjusted), makes a tender offer for voting securities of corporation X. The consideration for the tender offer is to be voting securities of A. ''S,'' a shareholder of X with total assets exceeding $10 million (as adjusted), wishes to tender its holdings of X and in exchange would receive shares of A valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Under this section, ''S's'' acquisition of the shares of A would be an acquisition separately subject to the requirements of the act. Before ''S'' may acquire the voting securities of A, ''S'' must first file notification and observe a waiting period—which is separate from any waiting period that may apply with respect to ''A'' and ''X.'' Since § 801.30 applies, the waiting period applicable to ''A'' and ''S'' begins upon filing by ''S,'' and ''A'' must file with respect to ''S's'' acquisition within 15 days pursuant to § 801.30(b). Should the waiting period with respect to ''A'' and ''X'' expire or be terminated prior to the waiting period with respect to ''S'' and ''A,'' ''S'' may wish to tender its X-shares and place the A-shares into a nonvoting escrow until the expiration or termination of the latter waiting period.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8690, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 801.32 Conversion and acquisition.

A conversion is an acquisition within the meaning of the act.

Example: Assume that acquiring person ''A'' wishes to convert convertible voting securities of issuer X, and is to receive common stock of X valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). If ''A'' and ''X'' satisfy the criteria of Section 7A(a)(1) and Section 7A(a)(2)(B)(ii), then ''A'' and ''X'' must file notification and observe the waiting period before ''A'' completes the acquisition of the X common stock, unless exempted by Section 7A(c) or the regulations in this part. Since § 801.30 applies, the waiting period begins upon notification by ''A,'' and ''X'' must file notification within 15 days.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8690, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.

The acceptance for payment of any shares tendered in a tender offer is the consummation of an acquisition of those shares within the meaning of the act.

[48 FR 34433, July 29, 1983]

§ 801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.

(a) In the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), even though the persons contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation and the joint venture or other corporation itself may, in the formation transaction, be both acquiring and acquired persons within the meaning of § 801.2, the contributors shall be deemed acquiring persons only, and the joint venture or other corporation shall be deemed the acquired person only.

(b) Unless exempted by the act or any of these rules, upon the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, in a transaction meeting the criteria of Section 7A(a)(1) and 7A(a)(2)(A) (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), an acquiring person shall be subject to the requirements of the act.

(c) Unless exempted by the act or any of these rules, upon the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, in a transaction meeting the criteria of Section 7A(a)(1) and the criteria of Section 7A(a)(2)(B)(i) (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), an acquiring person shall be subject to the requirements of the act if:

(1)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million (as adjusted) or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $10 million (as adjusted) or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million (as adjusted) or more; or

(2)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million (as adjusted) or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $100 million (as adjusted) or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million (as adjusted) or more.

(d) For purposes of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section and determining whether any exemptions provided by the act and these rules apply to its formation, the assets of the joint venture or other corporation shall include:

(1) All assets which any person contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been secured for the joint venture or other corporation to obtain at any time, whether or not such person is subject to the requirements of the act; and

(2) Any amount of credit or any obligations of the joint venture or other corporation which any person contributing to the formation has agreed to extend or guarantee, at any time.

(e) The commerce criterion of Section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if either the activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or the person filing notification should reasonably believe that the activities of the joint venture or other corporation will be in or will affect commerce.

Examples: 1. Persons ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' agree to create new corporation ''N,'' a joint venture. ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' will each hold one third of the shares of ''N.'' ''A'' has more than $100 million (as adjusted) in annual net sales. ''B'' has more than $10 million (as adjusted) in total assets but less than $100 million (as adjusted) in annual net sales and total assets. Both ''C's'' total assets and its annual net sales are less than $10 million (as adjusted). ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' are each engaged in commerce. ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' have agreed to make an aggregate initial contribution to the new entity of $18 million in assets and each to make additional contributions of $21 million in each of the next three years. Under paragraph (d) of this section, the assets of the new corporation are $207 million. Under paragraph (c) of this section, ''A'' and ''B'' must file notification. Note that ''A'' and ''B'' also meet the criterion of Section 7A(a)(2)(B)(i) since they will be acquiring one third of the voting securities of the new entity for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). N need not file notification; see § 802.41.

2. In the preceding example ''A'' has over $10 million (as adjusted) but less than $100 million (as adjusted) in sales and assets, ''B'' and ''C'' have less than $10 million (as adjusted) in sales and assets. ''N'' has total assets of $500 million. Assume that ''A'' will acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of ''N'' and ''B'' and ''C'' will each acquire 25 percent. Since ''A'' will acquire in excess of $200 million (as adjusted) in voting securities of ''N'', the size-of-person test in § 801.40(c) is inapplicable and ''A'' is required to file notification.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34434, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8690, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 801.50 Formation of unincorporated entities.

(a) In the formation of an unincorporated entity (other than in connection with a consolidation), even though the persons contributing to the formation of the unincorporated entity and the unincorporated entity itself may, in the formation transaction, be both acquiring and acquired persons within the meaning of § 801.2, the contributors shall be deemed acquiring persons only and the unincorporated entity shall be deemed the acquired person only.

(b) Unless exempted by the Act or any of these rules, upon the formation of an unincorporated entity, in a transaction meeting the criteria of Section 7A(a)(1) and 7A(a)(2)(A) (other than in connection with a consolidation), a person is subject to the requirements of the Act if it acquires control of the newly-formed entity. Unless exempted by the Act or any of these rules, upon the formation of an unincorporated entity, in a transaction meeting the criteria of Section 7A(a)(1), the criteria of Section 7A(a)(2)(B)(i) (other than in connection with a consolidation), a person is subject to the requirements of the Act if:

(1)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million (as adjusted) or more;

(ii) The newly-formed entity has total assets of $10 million (as adjusted) or more; and

(iii) The acquiring person acquires control of the newly-formed entity; or

(2)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million (as adjusted) or more;

(ii) The newly-formed entity has total assets of $100 million (as adjusted) or more; and

(iii) The acquiring person acquires control of the newly-formed entity.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (b) of this section, the total assets of the newly-formed entity is determined in accordance with § 801.40(d).

(d) Any person acquiring control of the newly-formed entity determines the value of its acquisition in accordance with § 801.10(d).

(e) The commerce criterion of Section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if either the Activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or the person filing notification should reasonably believe that the Activities of the newly-formed entity will be in or will affect commerce.

Example: A and B form a new partnership (LP) in which each will acquire a 50 percent interest. A contributes a plant valued at $250 million and $100 million in cash. B contributes $350 million in cash. Because each is acquiring non-corporate interests, valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) which confer control of LP both A and B are acquiring persons in the formation. Each must now determine if the exemption in § 802.4 is applicable to their acquisitions of non-corporate interests in LP. For A, LP's exempt assets consist of all of the cash contributed by A and B (pursuant to § 801.21) and A's contribution of the plant (pursuant to § 802.30(c)). Because all of the assets of LP are exempt with regard to A, A's acquisition of non-corporate interests in LP is exempt under § 802.4. For B, LP's exempt assets include only the cash contributions by A and B. The plant contributed by A, valued at $250 million is not exempt under § 802.30(c) with regard to B. Because LP has non-exempt assets in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) with regard to B, B's acquisition of non-corporate interests in LP is not exempt under § 802.4. B must now value its acquisition of non-corporate interests pursuant to § 801.10(d) and because the value of the non-corporate interests is the same as B's contribution to the formation ($350 million), the value exceeds $200 million (as adjusted) and B must file notification prior to acquiring non-corporate interests in LP. See additional examples following §§ 802.30(c) and 802.4.

[70 FR 11512, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

Any transaction(s) or other device(s) entered into or employed for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the requirements of the act shall be disregarded, and the obligation to comply shall be determined by applying the act and these rules to the substance of the transaction.

Examples: 1. Suppose corporations A and B wish to form a joint venture. A and B contemplate a total investment of over $100 million (as adjusted) in the joint venture; persons ''A'' and ''B'' each have total assets in excess of $100 million (as adjusted). Instead of filing notification pursuant to § 801.40, A creates a new subsidiary, A1, which issues half of its authorized shares to A. Assume that A1 has total assets of $3000. ''A'' then sells 50 percent of its A1 stock to ''B'' for $1500. Thereafter, ''A'' and ''B'' each contribute in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) to A1 in exchange for the remaining authorized A1 stock (one-fourth each to ''A'' and ''B''). A's creation of A1 was exempt under Sec. 802.30; its $1500 sale of A1 stock to ''B'' did not meet the size-of-transaction filing threshold in Section 7A(a)(2)(B); and the second acquisition of stock in A1 by ''A'' and ''B'' was exempt under § 802.30 and Sections 7A(c)(3) and (10). Since this scheme appears to be for the purpose of avoiding the requirements of the act, the sequence of transactions will be disregarded. The transactions will be viewed as the formation of a joint venture corporation by ''A'' and ''B'' having over $10 million (as adjusted) in assets. Such a transaction would be covered by § 801.40 and ''A'' and ''B'' must file notification and observe the waiting period.

2. Suppose ''A'' wholly owns and operates a chain of twenty retail hardware stores, each of which is separately incorporated and has assets of less than $10 million. The aggregate fair market value of the assets of the twenty store corporations is in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). ''A'' proposes to sell the stores to ''B'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). For various reasons it is decided that ''B'' will buy the stock of each of the store corporations from ''A.'' Instead of filing notification and observing the waiting period as contemplated by the act, ''A'' and ''B'' enter into a series of five stock purchase-sale agreements for $12 million each. Under the terms of each contract, the stock of four stores will pass from ''A'' to ''B''. The five agreements are to be consummated on five successive days. Because after each of these transactions the store corporations are no longer part of the acquired person (§ 801.13(a) does not apply because control has passed, see § 801.2), and because $12 million is

below the size-of-transaction filing threshold of Section 7A(a)(2)(B), none of the contemplated acquisitions would be subject to the requirements of the act. However, if the stock of all of the store corporations were to be purchased in one transaction, no exemption would be applicable, and the act's requirements would have to be met. Because it appears that the purpose of making five separate contracts is to avoid the requirements of the act, this section would ignore the form of the separate transactions and consider the substance to be one transaction requiring compliance with the act.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8691, Feb. 1, 2001; 67 FR 11903, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 4992, Jan. 31, 2005]

PART 802—EXEMPTION RULES

Sec.

802.1 Acquisitions of goods and realty in the ordinary course of business.
802.2 Certain acquisitions of real property assets.
802.3 Acquisitions of carbon-based mineral reserves.
802.4 Acquisitions of voting securities of issuers or non-corporate interests in unincorporated entities holding certain assets the acquisition of which is exempt.
802.5 Acquisitions of investment rental property assets.
802.6 Federal agency approval.
802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.
802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.
802.10 Stock dividends and splits; reorganizations.
802.20 [Reserved]
802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold (as adjusted).
802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.
802.30 Intraperson transactions.
802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.
802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.
802.40 Exempt formation of corporations or unincorporated entities.
802.41 Corporations or unincorporated entities at time of formation.
802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.
802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets.
802.51 Acquisitions of voting securities of a foreign issuer.
802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.
802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.
802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.
802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.
802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.
802.65 Exempt acquisition of non-corporate interests in financing transactions.
802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.
802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.
802.80 Transitional rule for transactions investigated by the agencies.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 18a(d).

SOURCE: 43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 802.1 Acquisitions of goods and realty in the ordinary course of business.

Pursuant to section 7A(c)(1), acquisitions of goods and realty transferred in the ordinary course of business are exempt from the notification requirements of the act. This section identifies certain acquisitions of goods that are exempt as transfers in the ordinary course of business. This section also identifies certain acquisitions of goods and realty that are not in the ordinary course of business and, therefore, do not qualify for the exemption.

(a) *Operating unit.* An acquisition of all or substantially all the assets of an operating unit is not an acquisition in the ordinary course of business. *Operating unit* means assets that are operated by the acquired person as a business undertaking in a particular location or for particular products or services, even though those assets may not be organized as a separate legal entity.

(b) *New goods.* An acquisition of new goods is in the ordinary course of business, except when the goods are acquired as part of an acquisition described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) *Current supplies.* An acquisition of current supplies is in the ordinary course of business, except when acquired as part of an acquisition described in paragraph (a) of this section. The term ''current supplies'' includes the following kinds of new or used assets:

(1) Goods acquired and held solely for the purpose of resale or leasing to an entity not within the acquiring person (e.g., inventory),

(2) Goods acquired for consumption in the acquiring person's business (e.g., office supplies, maintenance supplies or electricity), and

(3) Goods acquired to be incorporated in the final product (e.g., raw materials and components).

(d) *Used durable goods.* A good is ''durable'' if it is designed to be used repeatedly and has a useful life greater than one year. An acquisition of used durable goods is an acquisition in the ordinary course of business if the goods are not acquired as part of an acquisition described in paragraph (a) of this section and any of the following criteria are met:

(1) The goods are acquired and held solely for the purpose of resale or leasing to an entity not within the acquiring person; or

(2) The goods are acquired from an acquired person who acquired and has held the goods solely for resale or leasing to an entity not within the acquired person; or

(3) The acquired person has replaced, by acquisition or lease, all or substantially all of the productive capacity of the goods being sold within six months of that sale, or the acquired person has in good faith executed a contract to replace within six months after the sale, by acquisition or lease, all or substantially all of the productive capacity of the goods being sold; or

(4) The goods have been used by the acquired person solely to provide management and administrative support services for its business operations, and the acquired person has in good faith executed a contract to obtain substantially similar services as were provided by the goods being sold. Management and administrative support services include services such as accounting, legal, purchasing, payroll, billing and repair and maintenance of the acquired person's own equipment. Manufacturing, research and development, testing and distribution (i.e., warehousing and transportation) are not considered management and administrative support services.

Examples: 1. Greengrocer Inc. intends to sell to ''A'' all of the assets of one of the 12 grocery stores that it owns and operates throughout the metropolitan area of City X. Each of Greengrocer's stores constitutes an operating unit, *i.e.*, a business undertaking in a particular location. Thus ''A's'' acquisition is not exempt as an acquisition in the ordinary course of business. However, the acquisition will not be subject to the notification requirements if the acquisition price or fair market value of the store's assets does not exceed $50 million (as adjusted).

2. ''A,'' a manufacturer of airplane engines, agrees to pay in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) to ''B,'' a manufacturer of airplane parts, for certain new engine components to be used in the manufacture of airplane engines. The acquisition is exempt under § 802.1(b) as new goods as well as under § 802.1(c)(3) as current supplies.

3. ''A,'' a power generation company, proposes to purchase from ''B,'' a coal company, in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of coal under a long-term contract for use in its facilities to supply electric power to a regional public utility and steam to several industrial sites. This transaction is exempt under § 802.1(c)(2) as an acquisition of current supplies. However, if ''A'' proposed to purchase coal reserves rather than enter into a contract to acquire output of a coal mine, the acquisition would not be exempt as an acquisition of goods in the ordinary course of business. The acquisition may still be exempt pursuant to § 802.3(b) as an acquisition of reserves of coal if the requirements of that section are met.

4. ''A,'' a national producer of canned fruit, preserves, jams and jellies, agrees to purchase from ''B'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) a total of 20,000 acres of orchards and vineyards in several locations throughout the U.S. ''A'' plans to harvest the fruit from the acreage for use in its canning operations. The acquisition is not exempt under § 802.1 because orchards and vineyards are real property, not ''goods.'' If, on the other hand, ''A'' had contracted to acquire from ''B'' the fruit and grapes harvested from the orchards and vineyards, the acquisition would qualify for the exemption as an acquisition of current supplies under § 802.1(c)(3). Although the transfer of orchards and vineyards is not exempt under § 802.1, the acquisition would be exempt under § 802.2(g) as an acquisition of agricultural property.

5. ''A,'' a railcar leasing company, will purchase in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of new railcars from a railcar manufacturer in order to expand its existing fleet of cars available for lease. The transaction is exempt under § 802.1(b) as an acquisition of new goods and § 802.1(c), as an acquisition of current supplies. If ''A'' subsequently sells the railcars to ''C,'' a commercial railroad company, that acquisition would be exempt under § 802.1(d)(2), provided that ''A'' acquired and held the railcars solely for resale or leasing to an entity not within itself.

6. ''A,'' a major oil company, proposes to sell two of its used oil tankers for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) to ''B,'' a dealer who purchases oil tankers from the major U.S. oil companies. ''B's'' acquisition of the used oil tankers is exempt under § 802.1(d)(1)

provided that ''B'' is actually acquiring beneficial ownership of the used tankers and is not acting as an agent of the seller or purchaser.

7. ''A,'' a cruise ship operator, plans to sell for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) one of its cruise ships to ''B,'' another cruise ship operator. ''A'' has, in good faith, executed a contract to acquire a new cruise ship with substantially the same capacity from a manufacturer. The contract specifies that ''A'' will receive the new cruise ship within one month after the scheduled date of the sale of its used cruise ship to ''B.'' Since ''B'' is acquiring a used durable good that ''A'' has contracted to replace within six months of the sale, the acquisition is exempt under § 802.1(d)(3).

8. ''A,'' a luxury cruise ship operator, proposes to sell to ''B,'' a credit company engaged in the ordinary course of its business in lease financing transactions, its fleet of six passenger ships under a 10-year sale/leaseback arrangement. That acquisition is exempt pursuant to § 802.1(d)(1), used durable goods acquired for leasing purposes. The acquisition is also exempt under § 802.63(a) as a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of ''B's'' business. ''B'' now proposes to sell the ships, subject to the current lease financing arrangement, to ''C,'' another lease financing company. This transaction is exempt under §§ 802.1(d)(1) and 802.1(d)(2).

9. Three months ago ''A,'' a manufacturing company, acquired several new machines that will replace equipment on one of its production lines. ''A's'' capacity to produce the same products increased modestly when the integration of the new equipment was completed. ''B,'' a manufacturing company that produces products similar to those produced by ''A,'' has entered into a contract to acquire for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) the machinery that ''A'' replaced. Delivery of the equipment by ''A'' to ''B'' is scheduled to occur within thirty days. Since ''A'' purchased new machinery to replace the productive capacity of the used equipment, which it sold within six months of the purchase of the new equipment, the acquisition by ''B'' is exempt under § 802.1(d)(3).

10. ''A'' will sell to ''B'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) all of the equipment ''A'' uses exclusively to perform its billing requirements. ''B'' will use the equipment to provide ''A's'' billing needs pursuant to a contract which ''A'' and ''B'' executed 30 days ago in conjunction with the equipment purchase agreement. Although the assets ''B'' will acquire make up essentially all of the assets of one of ''A's'' management and administrative support services divisions, the acquisition qualifies for the exemption under § 802.1(d)(4) because a company's internal management and administrative support services, however organized, are not an operating unit as defined by § 802.1(a). Management and administrative support services are not a ''business undertaking'' as that term is used in § 802.1(a). Rather, they provide support and benefit to the company's operating units and support the company's business operations. However, if the assets being sold also derived revenues from providing billing services for third parties, then the transfer of these assets would not be exempt under § 802.1(d)(4), since the equipment is not being used solely to provide management and administrative support services to ''A''.

11. ''A,'' a manufacturer of pharmaceutical products, and ''B'' have entered into a contract under which ''B'' will provide all of ''A's'' research and development needs. Pursuant to the contract, ''B'' will also purchase all of the equipment that ''A'' formerly used to perform its own research and development activities. The sale of the equipment is not an exempt transaction under § 802.1(d)(3) because ''A'' is not replacing the productive capacity of the equipment being sold. The sale is also not exempt under § 802.1(d)(4), because functions such as research and development and testing are not management and administrative support services of a company but are integral to the design, development or production of the company's products.

12. ''A,'' an automobile manufacturer, is discontinuing its manufacture of metal seat frames for its cars. ''A'' enters into a contract with ''B,'' a manufacturer of various fabricated metal products, to sell its seat frame production lines and to purchase from ''B'' all of its metal seat frame needs for the next five years. This transfer of productive capacity by ''A'' is not exempt pursuant to § 802.1(d)(3), since ''A'' is not replacing the productive capacity of the equipment being sold. The acquisition is also not exempt under § 802.1(d)(4). ''A's'' sale of production lines is not the transfer of goods that provide management and administrative services to support the business operations of''A''; this manufacturing equipment is an integral part of ''A's'' production operations.

[61 FR 13684, Mar. 28, 1996, as amended at 66 FR 8691, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4993, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.2 Certain acquisitions of real property assets.

(a) *New facilities*. An acquisition of a new facility shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. A new facility is a structure that has not produced income and was either constructed by the acquired person for sale or held at all times by the acquired person solely for resale. The new facility may include realty, equipment or other assets incidental to the ownership of the new

facility. In an acquisition that includes a new facility, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(b) *Used facilities.* An acquisition of a used facility shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the facility is acquired from a lessor that has held title to the facility for financing purposes in the ordinary course of the lessor's business by a lessee that has had sole and continuous possession and use of the facility since it was first built as a new facility. The used facility may include realty, equipment or other assets associated with the operation of the facility. In an acquisition that includes a used facility that meets the requirements of this paragraph, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were acquired in a separate transaction.

(c) *Unproductive real property.* An acquisition of unproductive real property shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. In an acquisition that includes unproductive real property, the transfer of any assets that are not unproductive real property shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(1) Subject to the limitations of (c)(2), unproductive real property is any real property, including raw land, structures or other improvements (but excluding equipment), associated production and exploration assets as defined in § 802.3(c), natural resources and assets incidental to the ownership of the real property, that has not generated total revenues in excess of $5 million during the thirty-six (36) months preceding the acquisition.

(2) Unproductive real property does not include the following:

(i) Manufacturing or non-manufacturing facilities that have not yet begun operation;

(ii) Manufacturing or non-manufacturing facilities that were in operation at any time during the twelve (12) months preceding the acquisition; and

(iii) Real property that is either adjacent to or used in conjunction with real property that is not unproductive real property and is included in the acquisition.

(d) *Office and residential property.* (1) An acquisition of office or residential property shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. In an acquisition that includes office or residential property, the transfer of any assets that are not office or residential property shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such assets were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

(2) Office and residential property is real property that is used primarily for office or residential purposes. In determining whether real property is used primarily for office or residential purposes, all real property, the acquisition of which is exempt under another provision of the act and these rules, shall be excluded from the determination. Office and residential property includes:

(i) Office buildings,

(ii) Residences,

(iii) Common areas on the property, including parking and recreational facilities, and

(iv) Assets incidental to the ownership of such property, including cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rental receivables and the like.

(3) If the acquisition includes the purchase of a business conducted on the office and residential property, the transfer of that business, including the space in which the business is conducted, shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such business were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

(e) *Hotels and motels.* (1) An acquisition of a hotel or motel, its improvements such as golf, swimming, tennis, restaurant, health club or parking facilities (but excluding ski facilities), and assets incidental to the ownership and operation of the hotel or motel (e.g., prepaid taxes or insurance, management contracts and licenses to use trademarks associated with the hotel or motel being acquired) shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. In an acquisition that includes a hotel or motel, the transfer of any assets that are not a hotel or motel, its improvements such as golf, swimming,

tennis, restaurant, health club or parking facilities (but excluding ski facilities) and assets incidental to the ownership of the hotel or motel, shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of the section, an acquisition of a hotel or motel that includes a gambling casino shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules.

(f) *Recreational land*. An acquisition of recreational land shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. Recreational land is real property used primarily as a golf course or a swimming or tennis club facility, and assets incidental to the ownership of such property. In an acquisition that includes recreational land, the transfer of any property or assets that are not recreational land shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(g) *Agricultural property*. An acquisition of agricultural property and assets incidental to the ownership of such property shall be exempt from the requirements of the Act. Agricultural property is real property that primarily generates revenues from the production of crops, fruits, vegetables, livestock, poultry, milk and eggs (certain activities within NAICS sector 11).

(1) Agricultural property does not include either:

(i) Processing facilities such as poultry and livestock slaughtering, processing and packing facilities; or

(ii) Any real property and assets either adjacent to or used in conjunction with processing facilities that are included in the acquisition; or

(iii) Timberland or other real property that generates revenues from activities within NAICS subsector 113 (Forestry and logging) or NAICS industry group 1153 (Support activities for forestry and logging).

(2) In an acquisition that includes agricultural property, the transfer of any assets that are not agricultural property or assets incidental to the ownership of such property (cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rentals receivable and the like) shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such assets were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

(h) *Retail rental space; warehouses*. An acquisition of retail rental space (including shopping centers) or warehouses and assets incidental to the ownership of retail rental space or warehouses shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, except when the retail rental space or warehouse is to be acquired in an acquisition of a business conducted on the real property. In an acquisition that includes retail rental space or warehouses, the transfer of any assets that are neither retail rental space nor warehouses shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such assets were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

Examples. 1. ''A,'' a major automobile manufacturer, builds a new automobile plant in anticipation of increased demand for its cars. The market does not improve and ''A'' never occupies the facility. ''A'' then sells the facility, which is fully equipped and ready for operation, to ''B,'' another automobile manufacturer. The acquisition of this plant, including any equipment and assets associated with its operation, is not exempt as an acquisition of a new facility, even though the facility has not produced any income, since ''A'' did not construct the facility for sale or hold it at all times solely for resale. Also, the acquisition is not exempt as an acquisition of unproductive property, because manufacturing facilities that have not yet begun operations are explicitly excluded from that exemption.

2. ''B,'' a subsidiary of ''A,'' a financial institution, acquired a newly constructed power plant, which it leased to ''X'' pursuant to a lease financing arrangement. ''A's'' acquisition of the plant through B was exempt under § 802.63(a) as a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of ''A's'' business. ''X'' operated the plant as sole lessee for the next eight years and now proposes to exercise an option to buy the plant for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). ''X's'' acquisition of the plant is exempt pursuant to § 802.2(b). The plant is being acquired from B, the lessor, which held title to the plant for financing purposes, and the purchaser, ''X,'' has had sole and continuous possession and use of the plant since its construction.

3. ''A'' proposes to acquire a tract of wilderness land from ''B'' for consideration in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Copper deposits valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) and timber reserves valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) are situated on the land and will be conveyed as part of this

transaction. During the last three fiscal years preceding the sale, the property generated $50,000 from the sale of a small amount of timber cut from the reserves two years ago. ''A's'' acquisition of the wilderness land from ''B'' is exempt as an acquisition of unproductive real property because the property did not generate revenues exceeding $5 million during the thirty-six months preceding the acquisition. The copper deposits and timber reserves are by definition unproductive real property and, thus, are not separately subject to the notification requirements.

4. ''A'' proposes to purchase from ''B'' for in excess of $200 million (as adjusted) an old steel mill that is not currently operating to add to ''A's'' existing steel production capacity. The mill has not generated revenues during the 36 months preceding the acquisition but contains equipment valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) that ''A'' plans to refurbish for use in its operations. ''A's'' acquisition of the mill and the land on which it is located is exempt as unproductive real property. However, the transfer of the equipment and any assets other than the unproductive property is not exempt and is separately subject to the notification requirements of the act.

5. ''A'' proposes to purchase two downtown lots, Parcels 1 and 2, from ''B'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Parcel 1, located in the southwest section, contains no structures or improvements. A hotel is located in the northeast section on Parcel 2, and it has generated $9 million in revenues during the past three years. The purchase of Parcel 1 is exempt if it qualifies as unproductive real property, *i.e.*, it has not generated annual revenues in excess of $5 million in the three fiscal years prior to the acquisition. Parcel 2 is not unproductive real property, but its acquisition is exempt under § 802.2(e) as the acquisition of a hotel.

6. ''A'' plans to purchase from ''B,'' a manufacturer, a newly-constructed building that ''B'' had intended to equip for use in its manufacturing operations. ''B'' was unable to secure financing to purchase the necessary equipment and ''A'', also a manufacturer, will be required to invest in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) in order to equip the building for use in its production operations. This building is not a new facility under § 802.2 (a), because it was not constructed or held by ''B'' for sale or resale. However, the acquisition of the building qualifies for exemption as unproductive real property pursuant to § 802.2(c)(1). The building is not yet a manufacturing facility since it does not contain equipment and requires significant capital investment before it can be used as a manufacturing facility.

7. ''A'' proposes to purchase from ''B,'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted), a 100 acre parcel of land that includes a currently operating factory occupying 10 acres. The other 90 adjoining acres are vacant and unimproved and are used by ''B'' for storage of supplies and equipment. The factory and the unimproved acreage have an aggregate fair market value of in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). The transaction is not exempt under § 802.2(c) because the vacant property is adjacent to property occupied by the operating factory. Moreover, if the 90 acres were not adjacent to the 10 acres occupied by the factory, the transaction would not be exempt because the 90 acres are being used in conjunction with the factory being acquired and thus are not unproductive property.

8. ''X'' proposes to buy a five-story building from ''Y.'' The ground floor of this building houses a department store, and ''X'' currently leases the third floor to operate a medical laboratory. The remaining three floors are used for offices. ''X'' is not acquiring the business of the department store. Because the ground floor is rental retail space, the acquisition of which is exempt under § 802.2(h), this part of the building is excluded from the determination of whether the building is used primarily for office purposes. The laboratory is therefore the only non-office use, and, since it makes up 25 percent of the remainder of the building, the building is used 75 percent for offices. Thus the building qualifies as an office building and its acquisition is therefore exempt under § 802.2(d).

9. ''A'' intends to acquire three shopping centers from ''B'' for a total of in excess of $200 million (as adjusted). The anchor stores in two of the shopping centers are department stores, the businesses of which ''A'' is buying from ''B'' as part of the overall transaction. The acquisition of the shopping centers is an acquisition of retail rental space that is exempt under § 802.2(h). However, ''A's'' acquisition of the department store businesses, including the portion of the shopping centers that the two department stores being purchased occupy, are separately subject to the notification requirements. If the value of these assets exceeds $50 million (as adjusted), ''A'' must comply with the requirements of the act for this part of the transaction.

10. ''A'' wishes to purchase from ''B'' a parcel of land for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). The parcel contains a race track and a golf course. The golf course qualifies as recreational land pursuant to § 802.2(f), but the race track is not included in the exemption. Therefore, if the value of the race track is more than $50 million (as adjusted), ''A'' will have to file notification for the purchase of the race track.

11. ''A'' intends to purchase a poultry farm from ''B.'' The acquisition of the poultry farm is a transfer of agricultural property that is exempt pursuant to § 802.2(g). If, however, ''B'' has a poultry slaughtering and

processing facility on his farm that is included in the acquisition, ''A's'' acquisition of the farm is not exempt as an acquisition of agricultural property because agricultural property does not include property or assets adjacent to or used in conjunction with a processing facility that is included in an acquisition.

12. ''A'' proposes to purchase the prescription drug wholesale distribution business of ''B'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). The business includes six regional warehouses used for ''B's'' national wholesale drug distribution business. Since ''A'' is acquiring the warehouses in connection with the acquisition of ''B's'' prescription drug wholesale distribution business, the acquisition of the warehouses is not exempt.

[61 FR 13686, Mar. 28, 1996, as amended at 66 FR 8692, Feb. 1, 2001; 66 FR 23565, May 9, 2001; 67 FR 11903, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 4993, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11513, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.3 Acquisitions of carbon-based mineral reserves.

(a) An acquisition of reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands, or rights to reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands together with associated exploration or production assets shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the value of the reserves, the rights and the associated exploration or production assets to be held as a result of the acquisition does not exceed $500 million. In an acquisition that includes reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands, or rights to reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands and associated exploration or production assets, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(b) An acquisition of reserves of coal, or rights to reserves of coal and associated exploration or production assets, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the value of the reserves, the rights and the associated exploration or production assets to be held as a result of the acquisition does not exceed $200 million. In an acquisition that includes reserves of coal, rights to reserves of coal and associated exploration or production assets, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(c) Associated exploration or production assets means equipment, machinery, fixtures and other assets that are integral and exclusive to current or future exploration or production activities associated with the carbon-based mineral reserves that are being acquired. Associated exploration or production assets do not include the following:

(1) Any pipeline and pipeline system or processing facility which transports or processes oil and gas after it passes through the meters of a producing field located within reserves that are being acquired; and

(2) Any pipeline or pipeline system that receives gas directly from gas wells for transportation to a natural gas processing facility or other destination.

Examples: 1. ''A'' proposes to purchase from ''B'' for $550 million gas reserves that are not yet in production and have not generated any income. ''A'' will also acquire from ''B'' for $280 million producing oil reserves and associated assets such as wells, compressors, pumps and other equipment. The acquisition of the gas reserves is exempt as a transfer of unproductive property under § 802.2(c). The acquisition of the oil reserves and associated assets is exempt pursuant to § 802.3(a), since the value of the reserves and associated assets does not exceed the $500 million limitation.

2. ''A,'' an oil company, proposes to acquire for $180 million oil reserves currently in production along with field pipelines and treating and metering facilities which serve such reserves exclusively. The acquisition of the reserves and the associated assets are exempt. ''A'' will also acquire from ''B'' for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) a natural gas processing plant and its associated gathering pipeline system. This acquisition is not exempt since § 802.3(c) excludes these assets from the exemption in § 802.3 for transfers of associated exploration or production assets.

3. ''A,'' an oil company, proposes to acquire a coal mine currently in operation and associated production assets for $90 million from ''B,'' an oil company. ''A'' will also purchase from ''B'' producing oil reserves valued at $100 million and an oil refinery valued at $13 million. The acquisition of the coal mine and the oil reserves is exempt pursuant to § 802.3. Although § 802.3(c) excludes the refinery from the exemption in § 802.3 for transfers of associated exploration and production assets, ''A's'' acquisition of the refinery is not subject to the notification requirements of the act because its value does not exceed $50 million (as adjusted).

4. ''X'' proposes to acquire from ''Z'' coal reserves which, together with associated exploration assets, are valued at $230 million. Since the value of the reserves and the assets exceeds the $200 million limitation in § 802.3(b), this transaction is not exempt under § 802.3. However, if the coal reserves qualify as unproductive property under the requirements of § 802.2(c), their acquisition, along with the acquisition of their associated assets, would be exempt.

[61 FR 13688, Mar. 28, 1996, as amended at 66 FR 8692, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4994, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.4 Acquisitions of voting securities of issuers or non-corporate interests in unincorporated entities holding certain assets the acquisition of which is exempt.

(a) An acquisition of voting securities of an issuer or non-corporate interests in an unincorporated entity whose assets together with those of all entities it controls consist or will consist of assets whose acquisition is exempt from the requirements of the Act pursuant to Section 7A(c) of the Act, this part 802, or pursuant to § 801.21 of this chapter, is exempt from the reporting requirements if the acquired issuer or unincorporated entity and all entities it controls do not hold non-exempt assets with an aggregate fair market value of more than $50 million (as adjusted). The value of voting or non-voting securities of any other issuer or interests in any non-corporate entity not included within the acquired issuer does not count toward the $50 million (as adjusted) limitation for non-exempt assets.

Example: A and B form a new corporation as an acquisition vehicle to acquire all of the voting securities of C. Each contributes $250 million in cash. Because all of the cash is considered to be exempt assets pursuant to § 801.21, the new corporation does not have non-exempt assets valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted), and the acquisition of its voting securities by A and B is exempt under § 802.4. Note that the result is the same if the acquisition vehicle is formed as an unincorporated entity. Also see the examples to § 802.30(c) for additional applications of § 802.4.

(b) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, the assets of all issuers and unincorporated entities that are being acquired from the same acquired person are included in determining if the limitation for non-exempt assets is exceeded.

(c) In connection with paragraph (a) of this section and § 801.15 (b), the value of the assets of an issuer whose voting securities or an unincorporated entity whose non-corporate interests are being acquired pursuant to this section shall be the fair market value, determined in accordance with § 801.10(c).

Examples: 1. ''A,'' a real estate investment company, proposes to purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of C, a wholly-owned subsidiary of ''B,'' a construction company. C's assets are a newly constructed, never occupied hotel, including fixtures, furnishings and insurance policies. The acquisition of the hotel would be exempt under § 802.2(a) as a new facility and under § 802.2(d). Therefore, the acquisition of the voting securities of C is exempt pursuant to § 802.4(a) since C holds assets whose direct purchase would be exempt under § 802.2 and does not hold non-exempt assets exceeding $50 million (as adjusted) in value.

2. ''A'' proposes to acquire 60 percent of the voting securities of C from ''B.'' C's assets consist of a portfolio of mortgages valued at $55 million and a small manufacturing plant valued at $26 million. The manufacturing plant is an operating unit for purposes of § 802.1(a). Since the acquisition of the mortgages would be exempt pursuant to Section 7A(c)(2) of the act and since the value of the non-exempt manufacturing plant is less than $50 million (as adjusted), this acquisition is exempt under § 802.4(a).

3. ''A'' proposes to acquire from ''B'' 100 percent of the voting securities of each of three issuers, M, N and O, simultaneously. M's assets consist of oil reserves worth $160 million and coal reserves worth $40 million. N has assets consisting of $130 million of gas reserves and $100 million of coal reserves. O's assets are oil shale reserves worth $140 million and a coal mine worth $80 million. Since ''A'' is simultaneously acquiring the voting securities of three issuers from the same acquired person, it must aggregate the assets of the issuers to determine if any of the limitations in § 802.3 is exceeded. As a result of aggregating the assets of M, N and O, ''A's'' holdings of oil and gas reserves are below the $500 limitation for such assets in § 802.3(a). However, the aggregated holdings exceed the $200 million limitation for coal reserves in § 802.3(b). ''A's'' acquisition therefore is not exempt, and it must report the entire transaction.

[61 FR 13688, Mar. 28, 1996, as amended at 66 FR 8693, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4994, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11513, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.5 Acquisitions of investment rental property assets.

(a) Acquisitions of investment rental property assets shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

(b) Investment rental property assets. ''Investment rental property assets'' means real property that will not be rented to entities included within the acquiring person except for the sole purpose of maintaining, managing or supervising the operation of the real property, and will be held solely for rental or investment purposes. In an acquisition that includes investment rental property assets, the transfer of any property or assets that are not investment rental property assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate transaction. Investment rental property assets include:

(1) Property currently rented,

(2) Property held for rent but not currently rented,

(3) Common areas on the property, and

(4) Assets incidental to the ownership of property, which may include cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rental receivables and the like.

Example: 1. ''X'', a corporation, proposes to purchase a sports/entertainment complex which it will rent to professional sports teams and promoters of special events for concerts, ice shows, sporting events and other entertainment activities. ''X'' will provide office space in the complex for ''Y'', a management company which will maintain and manage the facility for ''X.'' This acquisition is an exempt acquisition of investment rental property assets since ''X'' intends to rent the facility to third parties and is providing space within the facility to a management company solely to maintain, manage or supervise the operation of the facility on its behalf. If, however, ''X'' controls Z, a concert promoter to whom it also intends to rent the complex, the acquisition would not be exempt under § 802.5, since the property would not meet the requirements of § 802.5(b)(1).

2. ''X'' intends to buy from ''Y'' a development commonly referred to as an industrial park. The industrial park contains a warehouse/distribution center, a retail tire and automobile parts store, an office building, and a small factory. The industrial park also contains several parcels of vacant land. If ''X'' intends to acquire this industrial park as investment rental property, the acquisition will be exempt pursuant to § 802.5. If, however, ''X'' intends to use the factory for its own manufacturing operations, this exemption would be unavailable. The exemptions in § 802.2 for warehouses, rental retail space, office buildings, and undeveloped land may still apply and, if the value of the factory is $50 million (as adjusted) or less, the entire transaction may be exempted by that section.

[61 FR 13688, Mar. 28, 1996, as amended at 66 FR 8693, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4994, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.6 Federal agency approval.

(a) For the purposes of section 7A (c)(6) and (c)(8), the term *information and documentary material* includes one copy of all documents, application forms, and all written submissions of any type whatsoever. In lieu of providing all such information and documentary material, or any portion thereof, one copy of an index describing such information and documentary material may be provided, together with a certification that any such information or documentary material not provided will be provided within 10 calendar days upon request by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, or a delegated official of either. Any material submitted pursuant to this section shall be submitted to the offices specified in § 803.10(c).

(b)(1) A mixed transaction is one that has some portion that is exempt under Section 7A (c)(6), (c)(7) or (c)(8) because it requires regulatory agency premerger competitive review and approval, and another portion that does not require such review.

(2) The portion of a mixed transaction that does not require advance competitive review and approval by a regulatory agency is subject to the act and these rules as if it were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

Example: Bank ''A'' acquires Bank ''B'', which owns a financial subsidiary engaged in securities underwriting. ''A''s acquisition of ''B'' requires agency approval by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System or Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (depending on whether ''A'' is a national bank, state member bank, or state non-member bank under section 18(c) of the FDI Act), and therefore is exempt from filing under Section 7A (c)(7). However, the acquisition of the financial subsidiary is subject to HSR reporting requirements, and ''A'' and

''B'' each must make a filing for that portion of the transaction and observe the waiting period if the act's thresholds are met.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34435, July 29, 1983; 66 FR 8693, Feb. 1, 2001; 67 FR 11903, Mar. 18, 2002]

§ 802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.

(a) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition requiring agency approval under sections 403 or 408(e) of the National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1726, 1730a(e), or under section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933, 12 U.S.C. 1464, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, including specifically the filing requirement of Section 7A(c)(8), if the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

(b)(1) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition which requires agency approval under 12 U.S.C. 1817(j) or 12 U.S.C. 1730(q) shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary materials filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed acquisition.

(2) A transaction described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, including specifically the filing requirement, if the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such transaction is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34436, July 29, 1983; 67 FR 11903, Mar. 18, 2002]

§ 802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act pursuant to section 7A(c)(9) if made solely for the purpose of investment and if, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person would hold ten percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, regardless of the dollar value of voting securities so acquired or held.

Examples: 1. Suppose that acquiring person ''A'' acquires 6 percent of the voting securities of issuer X, valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). If the acquisition is solely for the purpose of investment, it is exempt under Section 7A(c)(9).

2. After the acquisition in example 1, ''A'' decides to acquire an additional 7 percent of the voting securities of X. Regardless of ''A''s intentions, the acquisition is not exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

3. After the acquisition in example 1, acquiring person ''A'' decides to participate in the management of issuer X. Any subsequent acquisitions of X stock by ''A'' would not be exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8693, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4994, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.10 Stock dividends and splits; reorganizations.

(a) The acquisition of voting securities pursuant to a stock split or pro rata stock dividend is exempt from the requirements of the Act under section 7A(c)(10).

(b) An acquisition of non-corporate interests or voting securities as a result of the conversion of a corporation or unincorporated entity into a new entity is exempt from the requirements of the Act if:

(1) No new assets will be contributed to the new entity as a result of the conversion; and

(2) Either:

(i) As a result of the transaction the acquiring person does not increase its per centum holdings in the new entity relative to its per centum holdings in the original entity; or

(ii) The acquiring person controlled the original entity.

Examples: 1. Partners A and B hold 60 percent and 40 percent respectively of the partnership interests in C. C is converted to a corporation in which A and B hold 60 percent and 40 percent respectively of the voting securities. No new assets are contributed. The conversion to a corporation is exempt from notification for both A and B.

2. Shareholder A holds 55% and B holds 45% of the voting securities of corporation C. C is converted to a limited liability company in which A holds 60% and B holds 40% of the membership interests. No new assets are contributed. The conversion to a limited liability company is exempt from notification because A controlled the corporation. If however, B holds 55% and A holds 45% in the new

limited liability company, the conversion is not exempt for B and may require notification because control changes.

3. Shareholders A, B and C each hold one third of the voting securities of corporation X. Pursuant to a reorganization agreement, A and B each contribute new assets to X and C contributes cash. X is then being reincorporated in a new state. Each of A, B and C receive one third of the voting securities of newly reincorporated C. The reincorporation is not exempt from notification and may be reportable for A, B and C because of the contribution of new assets.

[70 FR 11513, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.20 [Reserved]

§ 802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold (as adjusted).

(a) An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(1) The acquiring person and all other persons required by the act and these rules to file notification filed notification with respect to an earlier acquisition of voting securities of the same issuer;

(2) The waiting period with respect to the earlier acquisition has expired, or been terminated pursuant to § 803.11, and the acquisition will be consummated within 5 years of such expiration or termination; and

(3) The acquisition will not increase the holdings of the acquiring person to meet or exceed a notification threshold (as adjusted) greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition.

Examples: 1. In 2004, Corporation A acquired $53 million of the voting securities of corporation B and both ''A'' and ''B'' filed notification as required, indicating the $50 million threshold. Within five years of the expiration of the original waiting period, ''A'' acquires additional voting securities of B but not in an amount sufficient to meet or exceed $100 million (as adjusted) or 50 percent of the voting securities of B. No additional notification is required.

2. In 2004, Corporation A acquired $53 million of the voting securities of corporation B and both ''A'' and ''B'' filed notification as required, indicating the $50 million threshold. Suppose that in year three following the expiration of the waiting period, the $50 million notification threshold has been adjusted to $56 million pursuant to Section 7A(a)(2)(a) of the Act. ''A'' now intends to acquire an additional $5 million of the voting securities of B. ''A'' is not required to file another notification even though it now holds voting securities in excess of the $56 million notification threshold (which is greater than the $50 million notification threshold indicated in its filing), because it has not met or exceeded a notification threshold (as adjusted) greater than the notification threshold exceeded in the earlier acquisition (*i.e.* $100 million (as adjusted) or 50% notification thresholds).

3. Same facts as in Example 2 above except now the five year period has expired. Suppose that, the $50 million notification threshold has been adjusted to $57 million pursuant to Section 7A(a)(2)(a) of the Act. ''A'' now holds $58 million of voting securities of B. Because § 802.21(a)(2) is no longer satisfied, the acquisition of any additional voting securities of B will require a new filing because ''A'' will hold voting securities valued in excess of the $57 million notification threshold. If, however, the $50 million notification threshold had been adjusted to $60 million at the end of the five-year period, A could acquire up to that threshold without a new filing.

4. This section also allows a person to recross any of the threshold notification levels that were in effect at the time of filing notification any number of times within five years of the expiration of the waiting period following notification. Thus, if in Example 1, ''A'' had disposed of some voting securities so that it held less than $50 million of the voting securities of B, and thereafter had increased its holdings to more than $50 million but less than $100 million or 50 percent of B, notification would not be required if the increase occurred within 5 years of the expiration of the original waiting period.

5. A files notification at the $50 million notification threshold and acquires $51 million of the voting securities of B in the year following expiration of the waiting period. The next greater notification threshold at the time of filing was $100 million. In year three, the $100 million notification threshold has been adjusted to $106 million. A can now acquire up to, but not meet or exceed, voting securities of B valued at $106 million. As the original $100 million threshold is adjusted upward in years four and five, A can acquire up to those new thresholds as the adjustments are effected.

6. A files notification at the $50 million threshold in January of year one. In February of year one, the $50 million threshold is adjusted to $52 million. A only needs to acquire in excess of $50 million of voting securities of B, not in excess of $52 million, to have exceeded the threshold which was filed for in the year following expiration of the waiting period (*see* § 803.7). It may then acquire up to the next greater notification

threshold (as adjusted) during the five years following expiration of the waiting period.

(b) *Year 2001 transition.* For transactions filed using the 1978 thresholds where the waiting period expired after February 1, 1996, an acquiring person may, during the five-year period following expiration of the waiting period, acquire up to what was the next percentage threshold at the time it made its filing without filing another notification, even if in doing so it crosses a 2001 notification threshold in § 801.1(h) of this chapter. However, after the end of that period, any additional acquisition will be the subject of a new notification if it meets or exceeds a 2001 threshold in § 801.1(h) of this chapter.

Examples: 1. Corporation A filed to acquire 20 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and indicated the 15 percent threshold. The waiting period expired on October 3, 1999. ''A'' acquired the 20 percent within the year following expiration of the waiting period. ''A'' has until October 3, 2004, to acquire additional securities up to 25 percent of ''B'''s voting securities, and need not make another filing before doing so, even though such acquisition by ''A'' may cross the $50 million, $100 million or $500 million notification threshold in § 801.1(h) of this chapter. After October 3, 2004, ''A'' and ''B'' must observe the 2001 notification thresholds set forth in § 801.1(h) of this chapter.

2. Prior to February 1, 2001, ''A'' filed to acquire 12 percent of the voting securities of corporation B, valued at $120 million, and indicated the $15 million notification threshold. After February 1, 2001, ''A'' determines that it will make an additional acquisition which will result in its holding 16 percent of the voting securities of B, valued at $160 million. ''A'' is required to file notification at the $100 million notification threshold prior to making the acquisition since it is now crossing the next higher 1978 threshold (15 percent).

3. Prior to February 1, 2001, ''A'' filed to acquire 26 percent of the voting securities of ''B'' and indicated the 25 percent notification threshold. After the end of the five-year period following expiration of the waiting period, ''A'' will acquire additional shares of ''B'' which will result in its holding 30 percent of the voting securities of ''B'', valued at $125 million. ''A'' is required to file notification at the $100 million notification threshold prior to making the acquisition. ''A'' could, however, have reached this level (30 percent valued at $125 million) prior to the end of the five-year period without making an additional filing since it would not have crossed the next higher threshold at the time it filed (50 percent) and the acquisition would have been exempted by this § 802.21(b).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8693, Feb. 1, 2001; 67 FR 11906, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 4995, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.

Whenever a tender offer is amended or renewed after notification has been filed by the offeror, no new notification shall be required, and the running of the waiting period shall be unaffected, except as follows:

(a) If the number of voting securities to be acquired pursuant to the offer is increased such that a greater notification threshold would be met or exceeded, only the acquiring person need again file notification, but a new waiting period must be observed;

(b) If a noncash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by § 803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of § 803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (determined in accordance with § 803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is earlier; or

(c) If a cash tender offer is amended to become a noncash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by § 803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of § 803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (as determined in accordance with § 803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is later.

Examples: 1. Assume that corporation A makes a tender offer for 20 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and that ''A'' files notification. Under this section, if A subsequently amends its tender offer only as to the amount of consideration offered, the waiting period so commenced is not affected, and no new notification need be filed.

2. In the previous example, assume that A makes an amended tender offer for 27 percent

of the voting securities of B, valued at greater than $1 billion. Since a new notification threshold will be crossed, this section requires that ''A'' must again file notification and observe a new waiting period. Paragraph (a) of this section, however, provides that ''B'' need not file notification again.

3. Assume that ''A'' makes a tender offer for shares of corporation B. ''A'' includes its voting securities as part of the consideration. ''A'' files notification. Five days later, ''A'' changes its tender offer to a cash tender offer, and on the same day files copies of its amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (b) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) 15 days after the receipt of the amended offer (on the 20th day after filing notification), since that occurs earlier than the expiration of the original waiting period (which would occur on the 30th day after filing).

4. Assume that ''A'' makes a cash tender offer for shares of corporation B and files notification. Six days later, ''A'' amends the tender offer and adds voting securities as consideration, and on the same day files copies of the amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (c) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) on the 30th day following the date of filing of notification (determined under § 803.10(c)), since that occurs later than the 15th day after receipt of the amended tender offer (which would occur on the 21st day).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8694, Feb. 1, 2001]

§ 802.30 Intraperson transactions.

(a) An acquisition (other than the formation of a corporation or unincorporated entity under § 801.40 or § 801.50 of this chapter) in which the acquiring and at least one of the acquired persons are, the same person by reason of § 801.1(b)(1) of this chapter, or in the case of a not-for-profit corporation which has no outstanding voting securities, by reason of § 801.1(b)(2) of this chapter, is exempt from the requirements of the Act.

Examples to paragraph (a): 1. A and B each have the right to 50% of the profits of partnership X. A also holds 100% of the voting securities of corporation Y. A pays B in excess of $50 million in cash (as adjusted) and transfers certain assets of X to Y. Because A is the acquiring person through its control of Y, pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(i), and one of the acquired persons through its control of X pursuant to § 801.1(b)(1)(ii), the acquisition of assets is exempt under § 802.30(a).

2. A and B each have the right to 50% of the profits of partnership X. A contributes assets to X valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). B contributes cash to X. Because B is an acquiring person but not an acquired person, its acquisition of the assets contributed to X by A is not exempt under § 802.30(a). However, A is both an acquiring and acquired person, and its acquisition of the assets it is contributing to X is exempt under § 802.30(a).

(b) The formation of any wholly owned entity is exempt from the requirements of the Act.

(c) For purposes of applying Sec. 802.4(a) to an acquisition that may be reportable under Sec. 801.40 or Sec. 801.50, assets or voting securities contributed by the acquiring person to a new entity upon its formation are assets or voting securities whose acquisition by that acquiring person is exempt from the requirements of the Act.

Examples to paragraph (c): 1. A and B form a new partnership to which A contributes a manufacturing plant valued at $102 million and acquires a 51% interest in the partnership. B contributes $98 million in cash and acquires a 49% interest. B is not acquiring non-corporate interests which confer control of the partnership and therefore is not making a reportable acquisition. A is acquiring non-corporate interests which confer control of the partnership, however, the manufacturing plant it is contributing to the formation is exempt under § 802.30(c) and the cash contributed by B is excluded under § 801.21, therefore, the acquisition of non-corporate interests by A is exempt under § 802.4.

2. A and B form a new corporation to which A contributes a plant valued at $120 million and acquires 60% of the voting securities of the new corporation. B contributes a plant valued at $80 million and acquires 40% of the voting securities of the new corporation. While the assets contributed to the formation are exempted by § 802.30(c) for each of A and B, the new corporation holds more than $50 million (as adjusted) in non-exempt assets (the plant contributed by the other person) with respect to both acquisitions. A is now acquiring voting securities of an issuer which holds $80 million in non-exempt assets (the plant contributed by B), and B is acquiring voting securities of an issuer which holds $120 million in non-exempt assets (the plant contributed by A). Therefore neither acquisition of voting securities is exempt under § 802.4. Note that in contrast to the formation of the partnership in Example 1, B is not required to acquire a controlling interest in the corporation in order to have a reportable transaction.

3. A and B form a 50/50 partnership. A contributes a plant valued at $100 million and B contributes a plant valued at $40 million and $60 million in cash. Because with respect to A, the new partnership has non-exempt assets of $40 million (the plant contributed by B), A's acquisition of non-corporate interests is exempt under § 802.4. With respect to B, the new partnership holds in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) in non-exempt assets (the plant contributed by A), therefore B's acquisition of non-corporate interests would not be exempt under § 802.4.

[70 FR 11513, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.

Acquisitions of convertible voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

Example: This section applies regardless of the dollar value of the convertible voting securities held or to be acquired. Note, however, that subsequent conversions of convertible voting securities may be subject to the requirements of the act. See § 801.32.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8694, Feb. 1, 2001]

§ 802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the notification requirements of the act if:

(a) The securities are acquired by a trust that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(b) The trust is controlled by a person that employs the beneficiaries and,

(c) The voting securities acquired are those of that person or an entity within that person.

Examples: 1. Company A establishes a trust for its employees that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code. Company A has the power to designate the trustee of the trust. That trust then acquires 30% of the voting securities of Company A for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Later, the trust acquires 20% of the stock of Company B, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Company A, for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Neither acquisition is reportable.

2. Assume that in the example above, ''A'' has total assets of $100 million (as adjusted). ''C'' also has total assets of $100 million (as adjusted) and is not controlled by Company A. The trust controlled by Company A plans to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of Company C for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Since Company C is not included within ''A,'' ''A'' must observe the requirements of the act before the trust makes the acquisition of Company C's shares.

[52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987, as amended at 66 FR 8694, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4995, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.40 Exempt formation of corporations or unincorporated entities.

The formation of an entity is exempt from the requirements of the Act if the entity will be not-for-profit within the meaning of sections 501(c)(1)–(4), (6)–(15), (17)–(20) or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

[70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.41 Corporations or unincorporated entities at time of formation.

Whenever any person(s) contributing to the formation of an entity are subject to the requirements of the Act by reason of § 801.40 or § 801.50 of this chapter, the new entity need not file the notification required by the Act and § 803.1 of this chapter.

Examples: 1. Corporations A and B, each having sales of in excess of $100 million (as adjusted), each propose to contribute in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) in cash in exchange for 50 percent of the voting securities of a new corporation, N. Under this section, the new corporation need not file notification, although both ''A'' and ''B'' must do so and observe the waiting period prior to receiving any voting securities of N.

2. In addition to the facts in Example 1 of this section, A and B have agreed that upon creation N will purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of corporation C for in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Because N's purchase of C is not a transaction in connection with N's formation, and because in any event C is not a contributor to the formation of N, ''A,'' ''B'' and ''C'' must file with respect to the proposed acquisition of C and must observe the waiting period.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987; 70 FR 4995, Jan. 31, 2005; 70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.

(a) Whenever one or more of the contributors in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation which otherwise would be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of

§ 801.40 are exempt from these requirements under section 7A(c)(8), any other contributor in the formation which is subject to the act and not exempt under section 7A(c)(8) need not file a Notification and Report Form, provided that no less than 30 days prior to the date of consummation any such contributor claiming this exemption has submitted an affidavit to the Federal Trade Commission and to the Assistant Attorney General stating its good faith intention to make the proposed acquisition and asserting the applicability of this exemption.

(b) Persons relieved of the requirement to file a Notification and Report Form pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section remain subject to all other provisions of the act and these rules.

[48 FR 34436, July 29, 1983]

§ 802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets.

(a) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless the foreign assets the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition generated sales in or into the U.S. exceeding $50 million (as adjusted) during the acquired person's most recent fiscal year.

(b) Where the foreign assets being acquired exceed the threshold in paragraph (a) of this section, the acquisition nevertheless shall be exempt where:

(1) Both acquiring and acquired persons are foreign;

(2) The aggregate sales of the acquiring and acquired persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million (as adjusted) in their respective most recent fiscal years;

(3) The aggregate total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(d)(2) of this chapter) are less than $110 million (as adjusted); and

(4) The transaction does not meet the criteria of Section 7A(a)(2)(A).

Example to § 802.50: 1. Assume that ''A'' and ''B'' are both U.S. persons. ''A'' proposes selling to ''B'' a manufacturing plant located abroad. Sales in or into the United States attributable to the plant totaled $13 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is exempt under this paragraph (a) of this section.

2. Sixty days after the transaction in example 1, ''A'' proposes to sell to ''B'' a second manufacturing plant located abroad; sales in or into the United States attributable to this plant, when combined with the sales into the United States of the first plant, totaled in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) in the most recent fiscal year. Since ''B'' would be acquiring the second plant within 180 days of the first plant, both plants would be considered assets of ''A'' held by ''B'' as a result of the second acquisition (*see* § 801.13(b)(2) of this chapter). Since the total sales in or into the United States exceed $50 million (as adjusted), the acquisition of the second plant would not be exempt under this paragraph (a) of this section.

3. Assume that ''A'' and ''B'' are foreign persons with aggregate sales in or into the United States of in excess of $110 million (as adjusted). If ''A'' acquires only foreign assets of ''B,'' and if those assets generated $50 million (as adjusted) or less in sales in or into the United States, the transaction is exempt.

4. Assume that ''A'' and ''B'' are foreign persons with aggregate sales in or into the United States and assets located in the United Sates of less than $110 million (as adjusted). If ''A'' acquires only foreign assets of ''B,'' and those assets generated in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) in sales in or into the United States during the most recent fiscal year, the transaction is exempt from reporting if the assets are valued at $200 million (as adjusted) or less, but is reportable if valued at greater than $200 million (as adjusted).

[67 FR 11903, Mar. 18, 2002, as amended at 70 FR 4995, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.51 Acquisitions of voting securities of a foreign issuer.

(a) *By U.S. persons.* (1) The acquisition of voting securities of a foreign issuer by a U.S. person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless the issuer (including all entities controlled by the issuer) either: holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(d)(2) of this chapter) having an aggregate total value of over $50 million (as adjusted); or made aggregate sales in or into the United States of over $50 million (as adjusted) in its most recent fiscal year.

(2) If interests in multiple foreign issuers are being acquired from the

same acquired person, the assets located in the United States and sales in or into the United States of all the issuers must be aggregated to determine whether either $50 million (as adjusted) limitation is exceeded.

(b) *By foreign persons.* (1) The acquisition of voting securities of a foreign issuer by a foreign person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless the acquisition will confer control of the issuer and the issuer (including all entities controlled by the issuer) either: holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(d)(2) of this chapter) having an aggregate total value of over $50 million (as adjusted); or made aggregate sales in or into the United States of over $50 million (as adjusted) in its most recent fiscal year.

(2) If controlling interests in multiple foreign issuers are being acquired from the same acquired person, the assets located in the United States and sales in or into the United States of all the issuers must be aggregated to determine whether either $50 million (as adjusted) limitation is exceeded.

(c) Where a foreign issuer whose securities are being acquired exceeds the threshold in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the acquisition nevertheless shall be exempt where:

(1) Both acquiring and acquired persons are foreign;

(2) The aggregate sales of the acquiring and acquired persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million (as adjusted) in their respective most recent fiscal years;

(3) The aggregate total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(d)(2) of this chapter) are less than $110 million (as adjusted); and

(4) The transaction does not meet the criteria of Section 7A(a)(2)(A).

Example to § 802.51 1. ''A,'' a U.S. person, is to acquire the voting securities of C, a foreign issuer. C has no assets in the United States, but made aggregate sales into the United States of in excess of 50 million (as adjusted) in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is not exempt under this section.

2. Assume that ''A'' and ''B'' are foreign persons with aggregate sales in or into the United States in excess of $110 million (as adjusted), and that ''A'' is acquiring 100% of the voting securities of ''B.'' Included within ''B'' is U.S. issuer C, whose total U.S. assets are valued in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). Since ''A'' will be acquiring control of an issuer, C, with total U.S. assets of more than $50 million (as adjusted), and the parties' aggregate sales in or into the U.S. in the relevant time period exceed $110 million (as adjusted), the acquisition is not exempt under this section.

3. ''A,'' a foreign person, intends to acquire 100 percent of the voting securities of two wholly owned subsidiaries of ''B'' for a total of in excess of $50 million (as adjusted). BSUB1 is a foreign issuer with less than $50 million (as adjusted) in sales into the U.S. in its most recent fiscal year and with assets of less than $50 million (as adjusted) located in the U.S. Less than $50 million (as adjusted) of the acquisition price has been allocated to BSUB1. BSUB2 is a U.S. issuer with more than $50 million (as adjusted) in U.S. sales and more than $50 million (as adjusted) in assets located in the U.S. Less than $50 million (as adjusted) of the acquisition price is allocated to BSUB2. Since BSUB1 does not exceed the $50 million (as adjusted) limitation for U.S. sales or assets in § 802.51(b), its voting securities are not held as a result of the acquisition (*see* § 801.15(b) of this chapter). Since the acquisition price for BSUB2 alone would not result in ''A'' holding in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of voting securities of the acquired person, the transaction is non-reportable in its entirety. Note that the U.S. sales and assets of BSUB1 are not aggregated with those of BSUB2 for purposes of determining whether the limitations in paragraph (b) of this section are exceeded. If BSUB2 were also a foreign issuer, such aggregation would be required under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and the transaction in its entirety would be reportable.

[67 FR 11904, Mar. 18, 2002; 67 FR 13716, Mar. 26, 2002, as amended at 70 FR 4996, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The ultimate parent entity of either the acquiring person or the acquired person is controlled by a foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof; and

(b) The acquisition is of assets located within that foreign state or of

voting securities of an issuer organized under the laws of that state.

Example: The government of foreign country X has decided to sell assets of its wholly owned corporation, B, all of which are located in foreign country X. The buyer is ''A,'' a U.S. person. Regardless of the aggregate sales in or into the United States attributable to the assets of B, the transaction is exempt under this section. (If such aggregate sales were $50 million (as adjusted) or less, the transaction would also be exempt under § 802.50).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 67 FR 11904, Mar. 18, 2002; 70 FR 4996, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.

An acquisition which requires the consent or approval of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under section 25 or section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, 12 U.S.C. 601, 615, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Board of Governors are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the acquisition. In lieu of such information and documentary material or any portion thereof, an index describing such material may be provided in the manner authorized by § 802.6(a).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34435, July 29, 1983]

§ 802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.

An acquisition of voting securities by a person acting as a securities underwriter, in the ordinary course of business, and in the process of underwriting, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

§ 802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.

(a) *Creditors*. An acquisition of collateral or receivables, or an acquisition in foreclosure, or upon default, or in connection with the establishment of a lease financing, or in connection with a bona fide debt work-out shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by a creditor in a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of the creditor's business.

(b) *Insurers*. An acquisition pursuant to a condition in a contract of insurance relating to fidelity, surety, or casualty obligations shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by an insurer in the ordinary course of business.

Examples: 1. A bank makes a loan and takes actual or constructive possession of collateral in any form. Since the bank is not the beneficial owner of the collateral, the bank's receipt of it is not an acquisition which is subject to the requirements of the act. However, if upon default the bank becomes the beneficial owner of the collateral, that acquisition is exempt under this section.

2. This section exempts only the acquisition by the creditor or insurer, and not the subsequent disposition of the assets or voting securities. If a creditor or insurer sells voting securities or assets that have come into its possession in a transaction which is exempt under this section, the requirements of the act may apply to that disposition.

§ 802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.

(a) *Institutional investor*. For purposes of this section, the term *institutional investor* means any entity of the following type:

(1) A bank within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 80b–2(a)(2);

(2) Savings bank;

(3) Savings and loan or building and loan company or association;

(4) Trust company;

(5) Insurance company;

(6) Investment company registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.);

(7) Finance company;

(8) Broker-dealer within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4) or (a)(5);

(9) Small Business Investment Company or Minority Enterprise Small Business Investment Company regulated by the U.S. Small Business Administration pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 662;

(10) A stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust qualified under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(11) Bank holding company within the meaning of 12 U.S.C. 1841;

(12) An entity which is controlled directly or indirectly by an institutional investor and the activities of which are in the ordinary course of business of the institutional investor;

(13) An entity which may supply incidental services to entities which it controls directly or indirectly but which performs no operating functions, and which is otherwise engaged only in holding controlling interests in institutional investors; or

(14) A nonprofit entity within the meaning of sections 501(c) (1) through (4), (6) through (15), (17) through (20), or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

(b) *Exemption.* An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, if:

(1) Made directly by an institutional investor;

(2) Made in the ordinary course of business;

(3) Made solely for the purpose of investment; and

(4) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold fifteen percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer.

(c) *Exception to exemption.* Notwithstanding paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) No acquisition of voting securities of an institutional investor of the same type as any entity included within the acquiring person shall be exempt under this section; and

(2) No acquisition by an institutional investor shall be exempt under this section if any entity included within the acquiring person which is not an institutional investor holds any voting securities of the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired.

Examples: 1. Assume that A and its subsidiary, B, are both institutional investors as defined in paragraph (a) of this section, that X is not, and that the conditions set forth in paragraphs (b)(2), (3) and (4) of this section are satisfied. Either A or B may acquire voting securities of X worth in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) as long as the aggregate amount held by person ''A'' as a result of the acquisition does not exceed 15 percent of X's outstanding voting securities. If the aggregate holdings would exceed 15 percent, ''A'' may acquire no more than $50 million (as adjusted) worth of voting securities without being subject to the requirements of the act.

2. In example 1, assume that B plans to make the acquisition, but that corporation B's parent, corporation A, is not an institutional investor and is engaged in manufacturing. Subparagraph (c)(2) provides that acquisitions by B can never be exempt under this section if A owns any amount of X's voting securities.

3. In example 1, the exemption does not apply if X is also an institutional investor of the same type as either A or B.

4. Assume that H is a holding company which controls a life insurance company, a casualty insurer and a finance company. The life insurance company controls a data processing company which performs services for the two insurers. Any acquisition by any of these entities could qualify for exemption under this section.

5. In example 4, if H also controls a manufacturing entity, H is not an institutional investor, and only the acquisitions made by the two insurance companies, the finance company and the data processing company can qualify for the exemption under this section.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8694, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4996, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 802.65 Exempt acquisition of non-corporate interests in financing transactions.

An acquisition of non-corporate interests that confers control of a new or existing unincorporated entity is exempt from the notification requirements of the Act if:

(a) The acquiring person is contributing only cash to the unincorporated entity;

(b) For the purpose of providing financing; and

(c) The terms of the financing agreement are such that the acquiring person will no longer control the entity after it realizes its preferred return.

[70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005]

§ 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an entity pursuant to and in accordance with:

(a) An order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice;

(b) An Agreement Containing Consent Order that has been accepted by the Commission for public comment,

pursuant to the Commission's Rules of Practice; or

(c) A proposal for a consent judgment that has been submitted to a Federal court by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice and that is subject to public comment.

[63 FR 34594, June 25, 1998]

§ 802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

Acquisitions resulting from a gift, intestate succession, testamentary disposition or transfer by a settlor to an irrevocable trust shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

§ 802.80 Transitional rule for transactions investigated by the agencies.

§§ 801.2 and 801.50 shall not apply to any transaction that has been the subject of investigation by either the Federal Trade Commission or the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice in which, prior to the effective date of that section, the reviewing agency obtained documentary material and information under compulsory process from all parties that would be required to submit a Notification and Report Form for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions under Section 801.50 but for this transitional rule.

[70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005]

PART 803—TRANSMITTAL RULES

Sec.

803.1 Notification and Report Form.
803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.
803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.
803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.
803.5 Affidavits required.
803.6 Certification.
803.7 Expiration of notification.
803.8 Foreign language documents.
803.9 Filing fee.
803.10 Running of time.
803.11 Termination of waiting period.
803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.
803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.
803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.
803.90 Separability.
APPENDIX TO PART 803—ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 18a(d).

SOURCE: 43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 803.1 Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be the Notification and Report Form set forth in the appendix to this part (803), as amended from time to time. All acquiring and acquired persons required to file notification by the act and these rules shall do so by completing and filing the Notification and Report Form, in accordance with the instructions thereon and these rules. The current version of the Form can be obtained at *http://www.ftc.gov* or *https://www.hsr.gov*.

(b) Any person filing notification may, in addition to the submissions required by this section, submit any other information or documentary material which such person believes will be helpful to the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General in assessing the impact of the acquisition upon competition.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 66 FR 8695, Feb. 1, 2001; 71 FR 35998, June 23, 2006]

§ 803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be filed by the preacquisition ultimate parent entity, or by any entity included within the person authorized by such preacquisition ultimate parent entity to file notification on its behalf. In the case of a natural person required by the act to file notification, such notification may be filed by his or her legal representative: *Provided however*, That notwithstanding §§ 801.1(c)(2) and 801.2, only one notification shall be filed by or on behalf of a natural person, spouse and minor children with respect to an acquisition as a result of which more than one such natural person will hold voting securities of the same issuer.

Example: Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively hold more than 50 percent

of the shares of family corporation F. Therefore, Jane Doe (or her husband or minor child) is the ''ultimate parent entity'' of a ''person'' composed to herself (or her husband or minor child) and F; see paragraphs (a)(3), (b) and (c)(2) of § 801.1. If corporation F is to acquire corporation X, under this paragraph only one notification is to be filed by Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section and paragraph (c) of this section:

(1) Items 5–8 of the Notification and Report Form must be completed—

(i) By acquiring persons, with respect to all entities included within the acquiring person;

(ii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of assets, only with respect to the assets to be acquired;

(iii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of voting securities, with respect to only the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired, and all entities controlled by such issuer; and

(iv) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of non-corporate interests, with respect to the unincorporated entity whose non-corporate interests are being acquired, and all entities controlled by such unincorporated entity; and

(v) By persons which are both acquiring and acquired persons, separately in the manner that would be required of acquiring and acquired persons under this paragraph, if different.

(2) For purposes of items 7 and 8 of the Notification and Report Form, the acquiring person shall regard the acquired person in the manner described in paragraphs (b)(1) (ii) and (iii) of this section.

Example: Person ''A'' is comprised of entities separately engaged in grocery retailing, auto rental, and coal mining. Person ''B'' is comprised of entities separately engaged in wholesale magazine distribution, auto rental and book publishing. ''A'' proposes to purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of ''B''s book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of item 5, under clause (b)(1)(i), ''A'' reports the activities of all its entities; under clause (b)(1)(iii), ''B'' reports only the operations of its book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of items 7 and 8, under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, ''A'' must regard ''B'' as consisting only of its book publishing subsidiary and must disregard the fact that ''A'' and ''B'' are both engaged in the auto rental business.

(c) In response to items 5, 7, and 8 of the Notification and Report Form—

(1) Information shall be supplied only with respect to operations conducted within the United States; and

(2) Information need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities to be acquired, the acquisition of which is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(d) The term *dollar revenues*, as used in the Notification and Report Form, means value of shipments for manufacturing operations, and sales, receipts, revenues, or other appropriate dollar value measure for operations other than manufacturing, f.o.b. the plant or establishment less returns, after discounts and allowances and excluding freight charges and excise taxes. Dollar revenues including delivery may be supplied if delivery is an integral part of the sales price. Dollar revenues include interplant transfers.

(e) A person filing notification may incorporate by reference:

(1) To a previous filing, only documentary materials required to be filed in response to items 4(a) and 4(b) of the Notification and Report Form, which were previously filed by the same person and which are the most recent versions available; except that when the same parties file for a higher threshold no more than 90 days after having made filings with respect to a lower threshold, each party may incorporate by reference in the subsequent filing any documents or information in its earlier filing provided that the documents and information are the most recent available;

(2) To an Internet address directly linking to the document, only documents required to be filed in response to item 4(a) and in response to item 4(b) of the Notification and Report Form. If an Internet address is inoperative or becomes inoperative during the waiting period, or the document that is linked to it is incomplete, or the link requires payment to access the document, upon notification by the Commission or Assistant Attorney General, the parties must make these documents available to the agencies by

either referencing an operative Internet address or by providing paper copies to the agencies as provided in § 803.10(c)(1) by 5 p.m. on the next regular business day. Failure to make the documents available, by the Internet or by providing paper copies, by 5 p.m. on the next regular business day, will result in notice of a deficient filing pursuant to § 803.10(c)(2).

(f) Filings made electronically, including documents or other attachments submitted as part of such filings, must comply with all format and size requirements set forth at *https://www.hsr.gov*. The use of any format or size not specified as acceptable, or any other failure to comply with the applicable format requirements, shall render the entire filing deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2).

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34438, July 29, 1983; 66 FR 8695, Feb. 1, 2001; 66 FR 23565, May 9, 2001; 70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005; 70 FR 73372, Dec. 12, 2005; 71 FR 35998, June 23, 2006]

§ 803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.

A complete response shall be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form and to any request for additional information pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever the person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response, that person shall provide, for each item for which less than a complete response has been supplied, a statement of reasons for noncompliance. The statement of reasons for noncompliance shall contain all information upon which a person relies in explanation of its noncompliance and shall include at least the following:

(a) Why the person is unable to supply a complete response;

(b) What information, and what specific documents or categories of documents, would have been required for a complete response;

(c) Who, if anyone, has the required information, and specific documents or categories of documents; and a description of all efforts made to obtain such information and documents, including the names of persons who searched for required information and documents, and where the search was conducted. If no such efforts were made, provide an explanation of the reasons why, and a description of all efforts necessary to obtain required information and documents;

(d) Where noncompliance is based on a claim of privilege, a statement of the claim of privilege and all facts relied on in support thereof, including the identity of each document, its author, addressee, date, subject matter, all recipients of the original and of any copies, its present location, and who has control of it.

[48 FR 34439, July 29, 1983]

§ 803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.

(a) In an acquisition to which § 801.30 does not apply, and in which no assets (other than investment assets) located in the United States and no voting securities of a United States issuer will be acquired directly or indirectly, if a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification, then any other person which is a party to the acquisition may file notification on behalf of the foreign person. Such notification shall constitute the notification required of the foreign person by the act and these rules.

(b) Any person filing on behalf of the foreign person pursuant to this section must state in the affidavit required by § 803.5(b) that such foreign person has refused to file notification and must explain all efforts made by the person filing on behalf of the foreign person to obtain compliance with the act and these rules by such foreign person.

(c) Any notification filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to this section must contain all information and documentary material reasonably available to the person filing on behalf of the foreign person which such foreign person would be required to provide. Whenever information or documentary material is not reasonably available, the person filing on behalf of the foreign person shall so indicate on the Notification and Report Form, and need not supply the statement of reasons for noncompliance required by § 803.3.

(d) Any foreign person on whose behalf notification has been filed by another person pursuant to this section

shall be a ''person filing notification'' for purposes of the act and these rules. Nothing in this section shall exempt a foreign person from the requirements of the act or these rules with respect to a request for additional information or an extension of the waiting period pursuant to section 7A(e) and these rules.

§ 803.5 Affidavits required.

(a)(1) *Section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the notification required by the act from each acquiring person shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, or attached as part of the electronic submission, attesting that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired has received notice in writing by certified or registered mail, by wire or by hand delivery, at its principal executive offices, of:

(i) The identity of the acquiring person;

(ii) The fact that the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities of the issuer;

(iii) The specific classes of voting securities of the issuer sought to be acquired; and if known, the number of securities of each such class that would be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition or, if the number is not known, the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; and, if designated by the acquiring person, a higher threshold for additional voting securities it may hold in the year following the expiration of the waiting period;

(iv) The fact that the acquisition may be subject to the act, and that the acquiring person will file notification under the act with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General;

(v) The anticipated date of receipt of such notification under § 803.10(c); and

(vi) The fact that the person within which the issuer is included may be required to file notification under the act.

(2) The affidavit required by this paragraph must also state the good faith intention of the person filing notification to make the acquisition, and, in the case of a tender offer, that the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

Example: 1. This paragraph permits the tender offeror to file notification at any time after the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

In examples 2–5 assume that one percent of B's shares are valued at $15 million.

2. ''A'' holds 100,000 shares of the voting securities of Company B. ''A'' has a good faith intention to acquire an additional 900,000 shares of Company B's voting securities. ''A'' states in its notice to B, inter alia, that as a result of the acquisition it will hold 1,000,000 shares. If 1,000,000 shares of Company B represent 20 percent of Company B's outstanding voting securities, the statement will be deemed by the enforcement agencies a notification for the $100 million threshold (as adjusted).

3. Company A intends to acquire voting securities of Company B. ''A'' does not know exactly how many shares it will acquire, but it knows it will definitely acquire in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) worth and may acquire 50 percent of Company B's shares. ''A'''s notice to the acquired person would meet the requirements of Sec. 803.5(a)(1)(iii) if it states, inter alia, either: ''Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions, may acquire more of the voting securities of Company B and thus designates the 50 percent threshold,'' or ''Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions may acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of Company B.'' The Commission would deem either of these statements as intending to give notice for the 50 percent threshold.

4. ''A'' states, inter alia, that, ''depending on market conditions, it may acquire 100 percent of the shares of B.'' ''A'''s notice does not comply with § 803.5 because it does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. ''A'' 's filing will be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10(c)(2).

5. ''A'' states, inter alia, that it has commenced a tender offer for ''up to 55 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B.'' ''A'' 's notice does not comply with § 803.5 because use of the term ''up to'' does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. The filing will therefore be considered deficient within the meaning of § 803.10 (c)(2).

(3) The affidavit required by this paragraph must have attached to it a copy of the written notice received by

the acquired person pursuant to paragraph (a)(1) of this section. For electronic filing, an electronic copy of the written notice must be attached as part of the electronic submission.

(b) *Non-section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does not apply, the notification required by the act shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, or attached as part of the electronic submission, attesting that a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed, and further attesting to the good faith intention of the person filing notification to complete the transaction.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34439, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8695, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 4996, Jan. 31, 2005; 71 FR 35998, June 23, 2006]

§ 803.6 Certification.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be certified:

(1) In the case of a partnership, by any general partner thereof;

(2) In the case of a corporation, by any officer or director thereof;

(3) In the case of a person lacking officers, directors, or partners, by any individual exercising similar functions;

(4) In the case of a natural person, by such natural person or his or her legal representative;

(5) In the case of the estate of a deceased natural person, by any duly authorized legal representative of such estate.

(b) Additional information or documentary material submitted in response to a request pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall be accompanied by a certification in the format appearing at the end of the Notification and Report Form, completed in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section by the person or individual to whom it was directed.

(c) In all cases, the certifying individual must possess actual authority to make the certification on behalf of the person filing notification.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34429, July 29, 1983]

§ 803.7 Expiration of notification.

(a) *One year after waiting period expired.* Notification with respect to an acquisition shall expire 1 year following the expiration of the waiting period. If the acquiring person's holdings do not, within such time period, meet or exceed the notification threshold with respect to which the notification was filed, the requirements of the act must thereafter be observed with respect to any notification threshold not met or exceeded.

Example: ''A'' files notification that in excess of $100 million (as adjusted) of the voting securities of corporation B are to be acquired. One year after the expiration of the waiting period, ''A'' has acquired less than $100 million (as adjusted) of B's voting securities. Although § 802.21 will permit ''A'' to purchase any amount of B's voting securities short of $100 million (as adjusted) within 5 years from the expiration of the waiting period, A's holdings may not meet or exceed the $100 million (as adjusted) notification threshold without ''A'' and ''B'' again filing notification and observing a waiting period.

(b) *Upon failure to comply with request for additional information.* An acquiring person's notification and, in the case of an acquisition to which § 801.30 does not apply, an acquired person's notification, shall expire eighteen months following the date of receipt of such person's notification if a request for additional information or documentary material remains outstanding to such person (or entities included therein, officers, directors, partners, agents or employees thereof), without a certification as required by § 803.6(b), on such date. If either person's notification expires pursuant to this paragraph, both parties must file a new notification in order to carry out the transaction.

Example: A files notification on January 15 of Year 1 to acquire voting securities of B. On February 15 of Year 1, prior to expiration of the waiting period, requests for additional information or documentary material are issued to A and B. Before A supplies the information and documentary material requested, business conditions change, and A and B decide not to go forward with the transaction. A does not withdraw its filing and takes the position that it will comply with the request for additional information and documentary material if and when the proposed transaction is ever revived. A's notification expires July 15 of Year 2, eighteen months following the date of receipt of its notification. If A and B wish to revive their

transaction, both parties must file a new notification and observe the waiting period in order to carry out the transaction.

[70 FR 73372, Dec. 12, 2005]

§ 803.8 Foreign language documents.

(a) Whenever at the time of filing a Notification and Report Form there is an English language outline, summary, extract or verbatim translation of any information or of all or portions of any documentary materials in a foreign language required to be submitted by the act or these rules, all such English language versions shall be filed along with the foreign language information or materials.

(b) Documentary materials or information in a foreign language required to be submitted in responses to a request for additional information or documentary material shall be submitted with verbatim English language translations, or all existing English language versions, or both, as specified in such request.

[48 FR 34440, July 29, 1983]

§ 803.9 Filing fee.

(a) Each acquiring person shall pay the filing fee required by the act to the Federal Trade Commission, except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. No additional fee is to be submitted to the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice.

Examples: 1. ''A'' wishes to acquire voting securities issued by B, where the greater of the acquisition price and the market price is in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) but less than $100 million (as adjusted) pursuant to § 801.10. When ''A'' files notification for the transaction, it must indicate the $50 million (as adjusted) threshold and pay a filing fee of $45,000 because the aggregate total amount of the acquisition is less than $100 million (as adjusted), but greater than $50 million (as adjusted).

2. ''A'' acquires less than $50 million (as adjusted) of assets from ''B.'' The parties meet the size of person criteria of Section 7A(a)(2)(B), but the transaction is not reportable because it does not exceed the $50 million (as adjusted) size of transaction threshold of that provision. Two months later ''A'' acquires additional assets from ''B'' valued at between $50 million (as adjusted) and $100 million (as adjusted). Pursuant to the aggregation requirements of § 801.13(b)(2)(ii), the aggregate total amount of ''B's'' assets that ''A'' will hold as a result of the second acquisition is in excess of $100 million (as adjusted). Accordingly, when ''A'' files notification for the second transaction, ''A'' must indicate the $100 million (as adjusted) threshold and pay a filing fee of $125,000 because the aggregate total amount of the acquisition is less than $500 million (as adjusted), but not less than $100 million (as adjusted).

3. ''A'' acquires in excess of $50 million (as adjusted) of voting securities issued by B after submitting its notification and $45,000 filing fee and indicates the $50 million (as adjusted) threshold. Two years later, ''A'' files to acquire additional voting securities issued by B valued at $50 million (as adjusted) because it will exceed the next higher reporting threshold (*see* §§ 801.1(h)). Assuming the second transaction is reportable and the value of its initial holdings is unchanged (*see* §§ 801.13(a)(2) and 801.10(c)), the provisions of § 801.13(a)(1) require that ''A'' report that the value of the second transaction is in excess of $100 million (as adjusted) because ''A'' must aggregate previously acquired securities in calculating the value of B's voting securities that it will hold as a result of the second acquisition. ''A'' should pay a filing fee of $125,000.

4. ''A'' signs a contract with a stated purchase price in excess of $100 million (as adjusted), subject to adjustments, to acquire all of the assets of ''B.'' If the amount of adjustments can be reasonably estimated, the acquisition price—as adjusted to reflect that estimate—is determined. If the amount of adjustments cannot be reasonably estimated, the acquisition price is undetermined. In either case the board or its delegee must also determine in good faith the fair market value. (§ 801.10(b) states that the value of an asset acquisition is to be the fair market value or the acquisition price, if determined and greater than fair market value.) ''A'' files notification and submits a $45,000 filing fee. ''A'''s decision to pay that fee may be justified on either of two bases, and ''A'' should submit an attachment to the Notification and Report Form explaining the valuation. First, ''A'' may have concluded that the acquisition price can be reasonably estimated to be less than $100 million (as adjusted), because of anticipated adjustments—*e.g.*, based on due diligence by ''A's'' accounting firm indicating that one third of the inventory is not saleable. If fair market value is also determined in good faith to be less than $100 million (as adjusted), the $45,000 fee is appropriate. Alternatively, ''A'' may conclude that because the adjustments cannot reasonably be estimated, acquisition price is undetermined. If so, ''A'' would base the valuation on the good faith determination of fair market value. The acquiring party's execution of the Certification also attests to the good faith valuation of the value of the transaction.

5. ''A'' contracts to acquire all of the assets of ''B'' for in excess of $500 million (as adjusted). The assets include hotels, office buildings, and rental retail property, all of which are exempted by § 802.2. Section 802.2 directs that these assets are exempt from the requirements of the act and that reporting requirements for the transaction should be determined by analyzing the remainder of the acquisition as if it were a separate transaction. Furthermore, § 801.15(a)(2) states that those exempt assets are never held as a result of the acquisition. Accordingly, the aggregate amount of the transaction is in excess of $100 million (as adjusted), but less than $500 million (as adjusted). ''A'' will be liable for a filing fee of $125,000, rather than $280,000, because the value of the transaction is not less than $100 million (as adjusted) but less than $500 million (as adjusted). Note, however, that ''A'' must include an attachment in its Notification and Report Form setting out both the in excess of $500 million (as adjusted) total purchase price and the basis for its determination that the aggregate total amount of the acquisition under the rules is between $100 million (as adjusted) and $500 million (as adjusted) rather than in excess of $500 million (as adjusted), in accordance with the Instructions to the Form.

6. ''A'' acquires coal reserves from ''B'' valued at $150 million. No notification or filing fee is required because the acquisition is exempted by § 802.3(b). Three months later, A proposes to acquire additional coal reserves from ''B'' valued at $500 million (as adjusted). This transaction is subject to the notification requirements of the act because the value of the acquisition exceeds the $200 million limitation on the exemption in § 802.3(b). As a result of § 801.13(b)(2)(ii), the prior $150 million acquisition must be added because the additional $500 million (as adjusted) of coal reserves were acquired from the same person within 180 days of the initial acquisition. Because aggregating the two acquisitions exceeds the $200 million exemption limitation, § 801.15(b) directs that ''A'' will also hold the previously exempt $150 million acquisition; thus, the aggregate amount held as a result of the $500 million (as adjusted) acquisition exceeds $500 million (as adjusted). Accordingly, ''A'' must file notification to acquire the coal reserves valued in excess of $500 million (as adjusted) and pay a filing fee of $280,000.

7. ''A'' intends to acquire 20 percent of the voting securities of B, a non-publicly traded issuer. The agreed upon acquisition price is $99 million subject to post-closing adjustments of up to plus or minus $2 million. ''A'' estimates that the adjustments will be minus $1 million. In this example, since ''A'' is able in good faith to reasonably estimate the adjustments to the agreed-on price, the acquisition price is deemed to be determined and the appropriate filing fee threshold is $50 million. Even if the post-closing adjustments cause the final price actually paid to exceed $100 million, ''A'' would be deemed to hold $98 million in B voting securities as a result of this acquisition. Note, however, since the potential acquisition price subject to adjustments could have exceeded the $100 million threshold (*e.g.*, ''straddles two filing fee thresholds''), an explanation of why the lower threshold was indicated should be attached. Also note that any additional acquisition by ''A'' of B voting stock (if the value of the stock currently held by ''A'' is $100 million or more) will cause ''A'' to cross the $100 million threshold and another filing and the appropriate fee will be required.

8. ''A'' intends to make a cash tender offer for a minimum of 50 percent plus one share of the voting securities of B, a non-publicly traded issuer, but will accept up to 100 percent of the shares if they are tendered. There are 12 million shares of B voting stock outstanding and the tender offer price is $10 per share. In this instance, since there is no cap on the number of shares that can be tendered, the value of the transaction will be the value of 100 percent of B's voting securities, and ''A'' must pay the $125,000 fee for the $100 million filing fee threshold. Note that if the tender offer had been for a maximum of 50 percent plus one share the value of the transaction would be $60 million, and the appropriate fee would be $45,000, based on the $50 million filing fee threshold. This would be true even if the tender offer were to be followed by a merger which would be exempt under Section 7A(c)(3),

(b) For a transaction described by § 801.2(d)(2)(iii), the parties shall pay only one filing fee. In accordance with § 801.2(d)(2)(iii), both parties to a consolidation are acquiring and acquired persons and must submit a Notification and Report Form where the transaction meets the reporting requirements of that act; however, only one filing fee is required in connection with such a transaction, and is payable by either party to the transaction. The filing fee is based on the greater of the two sizes of transaction in the consolidation.

(c) For a reportable transaction in which the acquiring entity has two ultimate parent entities, both ultimate parent entities are acquiring persons; however, if the responses for both ultimate parent entities would be the same for item 5 of the Notification and Report Form, only one filing fee is required in connection with the transaction.

(d) *Manner of payment.* Fees may be paid by United States postal money order, bank money order, bank cashier's check, certified check or by electronic wire transfer (EWT). The fee must be paid in U.S. currency.

(1) Fees paid by money order or check shall be made payable to the ''Federal Trade Commission,'' omitting the name or title of any official of the Commission, and shall be submitted to the Premerger Notification Office of the Federal Trade Commission along with the Notification and Report Form.

(2) Fees paid by EWT shall be deposited to the Treasury's account at the New York Federal Reserve Bank. Specific instructions for making EWT payments are contained in the Instructions to the Notification and Report Form.

(e) *Refunds.* Except as provided in this paragraph, no filing fee received by the Commission will be returned to the payer and no part of the filing fee shall be refunded. The filing fee shall be refunded only if the Commission's staff determines, based on the information and representations contained in the filing person's notification, that premerger notification was not required by the act. Once the Commission's staff has determined that the notification was required, the filing fee shall not be refunded even if it appears at the time of consummation that the transaction does not meet the reporting requirements established in the act.

[66 FR 8695, Feb. 1, 2001, as amended at 68 FR 2431, Jan. 17, 2003; 70 FR 4997, Jan. 31, 2005]

§ 803.10 Running of time.

(a) *Beginning of waiting period.* The waiting period required by the act shall begin on the date of receipt of the notification required by the act, in the manner provided by these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) from:

(1) In the case of acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the acquiring person;

(2) In the case of the formation of a corporation covered by Sec. 801.40 or an unincorporated entity covered by Sec. 801.50, all persons contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation that are required by the act and these rules to file notification;

(3) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

(b) *Expiration of waiting period.* (1) Subject to paragraph (b)(3) of this section, for purposes of Section 7A(b)(1)(B), the waiting period shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time on the 30th (or in the case of a cash tender offer or of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), the 15th) calendar day (or if § 802.23 applies, such other day as that section may provide) following the beginning of the waiting period as determined under paragraph (a) of this section, unless extended pursuant to Section 7A(e) and § 803.20, or Section 7A(g)(2), or unless terminated pursuant to Section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11.

(2) Unless further extended pursuant to Section 7A(g)(2), or terminated pursuant to Section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11, any waiting period which has been extended pursuant to Section 7A(e)(2) and § 803.20 shall, subject to paragraph (b)(3) of this section, expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time—

(i) On the 30th (or, in the case of a cash tender offer or of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), the 10th) day following the date of receipt of all additional information or documentary material requested from all persons to whom such requests have been directed (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3), by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, whichever requested additional information or documentary material, at the office designated in paragraph (c) of this section, or

(ii) As provided in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, whichever is later.

(3) If any waiting period would expire on a Saturday, Sunday, or legal public holiday (as defined in 5 U.S.C. 6103(a)) the waiting period shall be extended to 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time of the next regular business day.

(c)(1) *Date of receipt and means of delivery*. For purposes of this section, these procedures shall apply.

(i) For paper copy filings, the date of receipt shall be the date on which delivery is effected to the designated offices (Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580, and Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, 950 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Room #3335, Washington, DC 20530) during normal business hours. Delivery should be effected directly to the designated offices, either by hand or by certified or registered mail. In the event one or both of the delivery sites are unavailable, the FTC and DOJ may designate alternate sites for delivery of the filing. Notification of the alternate delivery sites will normally be made through a press release and, if possible, on the *http://www.ftc.gov* and *https://www.hsr.gov* Web sites.

(ii) For electronic filings, the date of receipt shall be the date on which delivery of the electronic filing package is effected to the server maintained by the FTC for the purpose of receiving electronic filings.

(iii) For electronic filings with paper copy submission of all attachments, the date of receipt shall be either the date on which delivery of the electronic filing package is effected to the Federal Trade Commission's server or the date on which delivery of the attachments is effected to the designated offices as provided in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section, whichever is later.

(iv) Delivery effected after 5 p.m. eastern time on a business day, or at any time on any day other than a business day, shall be deemed effected on the next following business day. If delivery of all required filings to all offices required to receive such filings is not effected on the same date, the date of receipt shall be the latest of the dates on which delivery is effected.

Example: In an acquisition other than a tender offer, assume that requests for additional information are issued to both the acquiring and acquired persons on the 26th day of the waiting period. One person submits the additional information on the 35th day, while the other responds on the 44th day. Under this section, the waiting period expires thirty days following the last receipt of additional information, that is, it expires on the 74th day (unless that day is a Saturday, Sunday or legal public holiday).

(2) *Deficient filings*. If notification or a response to a request for additional information or documentary material received by the Commission or Assistant Attorney General does not comply with these rules, the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General shall promptly notify the person filing such notification or response of the deficiencies in such filing, and the date of receipt shall be the date on which a filing which complies with these rules is received.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7083, Mar. 6, 1987; 66 FR 8696, Feb. 1, 2001; 70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005; 71 FR 35998, June 23, 2006]

§ 803.11 Termination of waiting period.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, no waiting period shall be terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) unless—

(1) All notifications required to be filed with respect to the acquisition by the act and these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) have been received,

(2) It has been determined that no additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 will be requested, or, if such additional information or documentary material has been requested, it (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) has been received, and

(3) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General have concluded that neither intends to take any further action within the waiting period.

(b) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall constitute a denial of all pending requests for termination of the waiting period.

(c) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may in their discretion terminate a

waiting period upon the written request of any person filing notification or, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section, sua sponte. A request for termination of the waiting period shall be sent to the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Termination shall be effective upon notice to any requesting person by telephone, and such notice shall be given as soon as possible. Such notice shall also be confirmed in writing to each person which has filed notification, and notice thereof shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER in accordance with section 7A(b)(2). The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General also may use other means to make the termination public, prior to publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER in a manner that will make the information equally accessible to all members of the public.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 54 FR 21427, May 18, 1989]

§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.

(a)(1) *Persons and individuals subject to request.* Pursuant to section 7A(e)(1), the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the acquisition may be required from one or more persons required to file notification, and, with respect to each such person, from one or more entities included therein, or from one or more officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees thereof, if so required by the same request.

Example: A request for additional information may require a corporation and, in addition, a named officer or employee to provide certain information or documents, if both the corporation and the officer or employee are named in the same request. See subparagraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) All the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to a request under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall be supplied to the Commission or to the Assistant Attorney General, whichever made such request, at such location as may be designated in the request, or, if no such location is designated, at the office designated in § 803.10(c). If such request is not fully complied with, a statement of reasons for noncompliance pursuant to § 803.3 shall be provided for each item or portion of such request which is not fully complied with.

(b)(1) *Who may require submission.* A request for additional information or documentary material with respect to an acquisition may be issued by the Federal Trade Commission or its designee, or by the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee, but not by both to the same person, any entities included therein, or any officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees of that person.

(2) *When request effective.* A request for additional information or documentary material shall be effective—

(i) In the case of a written request, upon receipt of the request by the ultimate parent entity of the person to which the request is directed (or, if another entity included within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then by such entity), within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer or of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides); or

(ii) In the case of a written request, upon notice of the issuance of such request to the person to which it is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer or of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides), provided that written confirmation of the request is mailed to the person to which the request is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer or of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides). Notice to the person to which the request is directed may be given by telephone or in person. The person filing notification shall keep a designated individual reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period at the telephone number supplied in the Notification and Report Form. Notice of a request for additional information or documentary material need be given by telephone only to that individual or to the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(iii) of this

section. Upon the request of the individual receiving notice of the issuance of such a request, the full text of the request will be read. The written confirmation of the request shall be mailed to the ultimate parent entity of the person filing notification, or if another entity within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then to such entity.

(iii) When the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section is not located in the United States, the person filing notification shall designate an additional individual located within the United States to be reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through a telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. This individual shall be designated for the limited purpose of receiving notification of the issuance of requests for additional information or documentary material in accordance with the procedure described in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) *Requests to natural persons.* A request addressed to an individual, requiring that he or she submit additional information or documentary material, shall be transmitted to the person filing notification of which the individual is an ultimate parent entity, officer, director, partner, agent or employee, and shall be effective as to that individual when effective as to the person filing notification pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section. A written copy of the request shall also be delivered to the individual by hand, or by registered or certified mail at his or her home or business address.

Example: A designee of the Federal Trade Commission sends, by certified letter which is received within the 30-day waiting period, a written request for additional information to corporation W, the ultimate parent entity within a person which filed notification. The request is effective under clause (b)(2)(i). If the letter also addressed a request for documentary material to the secretary of corporation W, a named individual, under paragraph (b)(3), the request would likewise be effective as to the individual upon receipt of the letter by W. In the latter case, the Federal Trade Commission also would send a copy of the request to the Secretary of the corporation at his or her home or business address.

(c) *Waiting period extended.* (1) During the time period when a request for additional information or documentary material remains outstanding to any person other than either:

(i) In the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired by the tender offeror (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof), or

(ii) In the case of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), the acquired person, the waiting period shall remain in effect, even though the waiting period would have expired (see § 803.10(b)) if no such request had been made.

(2) A request for additional information or documentary material to any person other than either:

(i) In the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are being acquired pursuant to the tender offer (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof), or

(ii) In the case of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), the acquired person, shall in every instance extend the waiting period for a period of 30 (or, in the case of a cash tender offer or of an acquisition covered by 11 U.S.C. 363(b), 10) calendar days from the date of receipt (as determined under § 803.10) of the additional information or documentary material requested.

Example: Acquiring person ''A'' makes a non-cash tender offer for voting securities of corporation ''X'', and files notification. Under § 801.30, the waiting period begins upon filing by ''A,'' and ''X'' must file within 15 days thereafter (10 days if it were a cash tender offer). Assume that before the end of the waiting period, the Assistant Attorney General issues a request for additional information to ''A'' and ''X.'' Since the transaction is a non-cash tender offer, the waiting period is extended for 30 days (10 days if it were a cash tender offer) beyond the date on which ''A'' responds. Note that under § 803.21, even though the waiting period is not affected by the second request to ''X'' or by ''X'' supplying the requested information, ''X'' is obliged to respond to the request within a reasonable time. Nevertheless, the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General could, notwithstanding the pendency of the request for additional information, terminate the waiting period sua sponte pursuant to § 803.11(c).

(d)(1) *Identification of requests.* Every request for additional information or documentary material shall be clearly

identified as such, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, and shall clearly identify the person, entity or entities, or individual(s) to which it is addressed.

(2) *Request for clarification.* No request for clarification or amplification of a response to any item on the Notification and Report Form, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, shall be considered a request for additional information or documentary material within the meaning of section 7A(e) and this section.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34441, July 29, 1983; 66 FR 8697, Feb. 1, 2001; 68 FR 2431, Jan. 17, 2003]

§ 803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.

All additional information or documentary material requested pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 (or, if such request is not fully complied with, the information or documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) shall be supplied within a reasonable time.

§ 803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.

(a) The Commission staff may consider requests for formal or informal interpretations as to the obligations under the act and these rules of any party to an acquisition. A request for a formal interpretation shall be made in writing to the offices designated in § 803.10(c), and shall state: (1) all facts which the applicant believes to be material, (2) the reasons why the requirements of the act are or may be applicable and (3) the question(s) that the applicant wishes resolved. The Commission staff may, in its discretion, render a formal or informal response to any request, however made, or may decline to render such advice.

(b) In the sole discretion of the staff, any request for interpretation may be referred to the Commission.

(c) Formal interpretations by the Commission staff or by the Commission shall be rendered with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee.

(d) Any formal interpretation shall be without prejudice to the right of either the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General to rescind any such interpretation rendered pursuant to this section. In the event of such rescission, the party which requested the interpretation shall be so notified in writing.

(e) The Commission shall publish a summary of formal interpretations by the Commission, and any rescissions thereof, in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 803.90 Separability.

If any provision of the rules in this subchapter (H) (including the Notification and Report Form) or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstances is held invalid, neither the other provisions of the rules nor the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall be affected thereby.

APPENDIX TO PART 803

ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions

INSTRUCTIONS

GENERAL

The Notification and Report Form ("the Form") is required to be submitted pursuant to § 803.1(a) of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"). An electronic version of the Form is available at https://www.hsr.gov and may be used for the direct electronic submission of filings or used to generate a print version of the Form for paper copy submission.

These instructions specify the information which must be provided in response to the Items on the Form. The completed Form, together with all documentary attachments, are to be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice.

Persons providing responses on attachment pages rather than on the Form must submit a complete set of attachment pages with each copy of the Form.

The term "documentary attachments" refers to materials supplied in responses to Item 3(d), Item 4 and to submissions pursuant to §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11 of the rules.

Information-The central office for information and assistance concerning the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803, and the Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100, e-mail HSRHelp@hsr.gov. Program information and the electronic version of the Form can be found at https://www.hsr.gov.

Definitions-The definitions and other provisions governing this Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803. The governing statute, the rules, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the rules are set forth at 43 FR 33450 (July 31, 1978), 44 FR 66781 (November 22, 1979) 48 FR 34427 (July 29, 1983), 61 FR 13688 (March 28, 1996), 66 FR 8693 (February 1, 2001), 70 FR 4994 (January 31, 2005), 70 FR 11513 (March 8, 2005), 70 FR 73369 (December 12, 2005), 70 FR 77312 (December 30, 2005), 71 FR 2943 (January 18, 2006), and Pub. L. No. 106-533, 114 Stat. 2762.

Affidavit-Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to the Form. Affidavits are not required if the person filing notification is an acquired person in a transaction covered by § 801.30. (See § 803.5(a)).

For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does not apply, the affidavit must attest that a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed, and further attest to the good faith intention of the person filing notification to complete the transaction.

For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does apply, the affidavit must also attest that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired has received notice; the identity of the acquiring person and the fact that the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities of the issuer; the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; the fact that the acquisition may be subject to the act, and that the acquiring person will file notification under the act; the anticipated date of receipt of such notification; and the fact that the person within which the issuer is included may be required to file notification under the act.

In the case of a tender offer the affidavit must also attest that the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

The language found in 28 U.S.C. § 1746 relating to unsworn declarations under penalty of perjury may be used instead of notarization of the affidavit.

Responses-*Each answer* should identify the Item to which it is addressed. Use the reverse side of the corresponding answer sheet or attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each Item. Each additional sheet should identify at the top of the page the Item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should also be identified.

For electronic filings, all Items are automatically identified within the Form. Electronic attachments and endnotes may be appended to the Form for any Item prior to submission.

Enter the name of the person filing notification appearing in Item 1(a) on page 1 of the Form and the date on which the Form is completed at the top of each page of the Form, at the top of any sheets attached to complete the response to any Item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment. For electronic filings, Items 1(a) and 1(b) must be completed before proceeding to pages 2-15 of the Form. Entering the date on page 2 will automatically fill out the date on all other pages of the Form.

If unable to answer any Item fully, give such information as is available and provide a statement of reasons for non-compliance as required by § 803.3. If exact answers to any Item cannot be given, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. All financial information should be expressed in millions of dollars rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a million dollars. Estimated data should be followed by the notation, "est." For electronic filings, add an endnote with the notation, "est." to any Item where data is estimated.

Year-All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available.

Privacy Act Statement–Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorizes the collection of this information. Our authority to collect Social Security numbers is 31 U.S.C. 7701. The primary use of information submitted on this Form is to determine whether the reported merger or acquisition may violate the antitrust laws. Taxpayer information is collected, used, and may be shared with other agencies and contractors for payment processing, debt collection and reporting purposes. Furnishing the information on the Form is voluntary. Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $11,000 per day. We also may be unable to process the Form unless you provide all of the requested information.

North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) Data-The Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons must submit certain data at the 6-digit NAICS national industry code level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufacturing operations* (NAICS Sectors 31-33), data must also be submitted at the *7-digit NAICS product class and 10-digit NAICS product code levels.* The term "dollar revenues" is defined in § 803.2(d).

References-In reporting information by 6-digit NAICS industry code refer to the *North American Industry Classification System - United States, 2002 (2002 NAICS Manual*) published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget. In reporting information by 7-digit NAICS product class and 10-digit NAICS product code refer to the *2002 Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products* (EC02M31R-NL) published by the Bureau of the Census. Information regarding NAICS also is available at www.census.gov.

Thresholds-Filing fee and notification thresholds are adjusted annually pursuant to Section 7A(a)(2) of the Clayton Act based on the change in gross national product, in accordance with Section 8(a)(5). The current threshold values can be found at www.ftc.gov.

Items 5, 7, 8-Supply information only with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia. (See §§ 801.1(k); 803.2(c)(1).)

Information need not be supplied regarding assets or voting securities currently being acquired, when the acquisition is exempt under the statute or rules. (See § 803.2(c)(2).)

The acquired person should limit its response in the case of an acquisition of assets, to the assets being sold, and in the case of an acquisition of voting securities, to the issuer(s) whose voting securities are being acquired and all entities controlled by such issuer. Separate responses may be required where a person is both acquiring and acquired. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)

Filing- Filers have three options: (1) Complete and return two copies (with one notarized original affidavit and certification and one set of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to the Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580. Three copies (with one set of documentary attachments) should be sent to: Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, 950 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Room #3335, Washington, D.C. 20530. (For FEDEX airbills to the Department of Justice, do not use the 20530 zip code; use zip code 20004); (2) Complete the electronic version of the Form and submit the completed Form with all electronic attachments as directed at https://www.hsr.gov; or (3) Complete the electronic version of the Form (with the electronic affidavit form) and submit it electronically while providing the documentary attachments in paper copy to the FTC and DOJ as in Option 1 above. Note that for option three, the attachments must be listed on the attachments page of the Form and classified as "paper to follow". If one or both delivery sites are unavailable, the agencies may announce, through the media and, if possible, www.ftc.gov and www.hsr.gov, alternate sites for delivery.

ITEM BY ITEM

Affidavit- Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Form. If filing electronically, submit the electronic version of the affidavit as attachment 1. Acquiring persons in transactions covered by § 801.30 are required to also submit a copy of the notice served on the acquired person pursuant to § 803.5(a)(1). (See § 803.5(a)(3).)

Fee Information-The fee for filing the Notification and Report Form is based on the aggregate total amount of assets and voting securities to be held as a result of the acquisition:

Value of assets or voting securities to be held	Fee Amount
greater than $50 million but less than $100 million (as adjusted)	$45,000
$100 million or greater but less than $500 million (as adjusted)	$125,000
$500 million or greater (as adjusted)	$280,000

Amount Paid-Indicate the amount of the filing fee paid. This amount should be net of any banking or financial institution charges. Where an explanatory attachment is required, include in your explanation any adjustments to the acquisition price that serve to lower the fee from that which would otherwise be due. If there is no acquisition price or if the acquisition price may fall within a range that straddles two filing fee thresholds, state the transaction value on which the fee is based and explain the valuation method used. Include in your explanation a description of any exempt assets, the value assigned to each, and the valuation method used.

A Valuation Worksheet available from the Premerger Notification Office will be helpful in determining the value of a transaction for filing and fee purposes. This Worksheet need not be submitted with the Notification and Report Form, but it or something similar should be utilized and retained by the acquiring person in the event Commission staff has questions about the valuation of the transaction.

Payer Identification- Provide the 9-digit Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN) of the acquiring person and, if different from the filing person, the TIN of the payer(s) of the filing fee. A payer or filing person who is a natural person having no TIN must provide the name and social security number (SSN) of the payer. If the payer or filing person is a foreign person, only the name of the payer and the name of the filing person need be supplied if different.

Method of Payment-Check the box indicating the method of fee payment. If paying by electronic wire transfer (EWT), provide the name of the financial institution from which the EWT is being sent and the confirmation number.

To insure filing fees paid by EWT are attributed to the appropriate payer filing notification, the payer must provide the following information to the financial institution initiating the EWT:

The Department of Treasury's ABA Number: 021030004; and
The Federal Trade Commission's ALC Number: 29000001.

If the name used to transmit the EWT differs from the filer's name, provide the alternative name. If the confirmation number is unavailable at the time notification is filed, provide this information by letter within one business day of filing.

If paying by certified check or money order send the payment to the Premerger Notification Office at the address above.

Corrective Filing-Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the notification is a corrective filing being made for an acquisition that has already taken place in violation of the statute. Attach a detailed, written explanation signed by a company official explaining (1) how the violation occurred, (2) when and how the violation was discovered and (3) what steps will be taken to ensure compliance in the future.

Transactions Subject to Foreign Antitrust Notification-If to the knowledge or belief of the filing person at the time of filing this notification, a foreign antitrust or competition authority has been or will be notified of the proposed transaction, list the name of each such authority and the date or anticipated date of each such notification. Response to this item is voluntary.

Cash Tender Offer-Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the acquisition is a cash tender offer.

Bankruptcy-Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the acquired person's filing is being made by a trustee in bankruptcy or a debtor-in-possession for a transaction that is subject to section 363(b) of the Bankruptcy Code (11USC § 363).

Early Termination-Put an X in the yes box to request early termination of the waiting period. Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act and on the FTC web site www.ftc.gov.

ITEM 1

Note: When using the electronic version of the Form, Items 1(a) and 1(b) must be completed before proceeding to pages 2-15 of the Form.

Item 1(a)-Give the name and headquarters address of the person filing notification. The name of the person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within that person.

Item 1(b)-Indicate whether the person filing notification is an acquiring person, an acquired person, or both an acquiring and acquired person. (See § 801.2.)

Item 1(c)-Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the person in Item 1(a) is a corporation, unincorporated entity or other (specify).

Item 1(d)-Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether data furnished is by calendar year or fiscal year. If fiscal year, specify period.

Item 1(e)-Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if this Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), or if this Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person. Then provide the name and mailing address of the entity filing notification on behalf of the reporting person named in Item 1(a) of the Form.

Item 1(f)-If an entity within the person filing notification other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) is the entity which is making the acquisition, or if the assets, voting securities or non-corporate interests of an entity other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) are being acquired, provide the name and mailing address of that entity and the percentage of its voting securities or non-corporate interest held by the person named in Item 1(a) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected (see § 801.1(b)).

Item 1(g)-Print or type the name and title, firm name, address, telephone number, fax number and e-mail address of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).)

Item 1(h)-Foreign filing persons print or type the name and title, firm name, address, telephone number, fax number and e-mail address of an individual located in the United States designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii).)

ITEM 2

Item 2(a)-Give the names of all ultimate parent entities of acquiring and acquired person which are parties to the acquisition whether or not they are required to file notification.

Item 2(b)-Put an X in all the boxes that apply to this acquisition.

Item 2(c)-*Acquiring persons* put an X in the box to indicate the highest threshold for which notification is being filed (see § 801.1(h)): $50 million (as adjusted), $100 million (as adjusted), $500 million (as adjusted), 25% (if value of voting securities to be held is greater than $1 billion, as adjusted), or 50%. The notification threshold selected should be based on voting securities only that will be held as a result of the acquisition.

Note that the 50% notification threshold is the highest threshold and should be used for any acquisition of 50% or more of the voting securities of an issuer, regardless of the value of the voting securities (e.g. an acquisition of 100% of the voting securities of an issuer, valued in excess of $500 million (as adjusted) would cross the 50% notification threshold, not the $500 million (as adjusted) threshold.

Item 2(d)-*Assets and voting securities held as a result of the acquisition* (to be completed by both acquiring and acquired persons). State:

Item 2(d)(i)-the value of voting securities;

Item 2(d)(ii)-the percentage of voting securities;

Item 2(d)(iii)-the value of assets;

Item 2(d)(iv)-the value of non-corporate interests;

Item 2(d)(v)-the aggregate total amount of voting securities, assets and non-corporate interests of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition (see §§ 801.12, 801.13, and 801.14).

Item 2(e)-Acquiring persons must provide the name(s) of the person(s) who performed any fair market valuation used to determine the aggregate total value of the transaction reported in Item 2(d)(v).

ITEM 3

Item 3(a)-*Description of acquisition.* Briefly describe the transaction. Include a list of the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification. Indicate for each party whether assets or voting securities (or both) are to be acquired. Also indicate what consideration will be received by each party. In describing the acquisition, include the expected dates of any major events required to consummate the transaction (e.g., stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers) and the scheduled consummation date of the transaction.

If the voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity within the same person as the issuer) separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities. Acquiring persons involved in tender offers should describe the terms of the offer.

Item 3(b)(i)-*Assets to be acquired.* This Item is to be completed only to the extent that the transaction is an acquisition of assets. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the transaction, giving dollar values thereof.

Give the total value of the assets to be acquired in this transaction.

Examples of general classes of assets other than cash and securities are land, merchandising inventory, manufacturing plants (specify location and products produced), and retail stores. For each general class of assets, indicate the page or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with this Form in which the assets are more particularly described.

Item 3(b)(ii)-*Assets held by acquiring person.* (To be completed by acquiring persons). If assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of such assets in the manner required by Item 3(b)(i), and the dollar value or estimated dollar value at the time they were acquired.

Item 3(b)(iii) –*Assets held by unincorporated entities.* This item is to be completed only to the extent that the transaction is an acquisition of non-corporate interests. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the transaction. For examples of general classes of assets refer to Item 3(b)(i).

Item 3(c)-*Voting securities to be acquired.* Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired in the acquisition: (If, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold 100 percent of the voting securities of the acquired issuer or if the acquisition is a merger or consolidation (see § 801.2(d)), the parties may so state and provide the total dollar value of the transaction instead of responding to Items 3(c)(i)-3(c)(vi).

Item 3(c)(i)-List each class of voting securities (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed. If there is more than one class of voting securities, include a description of the voting rights of each class. Also list each class of non-voting securities which will be acquired in the acquisition;

Item 3(c)(ii)-Total number of shares of each class of securities listed which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed;

Item 3(c)(iii)-Total number of shares of each class of securities listed which will be acquired in this acquisition. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 3(c)(iv)-Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 3(c)(v)-Dollar value of securities of each class listed to be acquired in this transaction (see § 801.10). If there is more than one acquiring person of any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person (If the exact dollar value cannot be determined at the time of filing, provide an estimated value and indicate the basis on which the estimate was made);

Item 3(c)(vi)-Total number of each class of securities listed which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been accomplished. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

Item 3(d)-Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired. (For paper copy submissions, do not attach these documents to the Form.)

ITEM 4

Furnish one copy of each of the following documents. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those prepared by the person filing notification, furnish, in addition, one copy of each document from each such other entity. Furnish copies of:

Item 4(a)-all of the following documents which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (or are to be filed contemporaneously in connection with this acquisition); the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Notification and Report Form; all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied; any registration statement filed in connection with the transaction for which notification is being filed; if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule TO. Alternatively, the person filing notification may incorporate a document by reference to an internet address directly linking to the document (see §803.2(e)(2));

NOTE: In response to Item 4(a), the person filing notification may incorporate by reference documents submitted with an earlier filing as explained in the staff formal interpretations dated April 10, 1979, and April 7, 1981, and in § 803.2(e).

Item 4(b)-the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports (of person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person) and, if different, the most recently regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person. Alternatively, the person filing notification may incorporate a document by reference to an internet address directly linking to the document (see §803.2(e)(2));

Item 4(c)-all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared by or for any officer(s) or director(s) (or, in the case of unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions) for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation, and the name and title of each individual who prepared each such document.

Persons filing notification may provide an optional index of documents called for by Item 4 of the Answer Sheets.

NOTE: If the person filing notification withholds any documents called for by Item 4(c) based on a claim of privilege, the person must provide a statement of reasons for such noncompliance as specified in the staff formal interpretation dated September 13, 1979, and § 803.3(d).

ITEMS 5 through 8

NOTE: For Items 5 through 8, the acquired person should limit its response in the case of an acquisition of assets, to the assets to be sold, in the case of an acquisition of non-corporate interests, to the unincorporated entity being acquired, and in the case of an acquisition of voting securities, to the issuer(s) whose voting securities are being acquired and all entities controlled by such issuer. A person filing as both acquiring and acquired may be required to provide a separate response to these items in each capacity so that it can properly limit its response as an acquired person. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)

Items 5(a)-5(c): These items request information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three NAICS levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons must submit certain data at the 6-digit NAICS industry code level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from manufacturing operations (NAICS Sectors 31-33), data must also be submitted at the 7-digit product class level and 10-digit product code level (NAICS-based codes). Where certain published NAICS industry codes contain only 5 digits, the filing person should add a zero (0) after the fifth (5th) digit.

NOTE: See "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the *2002 NAICS Manual* for the 6-digit industry codes and the *2002 Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products (2002 Numerical List)* for the 7-digit product classes and 10-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 7-digit NAICS product classes and 10-digit NAICS product codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code" in the *2002 Numerical List*.

Nondepository credit intermediation (NAICS Industry Group Code 5222); securities, commodity contracts, and other financial investments (NAICS Subsector 523); funds, trusts, and other financial vehicles (NAICS Subsector 525); real estate (NAICS Subsector 531); lessors of nonfinancial intangible assets, except copyright works (NAICS Subsector 533); and management of companies and enterprises (NAICS Subsector 551) should identify or explain the revenues reported (e.g. dollar sales receipts).

Persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for all entities included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (even if such entities have become included within the person since 2002). For example, if the person filing notification acquired an entity in 2003, it must include that entity's 2002 revenues in items 5(a) and 5(b)(i). It must also include that entity's most recent year's revenues in Item 5(b)(iii) and/or Item 5(c).

Item 5(a)-*Dollar revenues by industry*. Provide aggregate 6-digit NAICS industry data for 2002.

Item 5(b)(i)-*Dollar revenues by manufactured product*. Provide the following information on the aggregate operations for the person filing notification for 2002 for each 10-digit NAICS product of the person in NAICS Sectors 31-33 (manufacturing industries).

NOTE: Where the *2002 Numerical List* denotes footnote 1 at the end of a specific Subsector, refer to Appendices A, and then B for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report. You must provide 10-digit NAICS product codes and descriptions listed in Appendix B.

Item 5(b)(ii)-*Products added or deleted*. Within NAICS Sectors 31-33 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 2002, indicate the year of addition or deletion, and state total dollar revenues in the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 10-digit NAICS product code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification.

Do not include products added since 2002 by reason of mergers or acquisitions of entities occurring since 2002. Dollar revenues derived from such products should be included in response to Item 5(b)(i). However, if an entity acquired since 2002 by the person filing notification (and now included within the person) itself has added any products since 2002, these products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets constituting less than substantially all of the assets of an entity since 2002 should also be listed here.

Item 5(b)(iii)-*Dollar revenues by manufactured product class*. Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 7-digit NAICS product class within NAICS Sectors 31-33 (manufacturing industries) in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 7-digit NAICS product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished.

Item 5(c)-*Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry*. Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 6-digit NAICS industry code in NAICS Sectors other than 31-33 (manufacturing industries) in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 6-digit NAICS industry code may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted.

NOTE: *This million dollar minimum is applicable only to Item 5(c).*

JOINT VENTURE CORPORATION OR UNINCORPORATED ENTITY

Item 5(d)-Supply the following information only if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity. (See § 801.40.)

Item 5(d)(i)-List the name and mailing address of the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity.

Item 5(d)(ii)(A)-List contributions that each person forming the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity has agreed to make, specifying when each contribution is to be made and the value of the contribution as agreed by the contributors.

Item 5(d)(ii)(B)-Describe any contracts or agreements whereby the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity will obtain assets or capital from sources other than the persons forming it.

Item 5(d)(ii)(C)-Specify whether and in what amount the persons forming the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations.

Item 5(d)(ii)(D)-Describe fully the consideration which each person forming the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity will receive in exchange for its contribution(s).

Item 5(d)(iii)-Describe generally the business in which the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity will engage, including location of headquarters and principal plants, warehouses, retail establishments or other places of business, its principal types of products or activities, and the geographic areas in which it will do business.

Item 5(d)(iv)-Identify each 6-digit NAICS industry code in which the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity will derive dollar revenues. If the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity will be engaged in manufacturing also specify each 7-digit NAICS product class in which it will derive dollar revenues.

ITEM 6

This item need not be completed by a person filing notification only as an acquired person if only assets are to be acquired. Persons filing notification may respond to Items 6(a), 6(b), or 6(c) by referencing a "document attachment" furnished with this Form if the information so referenced is a complete response and is up-to-date and accurate. Indicate for each Item the specific page(s) of the document that are responsive to that Item.

Item 6(a)-*Entities within the person filing notification*. List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

Item 6(b)-*Shareholders of person filing notification*. For each entity (including the ultimate parent entity) included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

Item 6(c)-Holdings of person filing notification. If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuers, and holding of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

ITEM 7

If, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the acquiring person filing notification derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in industries within any 6-digit NAICS industry code in which any acquired person that is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity will derive dollar revenues), then for each such 6-digit NAICS industry code:

Item 7(a)-supply the 6-digit NAICS industry code and description for the industry;

Item 7(b)-list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 6-digit industry;

Item 7(c)-*Geographic market information*:

Item 7(c)(i)-for each 6-digit NAICS industry code within NAICS Sectors 31-33 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states or, if desired, portions thereof in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 6-digit NAICS code produced by the person filing notification are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold;

Item 7(c)(ii)- for each 6-digit NAICS industry code within NAICS Sectors or Subsectors 11 (agriculture, forestry, fishing and hunting); 21 (mining); 22 (utilities); 23 (construction); 48-49 (transportation and warehousing); 511(publishing industries); 515 (broadcasting); 517 (telecommunications); and 71 (arts, entertainment and recreation) listed in item 7(a) above, list the states or, if desired, portions thereof in which the person filing notification conducts such operations;

Item 7(c)(iii)-for each 6-digit NAICS industry code within NAICS Sector 42 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states or, if desired, portions thereof in which the customers of the person filing notification are located;

Item 7(c)(iv)-for each 6-digit NAICS industry code within NAICS Sectors or Subsectors 44-45 (retail trade); 512 (motion picture and sound recording industries); 521 (monetary authorities-central bank); 522 (credit intermediation and related activities); 532 (rental and leasing services); 62 (health care and social assistance); 72 (accommodations and food services); 811 (repair and maintenance); and 812 (personal and laundry services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, **arranged by state, county and city or town,** of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification;

Item 7(c)(v)- for each 6-digit NAICS industry code within NAICS Subsectors 516 (internet publishing & broadcasting); 518 (internet service providers); 519 (other information services); 523 (securities, commodity contracts and other financial investments and related activities); 525 (funds, trusts and other financial vehicles); 53 (real estate and rental and leasing); 54 (professional, scientific and technical services); 55 (management of companies and enterprises); 56 (administrative and support and waste management and remediation services); 61 (educational services); 813 (religious, grantmaking, civic, professional, and similar organizations); and NAICS Industry Group 5242 (insurance agencies and brokerages, and other insurance related activities) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states or, if desired, portions thereof in which establishments were located from which the person filing notification derived revenues in the most recent year; and

Item 7(c)(vi)-for each 6-digit NAICS industry code within NAICS Industry Group 5241 (insurance carriers) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

NOTE: Except in the case of those NAICS major industries in the Sectors and Subsectors mentioned in Item 7(c)(iv) above, the person filing notification may respond with the word "national" if business is conducted in all 50 states.

ITEM 8

Item 8-*Previous acquisitions* (to be completed by acquiring persons). Determine each 6-digit NAICS industry code listed in Item 7(a) above, in which the person filing notification derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year and in which either the acquired issuer derived revenues of $1 million or more in the recent year (or, in which, in the case of the formation of a joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity, the joint venture corporation or unincorporated entity reasonably can be expected to derive revenues of $1 million or more), or revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year were attributable to the acquired assets. For each such 6-digit NAICS industry code, list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the five years prior to the date of filing of entities deriving dollar revenues in that 6-digit NAICS industry code. List only acquisitions of 50 percent or more of the voting securities of an issuer which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition, and any acquisitions of assets valued at or above the statutory size-of-transaction test at the time of their acquisition.

For each such acquisition, supply:

(a) the name of the entity acquired;

(b) the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition;

(c) whether securities or assets were acquired;

(d) the consummation date of the acquisition; and

(e) the 6-digit (NAICS code) industries by (number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

CERTIFICATION- (See § 803.6.)

The language found in 28 U.S.C. § 1746 relating to unsworn declarations under penalty of perjury may be used instead of notarization of the certification.

TRANSACTION NUMBER ASSIGNED ☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐

16 C.F.R. Part 803 - Appendix
NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

Approved by OMB
3084-0005
Expires 05/31/2007

THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE SUPPLIED ON THESE ANSWER SHEETS IS SPECIFIED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS

↓ Attach the Affidavit required by § 803.5 to this page.

FEE INFORMATION

AMOUNT PAID $_____

In cases where your filing fee would be higher if based on acquisition price or where the acquisition price is undetermined to the extent that it may straddle a filing fee threshold, attach an explanation of how you determined the appropriate fee *(acquiring persons only).*

Attachment Number _____

TAXPAYER IDENTIFICATION NUMBER _____
or SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER of payer _____
(acquiring person (and payer if different from acquiring person))

CHECK ATTACHED ☐ MONEY ORDER ATTACHED ☐

WIRE TRANSFER ☐ CONFIRMATION NO._____

FROM: NAME OF INSTITUTION _____

NAME OF PAYER (if different from PERSON FILING) _____

IS THIS A CORRECTIVE FILING? ☐ YES ☐ NO

IS THIS ACQUISITION SUBJECT TO FOREIGN FILING REQUIREMENTS? ☐ YES ☐ NO
If YES, list jurisdictions: *(voluntary)* _____

IS THIS ACQUISITION A CASH TENDER OFFER? ☐ YES ☐ NO | BANKRUPTCY? ☐ YES ☐ NO

DO YOU REQUEST EARLY TERMINATION OF THE WAITING PERIOD? *(Grants of early termination are published in the Federal Register AND on the FTC web site www.ftc.gov)*
☐ YES ☐ NO

ITEM 1 – PERSON FILING

1(a) NAME and
HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS
of PERSON FILING

1(b) PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION IS
☐ an acquiring person ☐ an acquired person ☐ both

1(c) PUT AN "X" IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION
☐ Corporation ☐ Unincorporated Entity ☐ Other *(Specify):* _____

1(d) DATA FURNISHED BY
☐ calendar year ☐ fiscal year *(specify period)* _____ (month/year) to _____ (month/year)

THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to §7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. §18a, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the *Federal Register* at 43 FR 33450; the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file this **Notification and Report Form**, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. §18a and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $11,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. §18a.

Pursuant to the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act, information and documentary material filed in or with this Form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Filing - Complete and return *two* copies (with one original affidavit and certification and one set of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to: Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580. *Three* copies (with one set of documentary attachments) should be sent to: Director of Operations and Merger Enforcement, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, 950 Pennsylvania Avenue N.W., Room #3335, Washington, D.C. 20530. (For FEDEX airbills to the Department of Justice do not use the 20530 zip code; use zip code 20004.)

DISCLOSURE NOTICE - Public reporting burden for this report is estimated to vary from 8 to 160 hours per response, with an average of 39 hours per response, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding the burden estimate or any other aspect of this report, including suggestions for reducing this burden to:
Premerger Notification Office, H-303, Federal Trade Commission,
Washington, DC 20503 and
Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget,
Washington, DC 20580

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act, as amended, an agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to, a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number. That number is 3084-0005, which also appears in the upper right-hand corner of the first page of this form.

Privacy Act Statement–Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorizes the collection of this information. Our authority to collect Social Security numbers is 31 U.S.C. 7701. The primary use of information submitted on this Form is to determine whether the reported merger or acquisition may violate the antitrust laws. Taxpayer information is collected, used, and may be shared with other agencies and contractors for payment processing, debt collection and reporting purposes. Furnishing the information on the Form is voluntary. Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $11,000 per day. We also may be unable to process the Form unless you provide all of the requested information.

FTC FORM C4 (rev. 06/06/06) 1 of 15

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

1(e) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX AND GIVE THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION (if other than ultimate parent entity)

☐ NA ☐ This report is being filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to § 803.4. ☐ This report is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file pursuant to § 803.2(a).

NAME OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION	ADDRESS

1(f) NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY MAKING ACQUISITION OR WHOSE ASSETS, VOTING SECURITIES OR NON-CORPORATE INTERESTS ARE BEING ACQUIRED IF DIFFERENT FROM THE ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

PERCENT OF VOTING SECURITIES OR NON-CORPORATE INTERESTS HELD BY EACH ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

1(g) IDENTIFICATION OF PERSON TO CONTACT REGARDING THIS REPORT

NAME OF CONTACT PERSON	
TITLE	
FIRM NAME	
BUSINESS ADDRESS	
TELEPHONE NUMBER	
FAX NUMBER	
E-MAIL ADDRESS	

(h) IDENTIFICATION OF AN INDIVIDUAL LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED FOR THE LIMITED PURPOSE OF RECEIVING NOTICE OF ISSUANCE OF A REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTS. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii))

NAME OF CONTACT PERSON	
TITLE	
FIRM NAME	
BUSINESS ADDRESS	
TELEPHONE NUMBER	
FAX NUMBER	
E-MAIL ADDRESS	

ITEM 2

2(a) LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRING PERSONS	LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRED PERSONS

2(b) THIS ACQUISITION IS *(put an X in all the boxes that apply)*

- ☐ an acquisition of assets
- ☐ a merger (see § 801.2)
- ☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.2(e)
- ☐ a formation of a joint venture or other corporation or unincorporated entity (see § 801.40 or § 801.50)
- ☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.30 (*specify type*)
- ☐ other (*specify*) _____
- ☐ a consolidation (see § 801.2)
- ☐ an acquisition of voting securities
- ☐ a secondary acquisition
- ☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.31
- ☐ acquisition of non-corporate interests

2(c) INDICATE THE HIGHEST NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD IN § 801.1(h) FOR WHICH THIS FORM IS BEING FILED *(acquiring person only in an acquisition of voting securities)*

☐ $50 million (as adjusted) ☐ $100 million (as adjusted) ☐ $500 million (as adjusted) ☐ 25% (see Instructions) (as adjusted) ☐ 50%

2(d)(i) VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION	(ii) PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES	(iii) VALUE OF ASSETS TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION	(iv) VALUE OF NONCORPORATE INTERESTS TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION	(v) AGGREGATE TOTAL VALUE
$	%	$	$	$

FTC FORM C4 (rev. 11/29/05)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

2(e) If aggregate total value in 2(d)(v) is based in whole or in part on a fair market valuation pursuant to § 801.10(c)(3), identify the person or persons responsible for making the valuation *(acquiring persons only)*.

ITEM 3
3(a) DESCRIPTION OF ACQUISITION

FTC FORM C4 (rev. 11/29/05)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

3(b)(i) ASSETS TO BE ACQUIRED (to be completed only for asset acquisitions)

3(b)(ii) ASSETS HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON

3(b)(iii) ASSETS HELD BY UNINCORPORATED ENTITIES

3(c) VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

3(c)(i) LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND LIST OF NON-VOTING SECURITIES:

3(c)(ii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY:

3(c)(iii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING ACQUIRED:

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

3(c)(iv) IDENTITY OF PERSONS ACQUIRING SECURITIES:

3(c)(v) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES IN EACH CLASS BEING ACQUIRED:

3(c)(vi) TOTAL NUMBER OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

3(d) SUBMIT A COPY OF THE MOST RECENT VERSION OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT (or letter of intent to merge or acquire)

DO NOT ATTACH THIS DOCUMENT TO THIS PAGE ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT _____

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 4 PERSONS FILING NOTIFICATION MAY PROVIDE BELOW AN OPTIONAL INDEX OF DOCUMENTS REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED BY ITEM 4 (See Item by Item instructions). THESE DOCUMENTS SHOULD NOT BE ATTACHED TO THIS PAGE.

4(a) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

4(b) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS, AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

4(c) STUDIES, SURVEYS, ANALYSES, AND REPORTS	ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5 (See "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the *North American Industry Classification System-United States, 2002* (*2002 NAICS Manual*) for the 6-digit (NAICS) industry codes. Refer to the *2002 Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products* (EC02M31R-NL) for the 7-digit product class codes and the 10-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 7-digit product class codes and 10-digit product codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code." For further information on NAICS-based codes visit the www.census.gov web site.)

5(a) DOLLAR REVENUES BY INDUSTRY

6-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	2002 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

FTC FORM C4 (rev. 11/28/05)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(i) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

10-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE	DESCRIPTION	2002 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

FTC FORM C4 (rev. 11/28/05)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(ii) PRODUCTS ADDED OR DELETED

DESCRIPTION (10-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE)	ADD	DELETE	YEAR OF CHANGE	TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

ITEM 5(b)(iii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS

7-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS	DESCRIPTION	YEAR |_____| TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES
	(Item 5(b)(iii) continued on page 10)	

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 5(b)(iii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS - CONTINUED

7-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS	DESCRIPTION	YEAR |_____| TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

ITEM 5(c) DOLLAR REVENUES BY NON-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

6-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE	DESCRIPTION	YEAR |_____| TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

5(d) COMPLETE ONLY IF ACQUISITION IS IN THE FORMATION OF A JOINT VENTURE CORPORATION OR UNINCORPORATED ENTITY.

5(d)(i) NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE JOINT VENTURE CORPORATION OR UNINCORPORATED ENTITY

5(d)(ii)

(A) CONTRIBUTIONS THAT EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE CORPORATION OR UNINCORPORATED ENTITY HAS AGREED TO MAKE

(B) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CONTRACTS OR AGREEMENTS

(C) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CREDIT GUARANTEES OR OBLIGATIONS

(D) DESCRIPTION OF CONSIDERATION WHICH EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE CORPORATION OR UNINCORPORATED ENTITY WILL RECEIVE

5(d)(iii) DESCRIPTION OF THE BUSINESS IN WHICH THE JOINT VENTURE CORPORATION OR UNINCORPORATED ENTITY WILL ENGAGE

5(d)(iv) SOURCE OF DOLLAR REVENUES BY 6-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE (non-manufacturing) AND BY 7-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS (manufacturing)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

ITEM 6

6(a) ENTITIES WITHIN PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

6(b) SHAREHOLDERS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

6(c) HOLDINGS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

ITEM 7 DOLLAR REVENUES
7(a) 6-DIGIT NAICS CODE AND DESCRIPTION

7(b) NAME OF EACH PERSON WHICH ALSO DERIVED DOLLAR REVENUES

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

7(c) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION

ITEM 8 PRIOR ACQUISITIONS (to be completed by acquiring person only)

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION	DATE

CERTIFICATION

This **NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM,** together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

NAME (Please print or type)	TITLE
SIGNATURE	DATE

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the
City of _____, State of _____

this _____day of _____, the year _____

Signature _____

My Commission expires _____

[SEAL]

FTC FORM C4 (rev. 09/10/02) 15 of 15

[70 FR 4997, Jan. 31, 2005, as amended at 70 FR 11514, Mar. 8, 2005; 70 FR 73372, Dec. 12, 2005; 70 FR 77313, Dec. 30, 2005; 71 FR 35998, June 23, 2006]

SUBCHAPTER I—FAIR DEBT COLLECTION PRACTICES ACT

PART 901—PROCEDURES FOR STATE APPLICATION FOR EXEMPTION FROM THE PROVISIONS OF THE ACT

Sec.
901.1 Purpose.
901.2 Application.
901.3 Supporting documents.
901.4 Criteria for determination.
901.5 Public notice of filing.
901.6 Exemption from requirements.
901.7 Adverse determination.
901.8 Revocation of exemption.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 95–109, 91 Stat. 874, 15 U.S.C. 1692o; 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 44 FR 21005, Apr. 9, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

§ 901.1 Purpose.

This part establishes procedures and criteria whereby States may apply to the Federal Trade Commission for exemption of a class of debt collection practices within the applying State from the provisions of the Fair Debt Collection Practices Act as provided in section 817 of the Act, 15 U.S.C. 1692o.

§ 901.2 Application.

Any State may apply to the Commission pursuant to the terms of this Rule for a determination that, under the laws of that State,[1] any class of debt collection practices[2] within that State is subject to requirements that are substantially similar to, or provide greater protection for consumers than, those imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act, and that there is adequate provision for State enforcement of such requirements. The application shall be in writing, addressed to the Commission, signed by the Governor, Attorney General or State official having primary enforcement or responsibility under the State law which is applicable to the class of debt collection practices, and shall be supported by the documents specified herein.

§ 901.3 Supporting documents.

The application shall be accompanied by the following, which may be submitted in paper or electronic form:

(a) A copy of the full text of the State law that is claimed to contain requirements substantially similar to those imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act, or to provide greater protection to consumers than sections 803 through 812 of the Act, regarding the class of debt collection practices within that State.

(b) A comparison of each provision of sections 803 through 812 of the Act with the corresponding provision of the State law, together with reasons supporting the claim that the corresponding provisions of the State law are substantially similar to or provide greater protection to consumers than provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act and an explanation as to why any differences between the State and federal law are not inconsistent with the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act and do not result in a diminution in the protection otherwise afforded consumers; and a statement that no other State laws (including administrative or judicial interpretations) are related to, or would have an effect upon, the State law that is being considered by the Commission in making its determination.

(c) A copy of the full text of the State law that provides for enforcement of the State law referred to in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) A comparison of the provisions of the State law that provides for enforcement with the provisions of section 814 of the Act, together with reasons supporting the claim that such State law provides for administrative enforcement of the State law referred to in paragraph (a) of this section that is substantially similar to, or more extensive than, the enforcement provided under section 814 of the Act.

[1] Any reference to State law herein includes a reference to any regulations that implement State law and formal interpretations thereof by a court of competent jurisdiction or duly authorized agency of that State.

[2] As applicable, references to ''class of debt collection practices'' in this rule include one or more such classes of debt collection practices.

(e) A statement identifying the office designated or to be designated to administer the State law referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, together with complete information regarding the fiscal arrangements for administrative enforcement (including the amount of funds available or to be provided), the number and qualifications of personnel engaged or to be engaged in enforcement, and a description of the procedures under which such State law is to be administratively enforced. The statement should also include reasons to support the claim that there is adequate provision for enforcement of such State law.

[44 FR 21005, Apr. 9, 1979, as amended at 64 FR 34533, June 28, 1999]

§ 901.4 Criteria for determination.

The Commission will consider the criteria set forth below, and any other relevant information, in determining whether the law of a State is substantially similar to, or provides greater protection to consumers than, the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act regarding the class of debt collection practices within that State, and whether there is adequate provision for State enforcement of such law. In making that determination, the Commission primarily will consider each provision of the State law in comparison with each corresponding provision in sections 803 through 812 of the Act, and not the State law as a whole in comparison with the Act as a whole.

(a) In order for provisions of State law to be substantially similar to, or provide greater protection to consumers than the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, the provisions of State law[3] at least shall provide that:

(1) Definitions and rules of construction, as applicable, import the same meaning and have the same application as those prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the Act.

(2) Debt collectors provide all of the applicable notifications required by the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, with the content and in the terminology, form, and time periods prescribed by this part pursuant to sections 803 through 812; however, required references to State law may be substituted for the references to Federal law required in this part. Notification requirements under State law in additional circumstances or with additional detail that do not frustrate any of the purposes of the Act may be determined by the Commission to be consistent with sections 803 through 812 of the Act;

(3) Debt Collectors take all affirmative actions and abide by obligations substantially similar to, or more extensive than, those prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the Act under substantially similar or more stringent conditions and within the same or more stringent time periods as are prescribed in sections 803 through 812 of the Act;

(4) Debt Collectors abide by the same or more stringent prohibitions as are prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the act;

(5) Obligations or responsibilities imposed on consumers are no more costly, lengthy, or burdensome relative to consumers exercising any of the rights or gaining the benefits of the protections provided in the State law than corresponding obligations or responsibilities imposed on consumers in sections 803 through 812 of the act.

(6) Consumers' rights and protections are substantially similar to, or more favorable than, those provided by sections 803 through 812 of the Act under conditions or within time periods that are substantially similar to, or more favorable to consumers than, those prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the Act.

(b) In determining whether provisions for enforcement of the State law referred to in § 901.3(a) are adequate, consideration will be given to the extent to which, under State law, provision is made for administrative enforcement, including necessary facilities, personnel, and funding.

[44 FR 21005, Apr. 9, 1979, as amended at 64 FR 34533, June 28, 1999]

[3] This subsection is not be construed as indicating that the Commission would consider adversely any additional requirements of State law that are not inconsistent with the purpose of the Act or the requirements imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act.

§901.5 Public notice of filing.

In connection with any application that has been filed in accordance with the requirements of §§901.2 and 901.3 of this rule and following initial review of the application, a notice of such filing shall be published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and a copy of such application shall be made available for examination by interested persons during business hours at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, Room 130. A period of time shall be allowed from the date of such publication for interested parties to submit written comments to the Commission regarding that application.

§901.6 Exemption from requirements.

If the Commission determines on the basis of the information before it that, under the law of a State, a class of debt collection practices is subject to requirements substantially similar to, or that provide greater protection to consumers than, those imposed under sections 803 through section 812 and 814 of the Act, and that there is adequate provision for State enforcement, the Commission will exempt the class of debt collection practices in that State from the requirements of sections 803 through 812 and section 814 of the Act in the following manner and subject to the following conditions:

(a) Notice of the exemption shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and the Commission shall furnish a copy of such notice to the State official who made application for such exemption, to each Federal authority responsible for administrative enforcement of the requirements of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, and to the Attorney General of the United States. Any exemption granted shall be effective 90 days after the date of publication of such notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) The appropriate official of any State that receives an exemption shall inform the Commission in writing within 30 days of any change in the State laws referred to in §901.3 (a) and (c). The report of any such change shall contain copies of the full text of that change, together with statements setting forth the information and opinions regarding that change that are specified in §901.3 (b) and (d). The appropriate official of any State that has received such an exemption also shall file with the Commission from time to time such reports as the Commission may require.

(c) The Commission shall inform the appropriate official of any State that receives such an exemption of any subsequent amendments of the Act (including the Commission's formal advisory opinions, and informal staff interpretations issued by an authorized official or employee of the Federal Trade Commission) that might necessitate the amendment of State law for the exemption to continue.

(d) No exemption shall extend to the civil liability provisions of section 813 of the Act. After an exemption is granted, the requirements of the applicable State law shall constitute the requirements of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, except to the extent such State law imposes requirements not imposed by the Act or this part.

§901.7 Adverse determination.

(a) If, after publication of a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER as provided under §901.5, the Commission finds on the basis of the information before it that it cannot make a favorable determination in connection with the application, the Commission shall notify the appropriate State official of the facts upon which such findings are based and shall afford that State authority a reasonable opportunity to demonstrate or achieve compliance.

(b) If, after having afforded the State authority such opportunity to demonstrate or achieve compliance, the Commission finds on the basis of the information before it that it still cannot make a favorable determination in connection with the application, the Commission shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of its determination regarding the application and shall furnish a copy of such notice to the State official who made application for such exemption.

§901.8 Revocation of exemption.

(a) The Commission reserves the right to revoke any exemption granted under the provisions of this rule, if at

any time it determines that the State law does not, in fact, impose requirements that are substantially similar to, or that provide greater protection to applicants than, those imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act or that there is not, in fact, adequate provision for State enforcement.

(b) Before revoking any such exemption, the Commission shall notify the appropriate State official of the facts or conduct that, in the Commission's opinion, warrants such revocation, and shall afford that State such opportunity as the Commission deems appropriate in the circumstances to demonstrate or achieve compliance.

(c) If, after having been afforded the opportunity to demonstrate or achieve compliance, the Commission determines that the State has not done so, notice of the Commission's intention to revoke such exemption shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A period of time shall be allowed from the date of such publication for interested persons to submit written comments to the Commission regarding the intention to revoke.

(d) If such exemption is revoked, notice of such revocation shall be published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and a copy of such notice shall be furnished to the appropriate State official, to the Federal authorities responsible for enforcement of the requirements of the Act, and to the Attorney General of the United States. The revocation shall become effective, and the class of debt collection practices affected within that State shall become subject to the requirements of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, 90 days after the date of publication of the notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

PARTS 902–999 [RESERVED]